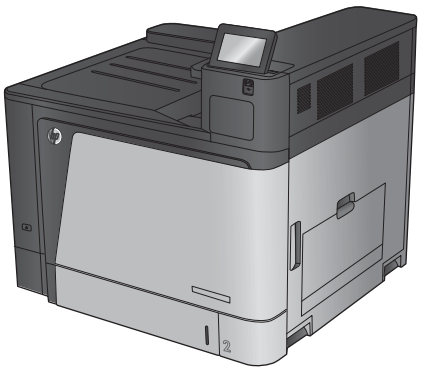
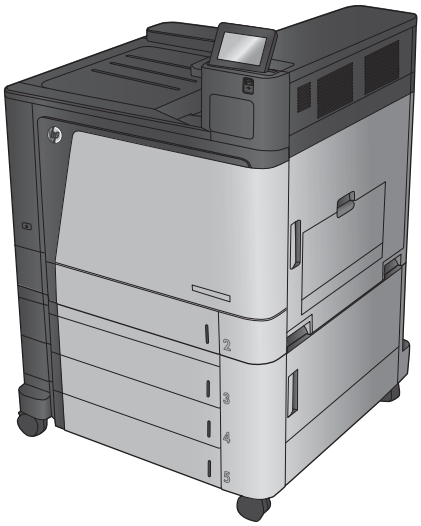
LASERJET ENTERPRISE M855
LASERJET ENTERPRISE FLOW MFP M880

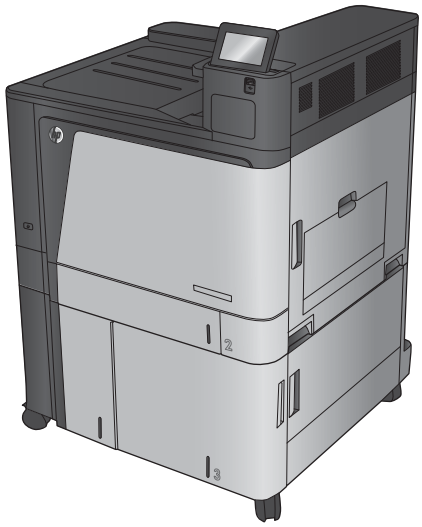
Repair Manual



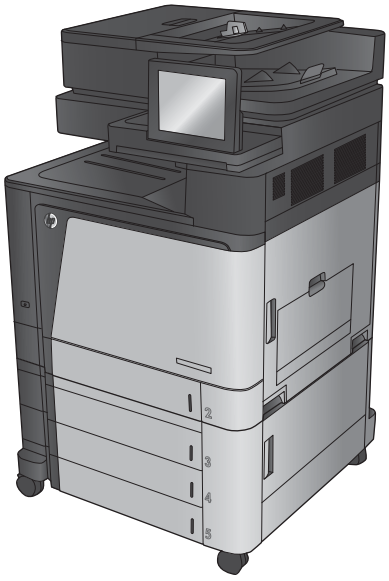
M855dn



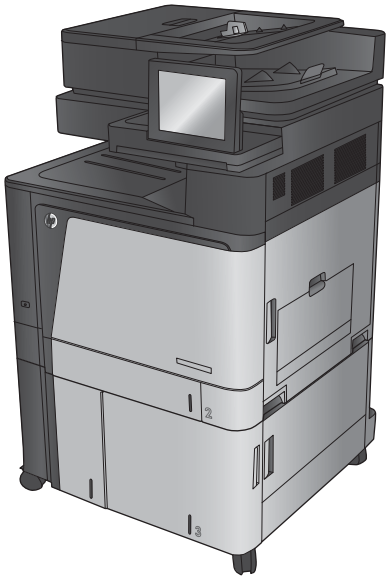
M855xh



M855x+



M880z



M880z+

HP Color LaserJet Enterprise M855 and flow MFP M880

Repair Manual

Copyright and License

© 2013 Copyright Hewlett-Packard Development Company, L.P.

Reproduction, adaptation, or translation without prior written permission is prohibited, except as allowed under the copyright laws.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice.

The only warranties for HP products and services are set forth in the express warranty statements accompanying such products and services. Nothing herein should be construed as constituting an additional warranty. HP shall not be liable for technical or editorial errors or omissions contained herein.

Part number: A2W77-90997

Edition 1, 11/2013

Trademark Credits

Microsoft®, Windows®, Windows® XP, and Windows Vista® are U.S. registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

Conventions used in this guide

TIP: Helpful hints or shortcuts.

NOTE: Information that explains a concept or how to complete a task.

IMPORTANT: Information to help you avoid potential product error conditions.

CAUTION: Procedures that you should follow to avoid losing data or damaging the product.

WARNING! Alerts you to specific procedures that you must follow to avoid personal injury, catastrophic loss of data, or extensive damage to the product.

Table of contents

1 Removal and replacement 1
Removal and replacement strategy 2
Considerations during removal and replacement 2
Required tools 3
Types of screws 3
Service approach 3
Before performing service 4
After performing service 4
Parts removal order 4
Supported paper sizes and types 4
Supported paper sizes for the input trays and duplexer 5
Supported paper types for the input trays and duplexer 7
Supported paper sizes for the finishing accessories 9
Supported paper types for the finishing accessories 12
Customer-self repair assemblies 14
Toner cartridge 14
Imaging drum 15
Secondary transfer roller 16
Reinstall the secondary transfer roller 17
Tray 2, 1x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 4, and 3x500 Tray 5 18
Intermediate transfer belt (ITB) 19
Fuser 21
Switch back tray 22
Formatter 23
Reinstall the formatter or install a replacement formatter 24
Hard-disk drive (HDD) or solid-state memory (SSM) 25
Identify the storage device 25
Remove the HDD 26
Reinstall the HDD 27
Remove the SSM 28
Reinstall the SSM 29
Reinstall the product firmware 30

Memory DIMM 32
Remove the memory DIMM 32
Reinstall the memory DIMM 33
Fax PCA (M880) 35
Remove the fax PCA (M880) 35
Document feeder mylar strip (M880) 36
Install a replacement document feeder mylar strip (M880) 37
Document feeder white backing (M880) 39
Install a replacement document feeder white backing (M880) 40
Background selector (M880) 44
Reinstall the background selector (M880) 46
Control panel assembly (M855) 47
Reinstall the control panel assembly (M855) 52
Control panel assembly (M880) 53
Reinstall the control panel assembly (M880) 57
Keyboard assembly (M880) 59
Remove the keyboard assembly (M880) 59
Reinstall the keyboard assembly (M880) 63
Pickup, feed, and separation rollers and pads 67
Document-feeder roller (M880 only) 68
Reinstall the document-feeder roller (M880 only) 69
Document-feeder separation pad (M880 only) 70
Reinstall the document-feeder separation pad (M880 only) 72
Tray 1 rollers 75
Reinstall the Tray 1 rollers 77
Tray 2, 1x500-sheet feeder, and 3x500-sheet feeder rollers 78
Remove the Tray 2, 1x500-sheet feeder, and 3x500-sheet feeder rollers 78
Reinstall the Tray 2, 1x500-sheet feeder, and 3x500-sheet feeder rollers 79
High-capacity input (HCI) rollers 80
Remove the HCI rollers 80
Reinstall the HCI rollers 81
Covers and doors 82
Location of major components 84
Scanner back cover (M880) 88
Scanner left cover (M880) 89
Remove the scanner left cover (M880) 89
Scanner right cover (M880) 90
Remove the scanner right cover (M880) 90
Scanner front cover (M880) 91
Remove the scanner front cover (M880) 91
Right upper rear cover (M855) 96

Hardware integration pocket (HIP) cover (M855) 97
Hardware integration pocket (HIP) cover (M880) 98
Reinstall the HIP cover (M880) 100
Face-down bin 101
Reinstall the face-down bin 102
Left rear cover 104
Remove the left rear cover 104
Switch back cover 105
Lower right cover 106
Rear upper rear cover (M880) 107
Right upper rear cover (M880) 108
Rear upper MFP cover (M880) 109
Reinstall the rear upper MFP cover (M880) 110
Left upper rear cover and rear upper B cover (M880) 111
Remove the left upper rear cover and rear upper B cover (M880) 111
Rear upper front cover (M880) 113
Remove the rear upper front cover (M880) 113
Front top cover 115
Remove the front top cover 115
Rear top cover (M855) 116
Remove the rear top cover (M855) 116
Left cover 118
Remove the left cover 118
Right upper front cover (M855) 120
Remove the right upper front cover (M855) 120
Right upper front cover (M880) 122
Remove the right upper front cover (M880) 122
Right upper cover (M855) 124
Remove the right upper cover (M855) 124
Right door assembly 129
Remove the right door assembly 129
Reinstall the right door assembly 132
Left front cover 133
Remove the left front cover 133
Install a replacement left front cover 136
Front door 137
Reinstall the front door 141
Rear cover 143
Remove the rear cover 143
Install a replacement rear cover 144
Right rear cover 146

Remove the right rear cover 146
Front inner cover 147
Remove the front inner cover 147
Reinstall the front inner cover 148
Main assemblies 149
Location of major components 152
Document feeder assembly (M880) 154
Remove the document feeder assembly (M880) 154
Reinstall the document feeder assembly (M880) 159
Scanner control board (SCB) (M880) 160
Remove the SCB (M880) 160
Scanner assembly (M880) 162
Remove the scanner assembly (M880) 162
Reinstall the scanner assembly (M880) 166
Interlock switch assembly 167
Remove the interlock switch assembly 167
Front-door open detection switch 169
Remove the front-door open detection switch 169
Reinstall the front-door-open detection switch 171
Main switch assembly 173
Remove the main switch assembly 173
Secondary transfer assembly 175
Remove the secondary transfer assembly 175
Reinstall the secondary transfer assembly 181
Multipurpose tray (Tray 1) drive assembly 183
Remove the multipurpose tray (Tray 1) drive assembly 183
Multipurpose tray (Tray 1) guide assembly 190
Remove the multipurpose tray guide assembly 190
Tray 2 pickup unit 191
Remove the Tray 2 pickup assembly 191
Fuser home position sensor 192
Remove the fuser home position sensor 192
Reinstall the fuser home position sensor 193
Shutter gear holder assembly 194
Remove the shutter gear holder assembly 194
Reinstall the shutter gear holder assembly 196
Fuser-edge area cooling fan FM10 (front) 200
Remove the fuser-edge area cooling fan FM10 (front) 200
Reinstall the fuser-edge area cooling fan FM10 (front) 202
Fuser-edge area cooling fan FM9 (rear) 204
Remove the fuser-edge area cooling fan FM9 (rear) 204

Reinstall the fuser-edge area cooling fan FM9 (rear) 205
Fuser fan FM2 207
Remove the fuser fan FM2 207
Reinstall the fuser fan FM2 209
Fuser fan duct 211
Remove the fuser fan duct 211
Reinstall the fuser fan duct 213
Cartridge fan FM3 (yellow and magenta) 214
Remove the cartridge fan FM3 (yellow and magenta) 214
Reinstall the cartridge fan FM3 (yellow and magenta) 216
Cartridge fan FM4 (cyan and black) 218
Remove the cartridge fan FM4 (cyan and black) 218
Reinstall the cartridge fan FM4 (cyan and black) 220
Laser/scanner fan FM1 222
Remove the laser/scanner fan FM1 222
Reinstall the laser/scanner fan FM1 224
Delivery fan FM8 226
Cartridge front area cooling fan FM7 228
Remove the cartridge front area cooling fan FM7 228
Reinstall the cartridge front area cooling fan FM7 229
Memory tag PCA 230
Remove the memory tag PCA 230
Reinstall the memory tag PCA and sheet-metal bracket 232
Image-drum motor 233
Remove the image-drum motor 233
Fuser power supply 235
Remove the fuser power supply 235
Reinstall the fuser power supply 236
Primary transfer-roller disengagement motor 238
Remove the primary transfer-roller disengagement motor 238
Intermediate transfer belt (ITB) alienation-drive assembly 240
Remove the ITB alienation-drive assembly 240
Fuser motor 242
Remove the fuser motor 242
Intermediate transfer belt (ITB) motor 243
Remove the ITB motor 243
Toner-cartridge feed motor (black) 244
Remove the toner-cartridge feed motor (black) 244
Toner-cartridge feed motor (yellow, magenta, and cyan) 245
Remove the toner-cartridge feed motor (yellow, magenta, and cyan) 245
Environmental sensor 247

Remove the environmental sensor 247
Interconnect PCA (M855) 248
Remove the interconnect PCA (M855) 248
Reinstall the interconnect PCA (M855) 251
Interconnect PCA (M880) 252
Remove the interconnect PCA (M880) 252
Reinstall the interconnect PCA (M880) 254
Formatter case 255
Remove the formatter case 255
Reinstall the formatter case 256
Formatter, formatter case, and interconnect board (ICB) 257
Remove the formatter, formatter case, and ICB 257
Reinstall the formatter, formatter case, and ICB 259
High-voltage power supply (HVPS) B 260
Remove the HVPS B 260
Reinstall the HVPS B 261
DC controller PCA 263
Remove the DC controller PCA 263
Color-plane registration (CPR) sensor assembly 264
Remove the CPR sensor assembly 264
Reinstall the CPR sensor assembly 267
Low-voltage power supply (LVPS) 269
Remove the LVPS 269
High-voltage power supply (HVPS) A (first transfer) 272
Remove the HVPS A (first transfer) 272
Reinstall the HVPS A (first transfer) 274
Lifter-drive assembly 276
Remove the lifter-drive assembly 276
Reinstall the lifter-drive assembly 278
Toner-cartridge drive assembly (yellow and magenta) 280
Remove the toner-cartridge drive assembly (yellow and magenta) 280
Reinstall the toner-cartridge drive assembly (yellow and magenta) 281
Toner-cartridge drive assembly (cyan and black) 282
Remove the toner-cartridge drive assembly (cyan and black) 282
Reinstall the toner-cartridge drive assembly (cyan and black) 283
Cartridge interface PCA (cyan and black) 284
Remove the cartridge interface PCA (cyan and black) 285
Cartridge interface PCA (yellow and magenta) 286
Remove the cartridge interface PCA (yellow and magenta) 287
Main drive assembly 288
Remove the main drive assembly 289

Reinstall the main drive assembly 290
Replace or reinstall the toner-cartridge drive assemblies or the main drive assembly 291
Replace the toner-cartridge drive assembly or the main drive assembly 291
Reinstall the toner-cartridge drive assembly or the main drive assembly 296
Fuser drive assembly 298
Remove the fuser drive assembly 298
Reinstall the fuser drive assembly 303
Scanner cover 306
Remove the scanner cover 306
Laser/scanner assembly (yellow and magenta) 307
Remove the laser/scanner assembly (yellow and magenta) 307
Reinstall the laser/scanner assembly (yellow and magenta) 311
Laser/scanner assembly (cyan and black) 312
Remove the laser/scanner assembly (cyan and black) 312
Reinstall the laser/scanner assembly (cyan and black) 317
Duplex reverse assembly (M855) 319
Remove the duplex reverse assembly (M855) 319
Duplex reverse assembly (M880) 320
Remove the duplex reverse assembly (M880) 320
VOC fan (M855) 321
Remove the VOC fan (M855) 321
VOC fan (M880) 323
Remove the VOC fan (M880) 324
Face-down delivery assembly(M855) 327
Remove the face-down delivery assembly (M855) 327
Face-down delivery assembly (M880) 332
Remove the face-down delivery assembly (M880) 333
Face-down cover 343
Remove the face-down cover 344
Duplexing feed assembly 345
Reinstall the duplexing feed assembly 349
Multipurpose tray (Tray 1) pickup assembly 350
Remove the multipurpose tray (Tray 1) pickup assembly 350
Reinstall the multipurpose tray (Tray 1) pickup assembly 355
Input accessories 356
High-capacity input (HCI) feeder 357
Location of major components 357
HCI right tray 360
HCI left tray 361
HCI rear cover 362
HCI right lower cover 363

Remove the HCI right lower cover 363
HCI right tray pickup motor 365
Remove the HCI right tray pickup motor 365
HCI right tray pickup drive 366
Remove the HCI right tray pickup drive 366
HCI left tray pickup motor 367
Remove the HCI left tray pickup motor 367
HCI left tray pickup drive 368
Remove the HCI left tray pickup drive 368
HCI right tray lifter drive assembly 369
Remove the HCI right tray lifter drive assembly 369
HCI left tray lifter drive assembly 370
Remove the HCI left tray lifter drive assembly 370
HCI right tray media-level sensor assembly 371
Remove the HCI right tray media-level sensor assembly 371
HCI left tray media-level sensor assembly 372
Remove the HCI left tray media-level sensor assembly 372
HCI right tray automatic close assembly 373
Remove the HCI right tray automatic close assembly 373
HCI left tray automatic close assembly 374
Remove the HCI left tray automatic close assembly 374
HCI right tray pickup assembly 375
Remove the HCI right tray pickup assembly 375
Reinstall the HCI right tray pickup assembly 376
HCI left tray pickup assembly 377
Remove the HCI left tray pickup assembly 377
Reinstall the HCI left tray pickup assembly 379
HCI merge assembly 380
Remove the HCI merge assembly 380
Reinstall the HCI merge assembly 381
HCI controller PCA 382
Remove the HCI controller PCA 382
1x500- and 3x500-sheet feeders 383
Location of major components 383
1x500 and 3x500 rear cover 387
1x500 and 3x500 right front cover 388
Remove the 1x500 and 3x500 right front cover 388
Reinstall the 1x500 and 3x500 right front cover 389
1x500 and 3x500 upper front face cover 390
Remove the 1x500 and 3x500 upper front face cover 390
Reinstall the 1x500 and 3x500 upper front face cover 391

1x500 and 3x500 upper front cover 392
Remove the 1x500 and 3x500 right front cover 392
1x500 and 3x500 upper front left face cover 395
Remove the 1x500 and 3x500 upper front left face cover 395
1x500 storage box door 396
Remove the 1x500 storage box door 396
1x500 storage box 398
Remove the 1x500 storage box 398
1x500 and 3x500 right lower cover 400
Remove the 1x500 and 3x500 right lower cover 400
1x500 Tray 3 pickup assembly 402
Remove the 1x500 Tray 3 pickup assembly 402
Reinstall the 1x500 Tray 3 pickup assembly 405
3x500 Tray 3 pickup assembly 407
Remove the 3x500 Tray 3 pickup assembly 407
Reinstall the 3x500 Tray 3 pickup assembly 410
3x500 Tray 4 pickup assembly 412
Remove the 3x500 Tray 4 pickup assembly 412
Reinstall the 3x500 Tray 4 pickup assembly 415
3x500 Tray 5 pickup assembly 416
Remove the 3x500 Tray 5 pickup assembly 416
Reinstall the 3x500 Tray 5 pickup assembly 418
1x500 Tray 3 automatic close assembly 419
Remove the 1x500 Tray 3 automatic close assembly 419
3x500 Tray 3, Tray 4, and Tray 5 automatic close assemblies 420
Remove the 3x500 Tray 3, Tray 4, and Tray 5 automatic close assemblies 420
1x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 3, Tray 4, and Tray 5 pickup motors 422
Remove the 1x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 3, Tray 4, and Tray 5 pickup motors 422
1x500 and 3x500 controller PCA 424
Remove the HCI controller PCA 424
Shared input accessory covers and doors 425
HCI, 1x500, and 3x500 left cover 425
Remove the HCI, 1x500, and 3x500 left cover 426
Reinstall the HCI, 1x500, and 3x500 left cover 427
HCI, 1x500, and 3x500 right door assembly 428
Remove the HCI, 1x500, and 3x500 right door assembly 428
HCI, 1x500, and 3x500 right rear cover 430
Remove the HCI, 1x500, and 3x500 right rear cover 430
Reinstall the HCI right rear cover 432

Intermediate paper transport unit (IPTU) 433
Location of major components 434
IPTU assembly 437
IPTU rear cover 439
Reinstall the IPTU rear cover 440
IPTU driver PCA 442
Remove the IPTU driver PCA 442
IPTU finisher lock assembly 443
Remove the IPTU finisher lock assembly 443
IPTU fan assembly 446
Remove the IPTU fan assembly 446
IPTU side panel assembly 447
Remove the IPTU side panel assembly 447
Reinstall the IPTU side panel assembly 450
IPTU upper and lower guide assemblies 451
Remove the IPTU upper and lower guide assemblies 451
Install a replacement IPTU upper guide assembly 456
Finishing accessories 457
Identify the finishing accessories 458
Identifying finishing accessory covers and doors 460
Shared finishing accessory assemblies 464
Top cover lock assembly 466
Latch lower covers (front and rear) 468
Latch assembly 470
Remove the latch assembly 470
Open/closed stepped cover assembly 471
Upper stepped cover assembly 472
Lower stepped cover assembly 474
Remove the lower stepped cover assembly 474
Reinstall the lower stepped cover 477
Top door assembly 478
Front door 479
Remove the front door 479
Inner upper cover assembly 480
Inner upper cover assembly (remove) 481
Clutch assembly (front side) 482
Remove the clutch assembly (front side) 482
Sensor switch assembly 483
Remove the sensor switch assembly 483
Inner lower cover assembly 486
Inner lower cover assembly (remove) 488

Front foot cover assembly 490
Remove the front foot cover assembly 490
Bin cable guide cover 492
Reinstall the bin cable guide cover 495
Rear cover assembly 496
Remove the rear cover assembly 496
Main controller PCA assembly 498
Remove the main controller PCA assembly 498
Entrance upper guide assembly 513
Remove the entrance upper guide assembly 513
Rear foot cover assembly 516
Remove the rear foot cover assembly 516
Stack wall upper assembly and upper wall guide assembly 518
Remove the stack wall upper assembly and upper wall guide assembly 518
Upper cross member assembly 521
Remove the upper cross member assembly 521
Reinstall the upper cross member assembly 529
Paper feed drive assembly 533
Remove the paper feed drive assembly 533
Pressure roller assembly 535
Remove the pressure roller assembly 536
Stack upper bin and lower bin assemblies 540
Remove stack upper bin and lower bin assemblies 541
Reinstall the stack upper bin and lower bin assemblies 544
Height wall assembly 546
Remove the height wall center assembly 546
Reinstall the height wall assembly 547
Paper face sensor and flag assembly 548
Remove the paper face sensor and flag assembly 548
Staple subassembly 553
Remove the staple subassembly 553
Staple connecting cable assembly 556
Remove the staple connecting cable assembly 556
Staple assembly 558
Remove the staple assembly 558
Paper detect holder assembly 562
Remove the paper detect holder assembly 562
Reinstall the paper detect holder assembly 563
Operation tray assembly 564
Remove the operation tray assembly 565

Reinstall the operation tray assembly 571
Swing guide assembly 575
Remove the swing guide assembly 576
Reinstall the swing guide assembly 582
Return roller assembly 586
Remove the return roller assembly 587
Clutch assembly (rear side) 588
Remove the clutch assembly (rear side) 588
Stack ejection motor assembly 591
Remove the stack ejection motor assembly 591
Press motor assembly 595
Remove the press motor assembly 595
Common driver PCA assembly 599
Remove the common controller PCA assembly 599
Interface cable assembly 601
Remove the interface cable assembly 601
Paper pass assembly 603
Remove the paper pass assembly 603
Booklet maker accessory 607
Knob 608
Saddle output bin assembly 609
Reinstall the saddle output bin 610
Right cover assembly (BM PCA) 611
Remove the right cover assembly (BM PCA) 611
Booklet maker controller PCA 615
Remove the booklet maker controller PCA 615
Inner side plate assembly 616
Remove the inner side plate assembly 616
Before reinstalling the inner side plate assembly 620
Guide sensor assembly 623
Remove the guide sensor assembly 623
Guide motor assembly 625
Remove the guide motor assembly 625
Saddle motor assembly (SS and BM) 627
Remove the saddle motor assembly (SS and BM) 627
Saddle feed motor assembly 629
Remove the saddle feed assembly 629
Folding-motor mount assembly 633
Remove the folding-motor mount assembly 633
Reinstall the folding-motor mount assembly 637
Delivery switch mount assembly 638

Remove the delivery switch mount assembly 638
Saddle stapler assembly 641
Remove the saddle stapler assembly 641
Lower left guide assembly 643
Remove the lower left guide assembly 643
Saddle delivery inner cover, front assembly 645
Remove the saddle delivery inner cover, front assembly 645
Saddle delivery inner cover, rear assembly 647
Remove the saddle delivery inner cover, rear assembly 647
Saddle guide assembly 649
Remove the saddle guide assembly 650
Reinstall the saddle guide assembly 653
Saddle feed assembly 655
Remove the saddle feed assembly 656
Reinstall the saddle feed assembly 659
Saddle assembly 660
Remove the saddle assembly 661
Reinstall the saddle assembly 668
Upper delivery guide assembly 669
Remove the upper delivery guide assembly 669
Saddle paper delivery assembly 671
Remove the saddle paper delivery assembly 671
Reinstall the saddle paper delivery assembly 673
Saddle rear end sensor assembly 674
Remove the saddle rear end sensor assembly 675
Reinstall the saddle rear end sensor 681
Booklet maker and stapler/stacker with hole punch accessories 682
Remove the punch front cover 682
Punch lower front cover assembly 684
Remove the punch lower front cover assembly 684
Punch rear cover assembly 686
Remove the punch rear cover assembly 686
Punch controller PCA assembly 687
Remove the punch controller PCA assembly 687
Reinstall the punch controller PCA assembly 687
Punch waste tray 688
Punch inner cover assembly 689
Remove the punch inner cover assembly 689
Punch top cover 691
Remove the punch top 691
Punch hole assembly 694

Remove the punch hole assembly 694
Reinstall the punch hole assembly 699
Replace the punch hole assembly or the punch controller PCA assembly 702
Set the punch hole assembly type 702
Set the sensor adjustment values 704

2 Parts and diagrams 707
Order parts by authorized service providers 708
Order parts, accessories, and supplies 708
Related documentation and software 708
Supplies part numbers 708
Customer self-repair parts 709
Service replacement parts 711
Accessories 712
How to use the parts lists and diagrams 714
Assembly locations 715
Base product (no optional trays or accessories) 715
Stapler/stacker and booklet maker 720
Stapler/stacker external assembly locator 722
Booklet maker 728
Intermediate paper transportation unit (IPTU) 734
1x500-sheet feeder 738
3x500-sheet feeder 740
High-capacity input (HCI) feeder 742
Document feeder and scanner assemblies (M880) 748
Document feeder assemblies (M880) 750
Scanner assemblies (M880) 754
Covers 756
Right door assembly 760
Internal components 762
Internal components (1 of 6) 762
Internal components (2 of 6) 764
Internal components (3 of 6) 766
Internal components (4 of 6) 768
Internal components (5 of 6) 770
Internal components (6 of 6) 772
Intermediate paper transfer unit (IPTU) assemblies 774
1x500-sheet feeder with stand (M855 only) covers 776
1x500-sheet feeder with stand (M855 only) covers 776
1x500-sheet feeder with stand components 778
3x500-sheet feeder 780

3x500-sheet feeder covers 780
3x500-sheet feeder components 782
High-capacity input (HCI) feeder 784
Stapler stacker/booklet maker 790
Stapler/stacker covers 790
Booklet maker covers 792
Finisher main body (1 of 3) 794
Finisher main body (2 of 3) 796
Finisher main body (3 of 3) 798
Stapler/stacker main body 800
Booklet maker main body 802
Booklet maker saddle assembly 804
Alphabetical parts list 808
Numerical parts list 825

Index 843

List of tables

Table 1-1 Supported paper sizes for the input trays and duplexer 5
Table 1-2 Supported paper types 8
Table 1-3 Supported paper sizes for the finishing accessories 9
Table 1-4 Supported paper types for the finishing accessories 12
Table 1-5 M855 base product covers and doors (1 of 2) 84
Table 1-6 M855 base product covers and doors (2 of 2) 85
Table 1-7 M880 base product covers and doors (1 of 2) 86
Table 1-8 M880 base product covers and doors (2 of 2) 87
Table 1-9 Base product main assemblies (1 of 2) 152
Table 1-10 Base product main assemblies (2 of 2) 153
Table 1-11 External covers and doors 357
Table 1-12 Main assemblies (1 of 2) 358
Table 1-13 Main assemblies (2 of 2) 359
Table 1-14 Printed circuit assembly (PCA) 359
Table 1-15 External covers and doors (1x500-sheet feeder) 383
Table 1-16 External covers and doors (3x500-sheet feeder) 384
Table 1-17 Main assemblies (1x500-sheet feeder) 385
Table 1-18 Main assemblies (3x500-sheet feeder) 385
Table 1-19 Printed circuit assembly (PCA) 386
Table 1-20 IPTU covers (1 of 2) 434
Table 1-21 IPTU covers (2 of 2) 435
Table 1-22 IPTU main assemblies 435
Table 1-23 IPTU PCA 436
Table 1-24 Stapler stacker covers and doors 460
Table 1-25 Stapler stacker with hole punch covers and doors 461
Table 1-26 Booklet maker covers and doors 462
Table 1-27 Booklet maker with hole punch covers and doors 463
Table 1-28 DIPSW settings 509
Table 1-29 Do not change these DIPSW settings 510
Table 1-30 LED601 and LED602 blinking patterns 703
Table 1-31 LED601 and LED602 blinking patterns 705
Table 2-1 Order parts, accessories, and supplies 708

Table 2-2 Related documentation and software 708
Table 2-3 Supplies part numbers 708
Table 2-4 Customer self-repair parts 709
Table 2-5 Service replacement parts 711
Table 2-6 M855 base product assembly locations (1 of 2) 715
Table 2-7 M855 base product assembly locations (2 of 2) 716
Table 2-8 M880 base product assembly locations (1 of 2) 718
Table 2-9 M880 base product assembly locations (2 of 2) 719
Table 2-10 Stapler/stacker and booklet maker main assemblies 720
Table 2-11 Stapler/stacker and booklet maker PCA 721
Table 2-12 Stapler/stacker external assembly locator 722
Table 2-13 Stapler/stacker with hole puncher external assembly locator 723
Table 2-14 Staple stacker internal assembly locator 724
Table 2-15 Staple stacker with hole puncher internal assembly locator 725
Table 2-16 Staple stacker external assembly locator (door open) 726
Table 2-17 Staple stacker with hole puncher external assembly locator (door open) 727
Table 2-18 Booklet maker external assembly locator 728
Table 2-19 Booklet maker with hole puncher external assembly locator 729
Table 2-20 Booklet maker internal assembly locator 730
Table 2-21 Booklet maker with hole puncher internal assembly locator 731
Table 2-22 Booklet maker external assembly locator (door open) 732
Table 2-23 Booklet maker with hole puncher external assembly locator (door open) 733
Table 2-24 IPTU external assembly locator (1 of 3) 734
Table 2-25 IPTU external assembly locator (2 of 3) 734
Table 2-26 IPTU external assembly locator (3 of 3) 735
Table 2-27 IPTU internal assembly locator (1 of 2) 736
Table 2-28 IPTU internal assembly locator (2 of 2) 736
Table 2-29 IPTU PCA 737
Table 2-30 1x500-sheet feeder (1 of 2) 738
Table 2-31 1x500-sheet feeder (2 of 2) 739
Table 2-32 3x500-sheet feeder (1 of 2) 740
Table 2-33 3x500-sheet feeder (2 of 2) 741
Table 2-34 HCI feeder (1 of 6) 742
Table 2-35 HCI feeder (2 of 6) 743
Table 2-36 HCI feeder (3 of 6) 744
Table 2-37 HCI feeder (4 of 6) 745
Table 2-38 HCI feeder (5 of 6) 746
Table 2-39 HCI feeder (6 of 6) 746
Table 2-40 Document feeder and scanner assemblies (M880) 749
Table 2-41 Document feeder assemblies (M880, 1 of 2) 751
Table 2-42 Document feeder assemblies (M880, 2 of 2) 753

Table 2-43 Scanner assemblies (M880) 755
Table 2-44 Covers (M855) 757
Table 2-45 Covers (M880) 759
Table 2-46 Right door assembly 761
Table 2-47 Internal components (1 of 6) 763
Table 2-48 Internal components (2 of 6) 765
Table 2-49 Internal components (3 of 6) 767
Table 2-50 Internal components (4 of 6) 769
Table 2-51 Internal components (5 of 6) 771
Table 2-52 Internal components (6 of 6) 773
Table 2-53 Intermediate paper transfer unit (IPTU) assemblies 775
Table 2-54 1x500-sheet feeder with stand (M855 only) covers 777
Table 2-55 1x500-sheet feeder with stand components 779
Table 2-56 3x500-sheet feeder covers 781
Table 2-57 3x500-sheet feeder components 783
Table 2-58 HCI feeder covers 785
Table 2-59 HCI feeder internal components (1 of 2) 787
Table 2-60 HCI feeder internal components (2 of 2) 789
Table 2-61 Stapler/stacker covers 791
Table 2-62 Booklet maker covers 793
Table 2-63 Finisher main body (1 of 3) 795
Table 2-64 Finisher main body (2 of 3) 797
Table 2-65 Finisher main body (3 of 3) 799
Table 2-66 Stapler/stacker main body 801
Table 2-67 Booklet maker main body 803
Table 2-68 Booklet maker saddle assembly 807
Table 2-69 Alphabetical parts list 808
Table 2-70 Numerical parts list 825

List of figures

Figure 1-1 Screwdrivers 3
Figure 1-2 Remove the toner cartridge 14
Figure 1-3 Remove the image drum 15
Figure 1-4 Remove the secondary transfer roller (1 of 2) 16
Figure 1-5 Remove the secondary transfer roller (2 of 2) 16
Figure 1-6 Reinstall the secondary transfer roller 17
Figure 1-7 Remove Tray 2, 1x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 4, and 3x500 Tray 5 18
Figure 1-8 Remove the ITB (1 of 4) 19
Figure 1-9 Remove the ITB (2 of 4) 19
Figure 1-10 Remove the ITB (3 of 4) 20
Figure 1-11 Remove the ITB (4 of 4) 20
Figure 1-12 Remove the fuser (1 of 3) 21
Figure 1-13 Remove the fuser (2 of 3) 21
Figure 1-14 Remove the fuser (3 of 3) 21
Figure 1-15 Remove the switch back tray 22
Figure 1-16 Remove the formatter (1 of 2) 23
Figure 1-17 Remove the formatter (2 of 2) 23
Figure 1-18 Remove the HDD (1 of 2) 26
Figure 1-19 Remove the HDD (2 of 2) 26
Figure 1-20 Remove the SSM (1 of 2) 28
Figure 1-21 Remove the SSM (2 of 2) 28
Figure 1-22 Remove the memory DIMM (1 of 2) 32
Figure 1-23 Remove the memory DIMM (2 of 2) 32
Figure 1-24 Reinstall the memory DIMM 33
Figure 1-25 Reinstall the memory DIMM 33
Figure 1-26 Reinstall the memory DIMM 34
Figure 1-27 Remove the fax PCA (M880; 1 of 2) 35
Figure 1-28 Remove the fax PCA (M880; 2 of 2) 35
Figure 1-29 Remove the document feeder mylar strip (M880; 1 of 4) 36
Figure 1-30 Remove the document feeder mylar strip (M880; 2 of 4) 36
Figure 1-31 Remove the document feeder mylar strip (M880; 3 of 4) 37
Figure 1-32 Remove the document feeder mylar strip (M880; 4 of 4) 37

Figure 1-33 Install a replacement document feeder mylar strip (M880; 1 of 2) 38
Figure 1-34 Install a replacement document feeder mylar strip (M880; 2 of 2) 38
Figure 1-35 Remove the document feeder white backing (M880; 1 of 3) 39
Figure 1-36 Remove the document feeder white backing (M880; 2 of 3) 39
Figure 1-37 Remove the document feeder white backing (M880; 3 of 3) 40
Figure 1-38 Install a replacement document feeder white backing (M880; 1 of 6) 40
Figure 1-39 Install a replacement document feeder white backing (M880; 2 of 6) 41
Figure 1-40 Install a replacement document feeder white backing (M880; 3 of 6) 41
Figure 1-41 Install a replacement document feeder white backing (M880; 4 of 6) 42
Figure 1-42 Install a replacement document feeder white backing (M880; 5 of 6) 42
Figure 1-43 Install a replacement document feeder white backing (M880; 6 of 6) 43
Figure 1-44 Remove the background selector (M880; 1 of 4) 44
Figure 1-45 Remove the background selector (M880; 2 of 4) 44
Figure 1-46 Remove the background selector (M880; 3 of 4) 45
Figure 1-47 Remove the background selector (M880; 4 of 4) 45
Figure 1-48 Reinstall the background selector (M880) 46
Figure 1-49 Remove the control panel assembly (M855; 1 of 10) 47
Figure 1-50 Remove the control panel assembly (M855; 2 of 10) 47
Figure 1-51 Remove the control panel assembly (M855; 3 of 10) 48
Figure 1-52 Remove the control panel assembly (M855; 4 of 10) 48
Figure 1-53 Remove the control panel assembly (M855; 5 of 10) 49
Figure 1-54 Remove the control panel assembly (M855; 6 of 10) 49
Figure 1-55 Remove the control panel assembly (M855; 7 of 10) 50
Figure 1-56 Remove the control panel assembly (M855; 8 of 10) 50
Figure 1-57 Remove the control panel assembly (M855; 9 of 10) 51
Figure 1-58 Remove the control panel assembly (M855; 10 of 10) 51
Figure 1-59 Reinstall the control panel (M855) 52
Figure 1-60 Remove the control panel assembly (M880; 1 of 8) 53
Figure 1-61 Remove the control panel assembly (M880; 2 of 8) 53
Figure 1-62 Remove the control panel assembly (M880; 3 of 8) 54
Figure 1-63 Remove the control panel assembly (M880; 4 of 8) 54
Figure 1-64 Remove the control panel assembly (M880; 5 of 8) 55
Figure 1-65 Remove the control panel assembly (M880; 6 of 8) 55
Figure 1-66 Remove the control panel assembly (M880; 7 of 8) 56
Figure 1-67 Remove the control panel assembly (M880; 8 of 8) 56
Figure 1-68 Reinstall the control panel assembly (M880; 1 of 3) 57
Figure 1-69 Reinstall the control panel assembly (M880; 2 of 3) 57
Figure 1-70 Reinstall the control panel assembly (M880; 3 of 3) 58
Figure 1-71 Remove the keyboard assembly (M880; 1 of 7) 59
Figure 1-72 Remove the keyboard assembly (M880; 2 of 7) 60
Figure 1-73 Remove the keyboard assembly (M880; 3 of 7) 60

Figure 1-74 Remove the keyboard assembly (M880; 4 of 7) 61
Figure 1-75 Remove the keyboard assembly (M880; 5 of 7) 61
Figure 1-76 Remove the keyboard assembly (M880; 6 of 7) 62
Figure 1-77 Remove the keyboard assembly (M880; 7 of 7) 62
Figure 1-78 Reinstall the keyboard assembly (M880; 1 of 7) 63
Figure 1-79 Reinstall the keyboard assembly (M880; 2 of 7) 63
Figure 1-80 Reinstall the keyboard assembly (M880; 3 of 7) 64
Figure 1-81 Reinstall the keyboard assembly (M880; 4 of 7) 64
Figure 1-82 Reinstall the keyboard assembly (M880; 5 of 7) 65
Figure 1-83 Reinstall the keyboard assembly (M880; 6 of 7) 65
Figure 1-84 Reinstall the keyboard assembly (M880; 7 of 7) 66
Figure 1-85 Remove the document-feeder roller (M880; 1 of 3) 68
Figure 1-86 Remove the document-feeder roller (M880; 2 of 3) 68
Figure 1-87 Remove the document-feeder roller (M880; 3 of 3) 69
Figure 1-88 Reinstall the document-feeder roller (M880) 69
Figure 1-89 Remove the document-feeder separation pad (M880; 1 of 4) 70
Figure 1-90 Remove the document-feeder separation pad (M880; 2 of 4) 70
Figure 1-91 Remove the document-feeder separation pad (M880; 3 of 4) 71
Figure 1-92 Remove the document-feeder separation pad (M880; 4 of 4) 71
Figure 1-93 Reinstall the document-feeder separation pad (M880; 1 of 5) 72
Figure 1-94 Reinstall the document-feeder separation pad (M880; 2 of 5) 72
Figure 1-95 Reinstall the document-feeder separation pad (M880; 3 of 5) 73
Figure 1-96 Reinstall the document-feeder separation pad (M880; 4 of 5) 73
Figure 1-97 Reinstall the document-feeder separation pad (M880; 5 of 5) 74
Figure 1-98 Remove the Tray 1 rollers (1 of 5) 75
Figure 1-99 Remove the Tray 1 rollers (2 of 5) 75
Figure 1-100 Remove the Tray 1 rollers (3 of 5) 76
Figure 1-101 Remove the Tray 1 rollers (4 of 5) 76
Figure 1-102 Remove the Tray 1 rollers (5 of 5) 76
Figure 1-103 Reinstall the Tray 1 rollers 77
Figure 1-104 Remove the Tray 2, 1x500, and 3x500 rollers (1 of 2) 78
Figure 1-105 Remove the Tray 2, 1x500, and 3x500 rollers (2 of 2) 79
Figure 1-106 Reinstall the Tray 2, 1x500, and 3x500 rollers 79
Figure 1-107 Remove the HCI rollers (1 of 2) 80
Figure 1-108 Remove the HCI rollers (2 of 2) 81
Figure 1-109 Reinstall the HCI rollers 81
Figure 1-110 M855 base product covers and doors (1 of 2) 84
Figure 1-111 M855 base product covers and doors (2 of 2) 85
Figure 1-112 M880 base product covers and doors (1 of 2) 86
Figure 1-113 M880 base product covers and doors (2 of 2) 87
Figure 1-114 Remove the scanner back cover (M880; 1 of 2) 88

Figure 1-115 Remove the scanner back cover (M880; 2 of 2) 88
Figure 1-116 Remove the scanner left cover (M880; 1 of 2) 89
Figure 1-117 Remove the scanner left cover (M880; 2 of 2) 89
Figure 1-118 Remove the scanner right cover (M880; 1 of 2) 90
Figure 1-119 Remove the scanner right cover (M880; 2 of 2) 90
Figure 1-120 Remove the scanner front cover (M880; 1 of 8) 91
Figure 1-121 Remove the scanner front cover (M880; 2 of 8) 92
Figure 1-122 Remove the scanner front cover (M880; 3 of 8) 92
Figure 1-123 Remove the scanner front cover (M880; 4 of 8) 93
Figure 1-124 Remove the scanner front cover (M880; 5 of 8) 93
Figure 1-125 Remove the scanner front cover (M880; 6 of 8) 94
Figure 1-126 Remove the scanner front cover (M880; 7 of 8) 94
Figure 1-127 Remove the scanner front cover (M880; 8 of 8) 95
Figure 1-128 Remove the right upper rear cover (M855) 96
Figure 1-129 Remove the hardware integration pocket (HIP) cover (M855) 97
Figure 1-130 Remove the HIP cover (M880; 1 of 3) 98
Figure 1-131 Remove the HIP cover (M880; 2 of 3) 98
Figure 1-132 Remove the HIP cover (M880; 3 of 3) 99
Figure 1-133 Reinstall the HIP cover (M880; 1 of 2) 100
Figure 1-134 Reinstall the HIP cover (M880; 2 of 2) 100
Figure 1-135 Remove the face-down bin (1 of 2) 101
Figure 1-136 Remove the face-down bin (2 of 2) 101
Figure 1-137 Reinstall the face-down bin (1 of 2) 102
Figure 1-138 Remove the face-down bin (2 of 2) 102
Figure 1-139 Correct installation of face-down bin. 103
Figure 1-140 Incorrect installation of face-down bin. 103
Figure 1-141 Remove the left rear cover (1 of 2) 104
Figure 1-142 Remove the left rear cover (2 of 2) 104
Figure 1-143 Remove the switch back cover (1 of 2) 105
Figure 1-144 Remove the switch back cover (2 of 2) 105
Figure 1-145 Remove the lower right cover (1 of 2) 106
Figure 1-146 Remove the lower right cover (2 of 2) 106
Figure 1-147 Remove the rear upper rear cover (M880; 1 of 2) 107
Figure 1-148 Remove the rear upper rear cover (M880; 2 of 2) 107
Figure 1-149 Remove the right upper rear cover (M880; 1 of 2) 108
Figure 1-150 Remove the right upper rear cover (M880; 2 of 2) 108
Figure 1-151 Remove the rear upper MFP cover (M880; 1 of 2) 109
Figure 1-152 Remove the rear upper MFP cover (M880; 2 of 2) 109
Figure 1-153 Reinstall the rear upper MFP cover (M880) 110
Figure 1-154 Remove the left upper rear cover and rear upper B cover (M880; 1 of 3) 111
Figure 1-155 Remove the left upper rear cover and rear upper B cover (M880; 2 of 3) 112

Figure 1-156 Remove the left upper rear cover and rear upper B cover (M880; 3 of 3) 112
Figure 1-157 Remove the rear upper front cover (M880; 1 of 2) 113
Figure 1-158 Remove the rear upper front cover (M880; 2 of 2) 114
Figure 1-159 Remove the front top cover (1 of 2) 115
Figure 1-160 Remove the front top cover (2 of 2) 115
Figure 1-161 Remove the rear top cover (M855; 1 of 3) 116
Figure 1-162 Remove the rear top cover (M855; 2 of 3) 117
Figure 1-163 Remove the rear top cover (M855; 3 of 3) 117
Figure 1-164 Remove the left cover (1 of 2) 118
Figure 1-165 Remove the left cover (2 of 2) 119
Figure 1-166 Remove the right upper front cover (M855; 1 of 2) 120
Figure 1-167 Remove the right upper front cover (M855; 2 of 2) 121
Figure 1-168 Remove the right upper front cover (M880; 1 of 2) 122
Figure 1-169 Remove the right upper front cover (M880; 2 of 2) 123
Figure 1-170 Remove the right upper cover (M855; 1 of 9) 124
Figure 1-171 Remove the right upper cover (M855; 2 of 9) 125
Figure 1-172 Remove the right upper cover (M855; 3 of 9) 125
Figure 1-173 Remove the right upper cover (M855; 4 of 9) 126
Figure 1-174 Remove the right upper cover (M855; 5 of 9) 126
Figure 1-175 Remove the right upper cover (M855; 6 of 9) 127
Figure 1-176 Remove the right upper cover (M855; 7 of 9) 127
Figure 1-177 Remove the right upper cover (M855; 8 of 9) 128
Figure 1-178 Remove the right upper cover (M855; 9 of 9) 128
Figure 1-179 Remove the right door assembly (1 of 7) 129
Figure 1-180 Remove the right door assembly (2 of 7) 129
Figure 1-181 Remove the right door assembly (3 of 7) 130
Figure 1-182 Remove the right door assembly (4 of 7) 130
Figure 1-183 Remove the right door assembly (5 of 7) 131
Figure 1-184 Remove the right door assembly (6 of 7) 131
Figure 1-185 Remove the right door assembly (7 of 7) 132
Figure 1-186 Reinstall the right door assembly 132
Figure 1-187 Remove the left front cover (1 of 5) 133
Figure 1-188 Remove the left front cover (2 of 5) 134
Figure 1-189 Remove the left front cover (3 of 5) 134
Figure 1-190 Remove the left front cover (4 of 5) 135
Figure 1-191 Remove the left front cover (5 of 5) 135
Figure 1-192 Install a replacement left front cover 136
Figure 1-193 Remove the front door (1 of 9) 137
Figure 1-194 Remove the front door (2 of 9) 137
Figure 1-195 Remove the front door (3 of 9) 138
Figure 1-196 Remove the front door (4 of 9) 138

Figure 1-197 Remove the front door (5 of 9) 139
Figure 1-198 Remove the front door (6 of 9) 139
Figure 1-199 Remove the front door (7 of 9) 140
Figure 1-200 Remove the front door (8 of 9) 140
Figure 1-201 Remove the front door (9 of 9) 141
Figure 1-202 Reinstall the front door (1 of 2) 141
Figure 1-203 Reinstall the front door (2 of 2) 142
Figure 1-204 Remove the rear cover (1 of 3) 143
Figure 1-205 Remove the rear cover (2 of 3) 143
Figure 1-206 Remove the rear cover (3 of 3) 144
Figure 1-207 Install a replacement rear cover (1 of 2) 144
Figure 1-208 Install a replacement rear cover (2 of 2) 145
Figure 1-209 Remove the right rear cover (1 of 2) 146
Figure 1-210 Remove the right rear cover (2 of 2) 146
Figure 1-211 Remove the front inner cover (1 of 2) 147
Figure 1-212 Remove the front inner cover (2 of 2) 148
Figure 1-213 Reinstall the front inner cover 148
Figure 1-214 Base product main assemblies (1 of 2) 152
Figure 1-215 Base product main assemblies (2 of 2) 153
Figure 1-216 Remove the document feeder assembly (M880; 1 of 9) 154
Figure 1-217 Remove the document feeder assembly (M880; 2 of 9) 155
Figure 1-218 Remove the document feeder assembly (M880; 3 of 9) 155
Figure 1-219 Remove the document feeder assembly (M880; 4 of 9) 156
Figure 1-220 Remove the document feeder assembly (M880; 5 of 9) 156
Figure 1-221 Remove the document feeder assembly (M880; 6 of 9) 157
Figure 1-222 Remove the document feeder assembly (M880; 7 of 9) 157
Figure 1-223 Remove the document feeder assembly (M880; 8 of 9) 158
Figure 1-224 Remove the document feeder assembly (M880; 9 of 9) 158
Figure 1-225 Remove the SCB (M880; 1 of 4) 160
Figure 1-226 Remove the SCB (M880; 2 of 4) 160
Figure 1-227 Remove the SCB (M880; 3 of 4) 161
Figure 1-228 Remove the SCB (M880; 4 of 4) 161
Figure 1-229 Remove the scanner assembly (M880; 1 of 7) 162
Figure 1-230 Remove the scanner assembly (M880; 2 of 7) 163
Figure 1-231 Remove the scanner assembly (M880; 3 of 7) 163
Figure 1-232 Remove the scanner assembly (M880; 4 of 7) 164
Figure 1-233 Remove the scanner assembly (M880; 5 of 7) 164
Figure 1-234 Remove the scanner assembly (M880; 6 of 7) 165
Figure 1-235 Remove the scanner assembly (M880; 7 of 7) 165
Figure 1-236 Remove the interlock switch assembly (1 of 2) 167
Figure 1-237 Remove the interlock switch assembly (2 of 2) 168

Figure 1-238 Remove the front-door open detection switch (1 of 4) 169
Figure 1-239 Remove the front-door open detection switch (2 of 4) 170
Figure 1-240 Remove the front-door open detection switch (3 of 4) 170
Figure 1-241 Remove the front-door open detection switch (4 of 4) 171
Figure 1-242 Reinstall the front-door-open detection switch (1 of 3) 171
Figure 1-243 Reinstall the front-door-open detection switch (2 of 3) 172
Figure 1-244 Reinstall the front-door-open detection switch (3 of 3) 172
Figure 1-245 Remove the main switch assembly (1 of 3) 173
Figure 1-246 Remove the main switch assembly (2 of 3) 174
Figure 1-247 Remove the main switch assembly (3 of 3) 174
Figure 1-248 Remove the secondary transfer assembly (1 of 10) 175
Figure 1-249 Remove the secondary transfer assembly (2 of 10) 176
Figure 1-250 Remove the secondary transfer assembly (3 of 10) 176
Figure 1-251 Remove the secondary transfer assembly (4 of 10) 177
Figure 1-252 Remove the secondary transfer assembly (5 of 10) 177
Figure 1-253 Remove the secondary transfer assembly (6 of 10) 178
Figure 1-254 Remove the secondary transfer assembly (7 of 10) 178
Figure 1-255 Remove the secondary transfer assembly (8 of 10) 179
Figure 1-256 Remove the secondary transfer assembly (9 of 10) 180
Figure 1-257 Remove the secondary transfer assembly (10 of 10) 180
Figure 1-258 Reinstall the secondary transfer assembly (1 of 3) 181
Figure 1-259 Reinstall the secondary transfer assembly (2 of 3) 181
Figure 1-260 Reinstall the secondary transfer assembly (3 of 3) 182
Figure 1-261 Remove the multipurpose tray (Tray 1) drive assembly (1 of 13) 183
Figure 1-262 Remove the multipurpose tray (Tray 1) drive assembly (2 of 13) 184
Figure 1-263 Remove the multipurpose tray (Tray 1) drive assembly (3 of 13) 184
Figure 1-264 Remove the multipurpose tray (Tray 1) drive assembly (4 of 13) 185
Figure 1-265 Remove the multipurpose tray (Tray 1) drive assembly (5 of 13) 185
Figure 1-266 Remove the multipurpose tray (Tray 1) drive assembly (6 of 13) 186
Figure 1-267 Remove the multipurpose tray (Tray 1) drive assembly (7 of 13) 186
Figure 1-268 Remove the multipurpose tray (Tray 1) drive assembly (8 of 13) 187
Figure 1-269 Remove the multipurpose tray (Tray 1) drive assembly (9 of 13) 187
Figure 1-270 Remove the multipurpose tray (Tray 1) drive assembly (10 of 13) 188
Figure 1-271 Remove the multipurpose tray (Tray 1) drive assembly (11 of 13) 188
Figure 1-272 Remove the multipurpose tray (Tray 1) drive assembly (12 of 13) 189
Figure 1-273 Remove the multipurpose tray (Tray 1) drive assembly (13 of 13) 189
Figure 1-274 Remove the multipurpose tray guide assembly 190
Figure 1-275 Remove the Tray 2 pickup assembly 191
Figure 1-276 Remove the fuser home position sensor (1 of 3) 192
Figure 1-277 Remove the fuser home position sensor (2 of 3) 192
Figure 1-278 Remove the fuser home position sensor (3 of 3) 193

Figure 1-279 Reinstall the fuser home position sensor 193
Figure 1-280 Remove the shutter gear holder assembly (1 of 5) 194
Figure 1-281 Remove the shutter gear holder assembly (2 of 5) 194
Figure 1-282 Remove the shutter gear holder assembly (3 of 5) 195
Figure 1-283 Remove the shutter gear holder assembly (4 of 5) 195
Figure 1-284 Remove the shutter gear holder assembly (5 of 5) 196
Figure 1-285 Reinstall the shutter gear holder assembly (1 of 6) 196
Figure 1-286 Reinstall the shutter gear holder assembly (2 of 6) 197
Figure 1-287 Reinstall the shutter gear holder assembly (3 of 6) 197
Figure 1-288 Reinstall the shutter gear holder assembly (4 of 6) 198
Figure 1-289 Reinstall the shutter gear holder assembly (5 of 6) 198
Figure 1-290 Reinstall the shutter gear holder assembly (6 of 6) 199
Figure 1-291 Remove the fuser-edge area cooling fan FM10 (front; 1 of 3) 200
Figure 1-292 Remove the fuser-edge area cooling fan FM10 (front; 2 of 3) 200
Figure 1-293 Remove the fuser-edge area cooling fan FM10 (front; 3 of 3) 201
Figure 1-294 Reinstall the fuser-edge area cooling fan FM10 (front; 1 of 3) 202
Figure 1-295 Reinstall the fuser-edge area cooling fan FM10 (front; 2 of 3) 202
Figure 1-296 Reinstall the fuser-edge area cooling fan FM10 (front; 3 of 3) 203
Figure 1-297 Remove the fuser-edge area cooling fan FM9 (rear; 1 of 3) 204
Figure 1-298 Remove the Remove the fuser-edge area cooling fan FM9 (rear; 2 of 3) 204
Figure 1-299 Remove the fuser-edge area cooling fan FM9 (rear; 3 of 3) 205
Figure 1-300 Reinstall the fuser-edge area cooling fan FM9 (rear; 1 of 3) 205
Figure 1-301 Reinstall the fuser-edge area cooling fan FM9 (rear; 2 of 3) 206
Figure 1-302 Reinstall the fuser-edge area cooling fan FM9 (rear; 3 of 3) 206
Figure 1-303 Remove the fuser fan FM2 (1 of 5) 207
Figure 1-304 Remove the fuser fan FM2 (2 of 5) 207
Figure 1-305 Remove the fuser fan FM2 (3 of 5) 208
Figure 1-306 Remove the fuser fan FM2 (4 of 5) 208
Figure 1-307 Remove the fuser fan FM2 (5 of 5) 209
Figure 1-308 Reinstall the fuser fan FM2 (1 of 3) 209
Figure 1-309 Reinstall the fuser fan FM2 (2 of 3) 210
Figure 1-310 Reinstall the fuser fan FM2 (3 of 3) 210
Figure 1-311 Remove the fuser fan duct (1 of 3) 211
Figure 1-312 Remove the fuser fan duct (2 of 3) 212
Figure 1-313 Remove the fuser fan duct (3 of 3) 212
Figure 1-314 Reinstall the fuser fan duct 213
Figure 1-315 Remove the cartridge fan FM3 (yellow and magenta; 1 of 5) 214
Figure 1-316 Remove the cartridge fan FM3 (yellow and magenta; 2 of 5) 214
Figure 1-317 Remove the cartridge fan FM3 (yellow and magenta; 3 of 5) 215
Figure 1-318 Remove the cartridge fan FM3 (yellow and magenta; 4 of 5) 215
Figure 1-319 Remove the cartridge fan FM3 (yellow and magenta; 5 of 5) 216

Figure 1-320 Reinstall the cartridge fan FM3 (yellow and magenta; 1 of 3) 216
Figure 1-321 Reinstall the cartridge fan FM3 (yellow and magenta; 2 of 3) 217
Figure 1-322 Reinstall the cartridge fan FM3 (yellow and magenta; 3 of 3) 217
Figure 1-323 Remove the cartridge fan FM4 (cyan and black; 1 of 5) 218
Figure 1-324 Remove the cartridge fan FM4 (cyan and black; 2 of 5) 218
Figure 1-325 Remove the cartridge fan FM4 (cyan and black; 3 of 5) 219
Figure 1-326 Remove the cartridge fan FM4 (cyan and black; 4 of 5) 219
Figure 1-327 Remove the cartridge fan FM4 (cyan and black; 5 of 5) 220
Figure 1-328 Reinstall the cartridge fan FM4 (cyan and black; 1 of 2) 220
Figure 1-329 Reinstall the cartridge fan FM4 (cyan and black; 2 of 3) 221
Figure 1-330 Reinstall the cartridge fan FM4 (cyan and black; 3 of 3) 221
Figure 1-331 Remove the laser/scanner fan FM1 (1 of 4) 222
Figure 1-332 Remove the laser/scanner fan FM1 (2 of 4) 222
Figure 1-333 Remove the laser/scanner fan FM1 (3 of 4) 223
Figure 1-334 Remove the laser/scanner fan FM1 (4 of 4) 223
Figure 1-335 Reinstall the laser/scanner fan FM1 (1 of 3) 224
Figure 1-336 Reinstall the laser/scanner fan FM1 (2 of 3) 224
Figure 1-337 Reinstall the laser/scanner fan FM1 (3 of 3) 225
Figure 1-338 Remove the delivery fan FM8 (1 of 3) 226
Figure 1-339 Remove the delivery fan FM8 (2 of 3) 226
Figure 1-340 Remove the delivery fan FM8 (3 of 3) 227
Figure 1-341 Remove the cartridge front area cooling fan FM7 (1 of 2) 228
Figure 1-342 Remove the cartridge front area cooling fan FM7 (2 of 2) 229
Figure 1-343 Reinstall the cartridge front area cooling fan FM7 229
Figure 1-344 Remove the memory tag PCA (1 of 3) 230
Figure 1-345 Remove the memory tag PCA (2 of 3) 231
Figure 1-346 Remove the memory tag PCA (3 of 3) 231
Figure 1-347 Reinstall the memory tag PCA 232
Figure 1-348 Remove the image-drum motor (1 of 2) 233
Figure 1-349 Remove the image-drum motor (2 of 2) 234
Figure 1-350 Remove the fuser power supply (1 of 2) 235
Figure 1-351 Remove the fuser power supply (2 of 2) 236
Figure 1-352 Reinstall the fuser power supply (1 of 2) 236
Figure 1-353 Reinstall the fuser power supply (2 of 2) 237
Figure 1-354 Remove the primary transfer-roller disengagement motor (1 of 2) 238
Figure 1-355 Remove the primary transfer-roller disengagement motor (2 of 2) 239
Figure 1-356 Remove the ITB alienation drive assembly (1 of 2) 240
Figure 1-357 Remove the ITB alienation drive assembly (2 of 2) 241
Figure 1-358 Remove the fuser motor (1 of 2) 242
Figure 1-359 Remove the fuser motor (2 of 2) 242
Figure 1-360 Remove the ITB motor (1 of 2) 243

Figure 1-361 Remove the ITB motor (2 of 2) 243
Figure 1-362 Remove the toner-cartridge feed motor (black; 1 of 2) 244
Figure 1-363 Remove the toner-cartridge feed motor (black; 2 of 2) 244
Figure 1-364 Remove the toner-cartridge feed motor (yellow, magenta, and cyan; 1 of 2) 245
Figure 1-365 Remove the toner-cartridge feed motor (yellow, magenta, and cyan; 2 of 2) 246
Figure 1-366 Remove the environmental sensor 247
Figure 1-367 Remove the interconnect PCA (M855; 1 of 4) 248
Figure 1-368 Remove the interconnect PCA (M855; 2 of 4) 249
Figure 1-369 Remove the interconnect PCA (M855; 3 of 4) 249
Figure 1-370 Remove the interconnect PCA (M855; 4 of 4) 250
Figure 1-371 Reinstall the interconnect PCA (M855) 251
Figure 1-372 Remove the interconnect PCA (M880; 1 of 4) 252
Figure 1-373 Remove the interconnect PCA (M880; 2 of 4) 253
Figure 1-374 Remove the interconnect PCA (M880; 3 of 4) 253
Figure 1-375 Remove the interconnect PCA (M880; 4 of 4) 254
Figure 1-376 Reinstall the interconnect PCA (M880) 254
Figure 1-377 Remove the formatter case (1 of 2) 255
Figure 1-378 Remove the formatter case (2 of 2) 256
Figure 1-379 Reinstall the formatter case 256
Figure 1-380 Remove the formatter, formatter case, and ICB (1 of 4) 257
Figure 1-381 Remove the formatter, formatter case, and ICB (2 of 4) 258
Figure 1-382 Remove the formatter, formatter case, and ICB (3 of 4) 258
Figure 1-383 Remove the formatter, formatter case, and ICB (4 of 4) 259
Figure 1-384 Reinstall the formatter, formatter case, and ICB 259
Figure 1-385 Remove the HVPS B (1 of 2) 260
Figure 1-386 Remove the HVPS B (2 of 2) 261
Figure 1-387 Reinstall the HVPS B (1 of 2) 261
Figure 1-388 Reinstall the HVPS B (2 of 2) 262
Figure 1-389 Remove the DC controller PCA 263
Figure 1-390 Remove the CPR sensor assembly (1 of 5) 264
Figure 1-391 Remove the CPR sensor assembly (2 of 5) 265
Figure 1-392 Remove the CPR sensor assembly (3 of 5) 265
Figure 1-393 Remove the CPR sensor assembly (4 of 5) 266
Figure 1-394 Remove the CPR sensor assembly (5 of 5) 266
Figure 1-395 Reinstall the CPR sensor assembly (1 of 4) 267
Figure 1-396 Reinstall the CPR sensor assembly (2 of 4) 267
Figure 1-397 Reinstall the CPR sensor assembly (3 of 4) 268
Figure 1-398 Reinstall the CPR sensor assembly (4 of 4) 268
Figure 1-399 Remove the LVPS (1 of 5) 269
Figure 1-400 Remove the LVPS (2 of 5) 269
Figure 1-401 Remove the LVPS (3 of 5) 270

Figure 1-402 Remove the LVPS (4 of 5) 270
Figure 1-403 Remove the LVPS (5 of 5) 271
Figure 1-404 Remove the HVPS A (first transfer) (1 of 3 272
Figure 1-405 Remove the HVPS A (first transfer) (2 of 3) 273
Figure 1-406 Remove the HVPS A (first transfer) (3 of 3) 273
Figure 1-407 Reinstall the HVPS A (first transfer) (1 of 3) 274
Figure 1-408 Reinstall the HVPS A (first transfer) (2 of 3) 274
Figure 1-409 Reinstall the HVPS A (first transfer) (3 of 3) 275
Figure 1-410 Remove the lifter-drive assembly (1 of 3) 276
Figure 1-411 Remove the lifter-drive assembly (2 of 3) 277
Figure 1-412 Remove the lifter-drive assembly (3 of 3) 277
Figure 1-413 Unlocked position of the lifter-driver assembly (correct) 278
Figure 1-414 Locked position of the lifter-driver assembly (incorrect) 278
Figure 1-415 Unlocking the lifter-drive assembly 279
Figure 1-416 Remove the toner-cartridge drive assembly (yellow and magenta) 280
Figure 1-417 Reinstall the toner-cartridge drive assembly (yellow and magenta) 281
Figure 1-418 Remove the toner-cartridge drive assembly (cyan and black) 283
Figure 1-419 Reinstall the toner-cartridge drive assembly (cyan and black) 283
Figure 1-420 Remove the cartridge interface PCA (cyan and black) 285
Figure 1-421 Remove the cartridge interface PCA (yellow and magenta) 287
Figure 1-422 Remove the main drive assembly (1 of 2) 289
Figure 1-423 Remove the main drive assembly (2 of 2) 289
Figure 1-424 Reinstall the main drive assembly 290
Figure 1-425 Replace the toner-cartridge drive assembly or the main drive assembly (1 of 8) 291
Figure 1-426 Replace the toner-cartridge drive assembly or the main drive assembly (2 of 8) 292
Figure 1-427 Replace the toner-cartridge drive assembly or the main drive assembly (3 of 8) 292
Figure 1-428 Replace the toner-cartridge drive assembly or the main drive assembly (4 of 8) 293
Figure 1-429 Replace the toner-cartridge drive assembly or the main drive assembly (5 of 8) 293
Figure 1-430 Correct position of toner-cartridge drive assembly (6 of 8) 294
Figure 1-431 Incorrect position of toner-cartridge drive assembly (7 of 8) 294
Figure 1-432 Replace the toner-cartridge drive assembly or the main drive assembly (8 of 8) 295
Figure 1-433 Reinstall the toner-cartridge drive assembly or the main drive assembly (1 of 4) 296
Figure 1-434 Reinstall the toner-cartridge drive assembly or the main drive assembly (2 of 4) 296
Figure 1-435 Correct position of toner-cartridge drive assembly (3 of 4) 297
Figure 1-436 Incorrect position of toner-cartridge drive assembly (4 of 4) 297
Figure 1-437 Remove the fuser drive assembly (1 of 10) 298
Figure 1-438 Remove the fuser drive assembly (2 of 10) 299
Figure 1-439 Remove the fuser drive assembly (3 of 10) 299
Figure 1-440 Remove the fuser drive assembly (4 of 10) 300
Figure 1-441 Remove the fuser drive assembly (5 of 10) 300
Figure 1-442 Remove the fuser drive assembly (6 of 10) 301

Figure 1-443 Remove the fuser drive assembly (7 of 10) 301
Figure 1-444 Remove the fuser drive assembly (8 of 10) 302
Figure 1-445 Remove the fuser drive assembly (9 of 10) 302
Figure 1-446 Remove the fuser drive assembly (10 of 10) 303
Figure 1-447 Reinstall the fuser drive assembly (1 of 4) 303
Figure 1-448 Reinstall the fuser drive assembly (2 of 4) 304
Figure 1-449 Reinstall the fuser drive assembly (3 of 4) 304
Figure 1-450 Reinstall the fuser drive assembly (4 of 4) 305
Figure 1-451 Remove the scanner cover 306
Figure 1-452 Remove the laser/scanner assembly (yellow and magenta; 1 of 6) 307
Figure 1-453 Remove the laser/scanner assembly (yellow and magenta; 2 of 6) 308
Figure 1-454 Remove the laser/scanner assembly (yellow and magenta; 3 of 6) 309
Figure 1-455 Remove the laser/scanner assembly (yellow and magenta; 4 of 6) 309
Figure 1-456 Remove the laser/scanner assembly (yellow and magenta; 5 of 6) 310
Figure 1-457 Remove the laser/scanner assembly (yellow and magenta; 6 of 6) 310
Figure 1-458 Reinstall the laser/scanner assembly (yellow and magenta; 1 of 2) 311
Figure 1-459 Reinstall the laser/scanner assembly (yellow and magenta; 2 of 2) 311
Figure 1-460 Remove the laser/scanner assembly (cyan and black; 1 of 8) 312
Figure 1-461 Remove the laser/scanner assembly (cyan and black; 2 of 8) 313
Figure 1-462 Remove the laser/scanner assembly (cyan and black; 3 of 8) 313
Figure 1-463 Remove the laser/scanner assembly (cyan and black; 4 of 8) 314
Figure 1-464 Remove the laser/scanner assembly (cyan and black; 5 of 8) 315
Figure 1-465 Remove the laser/scanner assembly (cyan and black; 6 of 8) 315
Figure 1-466 Remove the laser/scanner assembly (cyan and black; 7 of 8) 316
Figure 1-467 Remove the laser/scanner assembly (cyan and black; 8 of 8) 316
Figure 1-468 Reinstall the laser/scanner assembly (cyan and black; 1 of 3) 317
Figure 1-469 Reinstall the laser/scanner assembly (cyan and black; 2 of 3) 317
Figure 1-470 Reinstall the laser/scanner assembly (cyan and black; 3 of 3) 318
Figure 1-471 Remove the duplex reverse assembly (M855) 319
Figure 1-472 Remove the duplex reverse assembly (M880) 320
Figure 1-473 Remove the VOC fan (M855; 1 of 2) 321
Figure 1-474 Remove the VOC fan (M855; 2 of 2) 322
Figure 1-475 Remove the VOC fan (M880; 1 of 6) 324
Figure 1-476 Remove the VOC fan (M880; 2 of 6) 324
Figure 1-477 Remove the VOC fan (M880; 3 of 6) 325
Figure 1-478 Remove the VOC fan (M880; 4 of 6) 325
Figure 1-479 Remove the VOC fan (M880; 5 of 6) 326
Figure 1-480 Remove the VOC fan (M880; 6 of 6) 326
Figure 1-481 Remove the face-down delivery assembly (M855; 1 of 8) 327
Figure 1-482 Remove the face-down delivery assembly (M855; 2 of 8) 328
Figure 1-483 Remove the face-down delivery assembly (M855; 3 of 8) 328

Figure 1-484 Remove the face-down delivery assembly (M855; 4 of 8) 329
Figure 1-485 Remove the face-down delivery assembly (M855; 5 of 8) 329
Figure 1-486 Remove the face-down delivery assembly (M855; 6 of 8) 330
Figure 1-487 Remove the face-down delivery assembly (M855; 7 of 8) 330
Figure 1-488 Remove the face-down delivery assembly (M855; 8 of 8) 331
Figure 1-489 Remove the face-down delivery assembly (M880; 1 of 19) 333
Figure 1-490 Remove the face-down delivery assembly (M880; 2 of 19) 333
Figure 1-491 Remove the face-down delivery assembly (M880; 3 of 19) 334
Figure 1-492 Remove the face-down delivery assembly (M880; 4 of 19) 334
Figure 1-493 Remove the face-down delivery assembly (M880; 5 of 19) 335
Figure 1-494 Remove the face-down delivery assembly (M880; 6 of 19) 335
Figure 1-495 Remove the face-down delivery assembly (M880; 7 of 19) 336
Figure 1-496 Remove the face-down delivery assembly (M880; 8 of 19) 336
Figure 1-497 Remove the face-down delivery assembly (M880; 9 of 19) 337
Figure 1-498 Remove the face-down delivery assembly (M880; 10 of 19) 337
Figure 1-499 Remove the face-down delivery assembly (M880; 11 of 19) 338
Figure 1-500 Remove the face-down delivery assembly (M880; 12 of 19) 339
Figure 1-501 Remove the face-down delivery assembly (M880; 13 of 19) 339
Figure 1-502 Remove the face-down delivery assembly (M880; 14 of 19) 340
Figure 1-503 Remove the face-down delivery assembly (M880; 15 of 19) 340
Figure 1-504 Remove the face-down delivery assembly (M880; 16 of 19) 341
Figure 1-505 Remove the face-down delivery assembly (M880; 17 of 19) 341
Figure 1-506 Remove the face-down delivery assembly (M880; 18 of 19) 342
Figure 1-507 Remove the face-down delivery assembly (M880; 19 of 19) 342
Figure 1-508 Remove face-down cover 344
Figure 1-509 Remove the duplexing feed assembly (1 of 7) 345
Figure 1-510 Remove the duplexing feed assembly (2 of 7) 345
Figure 1-511 Remove the duplexing feed assembly (3 of 7) 346
Figure 1-512 Remove the duplexing feed assembly (4 of 7) 346
Figure 1-513 Remove the duplexing feed assembly (5 of 7) 347
Figure 1-514 Remove the duplexing feed assembly (6 of 7) 347
Figure 1-515 Remove the duplexing feed assembly (7 of 7) 348
Figure 1-516 Remove the multipurpose tray (Tray 1) pickup assembly (1 of 10) 350
Figure 1-517 Remove the multipurpose tray (Tray 1) pickup assembly (2 of 10) 350
Figure 1-518 Remove the multipurpose tray (Tray 1) pickup assembly (3 of 10) 351
Figure 1-519 Remove the multipurpose tray (Tray 1) pickup assembly (4 of 10) 351
Figure 1-520 Remove the multipurpose tray (Tray 1) pickup assembly (5 of 10) 352
Figure 1-521 Remove the multipurpose tray (Tray 1) pickup assembly (6 of 10) 352
Figure 1-522 Remove the multipurpose tray (Tray 1) pickup assembly (7 of 10) 353
Figure 1-523 Remove the multipurpose tray (Tray 1) pickup assembly (8 of 10) 353
Figure 1-524 Remove the multipurpose tray (Tray 1) pickup assembly (9 of 10) 354

Figure 1-525 Remove the multipurpose tray (Tray 1) pickup assembly (10 of 10) 354
Figure 1-526 Reinstall the multipurpose tray (Tray 1) pickup assembly 355
Figure 1-527 External covers and doors 357
Figure 1-528 Main assemblies (1 of 2) 358
Figure 1-529 Main assemblies (2 of 2) 359
Figure 1-530 Printed circuit assembly (PCA) 359
Figure 1-531 Remove the HCI right tray 360
Figure 1-532 Remove the HCI left tray 361
Figure 1-533 Remove the HCI rear cover 362
Figure 1-534 Remove the HCI right lower cover (1 of 2) 363
Figure 1-535 Remove the HCI right lower cover (2 of 2) 364
Figure 1-536 Remove the HCI right tray pickup motor 365
Figure 1-537 Remove the HCI right tray pickup drive (1 of 2) 366
Figure 1-538 Remove the HCI left tray pickup motor 367
Figure 1-539 Remove the HCI left tray pickup drive 368
Figure 1-540 Remove the HCI right tray lifter drive assembly 369
Figure 1-541 Remove the HCI left tray lifter drive assembly 370
Figure 1-542 Remove the HCI right tray media-level sensor assembly (1 of 2) 371
Figure 1-543 Remove the HCI right tray media-level sensor assembly (2 of 2) 371
Figure 1-544 Remove the HCI left tray media-level sensor assembly (1 of 2) 372
Figure 1-545 Remove the HCI left tray media-level sensor assembly (2 of 2) 372
Figure 1-546 Remove the HCI right tray automatic close assembly (1 of 2) 373
Figure 1-547 Remove the HCI right tray automatic close assembly (2 of 2) 373
Figure 1-548 Remove the HCI left tray automatic close assembly (1 of 2) 374
Figure 1-549 Remove the HCI left tray automatic close assembly (2 of 2) 374
Figure 1-550 Remove the HCI right tray pickup assembly (1 of 3) 375
Figure 1-551 Remove the HCI right tray pickup assembly (2 of 3) 375
Figure 1-552 Remove the HCI right tray pickup assembly (3 of 3) 376
Figure 1-553 Reinstall the HCI right tray pickup assembly 376
Figure 1-554 Remove the HCI left tray pickup assembly (1 of 2) 377
Figure 1-555 Remove the HCI left tray pickup assembly (2 of 2) 378
Figure 1-556 Reinstall the HCI left tray pickup assembly (1 of 2) 379
Figure 1-557 Reinstall the HCI left tray pickup assembly (2 of 2) 379
Figure 1-558 Remove the HCI merge assembly (1 of 2) 380
Figure 1-559 Remove the HCI merge assembly (2 of 2) 381
Figure 1-560 Reinstall the HCI merge assembly 381
Figure 1-561 Remove the HCI controller PCA 382
Figure 1-562 External covers and doors (1x500-sheet feeder) 383
Figure 1-563 External covers and doors (3x500-sheet feeder) 384
Figure 1-564 Main assemblies (1x500-sheet feeder) 385
Figure 1-565 Main assemblies (3x500-sheet feeder) 385

Figure 1-566 Printed circuit assembly (PCA) 386
Figure 1-567 Remove the 1x500 and 3x500 rear cover (1 of 2) 387
Figure 1-568 Remove the 1x500 and 3x500 rear cover (2 of 2) 387
Figure 1-569 Remove the 1x500 and 3x500 right front cover (1 of 2) 388
Figure 1-570 Remove the 1x500 and 3x500 right front cover (2 of 2) 389
Figure 1-571 Reinstall the 1x500 and 3x500 right front cover 389
Figure 1-572 Remove the 1x500 and 3x500 upper front face cover 390
Figure 1-573 Reinstall the 1x500 and 3x500 upper front face cover 391
Figure 1-574 Remove the 1x500 and 3x500 upper front cover (1 of 4) 392
Figure 1-575 Remove the 1x500 and 3x500 upper front cover (2 of 4) 393
Figure 1-576 Remove the 1x500 and 3x500 upper front cover (3 of 4) 393
Figure 1-577 Remove the 1x500 and 3x500 upper front cover (4 of 4) 394
Figure 1-578 Remove the 1x500 and 3x500 upper front left face cover 395
Figure 1-579 Remove the 1x500 storage box door (1 of 3) 396
Figure 1-580 Remove the 1x500 storage box door (2 of 3) 396
Figure 1-581 Remove the 1x500 storage box door (3 of 3) 397
Figure 1-582 Remove the 1x500 storage box (1 of 2) 398
Figure 1-583 Remove the 1x500 storage box (2 of 2) 399
Figure 1-584 Remove the 1x500 and 3x500 right lower cover (1 of 2) 400
Figure 1-585 Remove the 1x500 and 3x500 right lower cover (2 of 2) 401
Figure 1-586 Remove the 1x500 Tray 3 pickup assembly (1 of 5) 402
Figure 1-587 Remove the 1x500 Tray 3 pickup assembly (2 of 5) 402
Figure 1-588 Remove the 1x500 Tray 3 pickup assembly (3 of 5) 403
Figure 1-589 Remove the 1x500 Tray 3 pickup assembly (4 of 5) 403
Figure 1-590 Remove the 1x500 Tray 3 pickup assembly (5 of 5) 404
Figure 1-591 Reinstall the 1x500 Tray 3 pickup assembly (1 of 4) 405
Figure 1-592 Reinstall the 1x500 Tray 3 pickup assembly (2 of 4) 405
Figure 1-593 Reinstall the 1x500 Tray 3 pickup assembly (3 of 4) 406
Figure 1-594 Reinstall the 1x500 Tray 3 pickup assembly (4 of 4) 406
Figure 1-595 Remove the 3x500 Tray 3 pickup assembly (1 of 4) 407
Figure 1-596 Remove the 3x500 Tray 3 pickup assembly (2 of 4) 408
Figure 1-597 Remove the 3x500 Tray 3 pickup assembly (3 of 4) 408
Figure 1-598 Remove the 3x500 Tray 3 pickup assembly (4 of 4 409
Figure 1-599 Reinstall the 3x500 Tray 3 pickup assembly (1 of 4) 410
Figure 1-600 Reinstall the 3x500 Tray 3 pickup assembly (2 of 4) 410
Figure 1-601 Reinstall the 3x500 Tray 3 pickup assembly (3 of 4) 411
Figure 1-602 Reinstall the 3x500 Tray 3 pickup assembly (4 of 4) 411
Figure 1-603 Remove the 3x500 Tray 4 pickup assembly (1 of 4) 412
Figure 1-604 Remove the 3x500 Tray 4 pickup assembly (2 of 4) 413
Figure 1-605 Remove the 3x500 Tray 4 pickup assembly (3 of 4) 413
Figure 1-606 Remove the 3x500 Tray 4 pickup assembly (4 of 4) 414

Figure 1-607 Reinstall the 3x500 Tray 4 pickup assembly (1 of 2) 415
Figure 1-608 Reinstall the 3x500 Tray 4 pickup assembly (2 of 2) 415
Figure 1-609 Remove the 3x500 Tray 5 pickup assembly (1 of 3) 416
Figure 1-610 Remove the 3x500 Tray 5 pickup assembly (2 of 3) 417
Figure 1-611 Remove the 3x500 Tray 5 pickup assembly (3 of 3) 417
Figure 1-612 Reinstall the 3x500 Tray 5 pickup assembly (1 of 2) 418
Figure 1-613 Reinstall the 3x500 Tray 5 pickup assembly (2 of 2) 418
Figure 1-614 Remove the 1x500 Tray 3 automatic close assembly (1 of 2) 419
Figure 1-615 Remove the 1x500 Tray 3 automatic close assembly (2 of 2) 419
Figure 1-616 Remove the 3x500 Tray 3, Tray 4, and Tray 5 automatic close assemblies (1 of 2) 420
Figure 1-617 Remove the 3x500 Tray 3, Tray 4, and Tray 5 automatic close assemblies (2 of 2) 421
Figure 1-618 1x500 pickup motor location 422
Figure 1-619 3x500 pickup motor locations 423
Figure 1-620 Remove the 1x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 3, Tray 4, and Tray 5 pickup motors 423
Figure 1-621 Remove the HCI controller PCA 424
Figure 1-622 Remove the HCI, 1x500, and 3x500 left cover (1 of 2) 426
Figure 1-623 Remove the HCI, 1x500, and 3x500 left cover (2 of 2) 426
Figure 1-624 Reinstall the HCI, 1x500, and 3x500 left cover 427
Figure 1-625 Remove the HCI, 1x500, and 3x500 right door assembly (1 of 3) 428
Figure 1-626 Remove the HCI, 1x500, and 3x500 right door assembly (2 of 3) 428
Figure 1-627 Remove the HCI, 1x500, and 3x500 right door assembly (3 of 3) 429
Figure 1-628 Remove the HCI, 1x500, and 3x500 right rear cover (1 of 4) 430
Figure 1-629 Remove the HCI, 1x500, and 3x500 right rear cover (2 of 4) 430
Figure 1-630 Remove the HCI, 1x500, and 3x500 right rear cover (3 of 4) 431
Figure 1-631 Remove the HCI, 1x500, and 3x500 right rear cover (4 of 4) 431
Figure 1-632 Reinstall the HCI, 1x500, and 3x500 right rear cover 432
Figure 1-633 Correct placement of the IPTU for servicing 433
Figure 1-634 Incorrect placement of the IPTU for servicing 433
Figure 1-635 IPTU covers (1 of 2) 434
Figure 1-636 IPTU covers (2 of 2) 435
Figure 1-637 IPTU main assemblies 435
Figure 1-638 IPTU PCA 436
Figure 1-639 Remove the IPTU (1 of 4) 437
Figure 1-640 Remove the IPTU (2 of 4) 437
Figure 1-641 Remove the IPTU (3 of 4) 438
Figure 1-642 Remove the IPTU (4 of 4) 438
Figure 1-643 Remove the IPTU rear cover (1 of 3) 439
Figure 1-644 Remove the IPTU rear cover (2 of 3) 439
Figure 1-645 Remove the IPTU rear cover (3 of 3) 440
Figure 1-646 Reinstall the IPTU rear cover (1 of 2) 440
Figure 1-647 Reinstall the IPTU rear cover (2 of 2) 441

Figure 1-648 Remove the IPTU driver PCA (1 of 2) 442
Figure 1-649 Remove the IPTU driver PCA (2 of 2) 442
Figure 1-650 Remove the IPTU finisher lock assembly (1 of 5) 443
Figure 1-651 Remove the IPTU finisher lock assembly (2 of 5) 443
Figure 1-652 Remove the IPTU finisher lock assembly (3 of 5) 444
Figure 1-653 Remove the IPTU finisher lock assembly (4 of 5) 444
Figure 1-654 Remove the IPTU finisher lock assembly (5 of 5) 445
Figure 1-655 Remove the IPTU fan assembly (1 of 2) 446
Figure 1-656 Remove the IPTU fan assembly (2 of 2) 446
Figure 1-657 Remove the IPTU side panel assembly (1 of 6) 447
Figure 1-658 Remove the IPTU side panel assembly (2 of 6) 448
Figure 1-659 Remove the IPTU side panel assembly (3 of 6) 448
Figure 1-660 Remove the IPTU side panel assembly (4 of 6) 449
Figure 1-661 Remove the IPTU side panel assembly (5 of 6) 449
Figure 1-662 Remove the IPTU side panel assembly (6 of 6) 450
Figure 1-663 Reinstall the IPTU side panel assembly 450
Figure 1-664 Remove the IPTU upper and lower guide assemblies (1 of 9) 451
Figure 1-665 Remove the IPTU upper and lower guide assemblies (2 of 9) 451
Figure 1-666 Remove the IPTU upper and lower guide assemblies (3 of 9) 452
Figure 1-667 Remove the IPTU upper and lower guide assemblies (4 of 9) 452
Figure 1-668 Remove the IPTU upper and lower guide assemblies (5 of 9) 453
Figure 1-669 Remove the IPTU upper and lower guide assemblies (6 of 9) 453
Figure 1-670 Remove the IPTU upper and lower guide assemblies (7 of 9) 454
Figure 1-671 Remove the IPTU upper and lower guide assemblies (8 of 9) 455
Figure 1-672 Remove the IPTU upper and lower guide assemblies (9 of 9) 455
Figure 1-673 Install a replacement IPTU upper guide assembly (1 of 2) 456
Figure 1-674 Install a replacement IPTU upper guide assembly (2 of 2) 456
Figure 1-675 Identify the BM finishing accessory 458
Figure 1-676 Identify the BMHP finishing accessory 458
Figure 1-677 Identify the SS finishing accessory 459
Figure 1-678 Identify the SSHP finishing accessory 459
Figure 1-679 Stapler stacker covers and doors 460
Figure 1-680 Stapler stacker with hole punch covers and doors 461
Figure 1-681 Booklet maker covers and doors 462
Figure 1-682 Booklet maker with hole punch covers and doors 463
Figure 1-683 Remove the top cover lock assembly (1 of 3) 466
Figure 1-684 Remove the top cover lock assembly (2 of 3) 466
Figure 1-685 Remove the top cover lock assembly (3 of 3) 467
Figure 1-686 Remove the latch lower covers (front and rear; 1 of 3) 468
Figure 1-687 Remove the latch lower covers (front and rear; 2 of 3) 468
Figure 1-688 Remove the latch lower covers (front and rear; 3 of 3) 469

Figure 1-689 Remove the latch assembly (1 of 2) 470
Figure 1-690 Remove the latch assembly (2 of 2) 470
Figure 1-691 Remove the open/close stepped cover assembly (1 of 2) 471
Figure 1-692 Remove the open/close stepped cover assembly (2 of 2) 471
Figure 1-693 Remove the upper stepped cover assembly (1 of 4) 472
Figure 1-694 Remove the upper stepped cover assembly (2 of 4) 472
Figure 1-695 Remove the upper stepped cover assembly (3 of 4) 473
Figure 1-696 Remove the upper stepped cover assembly (4 of 4) 473
Figure 1-697 Remove the lower stepped cover assembly (1 of 5) 474
Figure 1-698 Remove the lower stepped cover assembly (2 of 5) 475
Figure 1-699 Remove the lower stepped cover assembly (3 of 5) 475
Figure 1-700 Remove the lower stepped cover assembly (4 of 5) 476
Figure 1-701 Remove the lower stepped cover assembly (5 of 5) 476
Figure 1-702 Reinstall the lower stepped cover (1 of 2) 477
Figure 1-703 Reinstall the lower stepped cover (2 of 2) 477
Figure 1-704 Remove the top door assembly (1 of 2) 478
Figure 1-705 Remove the top door assembly (2 of 2) 478
Figure 1-706 Remove the front door (1 of 2) 479
Figure 1-707 Remove the front door (2 of 2) 479
Figure 1-708 Move the inner upper cover out of the way (1 of 2) 480
Figure 1-709 Move the inner upper cover out of the way (2 of 2) 480
Figure 1-710 Remove the inner upper cover assembly (1 of 2) 481
Figure 1-711 Remove the inner upper cover assembly (2 of 2) 481
Figure 1-712 Remove the clutch assembly (front side; 1 of 2) 482
Figure 1-713 Remove the clutch assembly (front side; 2 of 2) 482
Figure 1-714 Remove the sensor switch assembly (1 of 4) 483
Figure 1-715 Remove the sensor switch assembly (2 of 4) 484
Figure 1-716 Remove the sensor switch assembly (3 of 4) 484
Figure 1-717 Remove the sensor switch assembly (4 of 4) 485
Figure 1-718 Move the inner lower cover out of the way (1 of 4) 486
Figure 1-719 Move the inner lower cover out of the way (2 of 4) 486
Figure 1-720 Move the inner lower cover out of the way (3 of 4) 487
Figure 1-721 Move the inner lower cover out of the way (4 of 4) 487
Figure 1-722 Remove the inner lower cover assembly (1 of 4) 488
Figure 1-723 Remove the inner lower cover assembly (2 of 4) 488
Figure 1-724 Remove the inner lower cover assembly (2 of 4) 489
Figure 1-725 Remove the inner lower cover assembly (4 of 4) 489
Figure 1-726 Remove the front foot cover assembly (1 of 2) 490
Figure 1-727 Remove the front foot cover assembly (2 of 2) 491
Figure 1-728 Remove the bin cable guide cover (1 of 6) 492
Figure 1-729 Remove the bin cable guide cover (2 of 6) 492

Figure 1-730 Remove the bin cable guide cover (3 of 6) 493
Figure 1-731 Remove the bin cable guide cover (4 of 6) 493
Figure 1-732 Remove the bin cable guide cover (5 of 6) 494
Figure 1-733 Remove the bin cable guide cover (6 of 6) 494
Figure 1-734 Bin cable guide cover correctly installed 495
Figure 1-735 Bin cable guide cover incorrectly installed 495
Figure 1-736 Remove the rear cover assembly (1 of 4) 496
Figure 1-737 Remove the rear cover assembly (2 of 4) 496
Figure 1-738 Remove the rear cover assembly (3 of 4) 497
Figure 1-739 Remove the rear cover assembly (4 of 4) 497
Figure 1-740 Remove the main controller PCA assembly (1 of 6) 498
Figure 1-741 Remove the main controller PCA assembly (2 of 6) 499
Figure 1-742 Remove the main controller PCA assembly (3 of 6) 499
Figure 1-743 Remove the main controller PCA assembly (4 of 6) 500
Figure 1-744 Remove the main controller PCA assembly (5 of 6) 500
Figure 1-745 Remove the main controller PCA assembly (6 of 6) 501
Figure 1-746 Install a replacement main controller PCA assembly 502
Figure 1-747 Main controller PCA switches 503
Figure 1-748 Booklet maker controller PCA switches 504
Figure 1-749 DIPSW4 alignment settings 504
Figure 1-750 DIPSW4 staple position settings 505
Figure 1-751 DIPSW folding position settings 506
Figure 1-752 Mark the paper 507
Figure 1-753 Folding position adjustment (1 of 3) 507
Figure 1-754 Folding position adjustment (2 of 3) 508
Figure 1-755 Folding position adjustment (3 of 3) 508
Figure 1-756 Positive and negative width adjustment 509
Figure 1-757 Adjust the stitcher (1 of 6) 510
Figure 1-758 Adjust the stitcher (2 of 6) 510
Figure 1-759 Adjust the stitcher (3 of 6) 511
Figure 1-760 Adjust the stitcher (4 of 6) 511
Figure 1-761 Adjust the stitcher (5 of 6) 511
Figure 1-762 Adjust the stitcher (6 of 6) 512
Figure 1-763 Remove the entrance upper guide assembly (1 of 3) 513
Figure 1-764 Remove the entrance upper guide assembly (2 of 3) 514
Figure 1-765 Remove the entrance upper guide assembly (3 of 3) 515
Figure 1-766 Remove the rear foot cover assembly (1 of 2) 516
Figure 1-767 Remove the rear foot cover assembly (2 of 2) 517
Figure 1-768 Remove the stack wall upper assembly and upper wall guide assembly (1 of 5) 518
Figure 1-769 Remove the stack wall upper assembly and upper wall guide assembly (2 of 5) 519
Figure 1-770 Remove the stack wall upper assembly and upper wall guide assembly (3 of 5) 519

Figure 1-771 Remove the stack wall upper assembly and upper wall guide assembly (4 of 5) 520
Figure 1-772 Remove the stack wall upper assembly and upper wall guide assembly (5 of 5) 520
Figure 1-773 Remove the upper cross member assembly (1 of 13) 521
Figure 1-774 Remove the upper cross member assembly (2 of 13) 522
Figure 1-775 Remove the upper cross member assembly (3 of 13) 522
Figure 1-776 Remove the upper cross member assembly (4 of 13) 523
Figure 1-777 Remove the upper cross member assembly (5 of 13) 523
Figure 1-778 Remove the upper cross member assembly (6 of 13) 524
Figure 1-779 Remove the upper cross member assembly (7 of 13) 524
Figure 1-780 Remove the upper cross member assembly (8 of 13) 525
Figure 1-781 Remove the upper cross member assembly (9 of 13) 525
Figure 1-782 Remove the upper cross member assembly (10 of 13) 526
Figure 1-783 Remove the upper cross member assembly (11 of 13) 526
Figure 1-784 Remove the upper cross member assembly (12 of 13) 527
Figure 1-785 Remove the upper cross member assembly (13 of 13) 528
Figure 1-786 Reinstall the upper cross member assembly (1 of 7) 529
Figure 1-787 Reinstall the upper cross member assembly (2 of 7) 529
Figure 1-788 Reinstall the upper cross member assembly (3 of 7) 530
Figure 1-789 Reinstall the upper cross member assembly (4 of 7) 530
Figure 1-790 Reinstall the upper cross member assembly (5 of 7) 531
Figure 1-791 Reinstall the upper cross member assembly (6 of 7) 531
Figure 1-792 Reinstall the upper cross member assembly (7 of 7) 532
Figure 1-793 Remove the paper feed drive assembly (1 of 2) 533
Figure 1-794 Remove the paper feed drive assembly (2 of 2) 534
Figure 1-795 Remove the pressure roller assembly (1 of 8) 536
Figure 1-796 Remove the pressure roller assembly (2 of 8) 536
Figure 1-797 Remove the pressure roller assembly (3 of 8) 537
Figure 1-798 Remove the pressure roller assembly (4 of 8) 537
Figure 1-799 Remove the pressure roller assembly (5 of 8) 538
Figure 1-800 Remove the pressure roller assembly (6 of 8) 538
Figure 1-801 Remove the pressure roller assembly (7 of 8) 539
Figure 1-802 Remove the pressure roller assembly (8 of 8) 539
Figure 1-803 Remove the stack upper bin and lower bin assemblies (1 of 5) 541
Figure 1-804 Remove the stack upper bin and lower bin assemblies (2 of 5) 542
Figure 1-805 Remove the stack upper bin and lower bin assemblies (3 of 5) 542
Figure 1-806 Remove the stack upper bin and lower bin assemblies (4 of 5) 543
Figure 1-807 Remove the stack upper bin and lower bin assemblies (5 of 5) 543
Figure 1-808 Reinstall the stack wall upper assembly and upper wall guide assembly (1 of 2) 544
Figure 1-809 Reinstall the stack wall upper assembly and upper wall guide assembly (2 of 2) 545
Figure 1-810 Remove the height wall assembly (1 of 2) 546
Figure 1-811 Remove the height wall assembly (2 of 2) 547

Figure 1-812 Reinstall the height wall assembly 547
Figure 1-813 Remove the paper face sensor and flag assembly (1 of 9) 548
Figure 1-814 Remove the paper face sensor and flag assembly (2 of 9) 549
Figure 1-815 Remove the paper face sensor and flag assembly (3 of 9) 549
Figure 1-816 Remove the paper face sensor and flag assembly (4 of 9) 550
Figure 1-817 Remove the paper face sensor and flag assembly (5 of 9) 550
Figure 1-818 Remove the paper face sensor and flag assembly (6 of 9) 551
Figure 1-819 Remove the paper face sensor and flag assembly (7 of 9) 551
Figure 1-820 Remove the paper face sensor and flag assembly (8 of 9) 552
Figure 1-821 Remove the paper face sensor and flag assembly (9 of 9) 552
Figure 1-822 Remove the staple subassembly (1 of 6) 553
Figure 1-823 Remove the staple subassembly (2 of 6) 553
Figure 1-824 Remove the staple subassembly (3 of 6) 554
Figure 1-825 Remove the staple subassembly (4 of 6) 554
Figure 1-826 Remove the staple subassembly (5 of 6) 555
Figure 1-827 Remove the staple subassembly (6 of 6) 555
Figure 1-828 Remove the staple connecting cable assembly (1 of 2) 556
Figure 1-829 Remove the staple connecting cable assembly (2 of 2) 557
Figure 1-830 Remove the staple assembly (1 of 7) 558
Figure 1-831 Remove the staple assembly (2 of 7) 559
Figure 1-832 Remove the staple assembly (3 of 7) 559
Figure 1-833 Remove the staple assembly (4 of 7) 560
Figure 1-834 Remove the staple assembly (5 of 7) 560
Figure 1-835 Remove the staple assembly (6 of 7) 561
Figure 1-836 Remove the staple assembly (7 of 7) 561
Figure 1-837 Remove the paper detect holder assembly 562
Figure 1-838 Reinstall the paper detect holder assembly 563
Figure 1-839 Identify the operation tray assembly 564
Figure 1-840 Remove the operation tray assembly (1 of 11) 565
Figure 1-841 Remove the operation tray assembly (2 of 11) 566
Figure 1-842 Remove the operation tray assembly (3 of 11) 567
Figure 1-843 Remove the operation tray assembly (4 of 11) 567
Figure 1-844 Remove the operation tray assembly (5 of 11) 568
Figure 1-845 Remove the operation tray assembly (6 of 11) 568
Figure 1-846 Remove the operation tray assembly (7 of 11) 569
Figure 1-847 Remove the operation tray assembly (8 of 11) 569
Figure 1-848 Remove the operation tray assembly (9 of 11) 570
Figure 1-849 Remove the operation tray assembly (10 of 11) 570
Figure 1-850 Remove the operation tray assembly (11 of 11) 571
Figure 1-851 Reinstall the operation tray assembly (1 of 5) 571
Figure 1-852 Reinstall the operation tray assembly (2 of 5) 572

Figure 1-853 Reinstall the operation tray assembly (3 of 5) 572
Figure 1-854 Reinstall the operation tray assembly (4 of 5) 573
Figure 1-855 Reinstall the operation tray assembly (5 of 5) 574
Figure 1-856 Identify the operation tray assembly 575
Figure 1-857 Remove the swing guide assembly (1 of 12) 576
Figure 1-858 Remove the swing guide assembly (2 of 12) 576
Figure 1-859 Remove the swing guide assembly (3 of 12) 577
Figure 1-860 Remove the swing guide assembly (4 of 12) 577
Figure 1-861 Remove the swing guide assembly (5 of 12) 578
Figure 1-862 Remove the swing guide assembly (6 of 12) 578
Figure 1-863 Remove the swing guide assembly (7 of 12) 579
Figure 1-864 Remove the swing guide assembly (8 of 12) 579
Figure 1-865 Remove the swing guide assembly (9 of 12) 580
Figure 1-866 Remove the swing guide assembly (10 of 12) 580
Figure 1-867 Remove the swing guide assembly (11 of 12) 581
Figure 1-868 Remove the swing guide assembly (12 of 12) 581
Figure 1-869 Reinstall the swing guide assembly (1 of 7) 582
Figure 1-870 Reinstall the swing guide assembly (2 of 7) 582
Figure 1-871 Reinstall the swing guide assembly (3 of 7) 583
Figure 1-872 Reinstall the swing guide assembly (4 of 7) 583
Figure 1-873 Reinstall the swing guide assembly (5 of 7) 584
Figure 1-874 Reinstall the swing guide assembly (6 of 7) 584
Figure 1-875 Reinstall the swing guide assembly (7 of 7) 585
Figure 1-876 Remove the return roller assembly (1 of 2) 587
Figure 1-877 Remove the return roller assembly (2 of 2) 587
Figure 1-878 Remove the clutch assembly (rear side; 1 of 6) 588
Figure 1-879 Remove the clutch assembly (rear side; 2 of 6) 588
Figure 1-880 Remove the clutch assembly (rear side; 3 of 6) 589
Figure 1-881 Remove the clutch assembly (rear side; 4 of 6) 589
Figure 1-882 Remove the clutch assembly (rear side; 5 of 6) 590
Figure 1-883 Remove the clutch assembly (rear side; 6 of 6) 590
Figure 1-884 Remove the stack ejection motor assembly (1 of 7) 591
Figure 1-885 Remove the stack ejection motor assembly (2 of 7) 591
Figure 1-886 Remove the stack ejection motor assembly (3 of 7) 592
Figure 1-887 Remove the stack ejection motor assembly (4 of 7) 592
Figure 1-888 Remove the stack ejection motor assembly (5 of 7) 593
Figure 1-889 Remove the stack ejection motor assembly (6 of 7) 593
Figure 1-890 Remove the stack ejection motor assembly (7 of 7) 594
Figure 1-891 Remove the press motor assembly (1 of 7) 595
Figure 1-892 Remove the press motor assembly (2 of 7) 595
Figure 1-893 Remove the press motor assembly (3 of 7) 596

Figure 1-894 Remove the press motor assembly (4 of 7) 596
Figure 1-895 Remove the press motor assembly (5 of 7) 597
Figure 1-896 Remove the press motor assembly (6 of 7) 597
Figure 1-897 Remove the press motor assembly (7 of 7) 598
Figure 1-898 Remove the common driver PCA assembly (1 of 2) 599
Figure 1-899 Remove the common driver PCA assembly (2 of 2) 600
Figure 1-900 Remove the interface cable assembly (1 of 3) 601
Figure 1-901 Remove the interface cable assembly (2 of 3) 601
Figure 1-902 Remove the interface cable assembly (3 of 3) 602
Figure 1-903 Remove the paper pass assembly (1 of 6) 603
Figure 1-904 Remove the paper pass assembly (2 of 6) 604
Figure 1-905 Remove the paper pass assembly (3 of 6) 604
Figure 1-906 Remove the paper pass assembly (4 of 6) 605
Figure 1-907 Remove the paper pass assembly (5 of 6) 605
Figure 1-908 Remove the paper pass assembly (6 of 6) 606
Figure 1-909 Remove the knob 608
Figure 1-910 Remove the saddle output bin assembly (1 of 2) 609
Figure 1-911 Remove the saddle output bin assembly (2 of 2) 609
Figure 1-912 Reinstall the saddle output bin assembly 610
Figure 1-913 Remove the right cover assembly (BM PCA; 1 of 7) 611
Figure 1-914 Remove the right cover assembly (BM PCA; 2 of 7) 612
Figure 1-915 Remove the right cover assembly (BM PCA; 3 of 7) 612
Figure 1-916 Remove the right cover assembly (BM PCA; 4 of 7) 613
Figure 1-917 Remove the right cover assembly (BM PCA; 5 of 7) 613
Figure 1-918 Remove the right cover assembly (BM PCA; 6 of 7) 614
Figure 1-919 Remove the right cover assembly (BM PCA; 7 of 7) 614
Figure 1-920 Remove the booklet maker controller PCA 615
Figure 1-921 Remove the inner side plate assembly (1 of 8) 616
Figure 1-922 Remove the inner side plate assembly (2 of 8) 617
Figure 1-923 Remove the inner side plate assembly (3 of 8) 617
Figure 1-924 Remove the inner side plate assembly (4 of 8) 618
Figure 1-925 Remove the inner side plate assembly (5 of 8) 618
Figure 1-926 Remove the inner side plate assembly (6 of 8) 619
Figure 1-927 Remove the inner side plate assembly (7 of 8) 619
Figure 1-928 Remove the inner side plate assembly (8 of 8) 620
Figure 1-929 Inner plate assembly in the up position 620
Figure 1-930 Inner plate assembly in the middle position 621
Figure 1-931 Reinstall the inner side plate assembly (1 of 3) 621
Figure 1-932 Reinstall the inner side plate assembly (2 of 3) 622
Figure 1-933 Reinstall the inner side plate assembly (3 of 3) 622
Figure 1-934 Remove the guide sensor assembly (1 of 4) 623

Figure 1-935 Remove the guide sensor assembly (2 of 4) 623
Figure 1-936 Remove the guide sensor assembly (3 of 4) 624
Figure 1-937 Remove the guide sensor assembly (4 of 4) 624
Figure 1-938 Remove the guide motor assembly (1 of 3) 625
Figure 1-939 Remove the guide motor assembly (2 of 3) 626
Figure 1-940 Remove the guide motor assembly (3 of 3) 626
Figure 1-941 Remove the saddle motor assembly (SS and BM; 1 of 3) 627
Figure 1-942 Remove the saddle motor assembly (SS and BM; 2 of 3) 627
Figure 1-943 Remove the saddle motor assembly (SS and BM; 3 of 3) 628
Figure 1-944 Remove the saddle feed motor assembly (1 of 6) 629
Figure 1-945 Remove the saddle feed motor assembly (2 of 6) 630
Figure 1-946 Remove the saddle feed motor assembly (3 of 6) 630
Figure 1-947 Remove the saddle feed motor assembly (4 of 6) 631
Figure 1-948 Remove the saddle feed motor assembly (5 of 6) 631
Figure 1-949 Remove the saddle feed motor assembly (6 of 6) 632
Figure 1-950 Remove the folding-motor mount assembly (1 of 6) 633
Figure 1-951 Remove the folding-motor mount assembly (2 of 6) 634
Figure 1-952 Remove the folding-motor mount assembly (3 of 6) 634
Figure 1-953 Remove the folding-motor mount assembly (4 of 6) 635
Figure 1-954 Remove the folding-motor mount assembly (5 of 6) 635
Figure 1-955 Remove the folding-motor mount assembly (6 of 6) 636
Figure 1-956 Reinstall the folding-motor mount assembly 637
Figure 1-957 Remove the delivery switch mount assembly (1 of 4) 638
Figure 1-958 Remove the delivery switch mount assembly (2 of 4) 639
Figure 1-959 Remove the delivery switch mount assembly (4 of 4) 639
Figure 1-960 Remove the delivery switch mount assembly (4 of 4) 640
Figure 1-961 Remove the saddle stapler assembly (1 of 3) 641
Figure 1-962 Remove the saddle stapler assembly (2 of 3) 642
Figure 1-963 Remove the saddle stapler assembly (3 of 3) 642
Figure 1-964 Remove the lower left guide assembly (1 of 3) 643
Figure 1-965 Remove the lower left guide assembly (2 of 3) 643
Figure 1-966 Remove the lower left guide assembly (3 of 3) 644
Figure 1-967 Remove the saddle delivery inner cover, front assembly (1 of 3) 645
Figure 1-968 Remove the saddle delivery inner cover, front assembly (2 of 3) 645
Figure 1-969 Remove the saddle delivery inner cover, front assembly (3 of 3) 646
Figure 1-970 Remove the saddle delivery inner cover, rear assembly (1 of 3) 647
Figure 1-971 Remove the saddle delivery inner cover, rear assembly (2 of 3) 647
Figure 1-972 Remove the saddle delivery inner cover, rear assembly (3 of 3) 648
Figure 1-973 Remove the saddle guide assembly (1 of 5) 650
Figure 1-974 Remove the saddle guide assembly (2 of 5) 650
Figure 1-975 Remove the saddle guide assembly (3 of 5) 651

Figure 1-976 Remove the saddle guide assembly (4 of 5) 651
Figure 1-977 Remove the saddle guide assembly (5 of 5) 652
Figure 1-978 Reinstall the saddle guide assembly (1 of 4) 653
Figure 1-979 Reinstall the saddle guide assembly (2 of 4) 653
Figure 1-980 Reinstall the saddle guide assembly (3 of 4) 654
Figure 1-981 Reinstall the saddle guide assembly (4 of 4) 654
Figure 1-982 Remove the saddle feed assembly (1 of 7) 656
Figure 1-983 Remove the saddle feed assembly (2 of 7) 656
Figure 1-984 Remove the saddle feed assembly (3 of 7) 657
Figure 1-985 Remove the saddle feed assembly (4 of 7) 657
Figure 1-986 Remove the saddle feed assembly (5 of 7) 658
Figure 1-987 Remove the saddle feed assembly (6 of 7) 658
Figure 1-988 Remove the saddle feed assembly (7 of 7) 659
Figure 1-989 Reinstall the saddle feed assembly 659
Figure 1-990 Remove the saddle assembly (1 of 13) 661
Figure 1-991 Remove the saddle assembly (2 of 13) 661
Figure 1-992 Remove the saddle assembly (3 of 13) 662
Figure 1-993 Remove the saddle assembly (4 of 13) 662
Figure 1-994 Remove the saddle assembly (5 of 13) 663
Figure 1-995 Remove the saddle assembly (6 of 13) 663
Figure 1-996 Remove the saddle assembly (7 of 13) 664
Figure 1-997 Remove the saddle assembly (8 of 13) 664
Figure 1-998 Remove the saddle assembly (9 of 13) 665
Figure 1-999 Remove the saddle assembly (10 of 13) 665
Figure 1-1000 Remove the saddle assembly (11 of 13) 666
Figure 1-1001 Remove the saddle assembly (12 of 13) 666
Figure 1-1002 Remove the saddle assembly (13 of 13) 667
Figure 1-1003 Reinstall the saddle assembly 668
Figure 1-1004 Remove the upper delivery guide assembly (1 of 3) 669
Figure 1-1005 Remove the upper delivery guide assembly (2 of 3) 670
Figure 1-1006 Remove the upper delivery guide assembly (3 of 3) 670
Figure 1-1007 Remove the saddle paper delivery assembly (1 of 5) 671
Figure 1-1008 Remove the saddle paper delivery assembly (2 of 5) 671
Figure 1-1009 Remove the saddle paper delivery assembly (3 of 5) 672
Figure 1-1010 Remove the saddle paper delivery assembly (4 of 5) 672
Figure 1-1011 Remove the saddle paper delivery assembly (5 of 5) 673
Figure 1-1012 Reinstall the saddle paper delivery assembly 673
Figure 1-1013 Remove the saddle rear end sensor assembly (1 of 10) 675
Figure 1-1014 Remove the saddle rear end sensor assembly (2 of 10) 675
Figure 1-1015 Remove the saddle rear end sensor assembly (3 of 10) 676
Figure 1-1016 Remove the saddle rear end sensor assembly (4 of 10) 677

Figure 1-1017 Remove the saddle rear end sensor assembly (5 of 10) 678
Figure 1-1018 Remove the saddle rear end sensor assembly (6 of 10) 678
Figure 1-1019 Remove the saddle rear end sensor assembly (7 of 10) 679
Figure 1-1020 Remove the saddle rear end sensor assembly (8 of 10) 679
Figure 1-1021 Remove the saddle rear end sensor assembly (9 of 10) 680
Figure 1-1022 Remove the saddle rear end sensor assembly (10 of 10) 680
Figure 1-1023 Reinstall the saddle rear end sensor assembly (1 of 2) 681
Figure 1-1024 Reinstall the saddle rear end sensor assembly (2 of 2) 681
Figure 1-1025 Remove the punch front cover (1 of 2) 682
Figure 1-1026 Remove the punch front cover (2 of 2) 683
Figure 1-1027 Remove the punch lower front cover assembly (1 of 3) 684
Figure 1-1028 Remove the punch lower front cover assembly (2 of 3) 684
Figure 1-1029 Remove the punch lower front cover assembly (3 of 3) 685
Figure 1-1030 Remove the punch rear cover assembly (1 of 2) 686
Figure 1-1031 Remove the punch rear cover assembly (2 of 2) 686
Figure 1-1032 Remove the punch controller PCA assembly 687
Figure 1-1033 Remove the punch waste tray 688
Figure 1-1034 Remove the punch inner cover assembly (1 of 4) 689
Figure 1-1035 Remove the punch inner cover assembly (2 of 4) 689
Figure 1-1036 Remove the punch inner cover assembly (3 of 4) 690
Figure 1-1037 Remove the punch inner cover assembly (4 of 4) 690
Figure 1-1038 Remove the punch top cover (1 of 6) 691
Figure 1-1039 Remove the punch top cover (2 of 6) 691
Figure 1-1040 Remove the punch top cover (3 of 6) 692
Figure 1-1041 Remove the punch top cover (4 of 6) 692
Figure 1-1042 Remove the punch top cover (5 of 6) 693
Figure 1-1043 Remove the punch top cover (6 of 6) 693
Figure 1-1044 Remove the punch hole assembly (1 of 8) 694
Figure 1-1045 Remove the punch hole assembly (2 of 8) 695
Figure 1-1046 Remove the punch hole assembly (3 of 8) 695
Figure 1-1047 Remove the punch hole assembly (4 of 8) 696
Figure 1-1048 Remove the punch hole assembly (5 of 8) 696
Figure 1-1049 Remove the punch hole assembly (6 of 8) 697
Figure 1-1050 Remove the punch hole assembly (7 of 8) 697
Figure 1-1051 Remove the punch hole assembly (8 of 8) 698
Figure 1-1052 Determine the punch hole skew 699
Figure 1-1053 Adjust the punch hole location 700
Figure 1-1054 Correct punch hole alignment 701
Figure 1-1055 Set the punch hole assembly type 702
Figure 1-1056 SW601 punch hole assembly type settings 703
Figure 1-1057 SW601 sensor adjustment settings 703

Figure 1-1058 Set the sensor adjustment values 704
Figure 1-1059 SW601 sensor adjustment settings 704
Figure 1-1060 SW601 sensor adjustment settings 705
Figure 2-1 M855 base product cover locations (1 of 2) 715
Figure 2-2 M855 base product assembly locations (2 of 2) 716
Figure 2-3 M880 base product assembly locations (1 of 2) 718
Figure 2-4 M880 base product assembly locations (2 of 2) 719
Figure 2-5 Stapler/stacker and booklet maker main assemblies 720
Figure 2-6 Stapler/stacker and booklet maker PCA 721
Figure 2-7 Stapler/stacker 722
Figure 2-8 Stapler/stacker with hole puncher external assembly locator 723
Figure 2-9 Staple stacker internal assembly locator 724
Figure 2-10 Staple stacker with hole puncher internal assembly locator 725
Figure 2-11 Staple stacker external assembly locator (door open) 726
Figure 2-12 Staple stacker with hole puncher external assembly locator (door open) 727
Figure 2-13 Booklet maker external assembly locator 728
Figure 2-14 Booklet maker with hole puncher external assembly locator 729
Figure 2-15 Booklet maker internal assembly locator 730
Figure 2-16 Booklet maker with hole puncher internal assembly locator 731
Figure 2-17 Booklet maker external assembly locator (door open) 732
Figure 2-18 Booklet maker with hole puncher external assembly locator (door open) 733
Figure 2-19 IPTU external assembly locator (1 of 3) 734
Figure 2-20 IPTU external assembly locator (2 of 3) 734
Figure 2-21 IPTU external assembly locator (3 of 3) 735
Figure 2-22 IPTU internal assembly locator (1 of 2) 736
Figure 2-23 IPTU internal assembly locator (2 of 2) 736
Figure 2-24 IPTU PCA 737
Figure 2-25 1x500-sheet feeder (1 of 2) 738
Figure 2-26 1x500-sheet feeder (2 of 2) 739
Figure 2-27 3x500-sheet feeder (1 of 2) 740
Figure 2-28 3x500-sheet feeder (2 of 2) 741
Figure 2-29 HCI feeder (1 of 6) 742
Figure 2-30 HCI feeder (2 of 6) 743
Figure 2-31 HCI feeder (3 of 6) 744
Figure 2-32 HCI feeder (4 of 6) 745
Figure 2-33 HCI feeder (5 of 6) 746
Figure 2-34 HCI feeder (6 of 6) 746
Figure 2-35 Document feeder and scanner assemblies (M880) 748
Figure 2-36 Document feeder assemblies (M880, 1 of 2) 750
Figure 2-37 Document feeder assemblies (M880, 2 of 2) 752
Figure 2-38 Scanner assemblies (M880) 754

Figure 2-39 Covers (M855) 756
Figure 2-40 Covers (M880) 758
Figure 2-41 Right door assembly 760
Figure 2-42 Internal components (1 of 6) 762
Figure 2-43 Internal components (2 of 6) 764
Figure 2-44 Internal components (3 of 6) 766
Figure 2-45 Internal components (4 of 6) 768
Figure 2-46 Internal components (5 of 6) 770
Figure 2-47 Internal components (6 of 6) 772
Figure 2-48 Intermediate paper transfer unit (IPTU) assemblies 774
Figure 2-49 1x500-sheet feeder with stand (M855 only) covers 776
Figure 2-50 1x500-sheet feeder with stand components 778
Figure 2-51 3x500-sheet feeder covers 780
Figure 2-52 3x500-sheet feeder components 782
Figure 2-53 HCI feeder covers 784
Figure 2-54 HCI feeder internal components (1 of 2) 786
Figure 2-55 HCI feeder internal components (2 of 2) 788
Figure 2-56 Stapler/stacker covers 790
Figure 2-57 Booklet maker covers 792
Figure 2-58 Finisher main body (1 of 3) 794
Figure 2-59 Finisher main body (2 of 3) 796
Figure 2-60 Finisher main body (3 of 3) 798
Figure 2-61 Stapler/stacker main body 800
Figure 2-62 Booklet maker main body 802
Figure 2-63 Booklet maker saddle assembly (1 of 3) 804
Figure 2-64 Booklet maker saddle assembly (2 of 3) 805
Figure 2-65 Booklet maker saddle assembly (3 of 3) 806

1 Removal and replacement

- Removal and replacement strategy
- Customer-self repair assemblies
- Pickup, feed, and separation rollers and pads
- Covers and doors
- Main assemblies
- Input accessories
- Intermediate paper transport unit (IPTU)
- Finishing accessories

Removal and replacement strategy

Considerations during removal and replacement

This chapter describes the removal and replacement of field-replaceable units (FRUs) only.

Replacing FRUs is generally the reverse of removal. Notes are included to provide directions for difficult or critical replacement procedures.

HP does not support repairing individual subassemblies or troubleshooting to the PCA component level.

WARNING! Never operate or service the product with the protective cover removed from the laser scanner assembly. The reflected beam, although invisible, can damage your eyes.

WARNING! The sheet-metal parts can have sharp edges. Be careful when handling sheet-metal parts.

CAUTION:

Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Look for the ESD reminder when removing product parts. Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, ground yourself by touching the sheet-metal chassis *before* touching an ESD-sensitive part.

Protect the ESD-sensitive parts by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the product.

CAUTION: Do not bend or fold the flat cables during removal or installation.

NOTE: To install a self-tapping screw, first turn it counterclockwise to align it with the existing thread pattern, and then carefully turn it clockwise to tighten. Do not overtighten. If a self-tapping screw-hole becomes stripped, repair the screw-hole or replace the affected assembly.

TIP: For clarity, some figures in this chapter show assemblies removed that are not required to be removed to service the product (for example, the M880 scanner and document feeder assemblies). The procedures in this manual are correct for your product.

Required tools

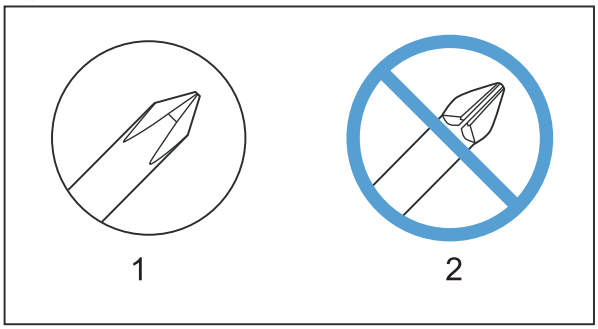
- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152-mm (6-in) shaft length

  NOTE: For the best fit, use a JIS #2 Phillips screwdriver for the stapler/stacker.

- Small, flat-blade screwdriver
- Needle-nose pliers
- ESD strap (if one is available)
- Penlight

CAUTION: Always use a Phillips screwdriver (callout 1). Do not use a Pozidriv screwdriver (callout 2) or any motorized screwdriver. These can damage screws or screw threads.

Figure 1-1 Screwdrivers



Types of screws

WARNING! Make sure that assemblies are replaced with the correct screw type. Using the incorrect screw (for example, substituting a long screw for the correct shorter screw) can cause damage to the product or interfere with product operation. Do not intermix screws that are removed from one assembly with the screws that are removed from another assembly.

For a complete list of screw types and part numbers, see the Parts chapter in the product repair manual.

Service approach

The products described in this manual use a field repair strategy. Defective parts are diagnosed and replaced at the Field Replaceable Unit (FRU) assembly level. Repair normally begins by using the product internal diagnostics and the following two-step process:

1. Isolate the problem to the major system (for example, the network or server, or the product).
2. Troubleshoot the problem by using the procedures in the troubleshooting manual.

After you locate a faulty part, the product can usually be repaired at the assembly level by replacing FRUs. Some mechanical assemblies might need to be repaired at the subassembly level. Hewlett-Packard Company does not support replacement of components on the printed circuit assembles.

The user replaces toner cartridges as they are depleted. Additional instructions about other user-replaceable parts are provided in this section.

The product tracks the amount of use on the customer-replaceable supplies by keeping a page count. The product prompts the user to replace certain items when a supply is depleted or a specific number of pages has been printed.

Swapping toner cartridges between products might cause a misrepresentation of supply life values and is not recommended.

Before performing service

⚠ **WARNING!** Turn the product off, wait 5 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product. *If this warning is not followed, severe injury and damage to the product can result.* The power must be on for certain functional checks during troubleshooting. However, the power supply should be disconnected during parts removal.

1. Remove all paper.
2. Place the product on an ESD mat (if available). If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, ground yourself by touching the sheet-metal chassis *before* touching an ESD-sensitive part.
3. Remove the toner cartridges.
4. Remove the imaging drums.
5. Remove the trays.

After performing service

1. Reinstall the toner cartridges.
2. Reinstall the trays.
3. Reinstall the imaging drums.
4. Return all paper to the trays.
5. Plug in the power cable and turn on the product.
6. Perform print-quality tests by printing from a host computer, the scanner glass, and the document feeder.

Parts removal order

If multiple components must be removed to gain access to an assembly, the first step of the removal procedure lists all of the components that must be removed to gain access to that assembly. Use these lists to determine which parts must be removed before removing other parts.

Supported paper sizes and types

If the product is experiencing assembly failure, use the tables in this section to verify that the customer is using media that meets HP specifications.

- Supported paper sizes for the input trays and duplexer
- Supported paper types for the input trays and duplexer
- Supported paper sizes for the finishing accessories
- Supported paper types for the finishing accessories

Supported paper sizes for the input trays and duplexer

NOTE: To obtain the best results, select the correct paper size and type in the print driver before printing.

Table 1-1 Supported paper sizes for the input trays and duplexer

Size and dimensions	Tray 1	Tray 2	3x500-sheet trays	3,500-sheet high-capacity trays	Automatic duplex printing
Letter 279 x 216 mm (11 x 8.5 in)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Letter Rotated 216 x 279 mm (8.5 x 11 in)	✓	✓	✓		✓
Legal 216 x 356 mm (8.5 x 14 in)	✓	✓	✓		✓
Executive 267 x 184 mm (10.5 x 7.3 in)	✓	✓	✓		✓
Statement 216 x 140 mm (8.5 x 5.5 in)	✓				✓
Oficio (8.5 x 13) 216 x 330 mm (8.5 x 13 in)	✓	✓	✓		✓
11 x 17 279 x 432 mm (11 x 17 in)	✓	✓			✓
12 x 18 305 x 457 mm (12 x 18 in)	✓		✓		✓
3 x 5 76 x 127 mm (3 x 5 in)	✓				
4 x 6 101 x 152 mm (4 x 6 in)	✓				
5 x 7 127 x 178 mm (5 x 7 in)	✓				
5 x 8 127 x 203 mm (5 x 8 in)	✓				
A3 297 x 420 mm (11.7 x 16.5 in)	✓	✓	✓		✓
A4 297 x 210 mm (11.7 x 8.3 in)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓

Table 1-1 Supported paper sizes for the input trays and duplexer (continued)

Size and dimensions	Tray 1	Tray 2	3x500-sheet trays	3,500-sheet high-capacity trays	Automatic duplex printing
A4 Rotated 210 x 297 mm (8.3 x 11.7)	✓	✓	✓		✓
A5 148 x 210 mm (5.8 x 8.3 in)	✓	✓	✓		✓
A6 105 x 148 mm (4.2 x 5.8 in)	✓				
RA3 305 x 430 mm (12 x 17 in)	✓		✓		✓
RA4 215 x 305 mm (8.5 x 12 in)	✓		✓		✓
SRA3 320 x 450 mm (12.6 x 17.7 in)	✓		✓		✓
SRA4 225 x 320 mm (8.9 x 12.6 in)	✓	✓	✓		✓
B4 (JIS) 257 x 364 mm (10.1 x 14.3 in)	✓	✓	✓		✓
B5 (JIS) 257 x 182 mm (10.1 x 7.2 in)	✓	✓	✓		✓
B6 (JIS) 128 x 182 mm (5.1 x 7.2 in)	✓				
Oficio (216 x 340) 215.9 x 340 mm (8.5 x 13.4 in)	✓	✓	✓		✓
8K 270 x 390 mm 270 x 390 mm (10.6 x 15.4 in)	✓	✓	✓		✓
16K 195 x 270 mm 270 x 195 mm (10.6 x 7.7 in)	✓	✓	✓		✓
8K 260 x 368 mm 260 x 368 mm (10.2 x 14.5 in)	✓	✓	✓		✓
16K 184 x 260 mm 260 x 184 mm (10.2 x 7.2 in)	✓	✓	✓		✓
8K 273 x 394 mm 273 x 394 mm (10.8 x 16 in)	✓	✓	✓		✓

Table 1-1 Supported paper sizes for the input trays and duplexer (continued)

Size and dimensions	Tray 1	Tray 2	3x500-sheet trays	3,500-sheet high-capacity trays	Automatic duplex printing
16K 197 x 273 mm 273 x 197 mm (10.8 x 7.8 in)	✓	✓	✓		✓
D Postcard (JIS) 148 x 200 mm (5.8 x 7.9 in)	✓				
Envelope #9 98 x 225 mm (3.9 x 8.9 in)	✓				
Envelope #10 105 x 241 mm (4.1 x 9.5 in)	✓				
Envelope Monarch 98 x 191 mm (3.9 x 7.5 in)	✓				
Envelope B5 176 x 250 mm (6.9 x 9.8 in)	✓				
Envelope C5 162 x 229 mm (6.4 x 9 in)	✓				
Envelope C6 114 x 162 mm (4.5 x 6.4in)	✓				
Envelope DL 110 x 220 mm (4.3 x 8.7 in)	✓				
Custom 76 x 127 mm to 320 x 457 mm (3.0 x 5.0 in to 12.6 x 18.0 in)	✓				
Custom 148 x 210 mm to 297 x 432 mm (5.9 x 8.3 in to 11.6 x 17 in)		✓			
Custom 148 x 210 mm to 320 x 457 mm (5.9 x 8.3 in to 12.6 x 18.0 in)			✓		
Custom 175 x 210 mm to 320 x 457 mm (6.9 x 8.3 in to 12.6 x 18.0 in)					✓

Supported paper types for the input trays and duplexer

Tray 1, Tray 2, and the 3x500-sheet trays support several types of paper in the following weight range: 60-220 g/m^2 (16-58 lb).

The 3,500-sheet high-capacity trays support cut-sheet paper in the following weight range: 60-120 g/m^2 (16-32 lb).

The automatic duplex printing unit supports paper in the following weight range: 60-220 g/m^2 (16-58 lb).

NOTE: To obtain the best results, select the correct paper size and type in the print driver before printing.

Table 1-2 Supported paper types

Paper type	Tray 1	Tray 2	3x500-sheet trays	3,500-sheet high-capacity trays	Automatic duplex printing
Cut-sheet paper	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Labels	✓	✓	✓		
Transparencies	✓	✓			
Glossy paper	✓	✓			✓
Glossy film	✓	✓			
Photo paper	✓	✓			
Envelopes	✓				

Supported paper sizes for the finishing accessories

NOTE: For paper dimensions, see Supported paper sizes for the input trays and duplexer on page 5

Table 1-3 Supported paper sizes for the finishing accessories

Size	Stacking (Portrait)	Stacking (Landscape)	Staple (Corner)	Staple (Saddle)	Hole punch 2 holes	Hole punch 3–4 holes	Booklet
Letter		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Letter Short-edge feed	✓		✓	✓	✓		✓
Legal	✓		✓	✓	✓		✓
Executive		✓					
Executive Short-edge feed	✓						
Statement	✓						
Oficio (8.5 x 13)	✓		✓	✓	✓		✓
11 x 17	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
12 x 18	✓						
3 x 5							
4 x 6	✓						
5 x 7	✓						
5 x 8	✓						
A3	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
A4		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
A4 Short-edge feed	✓		✓	✓	✓		✓
A5	✓	✓					
A6	✓						
RA3	✓						
RA4	✓	✓					
SRA3	✓						
SRA4	✓	✓					
B4 (JIS)	✓		✓	✓			
B5 (JIS)		✓					

Table 1-3 Supported paper sizes for the finishing accessories (continued)

Size	Stacking (Portrait)	Stacking (Landscape)	Staple (Corner)	Staple (Saddle)	Hole punch 2 holes	Hole punch 3–4 holes	Booklet
B5 (JIS) Short-edge feed	✓						
B6 (JIS)	✓						
Oficio (216 x 340)	✓		✓	✓	✓		✓
8K 270 x 390 mm	✓		✓	✓			
16K 195 x 270 mm		✓					
16K 195 x 270 mm Short-edge feed	✓						
8K 260 x 368 mm	✓						
16K 184 x 260 mm		✓					
16K 184 x 260 mm Short-edge feed	✓						
8K 273 x 394 mm	✓		✓				
16K 197 x 273 mm		✓					
16K 197 x 273 mm Short-edge feed	✓						
D Postcard (JIS)	✓	✓					
Envelope #9	✓						
Envelope #10	✓						
Envelope Monarch	✓						
Envelope B5	✓						
Envelope C5	✓						
Envelope C6	✓						

Table 1-3 Supported paper sizes for the finishing accessories (continued)

Size	Stacking (Portrait)	Stacking (Landscape)	Staple (Corner)	Staple (Saddle)	Hole punch 2 holes	Hole punch 3–4 holes	Booklet
Envelope DL	✓						
Custom Dimensions vary	✓	✓					

Supported paper types for the finishing accessories

NOTE: The number of sheets that can be stapled or folded into booklets varies with the thickness and size of the paper. The numbers in the following table indicate the number of sheets supported for each feature.

Pages pass through the hole punch unit one sheet at a time.

Table 1-4 Supported paper types for the finishing accessories

Type	Stacking in bins 1 or 2	Staples, small sheets of paper	Staples, large sheets of paper	Hole punch	Booklets in bin 3 with one cover sheet	Booklets in bin 3 with no cover sheet
Plain	✓	50	30	✓	14	15
HP EcoSMART Lite	✓	50	30	✓	14	15
HP Matte 90g	✓	44	22	✓	9	10
Light 60-74g	✓	50	30	✓	14	15
Bond	✓	50	30	✓	9	10
Recycled	✓	50	30	✓	14	15
Intermediate 85-95g	✓	50	30	✓	5	6
HP Matte 120g	✓	18	11	✓	4	5
HP Soft Gloss 120g	✓	8	8	✓	4	5
HP Glossy 120g	✓	8	8	✓	4	5
Mid-Weight 96-110g	✓	18	11	✓	4	5
Heavy 111-130g	✓	18	9	✓	4	5
Mid-Weight Glossy 96-110g	✓	8	8	✓	4	5
Heavy Glossy 111-130g	✓	8	8	✓	4	5
HP Matte 150g	✓	13	9	✓	2	3
HP Glossy 150g	✓	5	5	✓		
Extra Heavy 131-175g	✓	12	16	✓	2	3
Extra Heavy Glossy 131-175g	✓			✓		
HP Matte 200g	✓			✓		
HP Glossy 200g	✓			✓		
Cardstock 176-220g	✓			✓		
Card Glossy 176-220g	✓			✓		

Table 1-4 Supported paper types for the finishing accessories (continued)

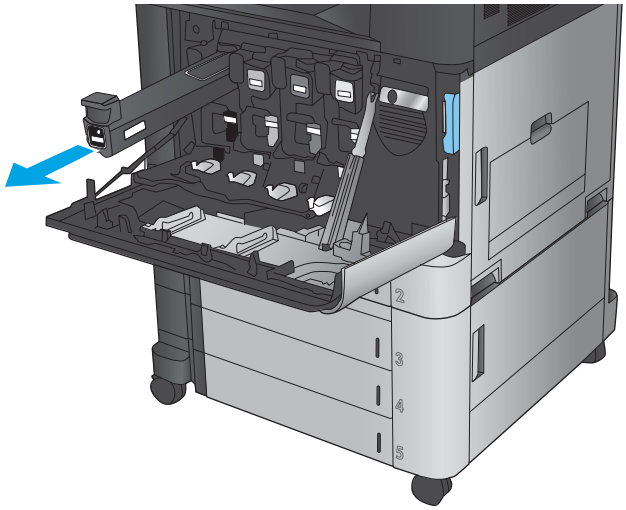
Type	Stacking in bins 1 or 2	Staples, small sheets of paper	Staples, large sheets of paper	Hole punch	Booklets in bin 3 with one cover sheet	Booklets in bin 3 with no cover sheet
Color Transparency	✓					
Labels	✓					
Letterhead	✓	50	30	✓	14	15
Envelope	✓					
Heavy Envelope	✓					
Preprinted	✓	50	30	✓	14	15
Prepunched	✓	50	30			
Colored	✓	50	30	✓	14	15
Rough	✓	50	30	✓	9	10
Heavy Rough	✓	18	11	✓	5	6

Customer-self repair assemblies

Toner cartridge

1. Open the front door.
2. Grasp the handle of the toner cartridge, and then pull out to remove it.

Figure 1-2 Remove the toner cartridge

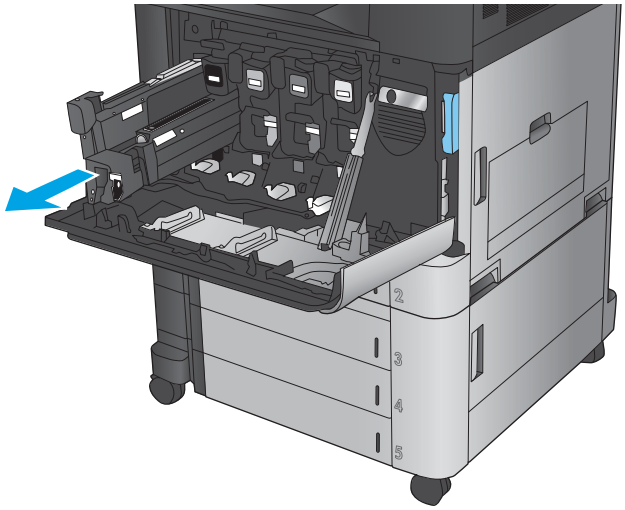


Imaging drum

1. Open the front door.
2. Grasp the handle at the front of the imaging drum, and then slide it out until the blue handle on the top is visible. Grasp the blue handle on the top, and then slide the imaging drum all the way out to remove it.

CAUTION: Do not touch or scratch the green cylinder on the bottom of the drum. While the imaging drum is out of the product, cover the green cylinder with paper to protect it from light exposure.

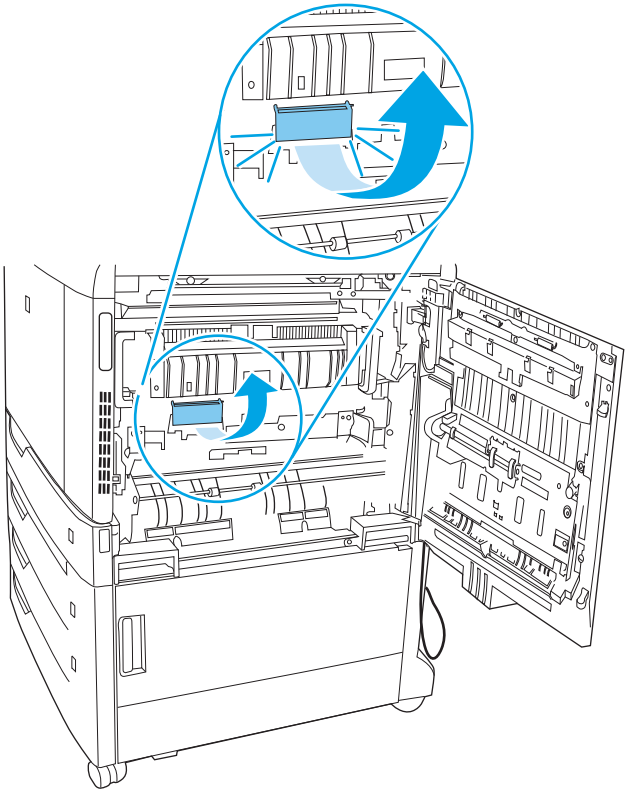
Figure 1-3 Remove the image drum



Secondary transfer roller

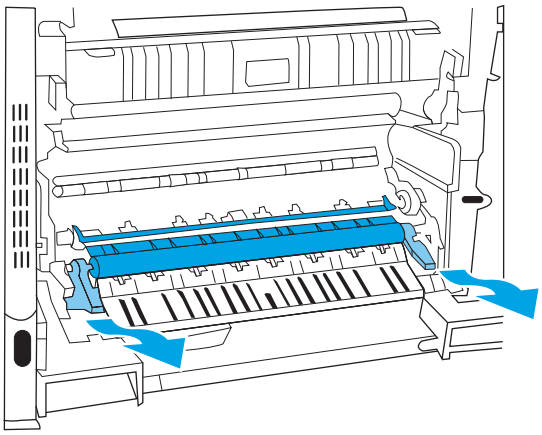
1. Open the right door.
2. Lift the green handle on the transfer assembly, and then open the panel.

Figure 1-4 Remove the secondary transfer roller (1 of 2)



3. Remove the secondary transfer roller.

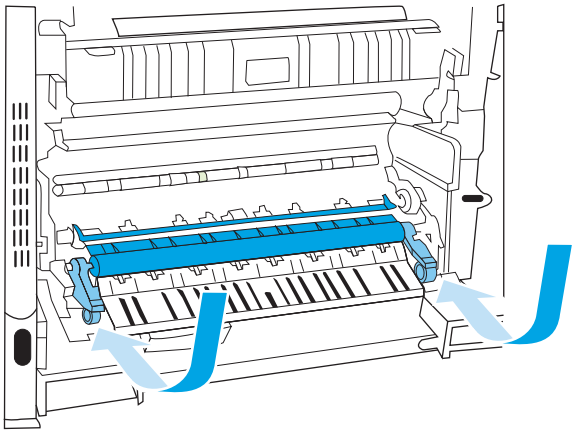
Figure 1-5 Remove the secondary transfer roller (2 of 2)



Reinstall the secondary transfer roller

Align the secondary transfer roller with the slots in the product, and then push until it clicks into place.

Figure 1-6 Reinstall the secondary transfer roller

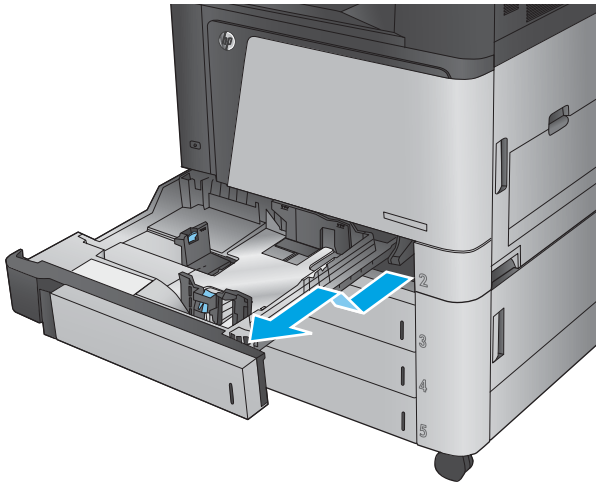


Tray 2, 1x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 4, and 3x500 Tray 5

Slide the tray open until it stops, and then lift up on the front of the tray to release it. Remove the tray.

NOTE: Tray 2 is shown below. The procedure is the same for the 1x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 4, and 3x500 Tray 5.

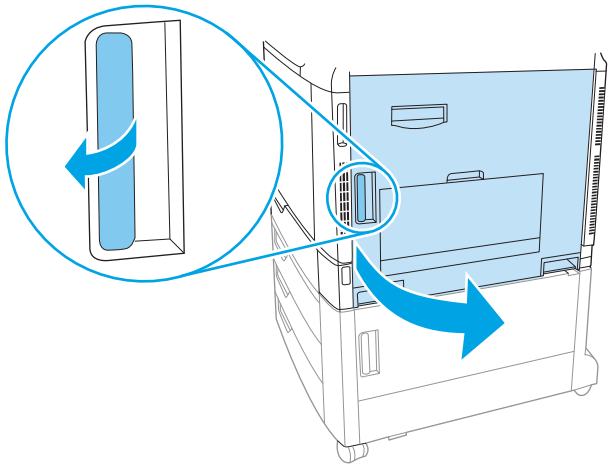
Figure 1-7 Remove Tray 2, 1x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 4, and 3x500 Tray 5



Intermediate transfer belt (ITB)

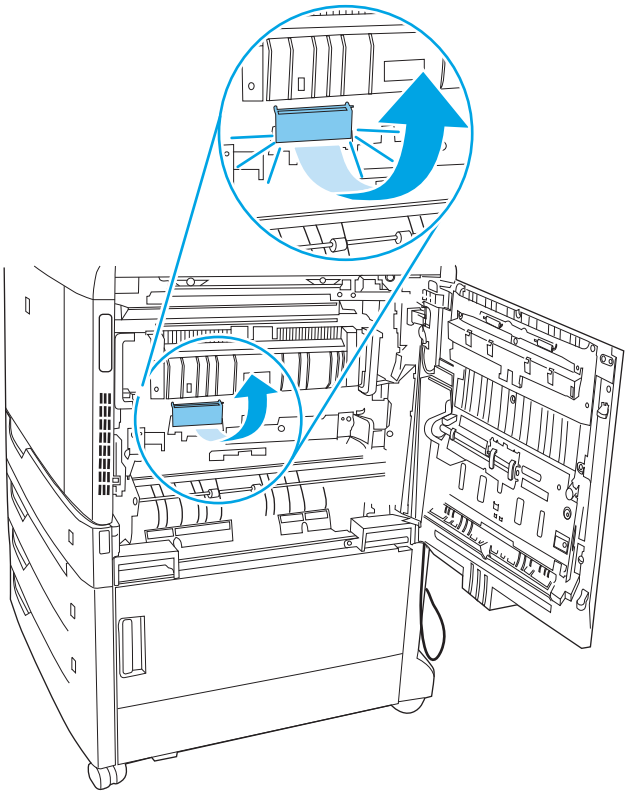
1. Open the right door.

Figure 1-8 Remove the ITB (1 of 4)



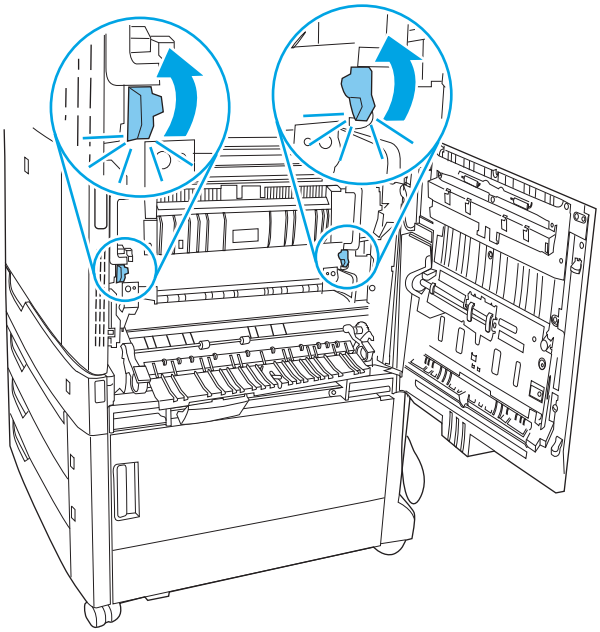
2. Lift the green handle on the transfer assembly, and then open the panel.

Figure 1-9 Remove the ITB (2 of 4)



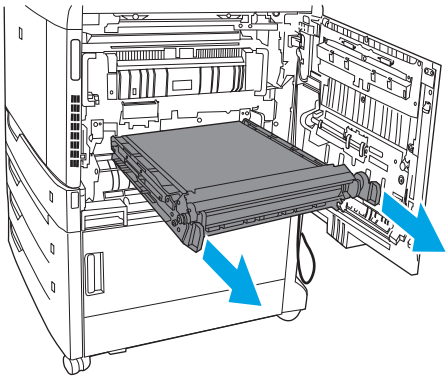
3. Raise the ITB levers.

Figure 1-10 Remove the ITB (3 of 4)



4. Remove the ITB.

Figure 1-11 Remove the ITB (4 of 4)

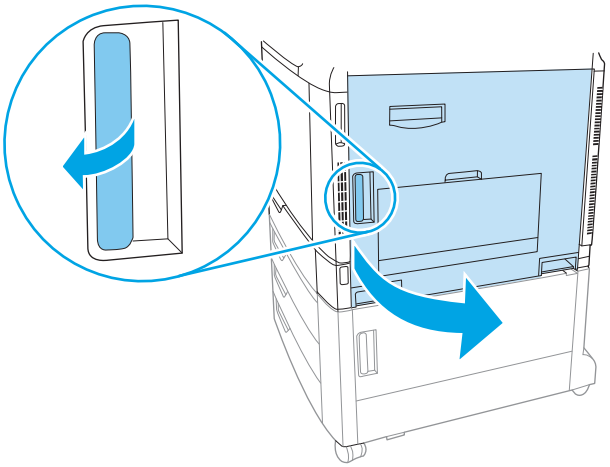


Fuser

WARNING! The fuser might be hot.

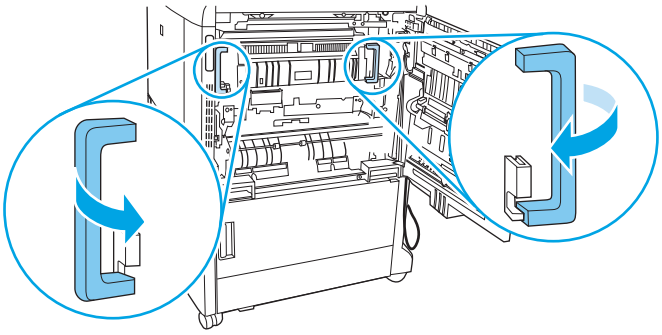
1. Open the right door.

Figure 1-12 Remove the fuser (1 of 3)



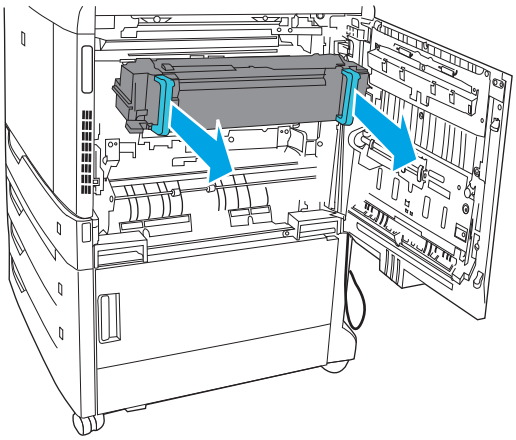
2. Rotate the two blue fuser handles toward the center of the fuser as shown below.

Figure 1-13 Remove the fuser (2 of 3)



3. Grasp the handles and slide the fuser toward the right door to remove it.

Figure 1-14 Remove the fuser (3 of 3)

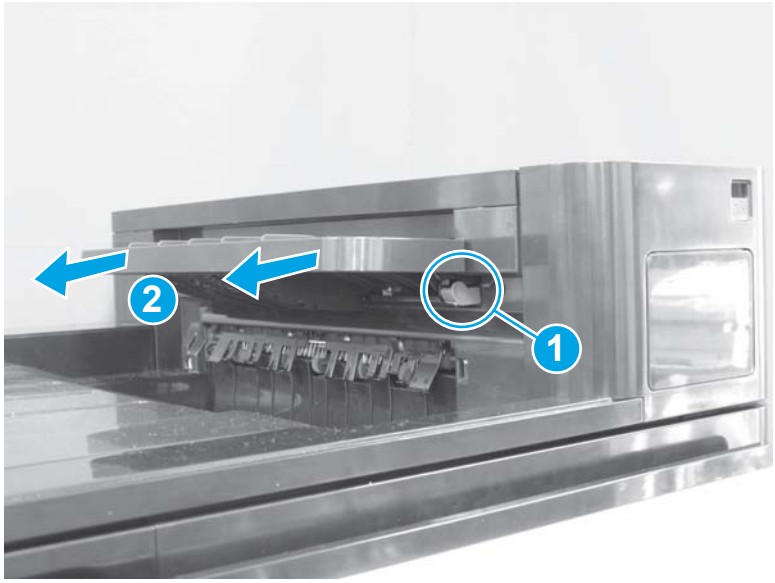


Switch back tray

Press and hold one button (callout 1) while pulling the switch back tray away from the product (callout 2) to remove it.

NOTE: The M855 is shown below. The procedure is the same for the M880.

Figure 1-15 Remove the switch back tray



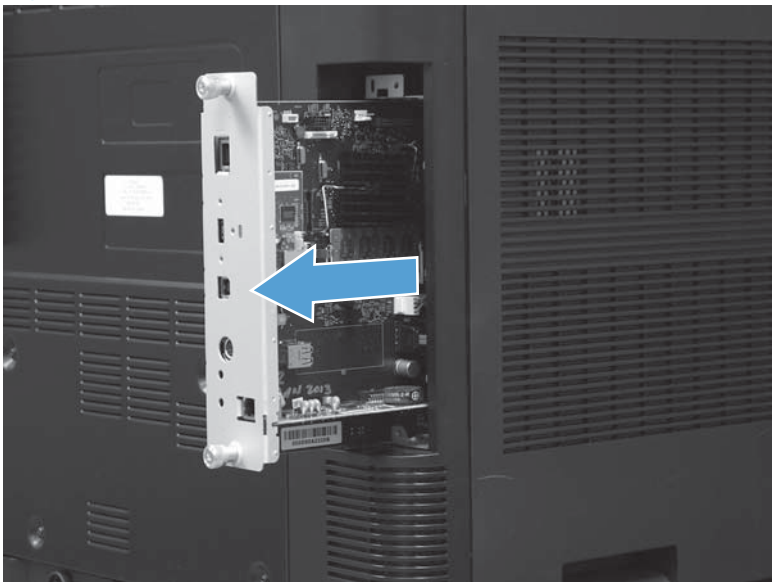
Formatter

1. Loosen two screws.

Figure 1-16 Remove the formatter (1 of 2)

2. Grasp the screws, and then slide the formatter out of the product.

Figure 1-17 Remove the formatter (2 of 2)



Reinstall the formatter or install a replacement formatter

1. Remove the following components from the existing formatter, and then reinstall them on the replacement formatter.

   NOTE: Not all of these components will be installed on the formatter---which components are installed depends on the product configuration. Identify the installed components, remove those components, and then install them on the replacement formatter.

   - Hard-disk drive. See Remove the HDD on page 26.
   - Solid-state memory. See Remove the SSM on page 28.
   - Memory DIMM. See Memory DIMM on page 32.
   - Fax PCA. See Fax PCA (M880) on page 35.

2. Make sure that the formatter is seated completely when reinstalling it. To verify that the formatter is correctly installed, use the power switch to turn on the product power, and then observe the following functions of the LEDs on the formatter.

   - The heartbeat LED (callout 1) illuminates if the formatter is completely seated.
   - The connectivity LED (callout 2) indicates that the formatter is functioning correctly.
     - While the product is initializing, the connectivity LED rapidly blinks, and then turns off.
     - After the initialization sequence is complete, the connectivity LED slowly blinks continuously.

   If the LEDs do not function correctly, see the LED diagnostics section in the product troubleshooting manual.

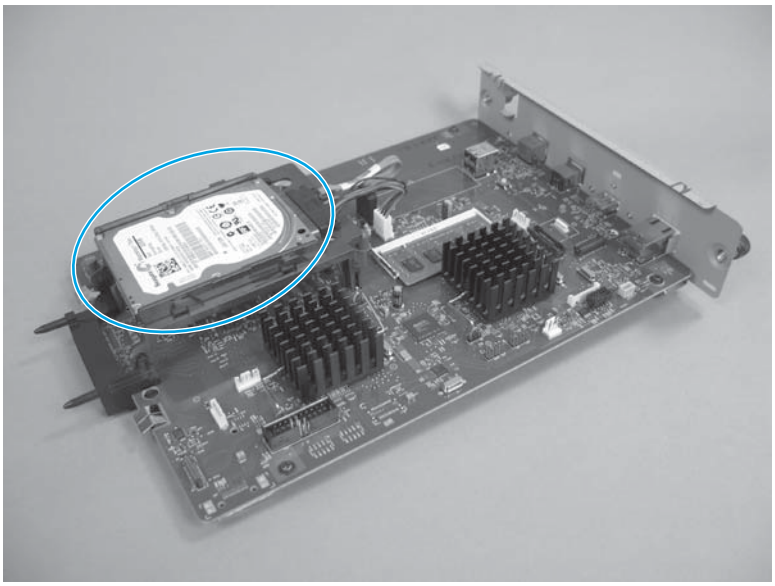
Hard-disk drive (HDD) or solid-state memory (SSM)

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

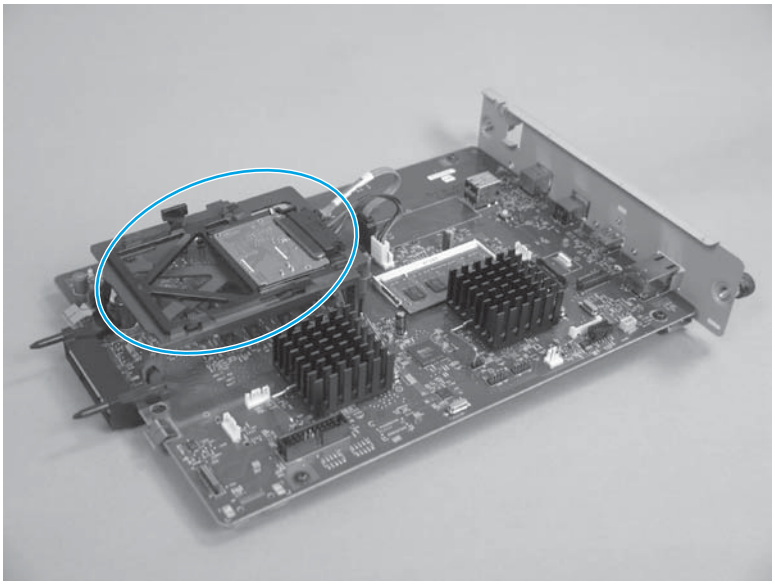
- Formatter. See Formatter on page 23.

Identify the storage device

- Hard-disk drive (HDD). See Remove the HDD on page 26.



- Solid-state memory (SSM). See Remove the SSM on page 28.



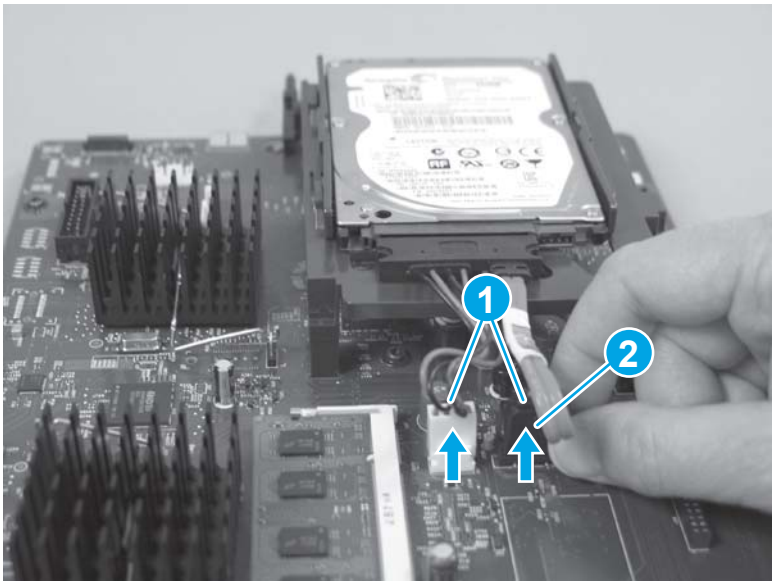
Remove the HDD

⚠ CAUTION: ESD sensitive assembly.

1. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1).

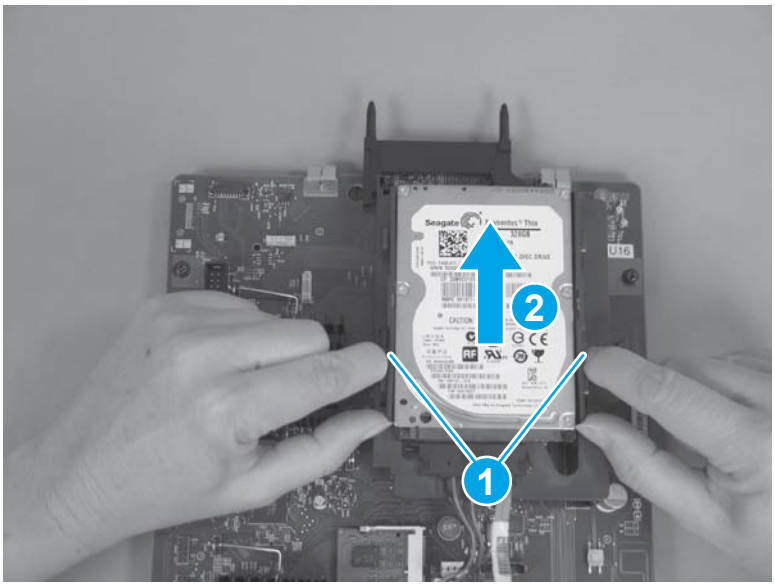
⚠ CAUTION: To disconnect the black connector (callout 2), grasp the connector and pull upward. Do not pull on the cable to disconnect the connector.

Figure 1-18 Remove the HDD (1 of 2)



2. Release two tabs (callout 1), and then slide the HDD out and away from the plastic mounting bracket (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 1-19 Remove the HDD (2 of 2)



Reinstall the HDD

NOTE: If you are installing a replacement drive, you must reinstall the product firmware. See Reinstall the product firmware on page 30.

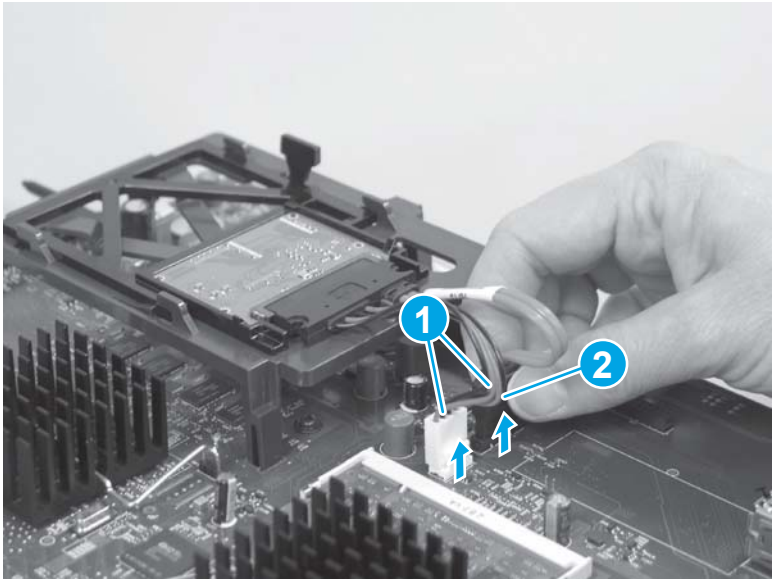
Remove the SSM

⚠ CAUTION: ESD sensitive assembly.

1. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1).

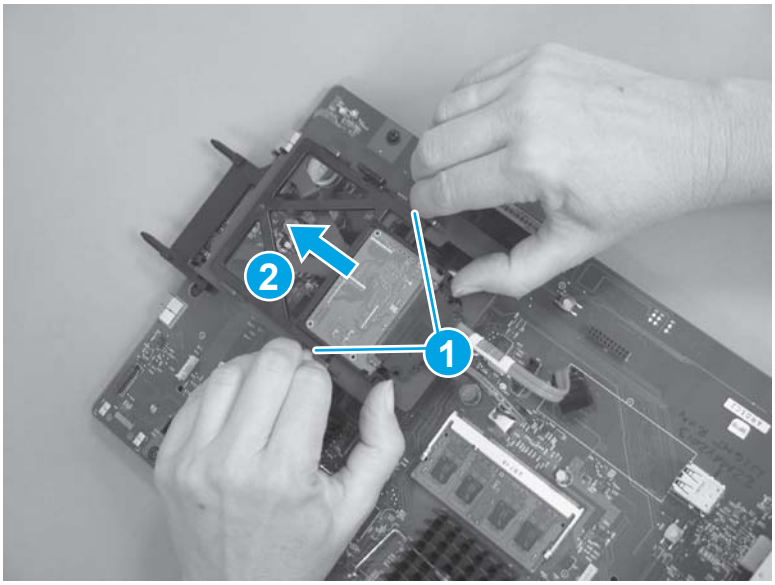
⚠ CAUTION: To disconnect the black connector (callout 2), grasp the connector and pull upward. Do not pull on the cable to disconnect the connector.

Figure 1-20 Remove the SSM (1 of 2)



2. Release two tabs (callout 1), and then slide the solid state memory out and away from the plastic mounting bracket (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 1-21 Remove the SSM (2 of 2)



Reinstall the SSM

NOTE: If you are installing a replacement SSM, you must reinstall the product firmware. See Reinstall the product firmware on page 30.

Reinstall the product firmware

NOTE: If you are installing a replacement HDD or SSM, use the procedure below to reinstall the product firmware on the replacement drive.

If you are removing the HHD or SSM so that it can be installed on a replacement formatter, you can skip this procedure.

1. Locate the product support Web site.
   - **In the US:**
     - Go to www.hp.com/support/colorljM855 or www.hp.com/support/colorljflowMFPM880 .
   - **Outside the US:**
     - Go to http://www.hp.com/support
     - Select your country/region.
     - Select **Product Support & Troubleshooting**
     - Enter the product name, and then select **Search**.
2. Select **Drivers, Software, and Firmware**, and then select **Cross operating system (BIOS, Firmware, Diagnostics, etc.)**.
3. Locate the firmware download, and then select **Download**.
4. Copy the firmware upgrade file to the root directory of a USB flash drive. The firmware upgrade file has a `.bdl` extension.
5. Insert the USB flash drive into the USB port on the product control panel.
6. The following message displays on the control panel: **Error: 99.09.63 Incorrect Disk**. Touch the OK button to continue.
7. Wait for the Pre-Boot menu to appear on the control panel display, and then touch the down arrow ▼ button to scroll to 3 Administrator. Touch the OK button to select it.
8. Touch the down arrow ▼ button to scroll to 6 Manage Disk. Touch the OK button to select it.
9. Touch the down arrow ▼ button to scroll to 4 Clear Disk PWD. Touch the OK button to select it.
10. The message **Proceed with Requested Action** displays. Touch the OK button to select it.
11. Touch the back ⮌ button to return to the Pre-Boot menu home screen.
12. Touch the down arrow ▼ button to scroll to 3 Administrator. Touch the OK button to select it.
13. Touch the down arrow ▼ button to scroll to 1 Download. Touch the OK button to select it.
14. Touch the down arrow ▼ button to scroll to 3 USB Thumbdrive. Touch the OK button to select it.
15. Touch the down arrow ▼ button to scroll to the firmware upgrade file that you downloaded in step 4. Touch the OK button to select it.

NOTE: If no `.bdl` files are listed, try saving the file to a different USB flash drive.

16. Wait while the file transfers. When the transfer is complete, the message **Complete** displays on the screen.
17. Turn the product off, remove the USB flash drive, and then turn the product on. Wait for several minutes while the product initializes.

Memory DIMM

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

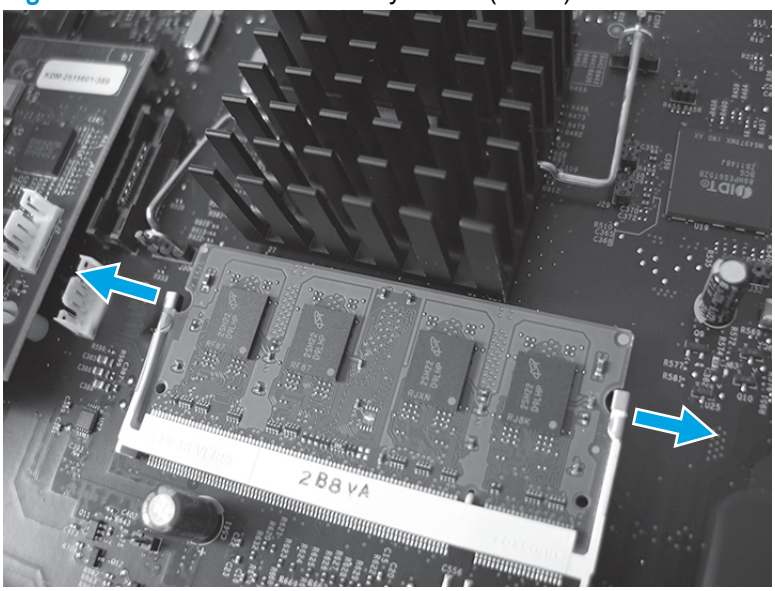
- Formatter. See Formatter on page 23.

Remove the memory DIMM

⚠ CAUTION: ESD sensitive assembly.

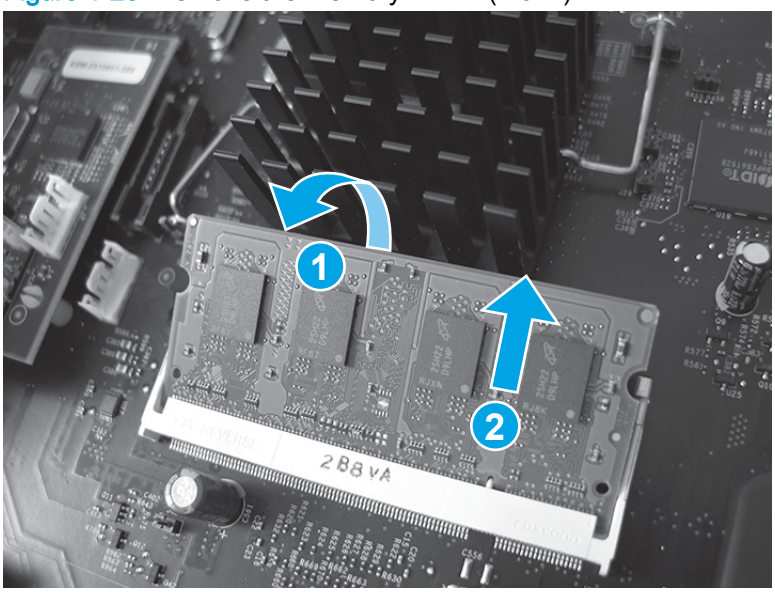
1. Release two clips.

Figure 1-22 Remove the memory DIMM (1 of 2)



2. Rotate the DIMM upward (callout 1), and then remove it (callout 2).

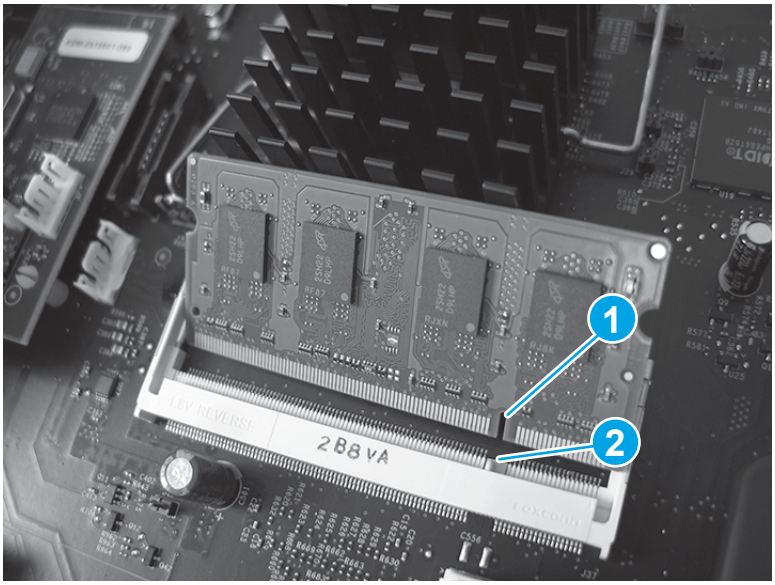
Figure 1-23 Remove the memory DIMM (2 of 2)



Reinstall the memory DIMM

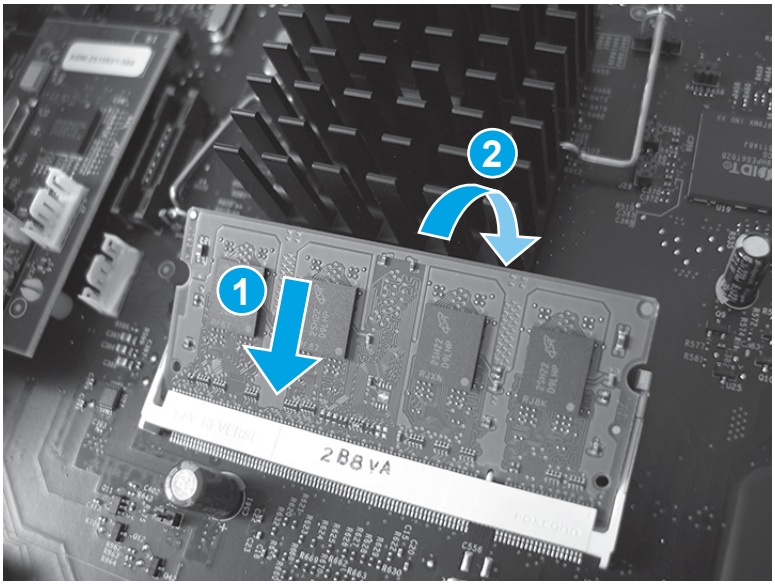
1. Align the notch (callout 1) on the DIMM with the tab (callout 2) on the connector.

Figure 1-24 Reinstall the memory DIMM



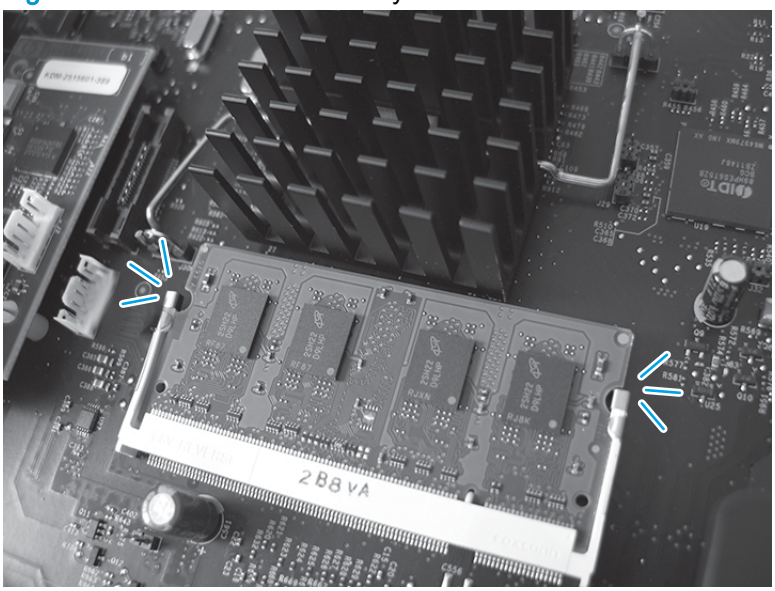
2. Slide the DIMM into the connector (callout 1), and then rotate the DIMM down, toward the formatter. (callout 2).

Figure 1-25 Reinstall the memory DIMM



3. Make sure that the memory DIMM snaps into the holder.

Figure 1-26 Reinstall the memory DIMM



Fax PCA (M880)

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

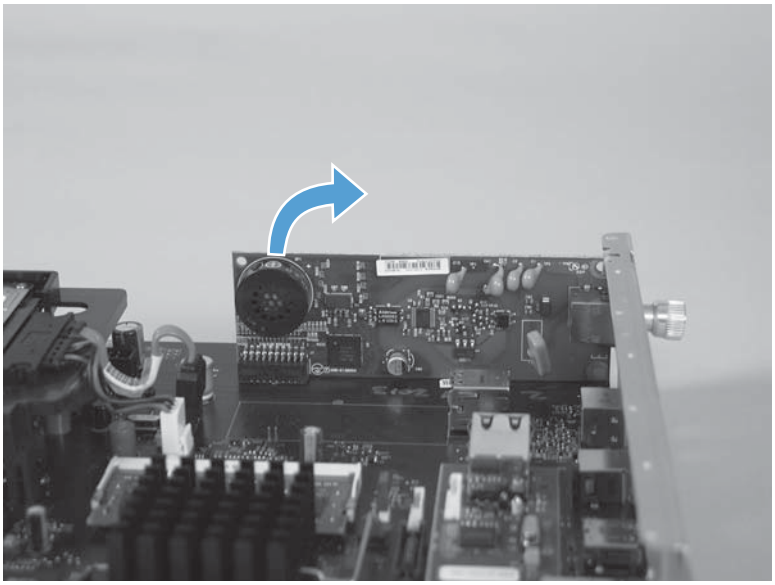
- Formatter. See Formatter on page 23.

Remove the fax PCA (M880)

CAUTION: ESD sensitive assembly.

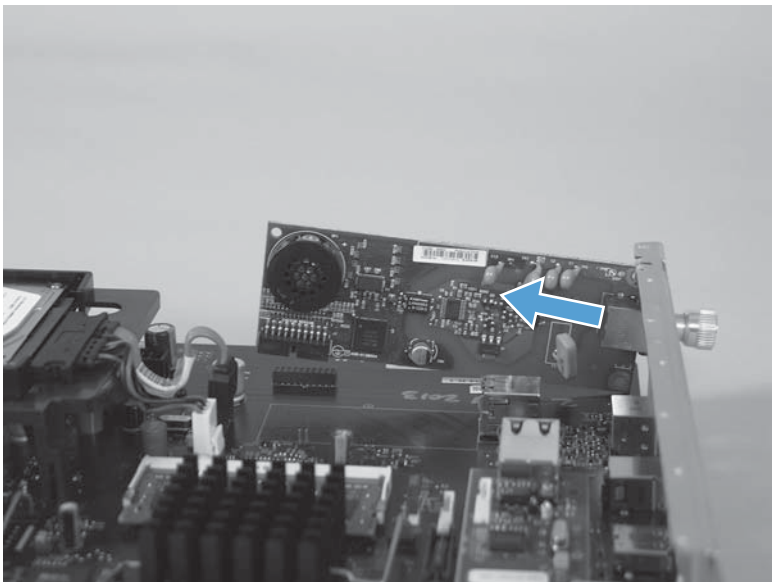
1. Rotate the connector end of the fax PCA up and away from the formatter to release it.

   Figure 1-27 Remove the fax PCA (M880; 1 of 2)

2. Carefully remove the fax PCA from the formatter bracket.

   Figure 1-28 Remove the fax PCA (M880; 2 of 2)

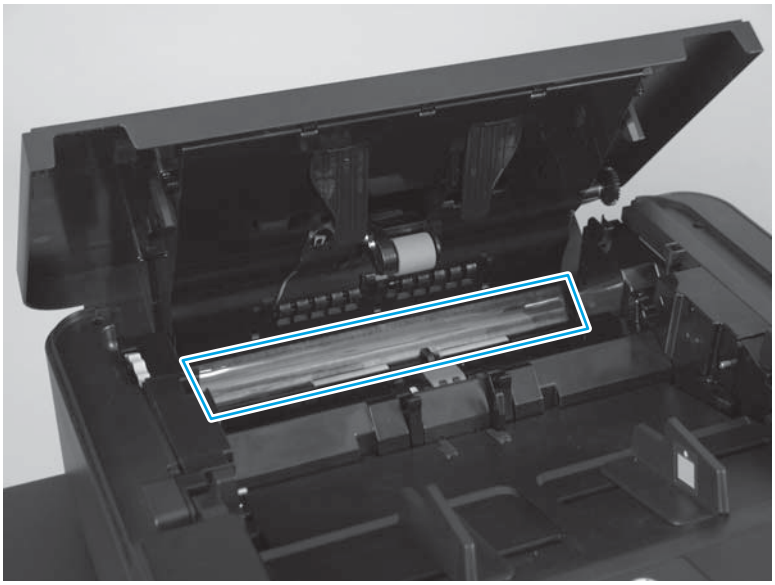
Document feeder mylar strip (M880)

1. Open the document feeder cover.

Figure 1-29 Remove the document feeder mylar strip (M880; 1 of 4)

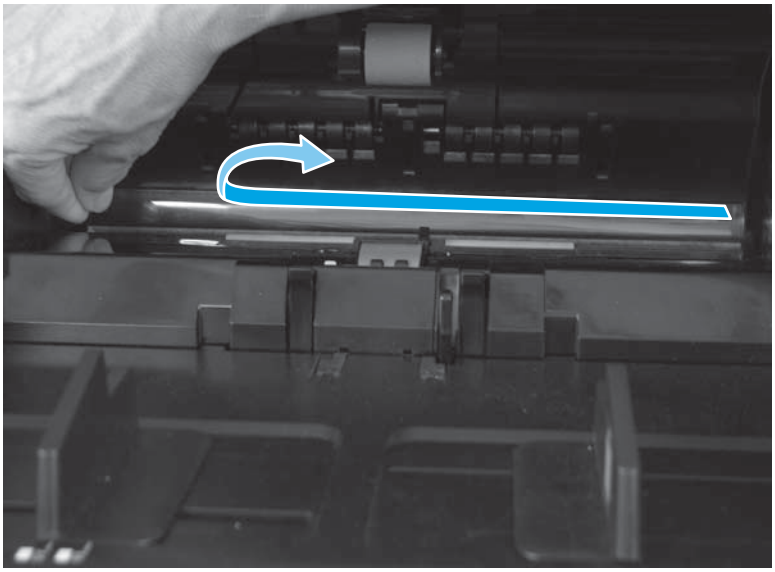
2. Locate the mylar strip.

Figure 1-30 Remove the document feeder mylar strip (M880; 2 of 4)



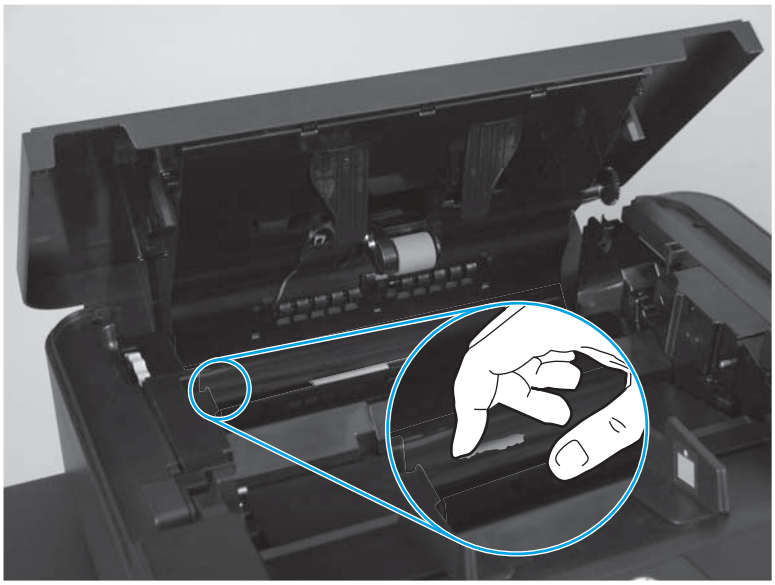
3. Carefully remove the mylar strip.

Figure 1-31 Remove the document feeder mylar strip (M880; 3 of 4)



4. Use your finger to remove any adhesive that remains after removing the mylar strip.

Figure 1-32 Remove the document feeder mylar strip (M880; 4 of 4)



Install a replacement document feeder mylar strip (M880)

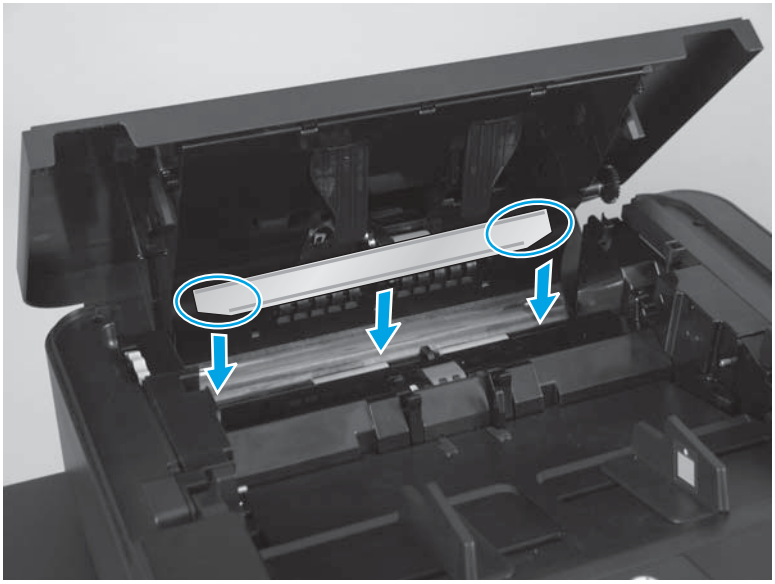
Use the following guidelines when you install the replacement mylar strip:

1. Skin oils on the mylar strip can cause paper pickup problems. Wash your hands before handling the replacement mylar strip.
2. When handling the replacement mylar strip, do not touch the adhesive portion of the strip.

3. Position the replacement mylar strip as shown, with the rounded corners on the strip facing the document tray.

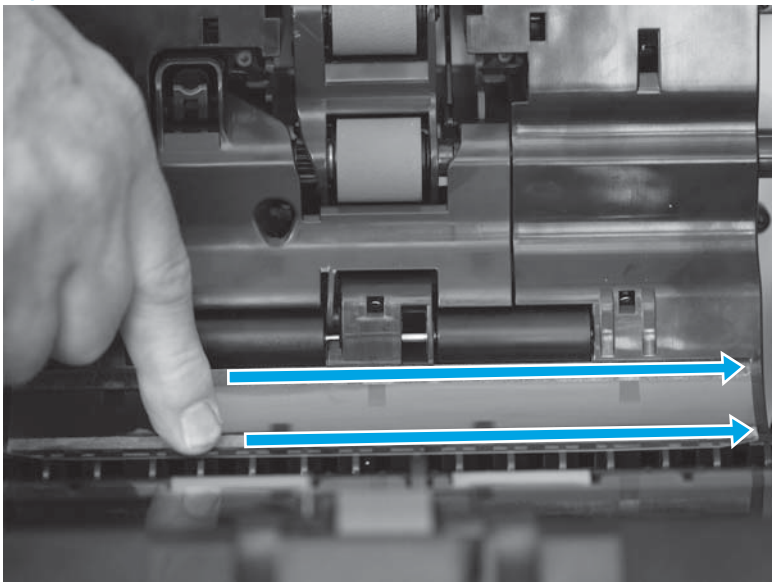
NOTE: Make sure that the adhesive side of the guide is face down.

Figure 1-33 Install a replacement document feeder mylar strip (M880; 1 of 2)



4. Press down firmly on the strip to adhere it to the product.

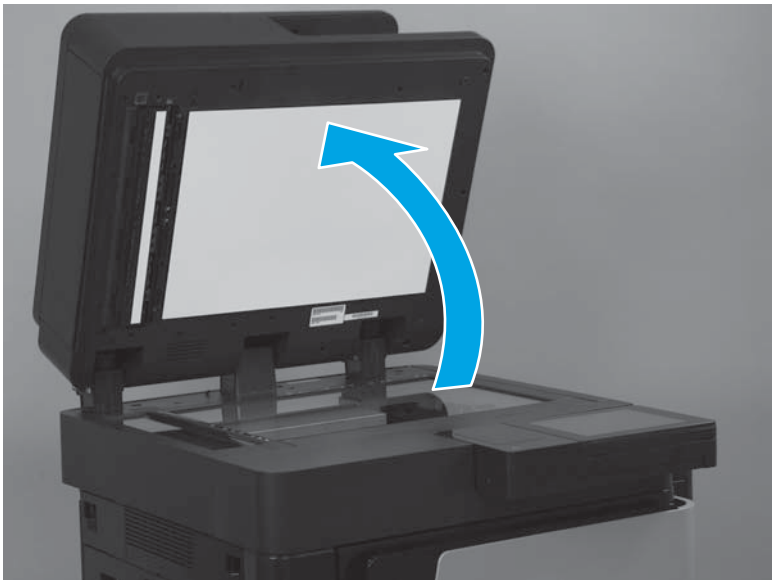
Figure 1-34 Install a replacement document feeder mylar strip (M880; 2 of 2)



Document feeder white backing (M880)

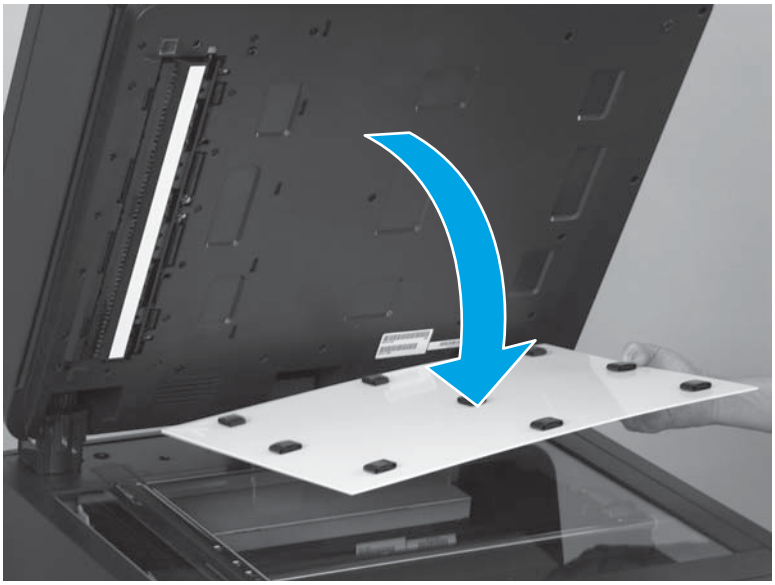
1. Open the document feeder.

Figure 1-35 Remove the document feeder white backing (M880; 1 of 3)



2. Carefully remove the white backing.

Figure 1-36 Remove the document feeder white backing (M880; 2 of 3)



3. Remove any rubber stoppers that might still be attached to the document feeder.

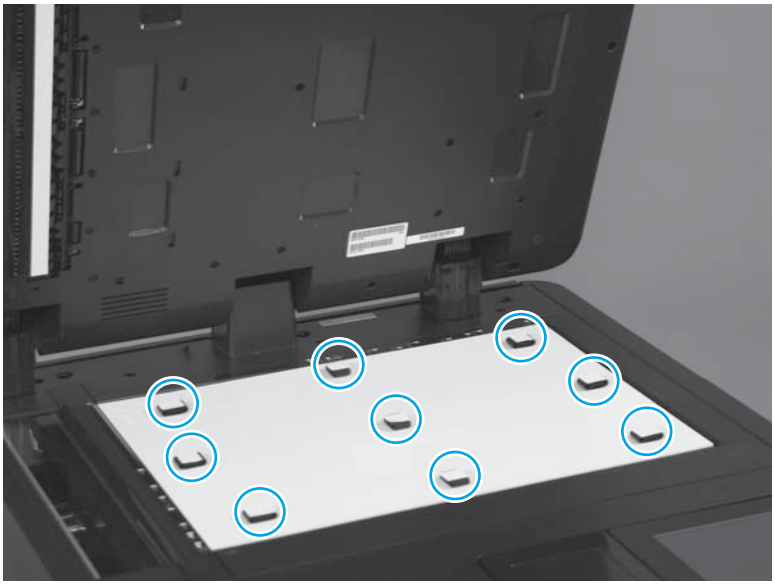
Figure 1-37 Remove the document feeder white backing (M880; 3 of 3)

Install a replacement document feeder white backing (M880)

1. Position the replacement white backing on the scanner glass. Carefully remove the protective backing from the rubber stoppers.

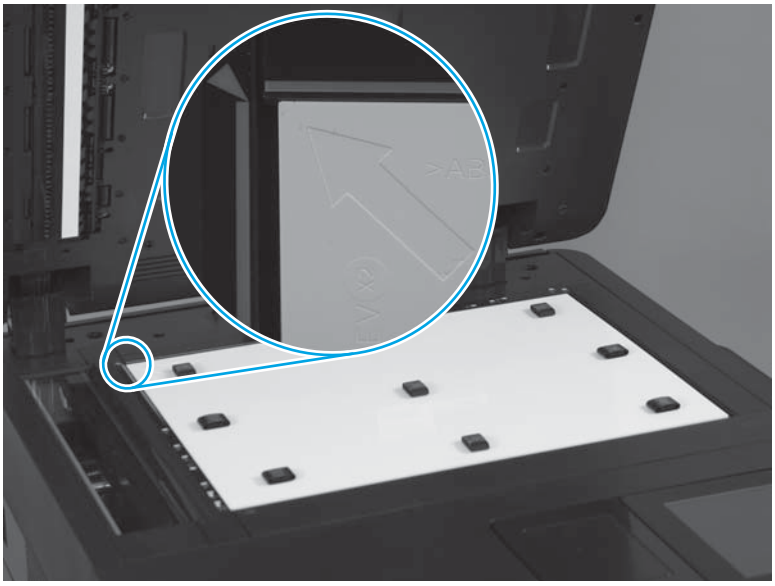
⚠ CAUTION: Do not touch the exposed adhesive.

Figure 1-38 Install a replacement document feeder white backing (M880; 1 of 6)



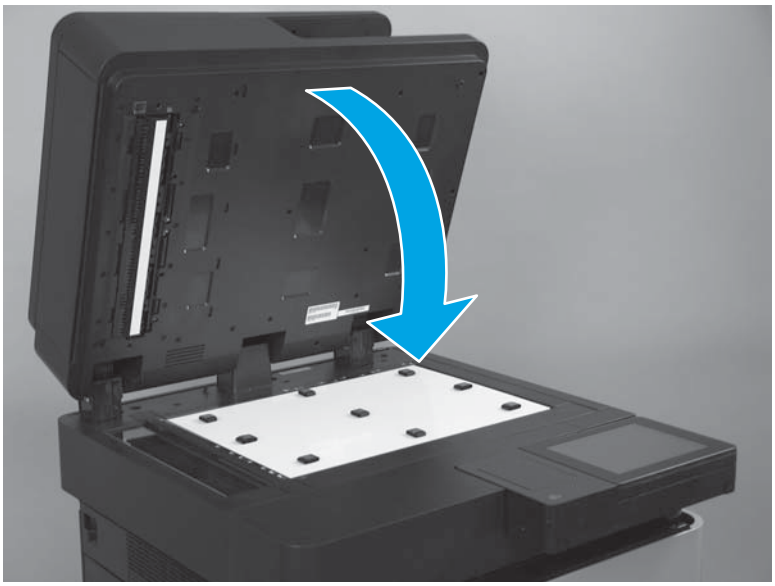
2. Make sure that the arrow on the replacement white backing is positioned in the upper-left corner of the scanner glass.

Figure 1-39 Install a replacement document feeder white backing (M880; 2 of 6)



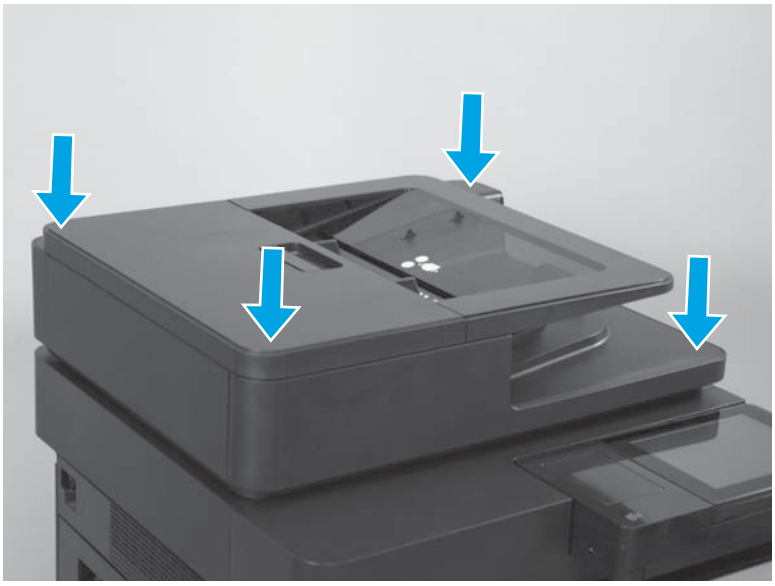
3. Completely close the document feeder.

Figure 1-40 Install a replacement document feeder white backing (M880; 3 of 6)



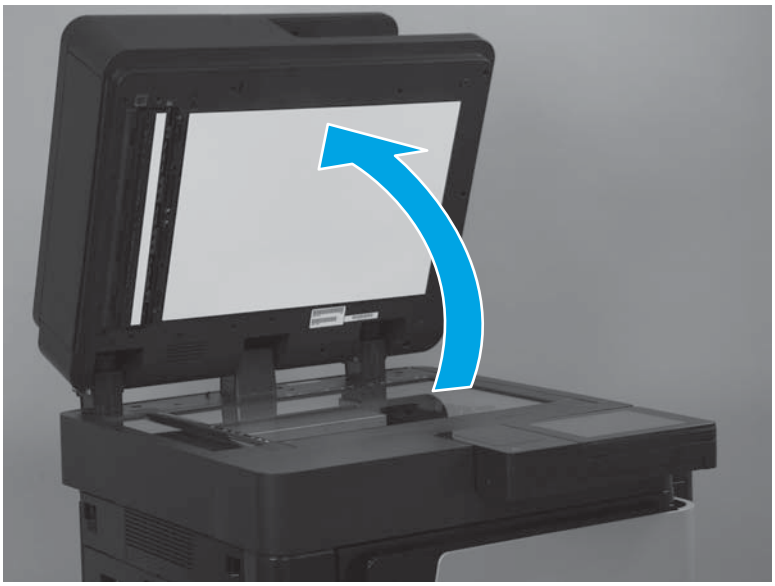
4. Firmly push down on the four corners of the document feeder to adhere the white backing to the document feeder.

Figure 1-41 Install a replacement document feeder white backing (M880; 4 of 6)



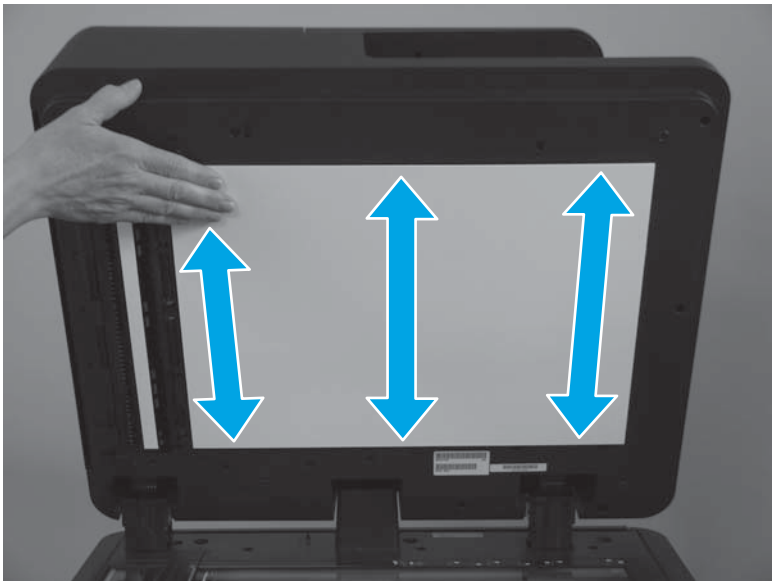
5. Carefully open the document feeder.

Figure 1-42 Install a replacement document feeder white backing (M880; 5 of 6)



6. Firmly press on the white backing over the areas shown below to make sure that the rubber stoppers are completely adhered to the document feeder.

Figure 1-43 Install a replacement document feeder white backing (M880; 6 of 6)



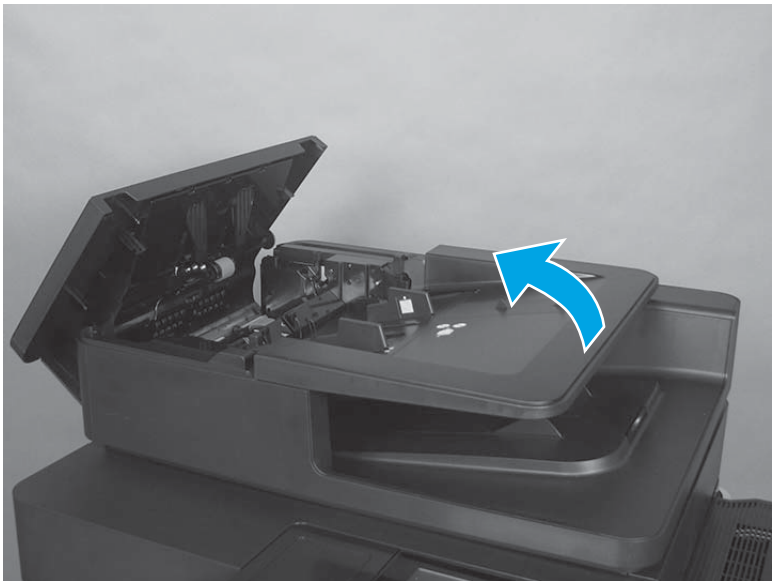
Background selector (M880)

1. Open the document-feeder door.

Figure 1-44 Remove the background selector (M880; 1 of 4)

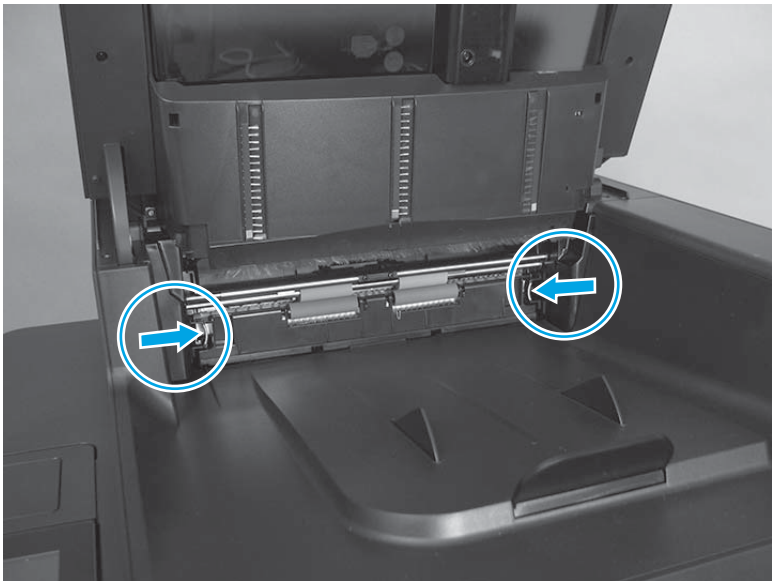
2. Rotate the input tray up.

Figure 1-45 Remove the background selector (M880; 2 of 4)



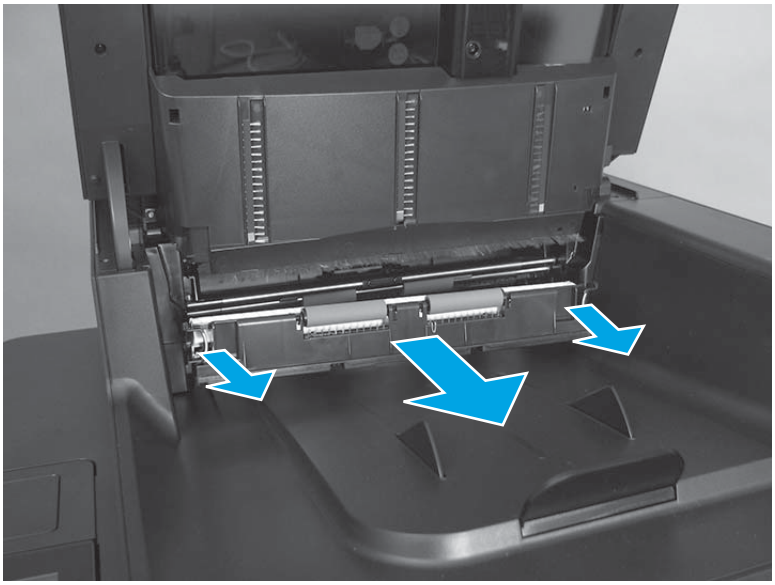
3. Release two tabs.

Figure 1-46 Remove the background selector (M880; 3 of 4)



4. Slide the background selector away from the product to remove it.

Figure 1-47 Remove the background selector (M880; 4 of 4)

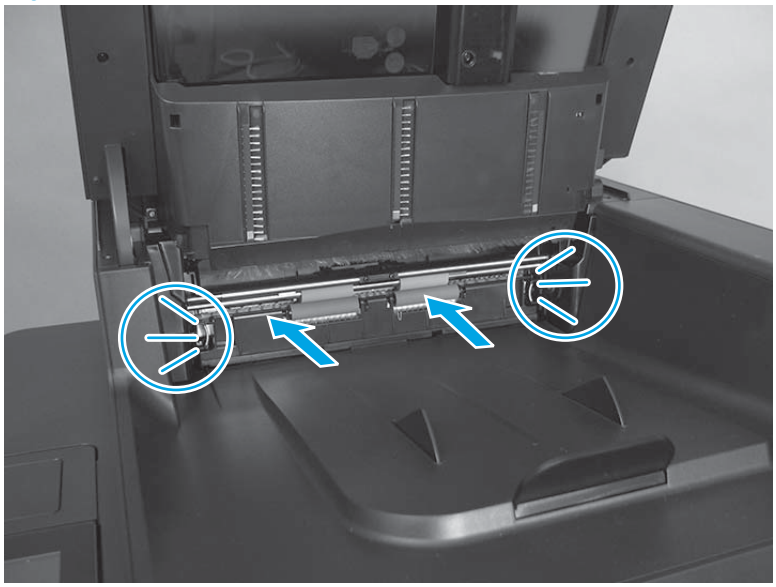


Reinstall the background selector (M880)

Push in on the background selector until the tabs snap into place.

NOTE: If jams occur after the assembly is installed, make sure that the assembly is fully seated.

Figure 1-48 Reinstall the background selector (M880)



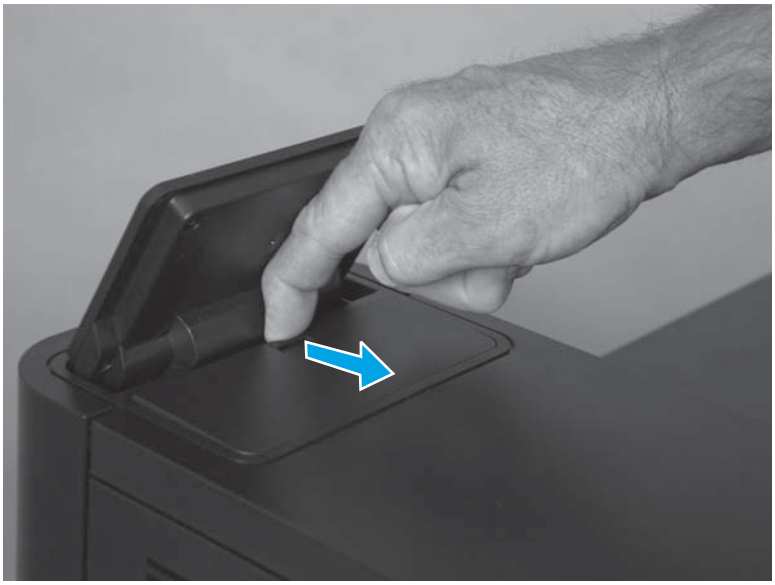
Control panel assembly (M855)

1. Tilt the control panel up.

Figure 1-49 Remove the control panel assembly (M855; 1 of 10)

2. Release one tab.

Figure 1-50 Remove the control panel assembly (M855; 2 of 10)

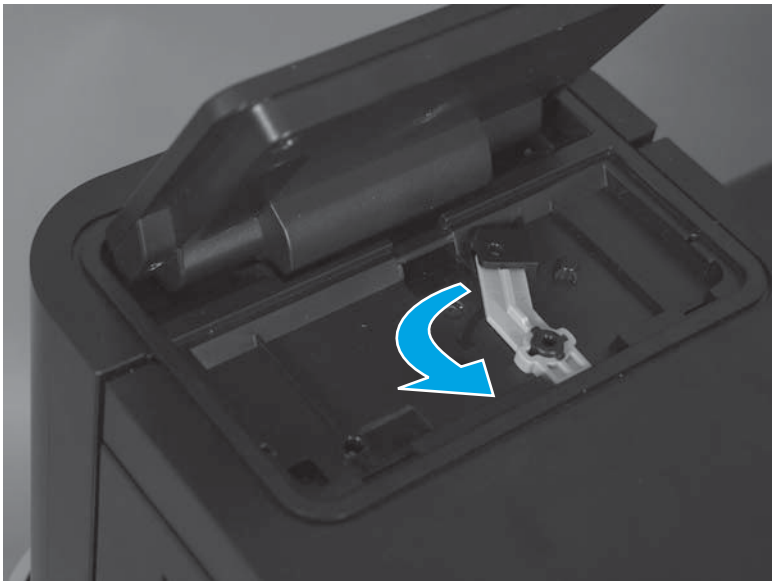


3. Remove the cover.

Figure 1-51 Remove the control panel assembly (M855; 3 of 10)

4. Release one blue locking latch.

Figure 1-52 Remove the control panel assembly (M855; 4 of 10)



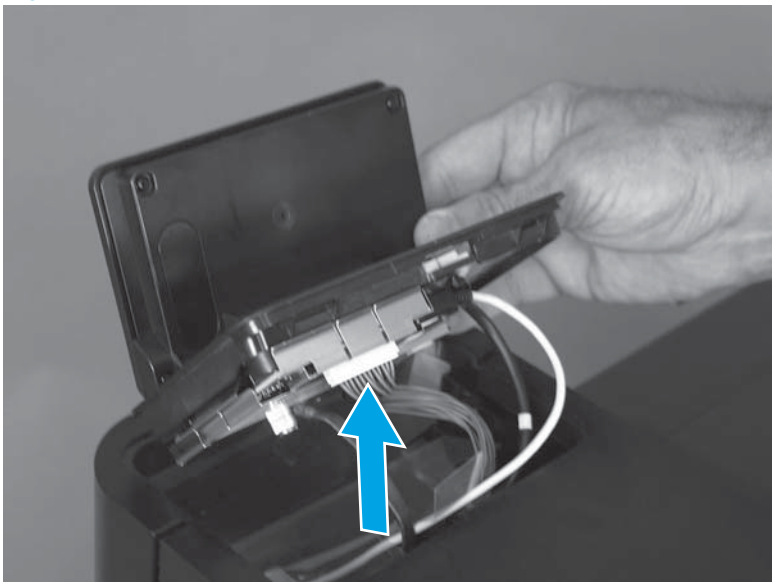
5. Rotate the back of the control panel up and away from the product.

Figure 1-53 Remove the control panel assembly (M855; 5 of 10)

6. Lift the control panel assembly up and off of the product.

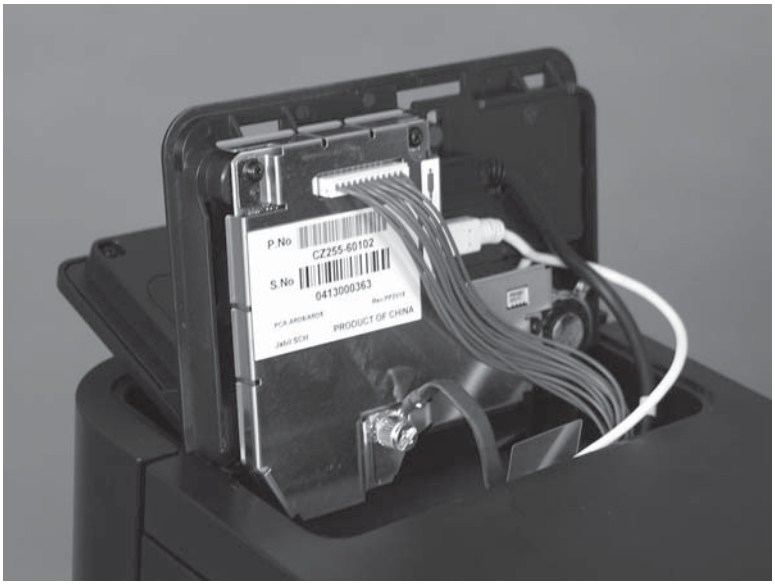
⚠ CAUTION: The control panel is still attached to the product by the control-panel cables. Do not attempt to completely remove the assembly.

Figure 1-54 Remove the control panel assembly (M855; 6 of 10)



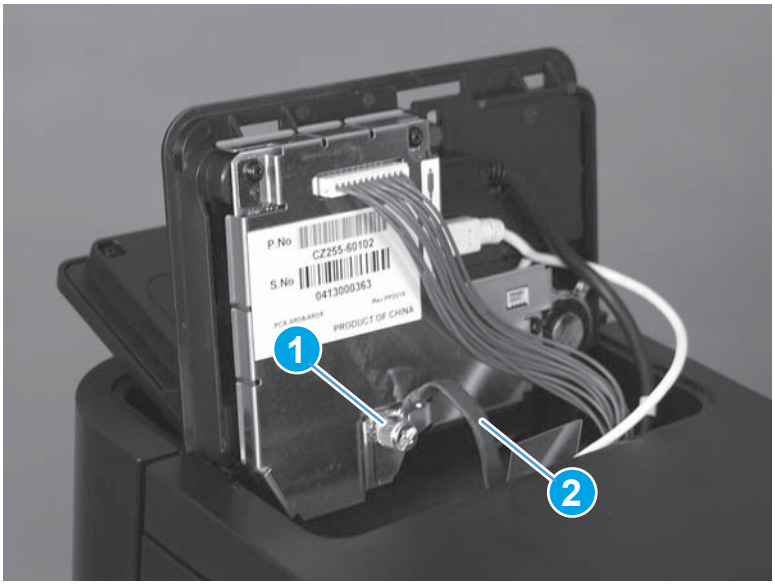
7. Tilt the control panel forward to access the control-panel connectors.

Figure 1-55 Remove the control panel assembly (M855; 7 of 10)



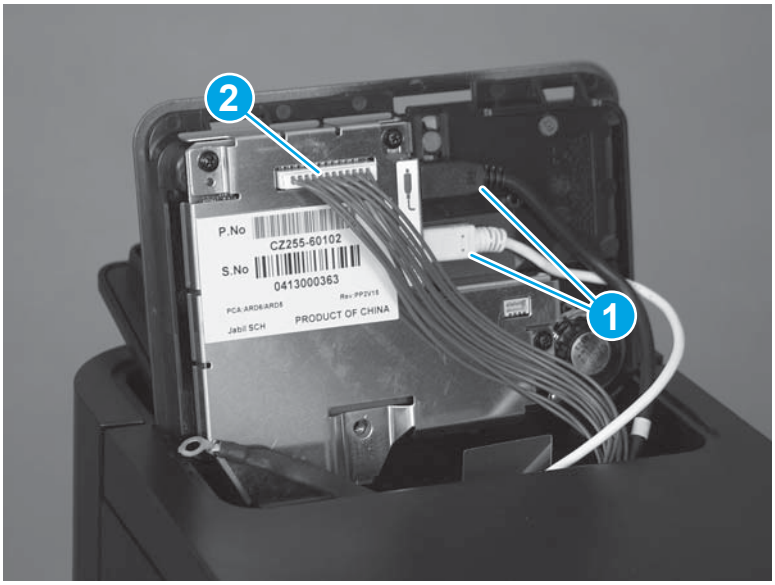
8. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release one ground wire (callout 2).

Figure 1-56 Remove the control panel assembly (M855; 8 of 10)



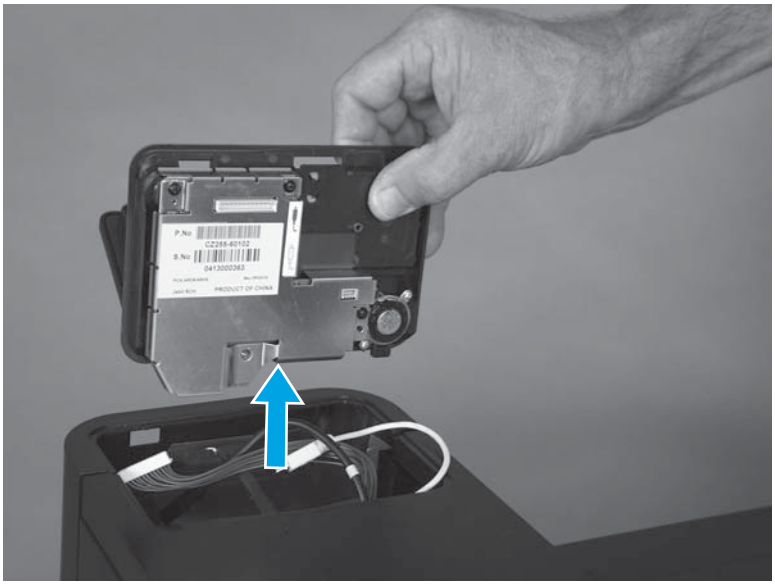
9. Disconnect two USB cables (callout 1), and then disconnect one connector (callout 2).

Figure 1-57 Remove the control panel assembly (M855; 9 of 10)



10. Remove the control panel assembly.

Figure 1-58 Remove the control panel assembly (M855; 10 of 10)



Reinstall the control panel assembly (M855)

Make sure that the USB cables (callout 1) are connected to the correct connectors. See the label (callout 2) next to the connectors.

NOTE: One connector on the control panel is not used and remains empty.

Figure 1-59 Reinstall the control panel (M855)

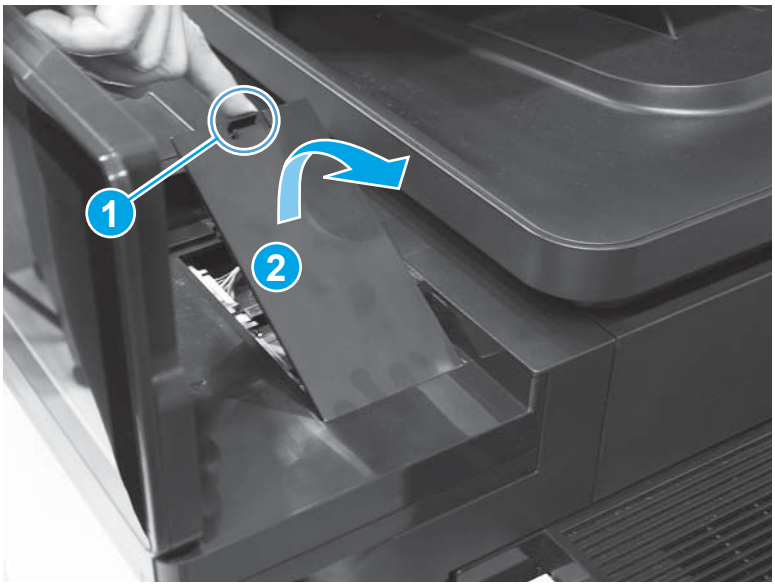
Control panel assembly (M880)

1. Tilt the control panel up.

Figure 1-60 Remove the control panel assembly (M880; 1 of 8)

2. Release one tab (callout 1), and then rotate the cover up (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 1-61 Remove the control panel assembly (M880; 2 of 8)



3. Slide the keyboard about halfway out of the product.

Figure 1-62 Remove the control panel assembly (M880; 3 of 8)

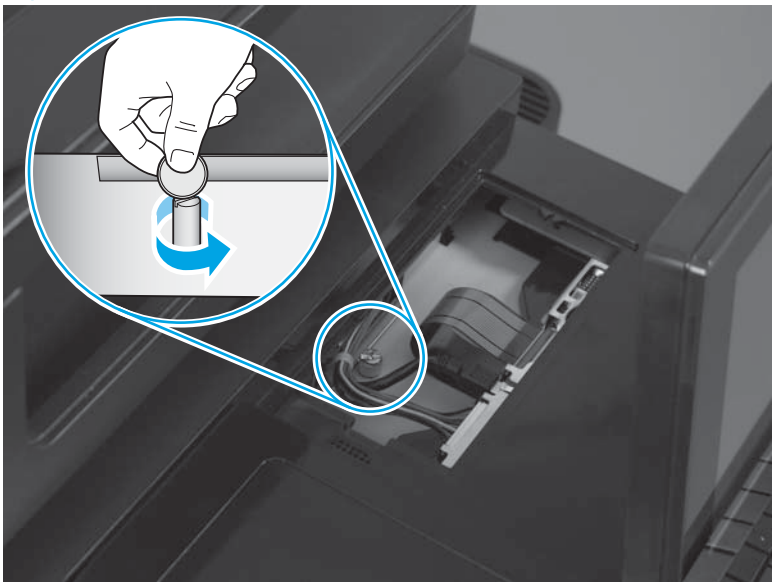
4. Disconnect two connectors.

Figure 1-63 Remove the control panel assembly (M880; 4 of 8)

5. Remove one screw.

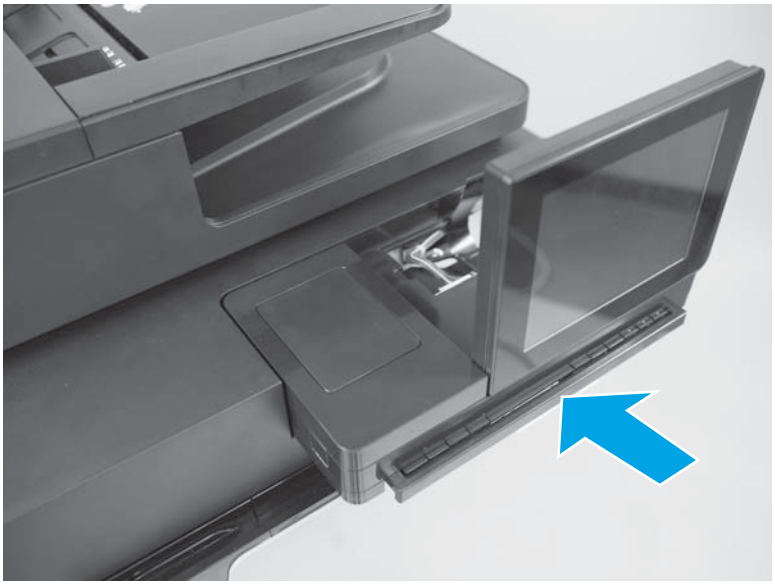
TIP: Use the edge of a coin to loosen the screw.

Figure 1-64 Remove the control panel assembly (M880; 5 of 8)



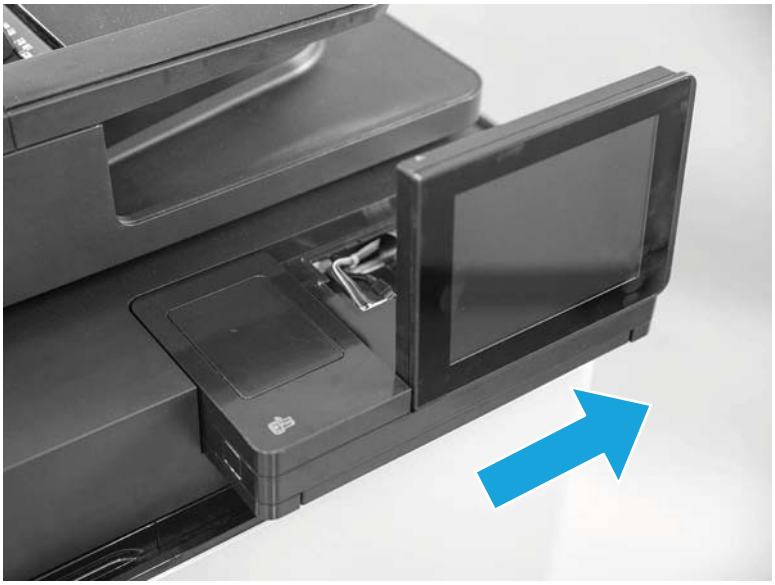
6. Slide the keyboard tray all the way into the product.

Figure 1-65 Remove the control panel assembly (M880; 6 of 8)



7. Slide the control panel toward the right door.

Figure 1-66 Remove the control panel assembly (M880; 7 of 8)

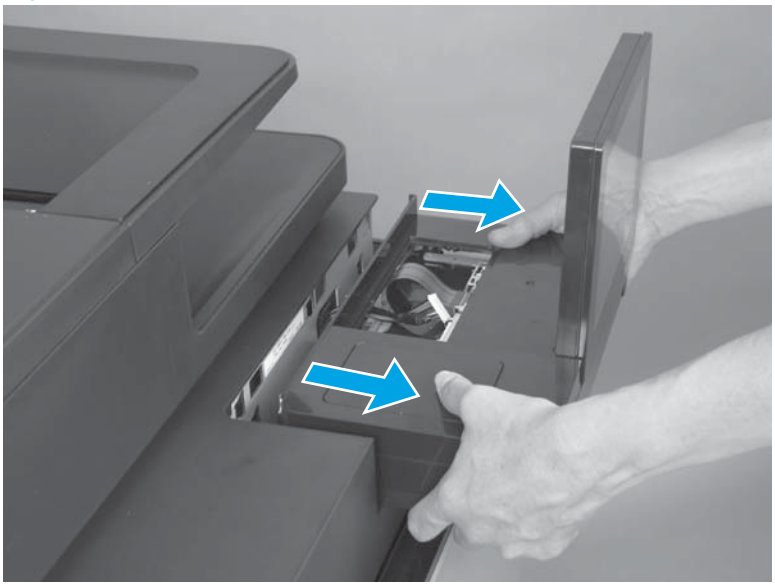


8. Slide the control panel toward the front of the product to remove it.

Reinstallation tip If you are installing a replacement control panel assembly, remove the keyboard assembly so that it can be installed on the replacement control panel assembly. See Keyboard assembly (M880) on page 59.

IMPORTANT: If a device is installed in the hardware integration pocket (HIP), remove the HIP cover. See Hardware integration pocket (HIP) cover (M880) on page 98. Remove the device and transfer it to the replacement control panel.

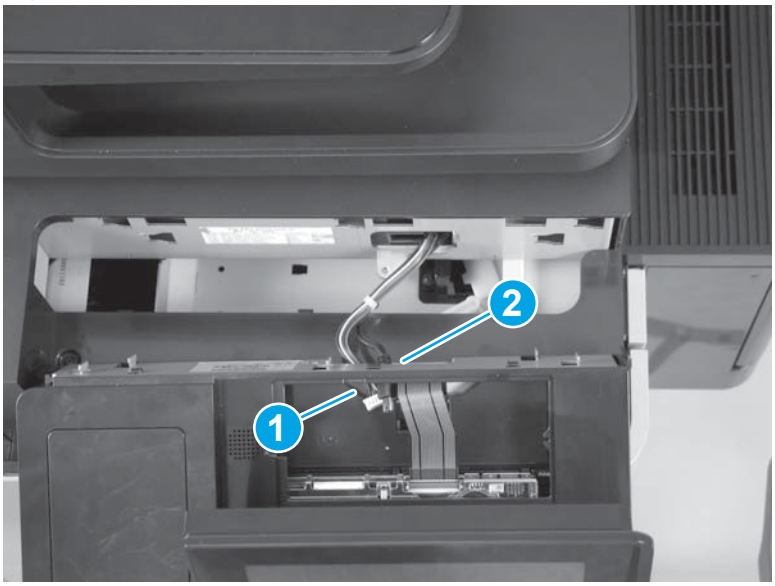
Figure 1-67 Remove the control panel assembly (M880; 8 of 8)



Reinstall the control panel assembly (M880)

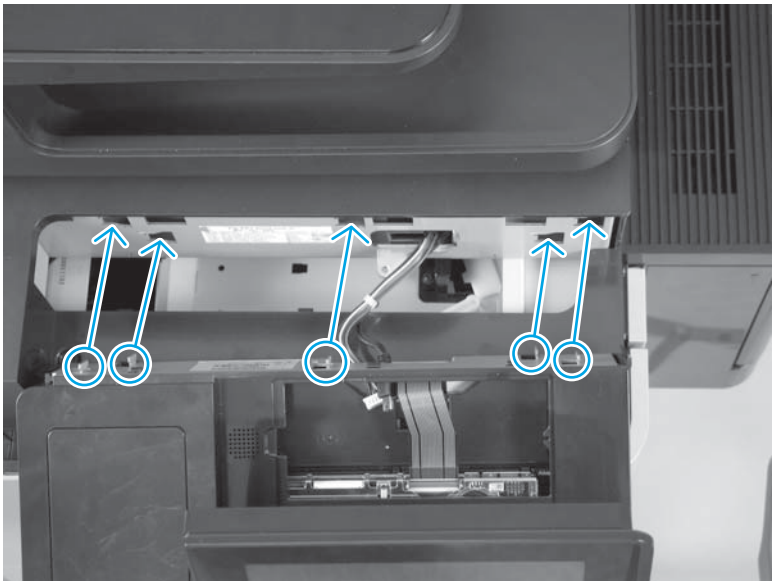
1. Insert the cable and wire harness (callout 1) into the opening at the back of the control panel (callout 2).

Figure 1-68 Reinstall the control panel assembly (M880; 1 of 3)



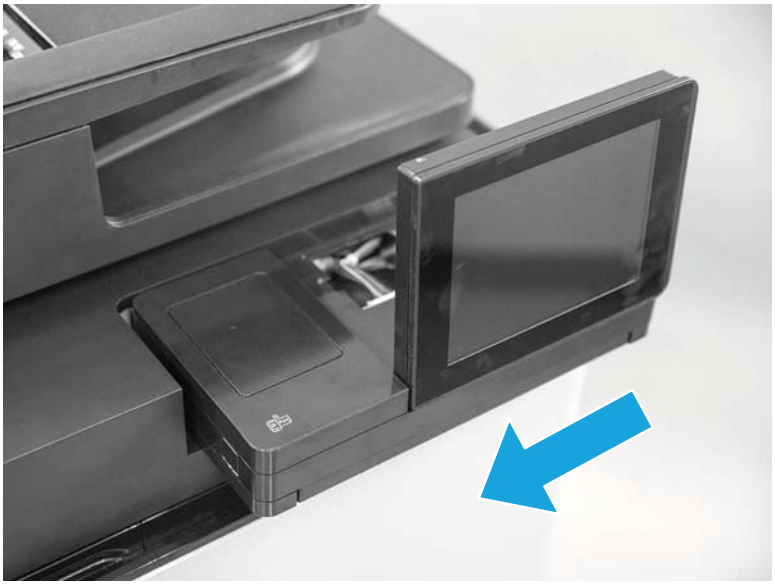
2. Insert the tabs on the control panel into the slots on the product.

Figure 1-69 Reinstall the control panel assembly (M880; 2 of 3)



3. Slide the control panel toward the left door to secure it to the product.

Figure 1-70 Reinstall the control panel assembly (M880; 3 of 3)



Keyboard assembly (M880)

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Control panel (M880). See Control panel assembly (M880) on page 53.

Remove the keyboard assembly (M880)

1. Place the control panel on a flat surface.

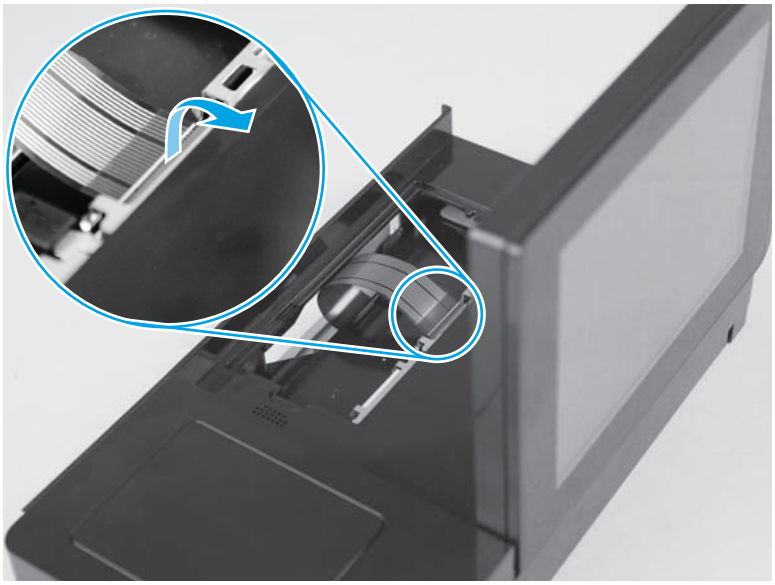
Figure 1-71 Remove the keyboard assembly (M880; 1 of 7)

2. Open the hinged latch to release the flat cable.

⚠ CAUTION: This connector is a Zero Insertion Force (ZIF) connector that uses a hinged retainer to secure a flat cable. The hinged retainer must be opened to release the flat cable.

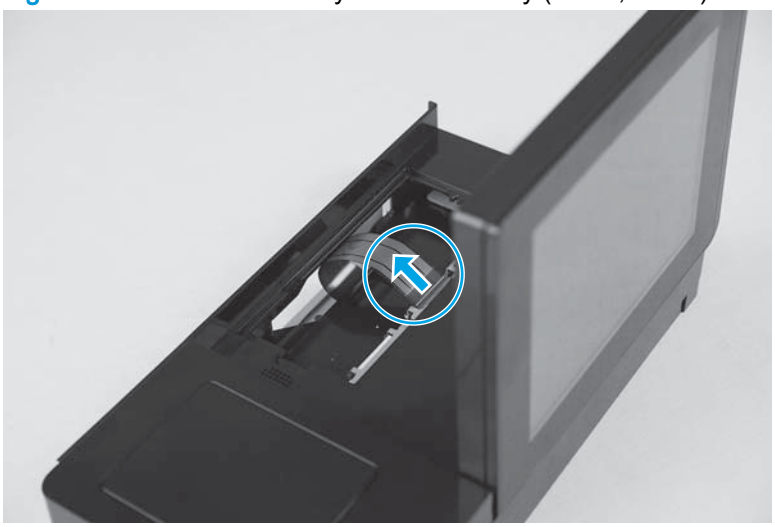
CAUTION: Be careful. Do not dislodge the latch from the connector when opening it.

Figure 1-72 Remove the keyboard assembly (M880; 2 of 7)



3. Disconnect the flat cable.

Figure 1-73 Remove the keyboard assembly (M880; 3 of 7)



4. Tilt the screen down until it lies flat.

Figure 1-74 Remove the keyboard assembly (M880; 4 of 7)

5. Slide the keyboard tray all of the way out of the control panel until it stops.

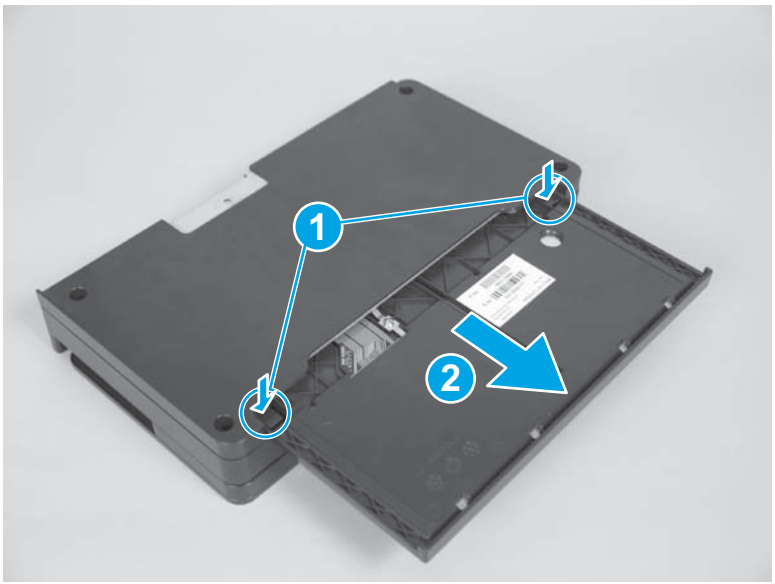
Figure 1-75 Remove the keyboard assembly (M880; 5 of 7)

6. Turn the control panel face-down on the work surface.

Figure 1-76 Remove the keyboard assembly (M880; 6 of 7)

7. Release and hold two tabs (callout 1) while sliding the keyboard tray away from the control panel (callout 2) to remove it.

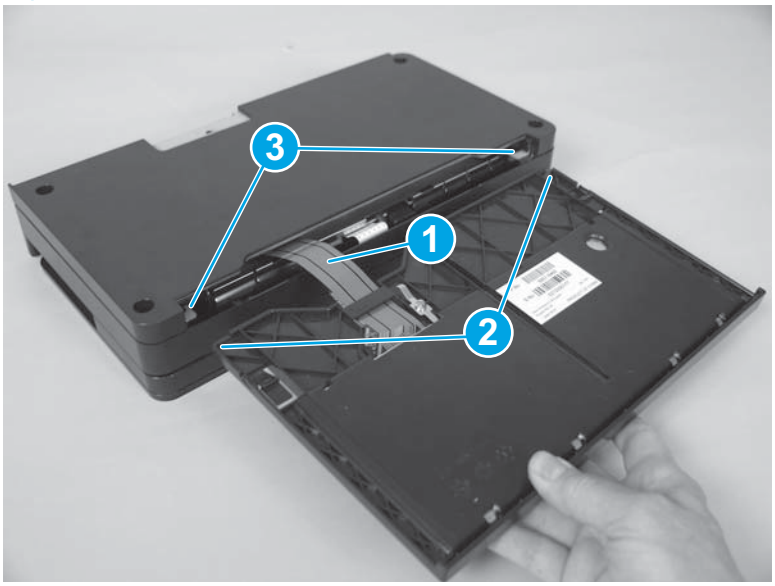
Figure 1-77 Remove the keyboard assembly (M880; 7 of 7)



Reinstall the keyboard assembly (M880)

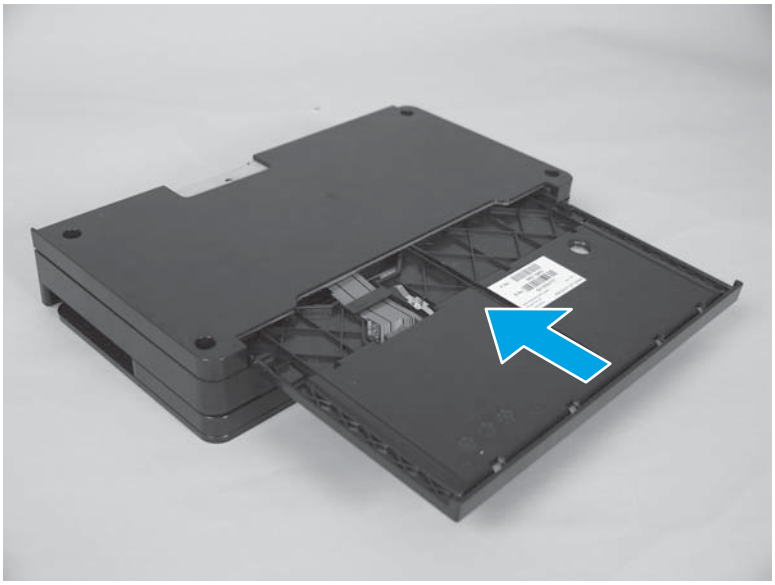
1. Turn the keyboard tray upside down, and then position the flat cable (callout 1) inside the tray cavity. Align the edges of the tray (callout 2) with the slots in the control panel (callout 3).

Figure 1-78 Reinstall the keyboard assembly (M880; 1 of 7)



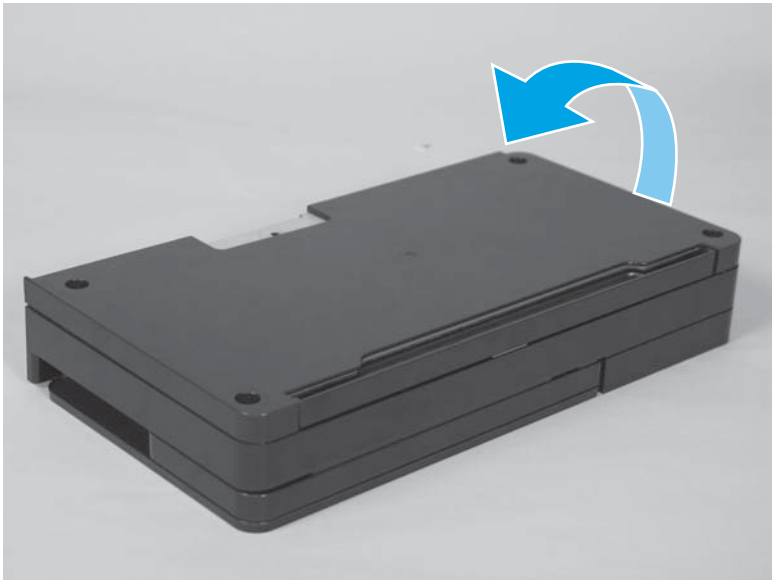
2. Slide the keyboard tray all the way into the control panel. The tabs on the tray snap into place as it is installed.

Figure 1-79 Reinstall the keyboard assembly (M880; 2 of 7)



3. Turn the control panel face-up.

Figure 1-80 Reinstall the keyboard assembly (M880; 3 of 7)



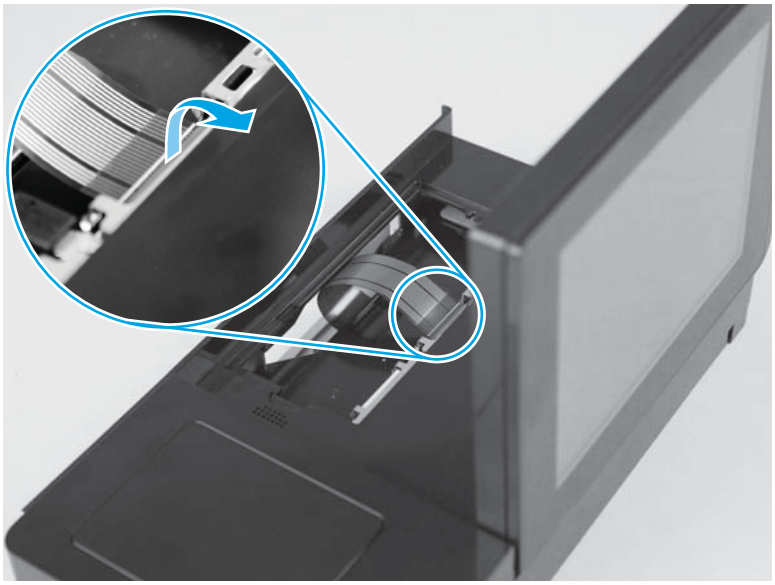
4. Tilt the screen up.

Figure 1-81 Reinstall the keyboard assembly (M880; 4 of 7)

5. Open the hinged latch, and then position the flat cable in the connector.

⚠ **CAUTION:** Be careful. Do not dislodge the latch from the connector when opening it.

Figure 1-82 Reinstall the keyboard assembly (M880; 5 of 7)

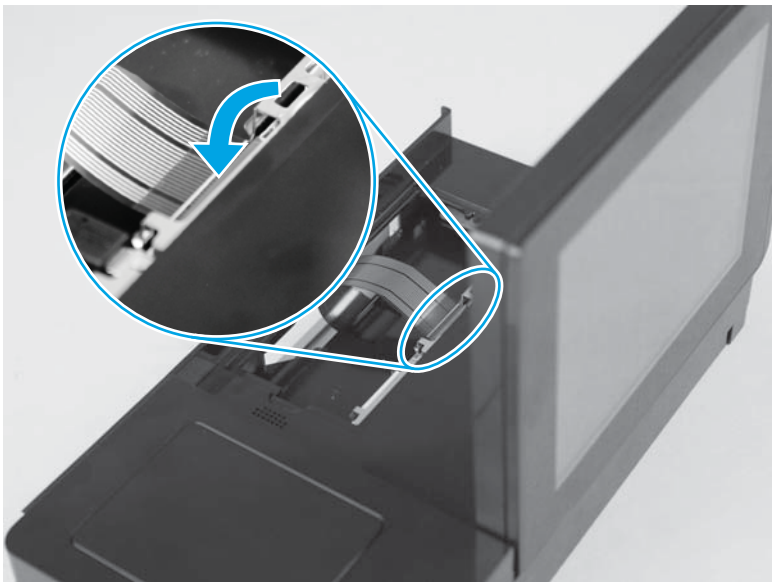


6. Carefully close the latch to lock the flat cable into position.

⚠ **CAUTION:** This connector is a Zero Insertion Force (ZIF) connector that uses a hinged retainer to secure a flat cable. When the flat cable is reinstalled, fully insert the flat cable in the connector, and then close the hinged retainer to lock the flat cable into the connector and provide proper electrical contact. If the flat cable is not locked into the connector, no electrical contact will occur.

CAUTION: Be careful. Do not dislodge the latch from the connector when closing it.

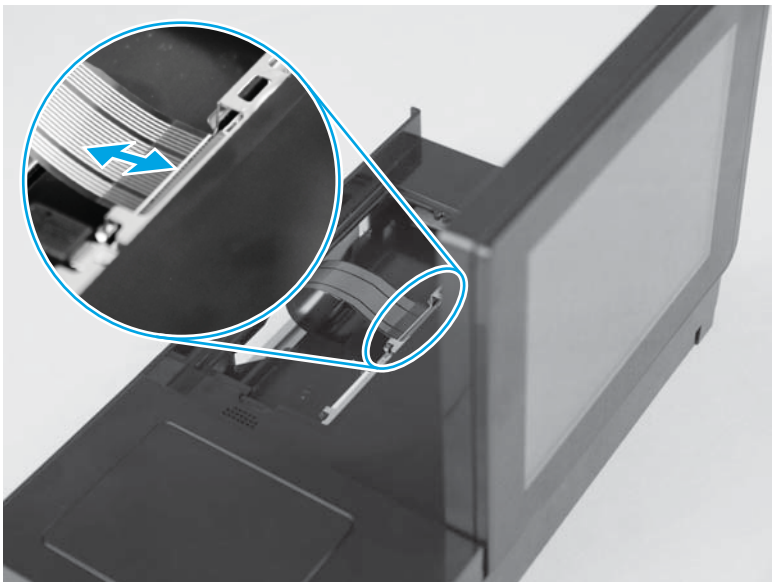
Figure 1-83 Reinstall the keyboard assembly (M880; 6 of 7)



7. Lightly pull on the flat cable to verify that it is securely fastened in the connector.

⚠ **CAUTION:** Be careful. Do not use your full force to pull on the flat cable. A light pull on the cable is sufficient to verify that it is securely fastened.

Figure 1-84 Reinstall the keyboard assembly (M880; 7 of 7)



Pickup, feed, and separation rollers and pads

- Document-feeder roller (M880 only)
- Document-feeder separation pad (M880 only)
- Tray 1 rollers
- Tray 2, 1x500-sheet feeder, and 3x500-sheet feeder rollers
- High-capacity input (HCI) rollers

Document-feeder roller (M880 only)

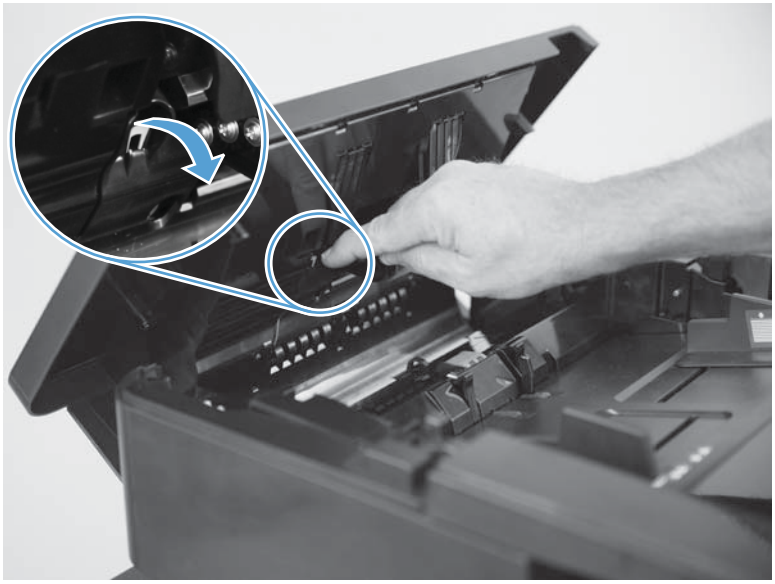
⚠ CAUTION: If you are replacing the roller, do not touch the surface of the replacement roller. Skin oils deposited on the roller might cause paper pickup problems.

1. Open the document-feeder door.

Figure 1-85 Remove the document-feeder roller (M880; 1 of 3)

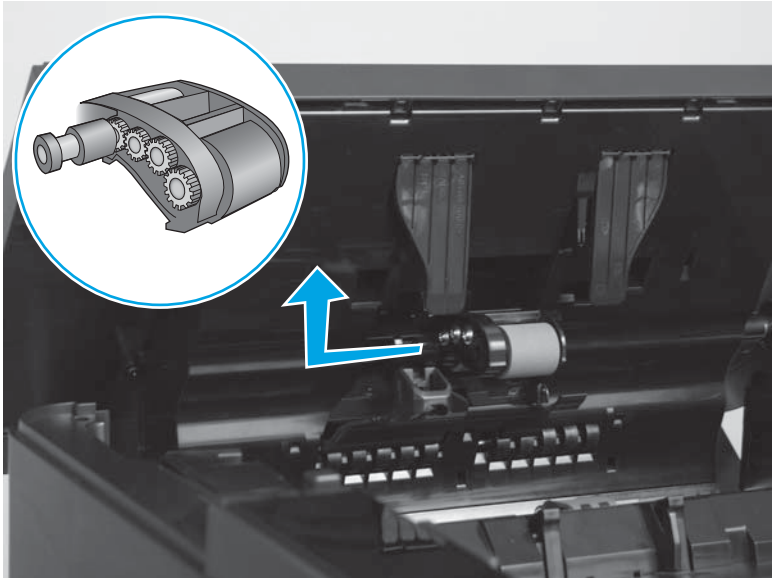
2. Release one tab, and then open the access door.

Figure 1-86 Remove the document-feeder roller (M880; 2 of 3)



3. Slide the roller left, and then lift it up and out of the product.

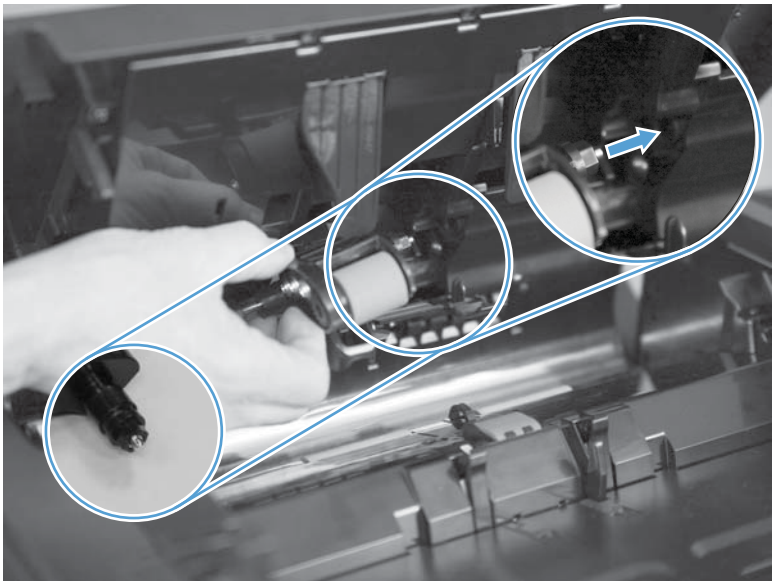
Figure 1-87 Remove the document-feeder roller (M880; 3 of 3)



Reinstall the document-feeder roller (M880 only)

The roller assembly is keyed. When reinstalling the roller assembly, position the hex-shaped fitting on the shaft toward the rear of the product.

Figure 1-88 Reinstall the document-feeder roller (M880)



IMPORTANT: When the roller is reinstalled, the access door must be fully closed. When you close the door, you should hear two audible clicks. If, after replacing the roller document feeder, a document feeder jam message appears on the control panel display, make sure that the access door is fully closed.

Document-feeder separation pad (M880 only)

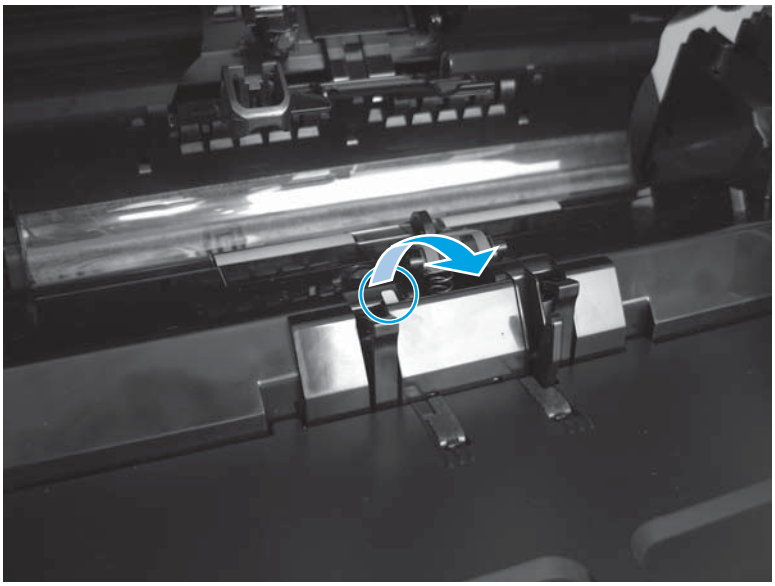
⚠ **CAUTION:** If you are replacing the pad, do not touch the surface of the replacement pad. Skin oils deposited on the pad might cause paper pickup problems.

1. Open the document-feeder door.

Figure 1-89 Remove the document-feeder separation pad (M880; 1 of 4)

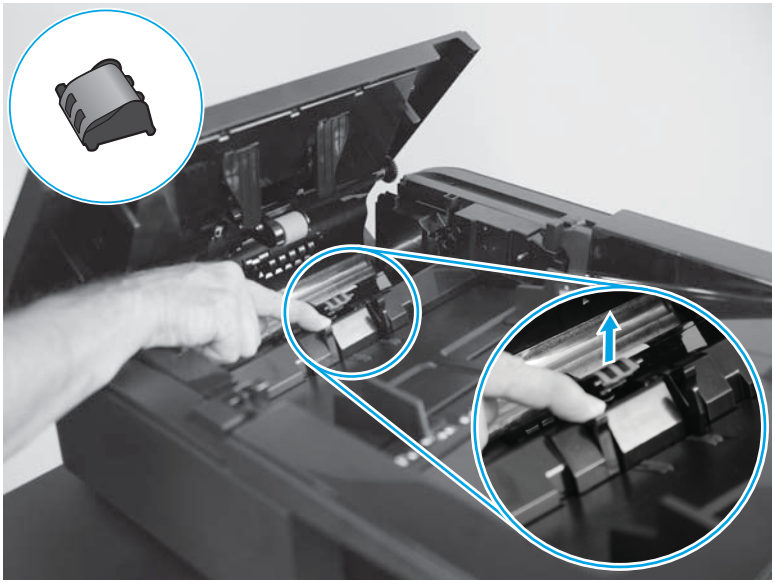
2. Release one tab to open the access door.

Figure 1-90 Remove the document-feeder separation pad (M880; 2 of 4)



3. The separation pad is spring-loaded and partially releases when the access door is opened.

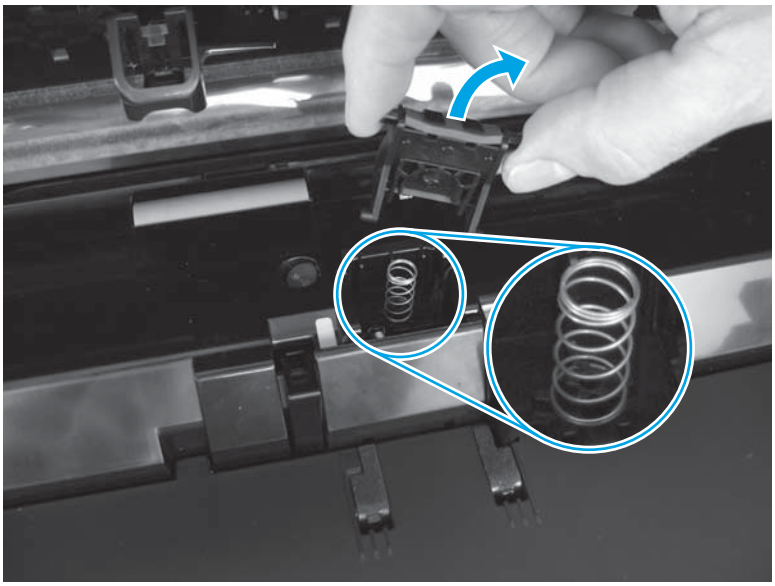
Figure 1-91 Remove the document-feeder separation pad (M880; 3 of 4)



4. Lift the separation pad up and away from the product.

⚠ CAUTION: If the spring becomes dislodged, securely reinstall it as shown below.

Figure 1-92 Remove the document-feeder separation pad (M880; 4 of 4)



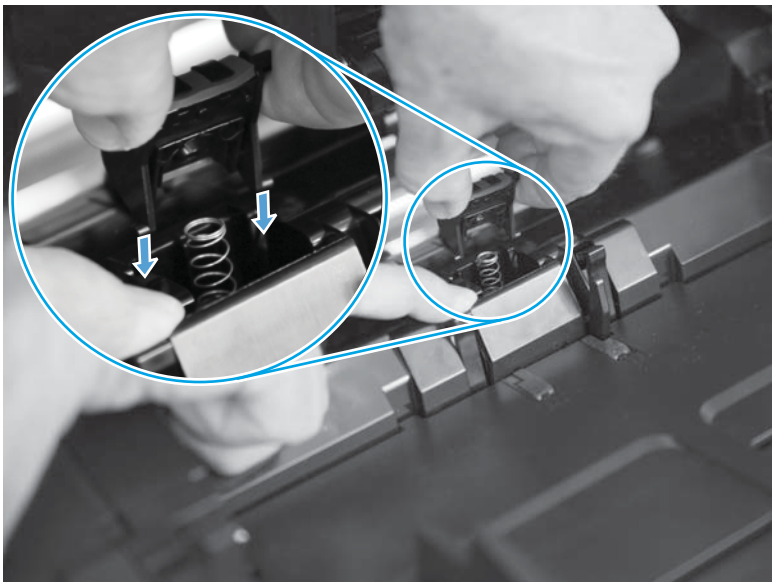
Reinstall the document-feeder separation pad (M880 only)

1. Release and hold the separation pad access door open.

Figure 1-93 Reinstall the document-feeder separation pad (M880; 1 of 5)

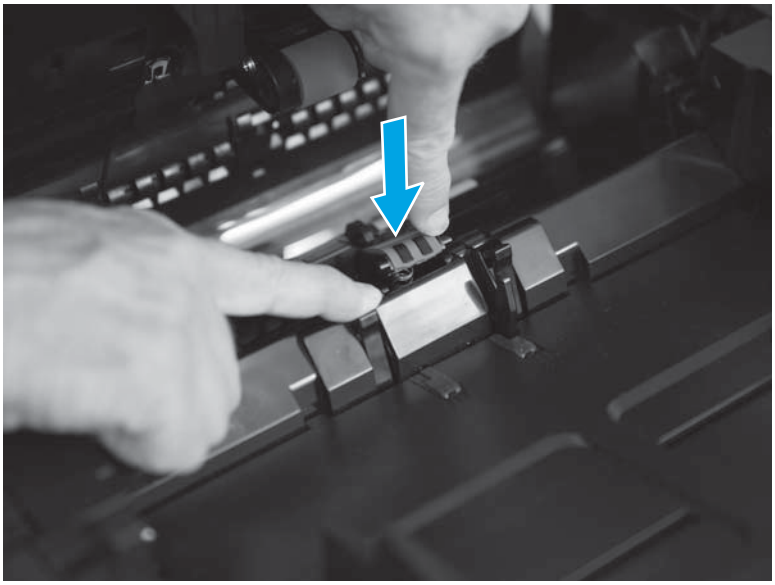
2. Align the pins on the separation pad with the mounting slots.

Figure 1-94 Reinstall the document-feeder separation pad (M880; 2 of 5)



3. Carefully press down on the separation pad to compress the spring.

Figure 1-95 Reinstall the document-feeder separation pad (M880; 3 of 5)

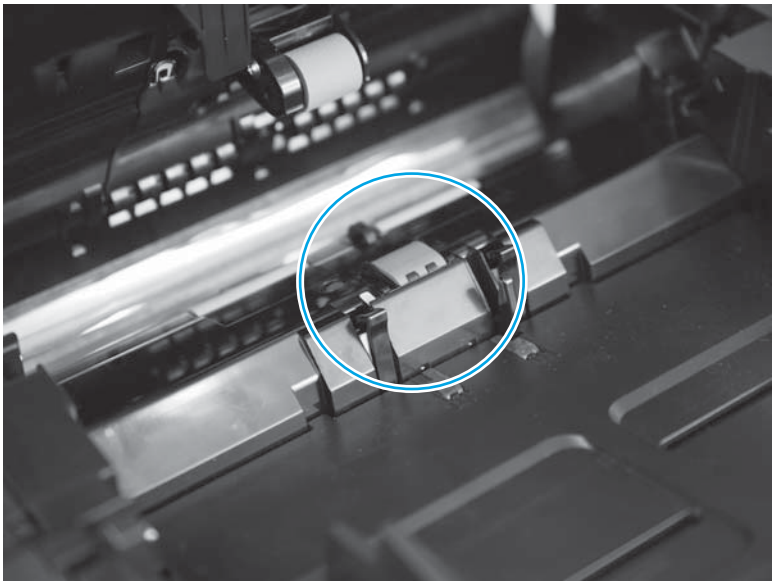


4. Continue to press down on the separation pad, and then release the access door.

Figure 1-96 Reinstall the document-feeder separation pad (M880; 4 of 5)

5. Verify that the separation pad is correctly installed and that the access door is fully closed as shown below.

Figure 1-97 Reinstall the document-feeder separation pad (M880; 5 of 5)

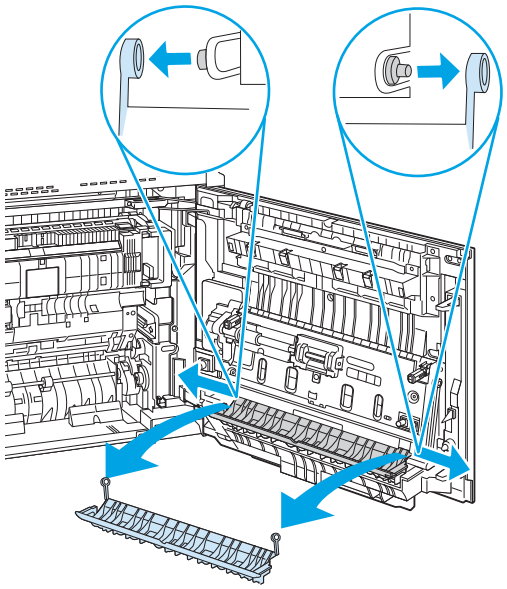


Tray 1 rollers

CAUTION: Do not touch the surface of the rollers. Skin oils deposited on the rollers might cause paper pickup problems.

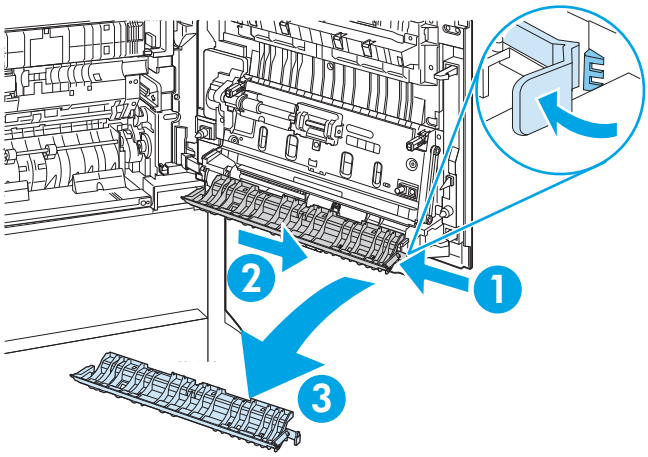
1. Open the right door.
2. Release two hinge pins and then remove the paper-feed cover.

Figure 1-98 Remove the Tray 1 rollers (1 of 5)



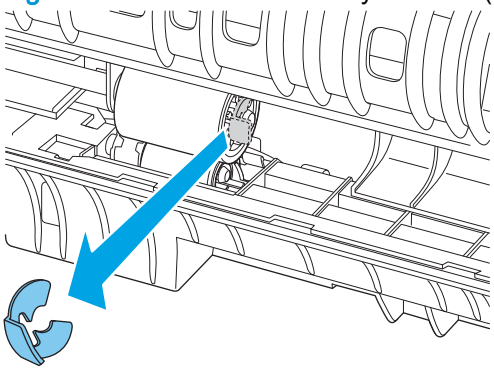
3. Release one tab (callout 1), slide the multipurpose upper feed guide to the right to release it (callout 2), and then lift it away from the door to remove it (callout 3).

Figure 1-99 Remove the Tray 1 rollers (2 of 5)



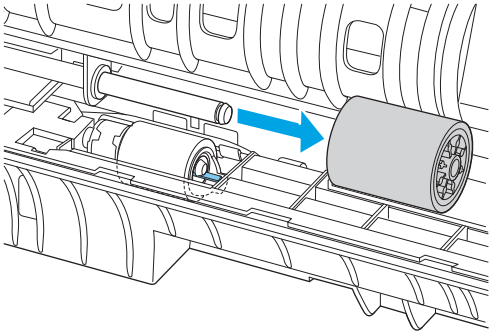
4. Remove one plastic clip.

Figure 1-100 Remove the Tray 1 rollers (3 of 5)



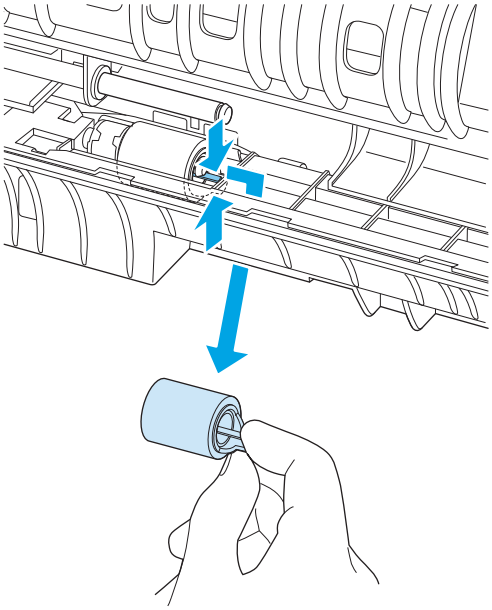
5. Remove the upper roller by sliding it to the right.

Figure 1-101 Remove the Tray 1 rollers (4 of 5)



6. Pinch and hold the tab at the end of the lower roller to release it, and then slide the roller to the right to release it from the metal shaft. Slide the roller down to remove it.

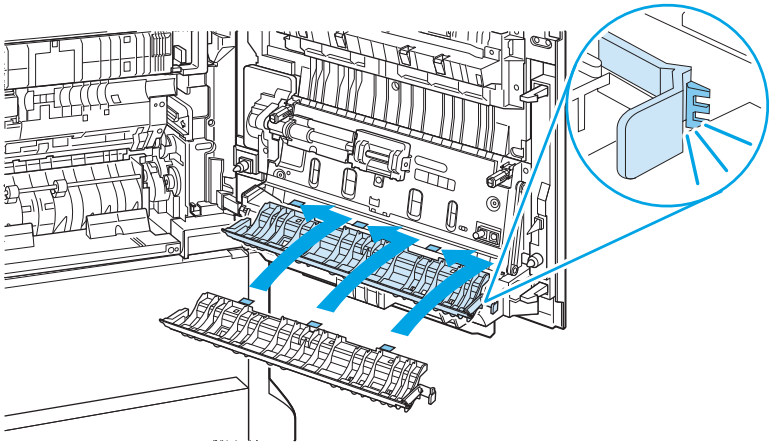
Figure 1-102 Remove the Tray 1 rollers (5 of 5)



Reinstall the Tray 1 rollers

Position the tabs on the multipurpose upper feed guide in the slots in the right door, and then slide it to the left to secure it to the door. One tab will click into place when the guide is seated properly.

Figure 1-103 Reinstall the Tray 1 rollers



Tray 2, 1x500-sheet feeder, and 3x500-sheet feeder rollers

Before proceeding, remove one or more of the following trays, depending upon which rollers you are replacing:

- Tray 2. See Tray 2, 1x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 4, and 3x500 Tray 5 on page 18.
- 1x500 Tray 3 (1x500 only). See Tray 2, 1x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 4, and 3x500 Tray 5 on page 18.
- 3x500 Tray 3 (3x500 only). See Tray 2, 1x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 4, and 3x500 Tray 5 on page 18.
- 3x500 Tray 4 (3x500 only). See Tray 2, 1x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 4, and 3x500 Tray 5 on page 18.
- 3x500 Tray 5 (3x500 only). See Tray 2, 1x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 4, and 3x500 Tray 5 on page 18.

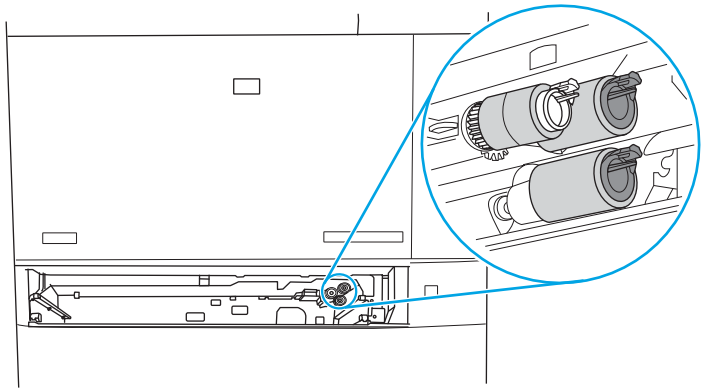
CAUTION: Do not touch the surface of the rollers. Skin oils deposited on the rollers might cause paper pickup problems.

NOTE: Tray 2 is shown in the figures below. The procedure is the same for all of the referenced trays.

Remove the Tray 2, 1x500-sheet feeder, and 3x500-sheet feeder rollers

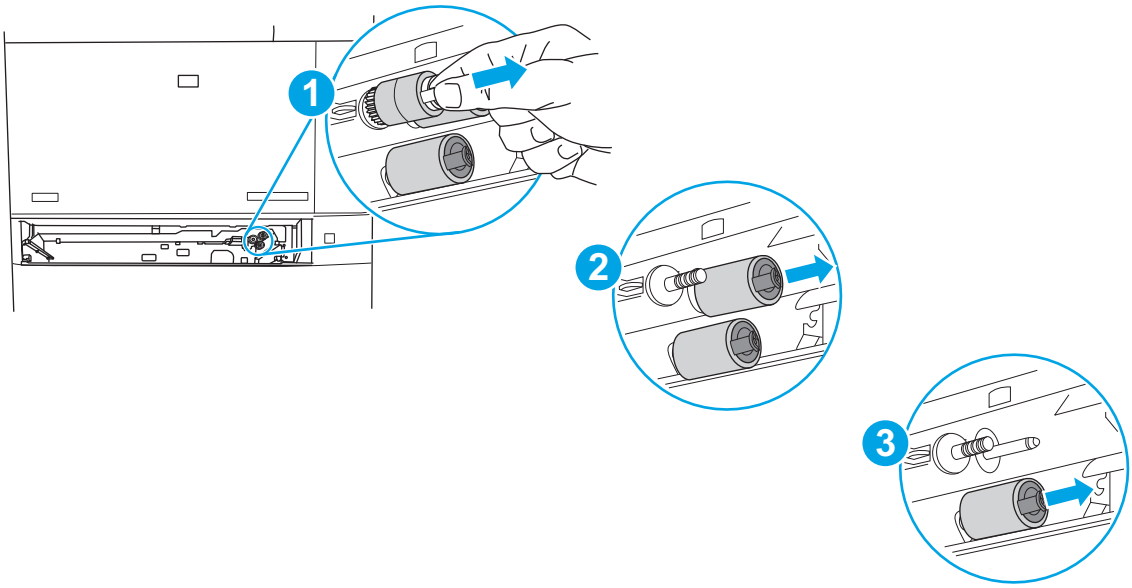
1. Remove the appropriate tray. See Tray 2, 1x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 4, and 3x500 Tray 5 on page 18.
2. Locate the rollers on the right-hand side of the tray cavity.

Figure 1-104 Remove the Tray 2, 1x500, and 3x500 rollers (1 of 2)



3. Grasp the plastic tab on the roller and then pull the roller off of the rod. Repeat the process for the other rollers.

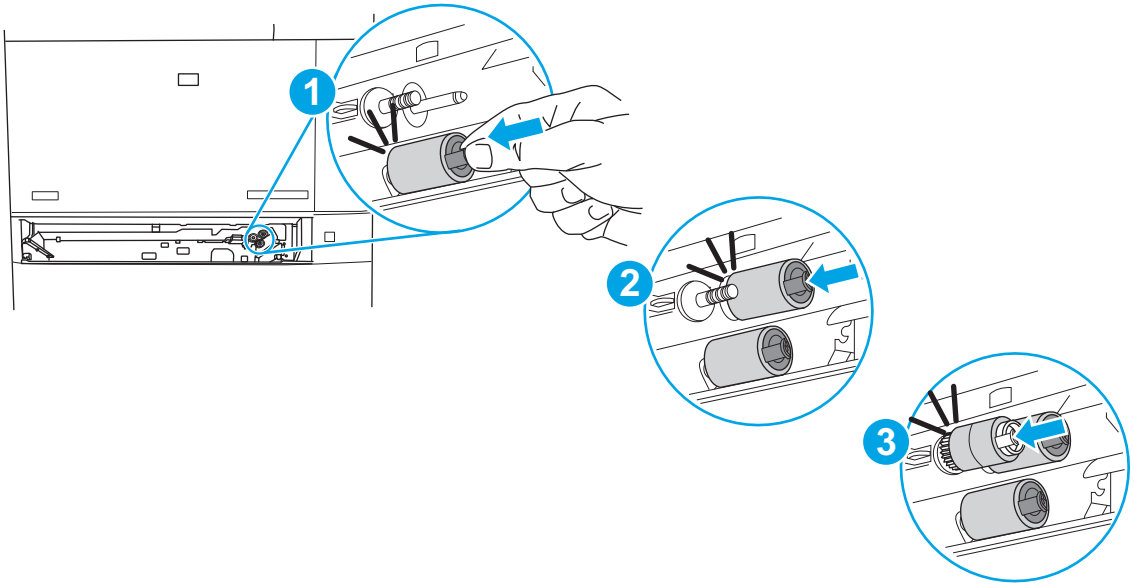
Figure 1-105 Remove the Tray 2, 1x500, and 3x500 rollers (2 of 2)



Reinstall the Tray 2, 1x500-sheet feeder, and 3x500-sheet feeder rollers

Reinstall the rollers in the order shown below. Make sure that the rollers snap into place.

Figure 1-106 Reinstall the Tray 2, 1x500, and 3x500 rollers



High-capacity input (HCI) rollers

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

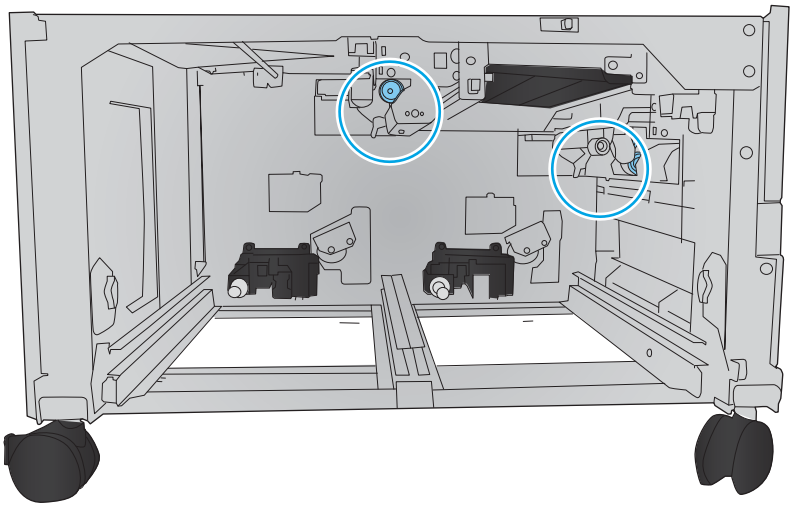
- HCI right tray. See HCI right tray on page 360.
- HCI left tray. See HCI left tray on page 361.

CAUTION: If you are replacing the rollers, do not touch the surface of the replacement rollers. Skin oils deposited on the rollers might cause paper pickup problems.

Remove the HCI rollers

1. Locate the rollers inside the tray cavity.

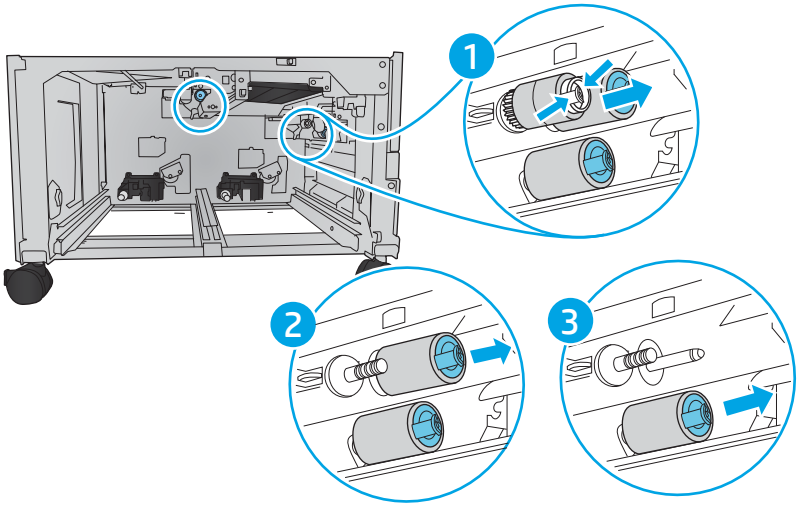
Figure 1-107 Remove the HCI rollers (1 of 2)



2. Pinch the tabs at the end of the rollers to release them, and then remove two rollers in the order shown below.

NOTE: One roller is not replaced.

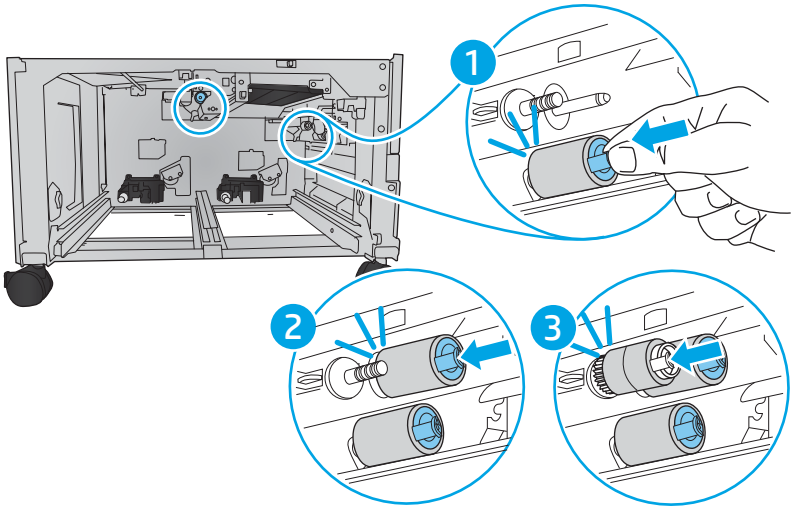
Figure 1-108 Remove the HCI rollers (2 of 2)



Reinstall the HCI rollers

Reinstall the rollers in the order shown below. Make sure that the rollers snap into place.

Figure 1-109 Reinstall the HCI rollers



Covers and doors

TIP: For clarity, some figures in this chapter show assemblies removed that are not required to be removed to service the product (for example, the scanner and document feeder assemblies). The procedures in this manual are correct for your product.

- Location of major components
- Scanner back cover (M880)
- Scanner left cover (M880)
- Scanner right cover (M880)
- Scanner front cover (M880)
- Right upper rear cover (M855)
- Hardware integration pocket (HIP) cover (M855)
- Hardware integration pocket (HIP) cover (M880)
- Face-down bin
- Left rear cover
- Switch back cover
- Lower right cover
- Rear upper rear cover (M880)
- Right upper rear cover (M880)
- Rear upper MFP cover (M880)
- Left upper rear cover and rear upper B cover (M880)
- Rear upper front cover (M880)
- Front top cover
- Rear top cover (M855)
- Left cover
- Right upper front cover (M855)
- Right upper front cover (M880)
- Right upper cover (M855)
- Right door assembly
- Left front cover
- Front door
- Rear cover
- Right rear cover

- Front inner cover

Location of major components

Figure 1-110 M855 base product covers and doors (1 of 2)

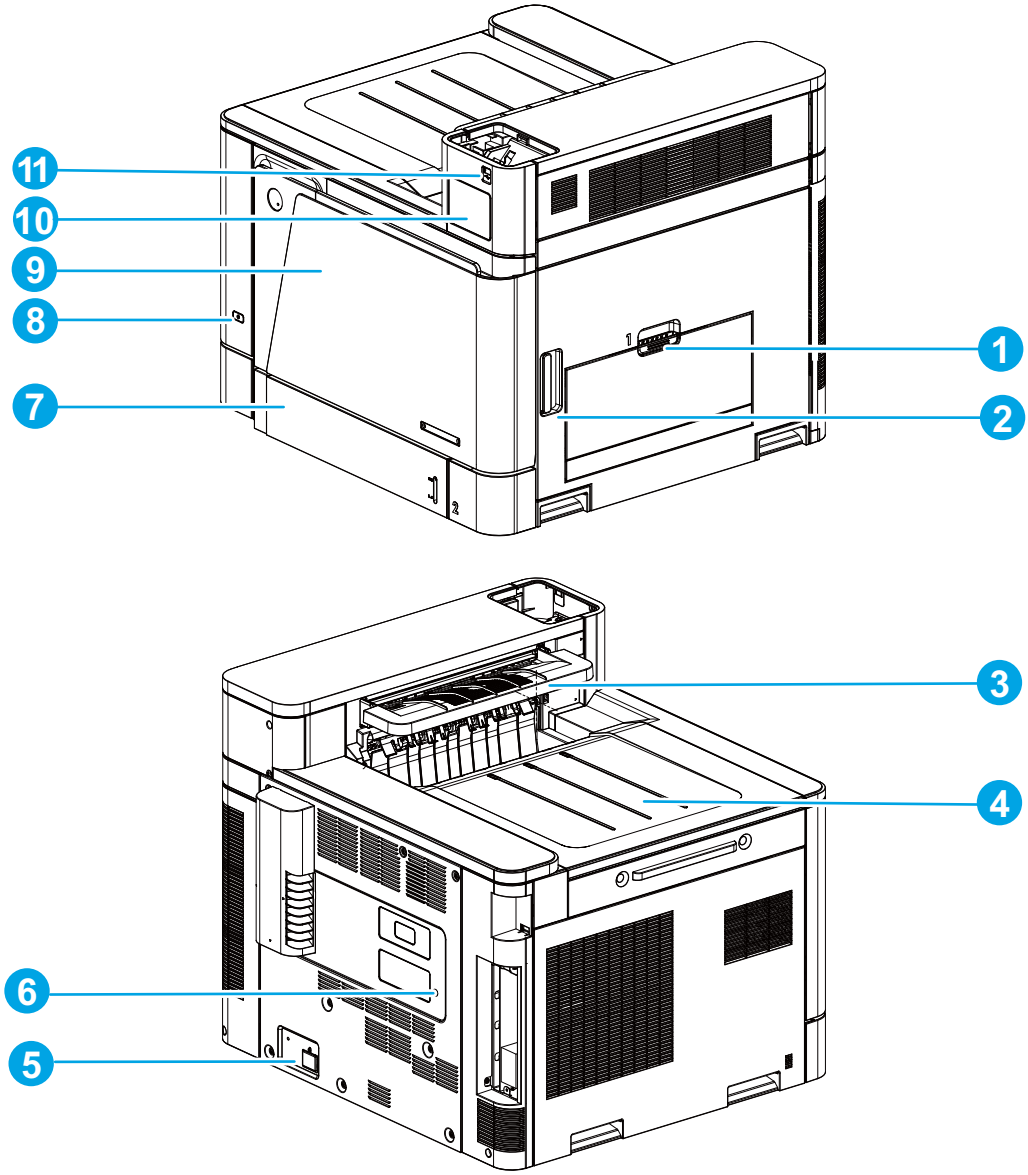


Table 1-5 M855 base product covers and doors (1 of 2)

Item	Description	Item	Description
1	Tray 1	7	Tray 2
2	Right door	8	Power switch
3	Switch back tray	9	Front door
4	Face-down bin	10	HIP cover
5	Power receptacle	11	USB insertion slot
6	Engine test button		

Figure 1-111 M855 base product covers and doors (2 of 2)

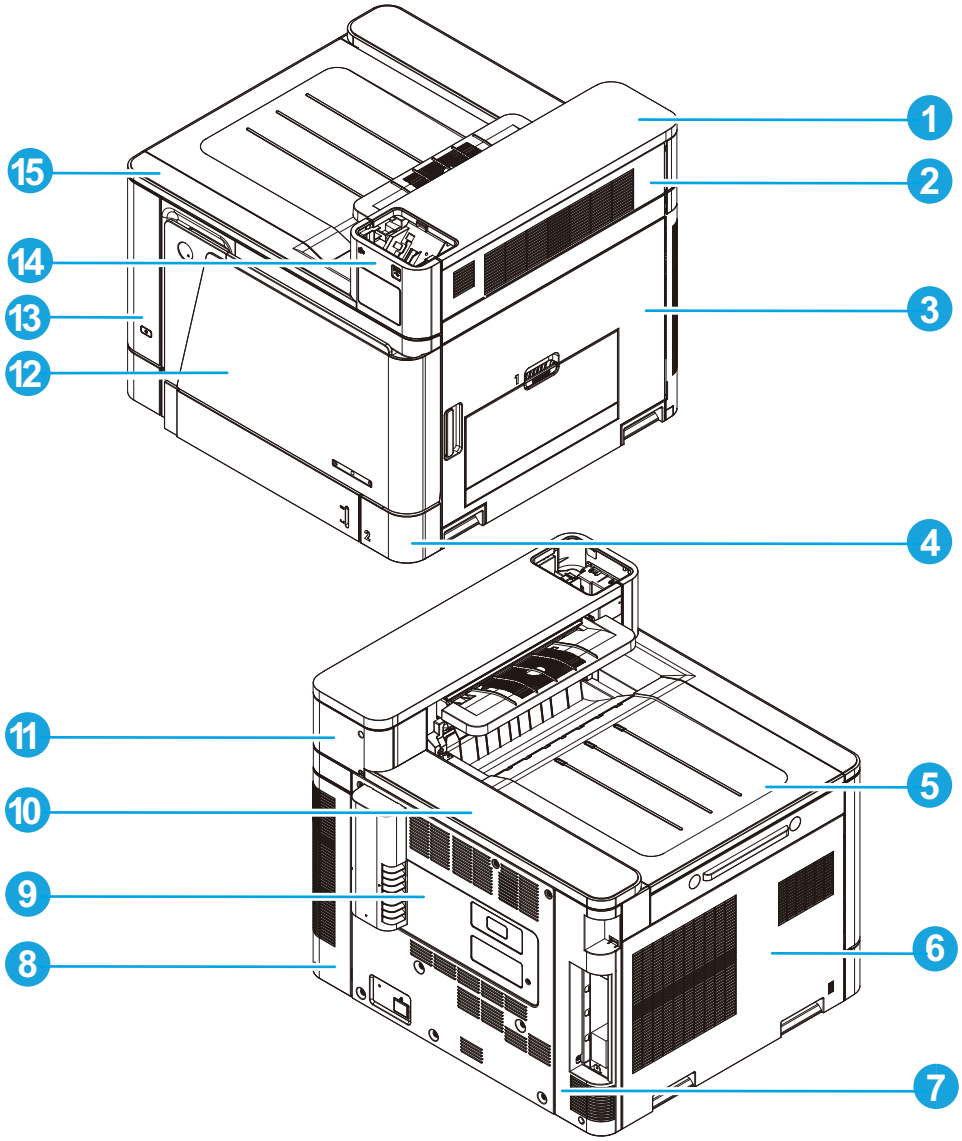


Table 1-6 M855 base product covers and doors (2 of 2)

Item	Description	Item	Description
1	Right upper cover	9	Rear cover
2	Switch back cover	10	Rear top cover
3	Right door assembly	11	Right upper rear cover
4	Lower right cover	12	Front door assembly
5	Face-down bin	13	Left front cover
6	Left cover	14	Right upper front cover
7	Left rear cover	15	Front top cover
8	Right rear cover		

Figure 1-112 M880 base product covers and doors (1 of 2)

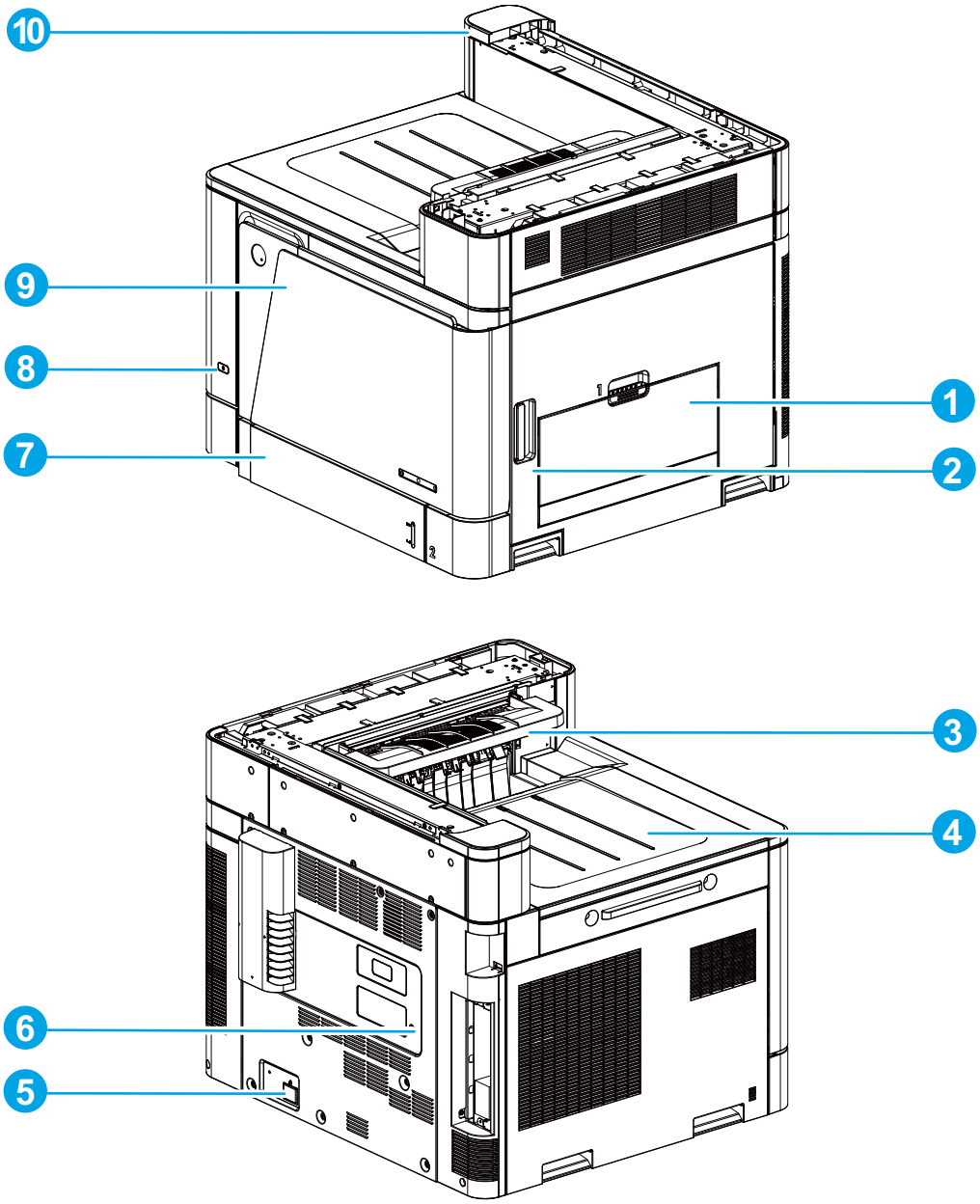


Table 1-7 M880 base product covers and doors (1 of 2)

Item1	Description	Item	Description
1	Tray 1	6	Engine test button
2	Right door	7	Tray 2
3	Switch back tray	8	Power switch
4	Face-down bin	9	Front door
5	Power receptacle	10	Rear upper MFP cover

Figure 1-113 M880 base product covers and doors (2 of 2)

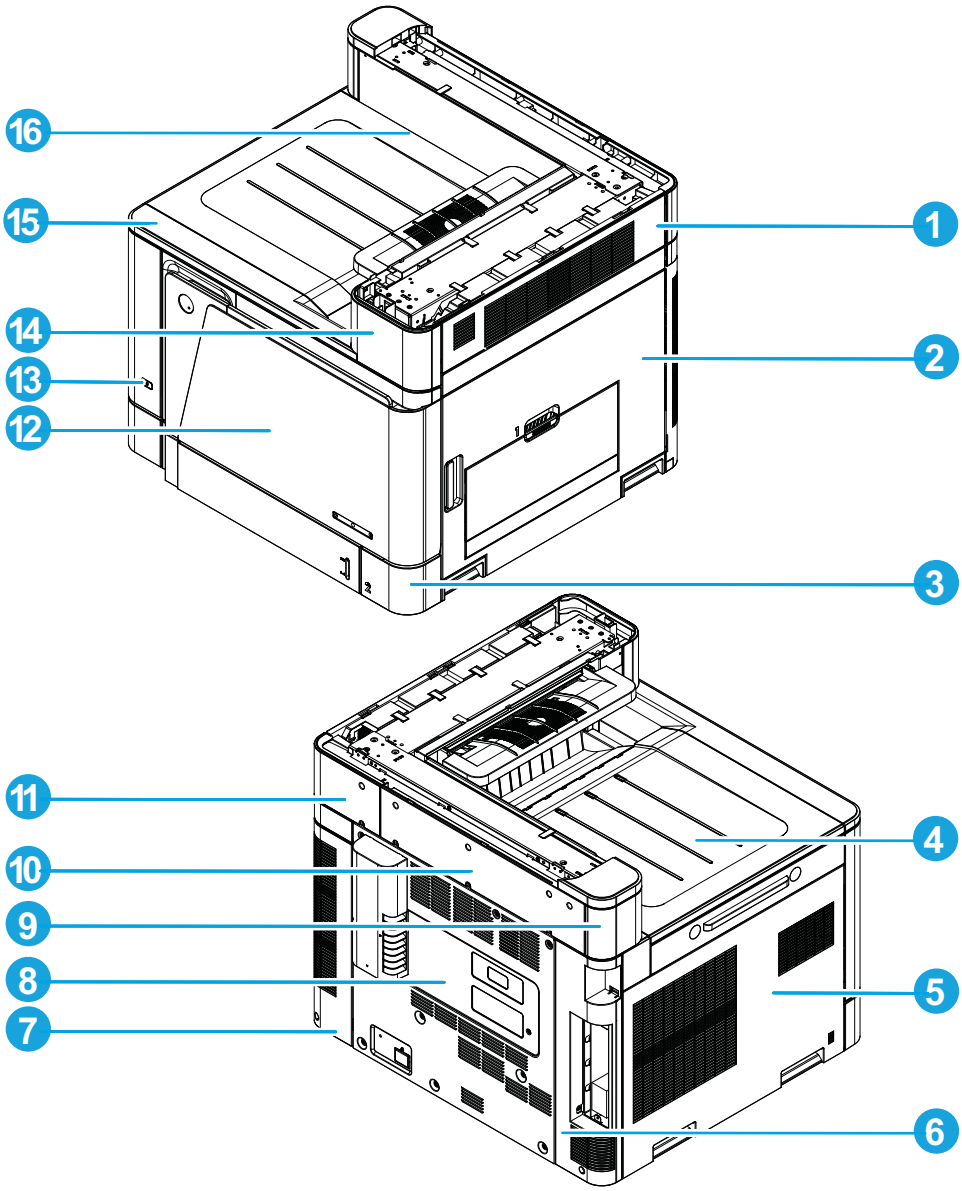


Table 1-8 M880 base product covers and doors (2 of 2)

Item	Description	Item	Description
1	Switch back cover	9	Left upper rear cover
2	Right door assembly	10	Rear upper rear cover
3	Lower right cover	11	Right upper rear cover
4	Face-down bin	12	Front door assembly
5	Left cover	13	Left front cover
6	Left rear cover	14	Right upper front cover
7	Right rear cover	15	Front top cover
8	Rear cover	16	Rear upper front cover

Scanner back cover (M880)

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 1-114 Remove the scanner back cover (M880; 1 of 2)

2. Remove the cover.

Figure 1-115 Remove the scanner back cover (M880; 2 of 2)

Scanner left cover (M880)

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Scanner back cover (M880). See Scanner back cover (M880) on page 88.

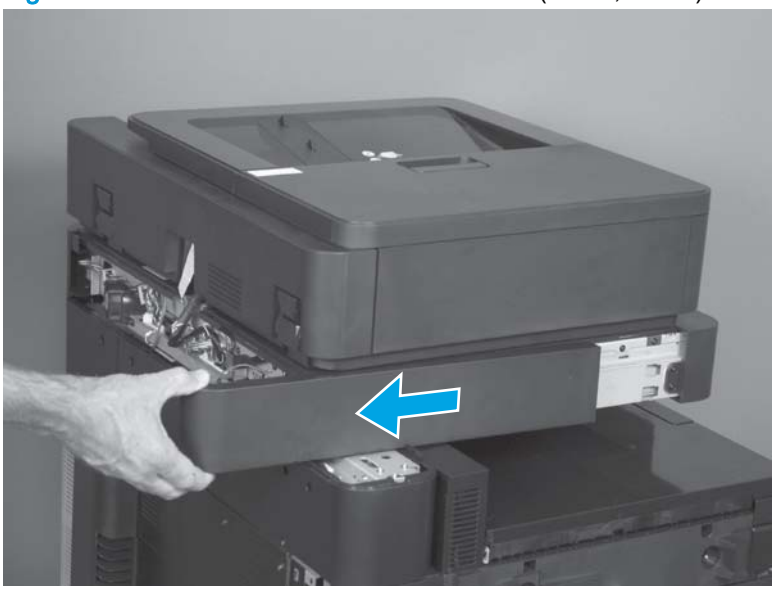
Remove the scanner left cover (M880)

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 1-116 Remove the scanner left cover (M880; 1 of 2)

2. Slide the cover towards the rear of the product to release it, and then remove the cover.

Figure 1-117 Remove the scanner left cover (M880; 2 of 2)



Scanner right cover (M880)

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Scanner back cover (M880). See Scanner back cover (M880) on page 88.

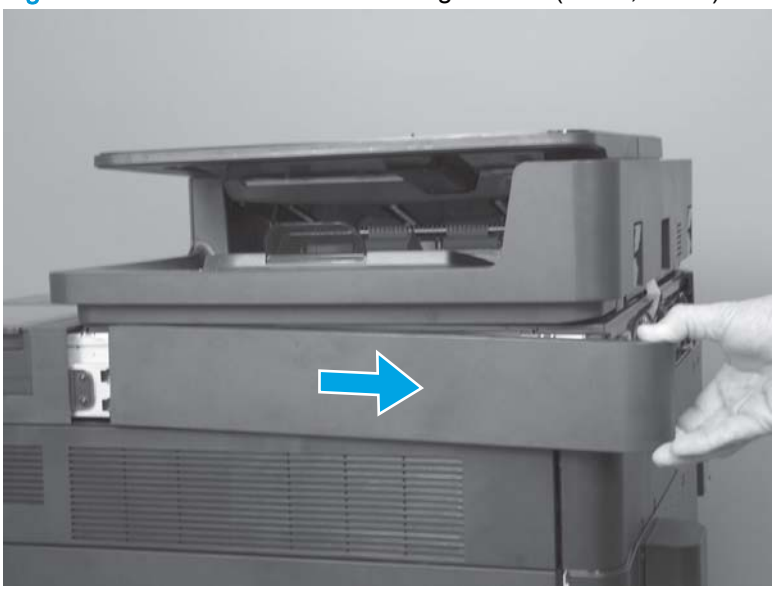
Remove the scanner right cover (M880)

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 1-118 Remove the scanner right cover (M880; 1 of 2)

2. Slide the cover towards the rear of the product to remove it.

Figure 1-119 Remove the scanner right cover (M880; 2 of 2)



Scanner front cover (M880)

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Hardware integration pocket (HIP) cover (M880). See Hardware integration pocket (HIP) cover (M880) on page 98.
- Control panel assembly (M880). See Control panel assembly (M880) on page 53.
- Scanner back cover (M880). See Scanner back cover (M880) on page 88.
- Scanner left cover (M880). See Scanner left cover (M880) on page 89.
- Scanner right cover (M880). See Scanner right cover (M880) on page 90.

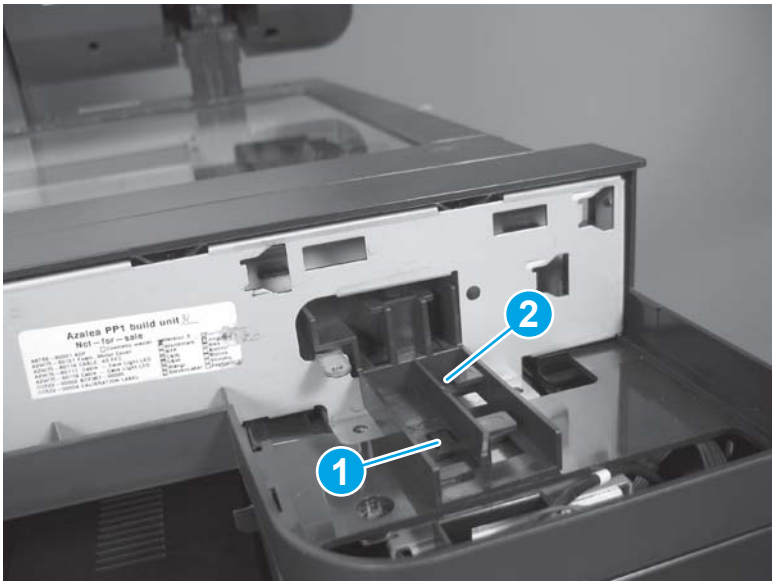
Remove the scanner front cover (M880)

1. Raise the document feeder to the open position.

   Figure 1-120 Remove the scanner front cover (M880; 1 of 8)

2. Release one tab (callout 1), and then remove the wire guide (callout 2).

Figure 1-121 Remove the scanner front cover (M880; 2 of 8)



3. Remove two screws.

Figure 1-122 Remove the scanner front cover (M880; 3 of 8)

4. Remove one screw.

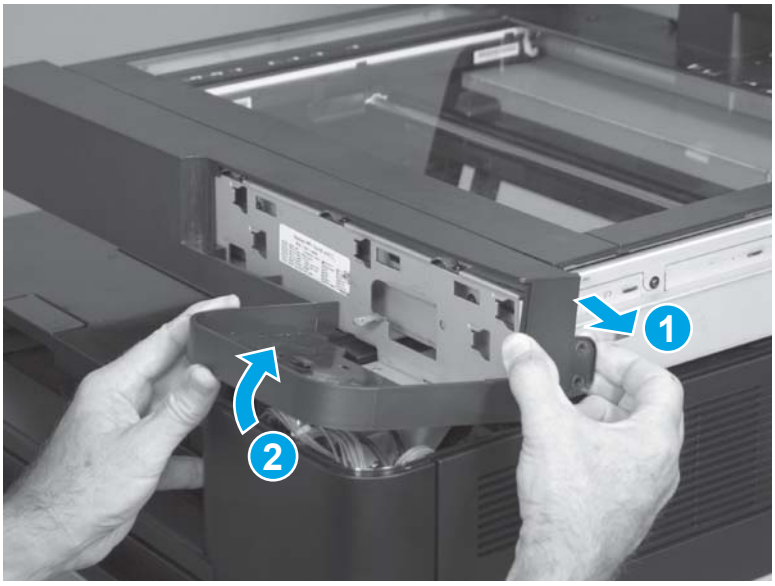
Figure 1-123 Remove the scanner front cover (M880; 4 of 8)

5. Remove two screws.

Figure 1-124 Remove the scanner front cover (M880; 5 of 8)

6. Carefully flex the corner of the cover away from the scanner (callout 1), and then slightly rotate the bottom of the cover up and off of the scanner (callout 2).

Figure 1-125 Remove the scanner front cover (M880; 6 of 8)



7. Carefully flex the corner of the cover away from the scanner (callout 1), and then rotate the bottom of the cover up (callout 2).

Figure 1-126 Remove the scanner front cover (M880; 7 of 8)

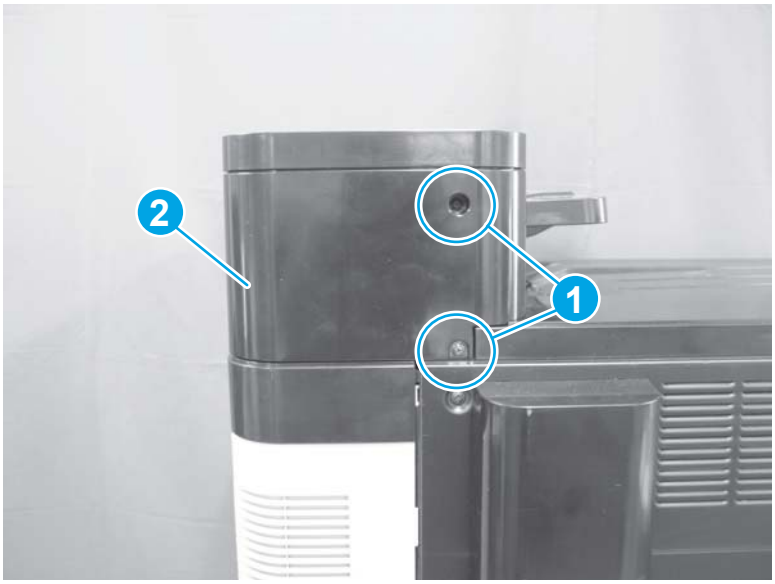
8. Continue to rotate the cover up and away from the product to remove it.

Figure 1-127 Remove the scanner front cover (M880; 8 of 8)

Right upper rear cover (M855)

Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the cover (callout 2).

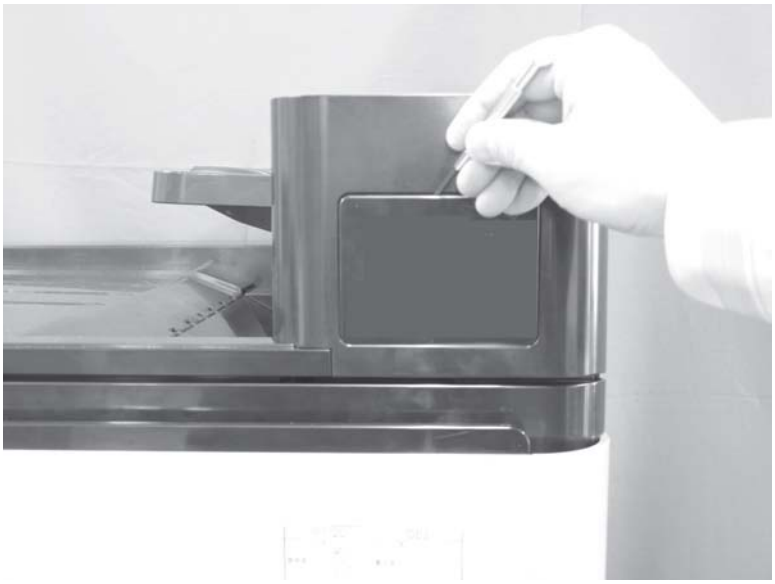
Figure 1-128 Remove the right upper rear cover (M855)



Hardware integration pocket (HIP) cover (M855)

Use a small flat blade screwdriver to carefully release the cover, and then remove it.

Figure 1-129 Remove the hardware integration pocket (HIP) cover (M855)



Hardware integration pocket (HIP) cover (M880)

1. Note the location of four tabs under the HIP cover.

Figure 1-130 Remove the HIP cover (M880; 1 of 3)

2. Release two tabs on the side of the HIP cover toward the control panel screen.

Figure 1-131 Remove the HIP cover (M880; 2 of 3)

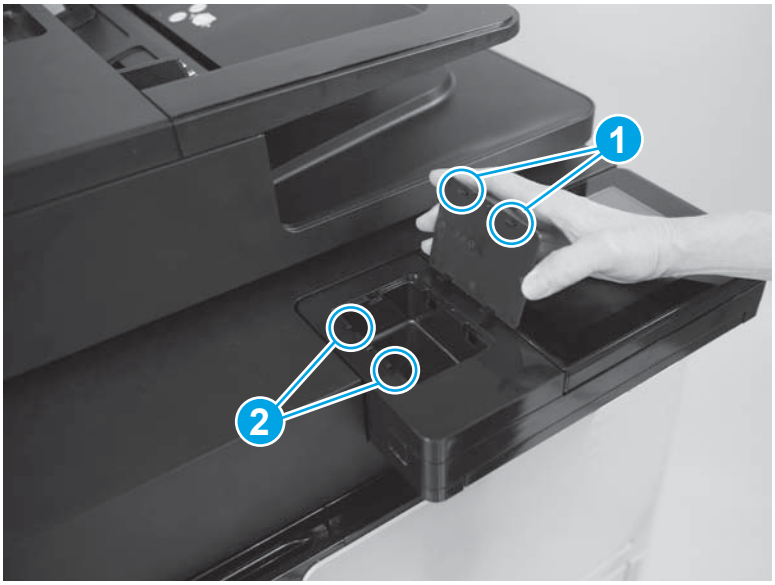
3. Remove the HIP cover.

Figure 1-132 Remove the HIP cover (M880; 3 of 3)

Reinstall the HIP cover (M880)

1. Align the tabs (callout 1) on the cover with the slots in the product (callout 2).

Figure 1-133 Reinstall the HIP cover (M880; 1 of 2)



2. Lower the HIP cover until it snaps into place.

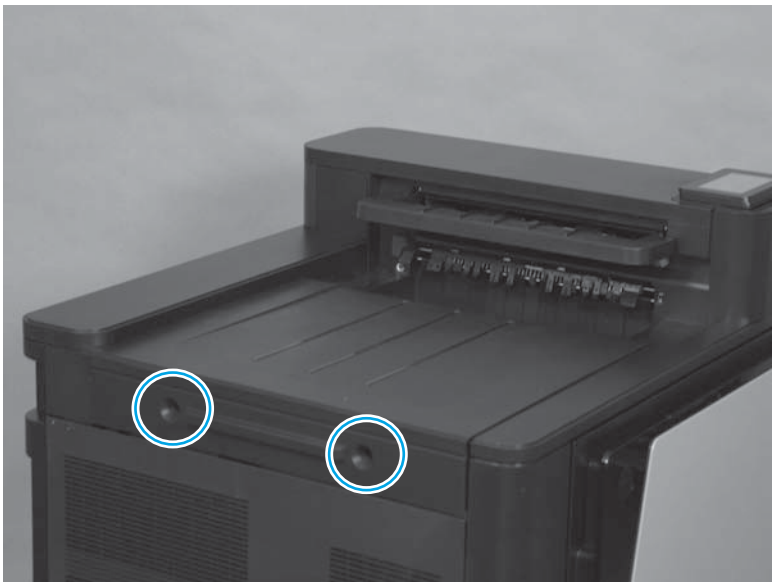
Figure 1-134 Reinstall the HIP cover (M880; 2 of 2)

Face-down bin

NOTE: The M855 is pictured in the figures below. The same face-down bin part is used on the M855 and the M880. On the M880, the face-down bin is located in the cavity under the scanner assembly.

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 1-135 Remove the face-down bin (1 of 2)



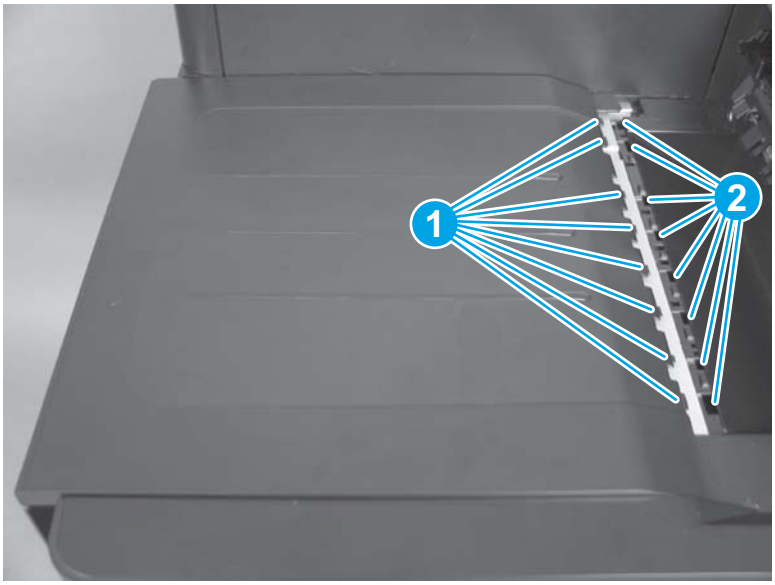
2. Lift up, and then remove the face-down bin.

Figure 1-136 Remove the face-down bin (2 of 2)

Reinstall the face-down bin

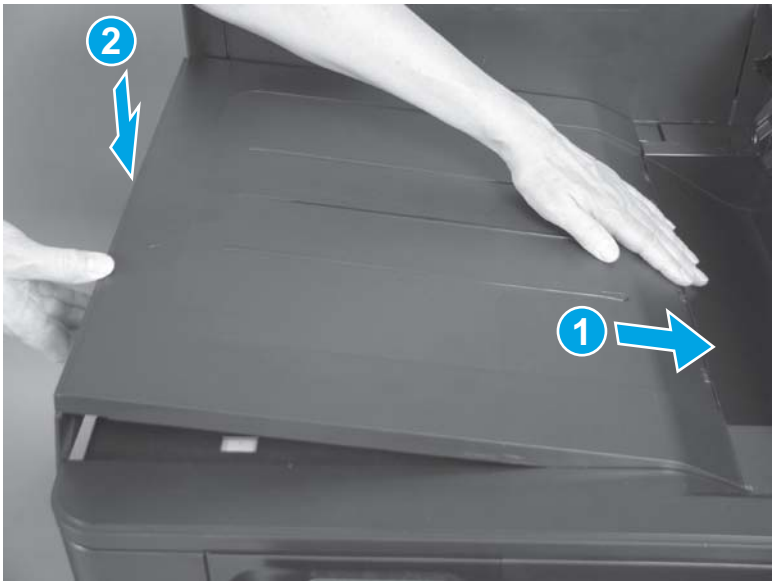
1. Make sure that the tabs (callout 1) on the bin are aligned with the slots (callout 2) in the product.

Figure 1-137 Reinstall the face-down bin (1 of 2)



2. Press downward and toward the right door (callout 1) to fully seat the tabs, and then lower the bin into position (callout 2).

Figure 1-138 Remove the face-down bin (2 of 2)



3. Check to make sure that the cover is installed correctly and that no tabs are visible.

IMPORTANT: Incorrect installation might cause paper jams.

NOTE: The scanner assembly on the M880 obscures the view of this portion of the face-down bin. Slide your fingers across the edge between the face-down bin and the product to make sure that all the tabs are seated properly.

Figure 1-139 Correct installation of face-down bin.

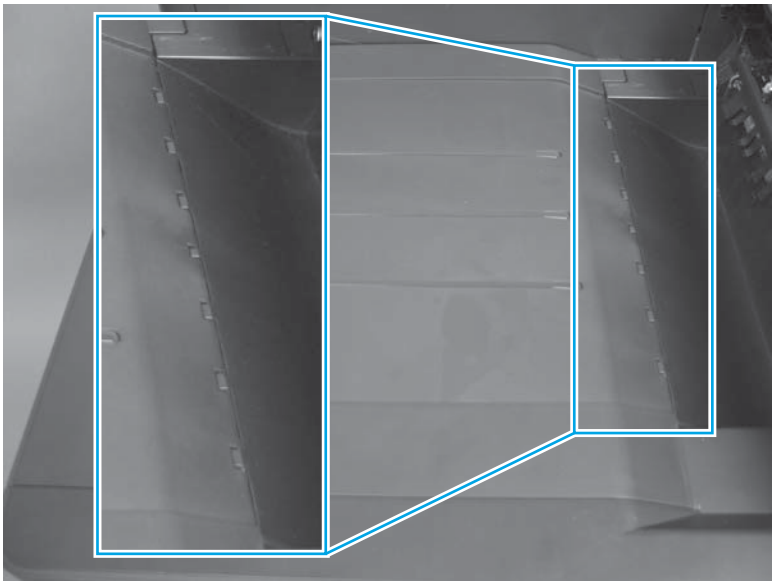
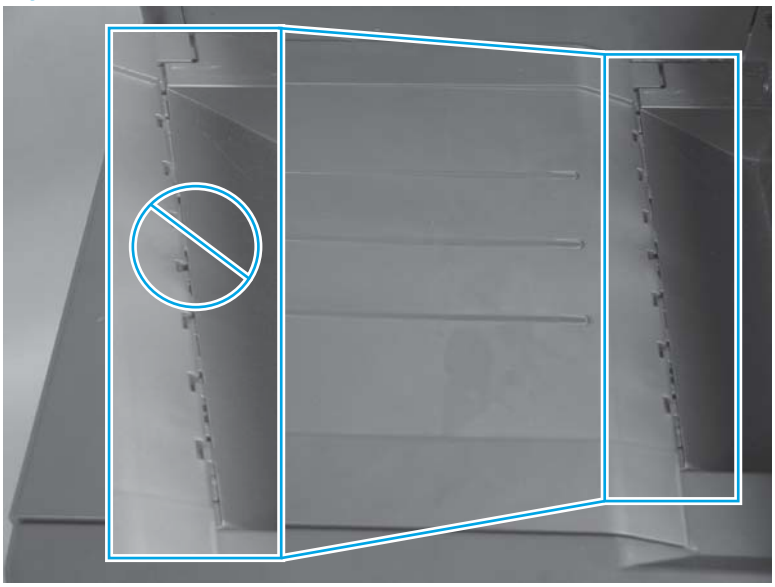


Figure 1-140 Incorrect installation of face-down bin.



Left rear cover

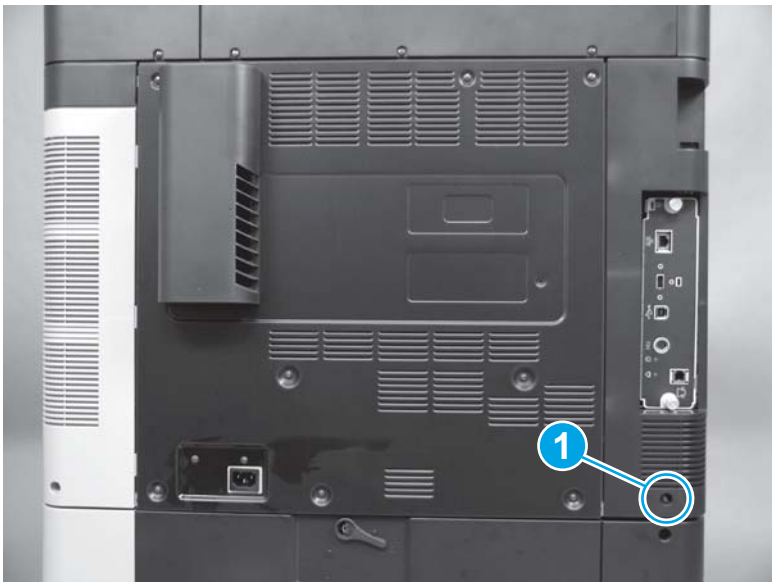
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Intermediate paper transport unit (IPTU), if it is installed. See IPTU assembly on page 437.

Remove the left rear cover

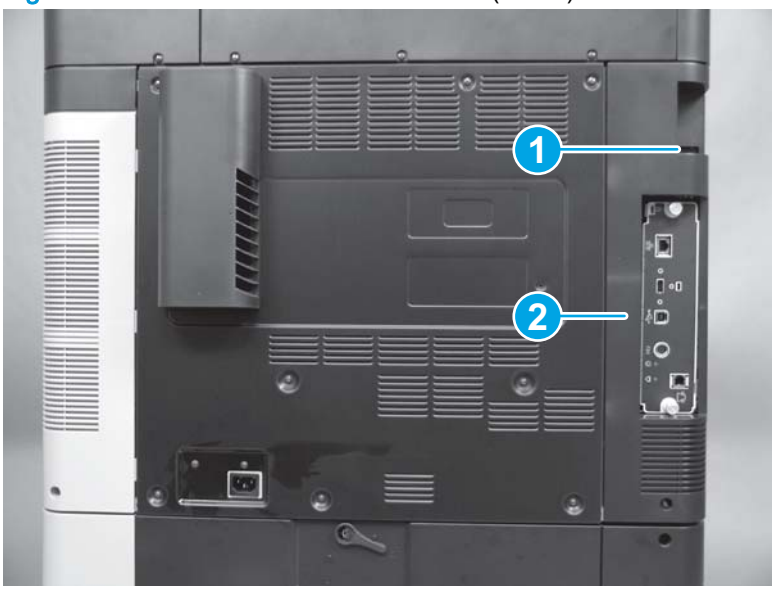
1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-141 Remove the left rear cover (1 of 2)



2. Release one tab (callout 1), and then remove the cover (callout 2).

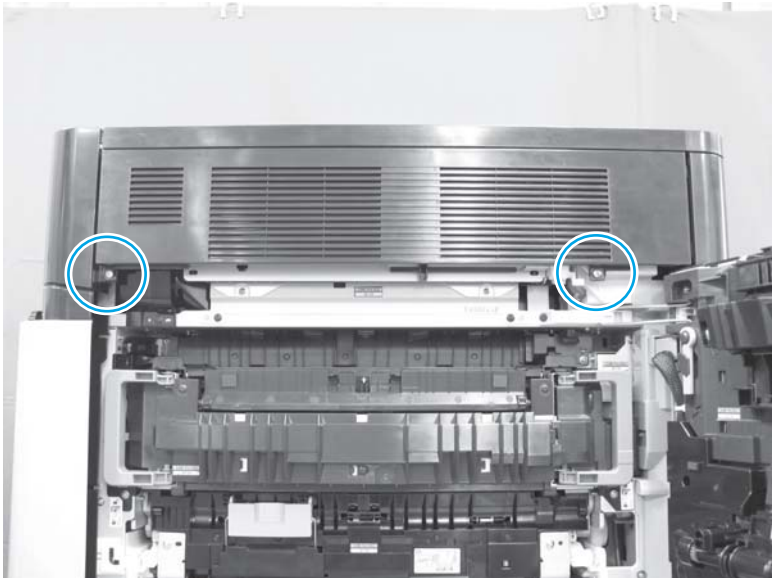
Figure 1-142 Remove the left rear cover (2 of 2)



Switch back cover

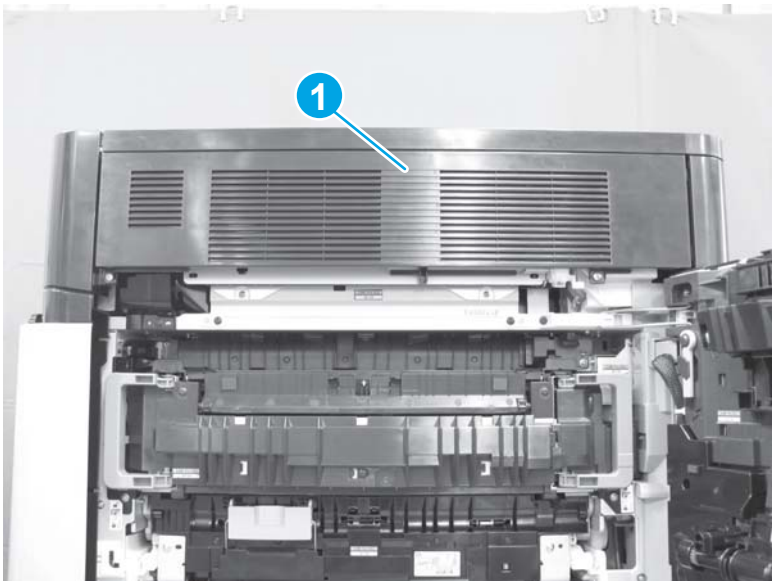
1. Open the right door, and then remove two screws.

Figure 1-143 Remove the switch back cover (1 of 2)



2. Remove the cover (callout 1).

Figure 1-144 Remove the switch back cover (2 of 2)



Lower right cover

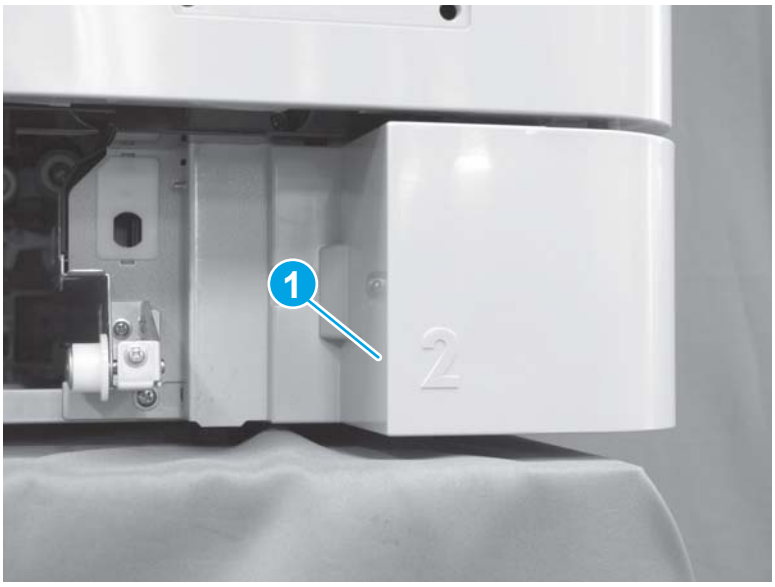
NOTE: If the Tray 2 is not already removed for servicing, remove it now.

1. Remove one screw.

Figure 1-145 Remove the lower right cover (1 of 2)

2. Remove the cover (callout 1).

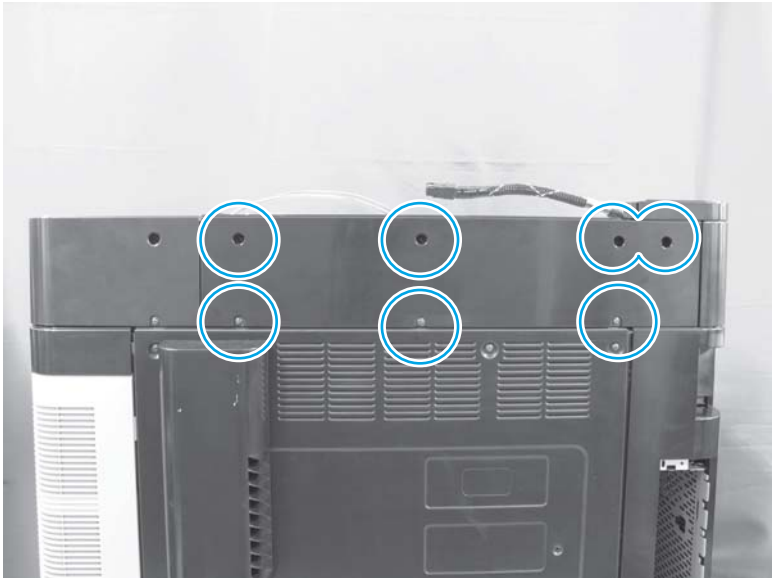
Figure 1-146 Remove the lower right cover (2 of 2)



Rear upper rear cover (M880)

1. Remove seven screws.

Figure 1-147 Remove the rear upper rear cover (M880; 1 of 2)



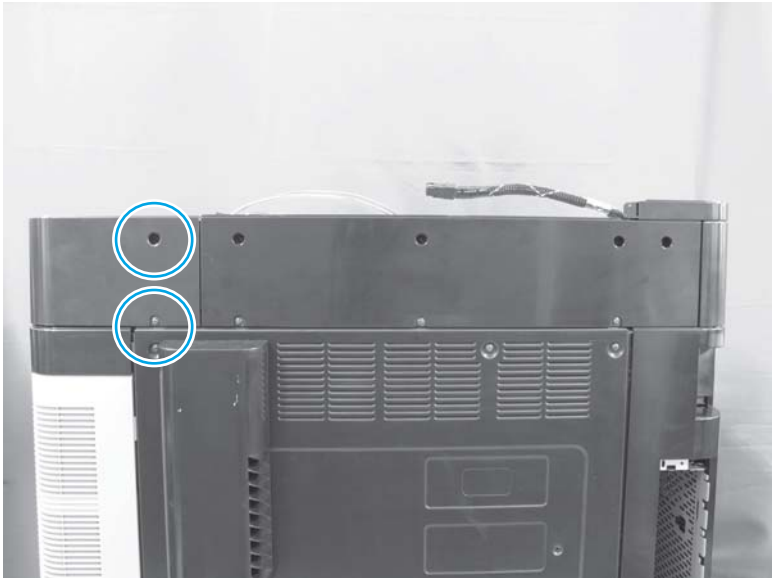
2. Remove the cover (callout 1).

Figure 1-148 Remove the rear upper rear cover (M880; 2 of 2)

Right upper rear cover (M880)

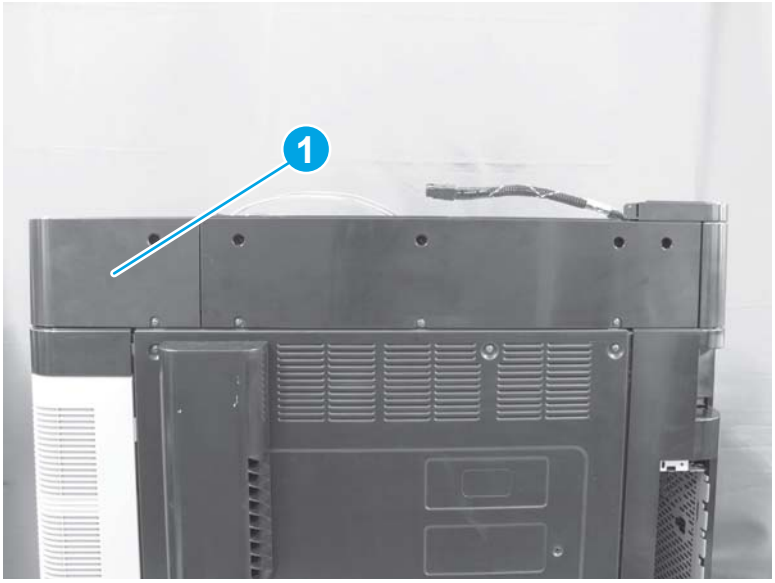
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 1-149 Remove the right upper rear cover (M880; 1 of 2)



2. Remove the cover (callout 1).

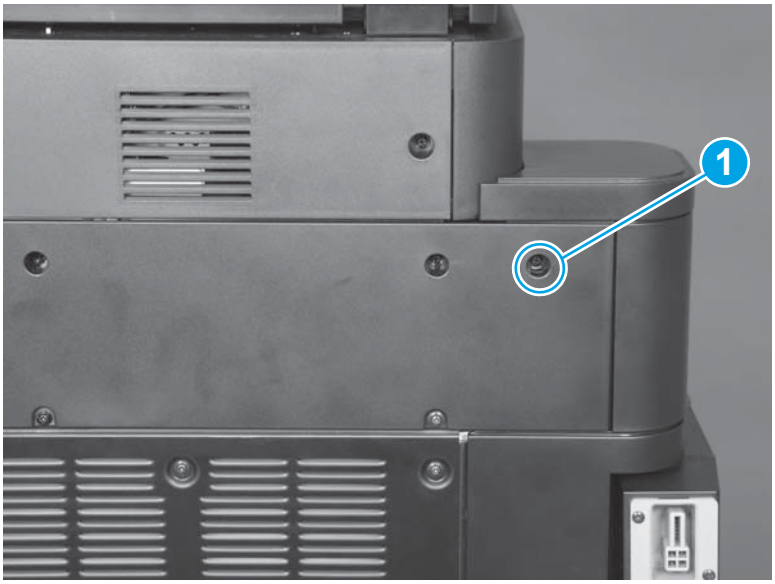
Figure 1-150 Remove the right upper rear cover (M880; 2 of 2)



Rear upper MFP cover (M880)

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-151 Remove the rear upper MFP cover (M880; 1 of 2)



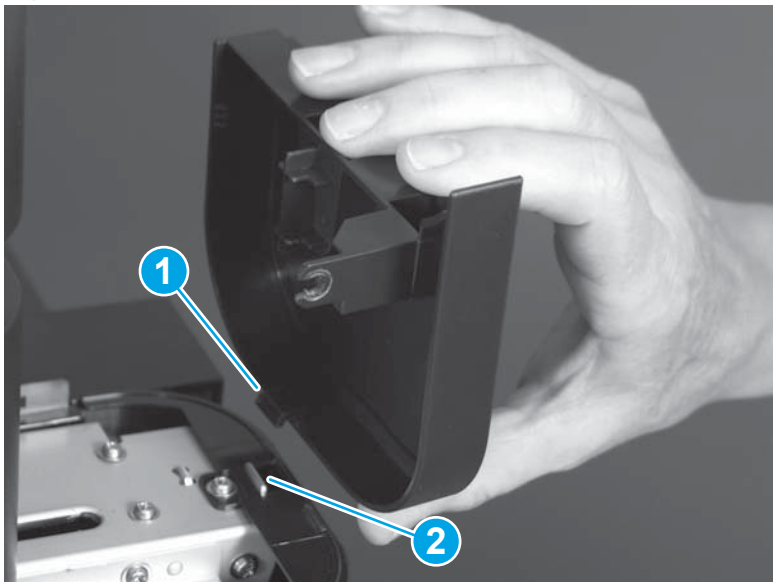
2. Remove the cover.

Figure 1-152 Remove the rear upper MFP cover (M880; 2 of 2)

Reinstall the rear upper MFP cover (M880)

Install the tab (callout 1) on the cover into the slot (callout 2) on the product, and then lower the cover into place.

Figure 1-153 Reinstall the rear upper MFP cover (M880)



Left upper rear cover and rear upper B cover (M880)

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Remove one of the following, depending upon product configuration:
  - Face-down bin. See Face-down bin on page 101.
  - Intermediate paper transport unit (IPTU). See IPTU assembly on page 437.
- Rear upper MFP cover (M880). See Rear upper MFP cover (M880) on page 109.

NOTE: The figures below show the document feeder and scanner removed for clarity. It is not necessary to remove these parts before removing the left upper rear cover and rear upper B cover.

Remove the left upper rear cover and rear upper B cover (M880)

1. Remove one screw.

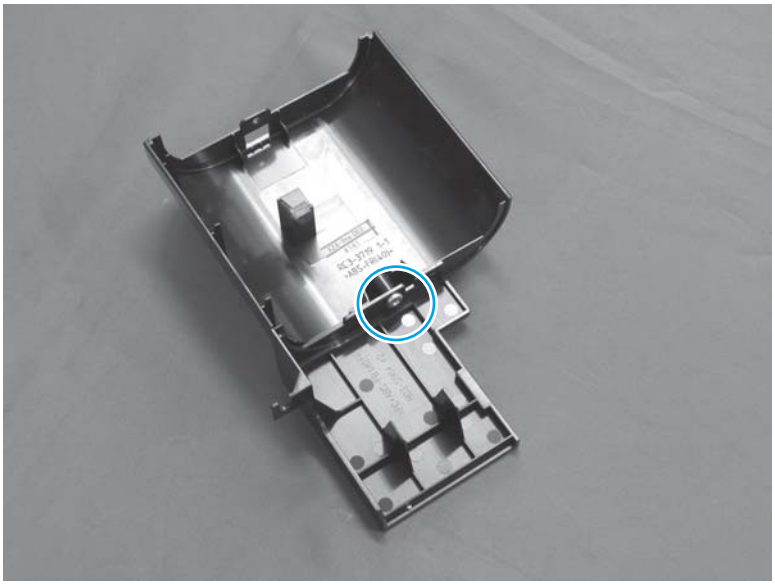
Figure 1-154 Remove the left upper rear cover and rear upper B cover (M880; 1 of 3)

2. Remove the cover (callout 1).

Figure 1-155 Remove the left upper rear cover and rear upper B cover (M880; 2 of 3)

3. Remove one screw, and then separate the rear upper B cover from the left upper rear cover.

Figure 1-156 Remove the left upper rear cover and rear upper B cover (M880; 3 of 3)



Rear upper front cover (M880)

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Remove one of the following, depending upon product configuration:
  - Face-down bin. See Face-down bin on page 101.
  - Intermediate paper transport unit (IPTU). See IPTU assembly on page 437.
- Rear upper MFP cover (M880). See Rear upper MFP cover (M880) on page 109.
- Left upper rear cover (M880). See Left upper rear cover and rear upper B cover (M880) on page 111.
- Document feeder (M880). See Document feeder assembly (M880) on page 154.
- Scanner assembly (M880). See Scanner assembly (M880) on page 162.

Remove the rear upper front cover (M880)

1. Release one tab.

Figure 1-157 Remove the rear upper front cover (M880; 1 of 2)

2. Slide the cover away from the product to remove it.

Figure 1-158 Remove the rear upper front cover (M880; 2 of 2)

Front top cover

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Remove one of the following, depending upon product configuration:
  - Face-down bin. See Face-down bin on page 101.
  - Intermediate paper transport unit (IPTU). See IPTU assembly on page 437.

Remove the front top cover

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-159 Remove the front top cover (1 of 2)

2. Release one tab (callout 1), and then remove the cover.

Figure 1-160 Remove the front top cover (2 of 2)

Rear top cover (M855)

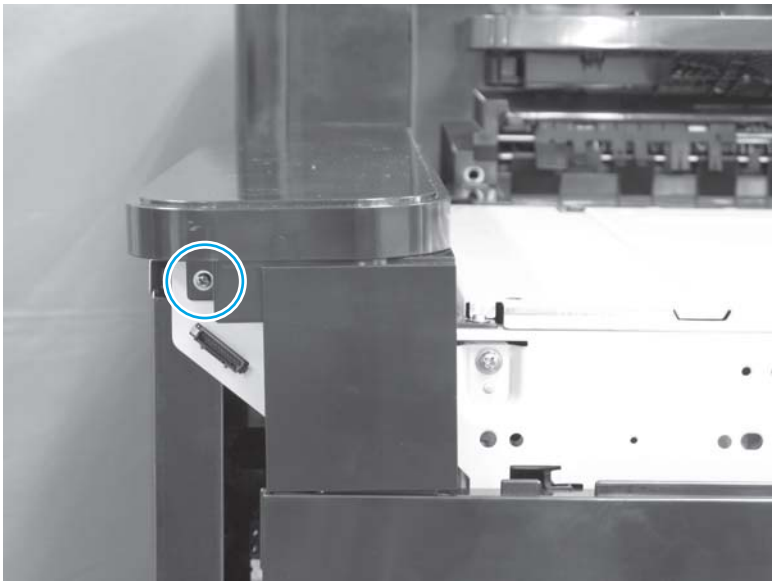
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Remove one of the following, depending upon product configuration:
  - Face-down bin. See Face-down bin on page 101.
  - Intermediate paper transport unit (IPTU). See IPTU assembly on page 437.
- Left rear cover. See Left rear cover on page 104.

Remove the rear top cover (M855)

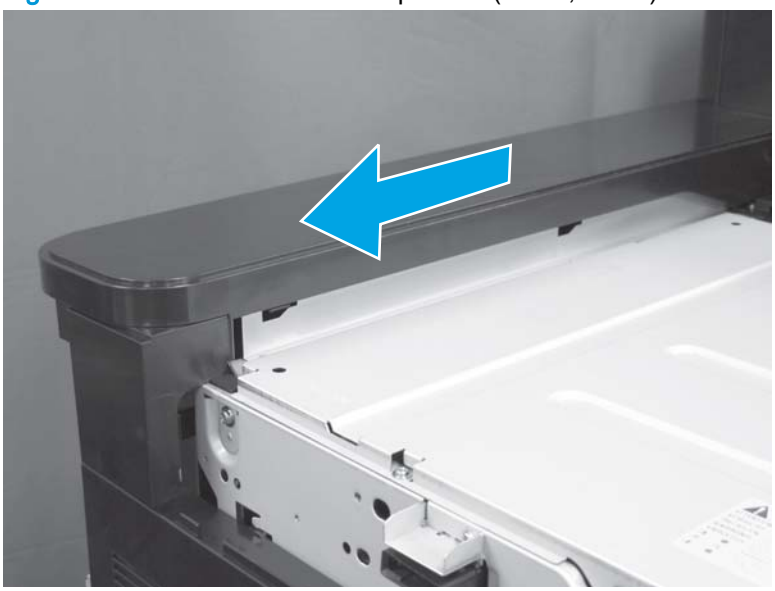
1. Remove one screw.

Figure 1-161 Remove the rear top cover (M855; 1 of 3)



2. Slide the cover away from the product to remove it.

Figure 1-162 Remove the rear top cover (M855; 2 of 3)



3. **Optional step**: If necessary, remove one screw, and then separate the cover assembly.

Figure 1-163 Remove the rear top cover (M855; 3 of 3)

Left cover

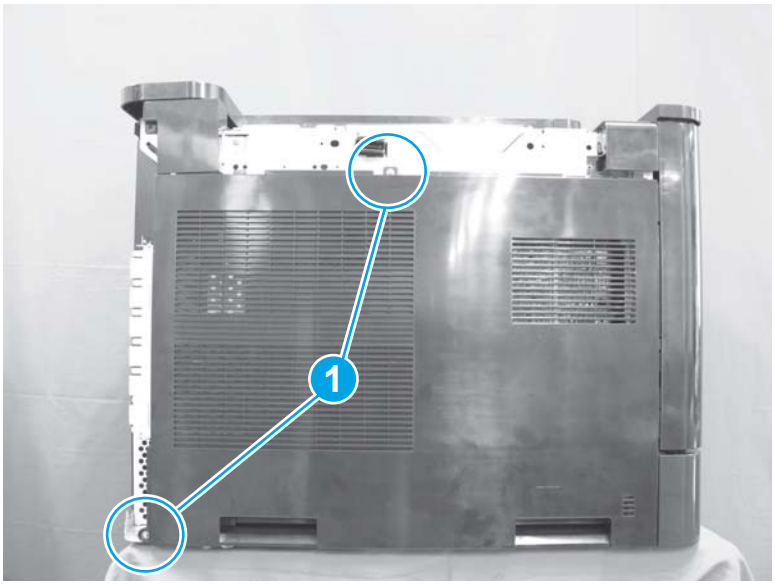
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Remove one of the following, depending upon product configuration:
  - Face-down bin. See Face-down bin on page 101.
  - Intermediate paper transport unit (IPTU). See IPTU assembly on page 437.
- Left rear cover. See Left rear cover on page 104.

Remove the left cover

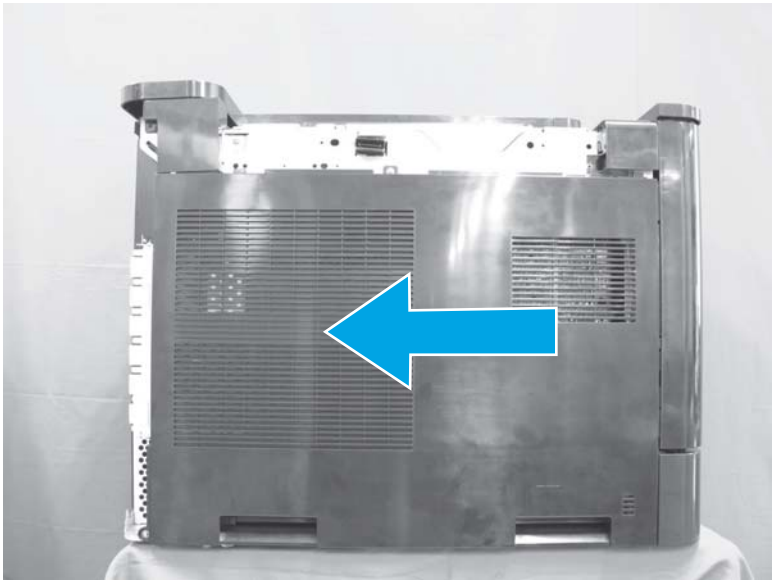
1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-164 Remove the left cover (1 of 2)



2. Slide the cover away from the product to remove it.

Figure 1-165 Remove the left cover (2 of 2)



Right upper front cover (M855)

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Remove one of the following, depending upon product configuration:
  - Face-down bin. See Face-down bin on page 101.
  - Intermediate paper transport unit (IPTU). See IPTU assembly on page 437.
- Hardware integration pocket (HIP) cover (M855). See Hardware integration pocket (HIP) cover (M855) on page 97.
- Control panel (M855). See Control panel assembly (M855) on page 47
- Front top cover. See Front top cover on page 115.

Remove the right upper front cover (M855)

1. Remove one screw.

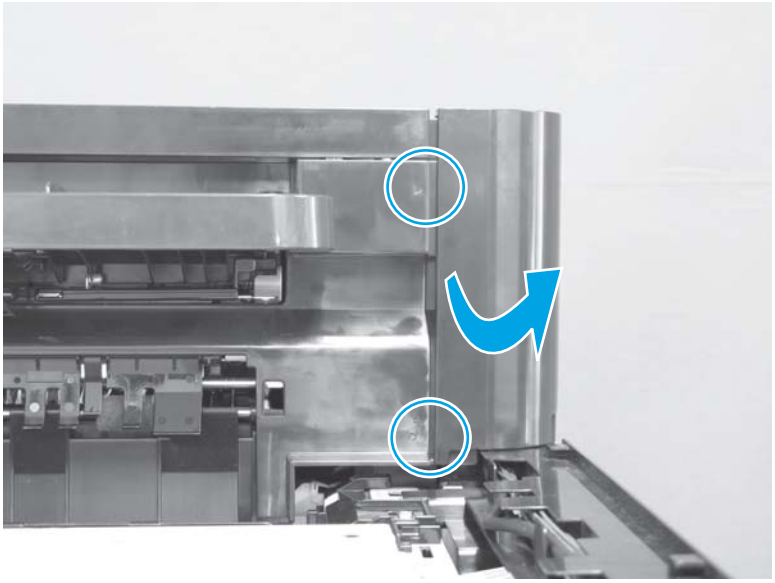
Figure 1-166 Remove the right upper front cover (M855; 1 of 2)

2. Release two tabs, and then rotate the cover away from the product to remove it.

NOTE: Do not remove the USB cable from the cover. Release the cable from the product, and then remove it with the cover.

TIP: Use the arrows embossed on the product to locate the tabs.

Figure 1-167 Remove the right upper front cover (M855; 2 of 2)



Right upper front cover (M880)

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

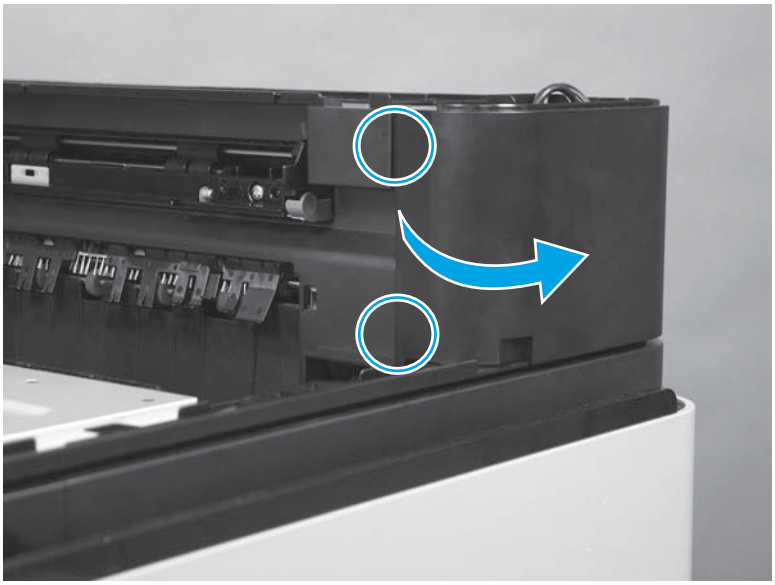
- Remove one of the following, depending upon product configuration:
  - Face-down bin. See Face-down bin on page 101.
  - Intermediate paper transport unit (IPTU). See IPTU assembly on page 437.
- Document feeder (M880). See Document feeder assembly (M880) on page 154.
- Scanner assembly (M880). See Scanner assembly (M880) on page 162
- Front top cover. See Front top cover on page 115.

Remove the right upper front cover (M880)

1. Release two tabs, and then rotate the cover away from the product.

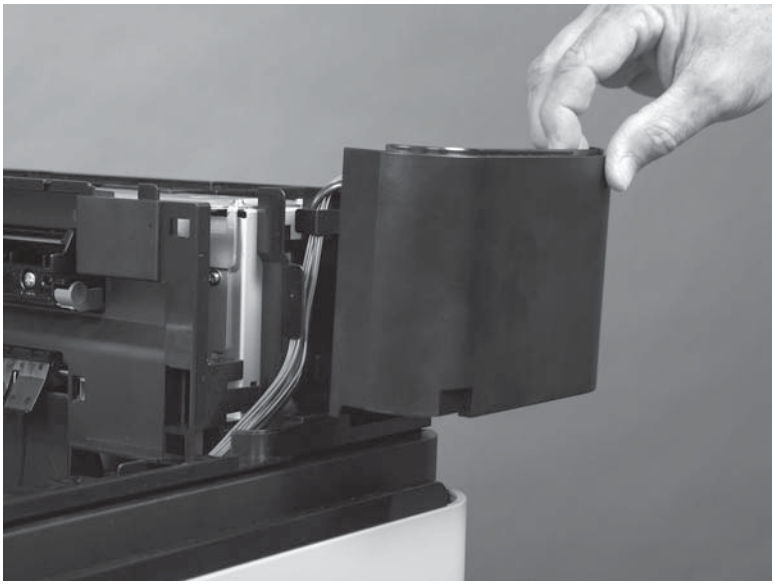
TIP: Use the arrows embossed on the product to locate the tabs.

Figure 1-168 Remove the right upper front cover (M880; 1 of 2)



2. Remove the cover.

Figure 1-169 Remove the right upper front cover (M880; 2 of 2)



Right upper cover (M855)

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

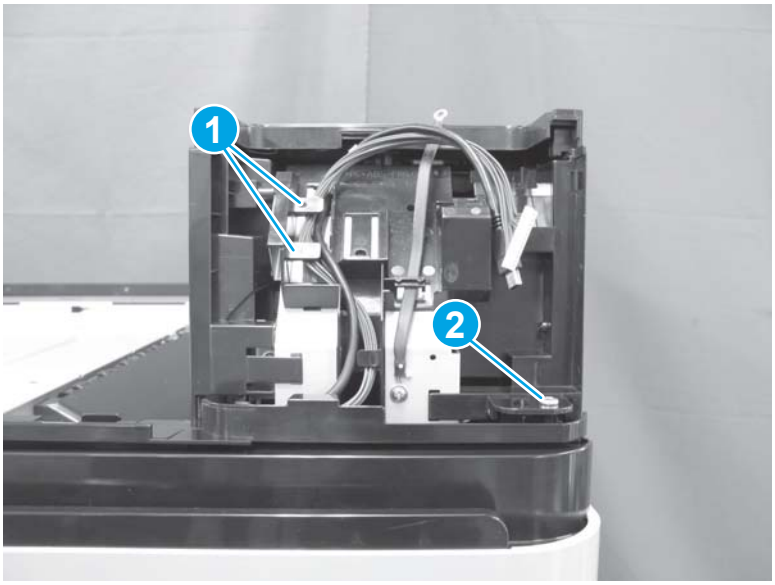
- Optional: Switch back tray. See Switch back tray on page 22.
- Control panel (M855). See Control panel assembly (M855) on page 47
- Right upper rear cover (M855). See Right upper rear cover (M855) on page 96.
- Remove one of the following, depending upon product configuration:
  - Face-down bin. See Face-down bin on page 101.
  - Intermediate paper transport unit (IPTU). See IPTU assembly on page 437.
- Switch back cover. See Switch back cover on page 105.
- Front top cover. See Front top cover on page 115.
- Rear top cover. See Rear top cover (M855) on page 116.
- Right upper front cover (M855). See Right upper front cover (M855) on page 120.

Remove the right upper cover (M855)

1. Release the wire harnesses from the guide (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

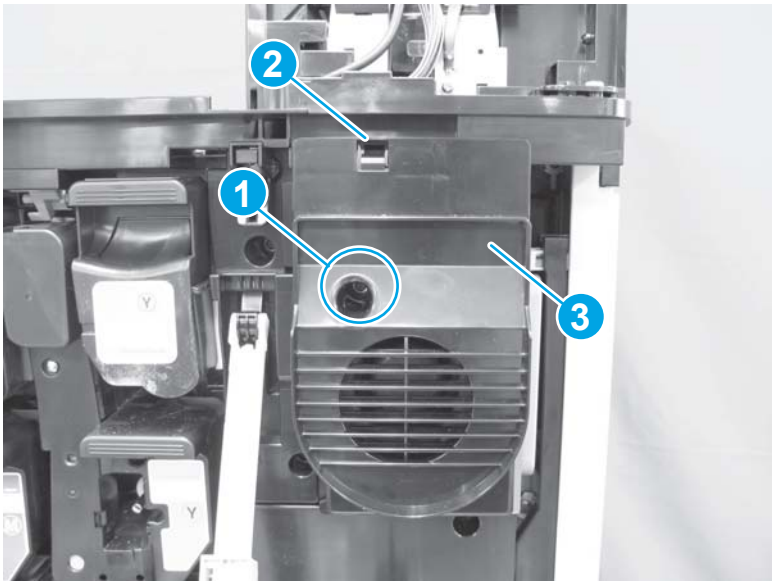
NOTE: Release the control panel cables from the guides as needed.

Figure 1-170 Remove the right upper cover (M855; 1 of 9)



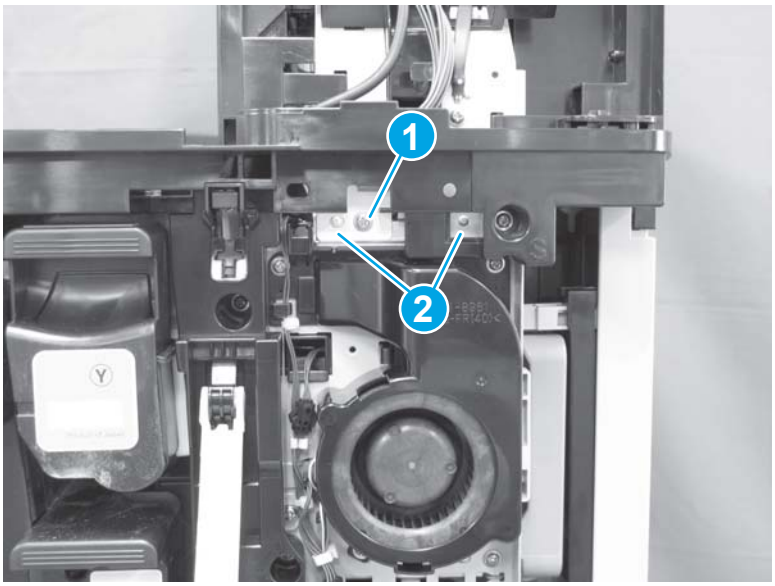
2. Open the front door, remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then remove the delivery fan cover (callout 3).

Figure 1-171 Remove the right upper cover (M855; 2 of 9)



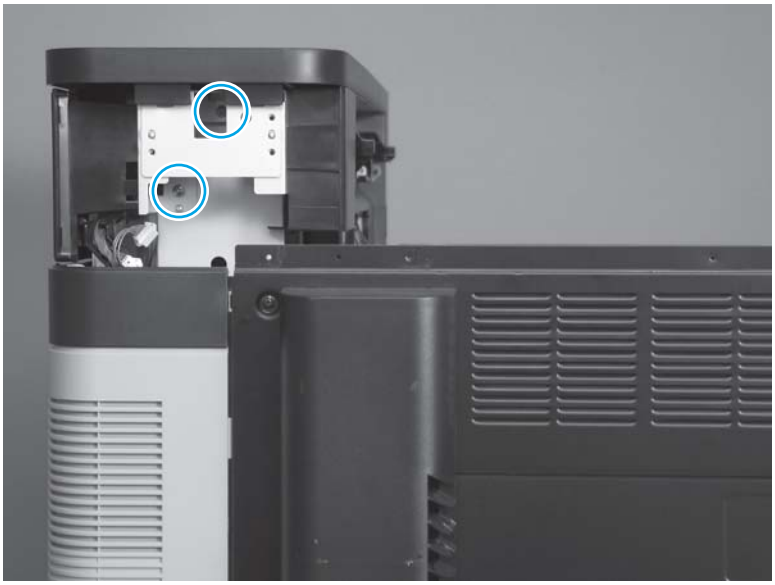
3. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then push up on the assembly to release two sheet-metal tabs (callout 2).

Figure 1-172 Remove the right upper cover (M855; 3 of 9)



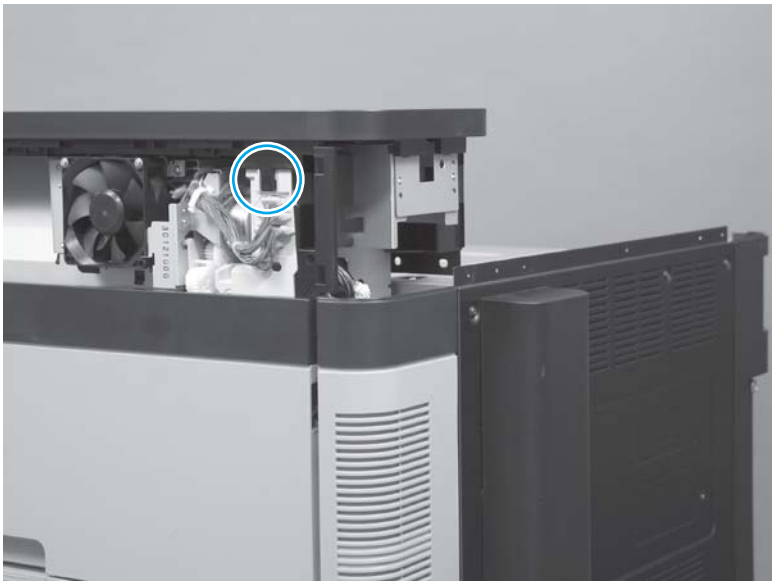
4. From the rear side of the product, remove two screws.

Figure 1-173 Remove the right upper cover (M855; 4 of 9)



5. From the right-rear side of the product, release one tab.

Figure 1-174 Remove the right upper cover (M855; 5 of 9)

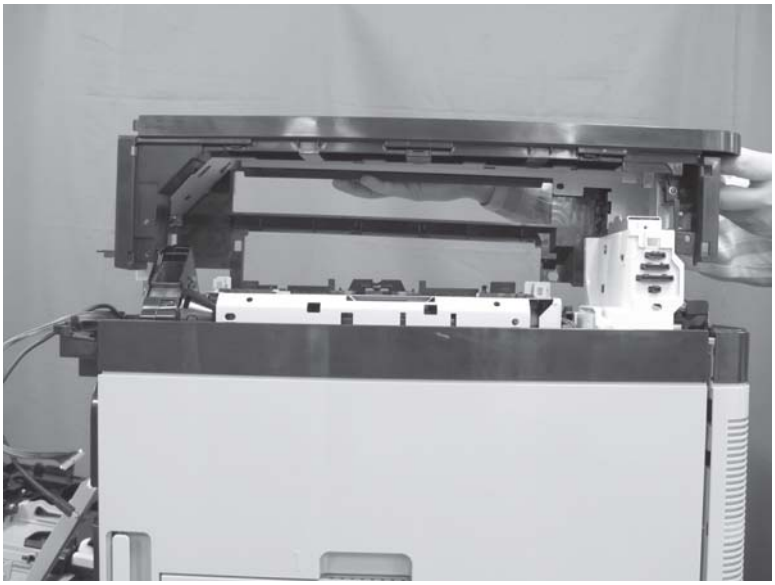


6. Carefully remove the cover assembly.

CAUTION: Release the control panel cables from the guides as needed to remove the assembly. Make sure that the control-panel cables are correctly routed and are not pinched when the assembly is reinstalled.

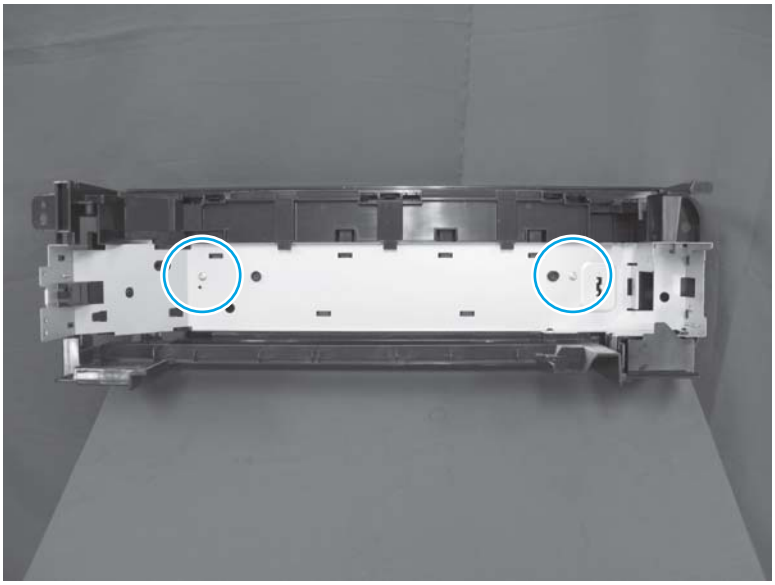
NOTE: The cover is still attached to a sheet-metal bracket.

Figure 1-175 Remove the right upper cover (M855; 6 of 9)



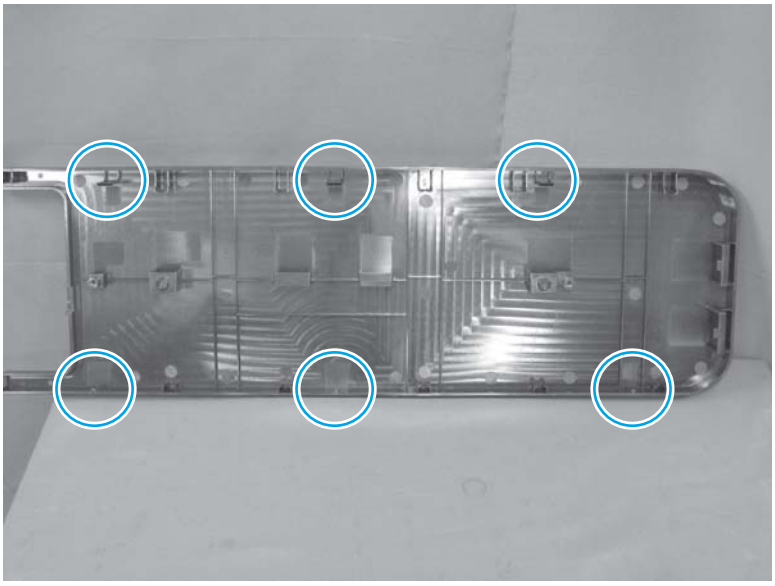
7. **Optional step**: To remove the cover from the sheet-metal bracket, remove two screws.

Figure 1-176 Remove the right upper cover (M855; 7 of 9)



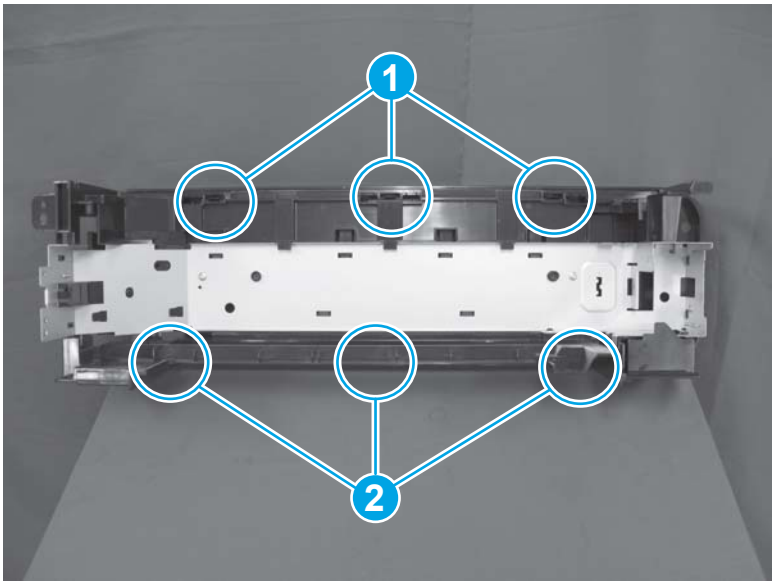
8. **Optional step**: To remove the cover from the sheet-metal bracket, before proceeding, note the location of the six tabs that secure the right upper cover to the assembly.

Figure 1-177 Remove the right upper cover (M855; 8 of 9)



9. **Optional step**: To remove the cover from the sheet-metal bracket, release three tabs (callout 1), release three additional tabs (callout 2), and then separate the cover from the assembly.

Figure 1-178 Remove the right upper cover (M855; 9 of 9)



Right door assembly

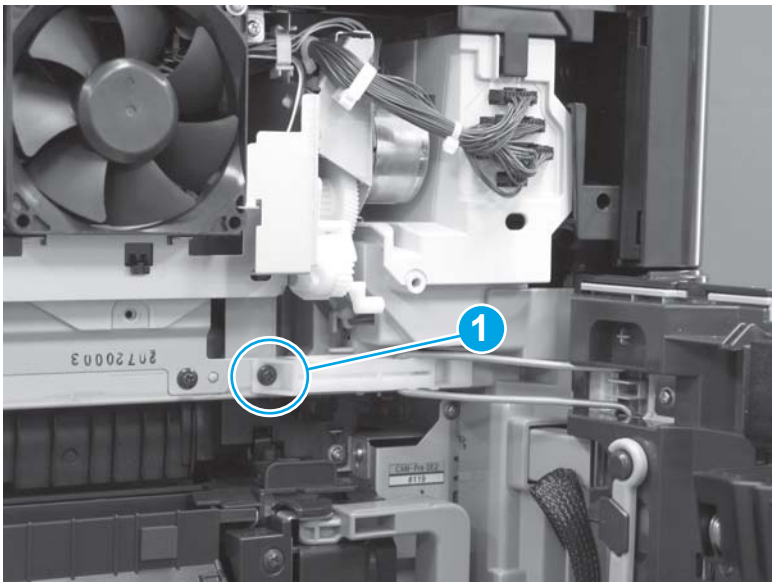
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Switch back cover. See Switch back cover on page 105.

Remove the right door assembly

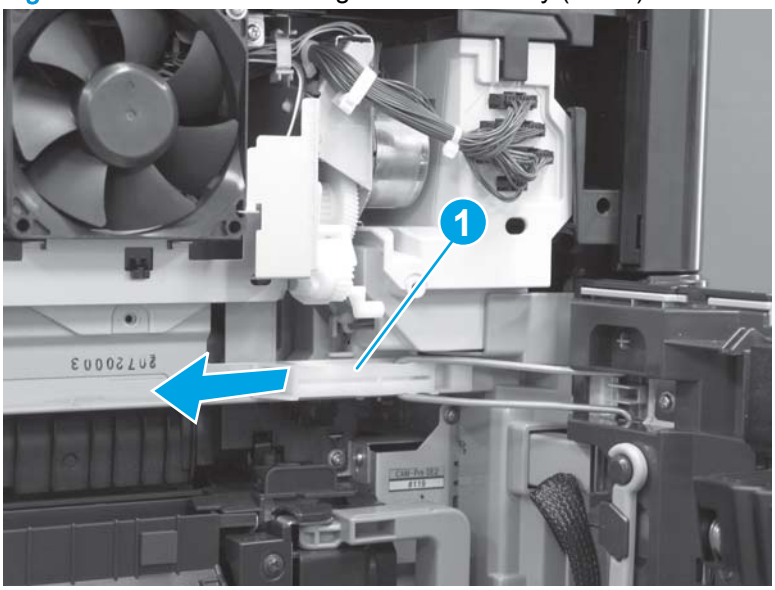
1. Open the right door, and then remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-179 Remove the right door assembly (1 of 7)



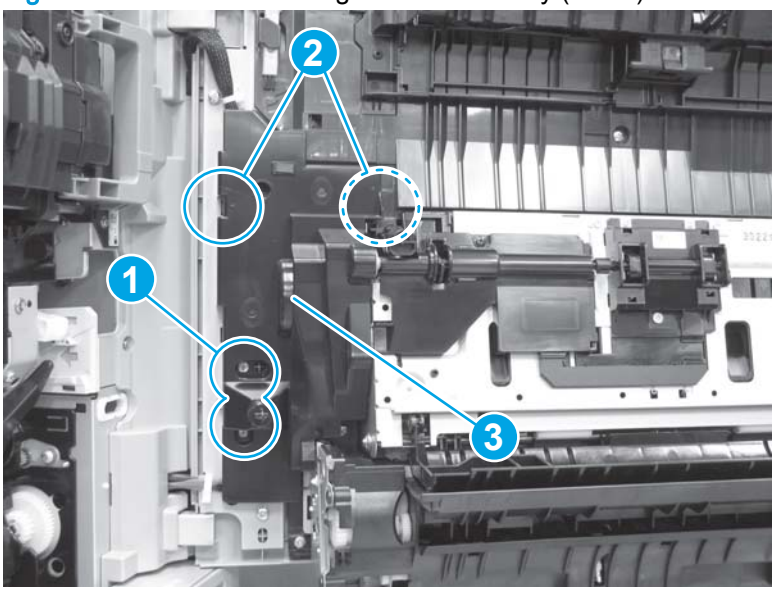
2. Slide the retainer arm and guide (callout 1) to the left to disengage it from the product.

Figure 1-180 Remove the right door assembly (2 of 7)



3. On the door assembly, remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1), release two tabs (callout 2), and then remove the motor cover (callout 3).

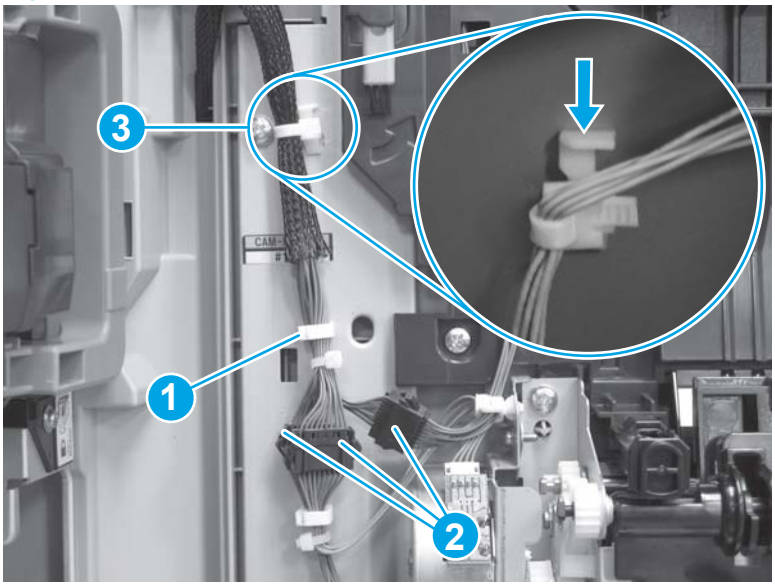
Figure 1-181 Remove the right door assembly (3 of 7)



4. Release the wire harness from the retainer (callout 1), disconnect three connectors (callout 2), and then release one wire tie (callout 3) .

TIP: To release the wire tie (callout 3), push in on the tab, and then remove the wire tie from the door.

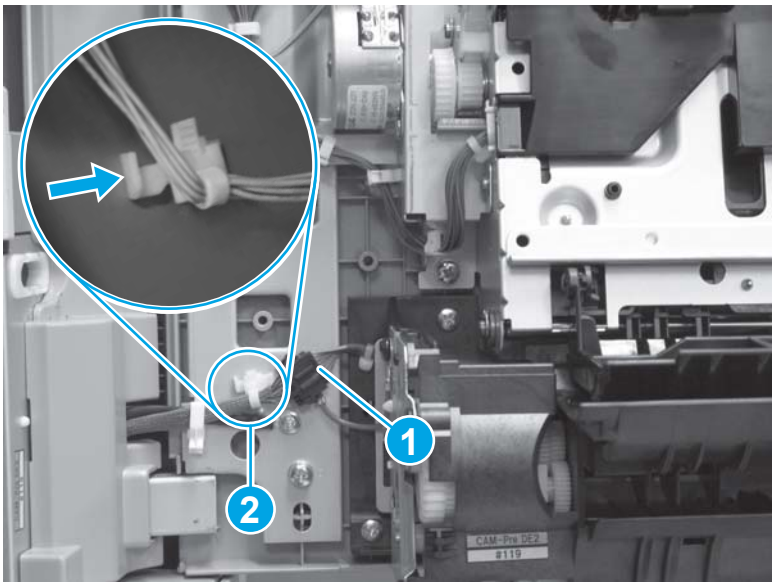
Figure 1-182 Remove the right door assembly (4 of 7)



5. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then release one wire tie (callout 2).

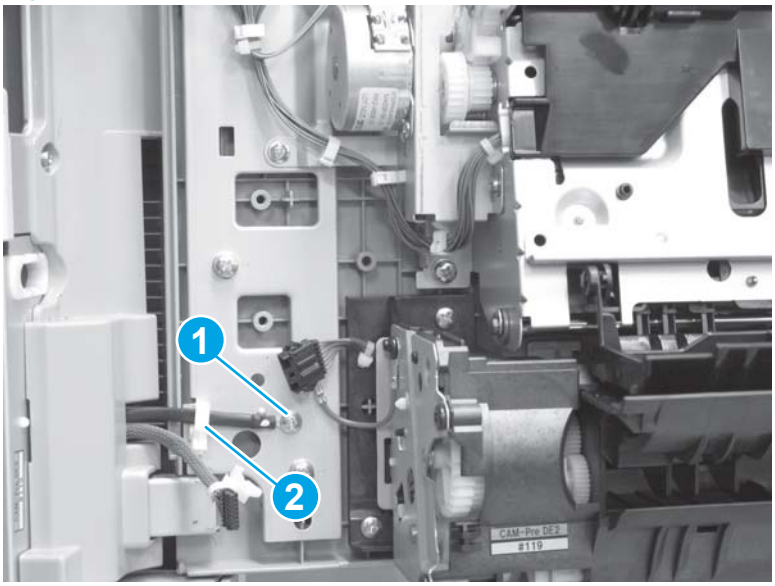
TIP: To release the wire tie (callout 2), push in on the tab, and then remove the wire tie from the door.

Figure 1-183 Remove the right door assembly (5 of 7)



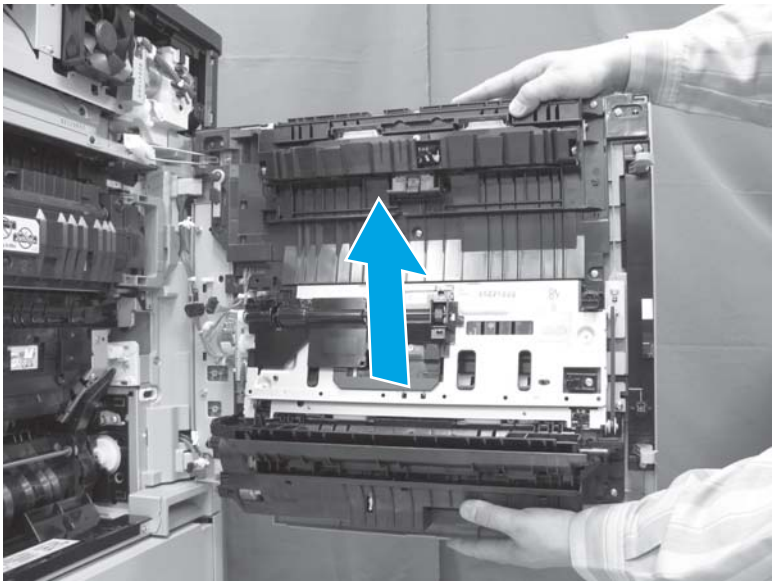
6. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release the wire harness from the retainer (callout 2).

Figure 1-184 Remove the right door assembly (6 of 7)



7. Carefully lift up the door assembly to remove it.

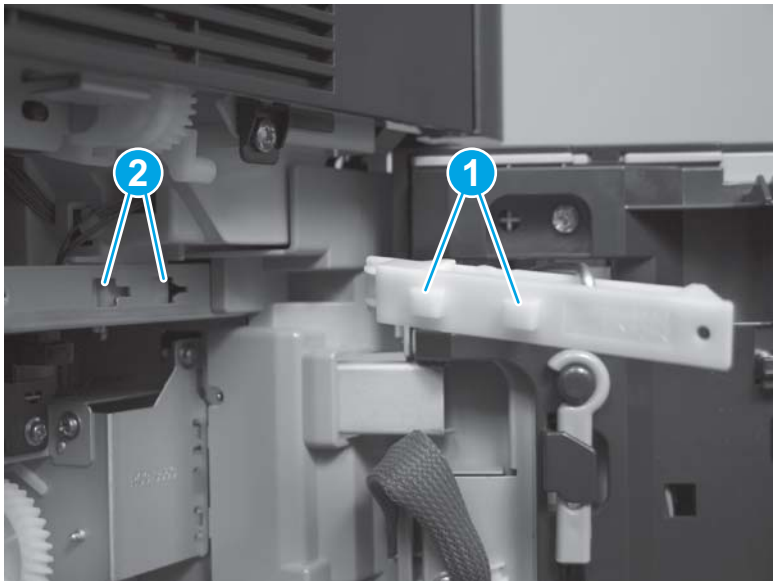
Figure 1-185 Remove the right door assembly (7 of 7)



Reinstall the right door assembly

When reinstalling the retainer arm, make sure that the tabs on the arm (callout 1) are installed in the slots in the product (callout 2).

Figure 1-186 Reinstall the right door assembly



Left front cover

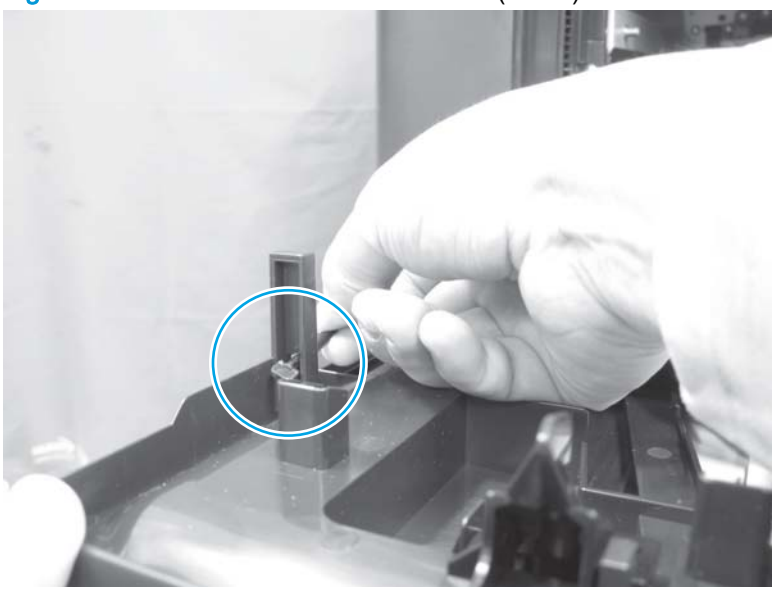
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Remove one of the following, depending upon product configuration:
  - Face-down bin. See Face-down bin on page 101.
  - Intermediate paper transport unit (IPTU). See IPTU assembly on page 437.
- Left rear cover. See Left rear cover on page 104.
- Front top cover. See Front top cover on page 115.
- Left cover. See Left cover on page 118.

Remove the left front cover

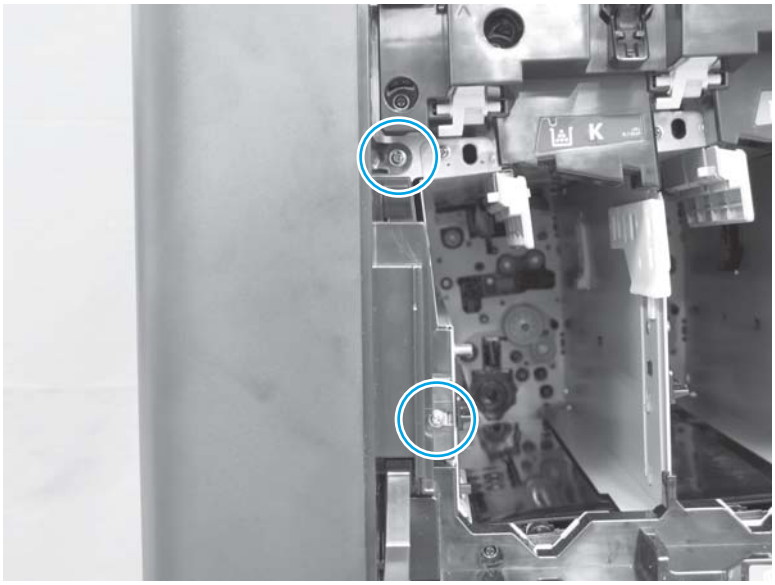
1. Open the front door
2. At the left side of the door, rotate the end of the retaining strap until it aligns with the hole in the bracket, and then push the strap through the hole to release it.

Figure 1-187 Remove the left front cover (1 of 5)



3. Remove two screws.

Figure 1-188 Remove the left front cover (2 of 5)

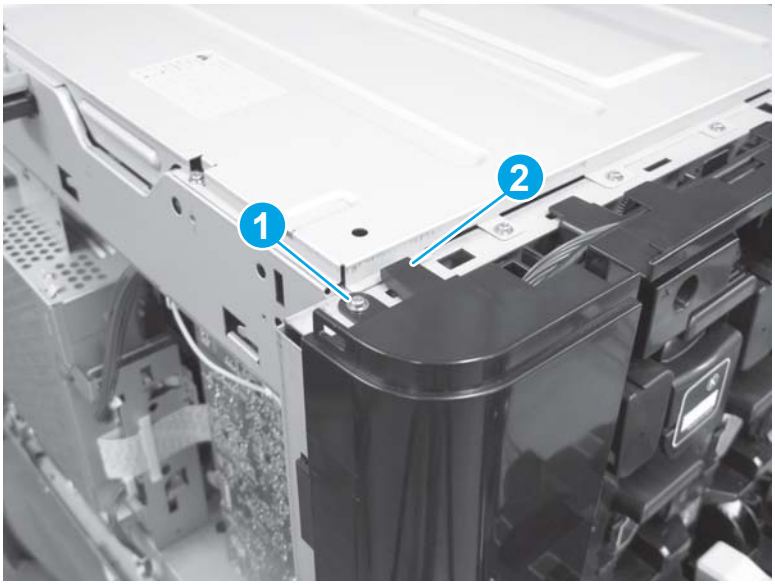


4. At the front of the product near the power switch, remove one screw.

Figure 1-189 Remove the left front cover (3 of 5)

5. At the top of the product, remove one screw (callout 1), and then release one tab (callout 2).

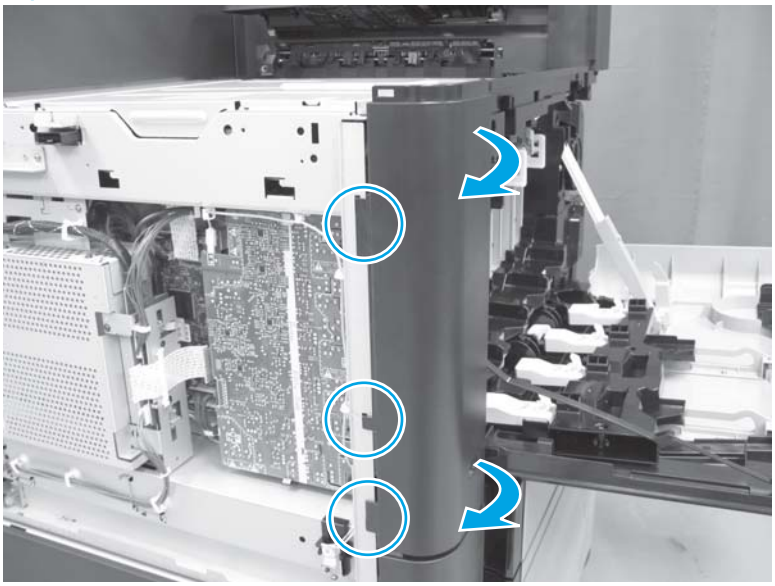
Figure 1-190 Remove the left front cover (4 of 5)



6. Rotate the edge of the cover near the front door away from the product to release three tabs, and then remove the cover.

NOTE: The front door must be open to remove the cover.

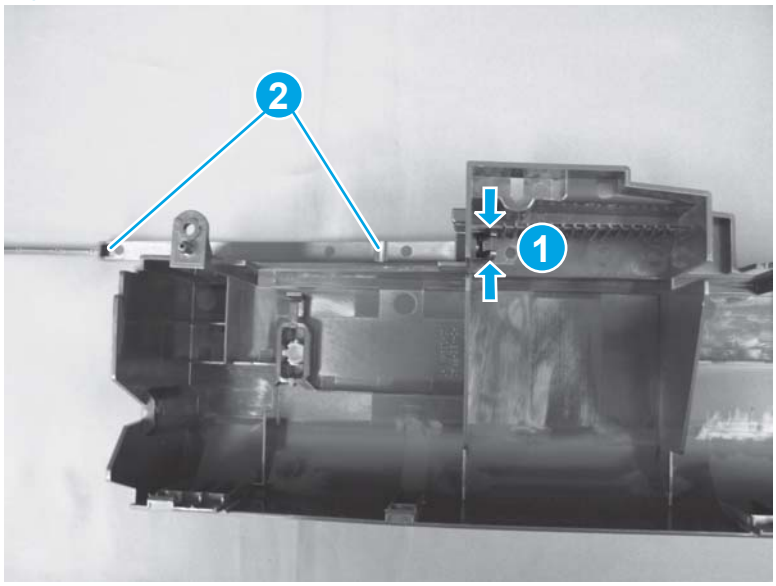
Figure 1-191 Remove the left front cover (5 of 5)



Install a replacement left front cover

If a replacement cover is installed, release two tabs on each side of the clip (callout 1), and then remove the retaining strap (callout 2) from the discarded cover and install it on the replacement cover.

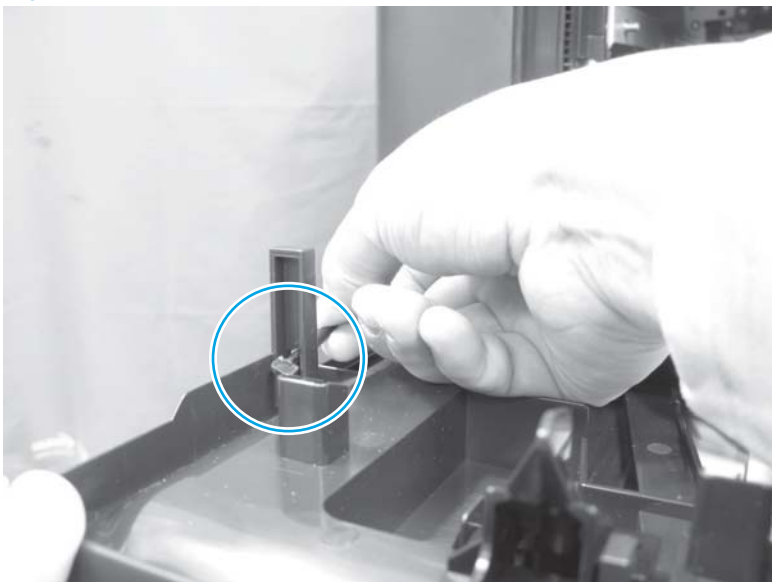
Figure 1-192 Install a replacement left front cover



Front door

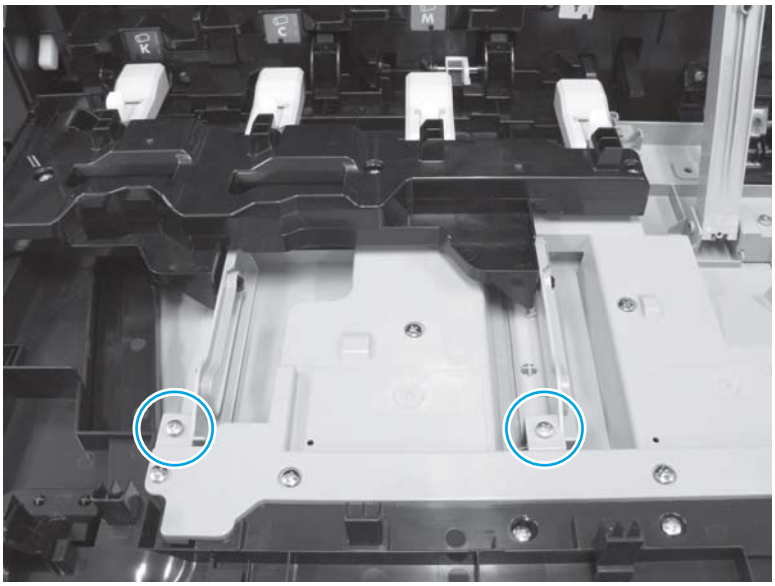
1. Open the front door
2. At the left side of the door, rotate the end of the retaining strap until it aligns with the hole in the bracket, and then push the strap through the hole to release it.

Figure 1-193 Remove the front door (1 of 9)



3. Remove two screws that fasten the two plastic rails to the door.

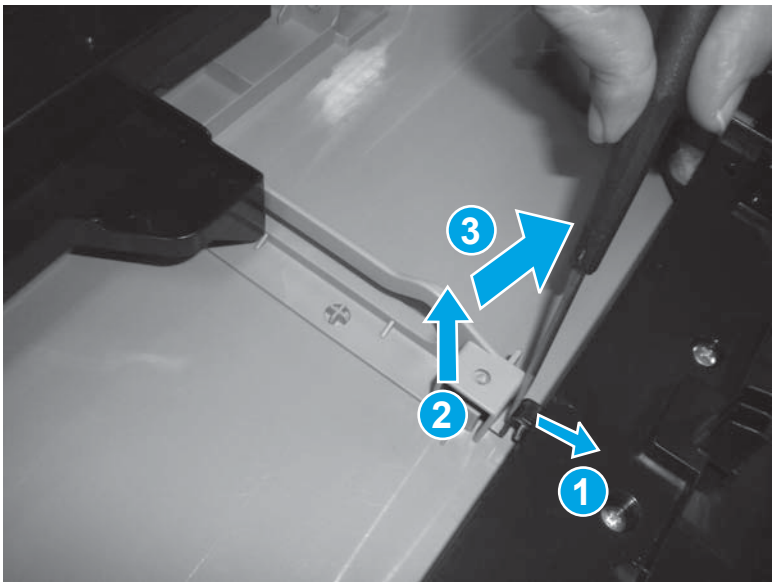
Figure 1-194 Remove the front door (2 of 9)



4. Use a small flat blade screwdriver to release a tab (callout 1), slightly raise the plastic rail (callout 2), and then slide the rail to the right (callout 3) to release and remove it.

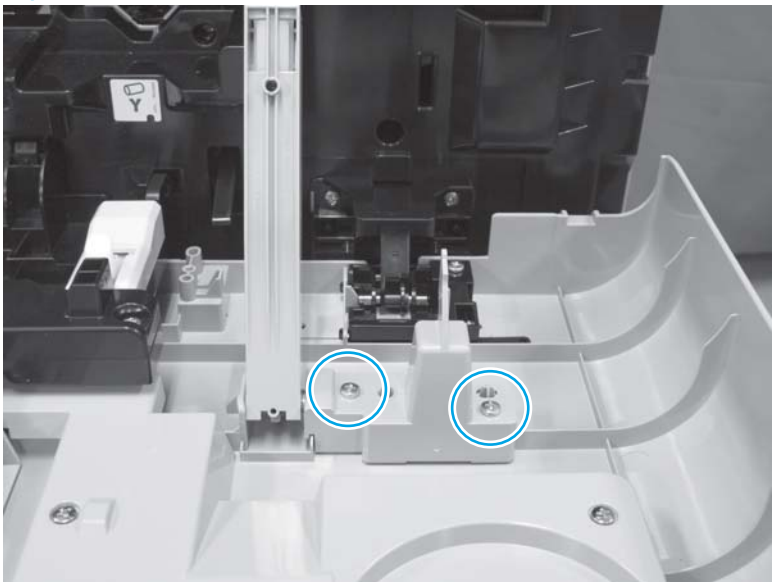
NOTE: Repeat this step for the remaining rail.

Figure 1-195 Remove the front door (3 of 9)



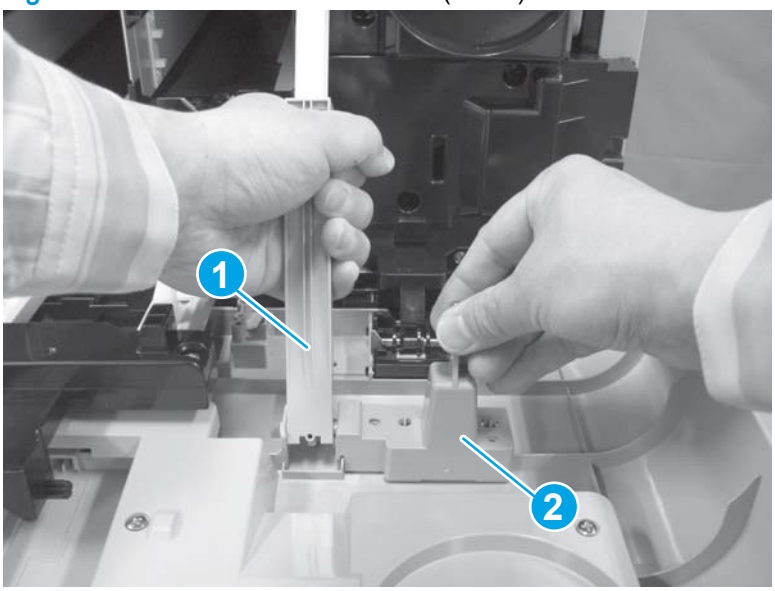
5. At the right side of the door, remove two screws.

Figure 1-196 Remove the front door (4 of 9)



6. Support the interlock-switch arm (callout 1), and then remove the switch lever (callout 2).

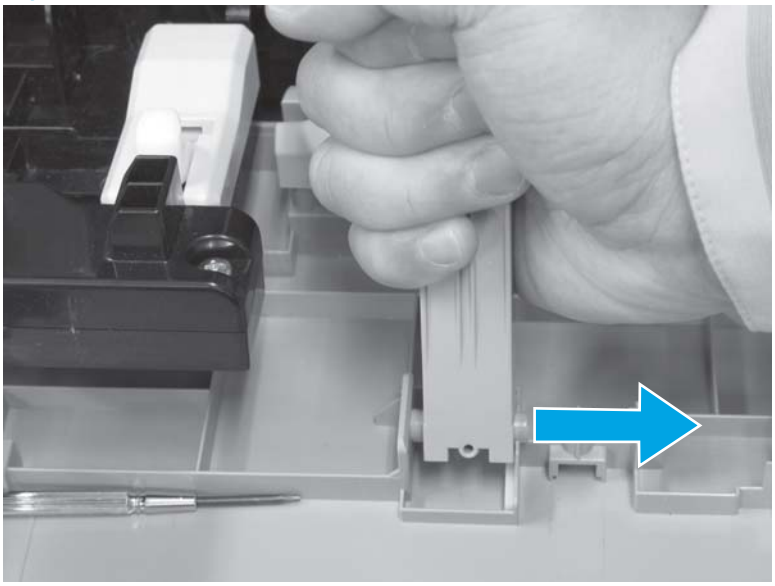
Figure 1-197 Remove the front door (5 of 9)



7. Slide the interlock-switch arm to the right to release it.

⚠ CAUTION: The interlock-switch arm is spring loaded. Firmly grasp the arm when it is removed to prevent it from retracting.

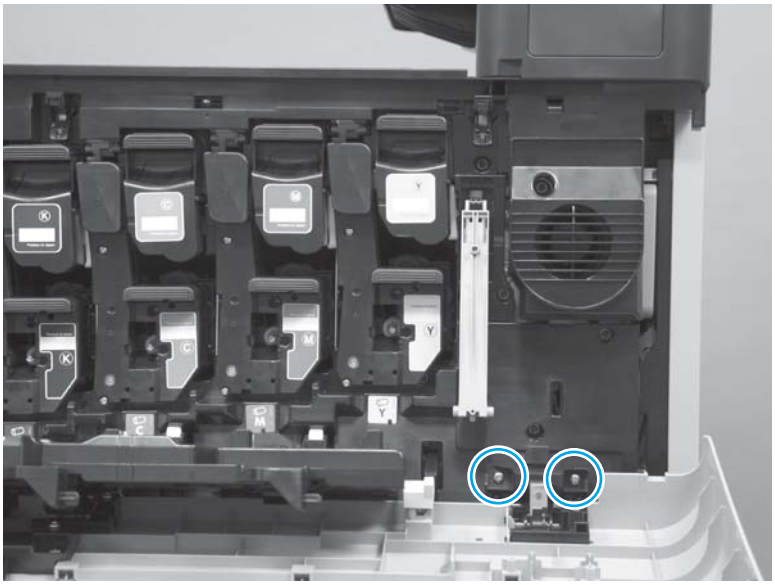
Figure 1-198 Remove the front door (6 of 9)



8. At the right side of the door, remove two screws.

NOTE: Support the door.

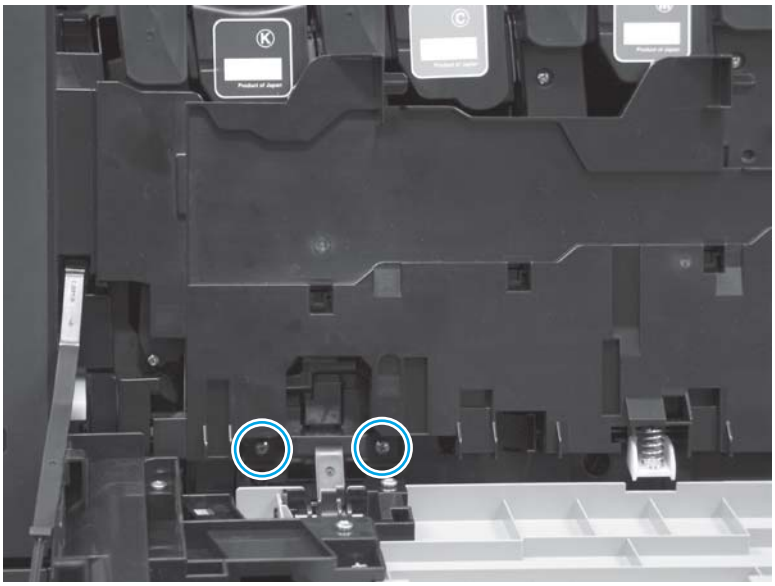
Figure 1-199 Remove the front door (7 of 9)



9. At the left side of the door, remove two screws.

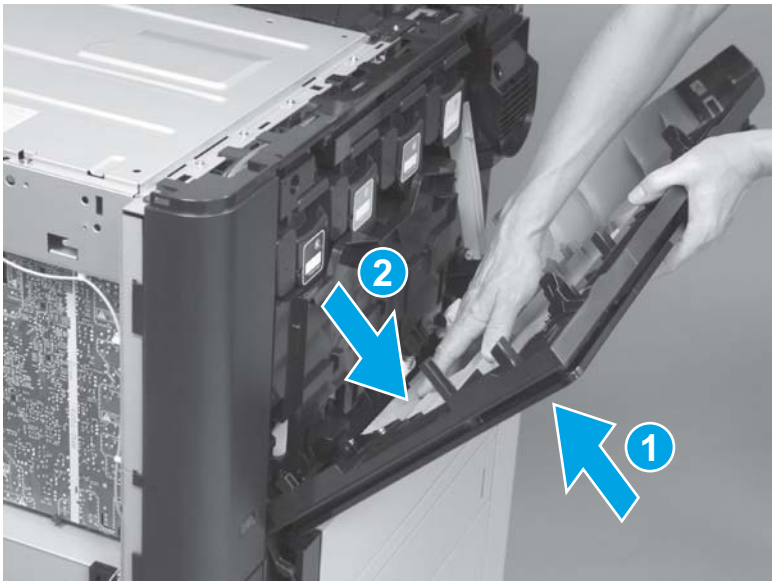
NOTE: Support the door.

Figure 1-200 Remove the front door (8 of 9)



10. Raise the door until it is about one-half of the way open (callout 1), push down on the door (callout 2) to release it, and then remove the door.

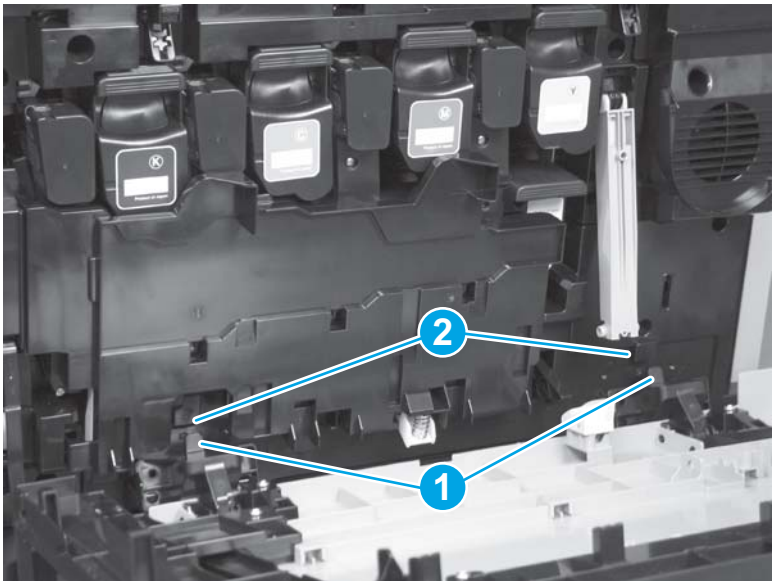
Figure 1-201 Remove the front door (9 of 9)



Reinstall the front door

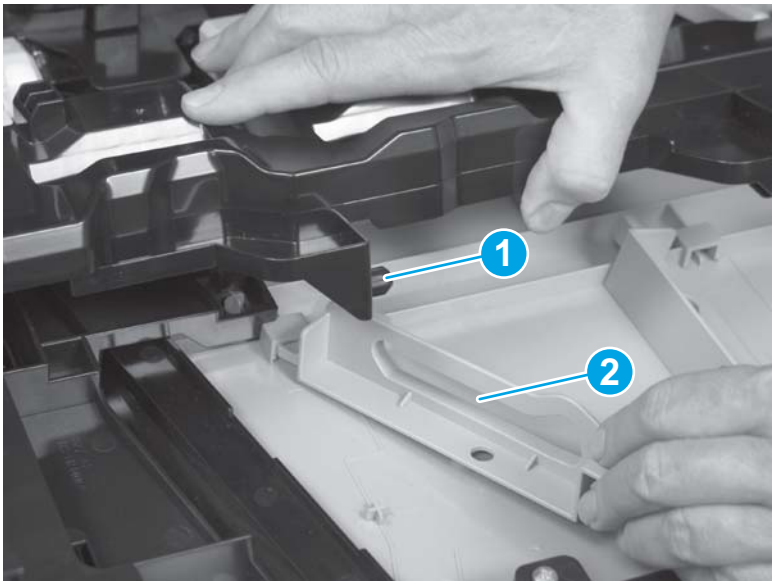
1. When reinstalling the door, make sure that the pins (callout 1) on the door are positioned in the slots (callout 2) on the product.

Figure 1-202 Reinstall the front door (1 of 2)



2. When reinstalling the rails, make sure that the pin (callout 1) on the inner door is positioned inside the slot (callout 2) on the rail before reinstalling the screws.

Figure 1-203 Reinstall the front door (2 of 2)



Rear cover

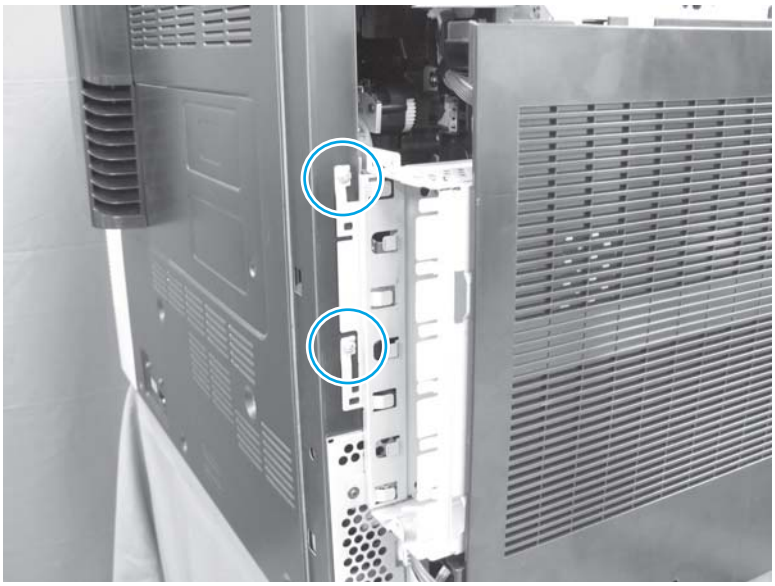
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Left rear cover. See Left rear cover on page 104.

Remove the rear cover

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 1-204 Remove the rear cover (1 of 3)

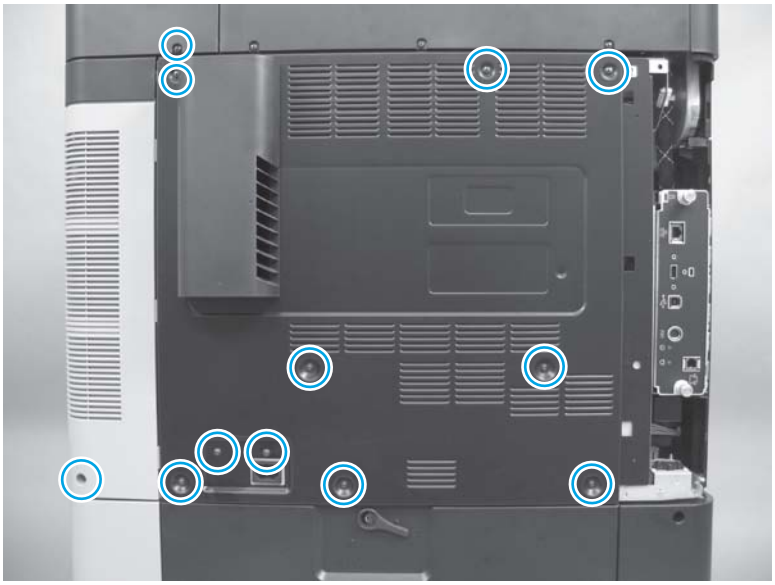


2. **M880 only**: Remove three screws.

Figure 1-205 Remove the rear cover (2 of 3)

3. Remove twelve screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 1-206 Remove the rear cover (3 of 3)



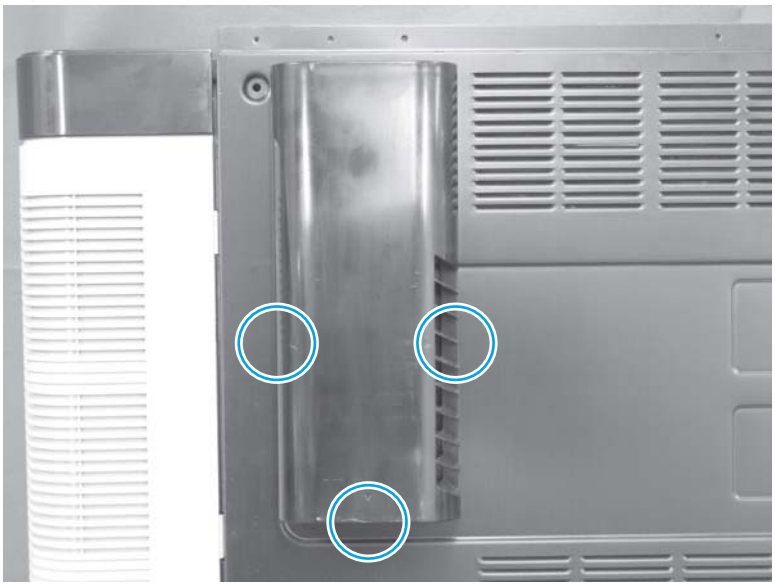
Install a replacement rear cover

If a replacement cover is installed, remove the fuser fan cover and the right rear cover, and then install them on the replacement cover.

1. Release three tabs, and then remove the fuser fan cover.

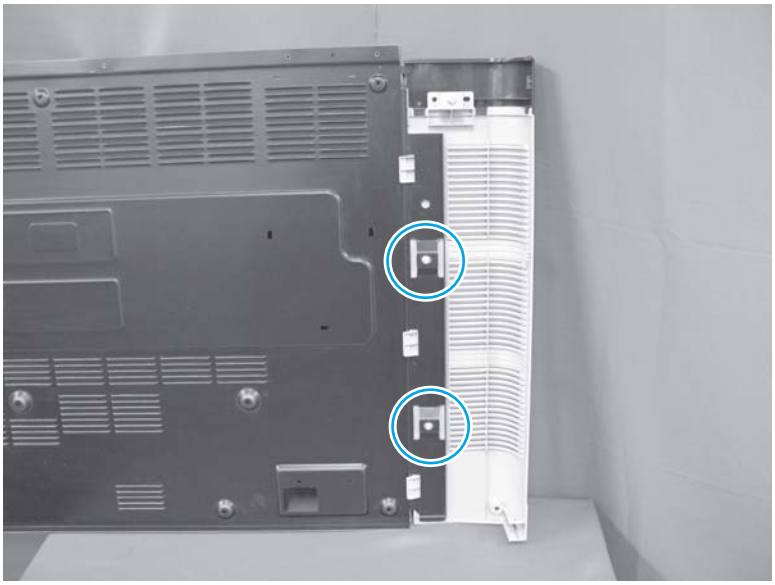
TIP: Look for the arrows embossed on the cover to locate the tabs.

Figure 1-207 Install a replacement rear cover (1 of 2)



2. Remove two screws, and then separate the right rear cover from the rear cover.

Figure 1-208 Install a replacement rear cover (2 of 2)



Right rear cover

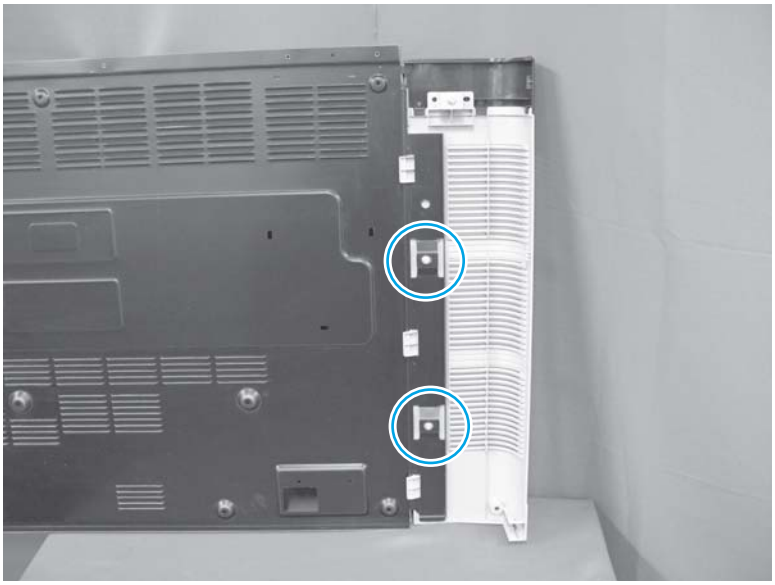
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Left rear cover. See Left rear cover on page 104.
- Rear cover. See Rear cover on page 143.

Remove the right rear cover

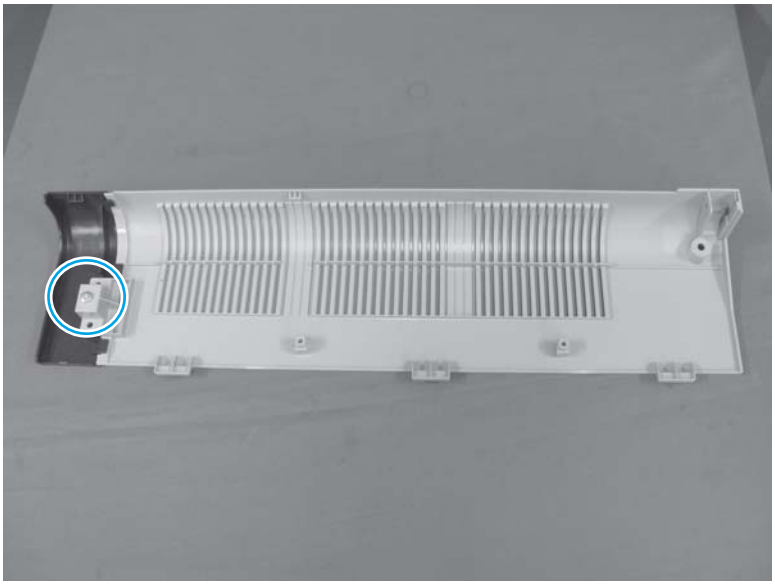
1. Remove two screws, and then separate the right rear cover from the rear cover.

Figure 1-209 Remove the right rear cover (1 of 2)



2. **Optional step**: If necessary, remove one screw, and then separate the small upper cover from the right rear cover.

Figure 1-210 Remove the right rear cover (2 of 2)



Front inner cover

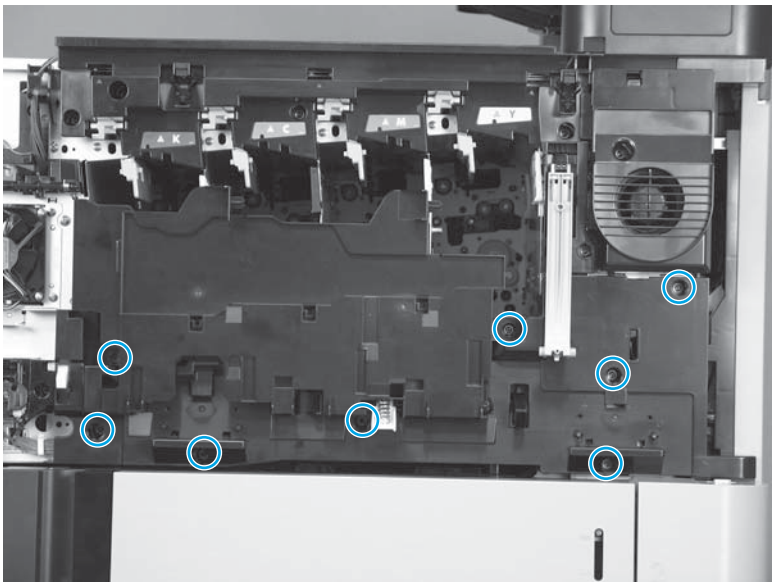
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Remove one of the following, depending upon product configuration:
  - Face-down bin. See Face-down bin on page 101.
  - Intermediate paper transport unit (IPTU). See IPTU assembly on page 437.
- Front top cover. See Front top cover on page 115.
- Left cover. See Left cover on page 118.
- Left front cover. See Left front cover on page 133.
- Front door assembly. See Front door on page 137.

Remove the front inner cover

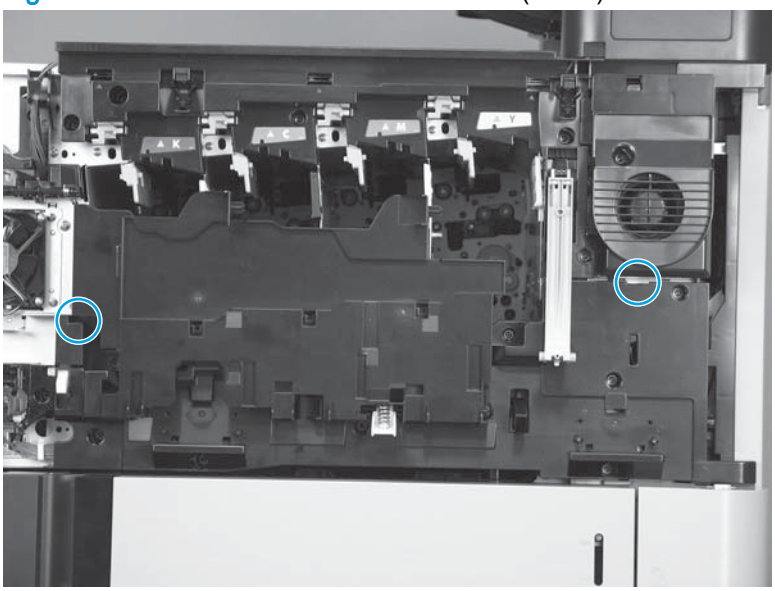
1. Remove eight screws.

Figure 1-211 Remove the front inner cover (1 of 2)



2. Release two tabs, and then remove the front inner cover.

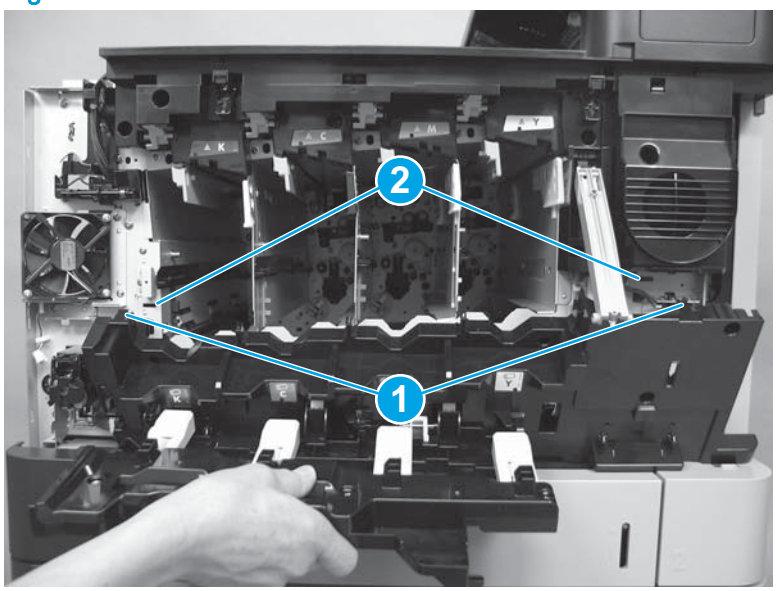
Figure 1-212 Remove the front inner cover (2 of 2)



Reinstall the front inner cover

Make sure that the tabs (callout 1) on the cover are inserted in the slots (callout 2) in the product.

Figure 1-213 Reinstall the front inner cover



Main assemblies

TIP: For clarity, some figures in this chapter show assemblies removed that are not required to be removed to service the product (for example, the scanner and document feeder assemblies). The procedures in this manual are correct for your product.

- Location of major components
- Document feeder assembly (M880)
- Scanner control board (SCB) (M880)
- Scanner assembly (M880)
- Interlock switch assembly
- Front-door open detection switch
- Main switch assembly
- Secondary transfer assembly
- Multipurpose tray (Tray 1) drive assembly
- Multipurpose tray (Tray 1) guide assembly
- Tray 2 pickup unit
- Fuser home position sensor
- Shutter gear holder assembly
- Fuser-edge area cooling fan FM10 (front)
- Fuser-edge area cooling fan FM9 (rear)
- Fuser fan FM2
- Fuser fan duct
- Cartridge fan FM3 (yellow and magenta)
- Cartridge fan FM4 (cyan and black)
- Laser/scanner fan FM1
- Delivery fan FM8
- Cartridge front area cooling fan FM7
- Memory tag PCA
- Image-drum motor
- Fuser power supply
- Primary transfer-roller disengagement motor
- Intermediate transfer belt (ITB) alienation-drive assembly
- Fuser motor

- Intermediate transfer belt (ITB) motor
- Toner-cartridge feed motor (black)
- Toner-cartridge feed motor (yellow, magenta, and cyan)
- Environmental sensor
- Interconnect PCA (M855)
- Interconnect PCA (M880)
- Formatter case
- Formatter, formatter case, and interconnect board (ICB)
- High-voltage power supply (HVPS) B
- DC controller PCA
- Color-plane registration (CPR) sensor assembly
- Low-voltage power supply (LVPS)
- High-voltage power supply (HVPS) A (first transfer)
- Lifter-drive assembly
- Toner-cartridge drive assembly (yellow and magenta)
- Toner-cartridge drive assembly (cyan and black)
- Cartridge interface PCA (cyan and black)
- Cartridge interface PCA (yellow and magenta)
- Main drive assembly
- Replace or reinstall the toner-cartridge drive assemblies or the main drive assembly
- Fuser drive assembly
- Scanner cover
- Laser/scanner assembly (yellow and magenta)
- Laser/scanner assembly (cyan and black)
- Duplex reverse assembly (M855)
- Duplex reverse assembly (M880)
- VOC fan (M855)
- VOC fan (M880)
- Face-down delivery assembly(M855)
- Face-down delivery assembly (M880)
- Face-down cover

- Duplexing feed assembly
- Multipurpose tray (Tray 1) pickup assembly

Location of major components

Figure 1-214 Base product main assemblies (1 of 2)

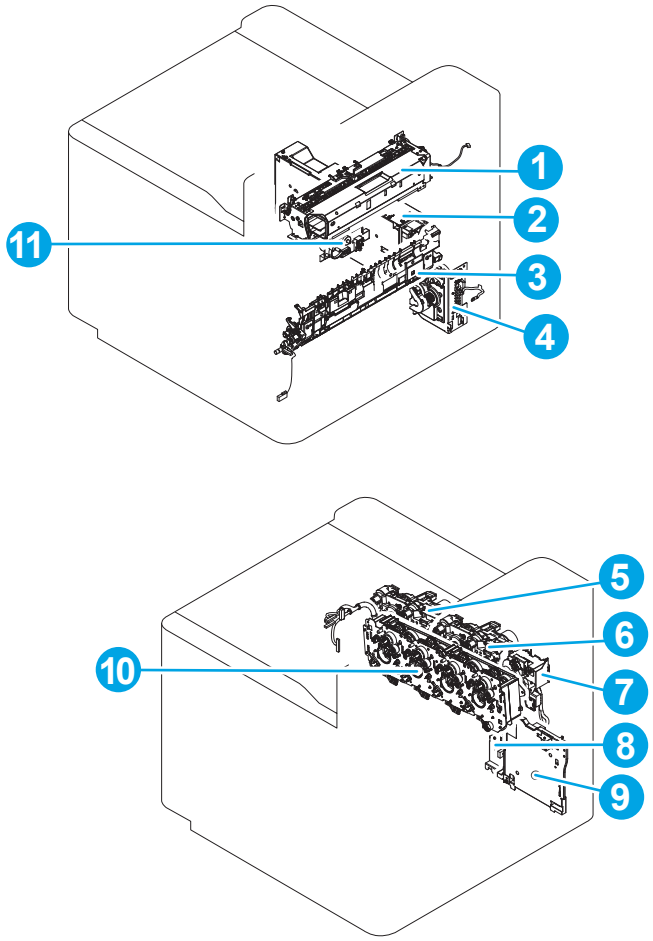


Table 1-9 Base product main assemblies (1 of 2)

Item	Description	Item	Description
1	Face-down delivery assembly	7	Fuser drive assembly
2	Low-voltage power supply (LVPS)	8	ITB alienation drive assembly
3	Secondary transfer (T2) assembly	9	Fuser PCA
4	Multipurpose tray (Tray 1) drive assembly	10	Main drive assembly
5	Toner cartridge drive assembly (C/K)	11	Shutter gear holder assembly
6	Toner cartridge drive assembly (Y/M)		

Figure 1-215 Base product main assemblies (2 of 2)

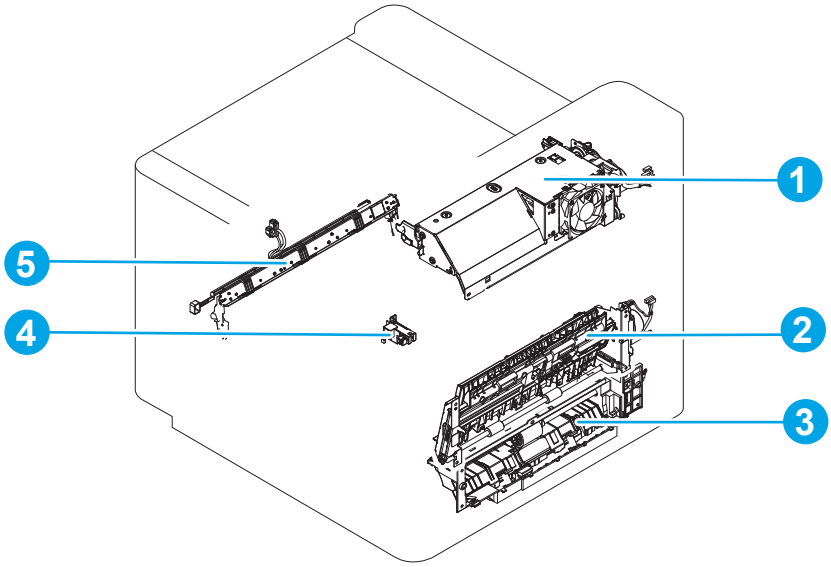


Table 1-10 Base product main assemblies (2 of 2)

Item	Description	Item	Description
1	Duplex reverse assembly	4	Fuser home position sensor assembly
2	Duplexing feed assembly (assembly is attached to the right door)	5	Color-plane registration (CPR) sensor assembly
3	Multipurpose tray (Tray 1) pickup assembly (assembly is attached to the right door)		

Document feeder assembly (M880)

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

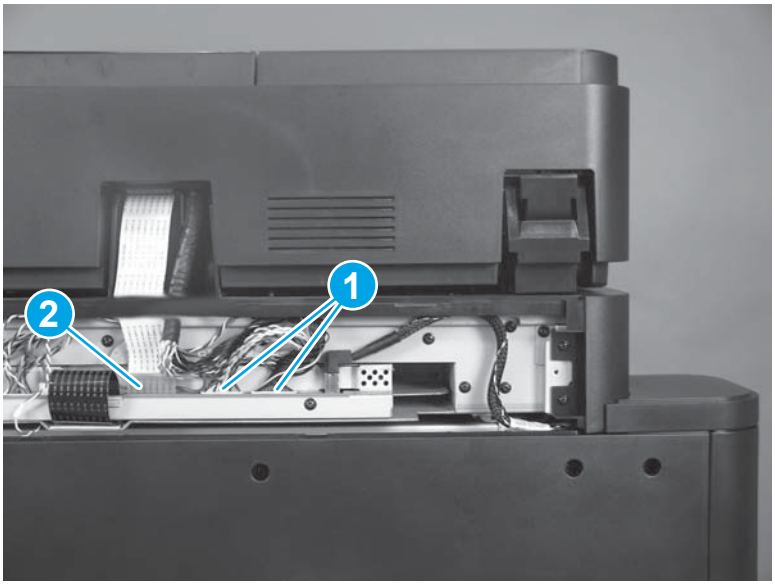
- Scanner back cover (M880). See Scanner back cover (M880) on page 88.

Remove the document feeder assembly (M880)

IMPORTANT: If you are installing a replacement ADF assembly, you must use the Service menu to set the Document feeder Kit Interval and ADF Count values to zero. See Reinstall the document feeder assembly (M880) on page 159.

1. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and one flat cable (callout 2).

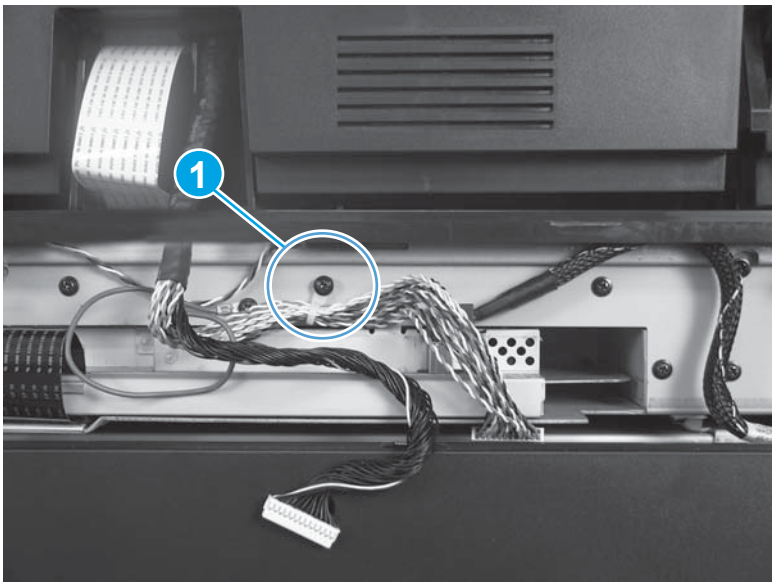
Figure 1-216 Remove the document feeder assembly (M880; 1 of 9)



2. Remove one screw (callout 1) and the retainer.

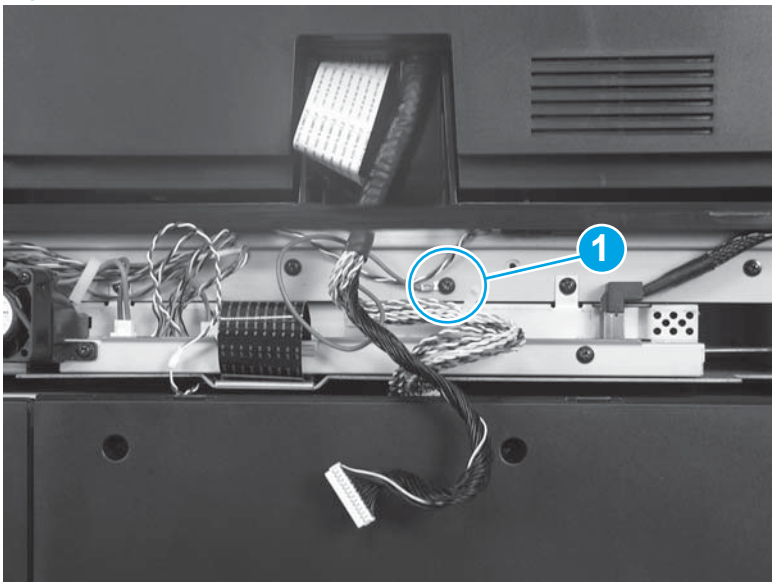
NOTE: The screw (callout 1) that secures the wire retainer is longer than other screws used in the product. Make sure that you use this screw when the retainer is reinstalled.

Figure 1-217 Remove the document feeder assembly (M880; 2 of 9)



3. Remove one screw (callout 1) to release one ground wire.

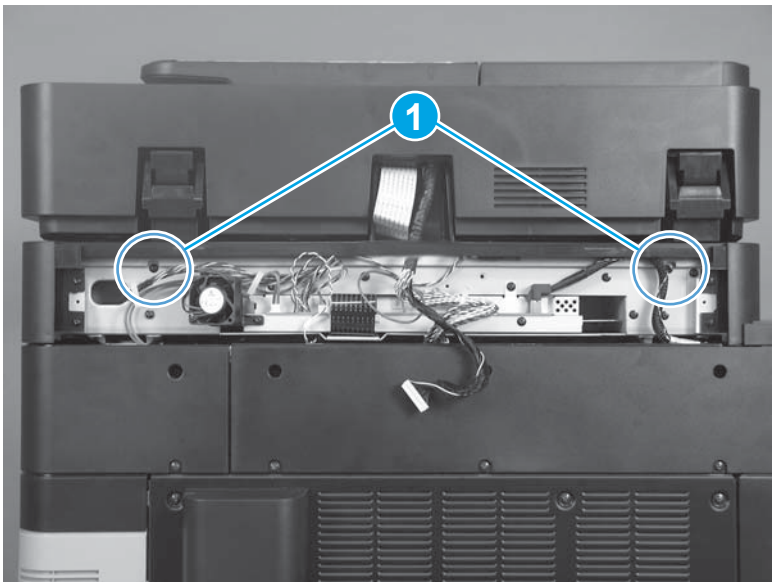
Figure 1-218 Remove the document feeder assembly (M880; 3 of 9)



4. Remove two screws (callout 1) to release the document feeder hinges.

NOTE: These screws (callout 1) are longer than other screws used in the product. Make sure that you use these screws when the document feeder assembly is reinstalled.

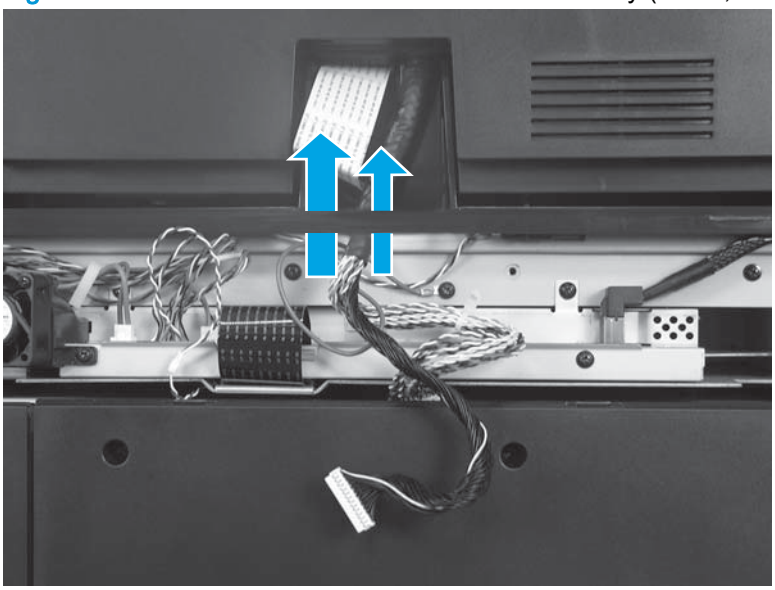
Figure 1-219 Remove the document feeder assembly (M880; 4 of 9)



5. Carefully push the document feeder wire harness and flat cable up through the opening in the scanner bezel.

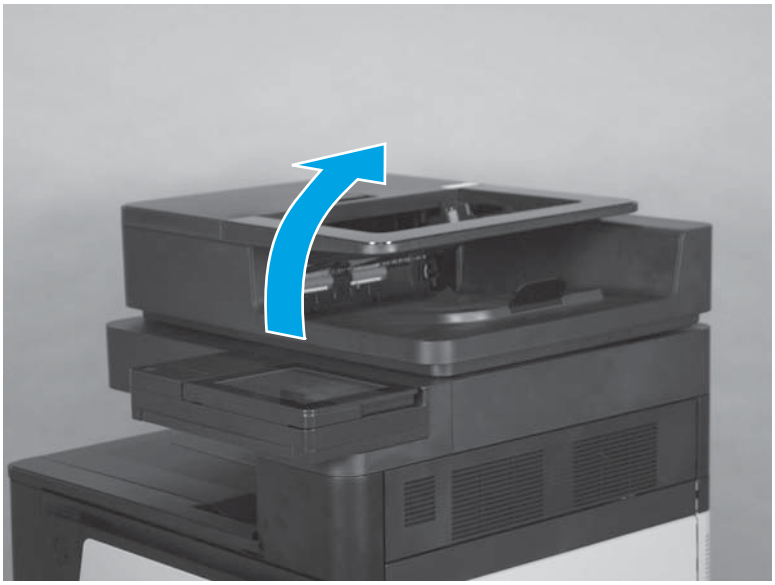
Reinstallation tip When the document feeder is reinstalled, make sure that the wire harness and flat cable are behind the scanner bezel, or the scanner back cover will not fit properly.

Figure 1-220 Remove the document feeder assembly (M880; 5 of 9)



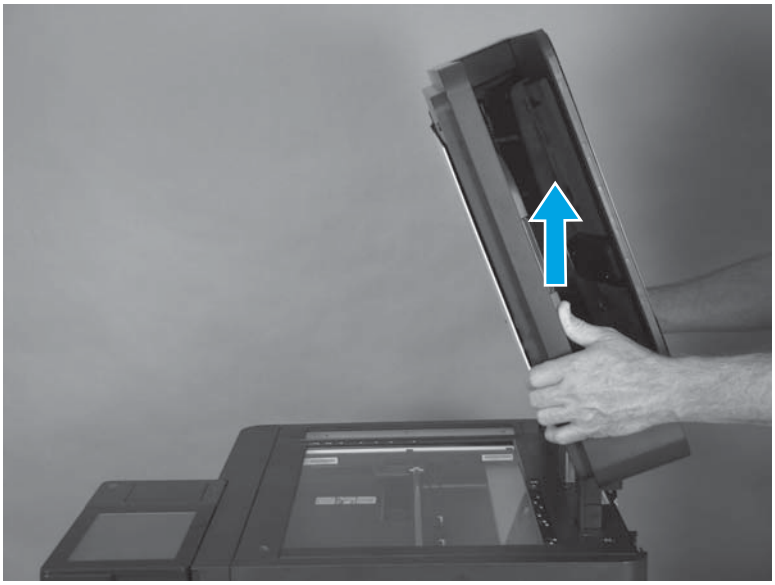
6. Raise the document feeder to the open position.

Figure 1-221 Remove the document feeder assembly (M880; 6 of 9)



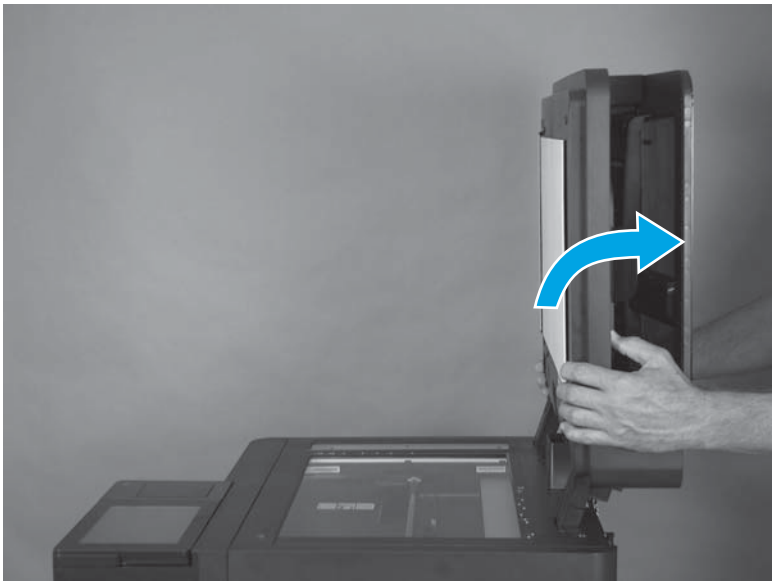
7. Lift the document feeder up until it stops.

Figure 1-222 Remove the document feeder assembly (M880; 7 of 9)



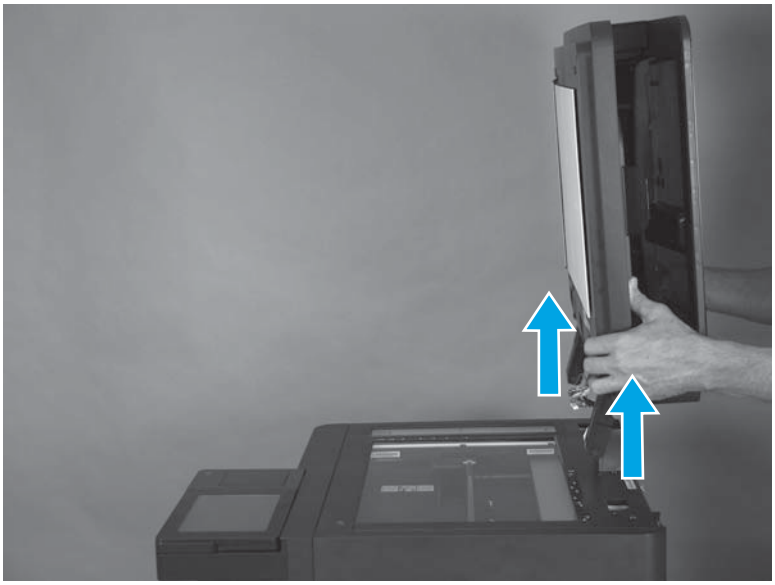
8. Tilt the assembly towards the rear of the product to release the hinges.

Figure 1-223 Remove the document feeder assembly (M880; 8 of 9)



9. Lift the assembly up and off of the product.

Figure 1-224 Remove the document feeder assembly (M880; 9 of 9)



Reinstall the document feeder assembly (M880)

IMPORTANT: If a replacement document feeder is installed, you must follow the instructions below to reset the counter. Failure to follow these instructions might result in more frequent paper jams.

NOTE: If a replacement document feeder or scanner assembly is installed, you must install a replacement white backing on the document feeder. See Document feeder white backing (M880) on page 39.

Installing a replacement document feeder assembly

If a replacement document feeder is installed, do the following:

1. From the Home screen on the control panel, scroll to and touch the Device Maintenance button.
2. Open the Service menu.
3. On the sign-in screen, select the Service Access Code option from the drop-down list.
4. Enter the following service access code for this product: 11088013.
5. Reset the following values:
   - Document Feeder Kit Interval; set to zero
   - ADF Count; set to zero

Scanner control board (SCB) (M880)

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

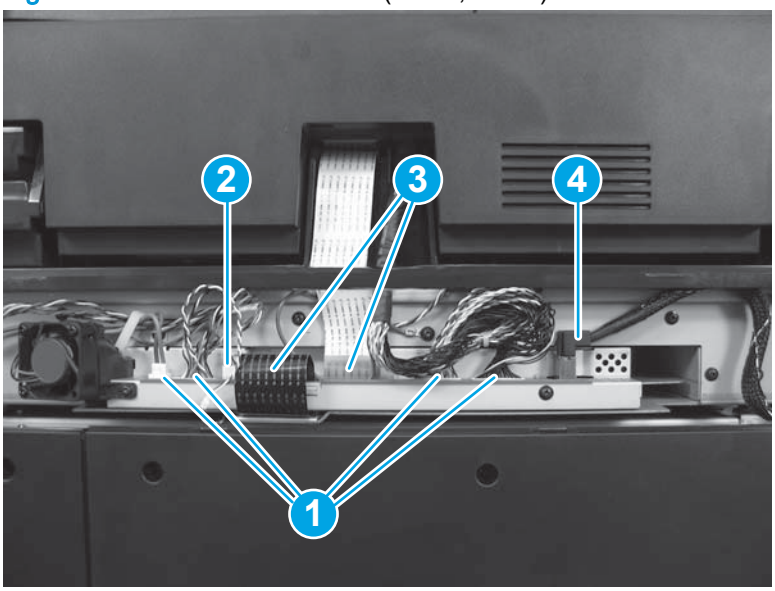
- Scanner back cover (M880). See Scanner back cover (M880) on page 88.

Remove the SCB (M880)

1. Disconnect four wire harness connectors (callout 1), one inline connector (callout 2), two flat cables (callout 3), and one USB connector (callout 4).

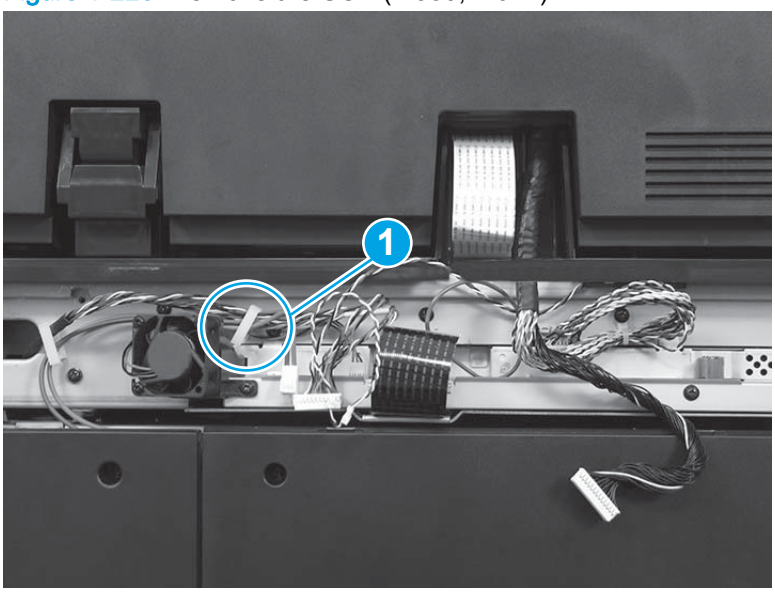
NOTE: The scanner control board (SCB) fan connector does not need to be disconnected.

Figure 1-225 Remove the SCB (M880; 1 of 4)



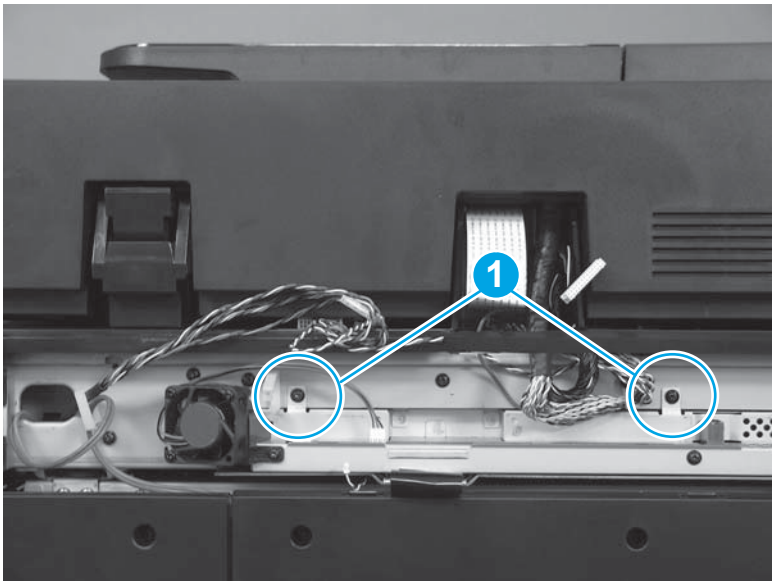
2. Release the wire harnesses from the retainer (callout 1).

Figure 1-226 Remove the SCB (M880; 2 of 4)



3. Remove two screws (callout 1).

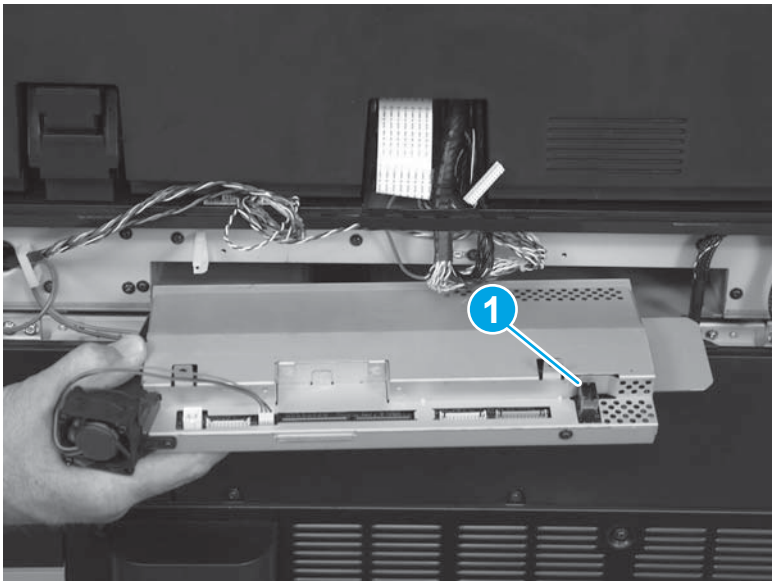
Figure 1-227 Remove the SCB (M880; 3 of 4)



4. Carefully remove the SCB.

Reinstallation tip If you are installing a replacement SCB, make sure to remove the protective cover from the USB connector (callout 1) on the replacement SCB before installing it in the product.

Figure 1-228 Remove the SCB (M880; 4 of 4)



Scanner assembly (M880)

WARNING! The scanner assembly weighs approximately 26.3 kg (58.0 lbs). HP recommends that two people lift the assembly off of the product.

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

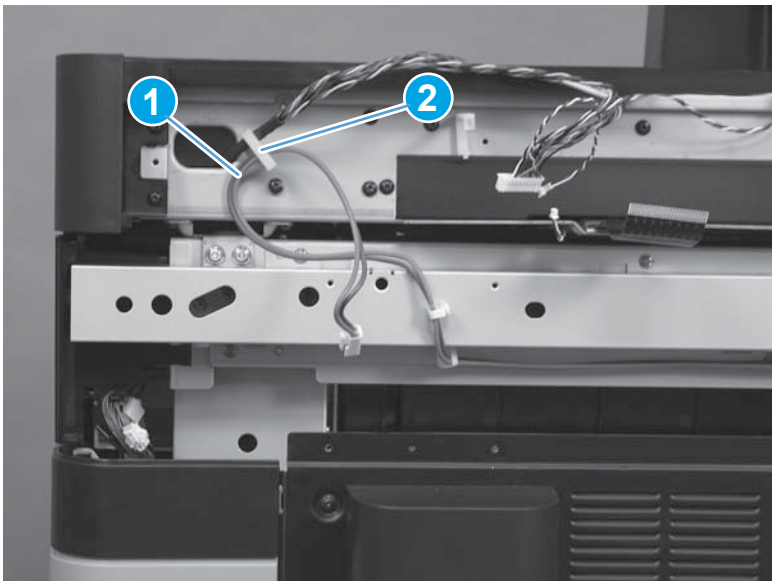
- Control panel assembly (M880). See Control panel assembly (M880) on page 53.
- Scanner back cover (M880). See Scanner back cover (M880) on page 88.
- Document feeder assembly (M880). See Document feeder assembly (M880) on page 154.
- Scanner control board (M880). See Scanner control board (SCB) (M880) on page 160.
- Rear upper MFP cover (M880). See Rear upper MFP cover (M880) on page 109.
- Rear upper rear cover (M880). See Rear upper rear cover (M880) on page 107.
- Right upper rear cover (M880). See Right upper rear cover (M880) on page 108.

Remove the scanner assembly (M880)

IMPORTANT: If you are installing a replacement scanner assembly, you must use the Service menu to set the Flatbed Count value to zero. See Reinstall the scanner assembly (M880) on page 166.

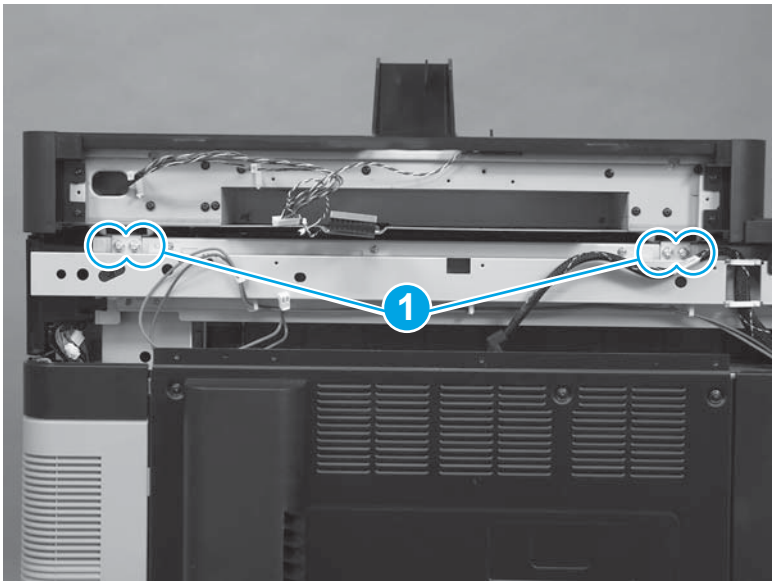
1. At the rear of the product, release the wire harness (callout 1) from the retainer (callout 2).

Figure 1-229 Remove the scanner assembly (M880; 1 of 7)



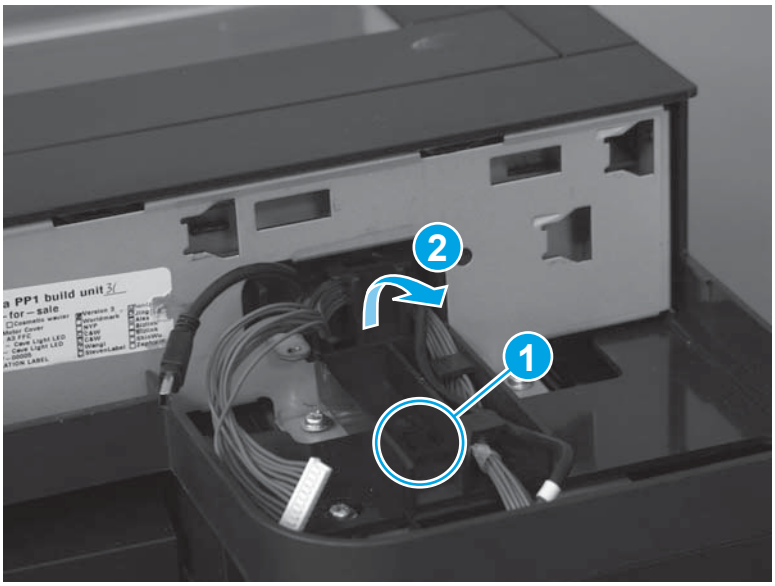
2. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-230 Remove the scanner assembly (M880; 2 of 7)



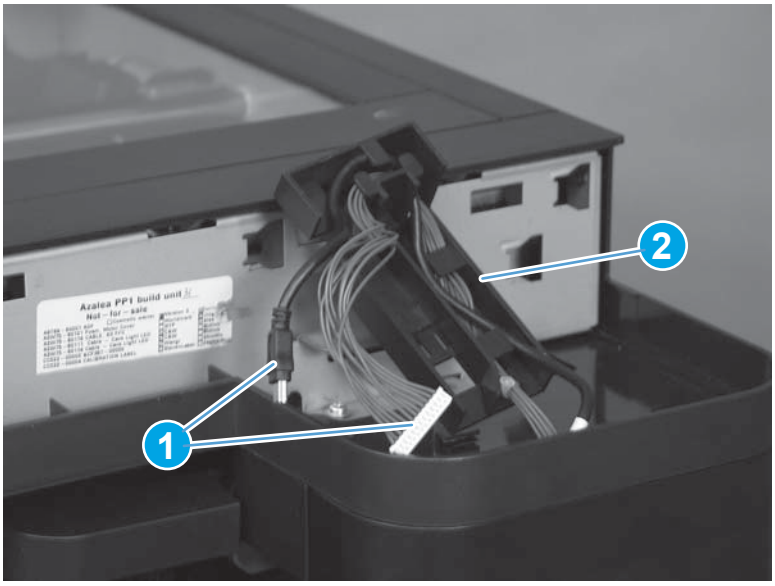
3. At the front of the product (where the control panel was removed), release one tab (callout 1), and then separate the wire guide from the product (callout 2).

Figure 1-231 Remove the scanner assembly (M880; 3 of 7)



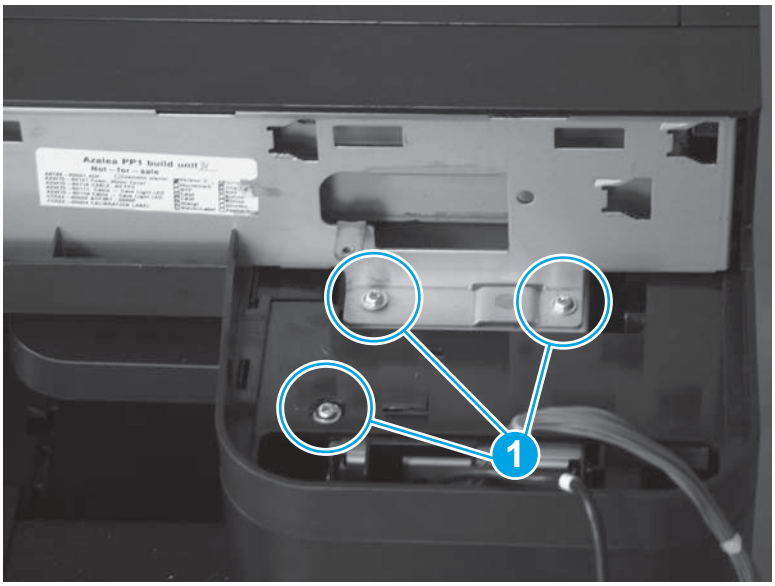
4. Release the USB cable and wire harness (callout 1) from the guide (callout 2), and then remove the guide.

Figure 1-232 Remove the scanner assembly (M880; 4 of 7)



5. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-233 Remove the scanner assembly (M880; 5 of 7)



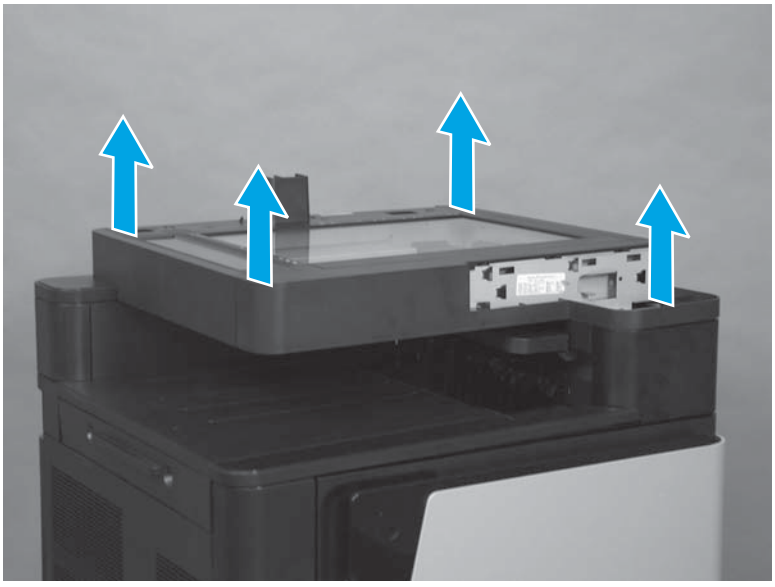
6. Carefully place the USB cable and wire harness in the cavity below the control panel mounting bracket to keep them out of the way when the scanner is removed.

Figure 1-234 Remove the scanner assembly (M880; 6 of 7)

7. Carefully lift the scanner assembly up and off of the product.

⚠ **WARNING!** The scanner assembly weighs approximately 26.3 kg (58.0 lbs). HP recommends that two people lift the assembly off of the product.

Figure 1-235 Remove the scanner assembly (M880; 7 of 7)



Reinstall the scanner assembly (M880)

IMPORTANT: If a replacement scanner assembly is installed, you must follow the instructions below to reset the counter. Failure to follow these instructions might result in more frequent paper jams.

NOTE: If a replacement document feeder or scanner assembly is installed, you must install a replacement white backing on the document feeder. See Document feeder white backing (M880) on page 39.

Installing a replacement scanner assembly

If a replacement scanner assembly is installed, do the following:

1. From the Home screen on the control panel, scroll to and touch the Device Maintenance button.
2. Open the Service menu.
3. On the sign-in screen, select the Service Access Code option from the drop-down list.
4. Enter the following service access code for this product: 11088013.
5. Reset the following value:
   - Flatbed Count; set to zero

Interlock switch assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

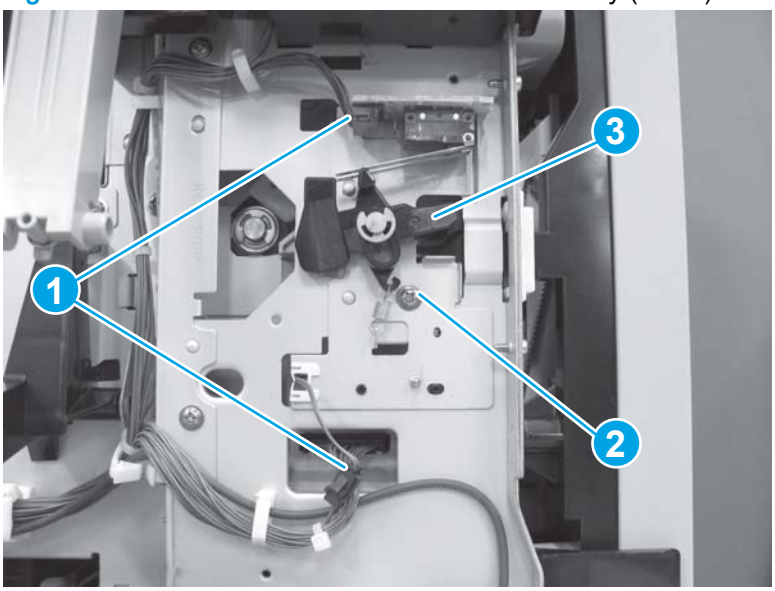
- Front door. See Front door on page 137.
- Front inner cover. See Front inner cover on page 147.

Remove the interlock switch assembly

If the toner cartridges have not already been removed for servicing the product, remove them now.

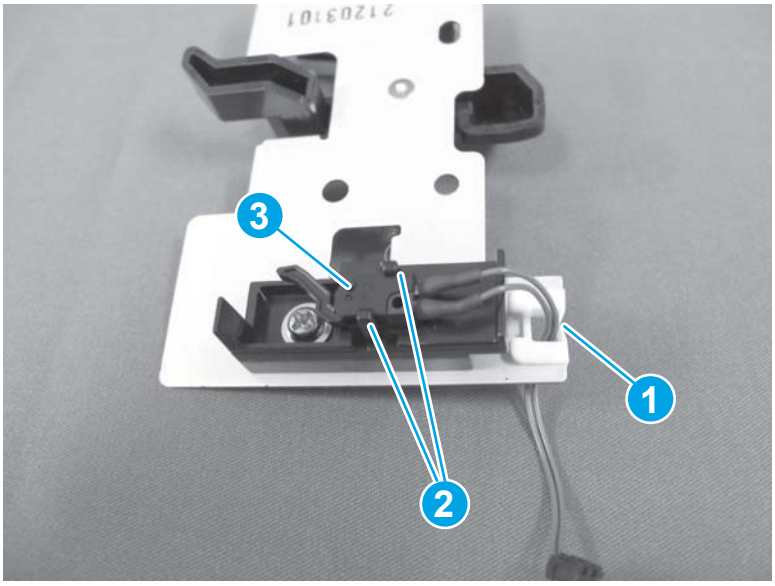
1. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), remove one screw (callout 2), and then remove the interlock switch assembly (callout 3).

Figure 1-236 Remove the interlock switch assembly (1 of 2)



2. Release the wire harness from the retainer (callout 1), release two tabs (callout 2), and then remove the right-door open detection switch (callout 3) from the assembly.

Figure 1-237 Remove the interlock switch assembly (2 of 2)



Front-door open detection switch

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

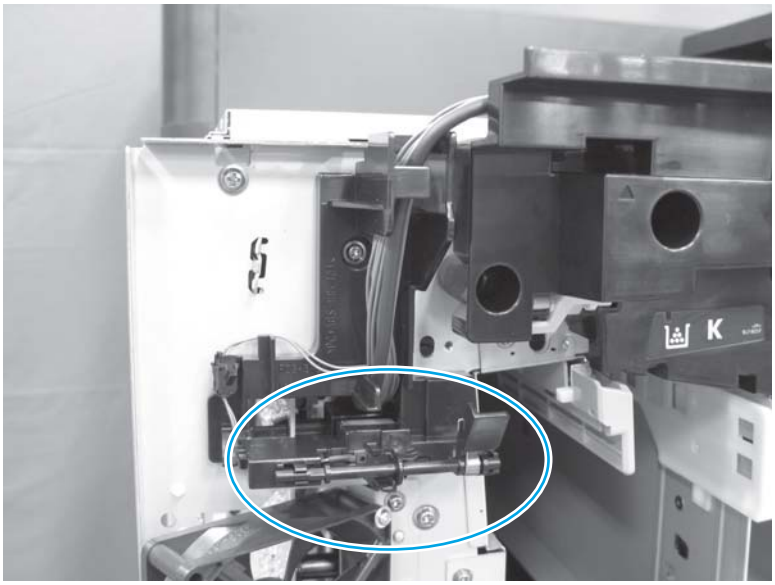
- Remove one of the following, depending upon product configuration:
  - Face-down bin. See Face-down bin on page 101.
  - Intermediate paper transport unit (IPTU). See IPTU assembly on page 437.
- Left rear cover. See Left rear cover on page 104.
- Front top cover. See Front top cover on page 115.
- Left cover. See Left cover on page 118.
- Left front cover. See Left front cover on page 133.

Remove the front-door open detection switch

1. Carefully release the flag from the holders to remove it.

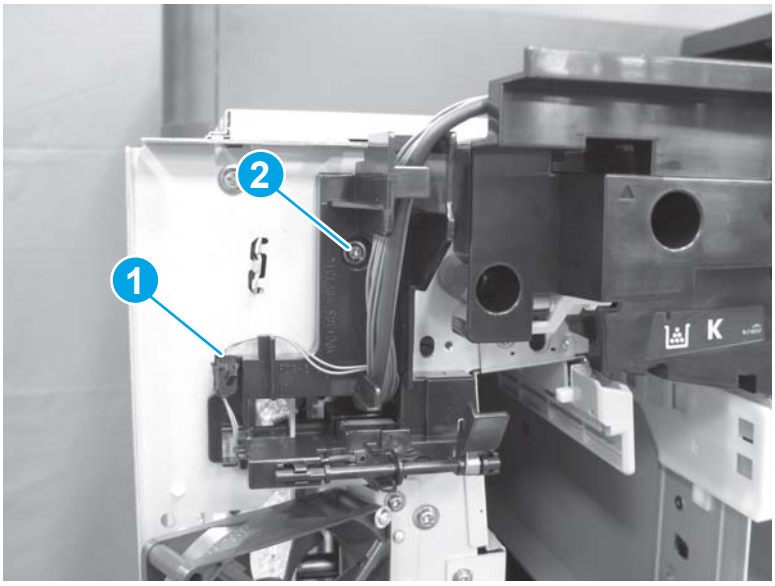
Reinstallation tip Note how the spring at the right end of the flag shaft is installed. If the spring becomes dislodged while removing the flag, you must correctly reinstall it so that the flag will properly function. See Reinstall the front-door-open detection switch on page 171.

Figure 1-238 Remove the front-door open detection switch (1 of 4)



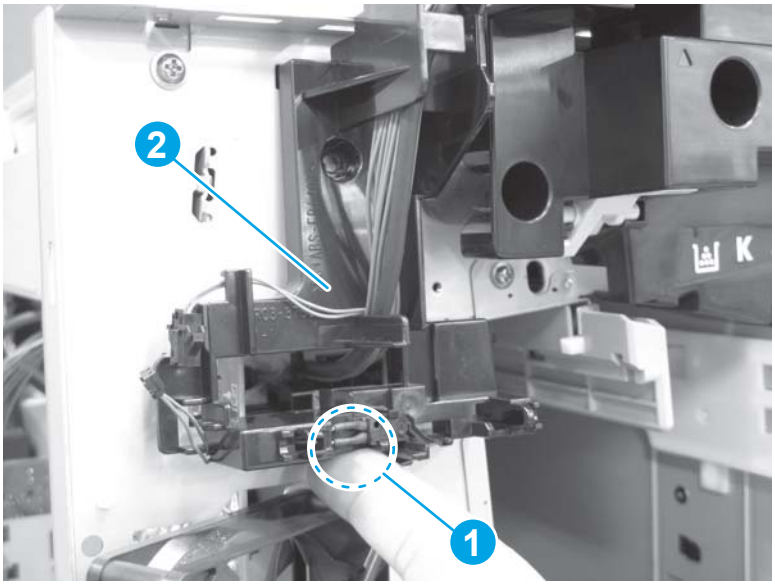
2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 1-239 Remove the front-door open detection switch (2 of 4)



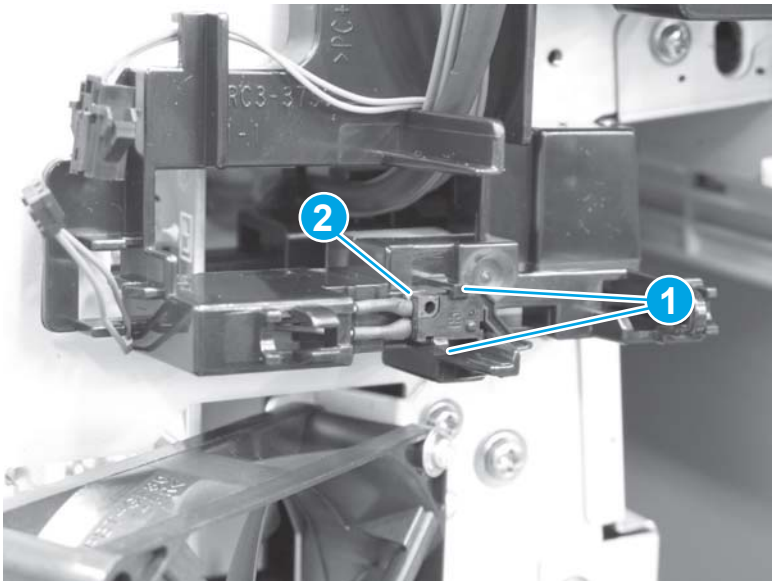
3. Release one tab (callout 1), and then remove the switch holder (callout 2).

Figure 1-240 Remove the front-door open detection switch (3 of 4)



4. Release two tabs (callout 1), and then remove the front-door open detection switch (callout 2) from the assembly.

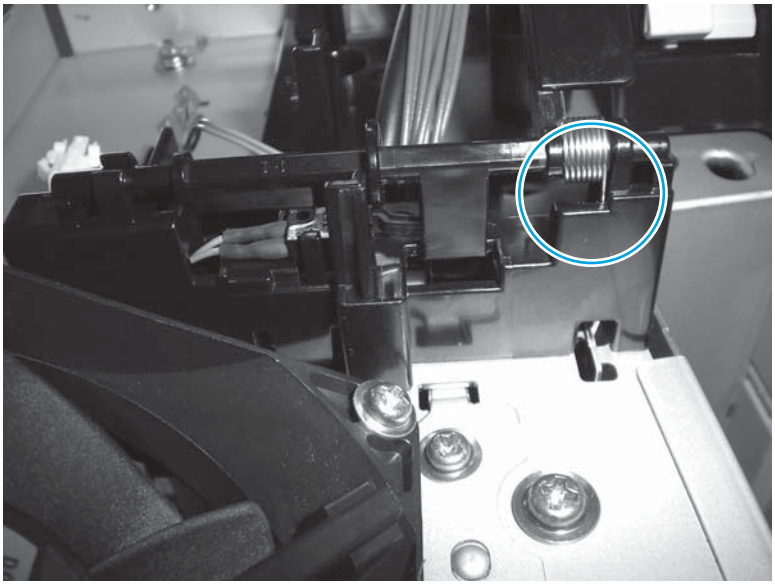
Figure 1-241 Remove the front-door open detection switch (4 of 4)



Reinstall the front-door-open detection switch

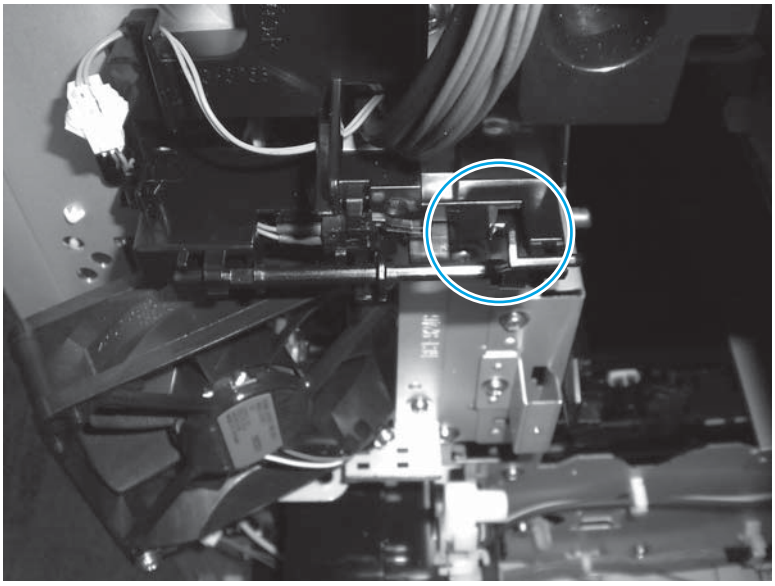
1. When the flag is reinstalled, make sure that the lower end of the spring is behind the holder.

Figure 1-242 Reinstall the front-door-open detection switch (1 of 3)



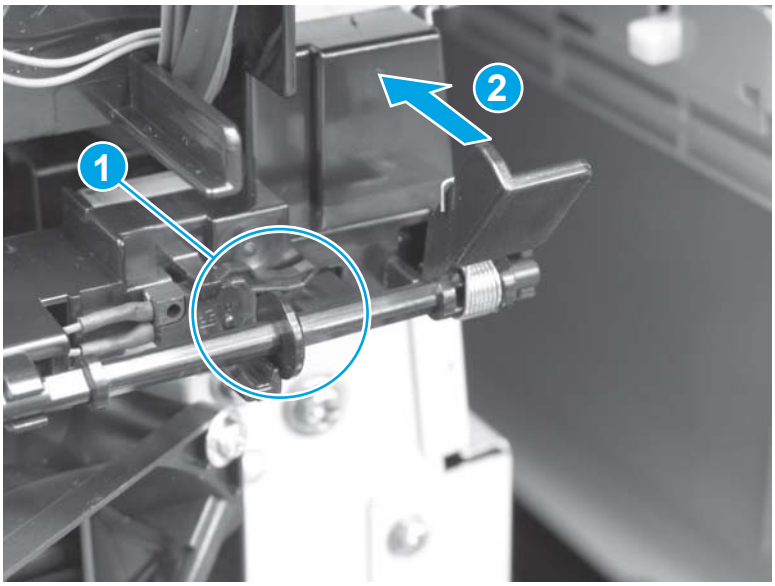
2. When the flag is reinstalled, make sure that the top end of the spring is correctly seated on the flag.

Figure 1-243 Reinstall the front-door-open detection switch (2 of 3)



3. Verify that the switch (callout 1) moves to the up position when the flag is toggled to the door closed position (callout 2).

Figure 1-244 Reinstall the front-door-open detection switch (3 of 3)



Main switch assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

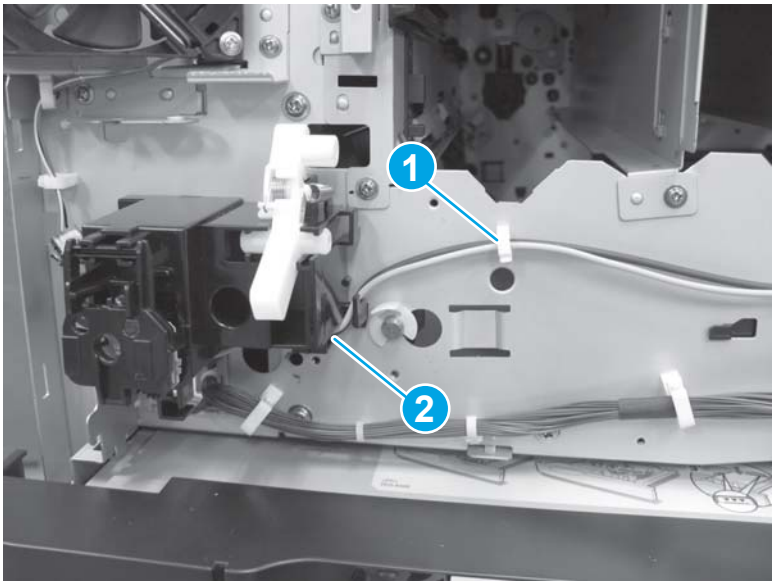
- Remove one of the following, depending upon product configuration:
  - Face-down bin. See Face-down bin on page 101.
  - Intermediate paper transport unit (IPTU). See IPTU assembly on page 437.
- Left rear cover. See Left rear cover on page 104.
- Front top cover. See Front top cover on page 115.
- Left cover. See Left cover on page 118.
- Left front cover. See Left front cover on page 133.
- Front door assembly. See Front door on page 137.
- Front inner cover. See Front inner cover on page 147.

Remove the main switch assembly

If the toner cartridges have not already been removed for servicing the product, remove them now.

1. Release the wire harness from one retainer (callout 1), and then from the guide (callout 2).

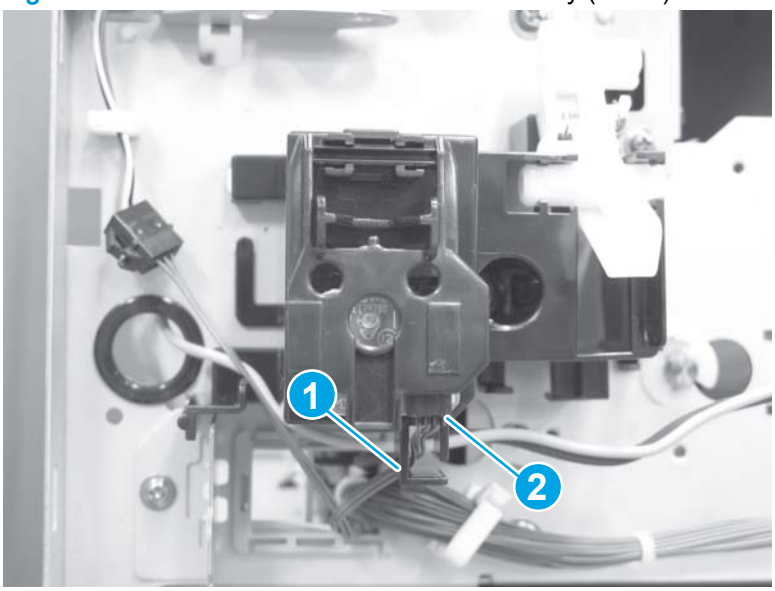
Figure 1-245 Remove the main switch assembly (1 of 3)



2. Release the wire harness from one guide (callout 1), and then disconnect one connector (callout 2).

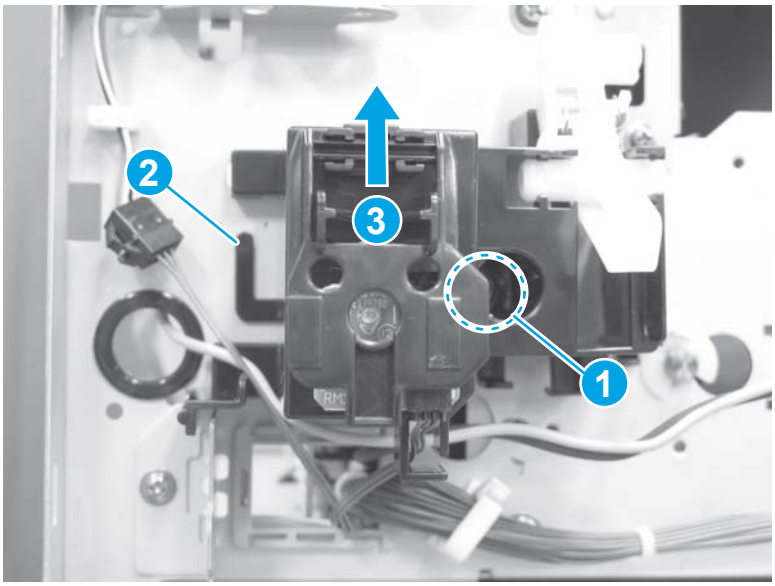
TIP: It is easier to disconnect the connector if the harness is first released from the guide.

Figure 1-246 Remove the main switch assembly (2 of 3)



3. Remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then slide the switch assembly upward (callout 3) to remove it.

Figure 1-247 Remove the main switch assembly (3 of 3)



Secondary transfer assembly

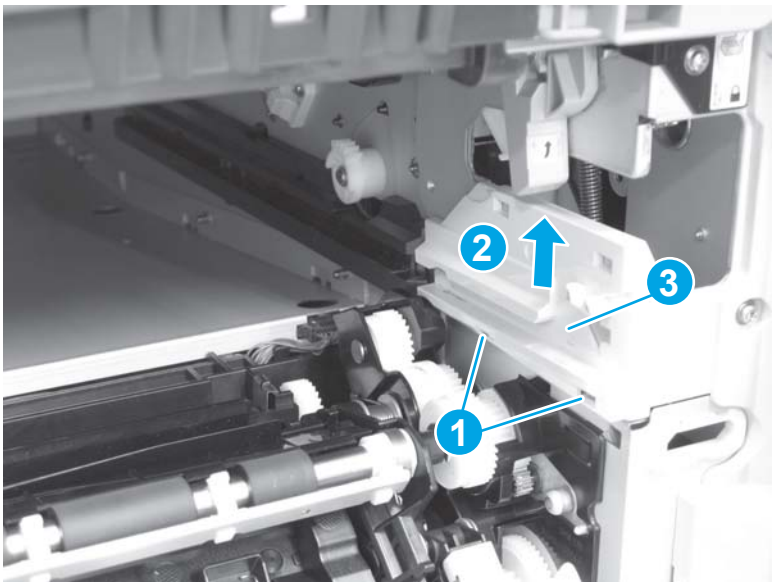
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Secondary transfer roller. See Secondary transfer roller on page 16
- Intermediate transfer belt. See Intermediate transfer belt (ITB) on page 19.

Remove the secondary transfer assembly

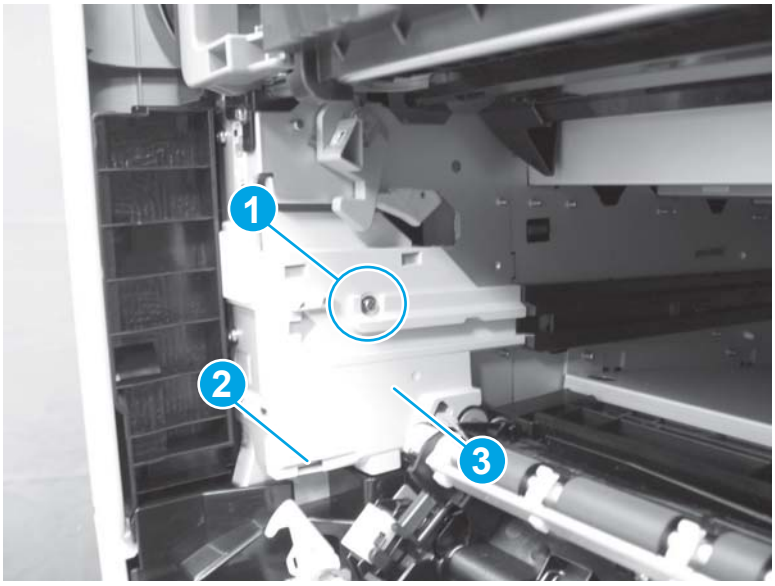
1. Open the right door to access the assemblies in the following steps.
2. Release two tabs (callout 1), and then lift up (callout 2) to remove the right ITB guide (callout 3).

Figure 1-248 Remove the secondary transfer assembly (1 of 10)



3. Remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then remove the left ITB guide (callout 3).

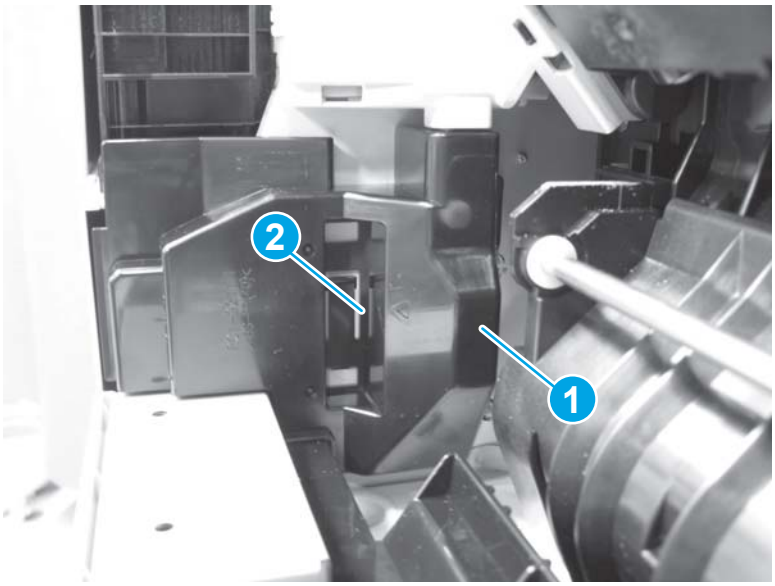
Figure 1-249 Remove the secondary transfer assembly (2 of 10)



4. Grasp the connector cover (callout 1), and then remove the cover by lifting up while releasing the tab (callout 2).

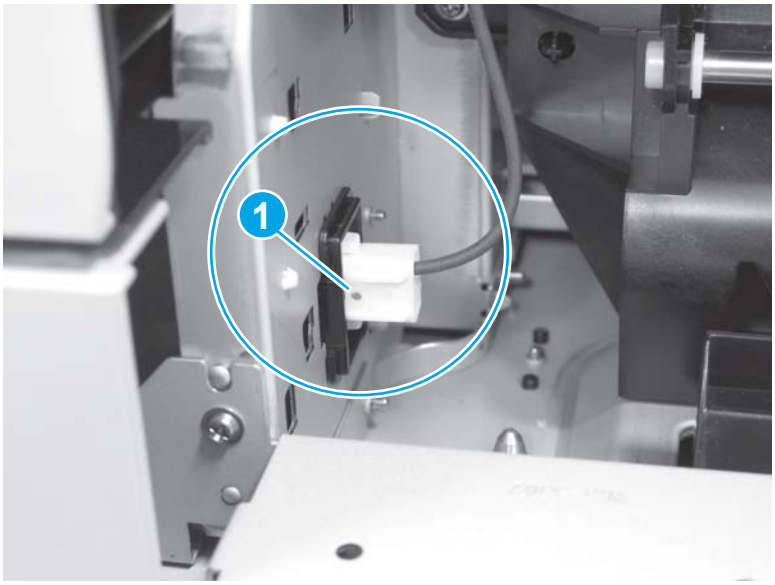
TIP: Use the arrow embossed on the cover to locate the tab.

Figure 1-250 Remove the secondary transfer assembly (3 of 10)



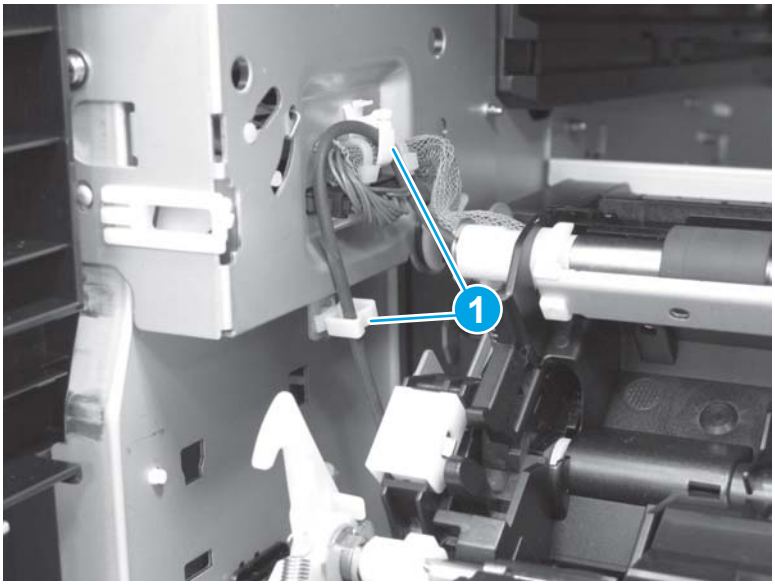
5. Push in on the red mark on the connector (callout 1), and then disconnect the connector.

Figure 1-251 Remove the secondary transfer assembly (4 of 10)



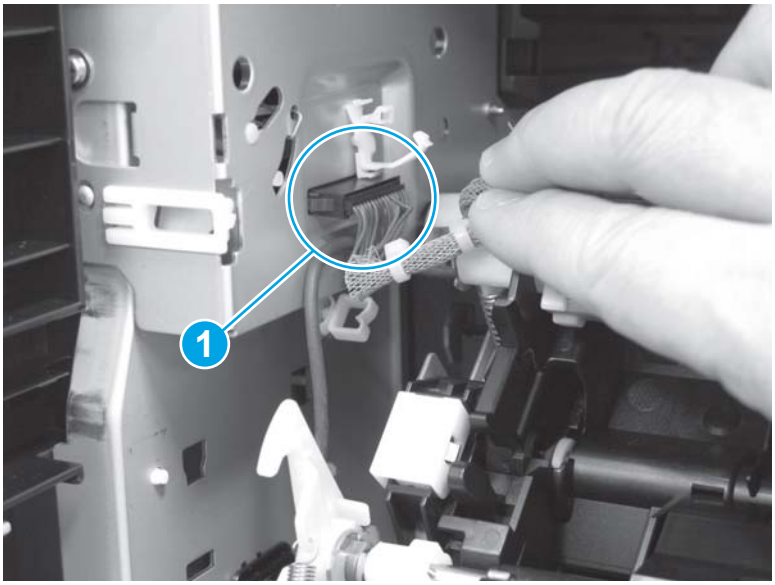
6. Release the wire harness from two cable retainers (callout 1).

Figure 1-252 Remove the secondary transfer assembly (5 of 10)



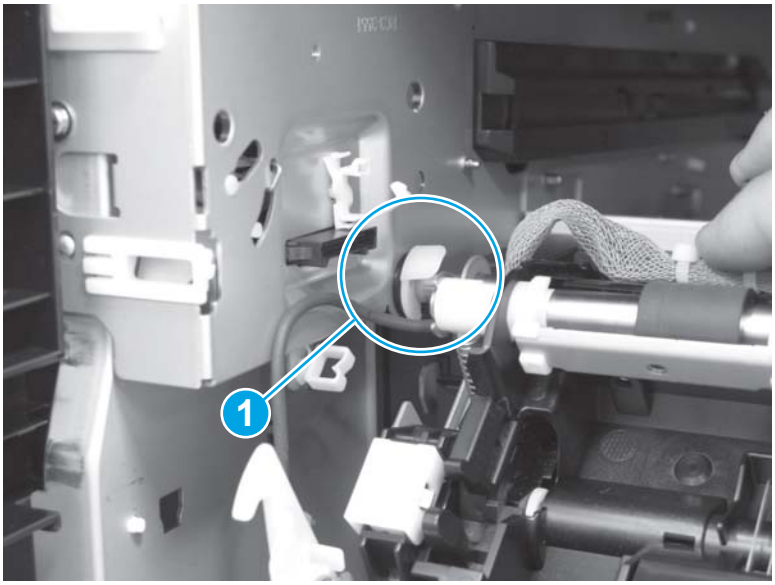
7. Disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 1-253 Remove the secondary transfer assembly (6 of 10)



8. Remove one white plastic retainer (callout 1).

Figure 1-254 Remove the secondary transfer assembly (7 of 10)



9. Use a small flat-blade screwdriver to slide one black-plastic bushing away from the chassis (callout 1).

TIP: After the assembly is removed later in this procedure, use the clip removed in the step above to secure the bushing to the shaft so it will not be lost.

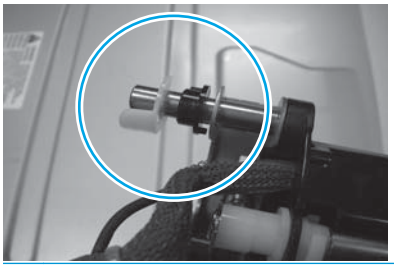
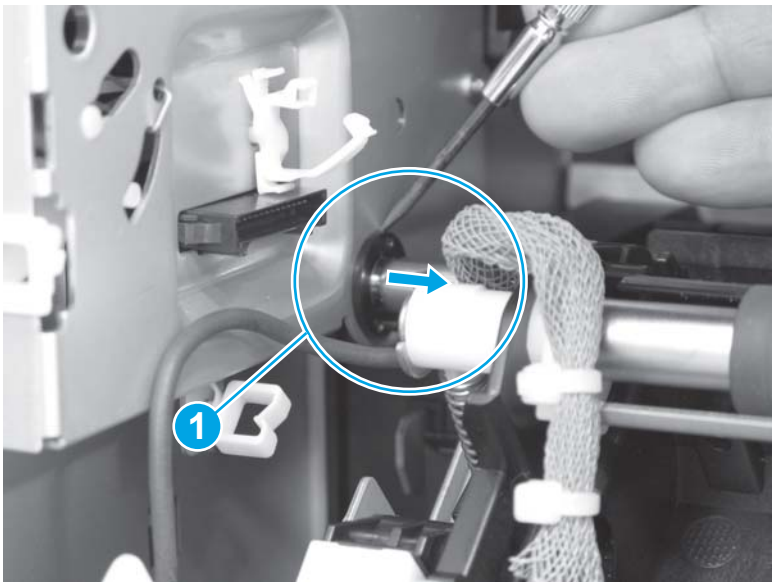


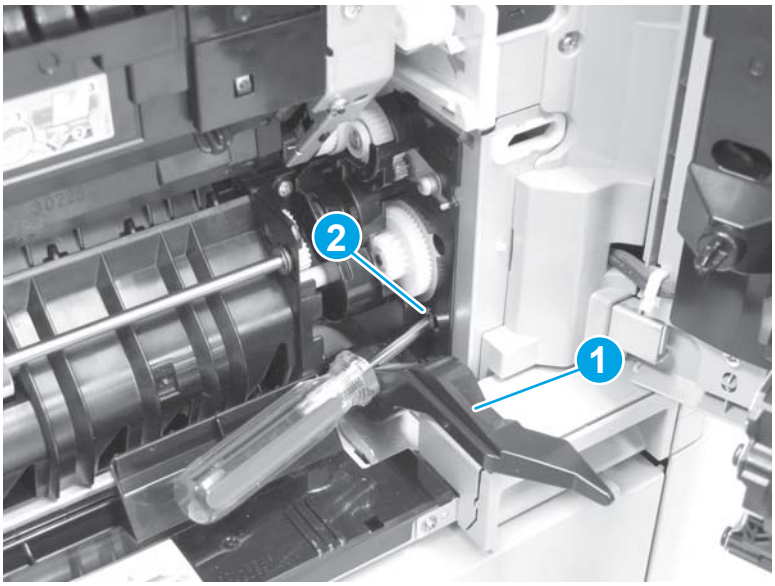
Figure 1-255 Remove the secondary transfer assembly (8 of 10)



10. Press down on the black handle (callout 1), and then Insert a screwdriver into the hole (callout 2) on the Multipurpose tray (Tray 1) drive assembly to hold the black handle in place.

TIP: Using this method to hold the black handle in place will allow you to use both hands to remove the assembly, and will also make reinstalling the assembly easier.

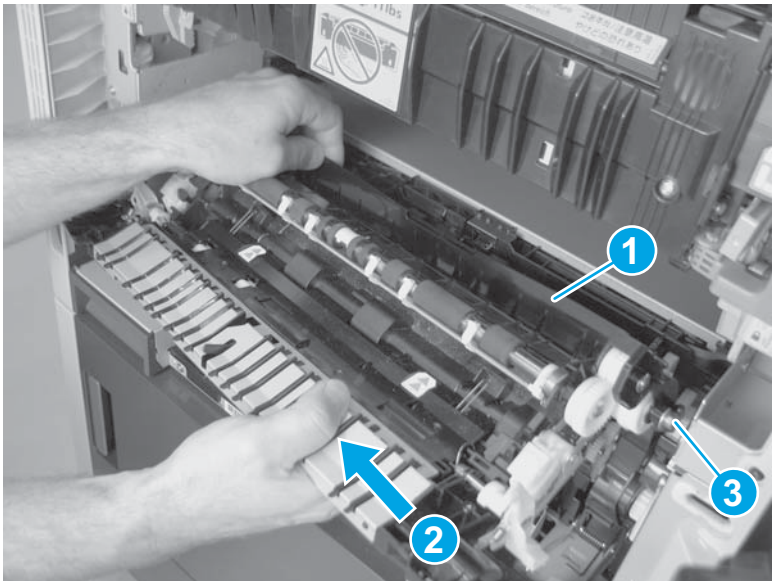
Figure 1-256 Remove the secondary transfer assembly (9 of 10)



11. Carefully press the feed guide (callout 1) toward the back of the product. Grasp the secondary transfer assembly and slide it toward the left (callout 2) to release the shaft (callout 3), and then remove the assembly.

NOTE: Handle the assembly carefully. The registration assembly tension springs and spring mounting blocks at each end of the secondary transfer assembly can be easily dislodged. See Figure 1-258 Reinstall the secondary transfer assembly (1 of 3) on page 181.

Figure 1-257 Remove the secondary transfer assembly (10 of 10)

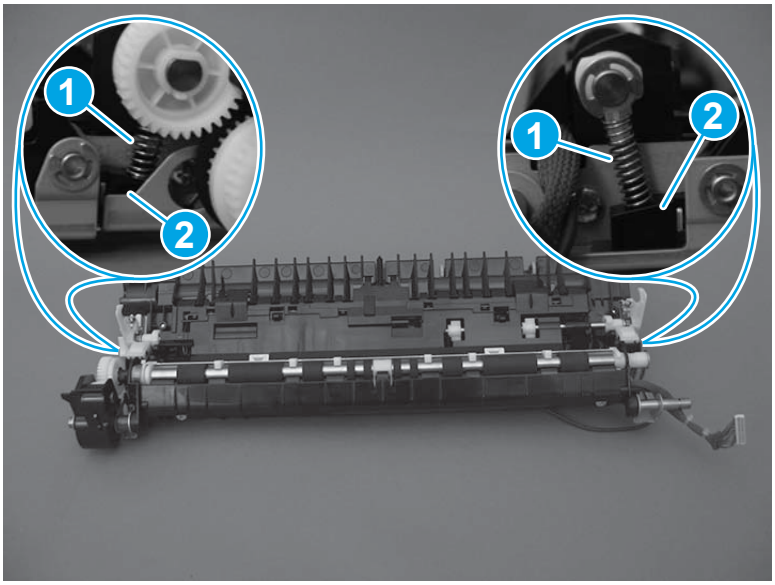


Reinstall the secondary transfer assembly

1. Before reinstalling the secondary transfer assembly, make sure that the registration assembly tension springs (callout 1) and spring mounting blocks (callout 2) at each end of the secondary transfer assembly are correctly positioned.

NOTE: The springs should be straight (as shown below), and not bent or curved.

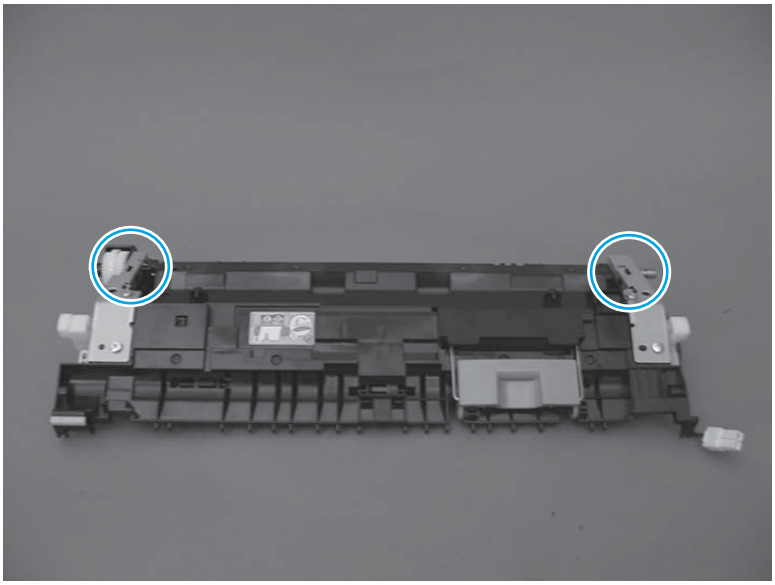
Figure 1-258 Reinstall the secondary transfer assembly (1 of 3)



2. Carefully turn the assembly over, and then make sure that the tabs on the spring mounting blocks are fully seated in the assembly sheet metal.

NOTE: If the secondary transfer assembly is removed or replaced while servicing the product and a **13.B2.DD** error message appears on the control-panel display, remove the assembly and make sure that the registration tension springs and spring mounting blocks are correctly installed.

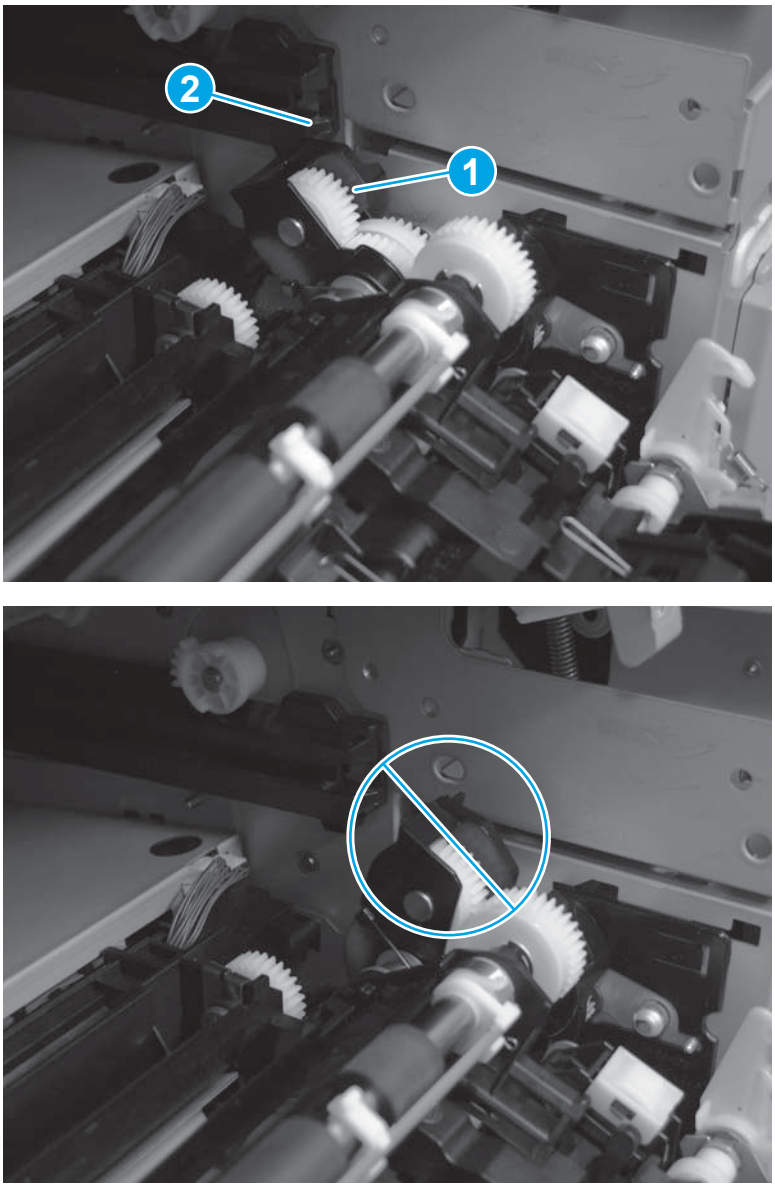
Figure 1-259 Reinstall the secondary transfer assembly (2 of 3)



3. When the secondary transfer assembly is reinstalled, make sure that the gear assembly (callout 1) is placed under the ITB rail (callout 2).

NOTE: To make reinstalling the assembly easier, insert a screwdriver into the hole on the Multipurpose tray (Tray 1) drive assembly to hold the black handle in place. See Figure 1-256 Remove the secondary transfer assembly (9 of 10) on page 180.

Figure 1-260 Reinstall the secondary transfer assembly (3 of 3)



Multipurpose tray (Tray 1) drive assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Intermediate transfer belt (ITB). See Intermediate transfer belt (ITB) on page 19.
- Fuser. See Fuser on page 21.
- Secondary transfer assembly. See Secondary transfer assembly on page 175.

Remove the multipurpose tray (Tray 1) drive assembly

1. At the right side of the product, near the lower right corner of the right door, remove one small cover (callout 1).

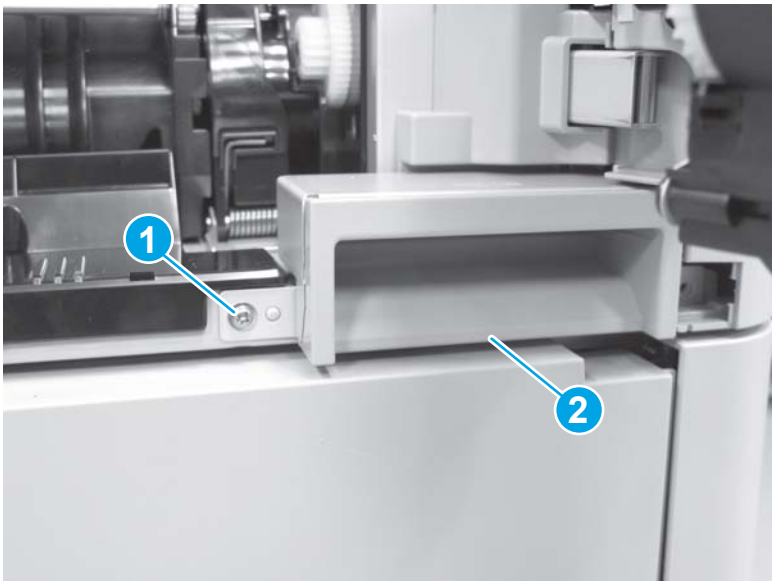
   Figure 1-261 Remove the multipurpose tray (Tray 1) drive assembly (1 of 13)

2. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-262 Remove the multipurpose tray (Tray 1) drive assembly (2 of 13)

3. Open the right door, remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the handle (callout 2).

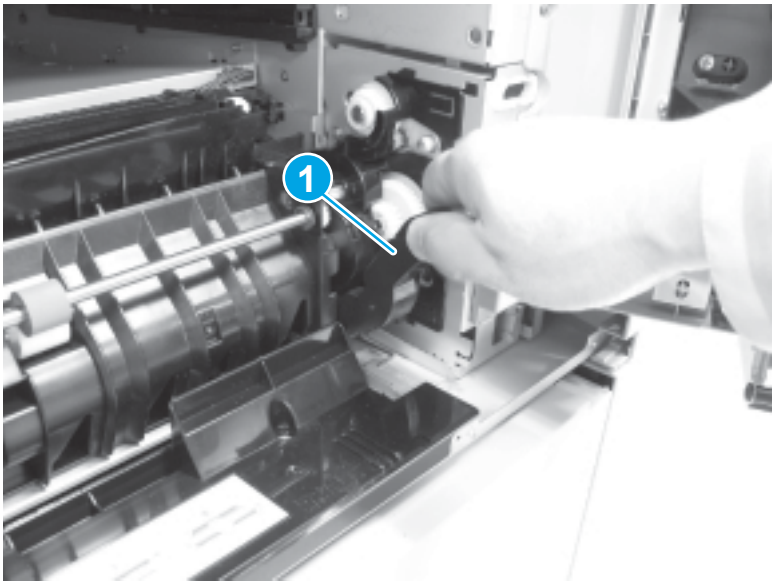
Figure 1-263 Remove the multipurpose tray (Tray 1) drive assembly (3 of 13)



4. Press down on the black handle (callout 1) to release it, and then pull it forward to remove it.

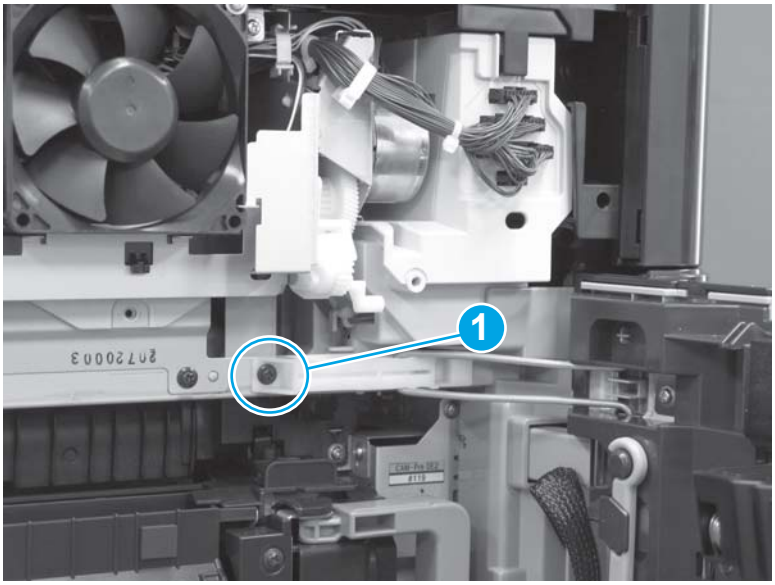
NOTE: The handle is spring loaded. Firmly grasp the handle when it is removed.

Figure 1-264 Remove the multipurpose tray (Tray 1) drive assembly (4 of 13)



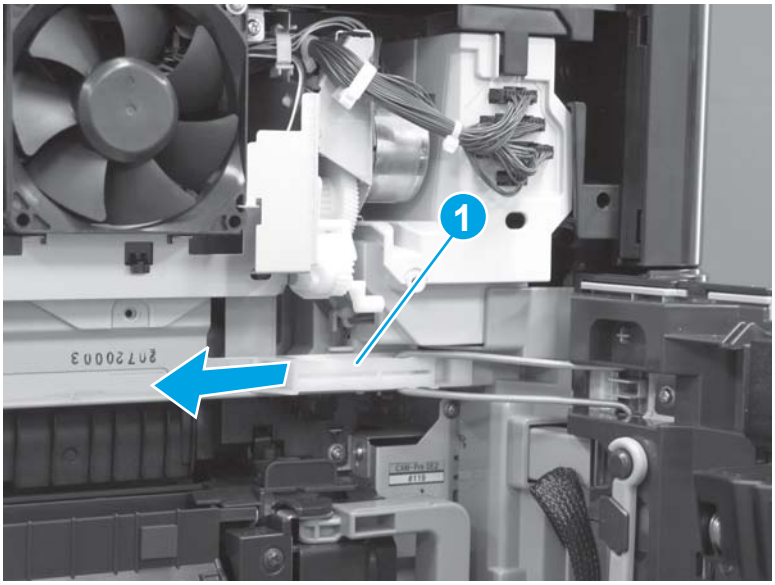
5. Open the right door, and then remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-265 Remove the multipurpose tray (Tray 1) drive assembly (5 of 13)



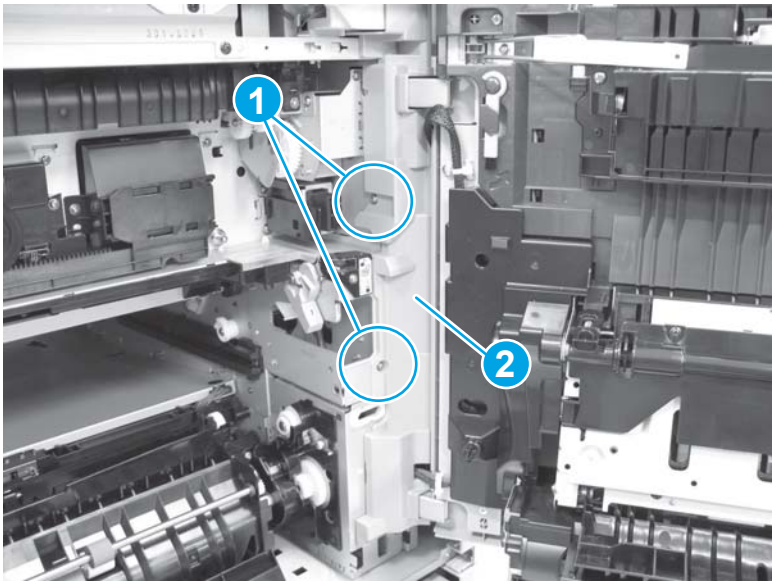
6. Slide the retainer arm and guide (callout 1) to the left to disengage it from the chassis.

Figure 1-266 Remove the multipurpose tray (Tray 1) drive assembly (6 of 13)



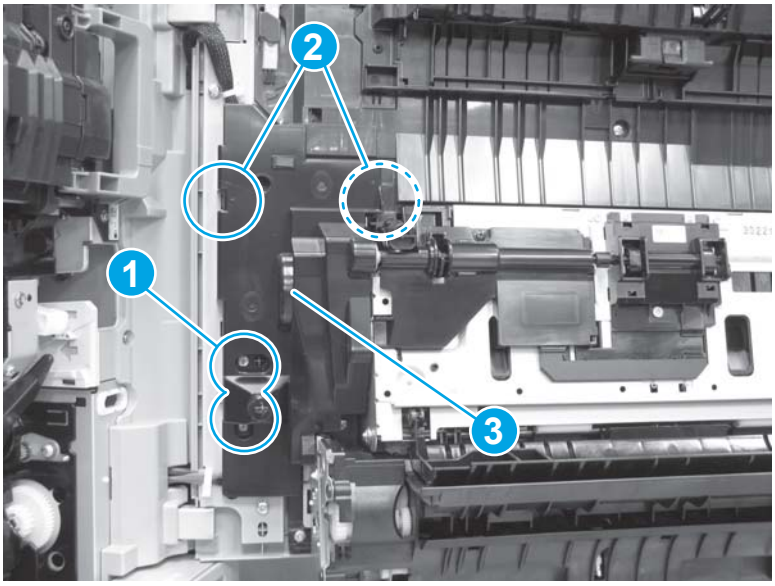
7. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the right-inner cover (callout 2).

Figure 1-267 Remove the multipurpose tray (Tray 1) drive assembly (7 of 13)



8. On the door assembly, remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1), release two tabs (callout 2), and then remove the motor cover (callout 3).

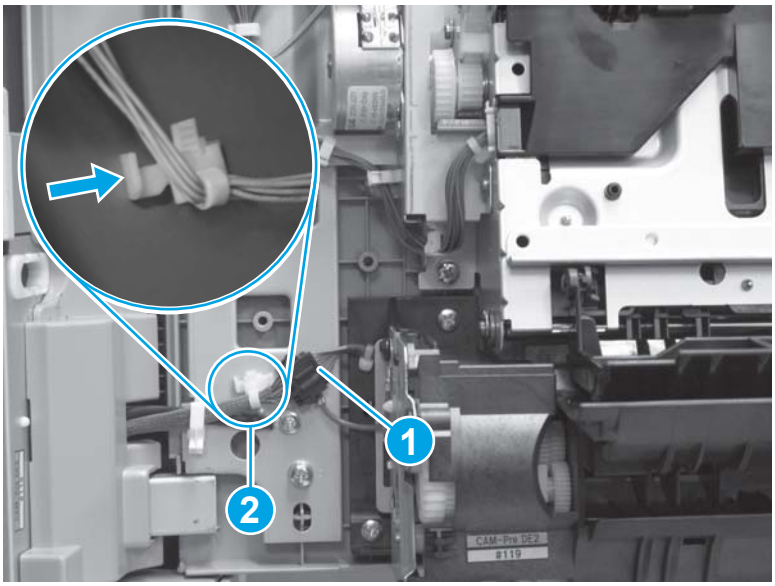
Figure 1-268 Remove the multipurpose tray (Tray 1) drive assembly (8 of 13)



9. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then release one wire tie (callout 2).

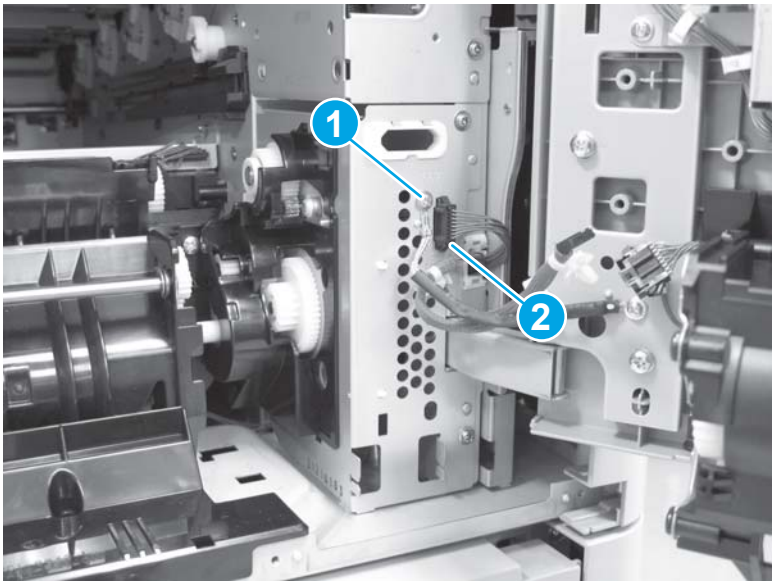
TIP: To release the wire tie (callout 2), push in on the tab, and then remove the wire tie from the door.

Figure 1-269 Remove the multipurpose tray (Tray 1) drive assembly (9 of 13)



10. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then disconnect one connector (callout 2).

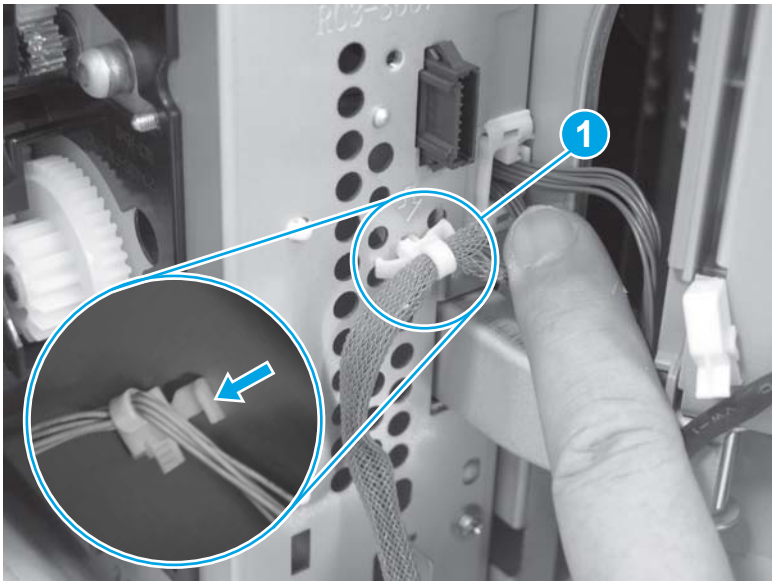
Figure 1-270 Remove the multipurpose tray (Tray 1) drive assembly (10 of 13)



11. Release one wire tie (callout 1).

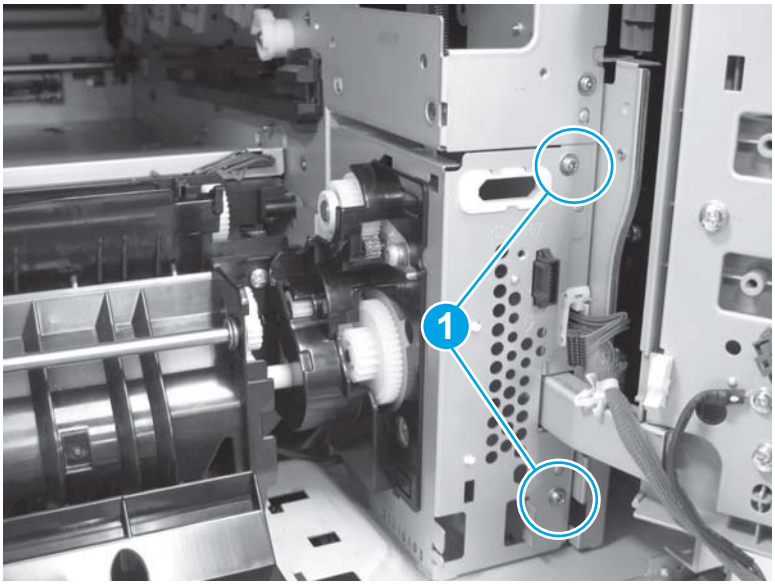
TIP: To release the wire tie, push in on the tab, and then remove the wire tie from the chassis.

Figure 1-271 Remove the multipurpose tray (Tray 1) drive assembly (11 of 13)



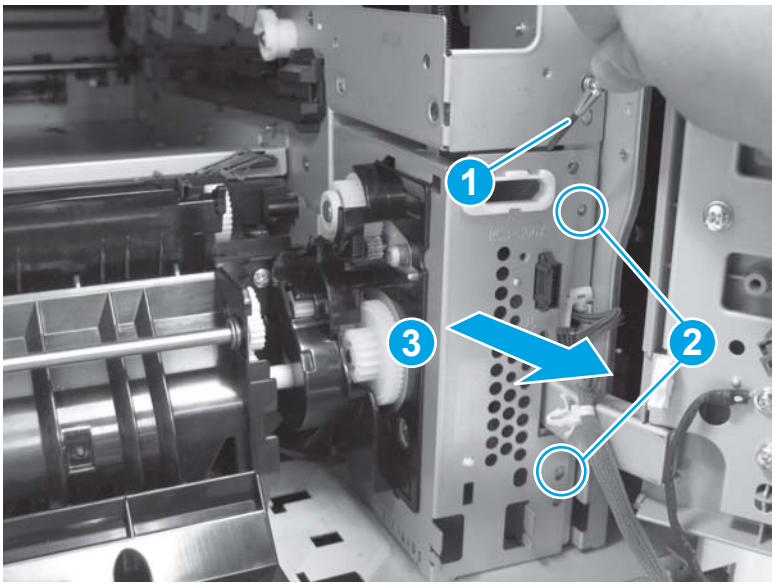
12. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-272 Remove the multipurpose tray (Tray 1) drive assembly (12 of 13)



13. Use a small flat-blade screwdriver (callout 1) to carefully release the assembly and two sheet-metal tabs (callout 2), and then remove the assembly (callout 3).

Figure 1-273 Remove the multipurpose tray (Tray 1) drive assembly (13 of 13)



Multipurpose tray (Tray 1) guide assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

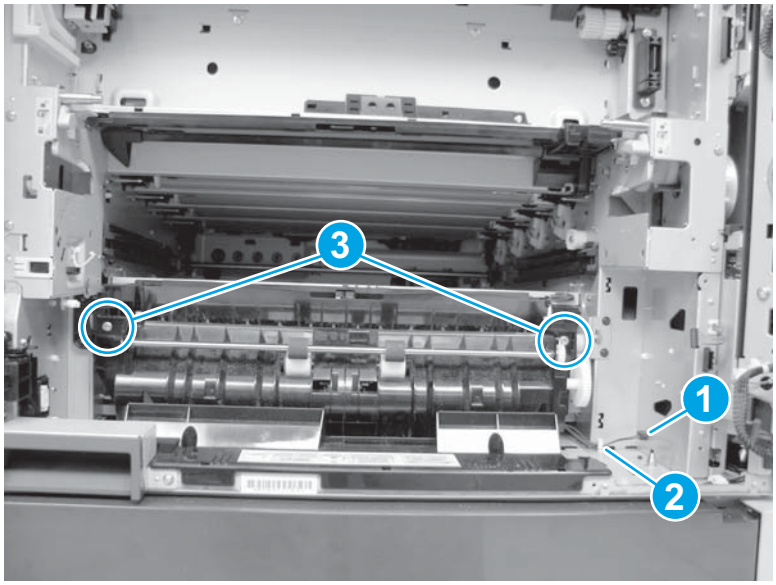
- Secondary transfer roller. See Secondary transfer roller on page 16
- Intermediate transfer belt. See Intermediate transfer belt (ITB) on page 19.
- Fuser. See Fuser on page 21.
- Secondary transfer assembly. See Secondary transfer assembly on page 175.
- Multipurpose tray (Tray 1) drive assembly. See Multipurpose tray (Tray 1) drive assembly on page 183.

Remove the multipurpose tray guide assembly

Disconnect one connector (callout 1), release one wire retainer (callout 2), remove two screws (callout 3), and then remove the multipurpose-tray guide (Tray 1) assembly.

Reinstallation tip Make sure that the connector (callout 1) is securely in place when the assembly is reinstalled.

Figure 1-274 Remove the multipurpose tray guide assembly



Tray 2 pickup unit

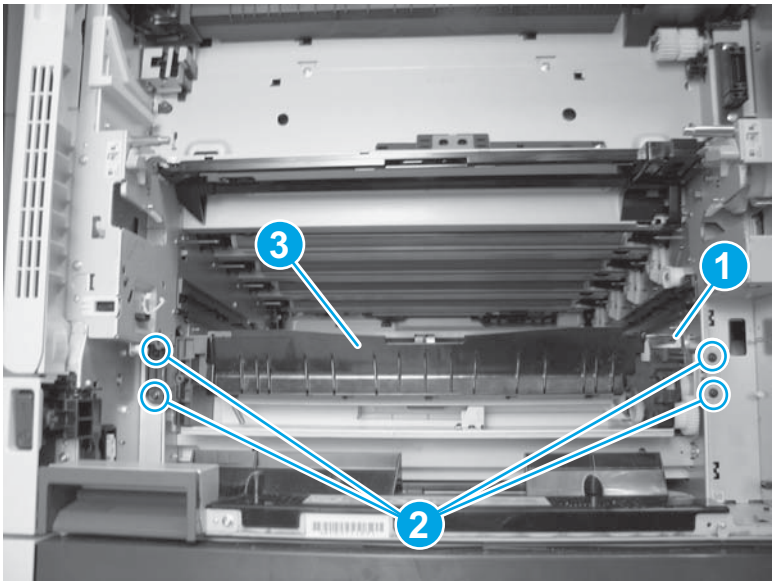
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Secondary transfer roller. See Secondary transfer roller on page 16
- Tray 2. See Tray 2, 1x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 4, and 3x500 Tray 5 on page 18.
- Intermediate transfer belt. See Intermediate transfer belt (ITB) on page 19.
- Fuser. See Fuser on page 21.
- Secondary transfer assembly. See Secondary transfer assembly on page 175.
- Multipurpose tray (Tray 1) drive assembly. See Multipurpose tray (Tray 1) drive assembly on page 183.
- Multipurpose tray (Tray 1) guide assembly. See Multipurpose tray (Tray 1) guide assembly on page 190.

Remove the Tray 2 pickup assembly

Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove four screws (callout 2), and then remove the Tray 2 pickup assembly (callout 3).

Figure 1-275 Remove the Tray 2 pickup assembly



Fuser home position sensor

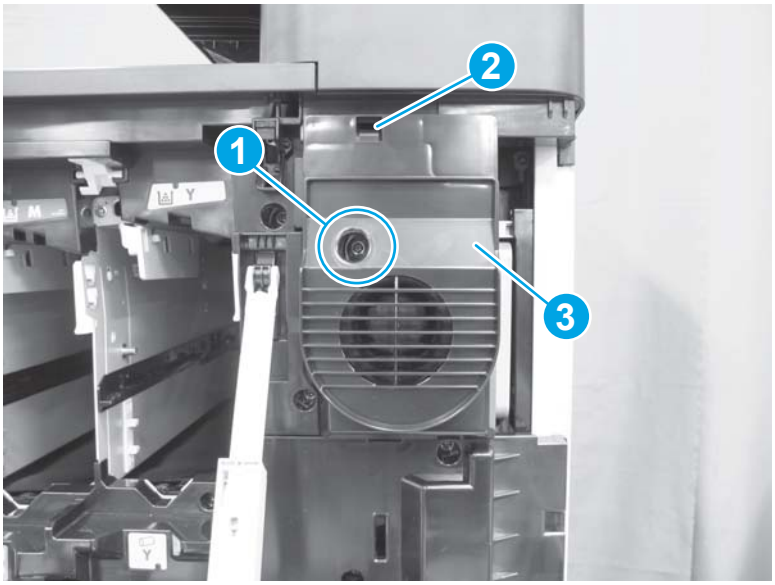
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Fuser. See Fuser on page 21.

Remove the fuser home position sensor

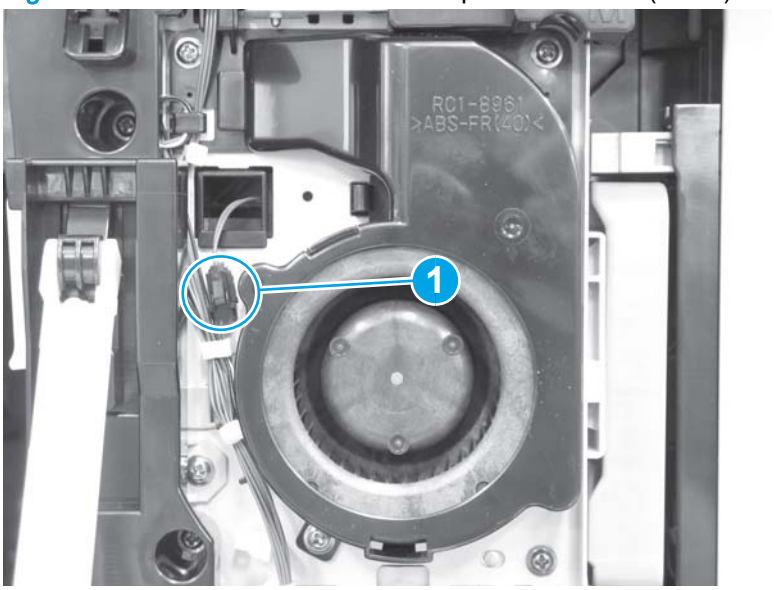
1. Open the front door, remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then remove the delivery fan cover (callout 3).

   Figure 1-276 Remove the fuser home position sensor (1 of 3)

2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1).

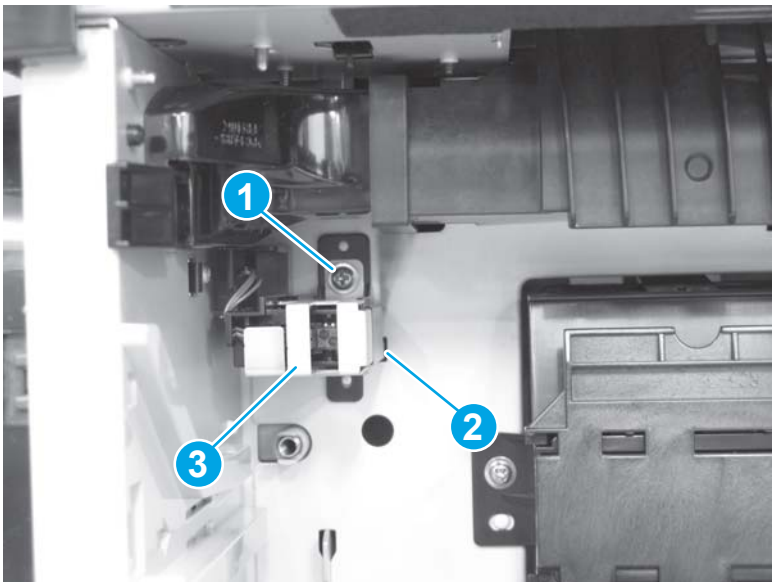
   Figure 1-277 Remove the fuser home position sensor (2 of 3)

3. Open the right door, remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then remove the sensor assembly (callout 3).

CAUTION: As the assembly is removed, guide the wire harness through the opening in the chassis from the front of the product.

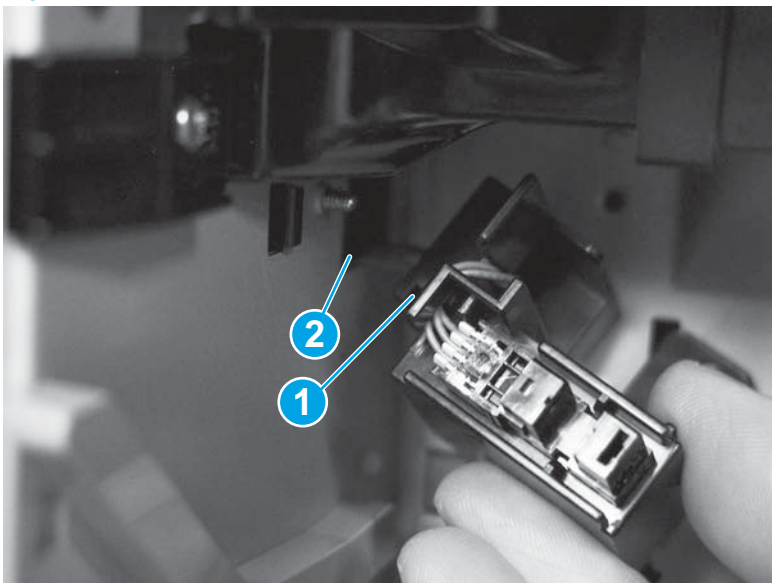
Figure 1-278 Remove the fuser home position sensor (3 of 3)



Reinstall the fuser home position sensor

As the assembly is reinstalled, guide the wire harness through the opening in the chassis to the front of the product, and then make sure that the tab on the sensor (callout 1) is installed in the opening (callout 2) in the chassis.

Figure 1-279 Reinstall the fuser home position sensor



Shutter gear holder assembly

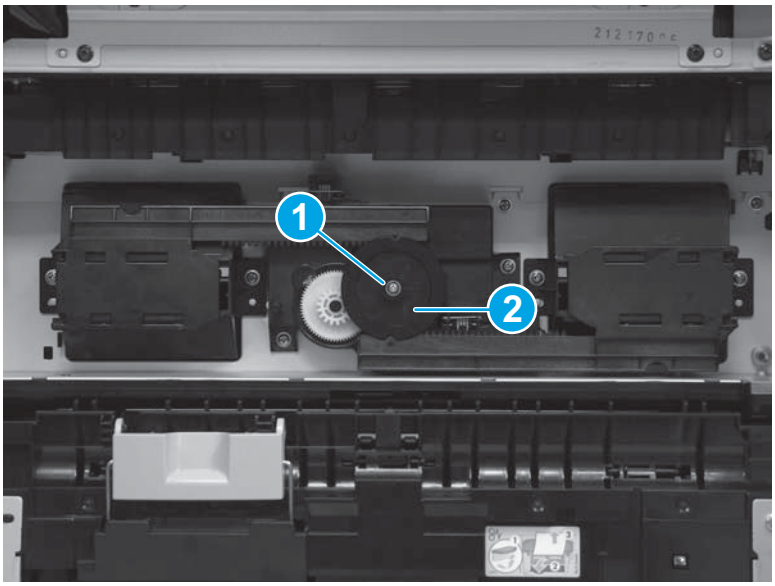
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Fuser. See Fuser on page 21.

Remove the shutter gear holder assembly

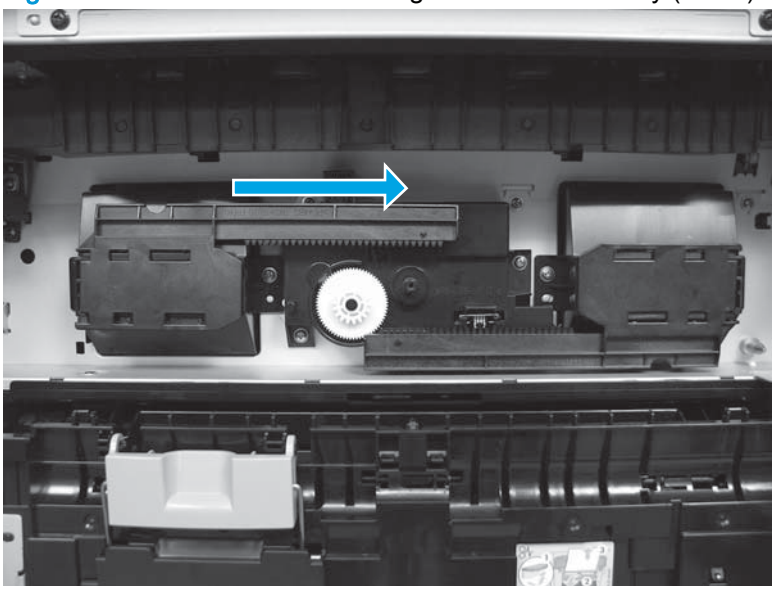
1. Open the right door, remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove one gear (callout 2).

Figure 1-280 Remove the shutter gear holder assembly (1 of 5)



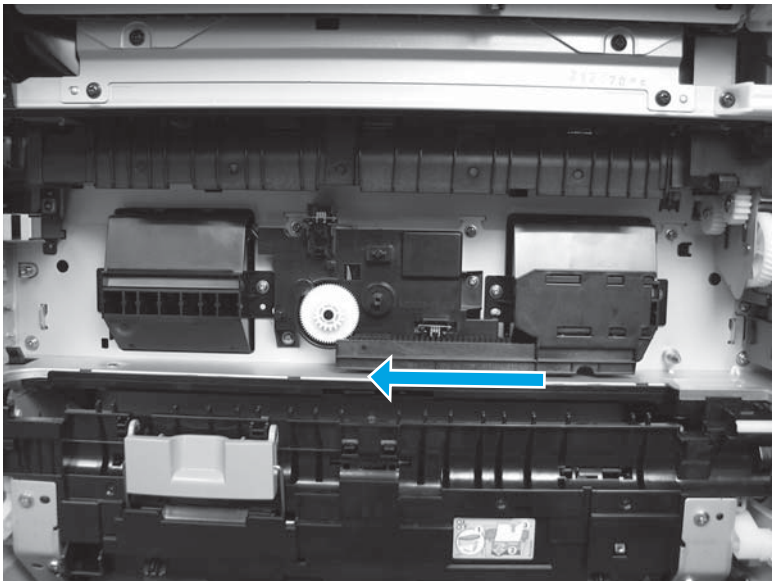
2. Slide the left shutter toward the back of the product to remove it.

Figure 1-281 Remove the shutter gear holder assembly (2 of 5)



3. Slide the right shutter toward the front of the product to remove it.

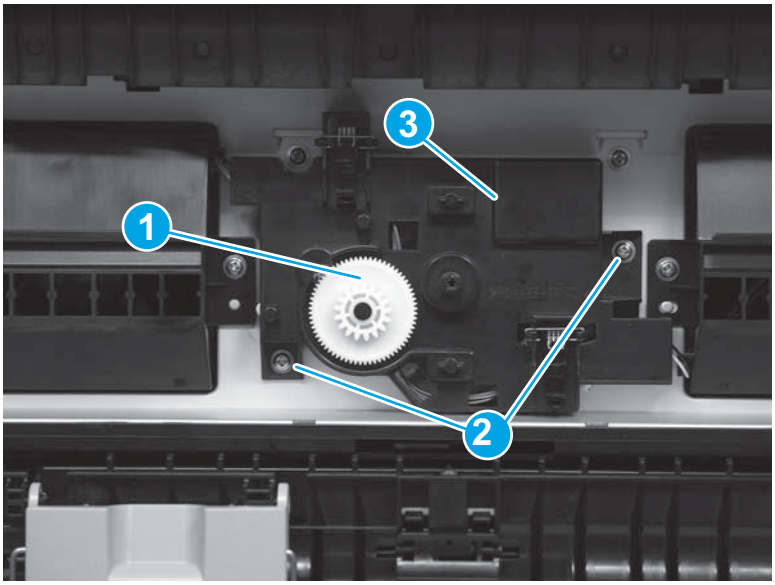
Figure 1-282 Remove the shutter gear holder assembly (3 of 5)



4. Remove one gear (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then separate the gear assembly (callout 3) from the chassis.

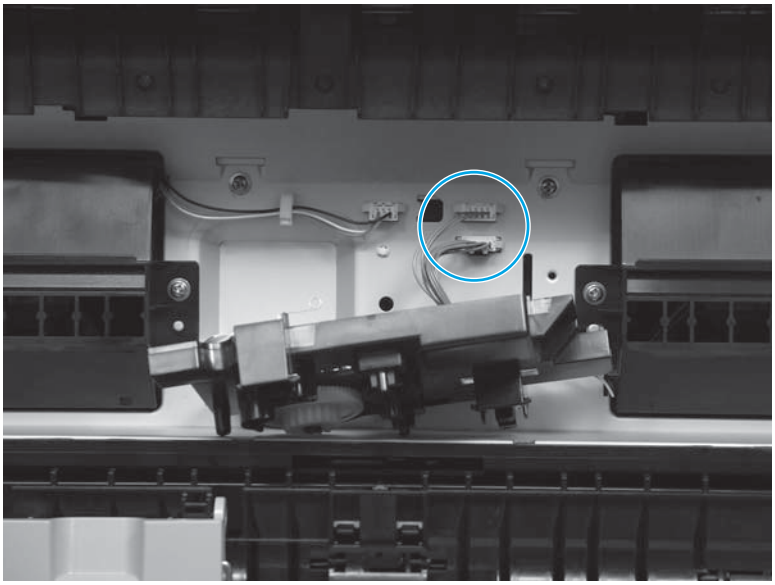
⚠ CAUTION: The assembly is still connected to the product by a wire harness. Do not attempt to completely remove the assembly.

Figure 1-283 Remove the shutter gear holder assembly (4 of 5)



5. Disconnect two connectors.

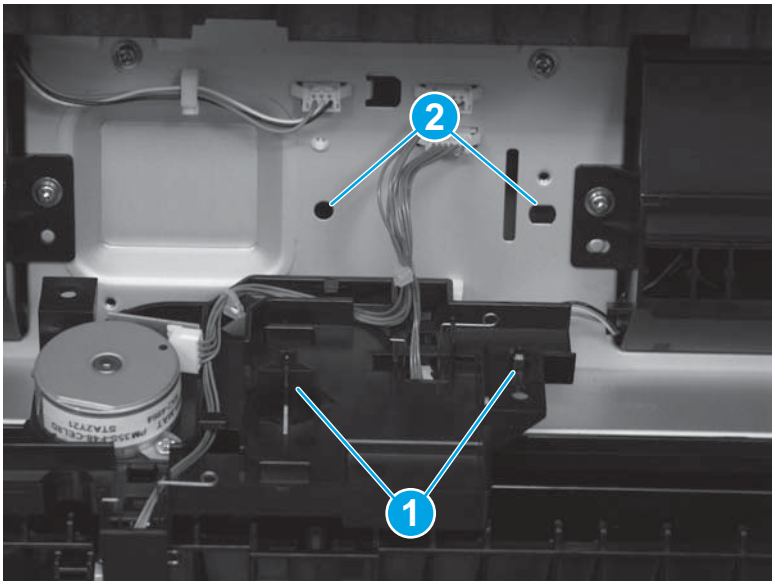
Figure 1-284 Remove the shutter gear holder assembly (5 of 5)



Reinstall the shutter gear holder assembly

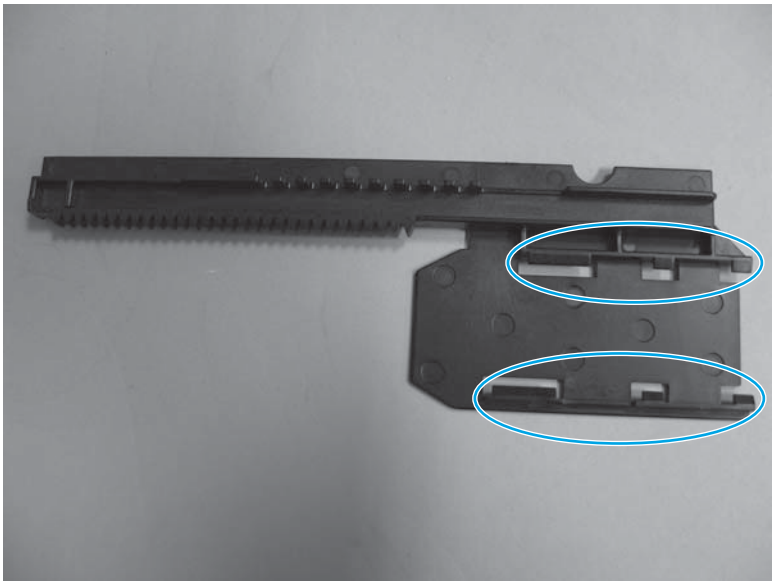
1. Align the round tabs (callout 1) on the back of the shutter gear holder assembly with the slots (callout 2) in the chassis.

Figure 1-285 Reinstall the shutter gear holder assembly (1 of 6)



2. Note the location of the guides on the back of the shutters.

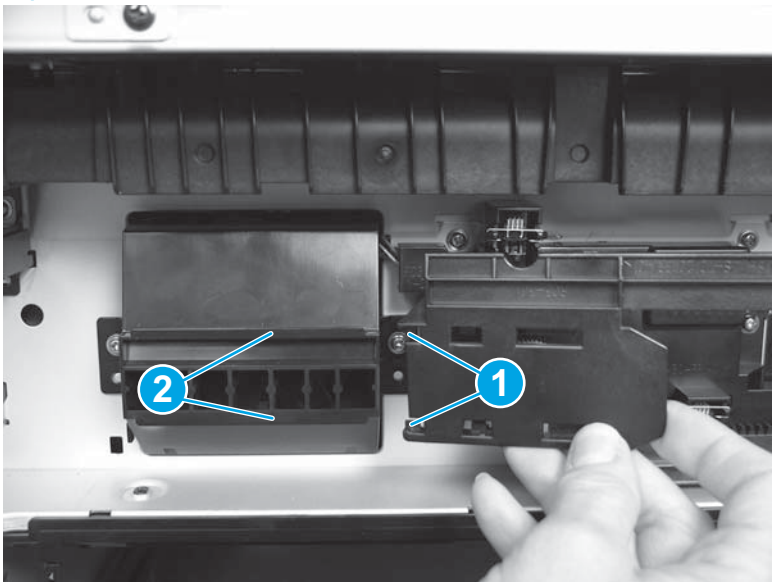
Figure 1-286 Reinstall the shutter gear holder assembly (2 of 6)



3. Make sure that the guides (callout 1) on the shutters align with the rails (callout 2) so that they slide freely.

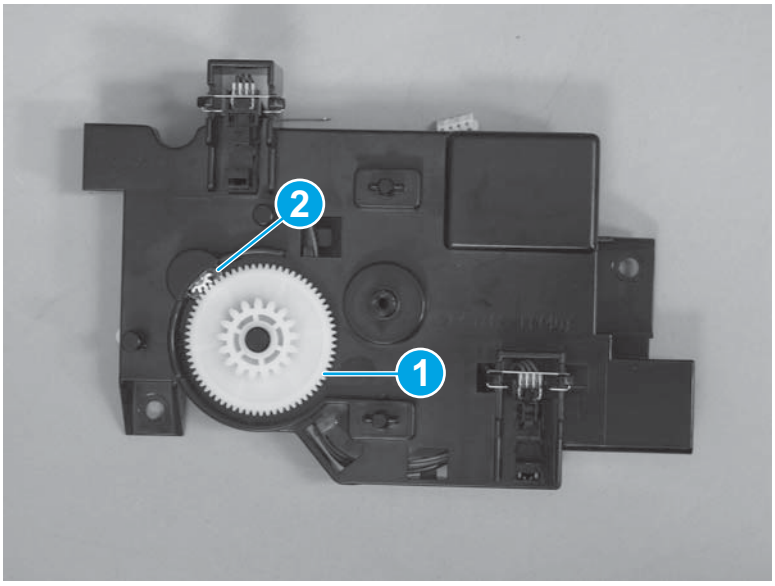
NOTE: The left shutter is shown below. The procedure is the same for the right shutter.

Figure 1-287 Reinstall the shutter gear holder assembly (3 of 6)



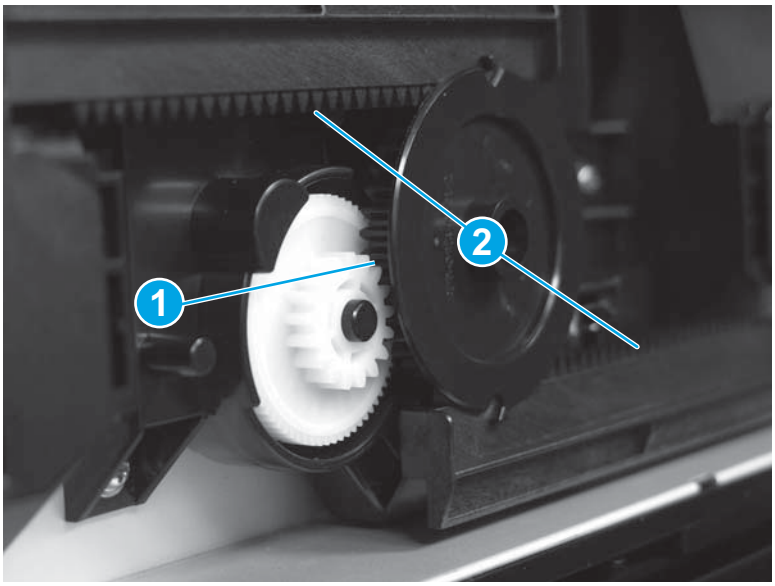
4. When the white gear (callout 1) is reinstalled, position the gear back in the assembly so that the teeth on the white gear align with the teeth on the smaller gear (callout 2).

Figure 1-288 Reinstall the shutter gear holder assembly (4 of 6)



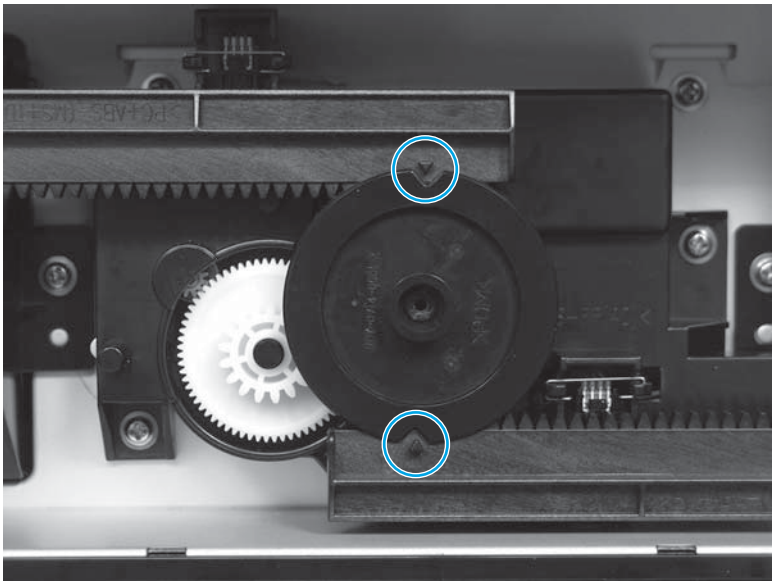
5. When replacing the black gear, make sure that the teeth on the black gear align with the teeth on the white gear (callout 1). Also make sure that the teeth on the shutters (callout 2) align with the teeth on the black gear.

Figure 1-289 Reinstall the shutter gear holder assembly (5 of 6)



6. Make sure that the arrows on the shutters align with the notches in the gear.

Figure 1-290 Reinstall the shutter gear holder assembly (6 of 6)



Fuser-edge area cooling fan FM10 (front)

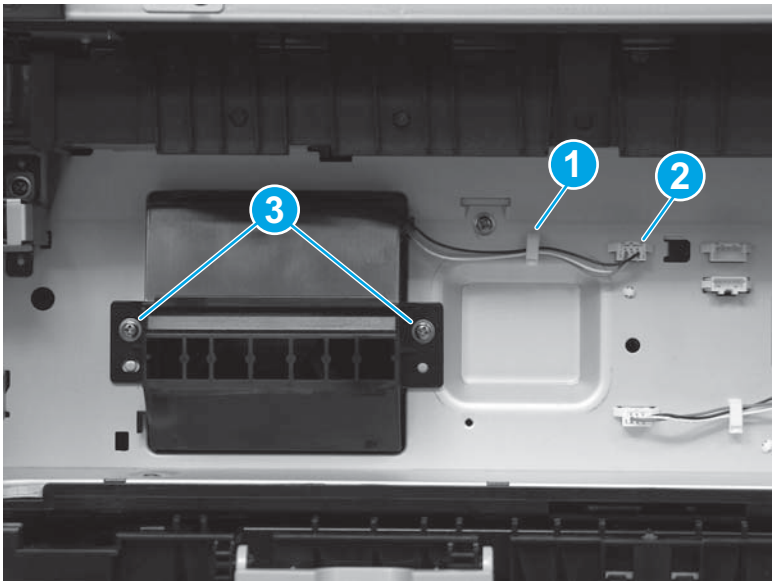
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Fuser. See Fuser on page 21.
- Shutter gear holder assembly. See Shutter gear holder assembly on page 194.

Remove the fuser-edge area cooling fan FM10 (front)

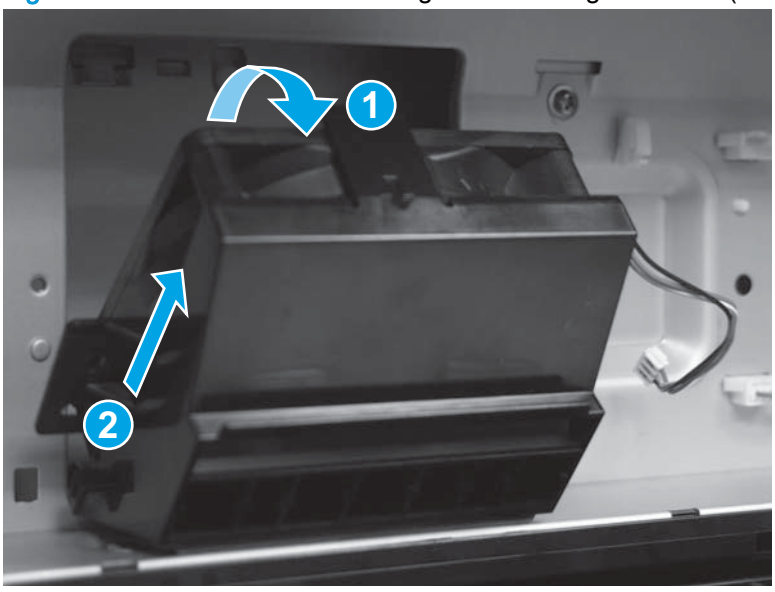
1. Release the wire harness from one retainer (callout 1), disconnect one connector (callout 2), and then remove two screws (callout 3).

   Figure 1-291 Remove the fuser-edge area cooling fan FM10 (front; 1 of 3)

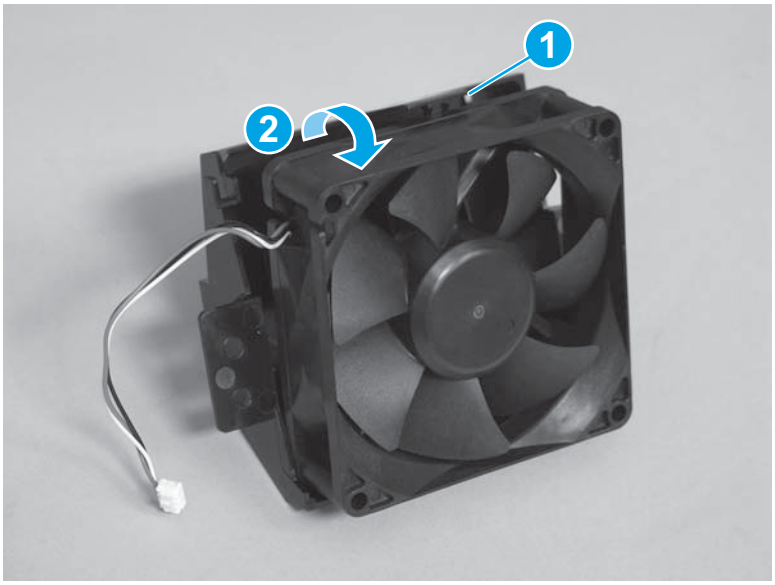
2. Rotate the top of the fan away from the chassis (callout 1), and then lift it up and away from the product (callout 2) to remove it.

   Figure 1-292 Remove the fuser-edge area cooling fan FM10 (front; 2 of 3)

3. To remove the fan from the holder, release one tab (callout 1) and then rotate the top of the fan (callout 2) out of the holder to remove it.

Figure 1-293 Remove the fuser-edge area cooling fan FM10 (front; 3 of 3)

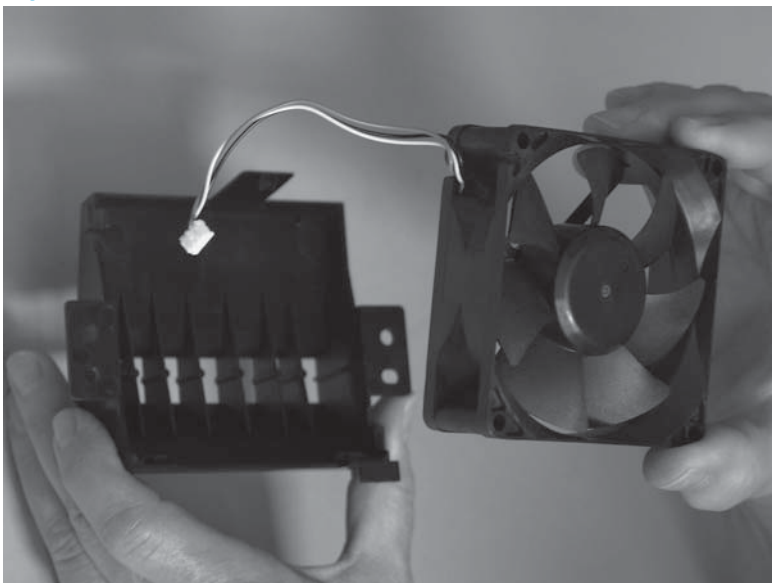


Reinstall the fuser-edge area cooling fan FM10 (front)

1. Make sure that the fan is oriented as shown below when reinstalling it in the holder.

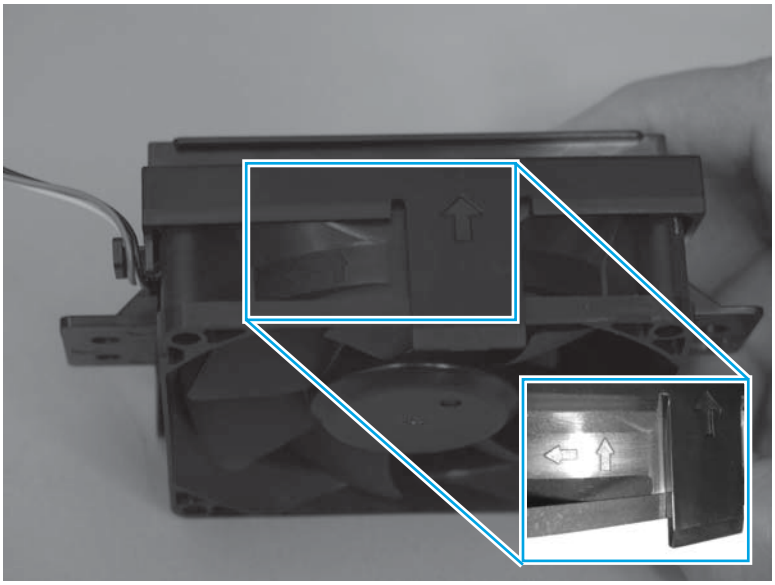
NOTE: The label in the center of the fan should be facing inward, toward the holder.

Figure 1-294 Reinstall the fuser-edge area cooling fan FM10 (front; 1 of 3)



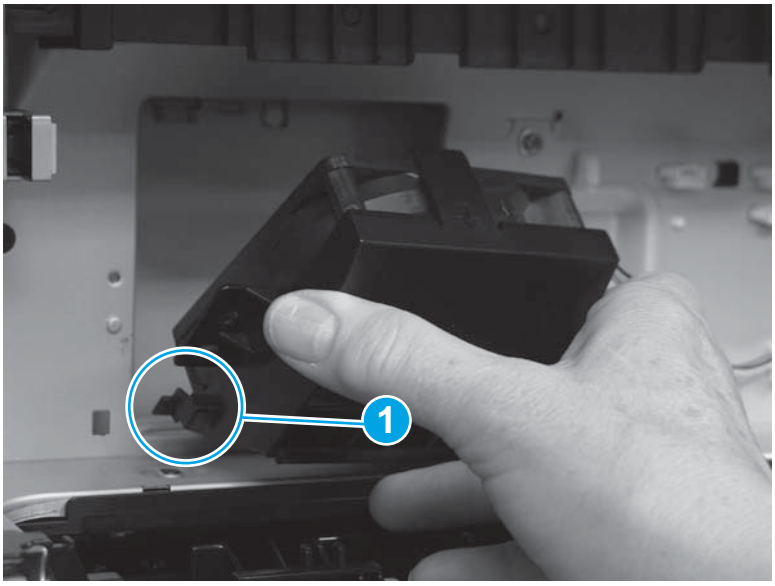
2. The embossed arrows on the fan must point into the chassis and to the left (toward the wire harness) when the fan and holder are installed in the product.

Figure 1-295 Reinstall the fuser-edge area cooling fan FM10 (front; 2 of 3)



3. When reinstalling the fan, make sure that the tab is installed first and that it fits behind the sheet metal (callout 1).

Figure 1-296 Reinstall the fuser-edge area cooling fan FM10 (front; 3 of 3)



Fuser-edge area cooling fan FM9 (rear)

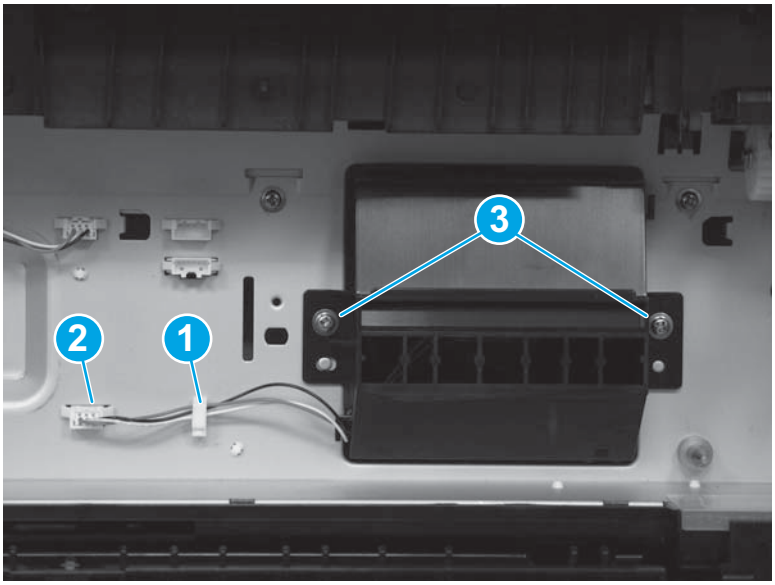
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Fuser. See Fuser on page 21.
- Shutter gear holder assembly. See Shutter gear holder assembly on page 194.

Remove the fuser-edge area cooling fan FM9 (rear)

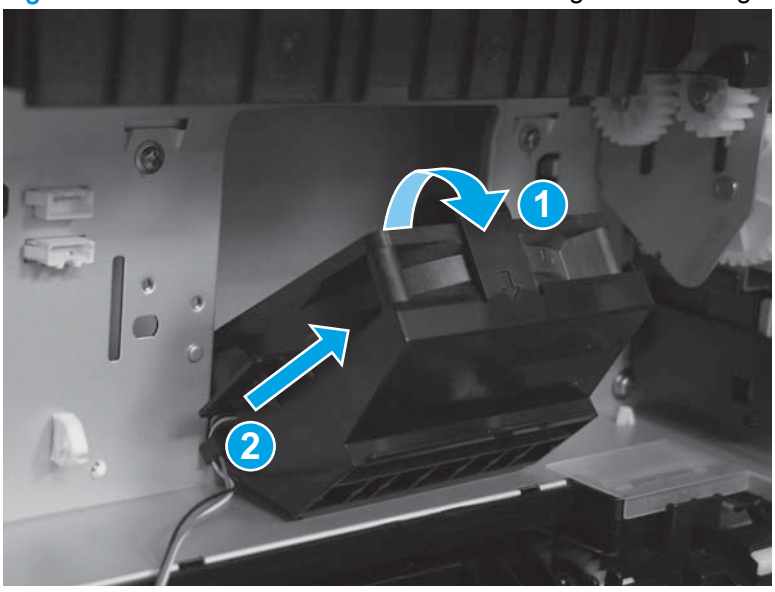
1. Release the wire harness from one retainer (callout 1), disconnect one connector (callout 2), and then remove two screws (callout 3).

   Figure 1-297 Remove the fuser-edge area cooling fan FM9 (rear; 1 of 3)

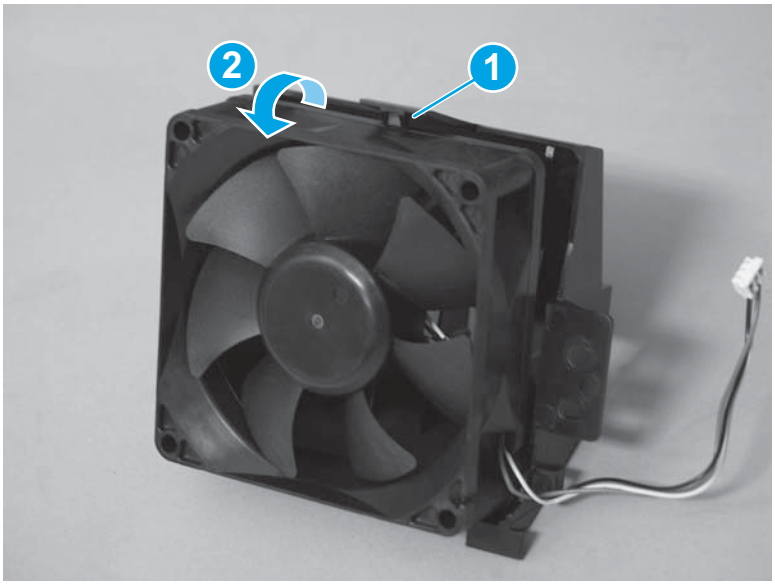
2. Rotate the top of the fan away from the chassis (callout 1), and then lift it up and away from the product (callout 2) to remove it.

   Figure 1-298 Remove the Remove the fuser-edge area cooling fan FM9 (rear; 2 of 3)

3. To remove the fan from the holder, release one tab (callout 1) and then rotate the top of the fan out of the holder (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 1-299 Remove the fuser-edge area cooling fan FM9 (rear; 3 of 3)

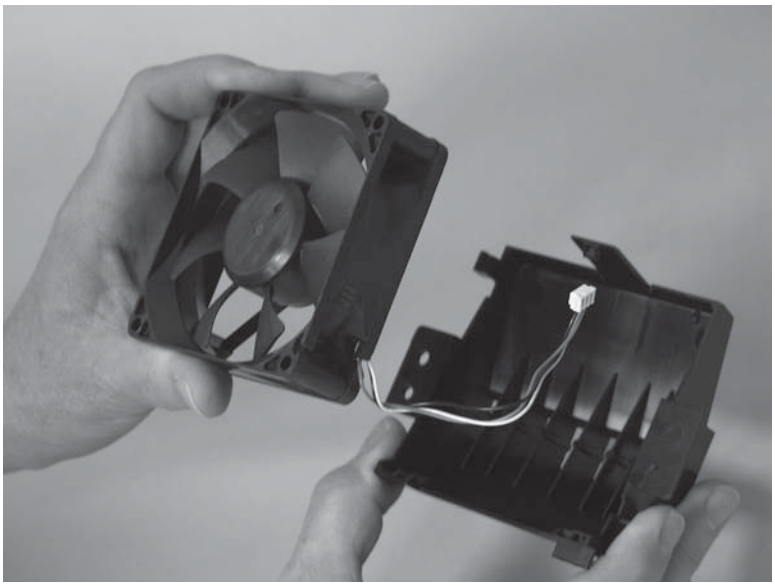


Reinstall the fuser-edge area cooling fan FM9 (rear)

1. Make sure that the fan is oriented as shown below when reinstalling it in the holder.

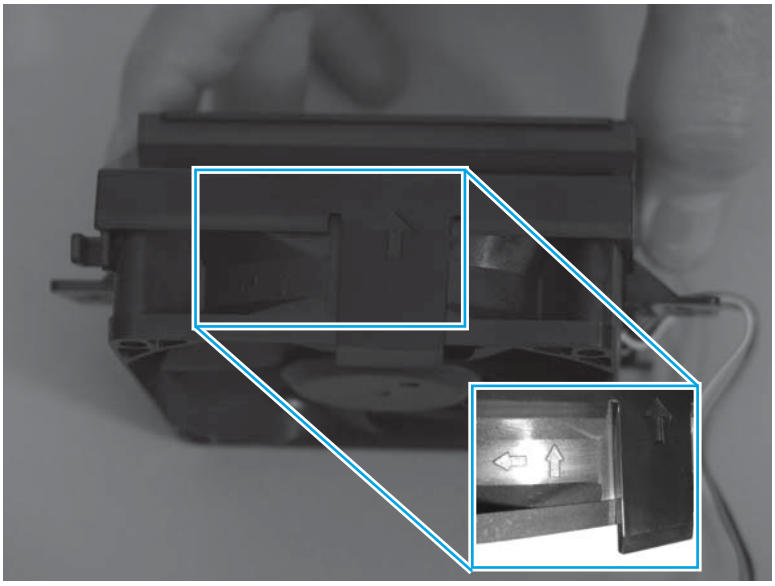
NOTE: The label in the center of the fan should be facing inward, toward the holder.

Figure 1-300 Reinstall the fuser-edge area cooling fan FM9 (rear; 1 of 3)



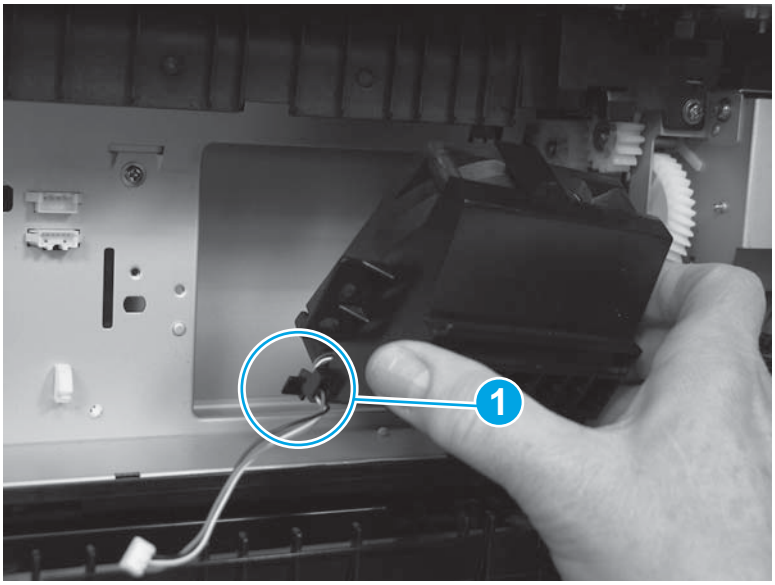
2. The embossed arrows on the fan must point into the chassis and to the left (away from the wire harness) when the fan and holder are installed in the product.

Figure 1-301 Reinstall the fuser-edge area cooling fan FM9 (rear; 2 of 3)



3. When reinstalling the left fuser cooling fan, make sure that the tab is installed first and that it fits behind the sheet metal (callout 1).

Figure 1-302 Reinstall the fuser-edge area cooling fan FM9 (rear; 3 of 3)



Fuser fan FM2

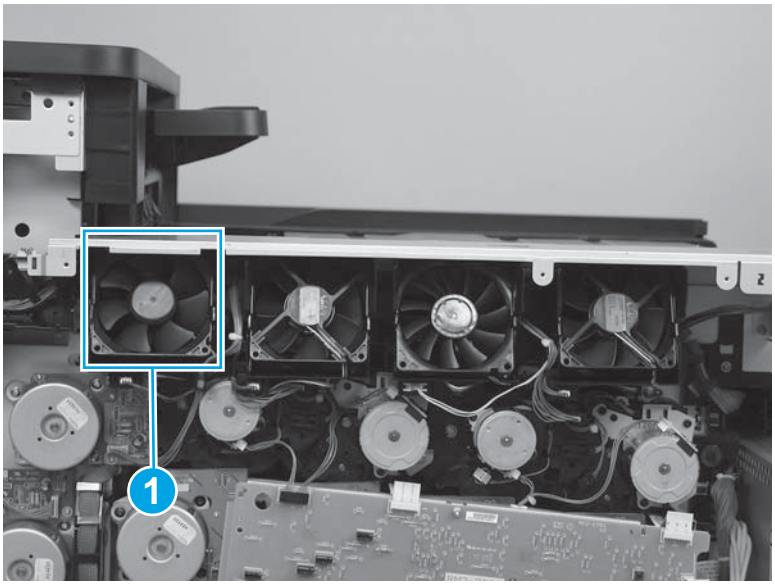
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Left rear cover. See Left rear cover on page 104.
- Rear cover. See Rear cover on page 143.

Remove the fuser fan FM2

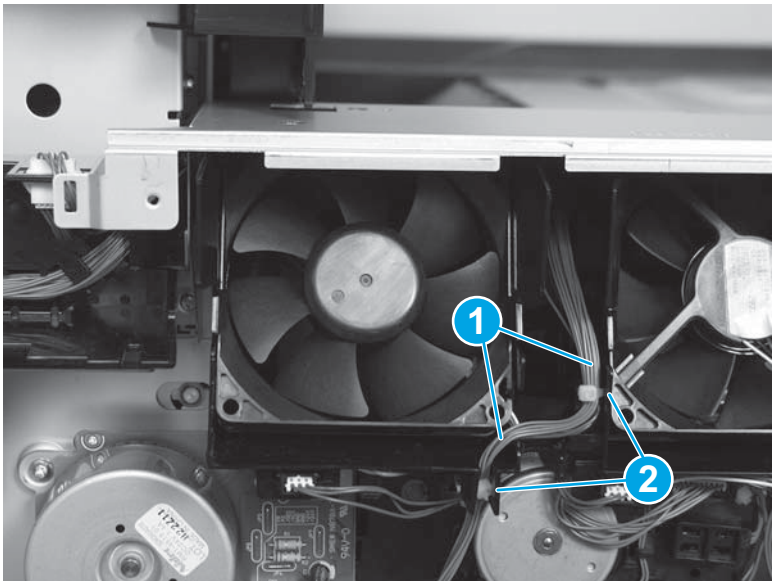
1. Locate the fuser fan (callout 1).

Figure 1-303 Remove the fuser fan FM2 (1 of 5)



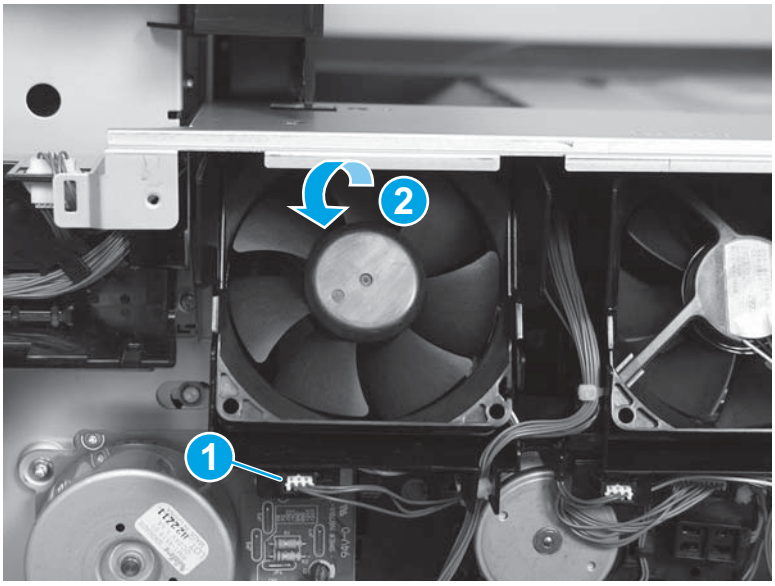
2. Release the wire harness (callout 1) from the guides (callout 2).

Figure 1-304 Remove the fuser fan FM2 (2 of 5)



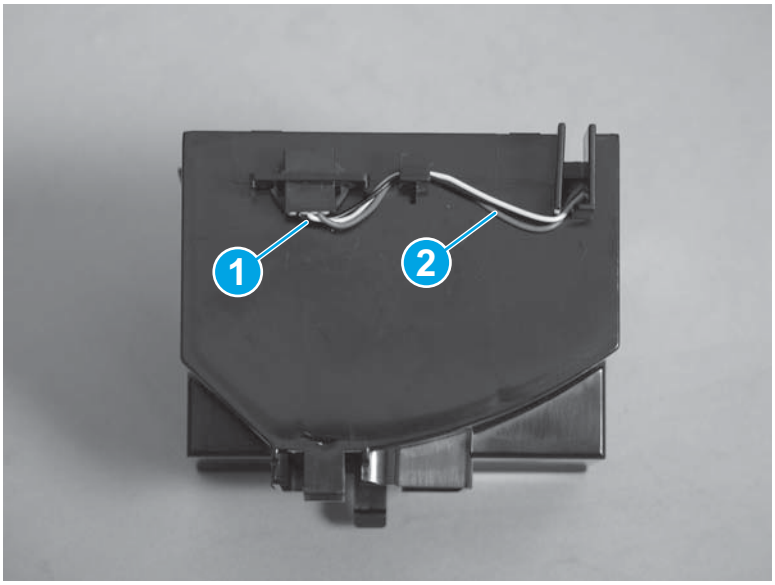
3. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then rotate the fan assembly out and down (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 1-305 Remove the fuser fan FM2 (3 of 5)



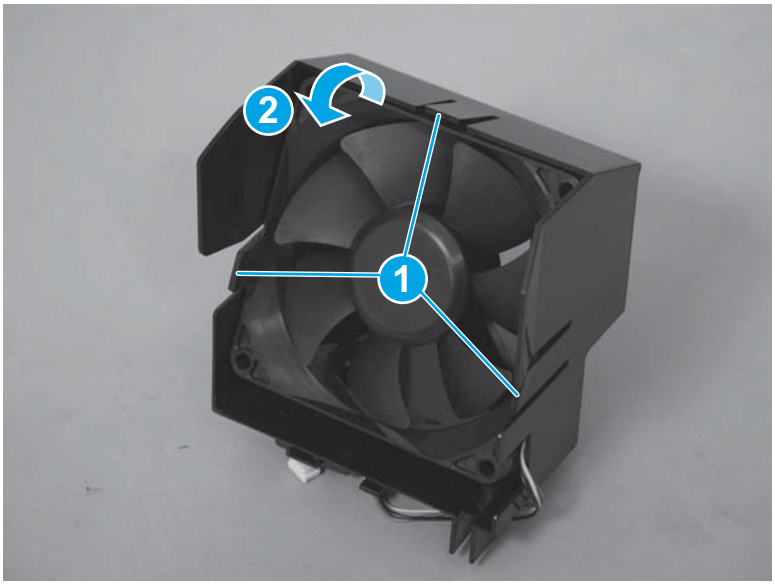
4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1) on the fan holder, and then release the wire harness (callout 2) from the guides.

Figure 1-306 Remove the fuser fan FM2 (4 of 5)



5. Release three tabs (callout 1), and then rotate the fuser fan (callout 2) out of the fan holder.

Figure 1-307 Remove the fuser fan FM2 (5 of 5)

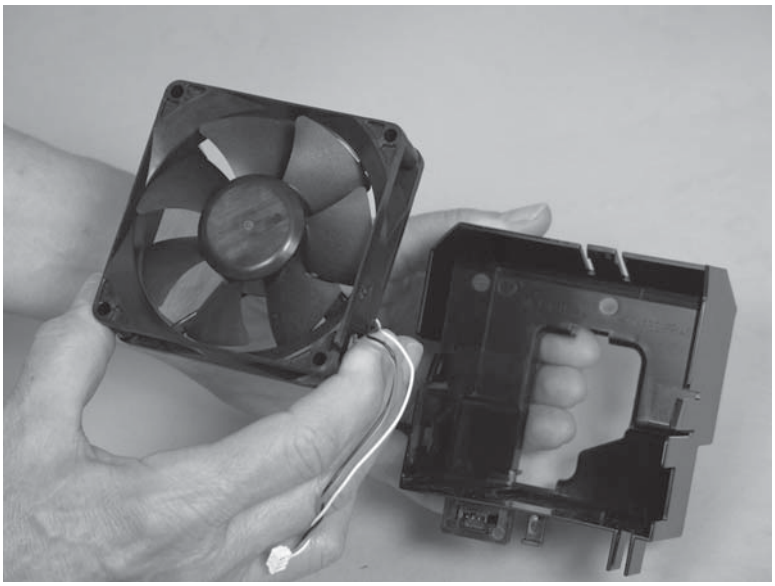


Reinstall the fuser fan FM2

1. Make sure that the fan is oriented as shown below when reinstalling it in the holder.

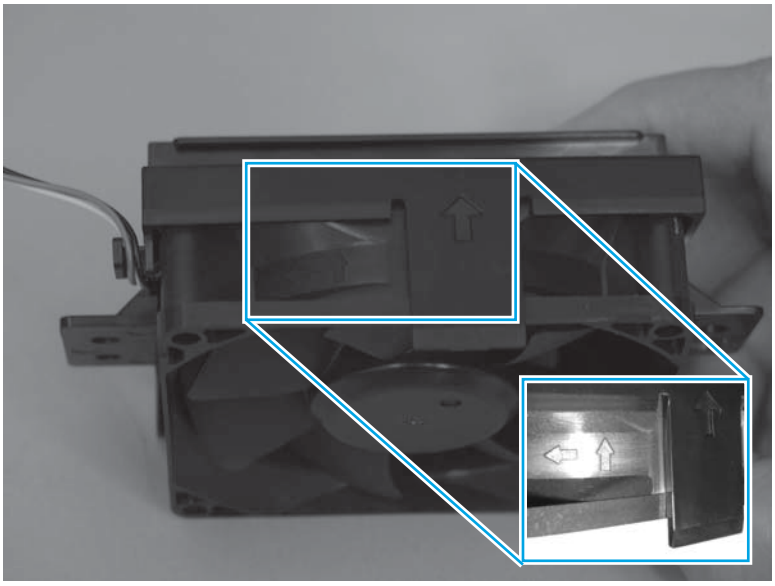
NOTE: The label in the center of the fan should be facing inward, toward the holder.

Figure 1-308 Reinstall the fuser fan FM2 (1 of 3)



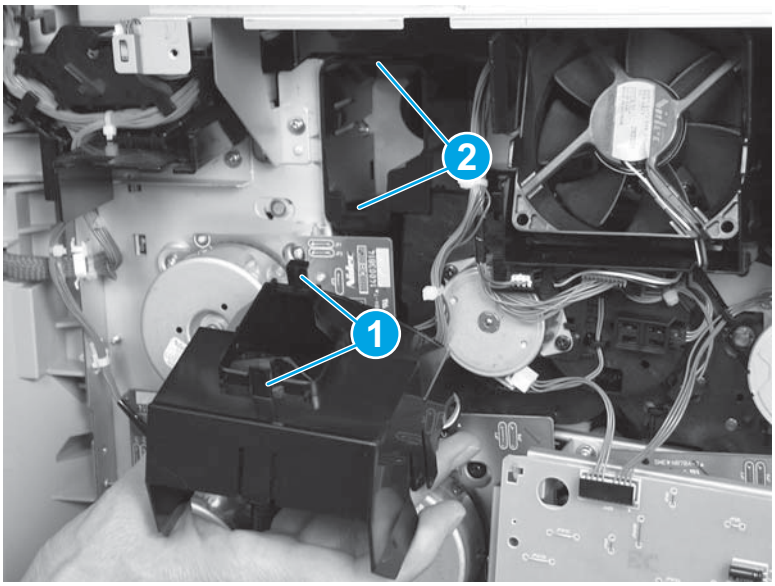
2. The embossed arrows on the fan must point into the chassis and to the left (toward the wire harness) when the fan and holder are installed in the product.

Figure 1-309 Reinstall the fuser fan FM2 (2 of 3)



3. When reinstalling the fuser fan assembly, make sure that the tabs (callout 1) on the holder are installed in the slots (callout 2) on the chassis.

Figure 1-310 Reinstall the fuser fan FM2 (3 of 3)



Fuser fan duct

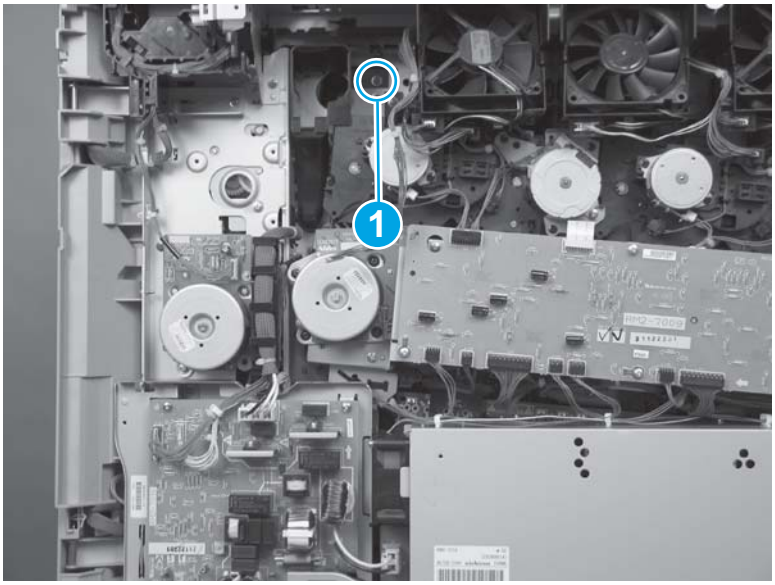
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Left rear cover. See Left rear cover on page 104.
- Rear cover. See Rear cover on page 143.
- Fuser fan FM2. See Fuser fan FM2 on page 207.
- Fuser motor. See Fuser motor on page 242.

Remove the fuser fan duct

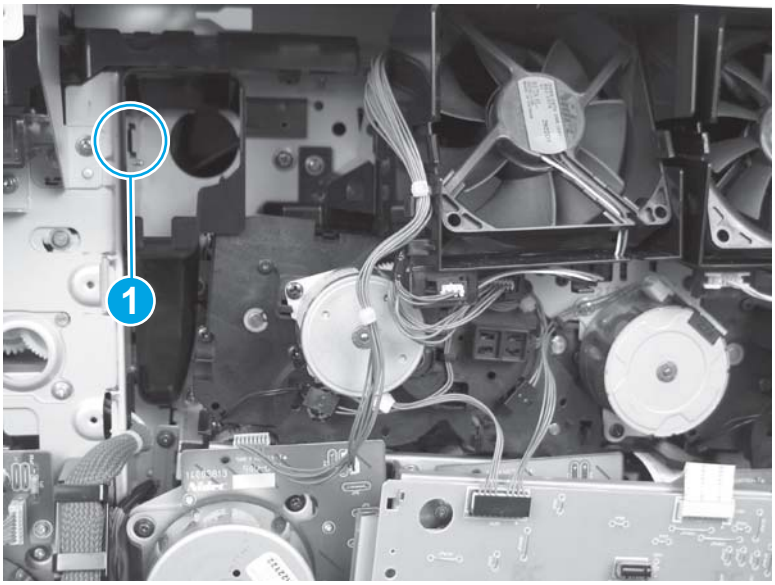
1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-311 Remove the fuser fan duct (1 of 3)



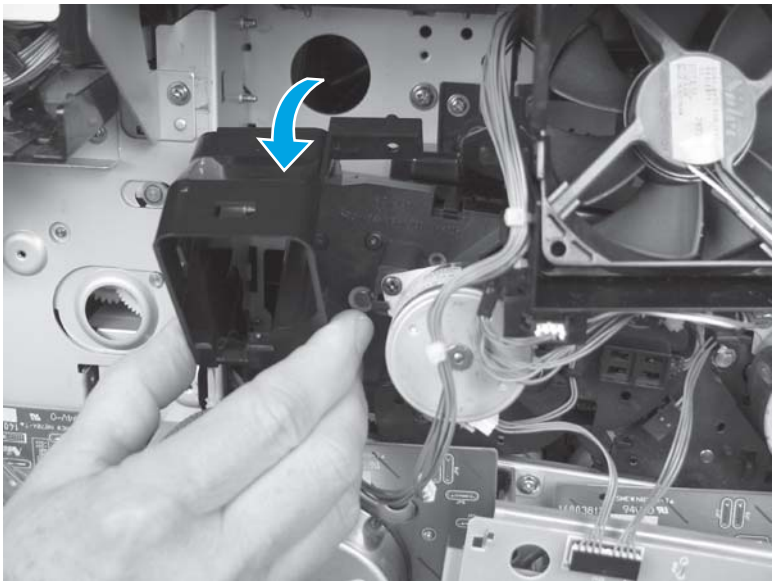
2. Release one tab (callout 1).

Figure 1-312 Remove the fuser fan duct (2 of 3)



3. Rotate the top of the fuser fan duct away from the product to remove it.

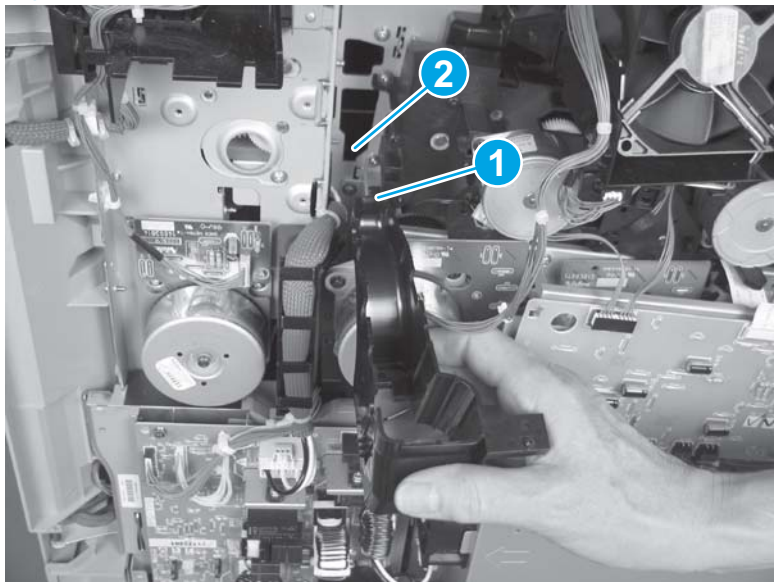
Figure 1-313 Remove the fuser fan duct (3 of 3)



Reinstall the fuser fan duct

Insert the tab (callout 1) on the duct into the slot (callout 2) on the chassis before rotating the duct into position.

Figure 1-314 Reinstall the fuser fan duct



Cartridge fan FM3 (yellow and magenta)

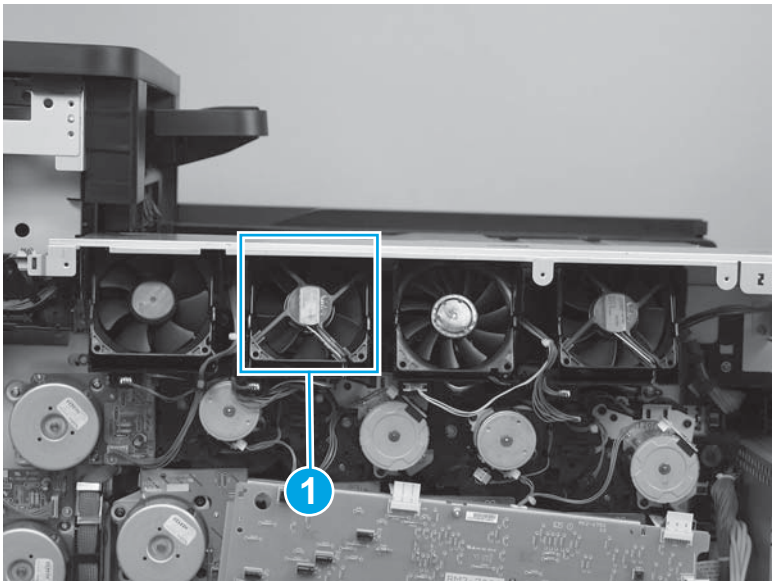
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Left rear cover. See Left rear cover on page 104.
- Rear cover. See Rear cover on page 143.

Remove the cartridge fan FM3 (yellow and magenta)

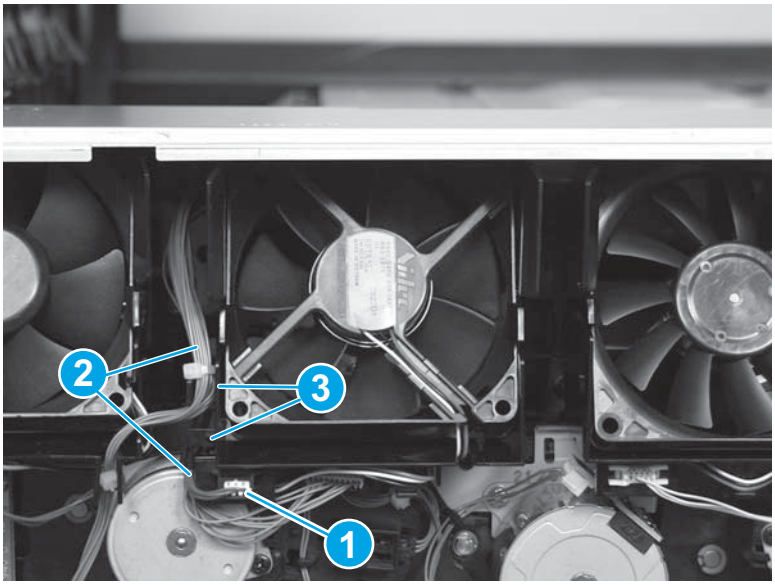
1. Locate the cartridge fan (yellow and magenta; callout 1).

   Figure 1-315 Remove the cartridge fan FM3 (yellow and magenta; 1 of 5)

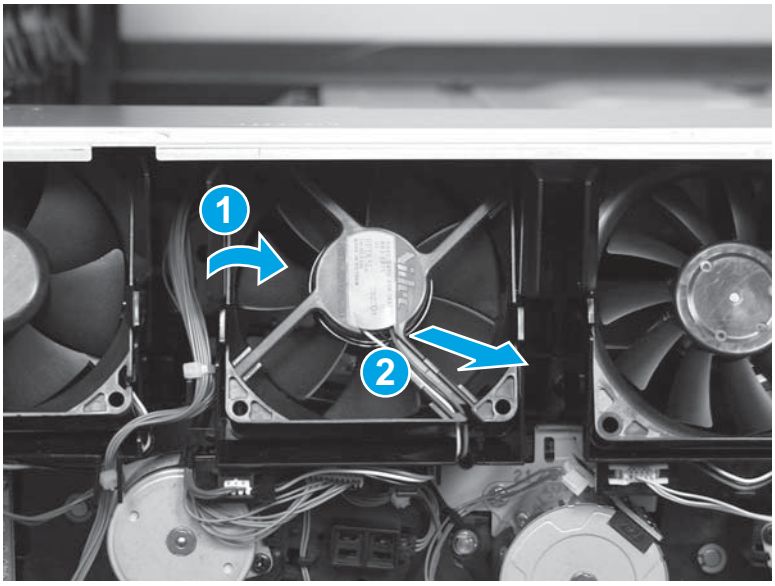
2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then release the wire harnesses (callout 2) from the guides (callout 3).

   Figure 1-316 Remove the cartridge fan FM3 (yellow and magenta; 2 of 5)

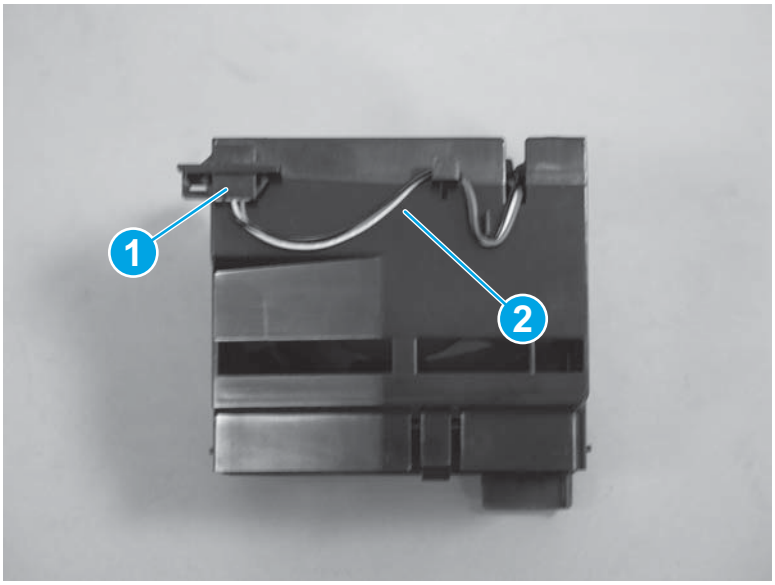
3. Rotate the fan assembly to the right (callout 1), while pulling the assembly away from the product (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 1-317 Remove the cartridge fan FM3 (yellow and magenta; 3 of 5)



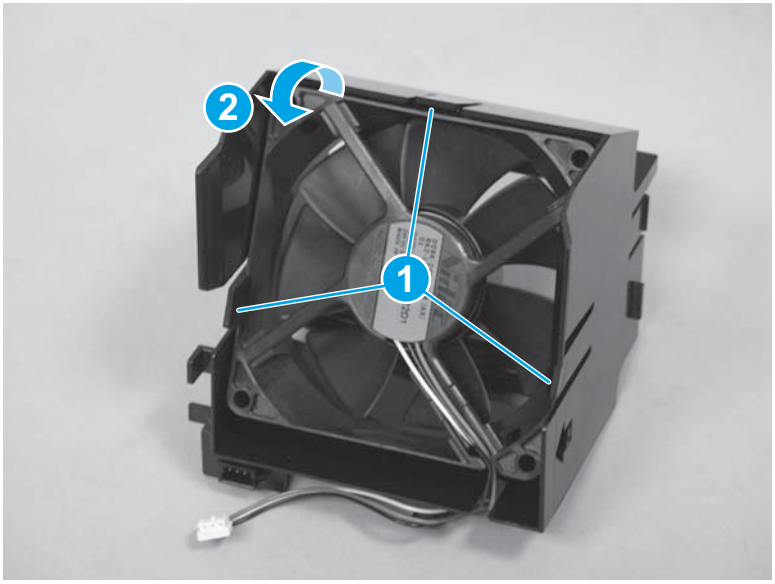
4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1) on the fan holder, and then release the wire harness (callout 2) from the guides.

Figure 1-318 Remove the cartridge fan FM3 (yellow and magenta; 4 of 5)



5. Release three tabs (callout 1), and then rotate the fan (callout 2) out of the fan holder.

Figure 1-319 Remove the cartridge fan FM3 (yellow and magenta; 5 of 5)

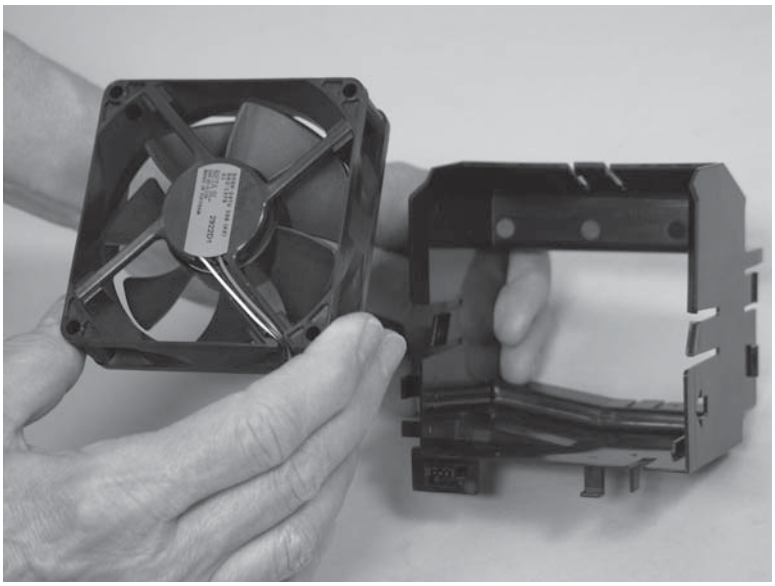


Reinstall the cartridge fan FM3 (yellow and magenta)

1. Make sure that the fan is oriented as shown below when reinstalling it in the holder.

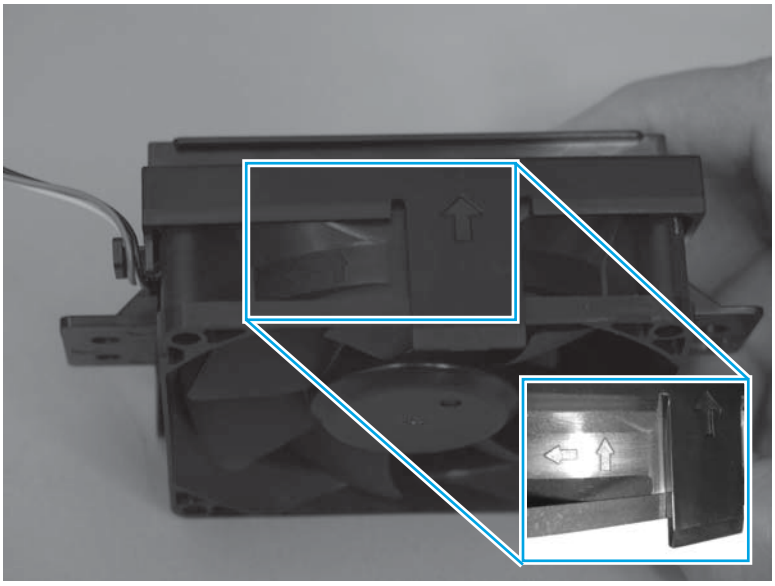
NOTE: The label in the center of the fan should be facing outward, away from the holder.

Figure 1-320 Reinstall the cartridge fan FM3 (yellow and magenta; 1 of 3)



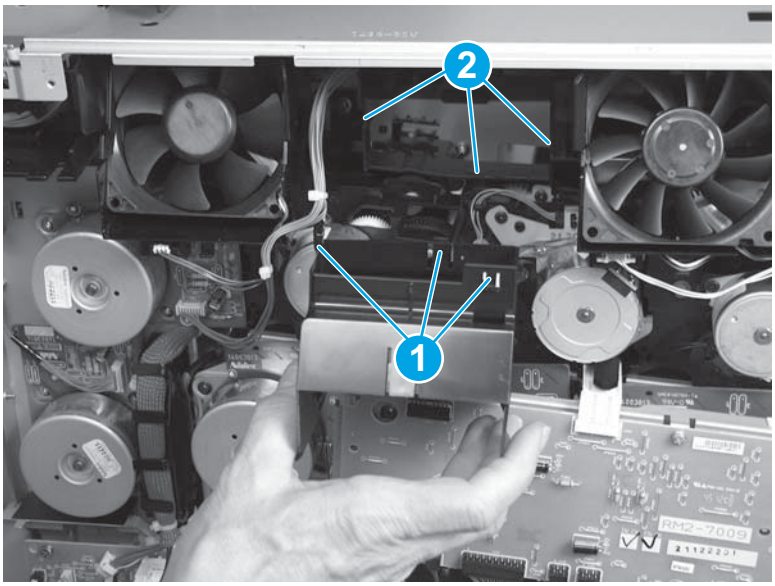
2. The embossed arrows on the fan must point away from the chassis and to the left (toward the wire harness) when the fan and holder are installed in the product.

Figure 1-321 Reinstall the cartridge fan FM3 (yellow and magenta; 2 of 3)



3. When reinstalling the cartridge fan (yellow and magenta) assembly, make sure that the tabs (callout 1) on the holder are installed in the slots (callout 2) on the product.

Figure 1-322 Reinstall the cartridge fan FM3 (yellow and magenta; 3 of 3)



Cartridge fan FM4 (cyan and black)

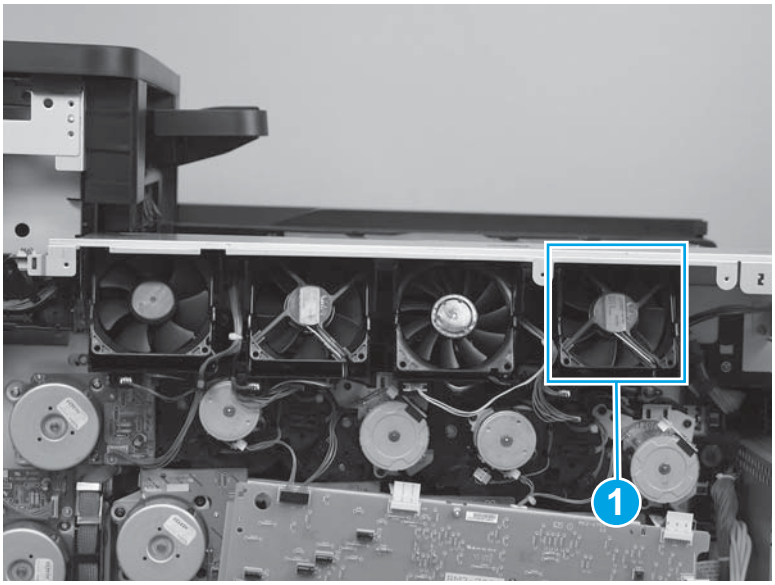
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Left rear cover. See Left rear cover on page 104.
- Rear cover. See Rear cover on page 143.

Remove the cartridge fan FM4 (cyan and black)

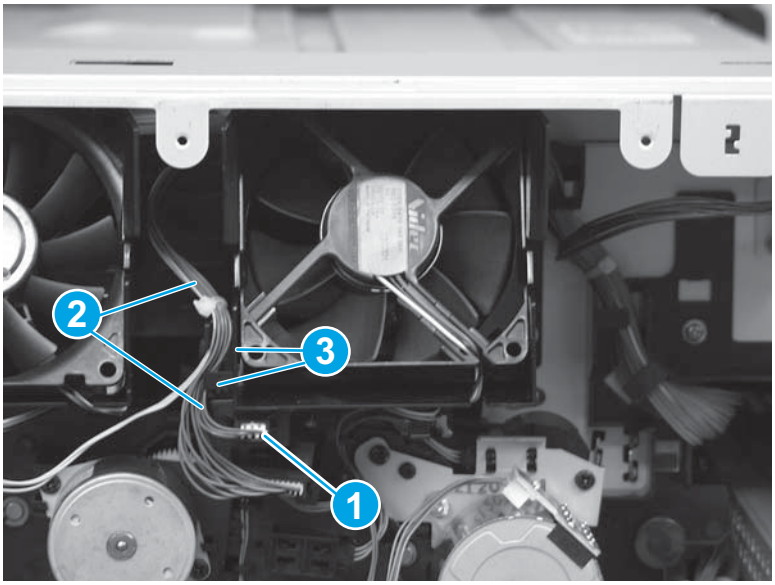
1. Locate the cartridge fan (cyan and black; callout 1).

   Figure 1-323 Remove the cartridge fan FM4 (cyan and black; 1 of 5)

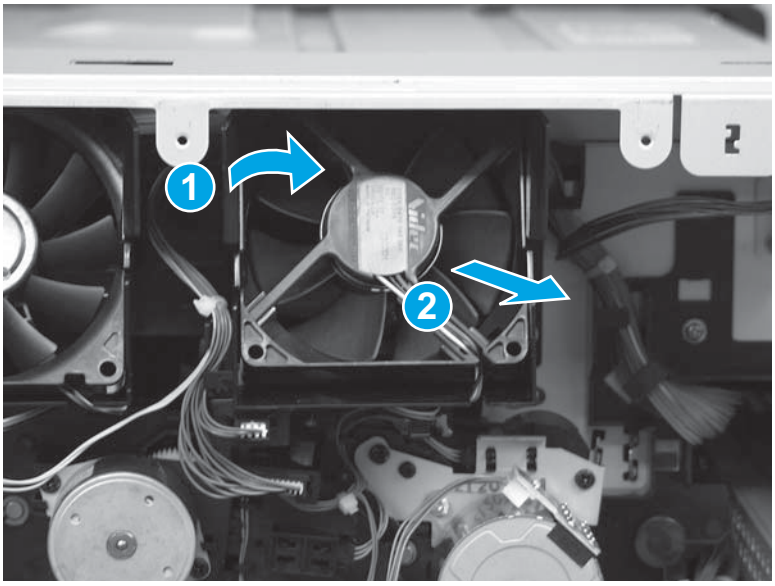
2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then release the wire harnesses (callout 2) from the guides (callout 3).

   Figure 1-324 Remove the cartridge fan FM4 (cyan and black; 2 of 5)

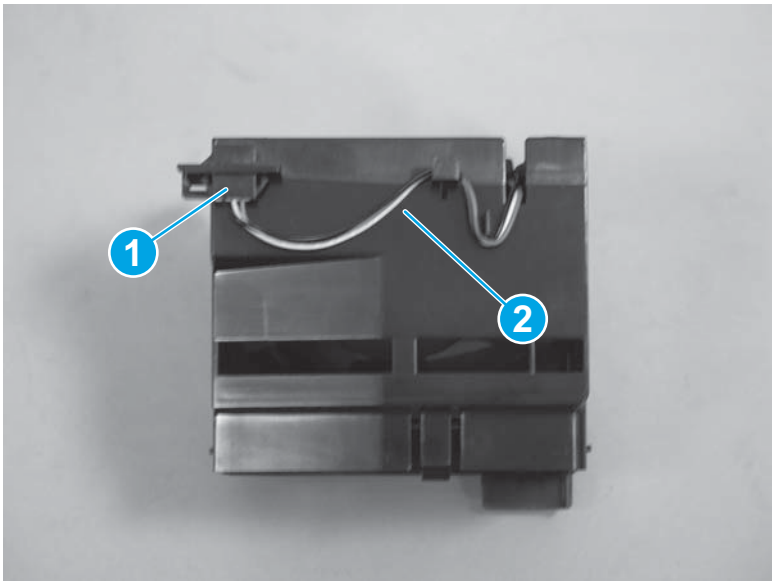
3. Rotate the fan assembly to the right (callout 1), while pulling the assembly away from the product (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 1-325 Remove the cartridge fan FM4 (cyan and black; 3 of 5)



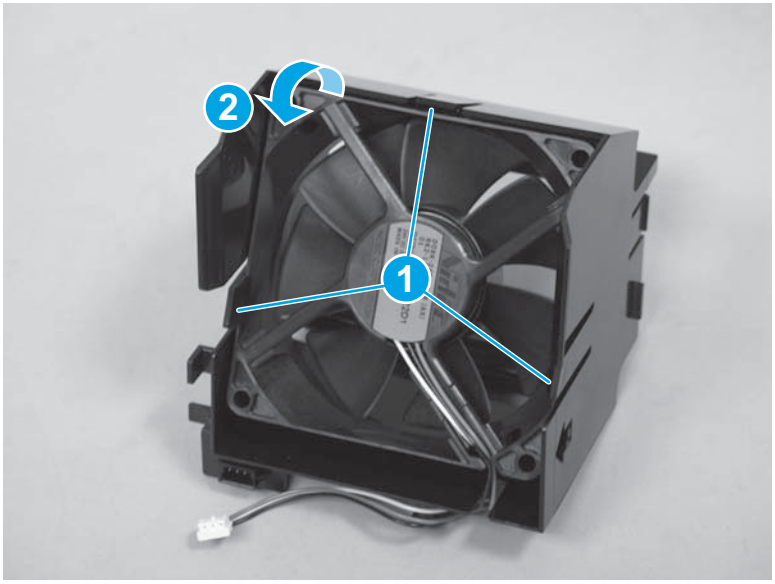
4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1) on the fan holder, and then release the wire harness (callout 2) from the guides.

Figure 1-326 Remove the cartridge fan FM4 (cyan and black; 4 of 5)



5. Release three tabs (callout 1), and then rotate the fan (callout 2) out of the fan holder.

Figure 1-327 Remove the cartridge fan FM4 (cyan and black; 5 of 5)

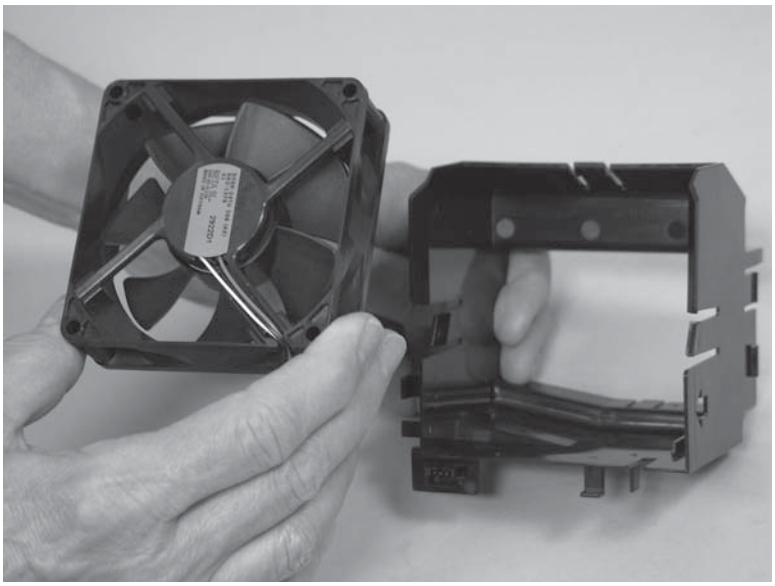


Reinstall the cartridge fan FM4 (cyan and black)

1. Make sure that the fan is oriented as shown below when reinstalling it in the holder.

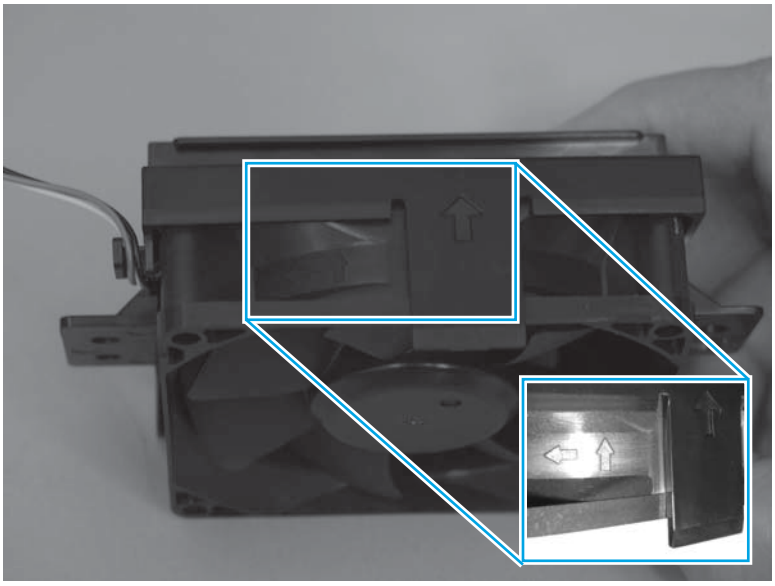
NOTE: The label in the center of the fan should be facing outward, away from the holder.

Figure 1-328 Reinstall the cartridge fan FM4 (cyan and black; 1 of 2)



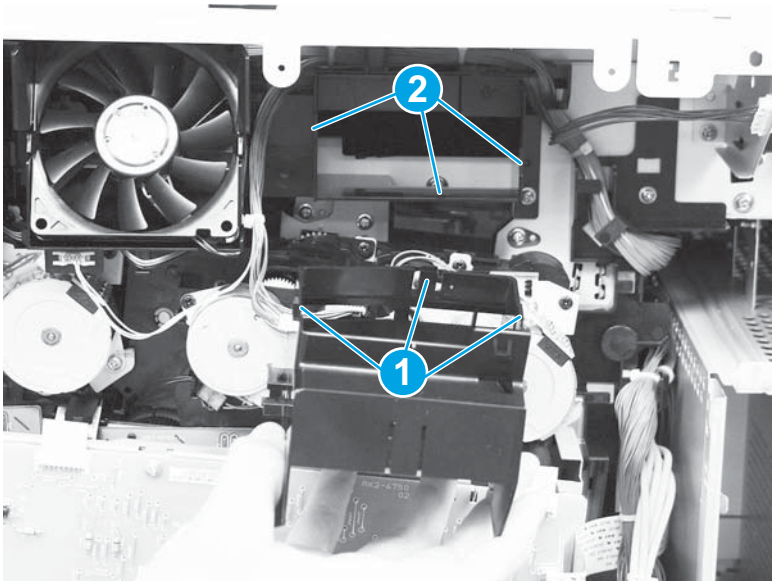
2. The embossed arrows on the fan must point away from the chassis and to the left (toward the wire harness) when the fan and holder are installed in the product.

Figure 1-329 Reinstall the cartridge fan FM4 (cyan and black; 2 of 3)



3. When reinstalling the cartridge fan (cyan and black) assembly, make sure that the tabs (callout 1) on the holder are installed in the slots (callout 2) on the chassis.

Figure 1-330 Reinstall the cartridge fan FM4 (cyan and black; 3 of 3)



Laser/scanner fan FM1

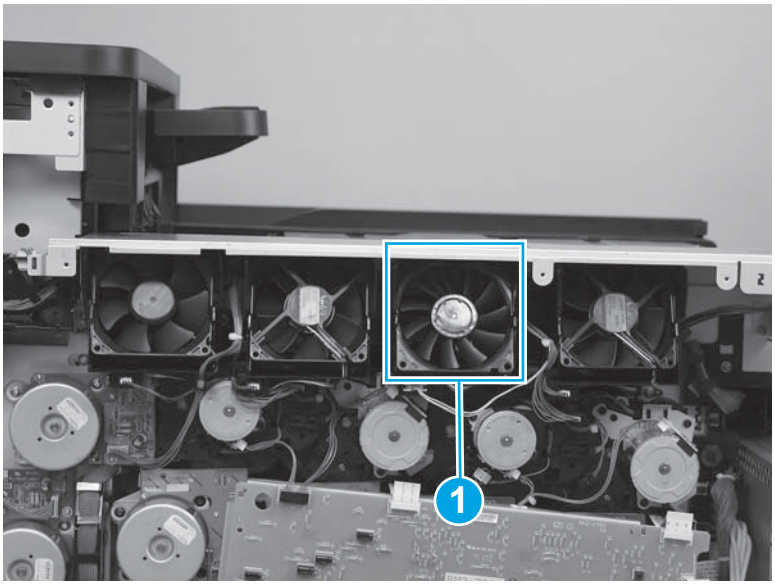
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Left rear cover. See Left rear cover on page 104.
- Rear cover. See Rear cover on page 143.

Remove the laser/scanner fan FM1

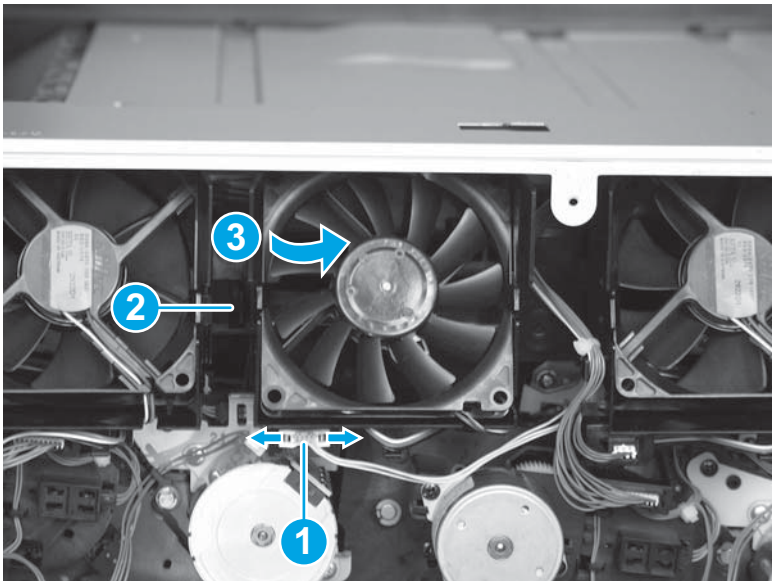
1. Locate the laser/scanner fan (callout 1).

Figure 1-331 Remove the laser/scanner fan FM1 (1 of 4)



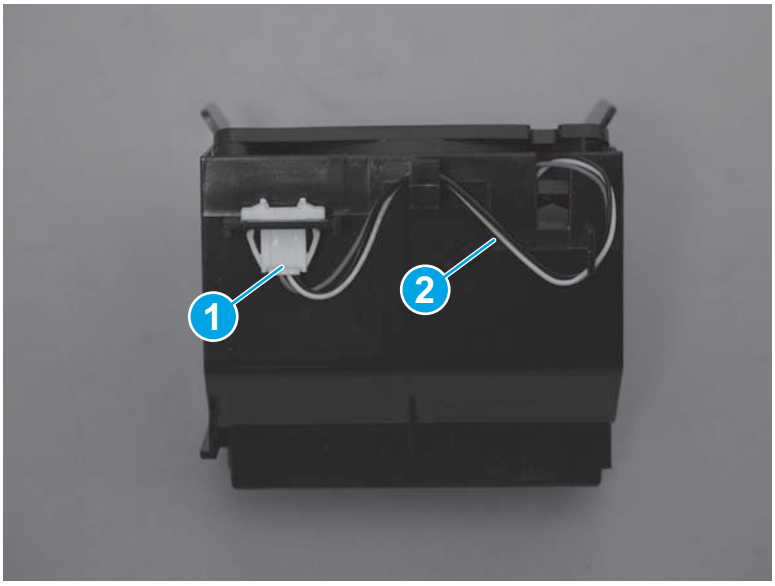
2. Release two locking tabs, and then disconnect one connector (callout 1). Release one tab (callout 2). and then rotate the fan assembly to the right (callout 3) to remove it.

Figure 1-332 Remove the laser/scanner fan FM1 (2 of 4)



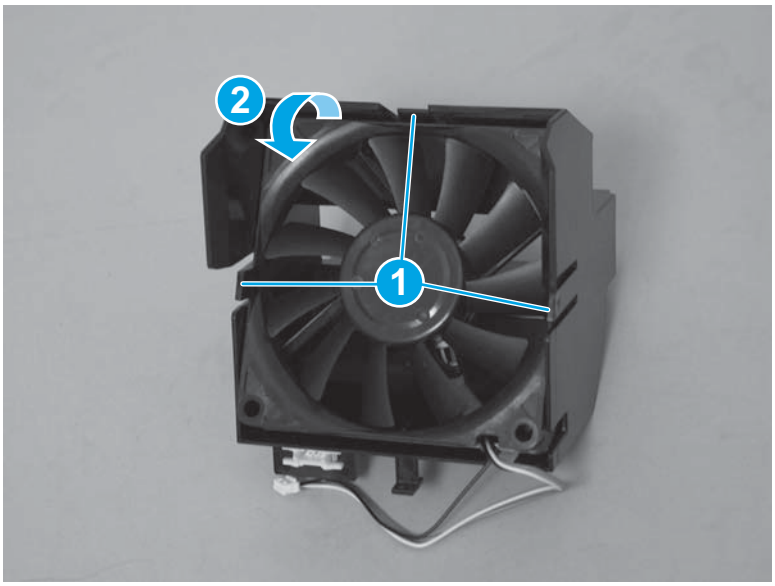
3. Disconnect one connector (callout 1) on the fan holder, and then release the wire harness (callout 2) from the guides.

Figure 1-333 Remove the laser/scanner fan FM1 (3 of 4)



4. Release three tabs (callout 1), and then rotate the laser/scanner fan (callout 2) out of the fan holder.

Figure 1-334 Remove the laser/scanner fan FM1 (4 of 4)

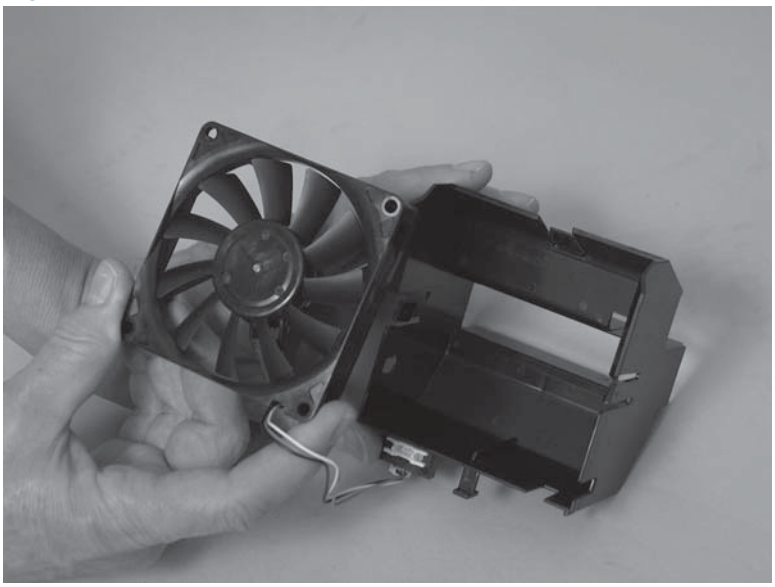


Reinstall the laser/scanner fan FM1

1. Make sure that the fan is oriented as shown below when reinstalling it in the holder.

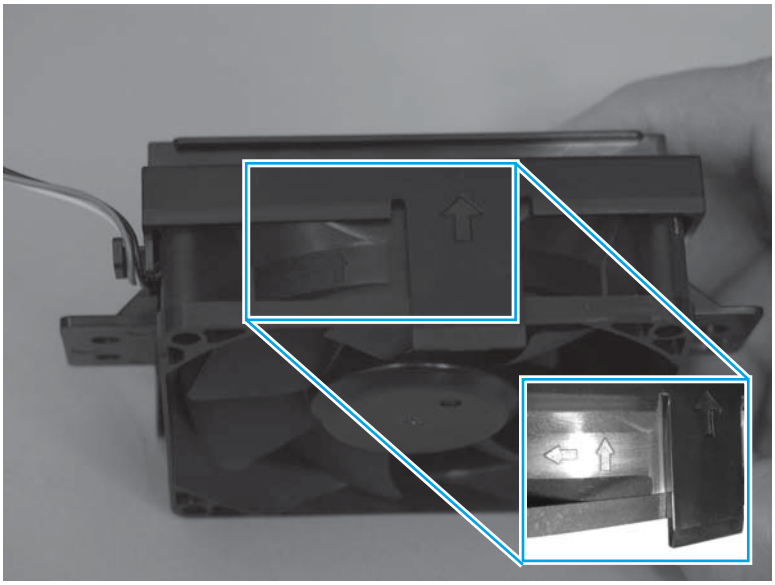
NOTE: The label in the center of the fan should be facing inward, toward the holder.

Figure 1-335 Reinstall the laser/scanner fan FM1 (1 of 3)



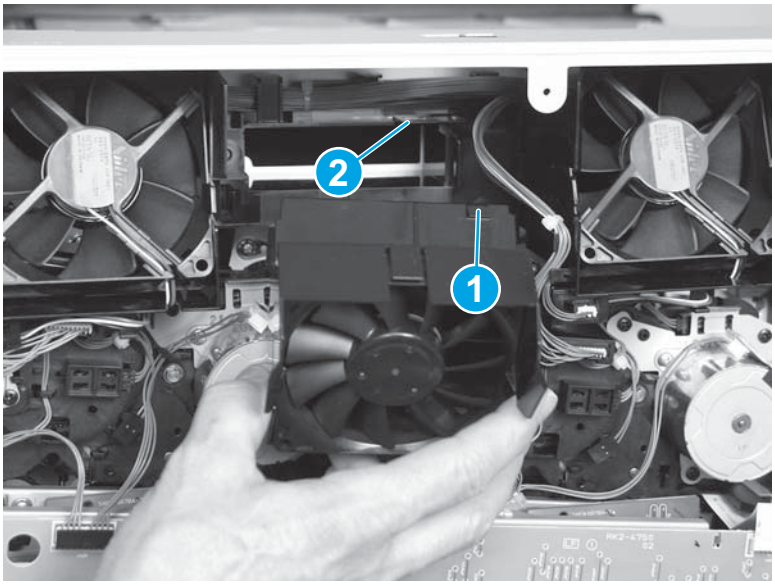
2. The embossed arrows on the fan must point into the chassis and to the left (toward the wire harness) when the fan and holder are installed in the product.

Figure 1-336 Reinstall the laser/scanner fan FM1 (2 of 3)



3. When reinstalling the laser/scanner fan assembly, make sure that the tabs (callout 1) on the holder are installed in the slots (callout 2) on the chassis.

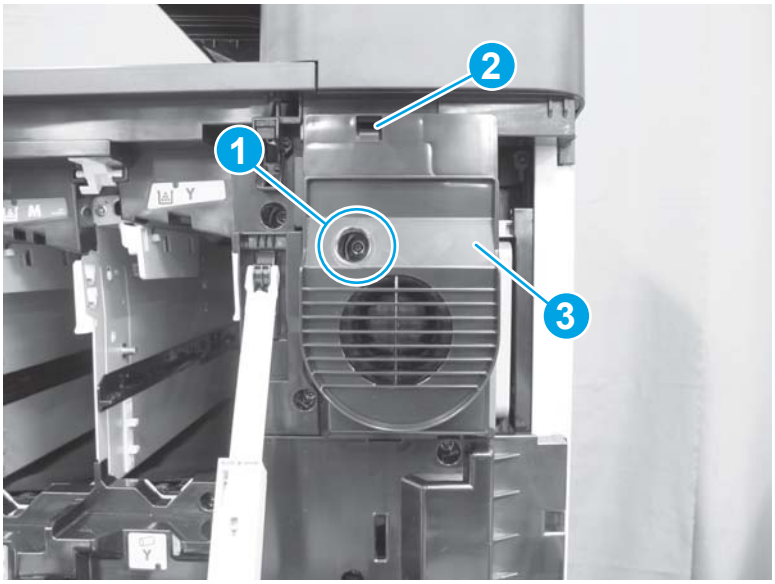
Figure 1-337 Reinstall the laser/scanner fan FM1 (3 of 3)



Delivery fan FM8

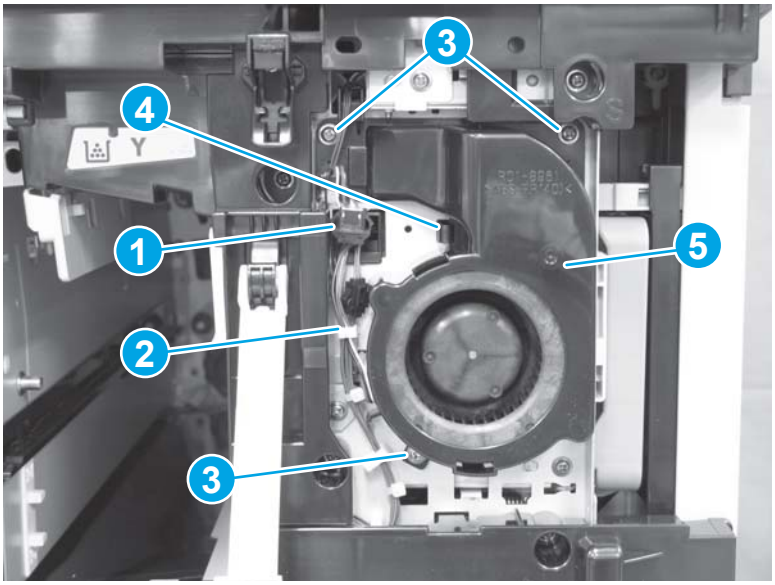
1. Open the front door.
2. Remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then remove the delivery fan cover (callout 3).

Figure 1-338 Remove the delivery fan FM8 (1 of 3)



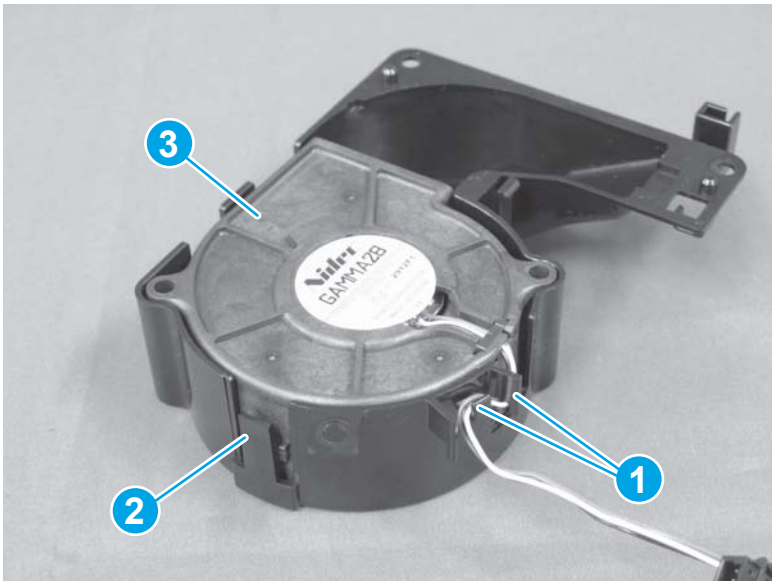
3. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), release the wire harness from the retainer (callout 2), remove three screws (callout 3), release one tab (callout 4), and then remove the delivery fan holder (callout 5).

Figure 1-339 Remove the delivery fan FM8 (2 of 3)



4. Release the wire harness from the guide (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then remove the fan (callout 3).

Figure 1-340 Remove the delivery fan FM8 (3 of 3)



Cartridge front area cooling fan FM7

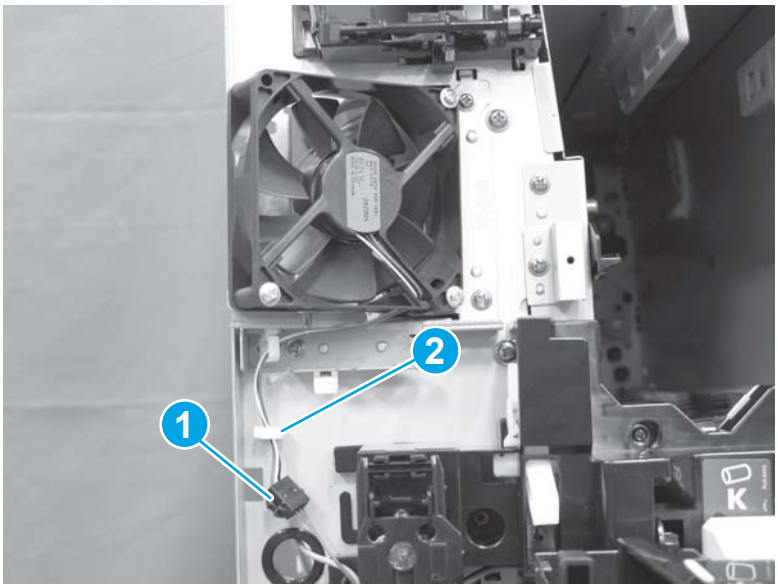
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Remove one of the following, depending upon product configuration:
  - Face-down bin. See Face-down bin on page 101.
  - Intermediate paper transport unit (IPTU). See IPTU assembly on page 437.
- Left rear cover. See Left rear cover on page 104.
- Front top cover. See Front top cover on page 115.
- Left front cover. See Left front cover on page 133.

Remove the cartridge front area cooling fan FM7

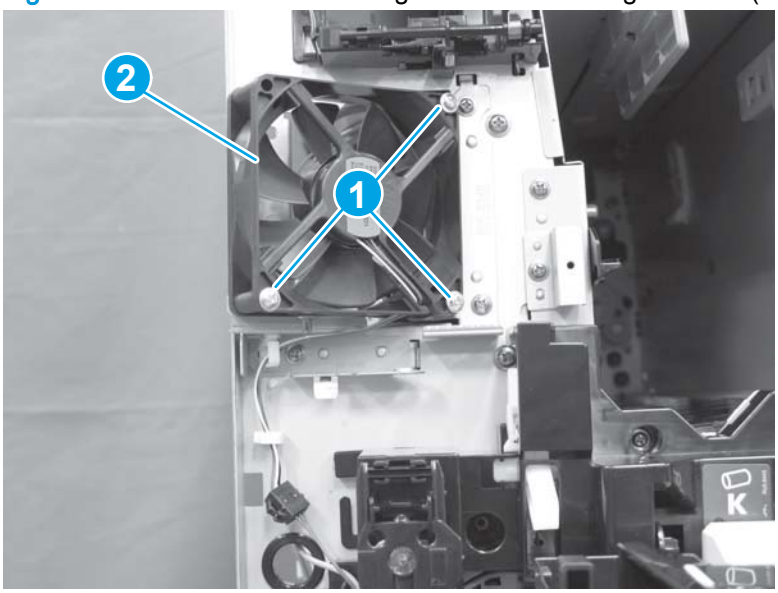
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then release the wire harness from the retainer (callout 2).

   Figure 1-341 Remove the cartridge front area cooling fan FM7 (1 of 2)

2. Remove three screws (callout 1), and then remove the fan (callout 2).

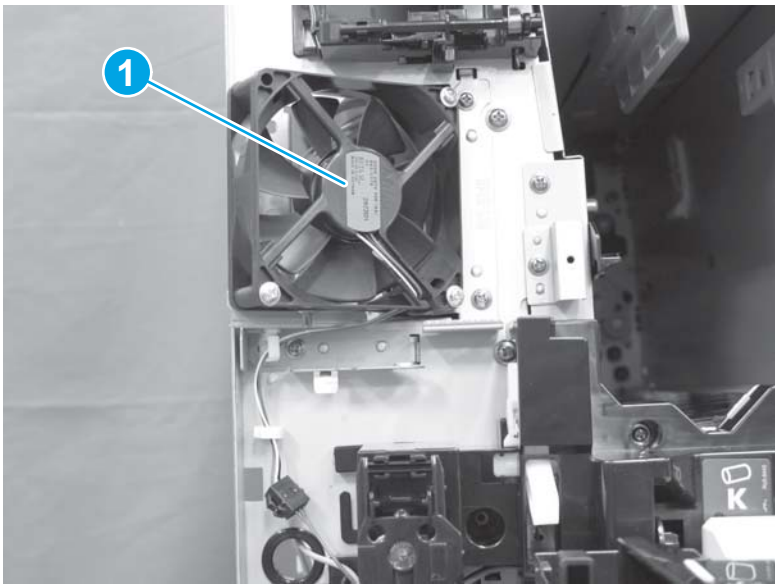
Figure 1-342 Remove the cartridge front area cooling fan FM7 (2 of 2)



Reinstall the cartridge front area cooling fan FM7

When the fan is reinstalled, make sure that the label (callout 1) on the fan is facing out and away from the chassis.

Figure 1-343 Reinstall the cartridge front area cooling fan FM7



Memory tag PCA

⚠ CAUTION: ESD sensitive assembly.

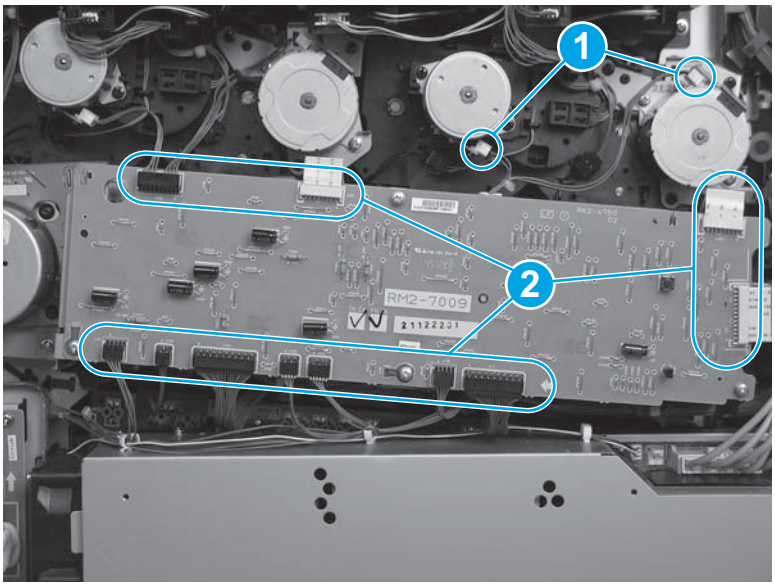
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Left rear cover. See Left rear cover on page 104.
- Rear cover. See Rear cover on page 143.

Remove the memory tag PCA

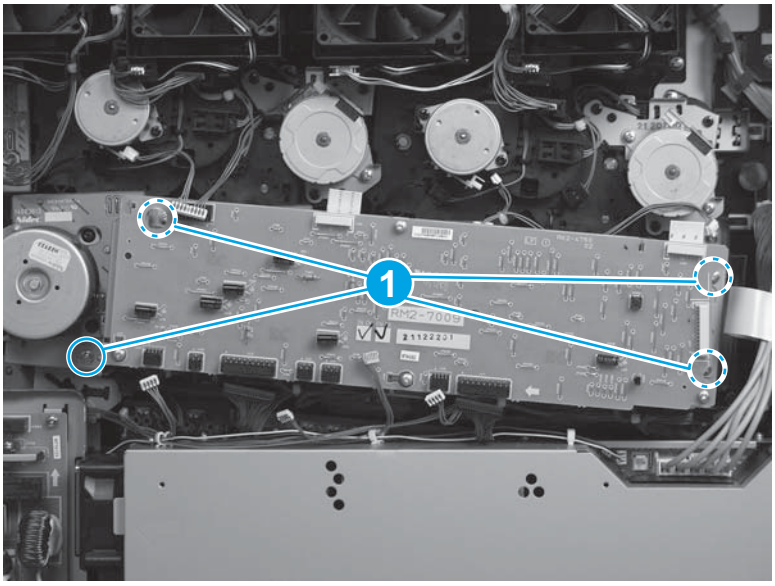
1. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1) on the motors above the memory tag PCA, and then disconnect 11 connectors (callout 2) on the memory tag PCA.

Figure 1-344 Remove the memory tag PCA (1 of 3)



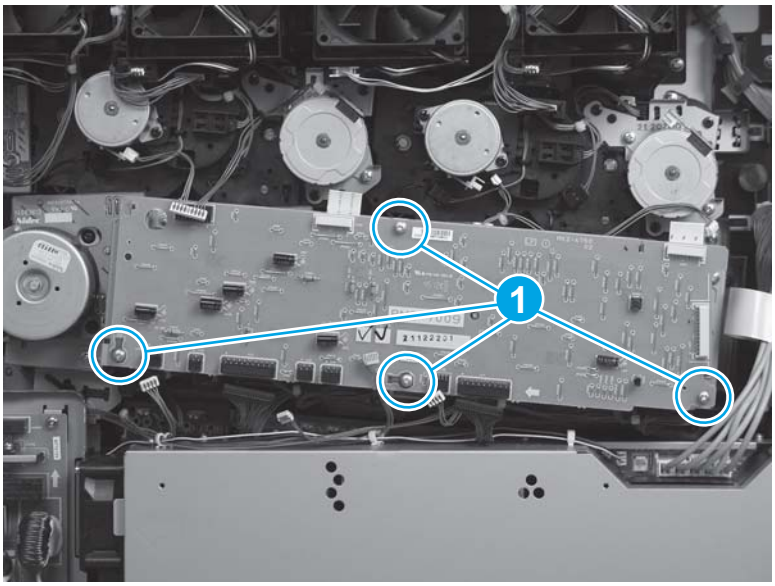
2. **If you are removing the memory tag PCA to gain access to parts behind it**, remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the memory tag PCA and sheet-metal bracket.

Figure 1-345 Remove the memory tag PCA (2 of 3)



3. **If you are replacing the memory tag PCA**, remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the memory tag PCA.

Figure 1-346 Remove the memory tag PCA (3 of 3)



Reinstall the memory tag PCA and sheet-metal bracket

Make sure that the tab (callout 1) on the sheet-metal bracket is installed in the slot (callout 2) on the chassis.

Figure 1-347 Reinstall the memory tag PCA

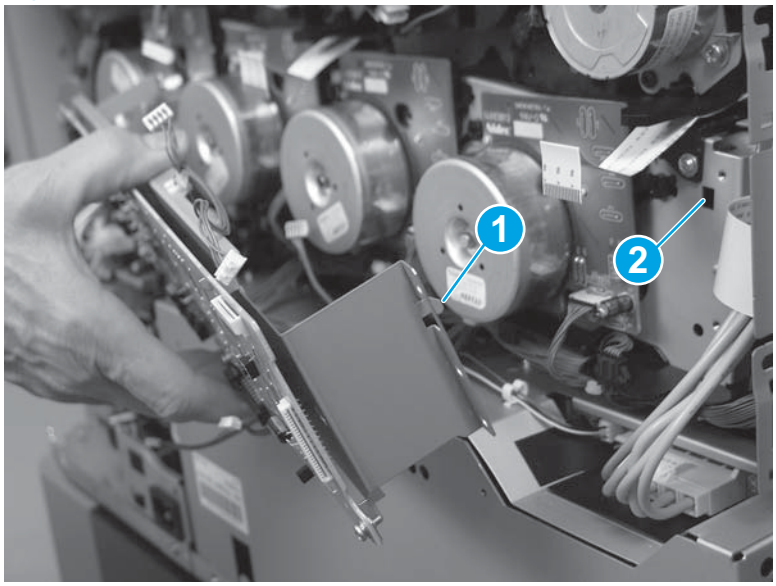


Image-drum motor

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

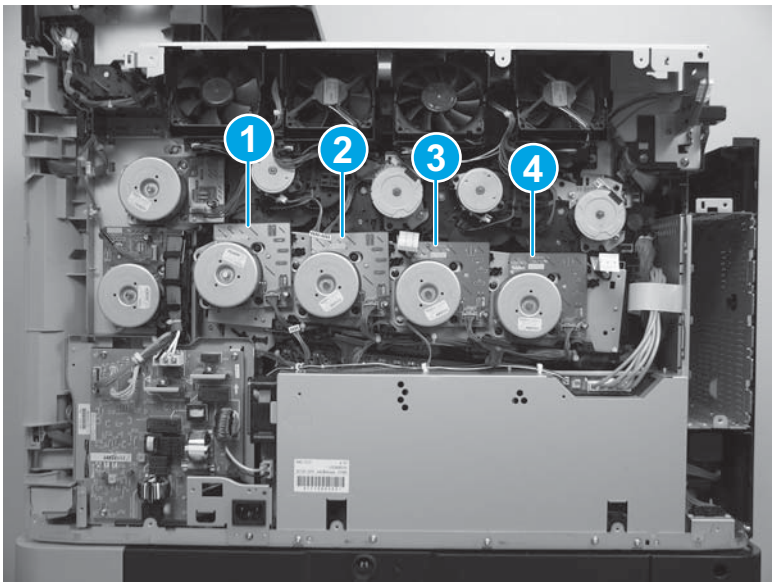
- Left rear cover. See Left rear cover on page 104.
- Rear cover. See Rear cover on page 143.

Remove the image-drum motor

NOTE: All four motors are the same part number.

1. Locate the image-drum motors: yellow (callout 1), magenta (callout 2), cyan (callout 3), and black (callout 4).

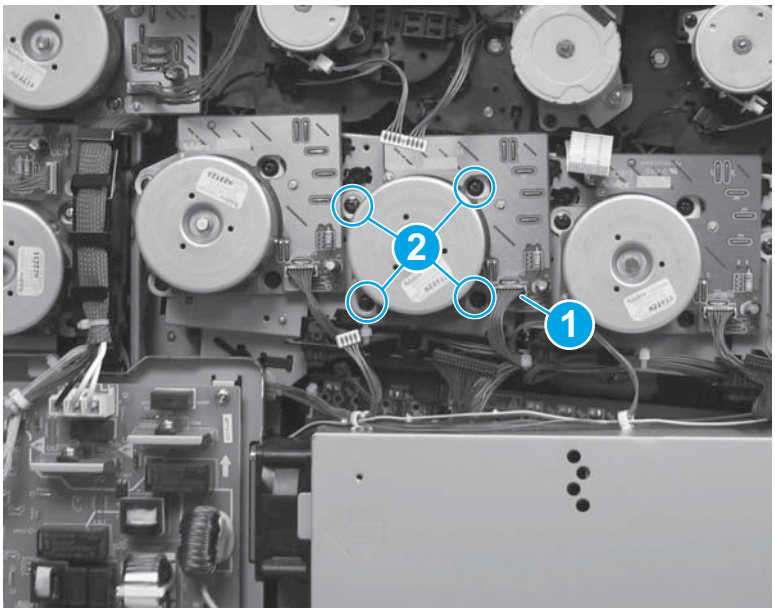
Figure 1-348 Remove the image-drum motor (1 of 2)



2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove four screws (callout 2), and then remove the image-drum motor

NOTE: The following figure shows the magenta image-drum motor. The removal procedure is the same for all four motors.

Figure 1-349 Remove the image-drum motor (2 of 2)



Fuser power supply

CAUTION: ESD sensitive assembly.

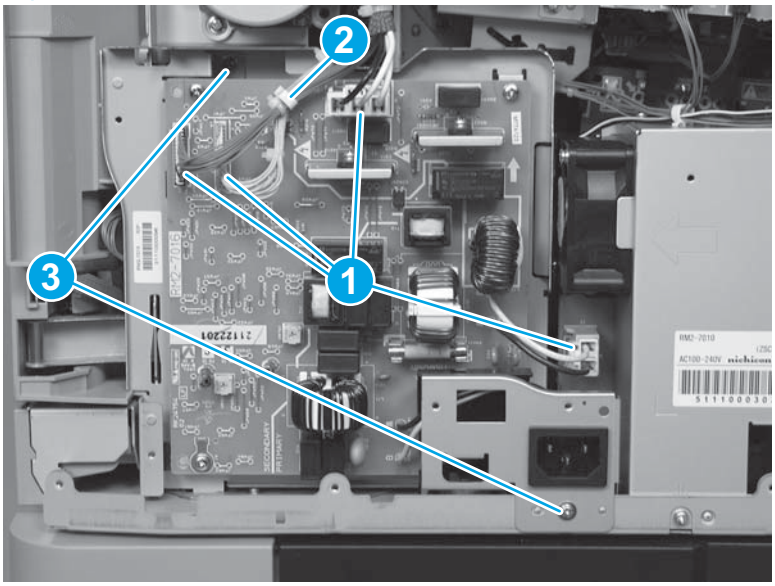
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Left rear cover. See Left rear cover on page 104.
- Rear cover. See Rear cover on page 143.

Remove the fuser power supply

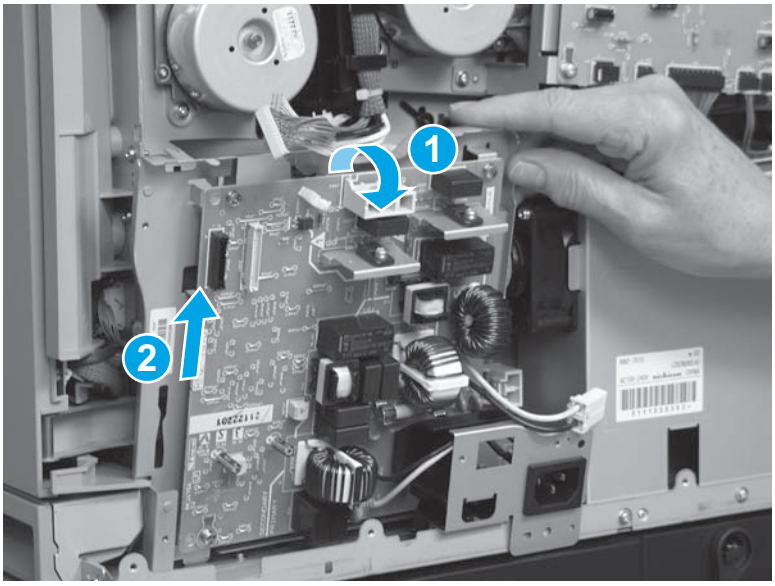
1. Disconnect four connectors (callout 1), release the wire harnesses from one retainer (callout 2), and then remove two screws (callout 3).

Figure 1-350 Remove the fuser power supply (1 of 2)



2. Rotate the top of the fuser power supply away from the chassis (callout 1), and then lift it up (callout 2) to remove it.

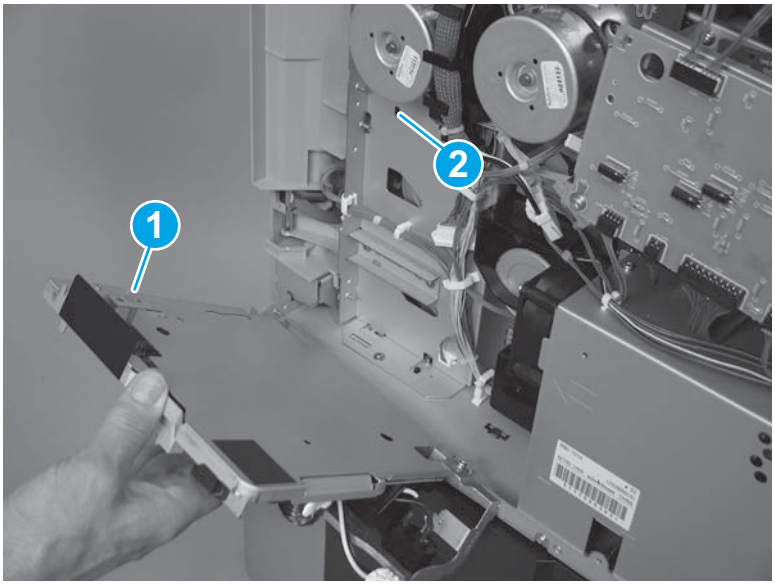
Figure 1-351 Remove the fuser power supply (2 of 2)



Reinstall the fuser power supply

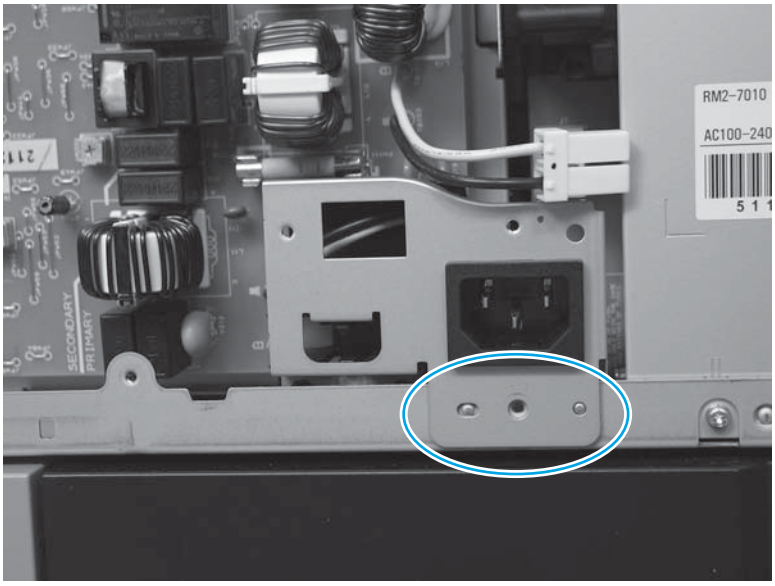
1. Make sure that the tab (callout 1) on the fuser power supply is installed in the slot (callout 2) on the chassis.

Figure 1-352 Reinstall the fuser power supply (1 of 2)



2. Make sure that the sheet-metal tab below the power connector is positioned as shown below. The tab should be outside of the sheet-metal frame.

Figure 1-353 Reinstall the fuser power supply (2 of 2)



Primary transfer-roller disengagement motor

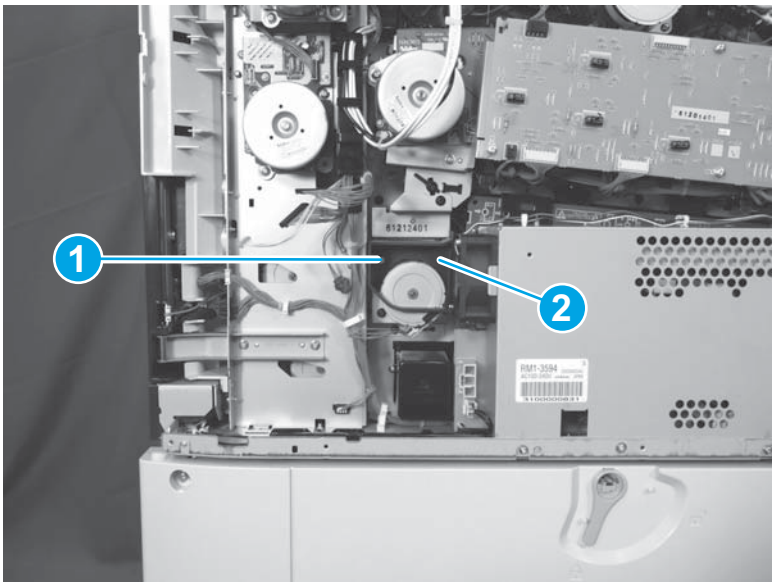
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Left rear cover. See Left rear cover on page 104.
- Rear cover. See Rear cover on page 143.
- Fuser power supply. See Fuser power supply on page 235.

Remove the primary transfer-roller disengagement motor

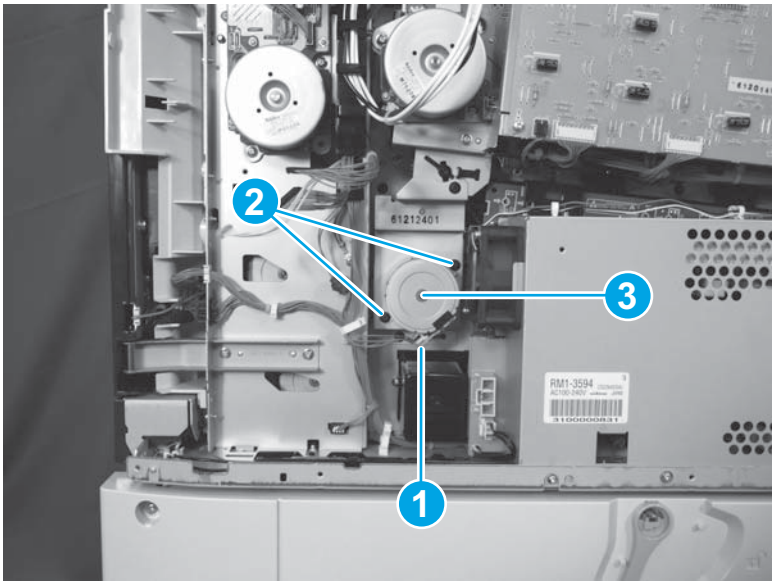
1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the motor cover (callout 2).

Figure 1-354 Remove the primary transfer-roller disengagement motor (1 of 2)



2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the primary-transfer roller disengagement motor (callout 3).

Figure 1-355 Remove the primary transfer-roller disengagement motor (2 of 2)



Intermediate transfer belt (ITB) alienation-drive assembly

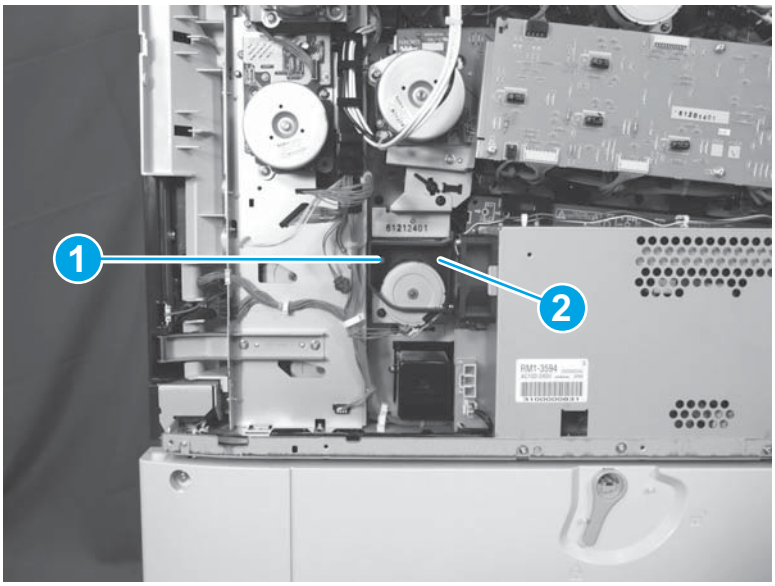
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Left rear cover. See Left rear cover on page 104.
- Rear cover. See Rear cover on page 143.
- Fuser power supply. See Fuser power supply on page 235.

Remove the ITB alienation-drive assembly

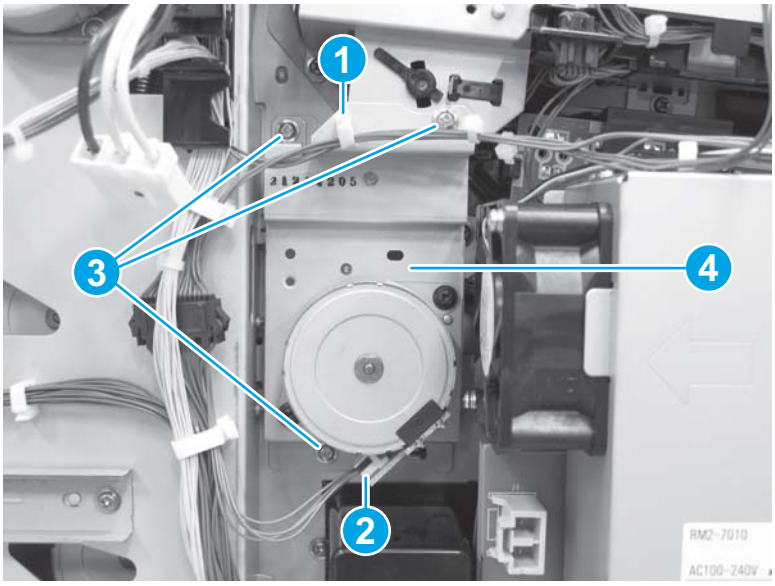
1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the motor cover (callout 2).

Figure 1-356 Remove the ITB alienation drive assembly (1 of 2)



2. Release one retainer (callout 1), disconnect one connector (callout 2). Remove three screws (callout 3), and then remove the ITB alienation drive assembly (callout 4).

Figure 1-357 Remove the ITB alienation drive assembly (2 of 2)



Fuser motor

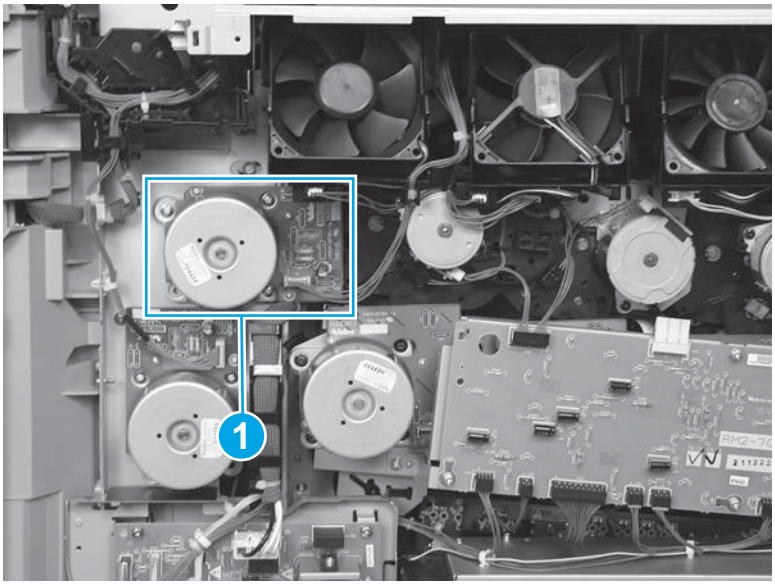
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Left rear cover. See Left rear cover on page 104.
- Rear cover. See Rear cover on page 143.

Remove the fuser motor

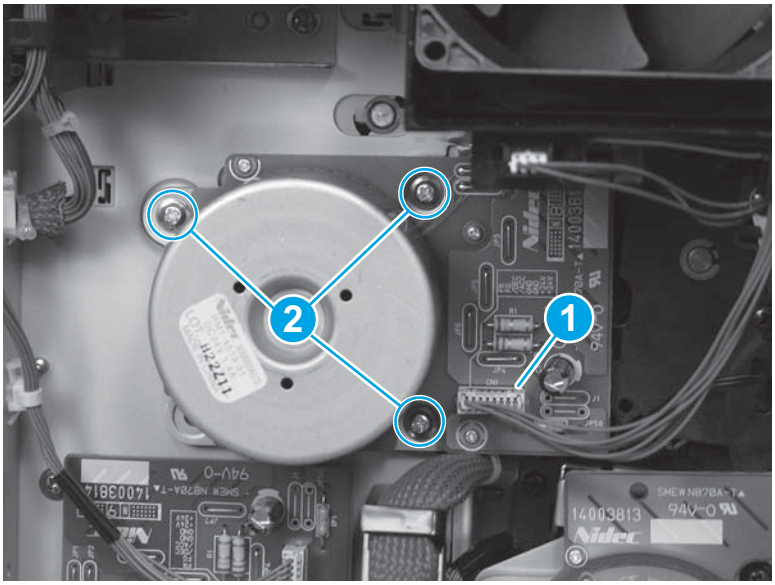
1. Locate the fuser motor (callout 1).

Figure 1-358 Remove the fuser motor (1 of 2)



2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove three screws (callout 2), and then remove the fuser motor.

Figure 1-359 Remove the fuser motor (2 of 2)



Intermediate transfer belt (ITB) motor

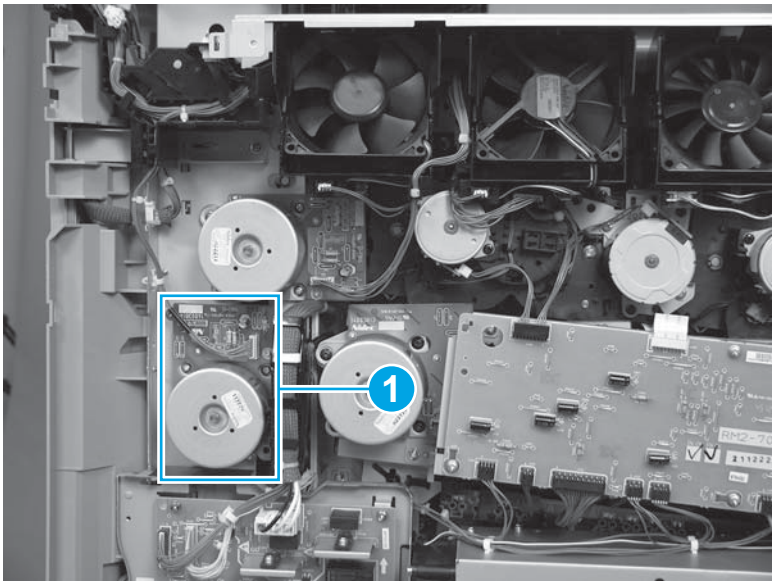
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Left rear cover. See Left rear cover on page 104.
- Rear cover. See Rear cover on page 143.

Remove the ITB motor

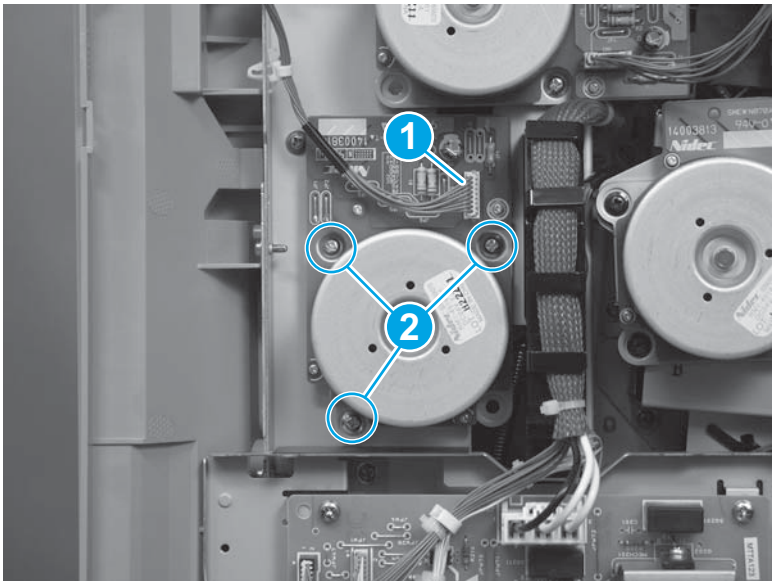
1. Locate the ITB motor (callout 1).

Figure 1-360 Remove the ITB motor (1 of 2)



2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove three screws (callout 2), and then remove the ITB motor.

Figure 1-361 Remove the ITB motor (2 of 2)



Toner-cartridge feed motor (black)

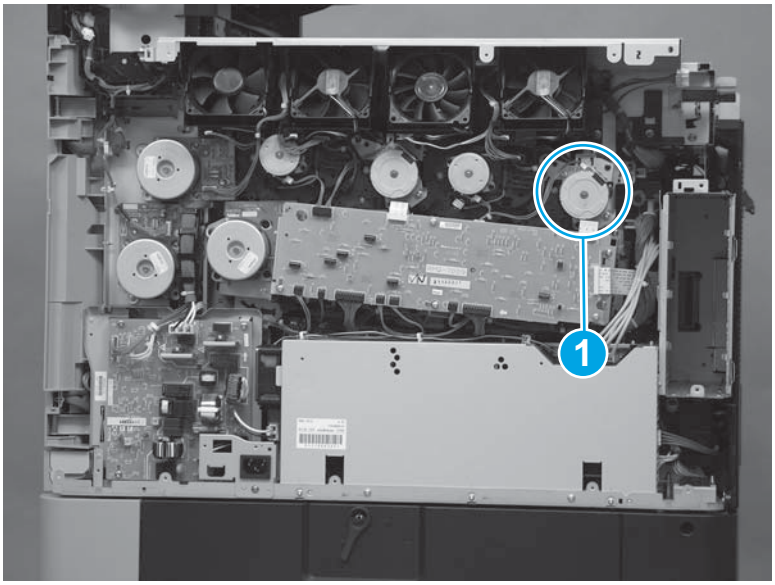
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Left rear cover. See Left rear cover on page 104.
- Rear cover. See Rear cover on page 143.

Remove the toner-cartridge feed motor (black)

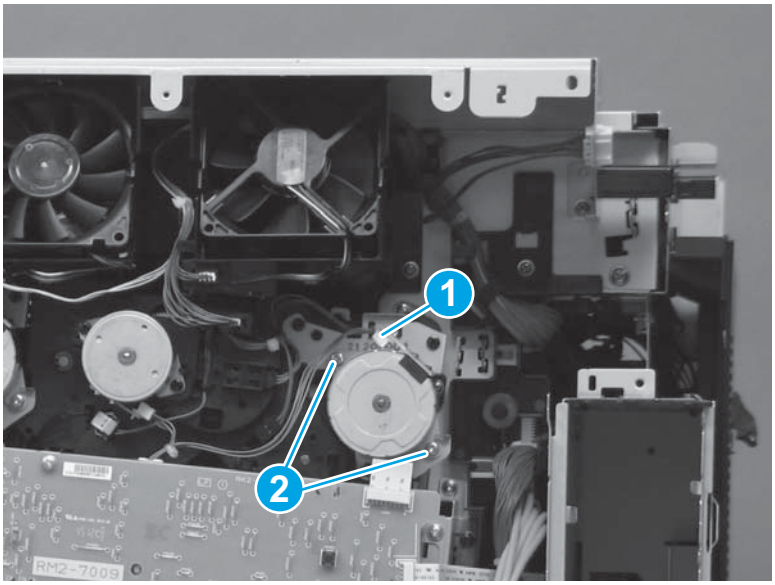
1. Locate the toner-cartridge feed motor (black; callout 1).

   Figure 1-362 Remove the toner-cartridge feed motor (black; 1 of 2)

2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the toner-cartridge feed motor (black).

   Figure 1-363 Remove the toner-cartridge feed motor (black; 2 of 2)

Toner-cartridge feed motor (yellow, magenta, and cyan)

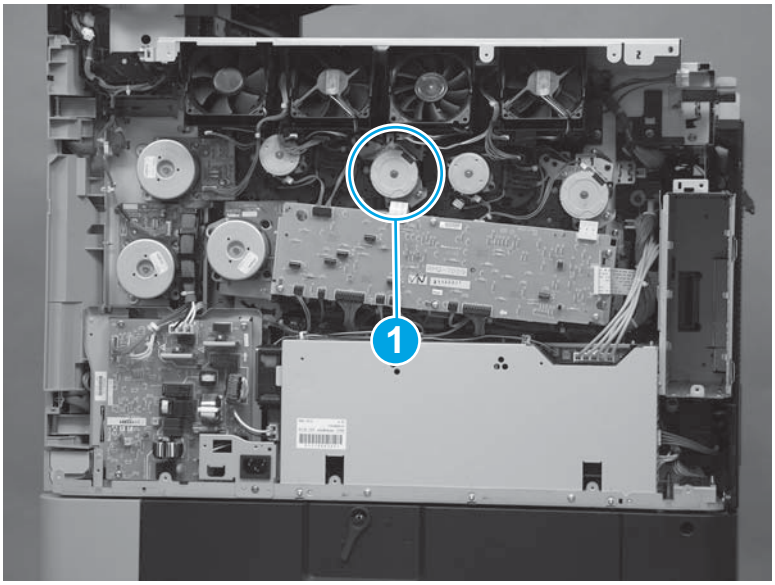
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Left rear cover. See Left rear cover on page 104.
- Rear cover. See Rear cover on page 143.

Remove the toner-cartridge feed motor (yellow, magenta, and cyan)

1. Locate the toner-cartridge feed motor (yellow, magenta, and cyan; callout 1).

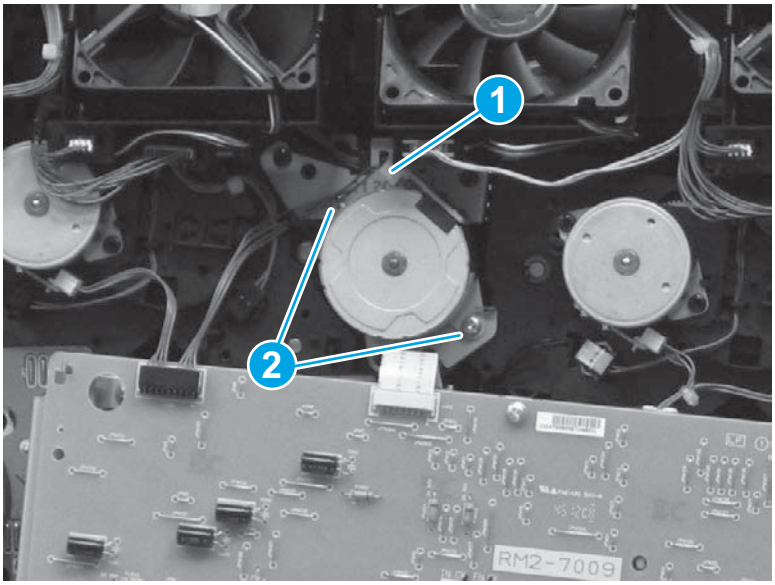
Figure 1-364 Remove the toner-cartridge feed motor (yellow, magenta, and cyan; 1 of 2)



2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the toner-cartridge feed motor (yellow, magenta, and cyan).

Reinstallation tip Connect the connector (callout 1) before reinstalling the screws (callout 2).

Figure 1-365 Remove the toner-cartridge feed motor (yellow, magenta, and cyan; 2 of 2)



Environmental sensor

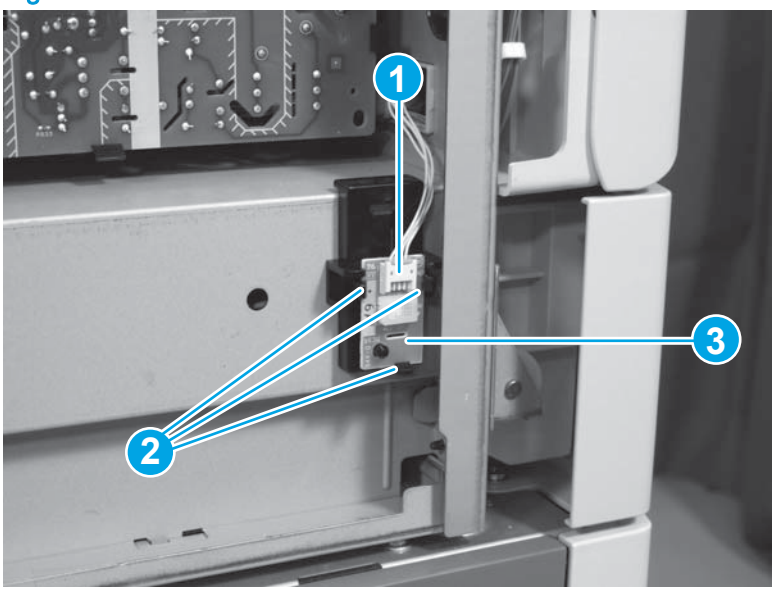
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Remove one of the following, depending upon product configuration:
  - Face-down bin. See Face-down bin on page 101.
  - Intermediate paper transport unit (IPTU). See IPTU assembly on page 437.
- Left rear cover. See Left rear cover on page 104.
- Left cover. See Left cover on page 118.

Remove the environmental sensor

Disconnect one connector (callout 1). Release three tabs (callout 2), and then remove the environmental sensor (callout 3).

Figure 1-366 Remove the environmental sensor



Interconnect PCA (M855)

CAUTION: ESD sensitive assembly.

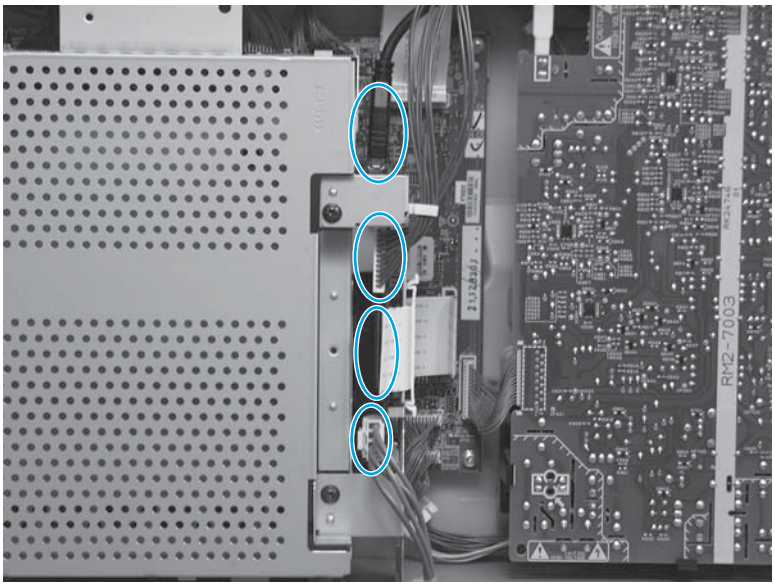
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Formatter. See Formatter on page 23.
- Remove one of the following, depending upon product configuration:
  - Face-down bin. See Face-down bin on page 101.
  - Intermediate paper transport unit (IPTU). See IPTU assembly on page 437.
- Left rear cover. See Left rear cover on page 104.
- Left cover. See Left cover on page 118.

Remove the interconnect PCA (M855)

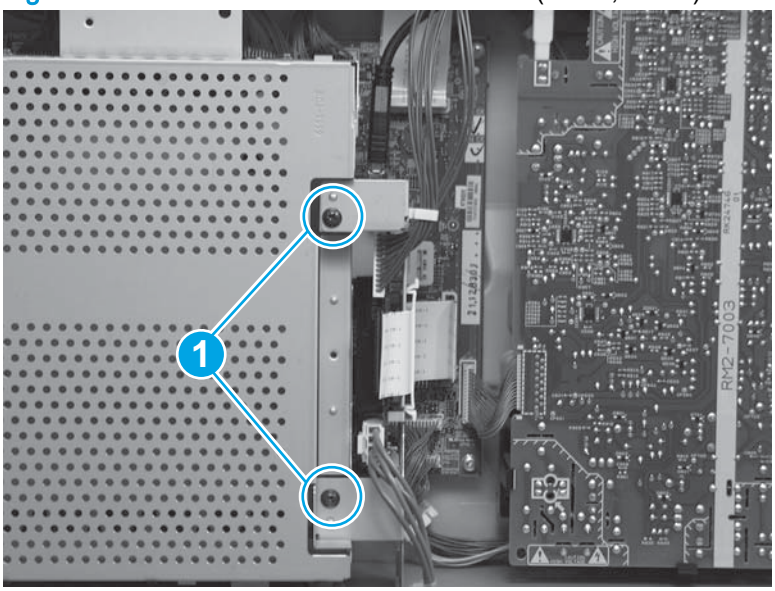
1. Disconnect four connectors.

Figure 1-367 Remove the interconnect PCA (M855; 1 of 4)



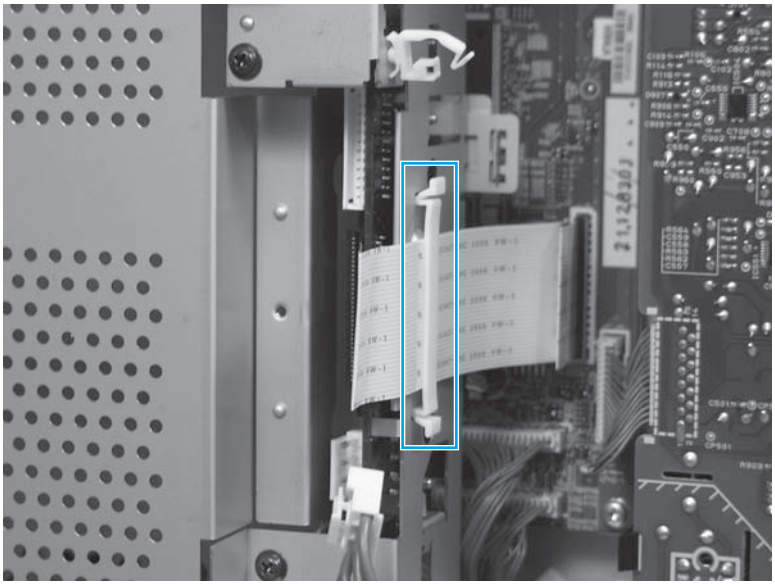
2. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-368 Remove the interconnect PCA (M855; 2 of 4)



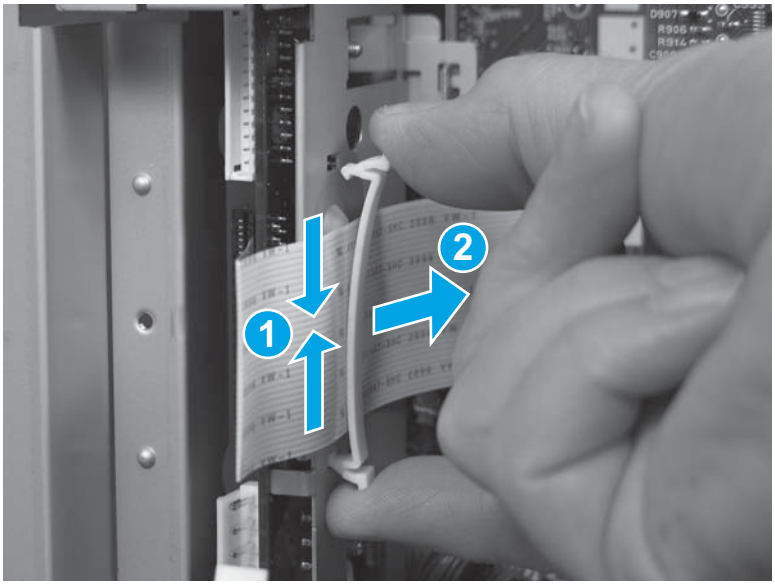
3. Locate one retainer.

Figure 1-369 Remove the interconnect PCA (M855; 3 of 4)



4. Squeeze the ends of the retainer together (callout 1) to release it, and then remove the retainer (callout 2).

Figure 1-370 Remove the interconnect PCA (M855; 4 of 4)

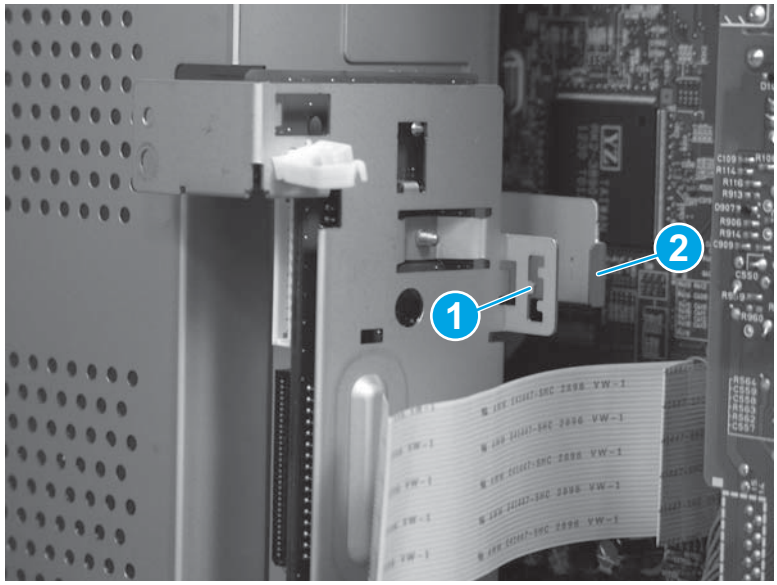


Reinstall the interconnect PCA (M855)

Make sure that the slot (callout 1) on the interconnect PCA is installed over the tab (callout 2) on the chassis.

NOTE: If the formatter was not removed prior to removing the interconnect PCA, remove it before attempting to reinstall the PCA.

Figure 1-371 Reinstall the interconnect PCA (M855)



Interconnect PCA (M880)

CAUTION: ESD sensitive assembly.

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

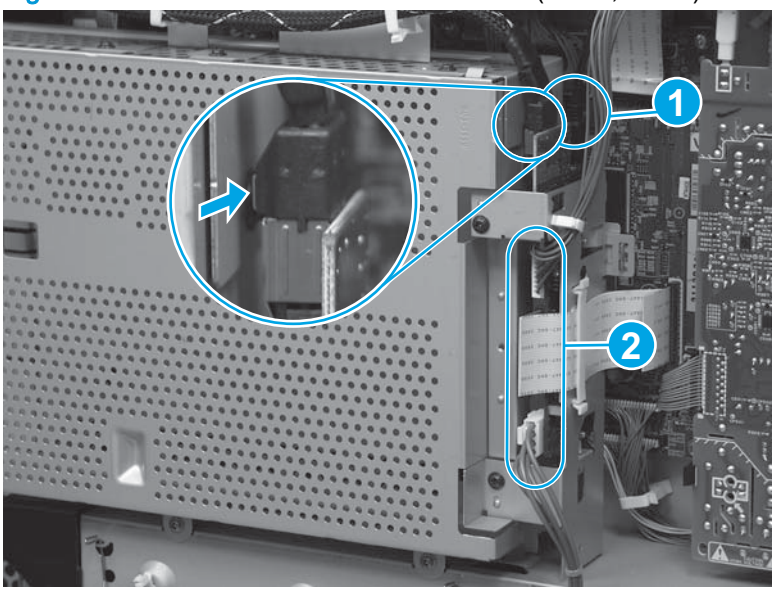
- Formatter. See Formatter on page 23.
- Remove one of the following, depending upon product configuration:
  - Face-down bin. See Face-down bin on page 101.
  - Intermediate paper transport unit (IPTU). See IPTU assembly on page 437.
- Left rear cover. See Left rear cover on page 104.
- Left cover. See Left cover on page 118.

Remove the interconnect PCA (M880)

1. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1) on top of the interconnect PCA and three connectors (callout 2) on the side.

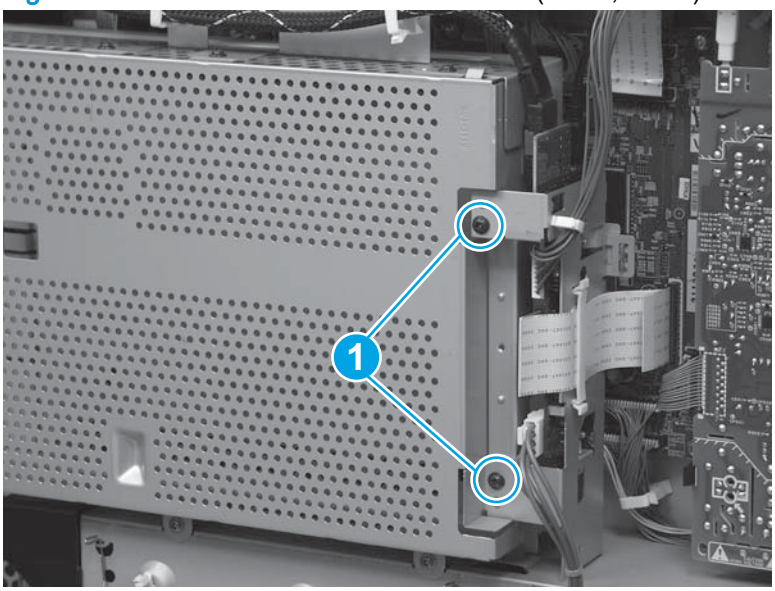
NOTE: Use a small flat-blade screwdriver to press the tab and release one of the top connectors as shown below.

Figure 1-372 Remove the interconnect PCA (M880; 1 of 4)



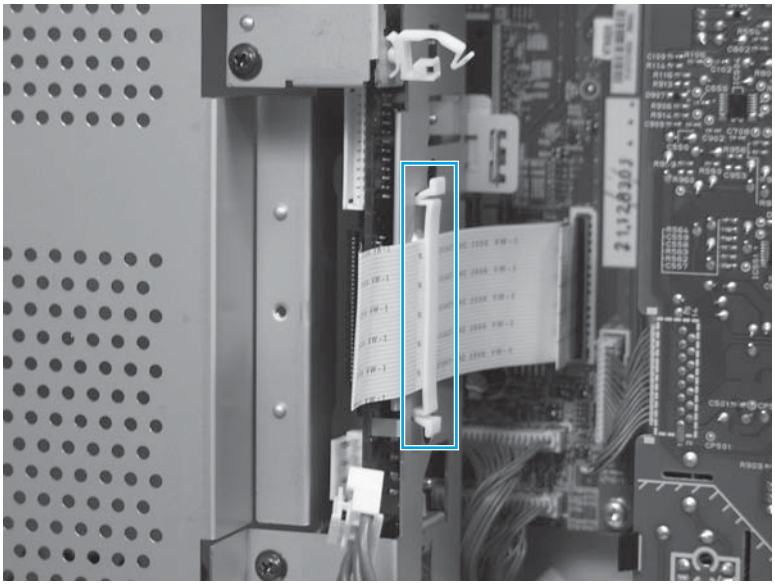
2. Remove two screws.

Figure 1-373 Remove the interconnect PCA (M880; 2 of 4)



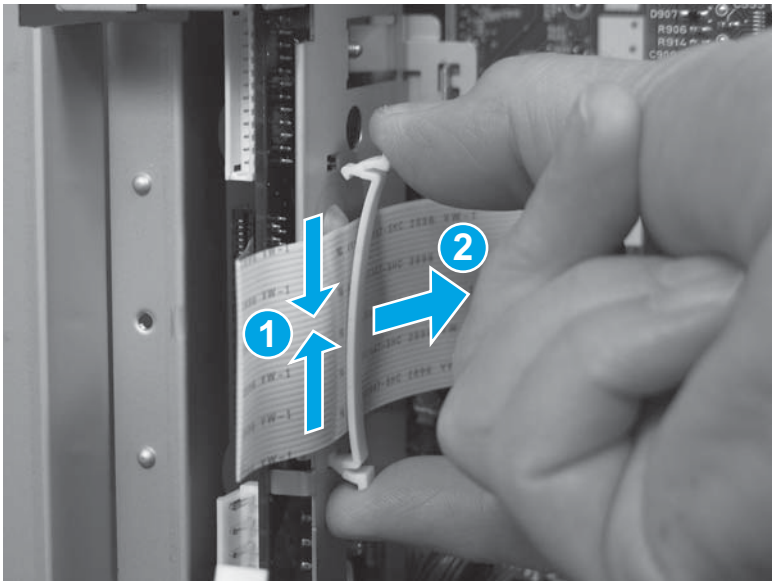
3. Locate one retainer.

Figure 1-374 Remove the interconnect PCA (M880; 3 of 4)



4. Squeeze the ends of the retainer together (callout 1) to release it, and then remove the retainer (callout 2).

Figure 1-375 Remove the interconnect PCA (M880; 4 of 4)

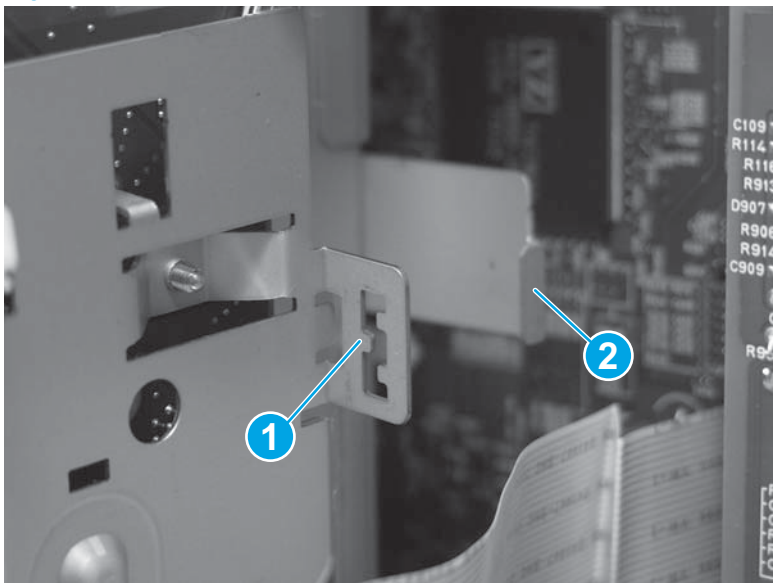


Reinstall the interconnect PCA (M880)

Make sure that the slot (callout 1) on the interconnect PCA is installed over the tab (callout 2) on the chassis.

NOTE: If the formatter was not removed prior to removing the interconnect PCA, remove it before attempting to reinstall the PCA.

Figure 1-376 Reinstall the interconnect PCA (M880)



Formatter case

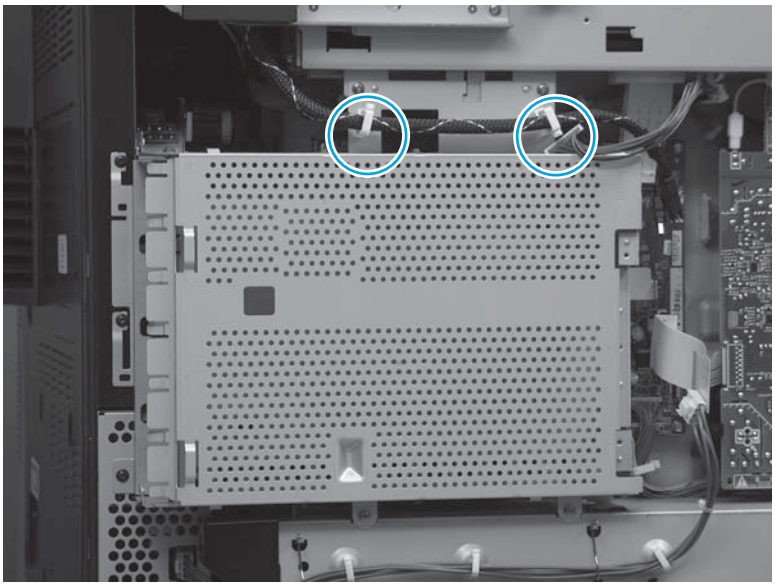
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Remove one of the following, depending upon product configuration:
  - Face-down bin. See Face-down bin on page 101.
  - Intermediate paper transport unit (IPTU). See IPTU assembly on page 437.
- Left rear cover. See Left rear cover on page 104.
- Left cover. See Left cover on page 118.
- Interconnect PCA (M855). See Interconnect PCA (M855) on page 248.
- Interconnect PCA (M880). See Interconnect PCA (M880) on page 252.

Remove the formatter case

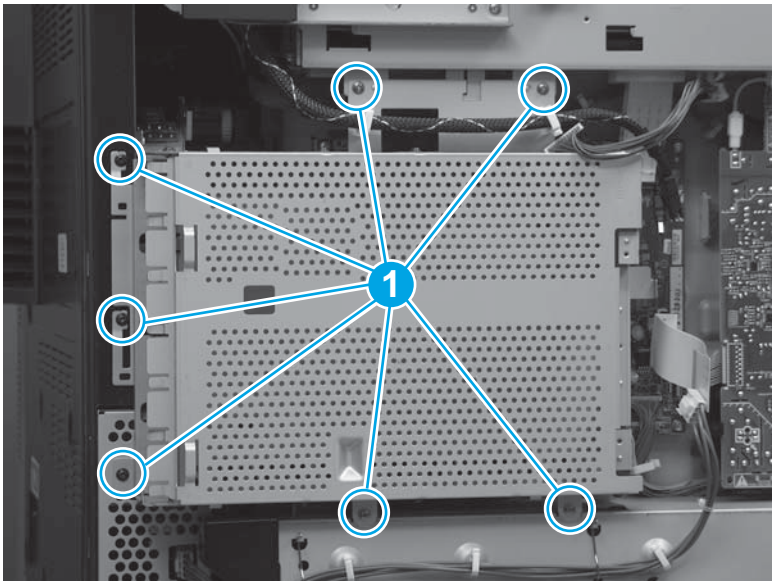
1. **M880 only**: Remove the cable from two retainers.

   Figure 1-377 Remove the formatter case (1 of 2)

2. Remove seven screws (callout 1), and then remove the formatter case.

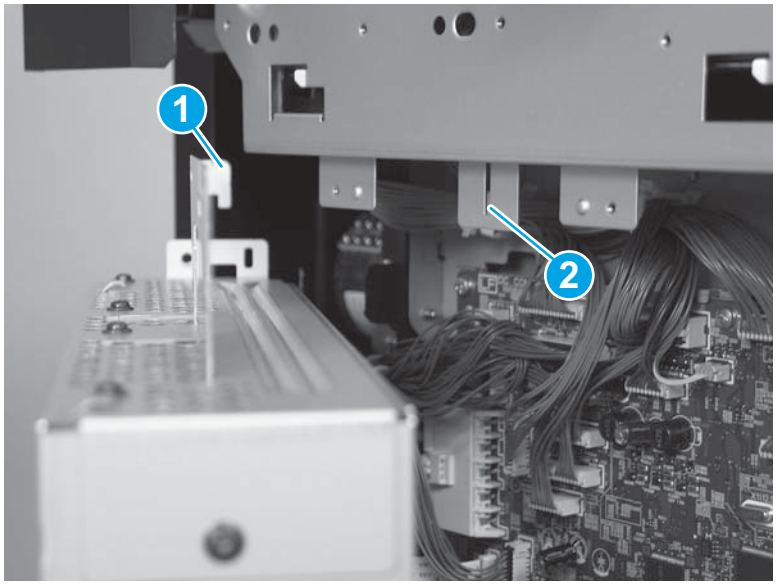
Figure 1-378 Remove the formatter case (2 of 2)



Reinstall the formatter case

Make sure that the tab (callout 1) on the formatter case is installed in the slot (callout 2) on the chassis.

Figure 1-379 Reinstall the formatter case



Formatter, formatter case, and interconnect board (ICB)

NOTE: This procedure can be used to gain access to the DC controller when removing the main drive assembly.

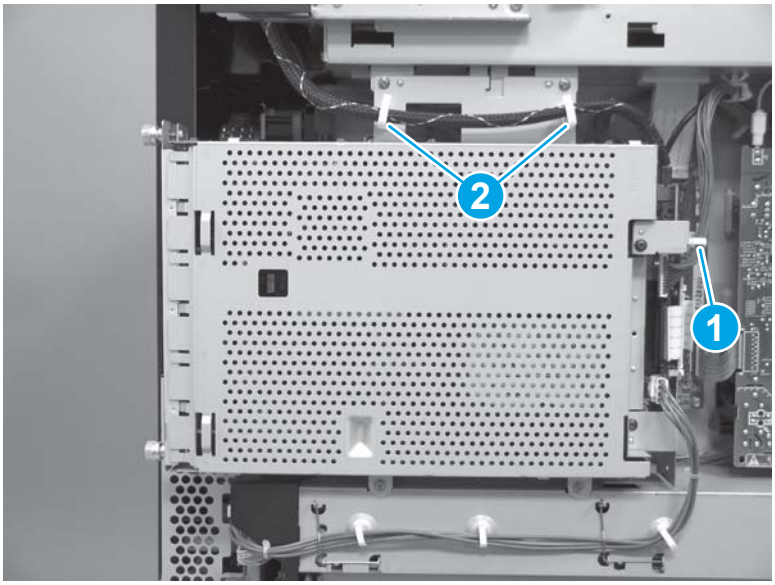
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Remove one of the following, depending upon product configuration:
  - Face-down bin. See Face-down bin on page 101.
  - Intermediate paper transport unit (IPTU). See IPTU assembly on page 437.
- Left rear cover. See Left rear cover on page 104.
- Left cover. See Left cover on page 118.

Remove the formatter, formatter case, and ICB

1. Remove the wire harness from one retainer (callout 1). **M880 only**: Remove the cable from two retainers (callout 2).

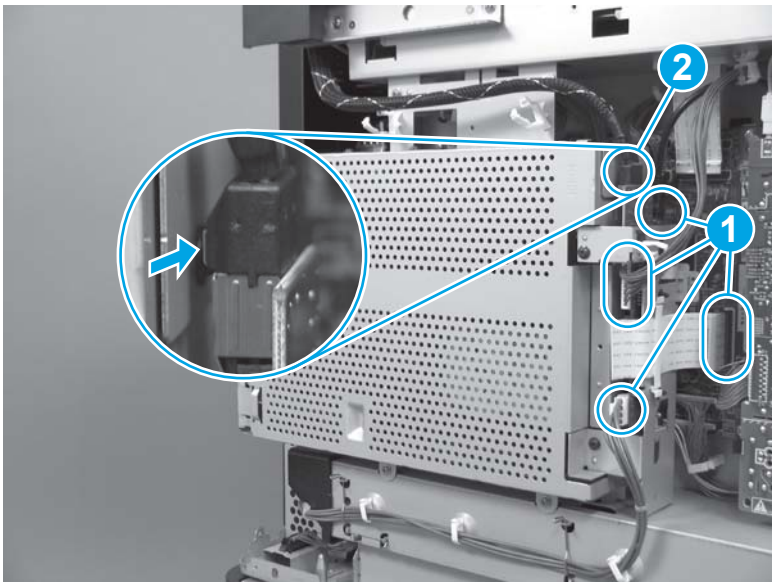
Figure 1-380 Remove the formatter, formatter case, and ICB (1 of 4)



2. Disconnect four connectors (callout 1). **M880 only**: Disconnect one additional connector (callout 2) by pressing one tab while pulling up gently on the cable.

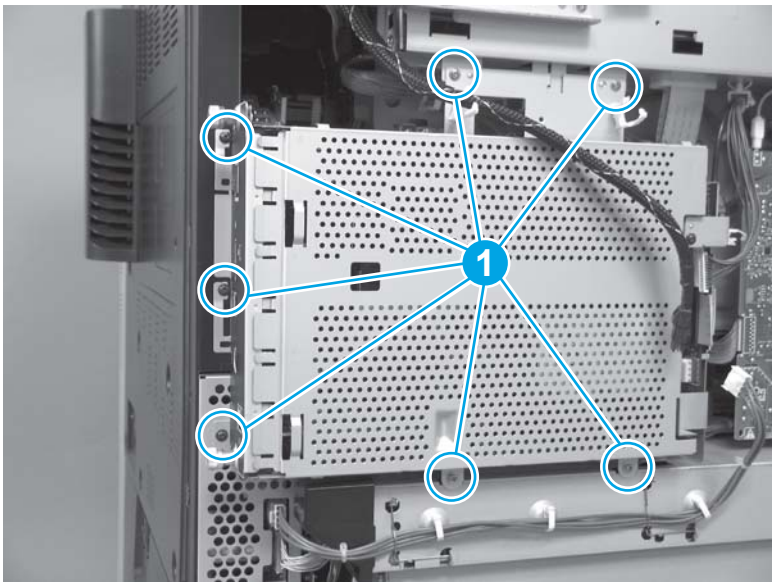
NOTE: Use a small flat-blade screwdriver to press the tab and release the connector (callout 2).

Figure 1-381 Remove the formatter, formatter case, and ICB (2 of 4)



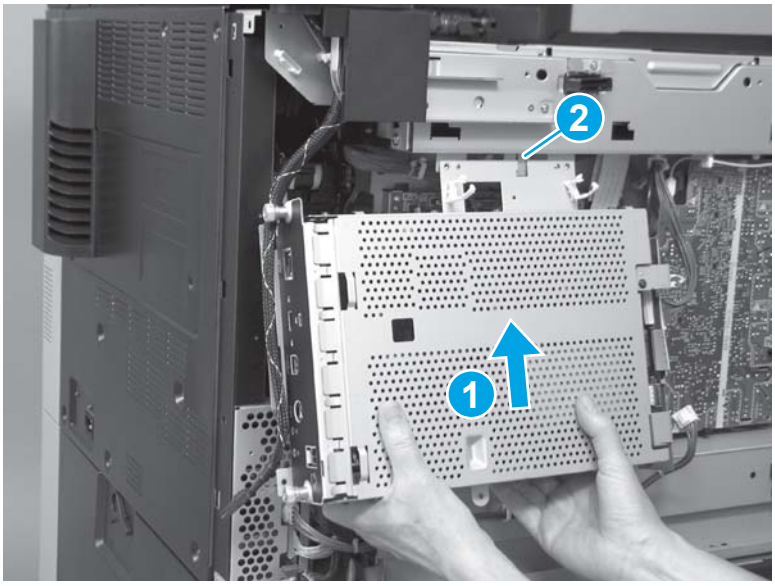
3. Remove seven screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-382 Remove the formatter, formatter case, and ICB (3 of 4)



4. Lift up (callout 1) to release one hook (callout 2), and then remove the formatter, formatter case, and ICB.

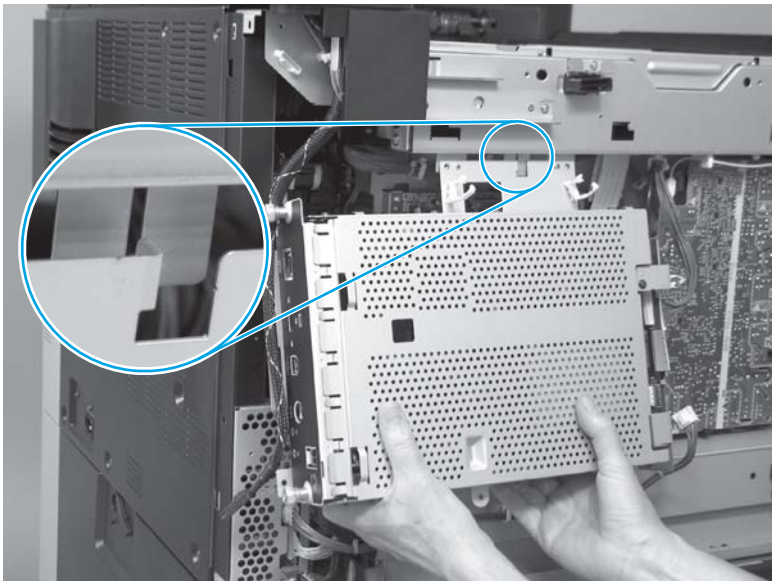
Figure 1-383 Remove the formatter, formatter case, and ICB (4 of 4)



Reinstall the formatter, formatter case, and ICB

Make sure that the hook on the formatter case is installed in the slot on the chassis.

Figure 1-384 Reinstall the formatter, formatter case, and ICB



High-voltage power supply (HVPS) B

⚠ CAUTION: ESD sensitive assembly.

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

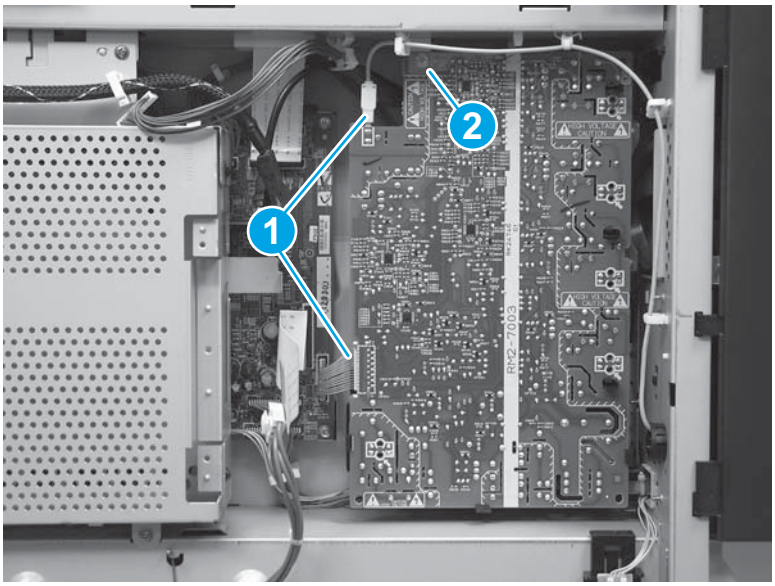
- Remove one of the following, depending upon product configuration:
  - Face-down bin. See Face-down bin on page 101.
  - Intermediate paper transport unit (IPTU). See IPTU assembly on page 437.
- Left rear cover. See Left rear cover on page 104.
- Left cover. See Left cover on page 118.

Remove the HVPS B

1. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

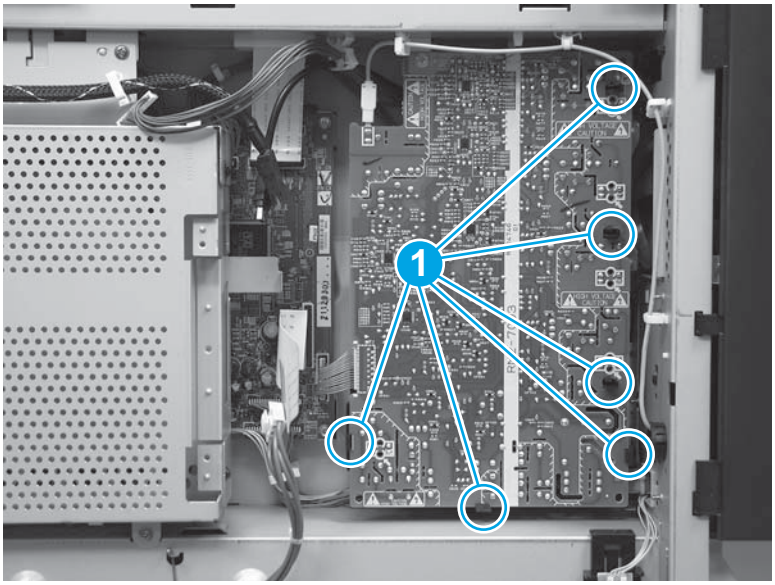
⚠ CAUTION: Use care when disconnecting the white plastic connector at the top of the PCA. It can be easily damaged.

Figure 1-385 Remove the HVPS B (1 of 2)



2. Release six tabs (callout 1) and then remove the HVPS B.

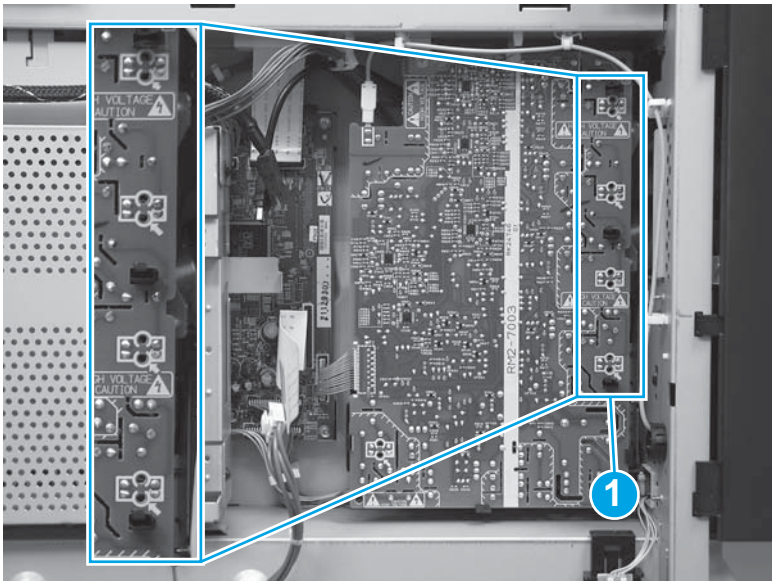
Figure 1-386 Remove the HVPS B (2 of 2)



Reinstall the HVPS B

1. After the HVPS B is installed and all tabs are in place, locate the circular locator windows (callout 1) along the side of the HVPS B.

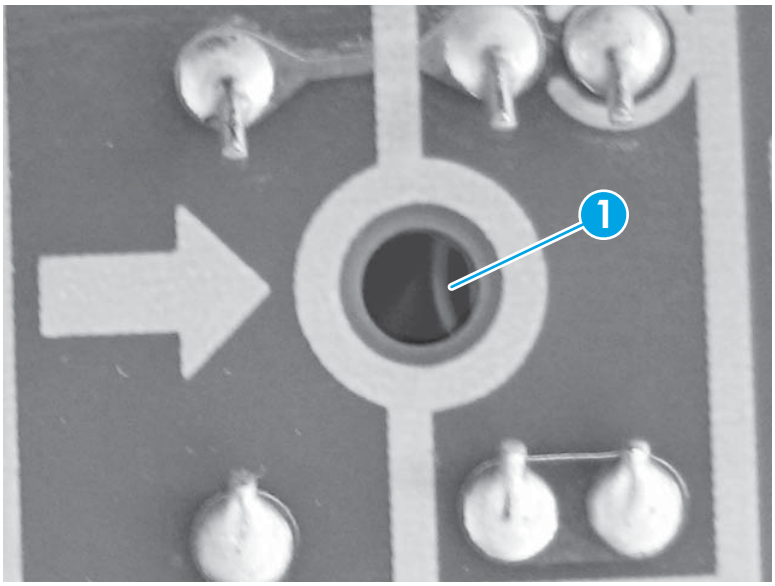
Figure 1-387 Reinstall the HVPS B (1 of 2)



2. Make sure that the contact spring (callout 1) can be seen through the eight locator windows. If the spring cannot be seen, remove and reinstall the HVPS B.

NOTE: No error message is displayed on the control panel if these springs are positioned incorrectly. Poor print quality will be the only indicator.

Figure 1-388 Reinstall the HVPS B (2 of 2)



DC controller PCA

CAUTION: ESD sensitive assembly.

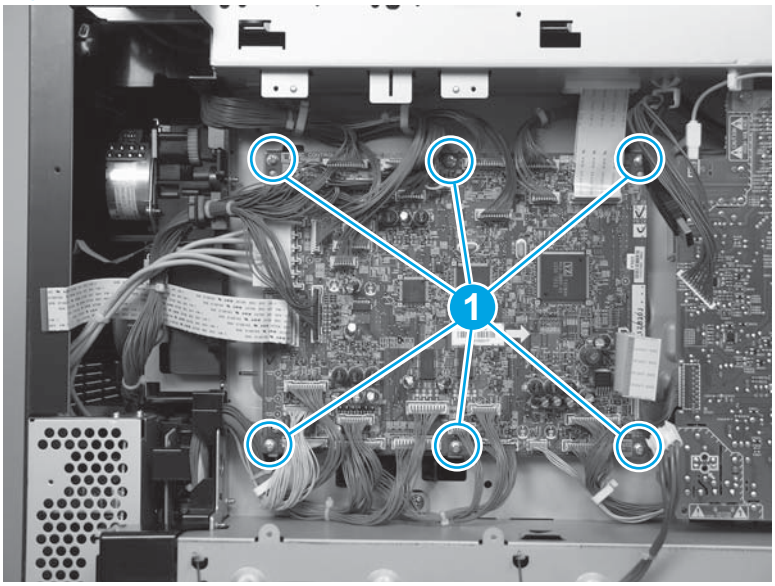
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Remove one of the following, depending upon product configuration:
  - Face-down bin. See Face-down bin on page 101.
  - Intermediate paper transport unit (IPTU). See IPTU assembly on page 437.
- Left rear cover. See Left rear cover on page 104.
- Left cover. See Left cover on page 118.
- Formatter case. See Formatter case on page 255.

Remove the DC controller PCA

Disconnect all of the connectors on the DC controller PCA. Remove six screws (callout 1), and then remove the DC controller PCA.

Figure 1-389 Remove the DC controller PCA



Color-plane registration (CPR) sensor assembly

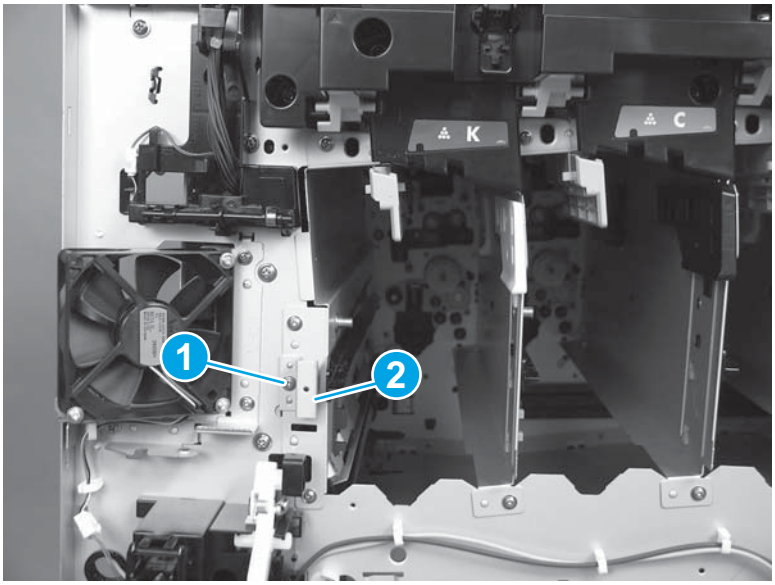
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Remove one of the following, depending upon product configuration:
  - Face-down bin. See Face-down bin on page 101.
  - Intermediate paper transport unit (IPTU). See IPTU assembly on page 437.
- Left cover. See Left cover on page 118.
- Front top cover. See Front top cover on page 115.
- Front door assembly. See Front door on page 137.
- Left front cover. See Left front cover on page 133.
- Front inner cover. See Front inner cover on page 147.

Remove the CPR sensor assembly

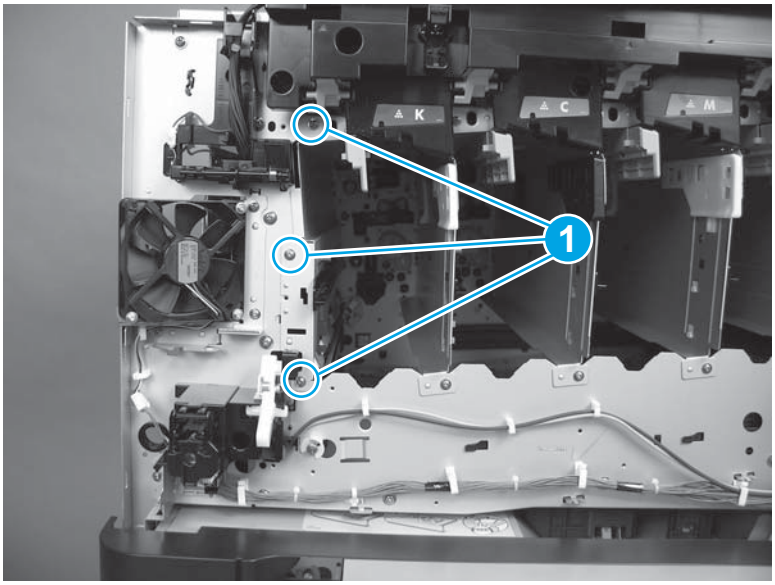
1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the bracket (callout 2).

Figure 1-390 Remove the CPR sensor assembly (1 of 5)



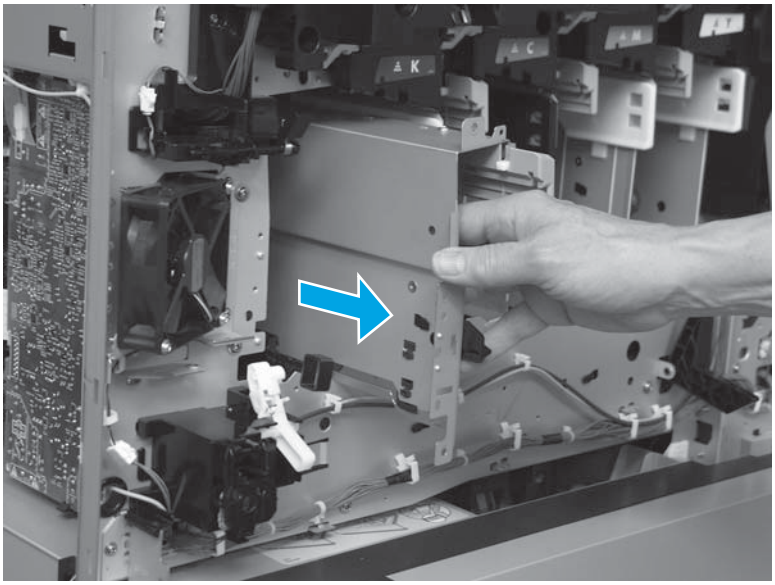
2. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-391 Remove the CPR sensor assembly (2 of 5)



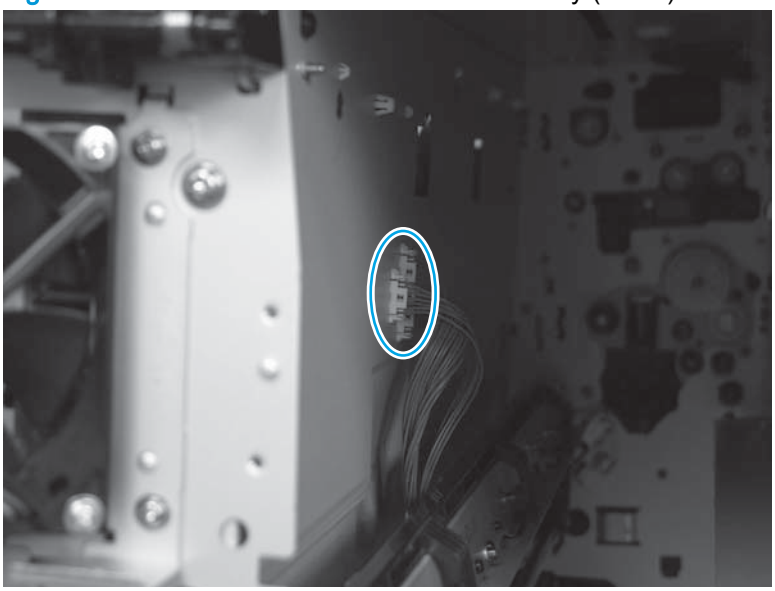
3. Slide the sheet-metal cover out of the product.

Figure 1-392 Remove the CPR sensor assembly (3 of 5)



4. Disconnect two connectors inside the cartridge cavity.

Figure 1-393 Remove the CPR sensor assembly (4 of 5)

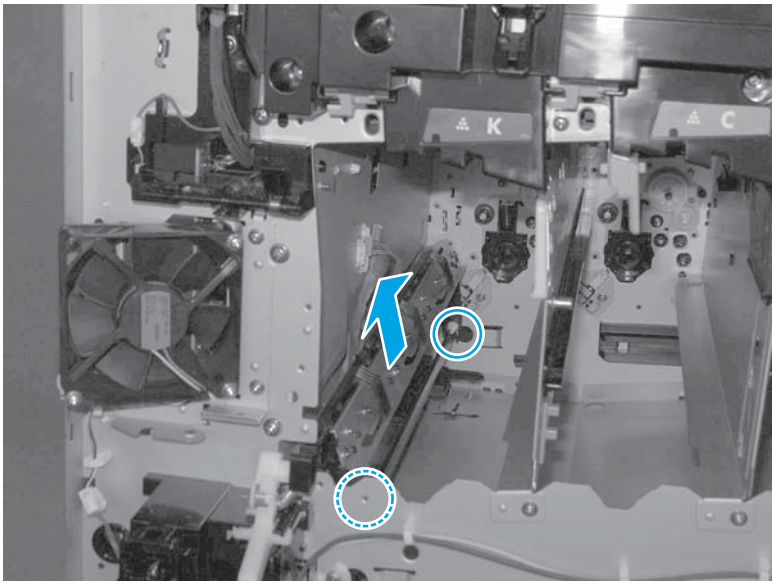


5. Lift the CPR sensor assembly up to release two hooks on the assembly from the metal rod.

NOTE: One clip is located toward the front of the product, and the other clip is located toward the back of the product.

Reinstallation tip Make sure that the clips are snapped into place when reinstalling the CPR sensor assembly.

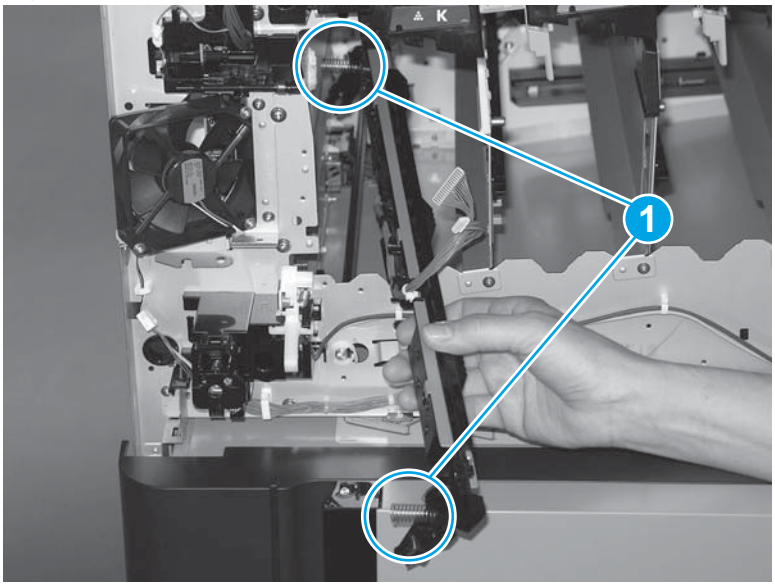
Figure 1-394 Remove the CPR sensor assembly (5 of 5)



Reinstall the CPR sensor assembly

1. Note the location of two springs (callout 1) on the CPR sensor assembly. When reinstalling the CPR sensor assembly, make sure that these springs are positioned between the CPR sensor assembly and the product chassis.

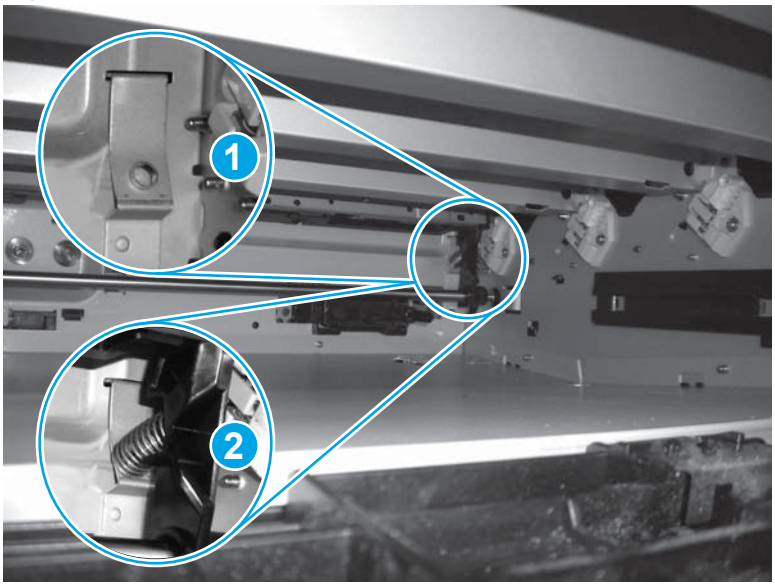
Figure 1-395 Reinstall the CPR sensor assembly (1 of 4)



2. After the CPR sensor assembly is reinstalled, look into the cavity where the ITB would be installed. Locate the spring pedestal (callout 1), and make sure that the CPR spring at the back right-hand corner is correctly positioned (callout 2).

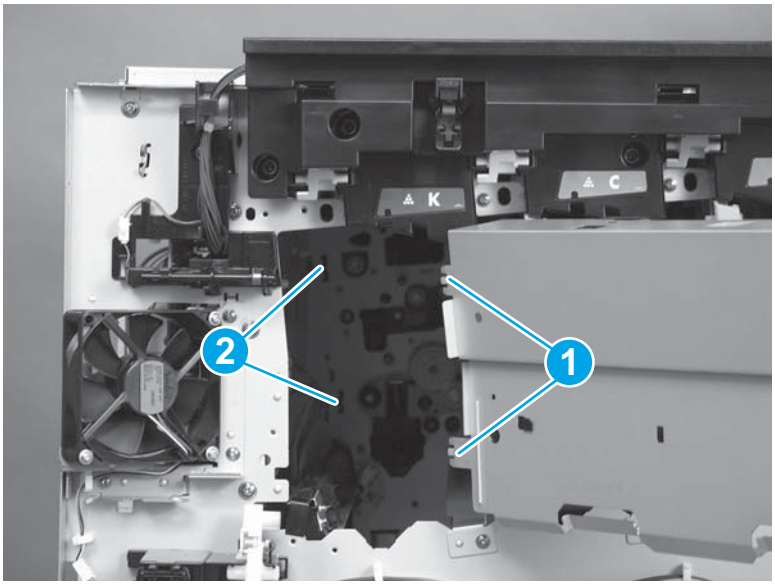
TIP: This spring can also be viewed by looking into the cavity where the black toner cartridge would be installed.

Figure 1-396 Reinstall the CPR sensor assembly (2 of 4)



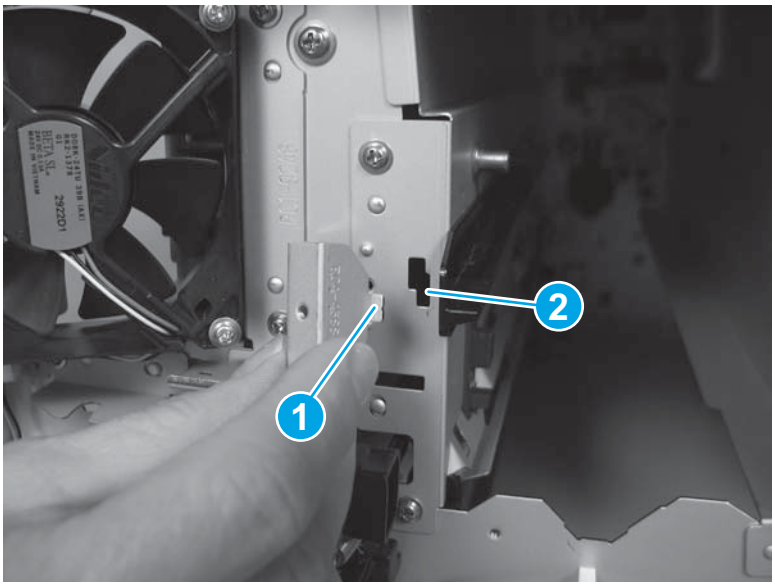
3. Make sure that the tabs (callout 1) on the sheet-metal cover are inserted into the slots (callout 2) inside the product.

Figure 1-397 Reinstall the CPR sensor assembly (3 of 4)



4. Make sure that the tab on the bracket (callout 1) is positioned in the slot in the chassis (callout 2).

Figure 1-398 Reinstall the CPR sensor assembly (4 of 4)



Low-voltage power supply (LVPS)

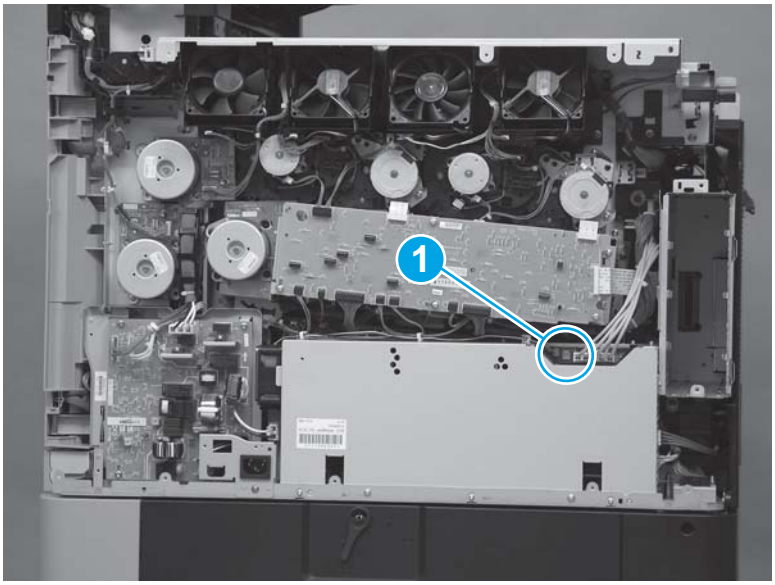
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Left rear cover. See Left rear cover on page 104.
- Rear cover. See Rear cover on page 143.

Remove the LVPS

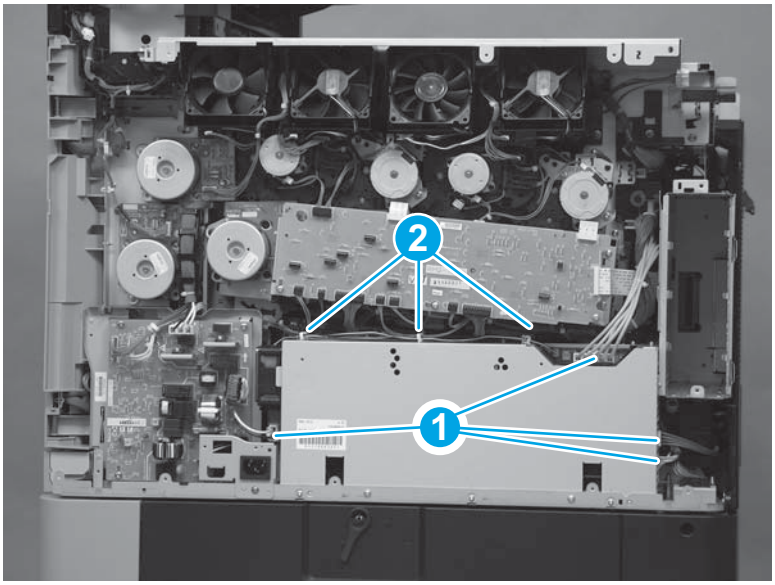
1. **M880 only**: Disconnect one connector (callout 1).

   Figure 1-399 Remove the LVPS (1 of 5)

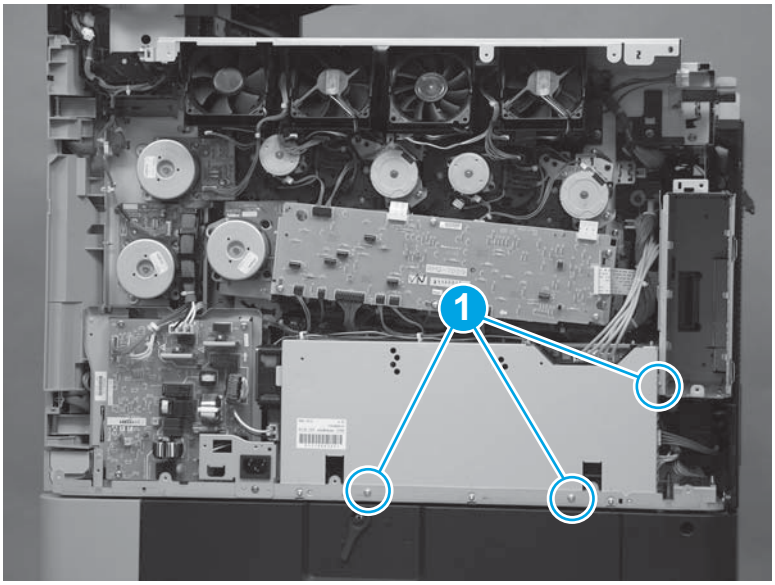
2. Disconnect four connectors (callout 1), and then release the wire harnesses from three retainers (callout 2).

   Figure 1-400 Remove the LVPS (2 of 5)

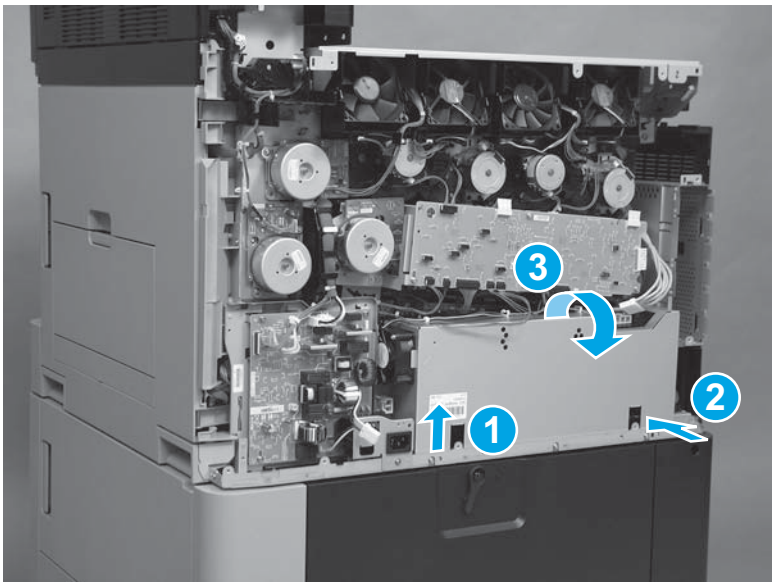
3. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-401 Remove the LVPS (3 of 5)



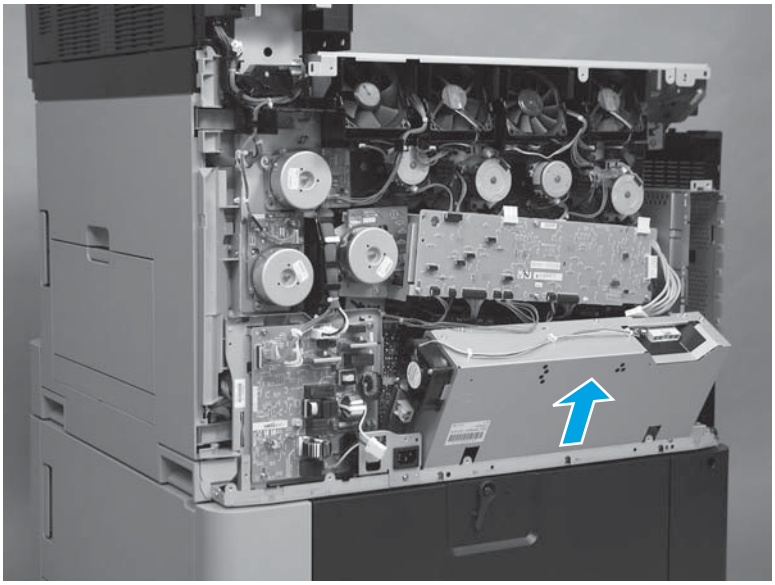
4. Lift the LVPS up (callout 1), push in on the lower right side (callout 2), and then rotate the top of the LVPS away from the product (callout 3).

Figure 1-402 Remove the LVPS (4 of 5)



5. Lift the LVPS up and out of the product

Figure 1-403 Remove the LVPS (5 of 5)



High-voltage power supply (HVPS) A (first transfer)

CAUTION: ESD sensitive assembly.

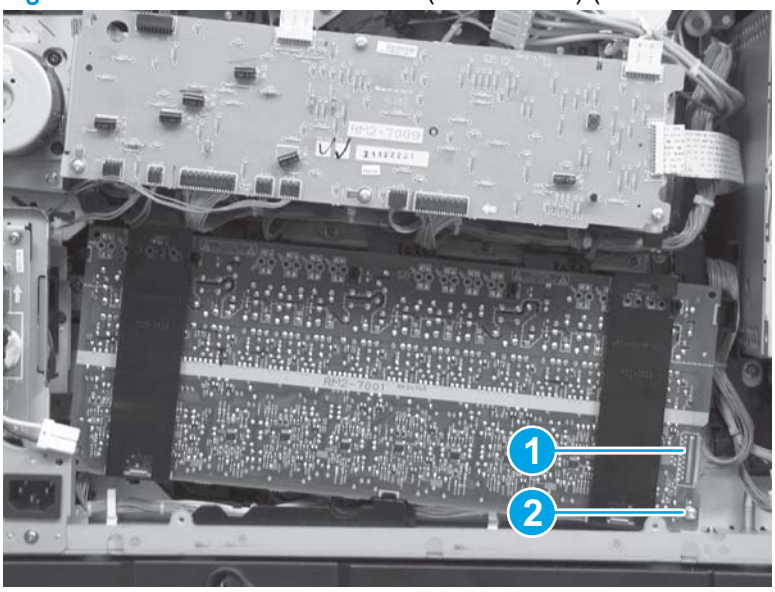
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Left rear cover. See Left rear cover on page 104.
- Rear cover. See Rear cover on page 143.
- Low-voltage power supply (LVPS). See Low-voltage power supply (LVPS) on page 269.

Remove the HVPS A (first transfer)

1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

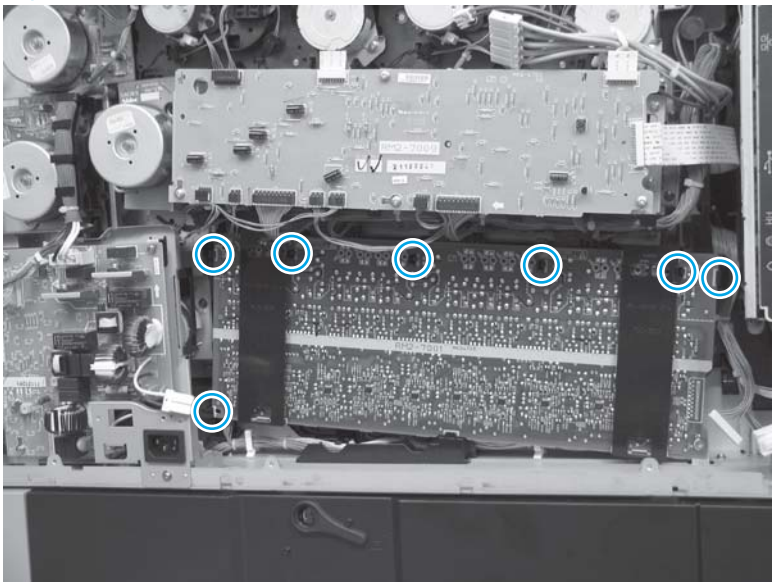
Figure 1-404 Remove the HVPS A (first transfer) (1 of 3



2. Release seven tabs.

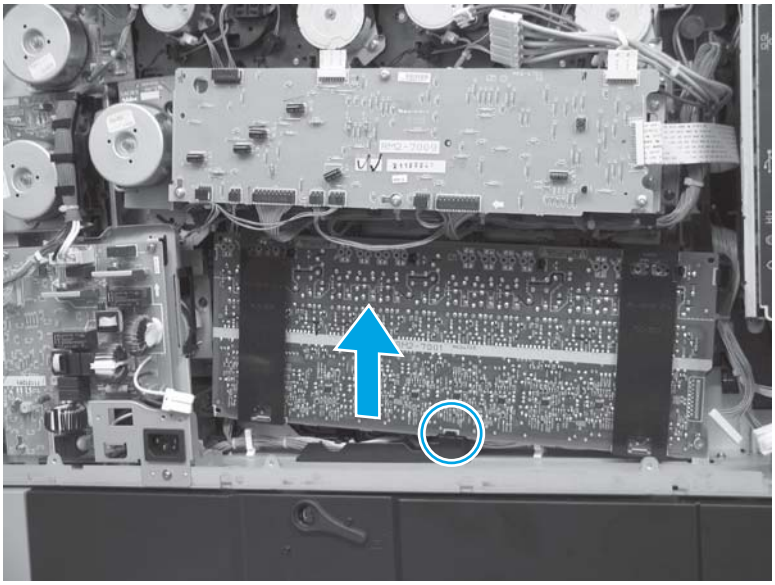
TIP: Release the corner tabs first.

Figure 1-405 Remove the HVPS A (first transfer) (2 of 3)



3. Lift the HVPS A up and off of one retainer, and then remove it from the product.

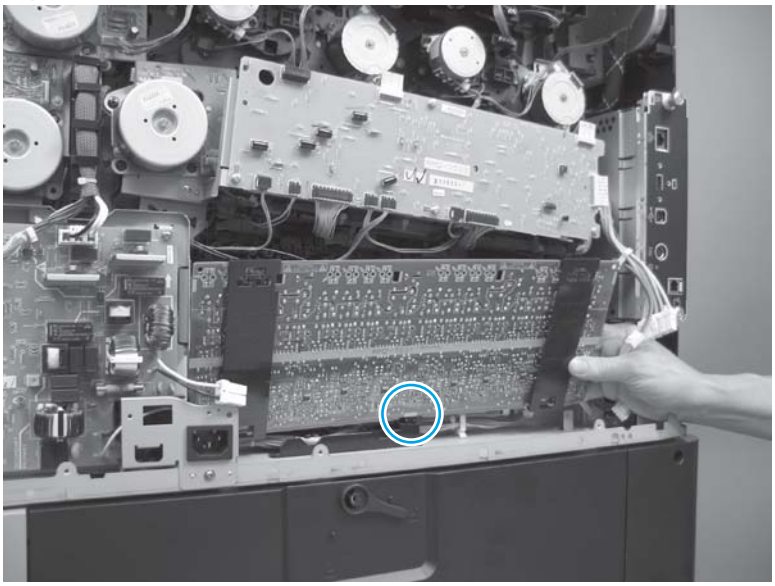
Figure 1-406 Remove the HVPS A (first transfer) (3 of 3)



Reinstall the HVPS A (first transfer)

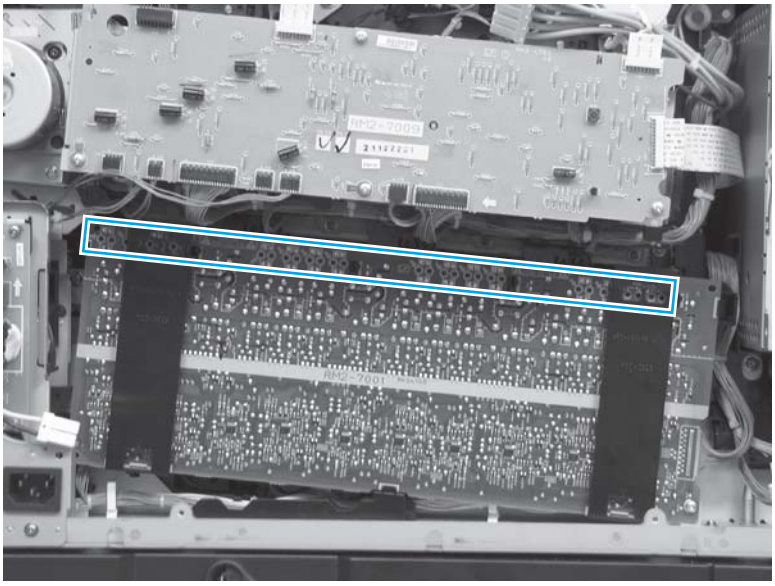
1. Position the slot bordered in white on the HVPS A into the retainer on the chassis before engaging the clips.

Figure 1-407 Reinstall the HVPS A (first transfer) (1 of 3)



2. After the HVPS A is installed and all tabs are in place, locate the circular locator windows across the top of the HVPS A.

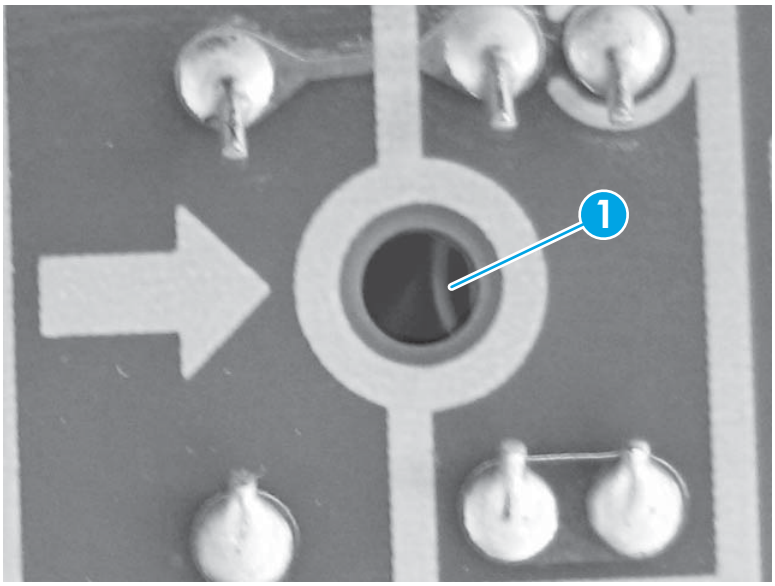
Figure 1-408 Reinstall the HVPS A (first transfer) (2 of 3)



3. Make sure that the contact spring (callout 1) can be seen through the 32 locator windows. If the spring cannot be seen, remove and reinstall the HVPS A (first transfer).

NOTE: No error message is displayed on the control panel if these springs are positioned incorrectly. Poor print quality will be the only indicator.

Figure 1-409 Reinstall the HVPS A (first transfer) (3 of 3)



Lifter-drive assembly

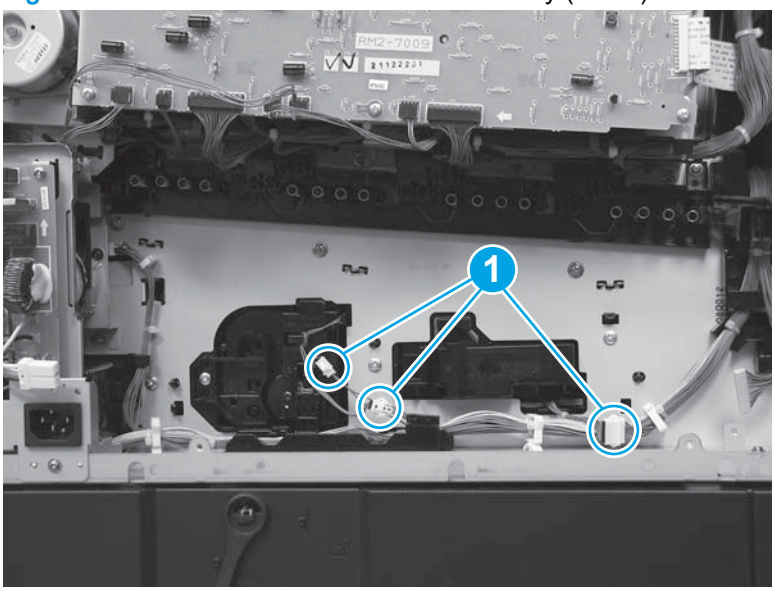
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Tray 2. See Tray 2, 1x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 4, and 3x500 Tray 5 on page 18.
- Left rear cover. See Left rear cover on page 104.
- Rear cover. See Rear cover on page 143.
- Low-voltage power supply (LVPS). See Low-voltage power supply (LVPS) on page 269.
- High-voltage power supply (HVPS) A (first transfer). See High-voltage power supply (HVPS) A (first transfer) on page 272.

Remove the lifter-drive assembly

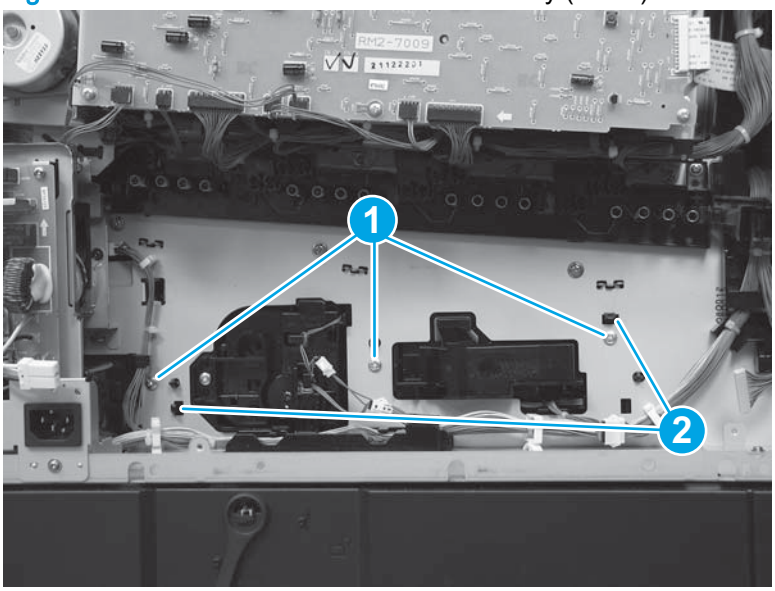
1. Disconnect three connectors (callout 1).

Figure 1-410 Remove the lifter-drive assembly (1 of 3)



2. Remove three screws (callout 1), and then release two tabs (callout 2).

Figure 1-411 Remove the lifter-drive assembly (2 of 3)



3. Remove the lifter-drive assembly through the Tray 2 cavity.

Figure 1-412 Remove the lifter-drive assembly (3 of 3)

Reinstall the lifter-drive assembly

1. When reinstalling the lifter-drive assembly, make sure that the assembly is unlocked (callout 1). If the lifter is locked (callout 2), the lifter will not function properly.

Figure 1-413 Unlocked position of the lifter-driver assembly (correct)

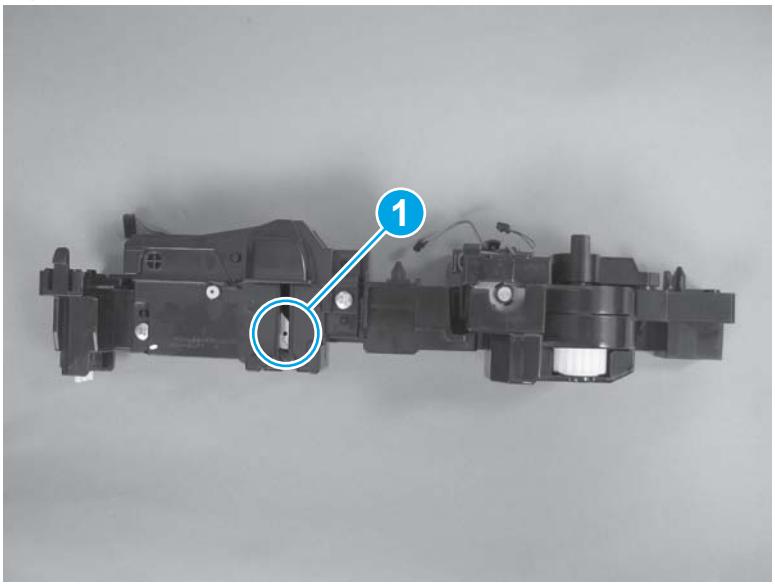
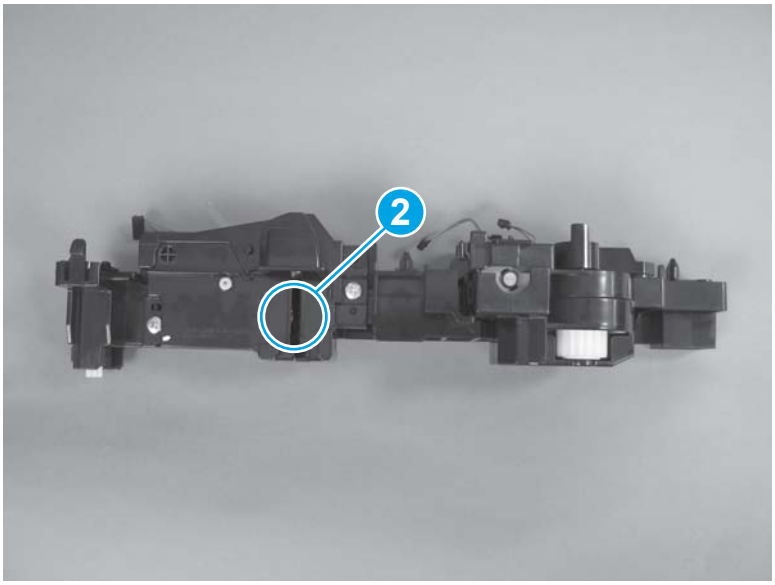
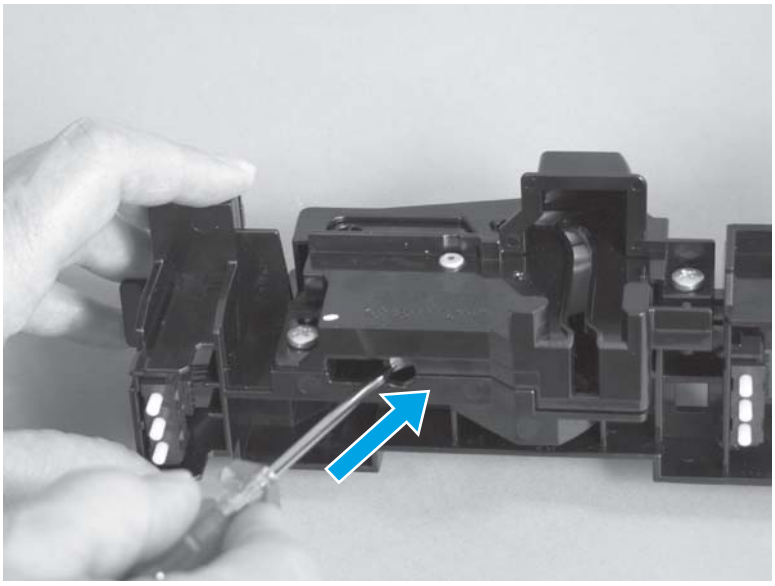


Figure 1-414 Locked position of the lifter-driver assembly (incorrect)



2. If the assembly is in the locked position (callout 2 above), use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to press on the spring-loaded metal plate and move it to the unlocked position.

Figure 1-415 Unlocking the lifter-drive assembly



Toner-cartridge drive assembly (yellow and magenta)

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

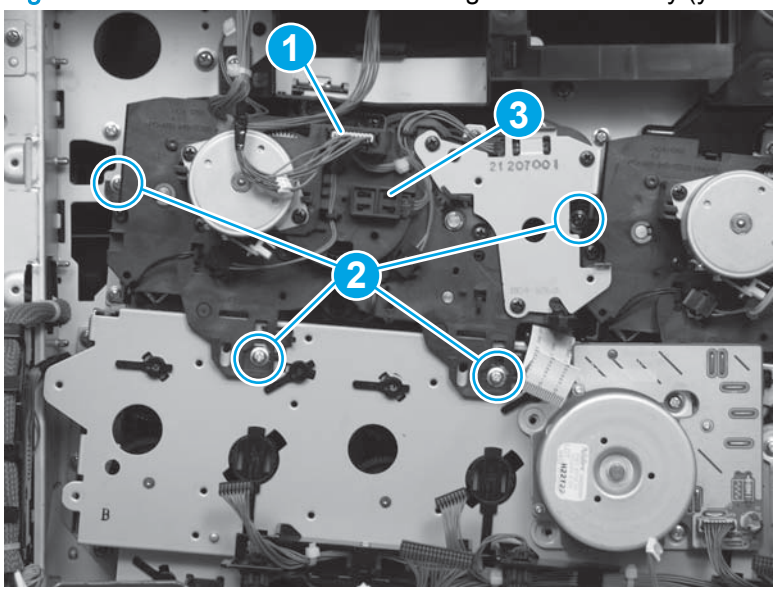
- All four toner cartridges. See Toner cartridge on page 14.
- All four imaging drums. See Imaging drum on page 15.
- Left rear cover. See Left rear cover on page 104.
- Rear cover. See Rear cover on page 143.
- Memory tag PCA. See Memory tag PCA on page 230.
- Fuser fan FM2. See Fuser fan FM2 on page 207.
- Cartridge fan FM3 (yellow and magenta). See Cartridge fan FM3 (yellow and magenta) on page 214.
- Laser/scanner fan FM1. See Laser/scanner fan FM1 on page 222.
- All four image drum motors. See Image-drum motor on page 233.
- Fuser motor. See Fuser motor on page 242.
- Fuser fan duct. See Fuser fan duct on page 211.
- Toner-cartridge feed motor (yellow, magenta, and cyan). See Toner-cartridge feed motor (yellow, magenta, and cyan) on page 245.

Remove the toner-cartridge drive assembly (yellow and magenta)

Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove four screws (callout 2), and then remove the toner-cartridge drive assembly (yellow and magenta; callout 3).

NOTE: Two of the screws are longer than the other two. See the reinstallation instructions below.

Figure 1-416 Remove the toner-cartridge drive assembly (yellow and magenta)

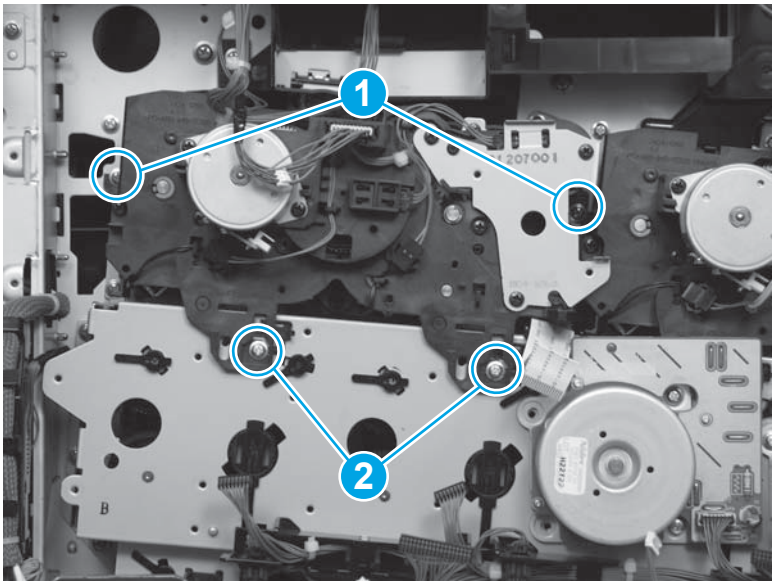


Reinstall the toner-cartridge drive assembly (yellow and magenta)

1. Follow the gear-alignment procedure when replacing or reinstalling the toner-cartridge drive assembly (yellow and magenta). See Replace or reinstall the toner-cartridge drive assemblies or the main drive assembly on page 291.
2. After the gear-alignment procedure is complete, install the two longer screws in the top positions (callout 1), and then install the two shorter screws in the lower positions (callout 2).

NOTE: Move the black locks on the main drive assembly to the right (unlocked position) in order to install the lower screws in the toner-cartridge drive assembly.

Figure 1-417 Reinstall the toner-cartridge drive assembly (yellow and magenta)



Toner-cartridge drive assembly (cyan and black)

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

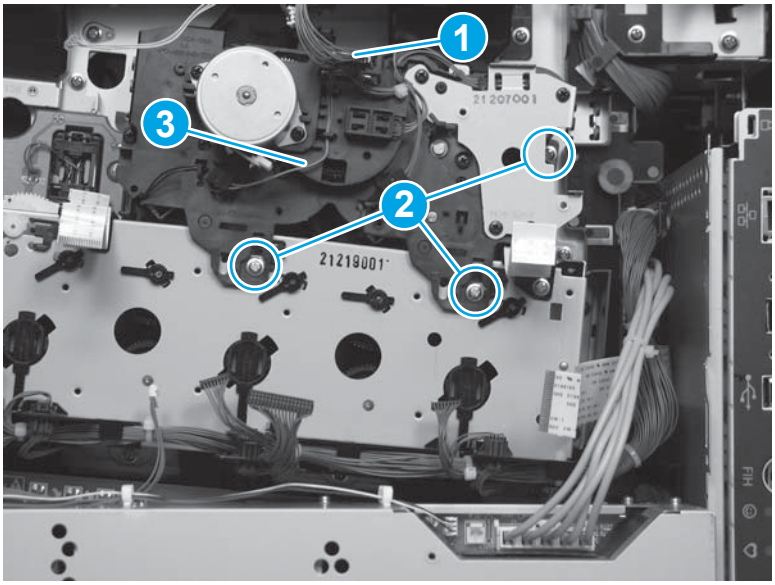
- All four toner cartridges. See Toner cartridge on page 14.
- All four imaging drums. See Imaging drum on page 15.
- Left rear cover. See Left rear cover on page 104.
- Rear cover. See Rear cover on page 143.
- Fuser fan FM2. See Fuser fan FM2 on page 207.
- Fuser fan duct. See Fuser fan duct on page 211.
- Cartridge fan FM3 (yellow and magenta). See Cartridge fan FM3 (yellow and magenta) on page 214.
- Cartridge fan FM4 (cyan and black). See Cartridge fan FM4 (cyan and black) on page 218.
- Laser/scanner fan FM1. See Laser/scanner fan FM1 on page 222.
- Memory tag PCA. See Memory tag PCA on page 230.
- All four image drum motors. See Image-drum motor on page 233.
- Fuser motor. See Fuser motor on page 242.
- Toner-cartridge feed motor (black). See Toner-cartridge feed motor (black) on page 244.
- Toner-cartridge feed motor (yellow, magenta, and cyan). See Toner-cartridge feed motor (yellow, magenta, and cyan) on page 245.
- Toner-cartridge drive assembly (yellow and magenta). See Toner-cartridge drive assembly (yellow and magenta) on page 280.

Remove the toner-cartridge drive assembly (cyan and black)

Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove three screws (callout 2), and then remove the toner-cartridge drive assembly (cyan and black; callout 3).

NOTE: One of the screws is longer than the other two. See the reinstallation instructions below.

Figure 1-418 Remove the toner-cartridge drive assembly (cyan and black)



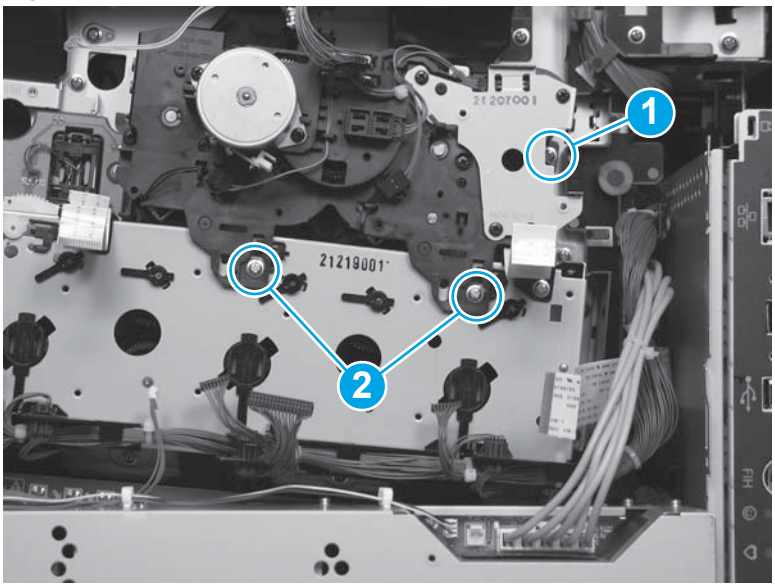
Reinstall the toner-cartridge drive assembly (cyan and black)

1. Follow the gear-alignment procedure when replacing or reinstalling the toner-cartridge drive assembly (cyan and black). See Replace or reinstall the toner-cartridge drive assemblies or the main drive assembly on page 291.

2. After the gear-alignment procedure is complete, install the longer screw in the top position (callout 1), and then install the two shorter screws in the lower positions (callout 2).

NOTE: Move the black locks on the main drive assembly to the right (unlocked position) in order to install the lower screws in the toner-cartridge drive assembly.

Figure 1-419 Reinstall the toner-cartridge drive assembly (cyan and black)



Cartridge interface PCA (cyan and black)

CAUTION: ESD sensitive assembly.

NOTE: This part is the same part number as the cartridge interface PCA (yellow and magenta).

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

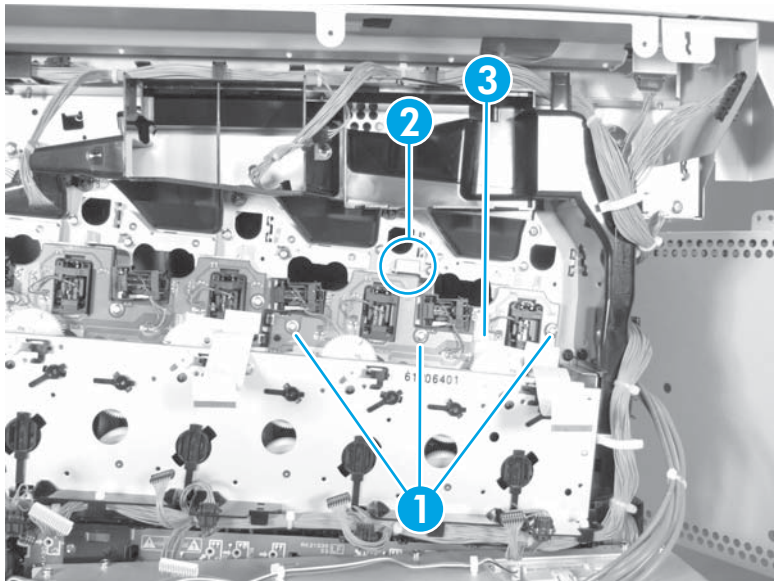
- All four toner cartridges. See Toner cartridge on page 14.
- All four imaging drums. See Imaging drum on page 15.
- Left rear cover. See Left rear cover on page 104.
- Rear cover. See Rear cover on page 143.
- Fuser fan FM2. See Fuser fan FM2 on page 207.
- Fuser fan duct. See Fuser fan duct on page 211.
- Cartridge fan FM3 (yellow and magenta). See Cartridge fan FM3 (yellow and magenta) on page 214.
- Cartridge fan FM4 (cyan and black). See Cartridge fan FM4 (cyan and black) on page 218.
- Laser/scanner fan FM1. See Laser/scanner fan FM1 on page 222.
- Memory tag PCA. See Memory tag PCA on page 230.
- All four image drum motors. See Image-drum motor on page 233.
- Fuser motor. See Fuser motor on page 242.
- Toner-cartridge feed motor (black). See Toner-cartridge feed motor (black) on page 244.
- Toner-cartridge feed motor (yellow, magenta, and cyan). See Toner-cartridge feed motor (yellow, magenta, and cyan) on page 245.
- Toner-cartridge drive assembly (yellow and magenta). See Toner-cartridge drive assembly (yellow and magenta) on page 280.
- Toner-cartridge drive assembly (cyan and black). See Toner-cartridge drive assembly (cyan and black) on page 282.

Remove the cartridge interface PCA (cyan and black)

Remove three screws (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then remove the cartridge interface PCA (cyan and black; callout 3).

NOTE: These screws have washers attached.

Figure 1-420 Remove the cartridge interface PCA (cyan and black)



Cartridge interface PCA (yellow and magenta)

CAUTION: ESD sensitive assembly.

NOTE: This part is the same part number as the cartridge interface PCA (cyan and black).

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

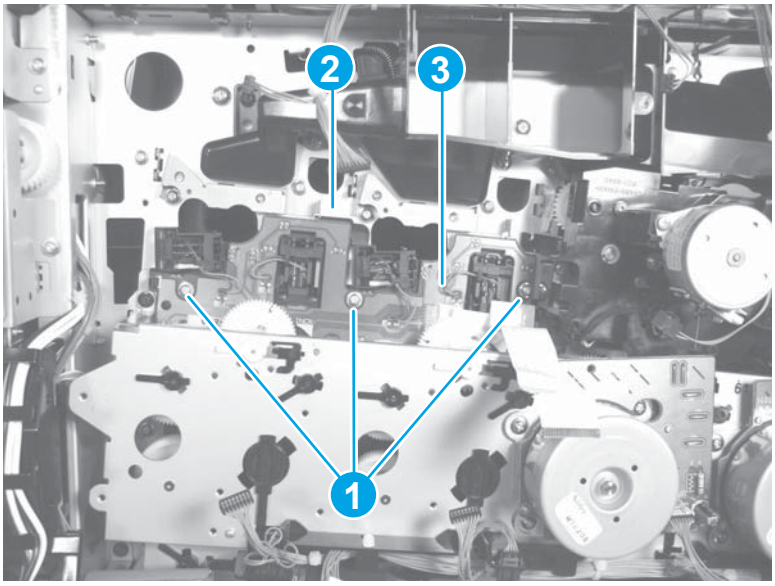
- All four toner cartridges. See Toner cartridge on page 14.
- All four imaging drums. See Imaging drum on page 15.
- Left rear cover. See Left rear cover on page 104.
- Rear cover. See Rear cover on page 143.
- Fuser fan FM2. See Fuser fan FM2 on page 207.
- Fuser fan duct. See Fuser fan duct on page 211.
- Cartridge fan FM4 (cyan and black). See Cartridge fan FM4 (cyan and black) on page 218.
- Cartridge fan FM3 (yellow and magenta). See Cartridge fan FM3 (yellow and magenta) on page 214.
- Laser/scanner fan FM1. See Laser/scanner fan FM1 on page 222.
- Memory tag PCA. See Memory tag PCA on page 230.
- All four image drum motors. See Image-drum motor on page 233.
- Fuser motor. See Fuser motor on page 242.
- Toner-cartridge feed motor (yellow, magenta, and cyan). See Toner-cartridge feed motor (yellow, magenta, and cyan) on page 245.
- Toner-cartridge drive assembly (yellow and magenta). See Toner-cartridge drive assembly (yellow and magenta) on page 280.

Remove the cartridge interface PCA (yellow and magenta)

Remove three screws (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then remove the cartridge interface PCA (yellow and magenta; callout 3).

NOTE: These screws have washers attached.

Figure 1-421 Remove the cartridge interface PCA (yellow and magenta)



Main drive assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

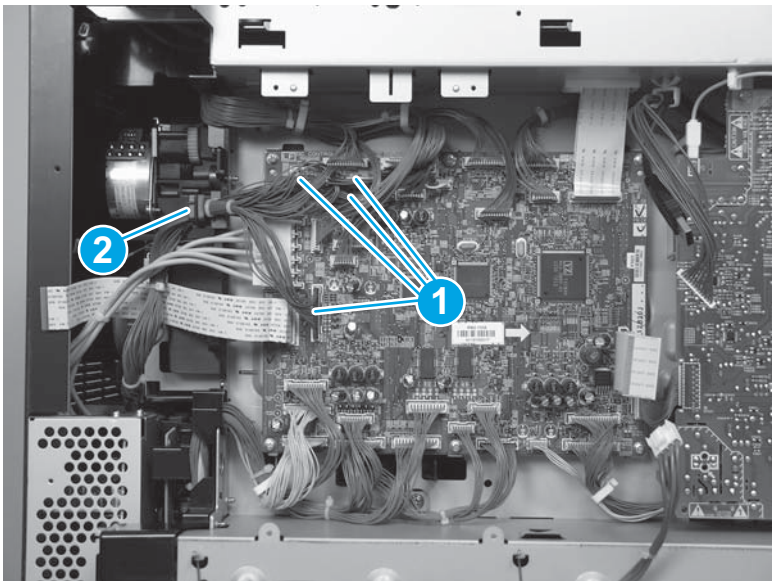
- All four toner cartridges. See Toner cartridge on page 14.
- Intermediate transfer belt (ITB). See Intermediate transfer belt (ITB) on page 19.
- Remove one of the following, depending upon product configuration:
  - Face-down bin. See Face-down bin on page 101.
  - Intermediate paper transport unit (IPTU). See IPTU assembly on page 437.
- Left rear cover. See Left rear cover on page 104.
- Left cover. See Left cover on page 118.
- Rear cover. See Rear cover on page 143.
- Fuser fan FM2. See Fuser fan FM2 on page 207.
- Fuser fan duct. See Fuser fan duct on page 211.
- Cartridge fan FM3 (yellow and magenta). See Cartridge fan FM3 (yellow and magenta) on page 214.
- Cartridge fan FM4 (cyan and black). See Cartridge fan FM4 (cyan and black) on page 218.
- Laser/scanner fan FM1. See Laser/scanner fan FM1 on page 222.
- Memory tag PCA. See Memory tag PCA on page 230.
- All four image drum motors. See Image-drum motor on page 233.
- Fuser power supply. See Fuser power supply on page 235.
- Intermediate transfer belt (ITB) alienation-drive assembly. See Intermediate transfer belt (ITB) alienation-drive assembly on page 240.
- Fuser motor. See Fuser motor on page 242.
- Toner-cartridge feed motor (black). See Toner-cartridge feed motor (black) on page 244.
- Toner-cartridge feed motor (yellow, magenta, and cyan). See Toner-cartridge feed motor (yellow, magenta, and cyan) on page 245.
- Formatter, formatter case, and interconnect board (ICB). See Formatter, formatter case, and interconnect board (ICB) on page 257.
- Low-voltage power supply (LVPS). See Low-voltage power supply (LVPS) on page 269.
- High-voltage power supply (HVPS) A (first transfer). See High-voltage power supply (HVPS) A (first transfer) on page 272.
- Toner-cartridge drive assembly (yellow and magenta). See Toner-cartridge drive assembly (yellow and magenta) on page 280.
- Toner-cartridge drive assembly (cyan and black). See Toner-cartridge drive assembly (cyan and black) on page 282.

- Cartridge interface PCA (cyan and black). See Cartridge interface PCA (cyan and black) on page 284.
- Cartridge interface PCA (yellow and magenta). See Cartridge interface PCA (yellow and magenta) on page 286.

Remove the main drive assembly

1. Disconnect four connectors (J113, J138, J141, and J142; callout 1) on the DC Controller, and then release the wire harnesses from the guide (callout 2).

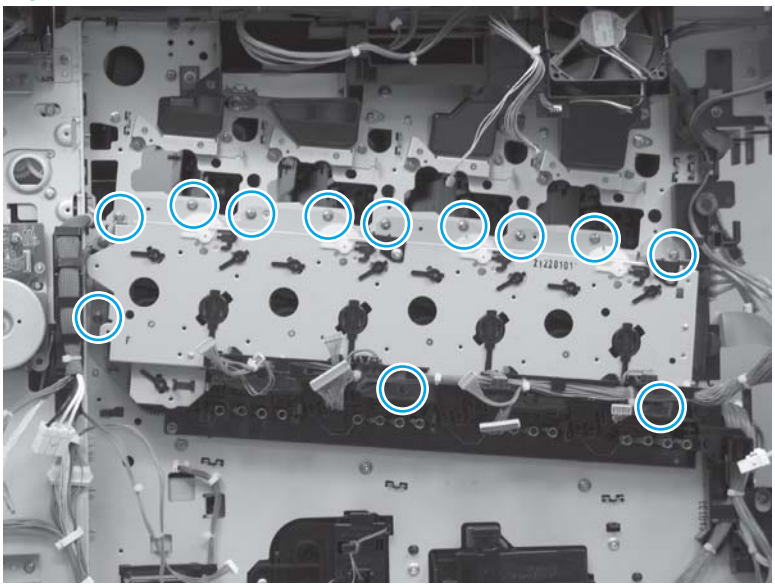
Figure 1-422 Remove the main drive assembly (1 of 2)



2. Remove 12 screws, and then remove the main drive assembly.

CAUTION: Do not remove the six red screws around the main drive assembly. Removal of these screws will cause damage to the assembly.

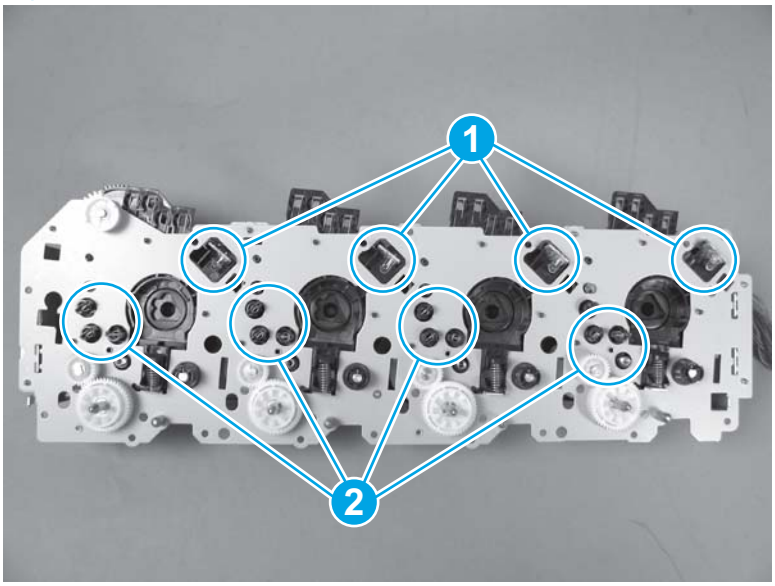
Figure 1-423 Remove the main drive assembly (2 of 2)



Reinstall the main drive assembly

1. Do not touch the LEDs (callout 1) or the bias connections (callout 2) on the back of the main drive assembly. Contamination of these parts by grease or oil might result in print quality problems.

   Figure 1-424 Reinstall the main drive assembly

2. Follow the gear-alignment procedure when replacing or reinstalling the main drive assembly. See Replace or reinstall the toner-cartridge drive assemblies or the main drive assembly on page 291.

Replace or reinstall the toner-cartridge drive assemblies or the main drive assembly

When the toner-cartridge drive units or the main drive assembly are installed on the product, the gears inside these assemblies must be realigned to ensure correct operation of the product. The following procedures explain how to align the gears when replacing the part or reinstalling the part after service.

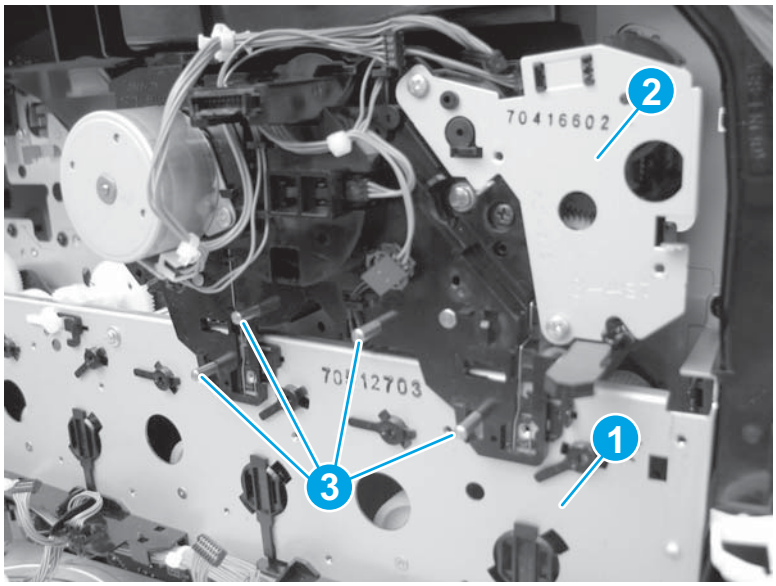
- If you are replacing the toner-cartridge drive assembly or the main drive assembly, see Replace the toner-cartridge drive assembly or the main drive assembly on page 291
- If you are reinstalling the current toner-cartridge drive assembly or the main drive assembly, see Reinstall the toner-cartridge drive assembly or the main drive assembly on page 296

Replace the toner-cartridge drive assembly or the main drive assembly

This procedure correctly aligns the gears of the main drive assembly (callout 1) and the toner-cartridge drive assembly(ies) (callout 2). Use the four pins (callout 3) supplied with the replacement units to align the gears.

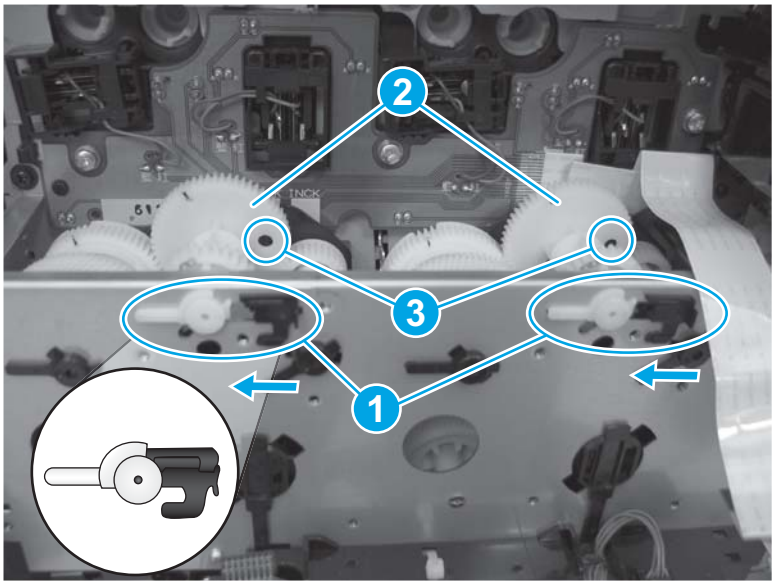
NOTE: The toner-cartridge drive assembly (black) is shown in the figure below.

Figure 1-425 Replace the toner-cartridge drive assembly or the main drive assembly (1 of 8)



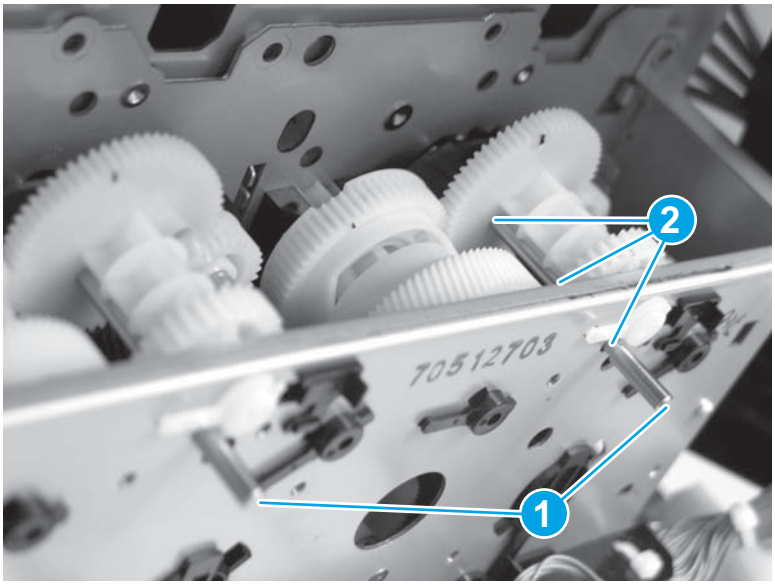
1. Reinstall the main drive assembly. Push the black locks (callout 1) to the left while rotating the top gears (callout 2) on the main drive assembly until they lock into position. The large holes (callout 3) should point to the right (3 o'clock position).

Figure 1-426 Replace the toner-cartridge drive assembly or the main drive assembly (2 of 8)



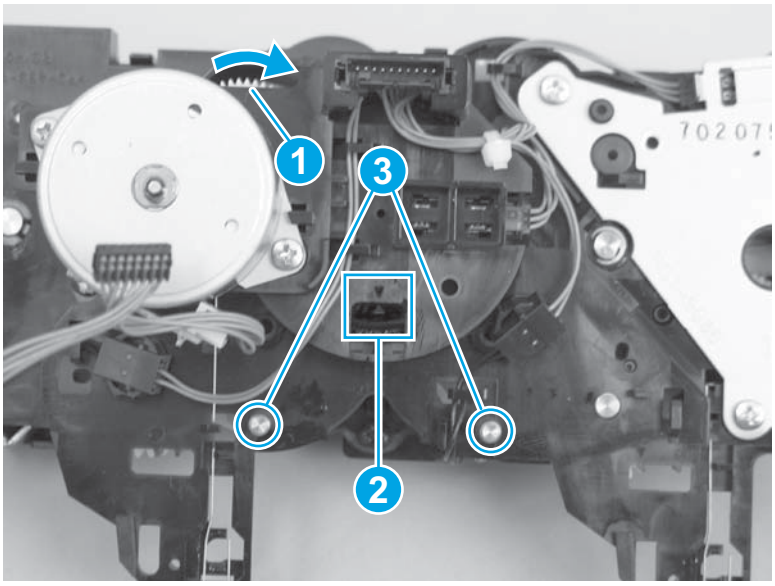
2. Insert the long alignment pins (callout 1) through the gears (callout 2) in the main drive assembly.

Figure 1-427 Replace the toner-cartridge drive assembly or the main drive assembly (3 of 8)



3. On the toner-cartridge drive assembly, rotate the top gear (callout 1) clockwise until the arrows align (callout 2). Insert the two short pins (callout 3).

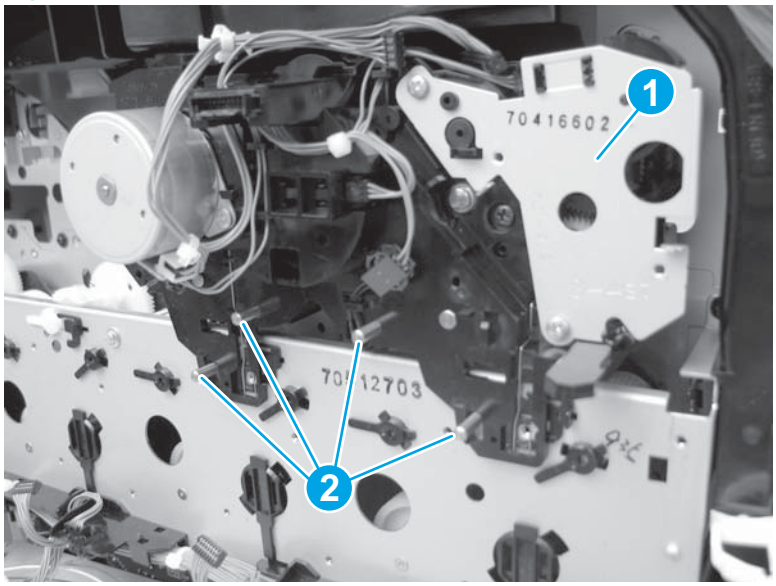
Figure 1-428 Replace the toner-cartridge drive assembly or the main drive assembly (4 of 8)



4. Install the toner-cartridge drive assembly (callout 1) over the long pins in the main drive assembly (callout 2).

NOTE: The toner-cartridge drive assembly (black) is shown in the figure below.

Figure 1-429 Replace the toner-cartridge drive assembly or the main drive assembly (5 of 8)



5. Check the installation of the toner-cartridge drive assembly.

⚠ **CAUTION:** Make sure that the toner-cartridge drive assembly is installed correctly. The assembly should be flush against the chassis (callout 1). Incorrect installation (callout 2) will cause the product to function incorrectly.

Figure 1-430 Correct position of toner-cartridge drive assembly (6 of 8)

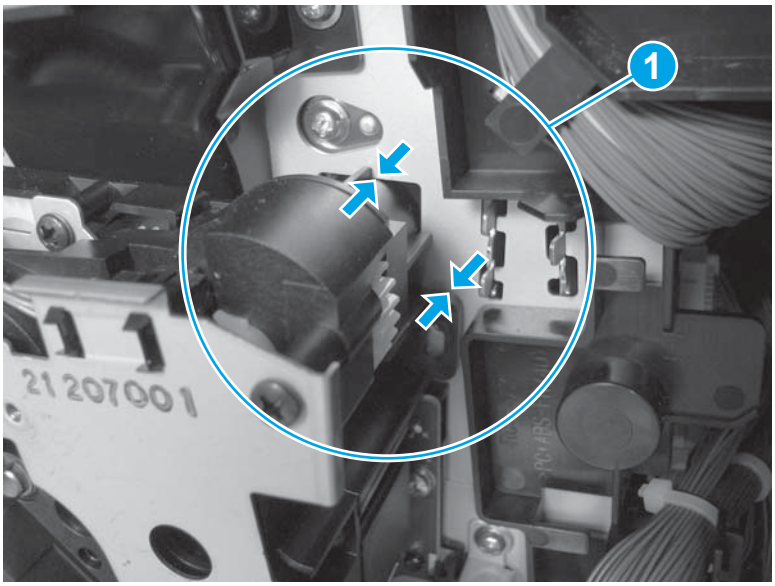
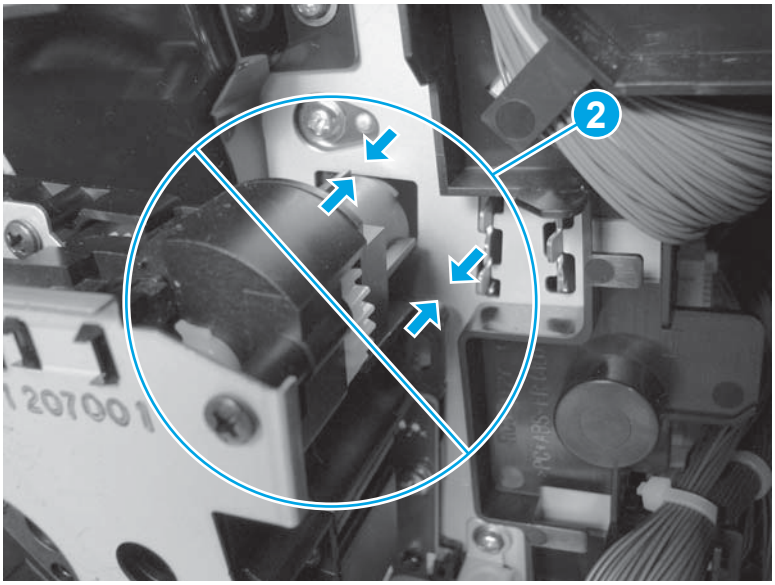


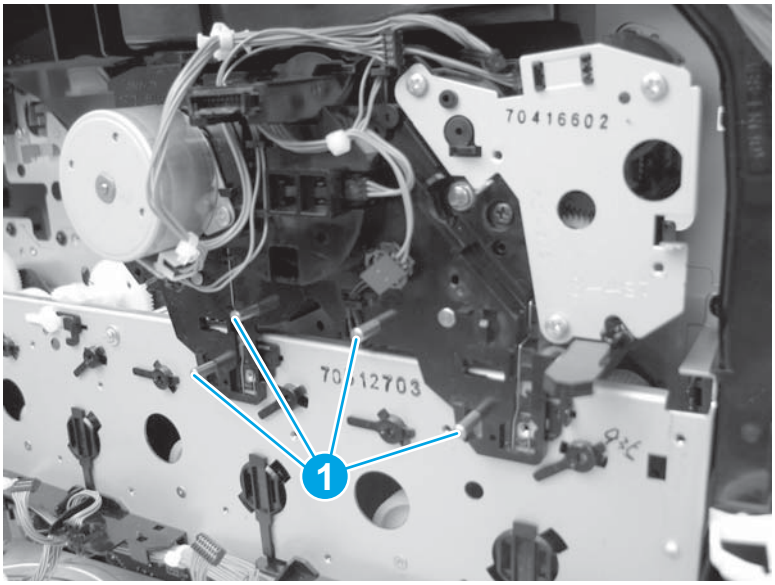
Figure 1-431 Incorrect position of toner-cartridge drive assembly (7 of 8)



6. Remove the alignment pins (callout 1).

NOTE: The toner-cartridge drive assembly (black) is shown in the figure below.

Figure 1-432 Replace the toner-cartridge drive assembly or the main drive assembly (8 of 8)



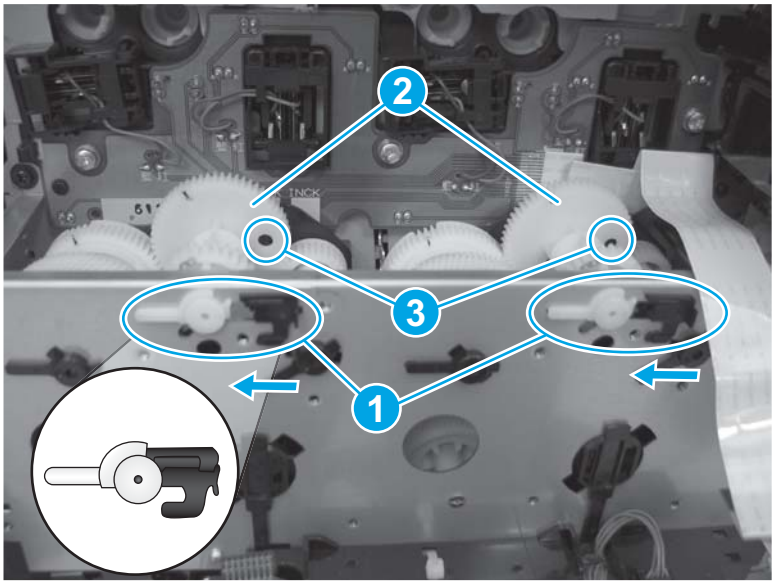
Reinstall the toner-cartridge drive assembly or the main drive assembly

This procedure correctly aligns the gears of the main drive assembly and the toner-cartridge drive assembly(ies) without the use of alignment pins.

1. Reinstall the main drive assembly. Push the black locks (callout 1) to the left while rotating the top gears (callout 2) on the main drive assembly until they lock into position. The large holes (callout 3) should point to the right (3 o'clock position).

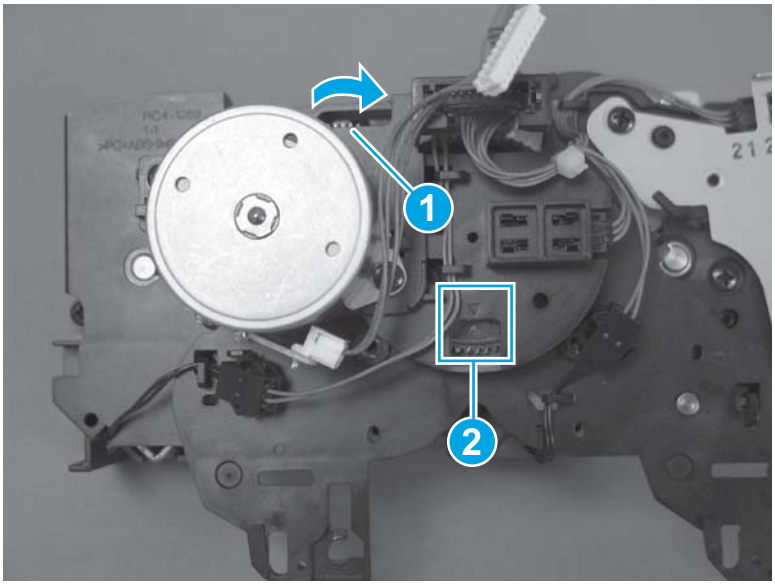
IMPORTANT: When reinstalling without the alignment pins, it is important to verify that the locks (callout 1) are engaged.

Figure 1-433 Reinstall the toner-cartridge drive assembly or the main drive assembly (1 of 4)



2. On the toner-cartridge drive assembly, rotate the top gear (callout 1) clockwise until the arrows align (callout 2).

Figure 1-434 Reinstall the toner-cartridge drive assembly or the main drive assembly (2 of 4)



3. Carefully install the toner-cartridge drive assembly.

NOTE: Be careful not to rotate the gears on the toner-cartridge drive assembly while installing it.

4. Check the installation of the toner-cartridge drive assembly.

CAUTION: Make sure that the toner-cartridge drive assembly is installed correctly. The assembly should be flush against the chassis (callout 1). Incorrect installation (callout 2) will cause the product to function incorrectly.

Figure 1-435 Correct position of toner-cartridge drive assembly (3 of 4)

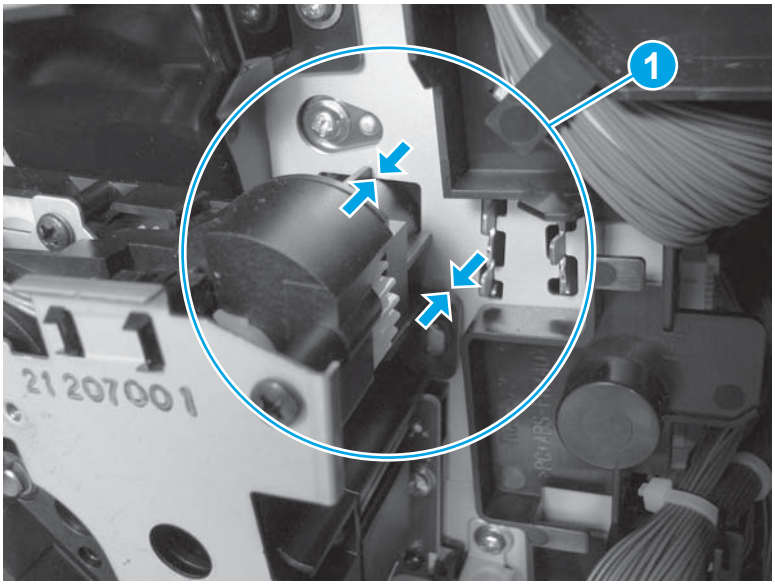
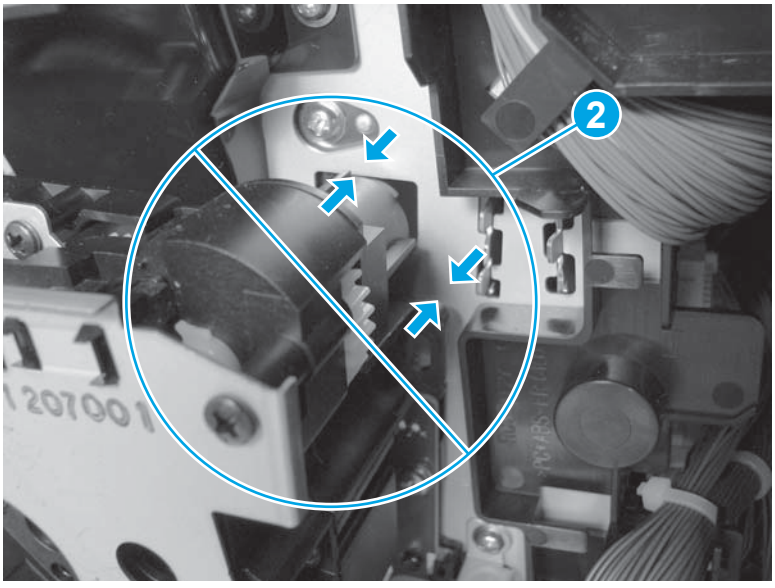


Figure 1-436 Incorrect position of toner-cartridge drive assembly (4 of 4)



Fuser drive assembly

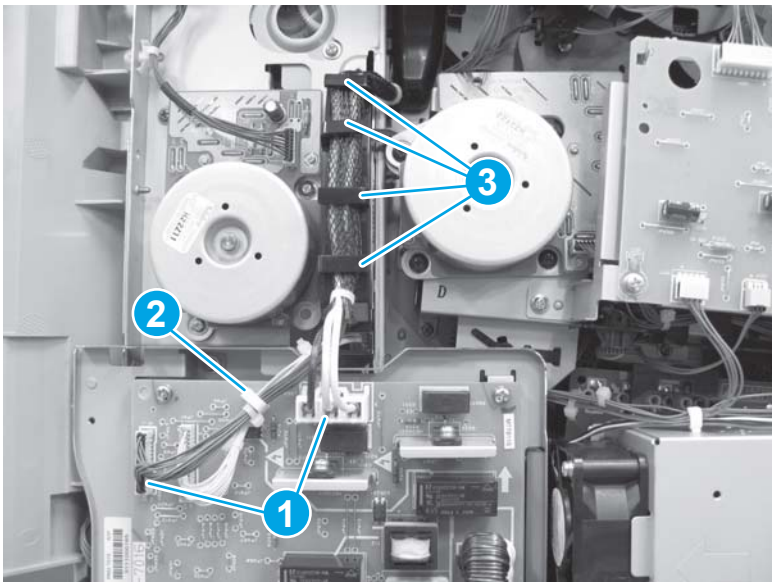
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Fuser. See Fuser on page 21.
- Left rear cover. See Left rear cover on page 104.
- Rear cover. See Rear cover on page 143.
- Fuser motor. See Fuser motor on page 242.

Remove the fuser drive assembly

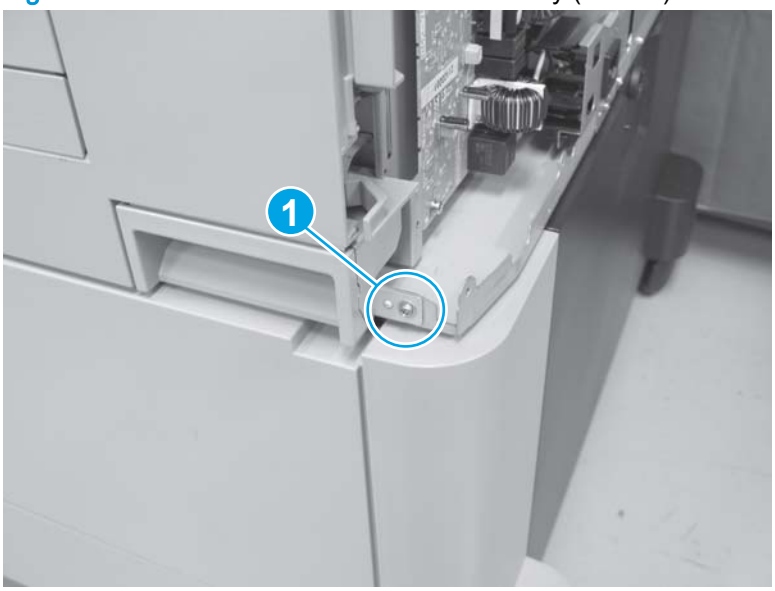
1. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), release one wire harness from the retainer (callout 2), and then release the wire harnesses from the guide (callout 3).

Figure 1-437 Remove the fuser drive assembly (1 of 10)



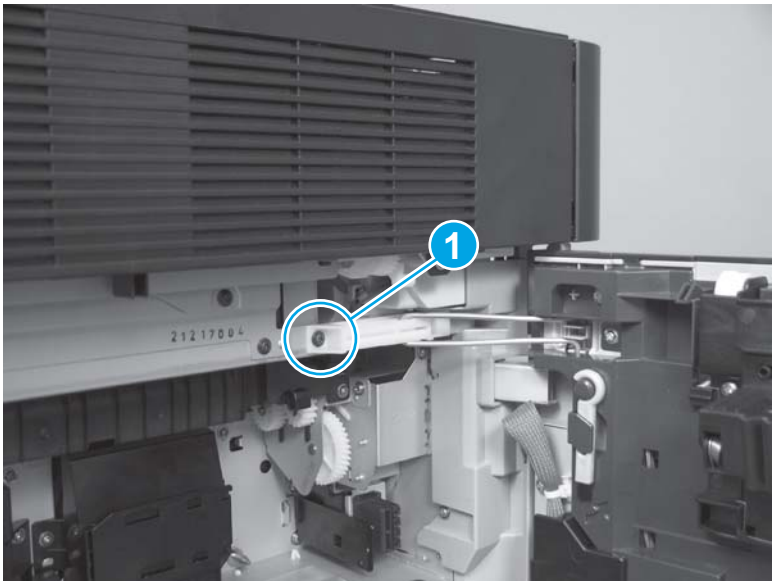
2. At the right-rear side of the product, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-438 Remove the fuser drive assembly (2 of 10)



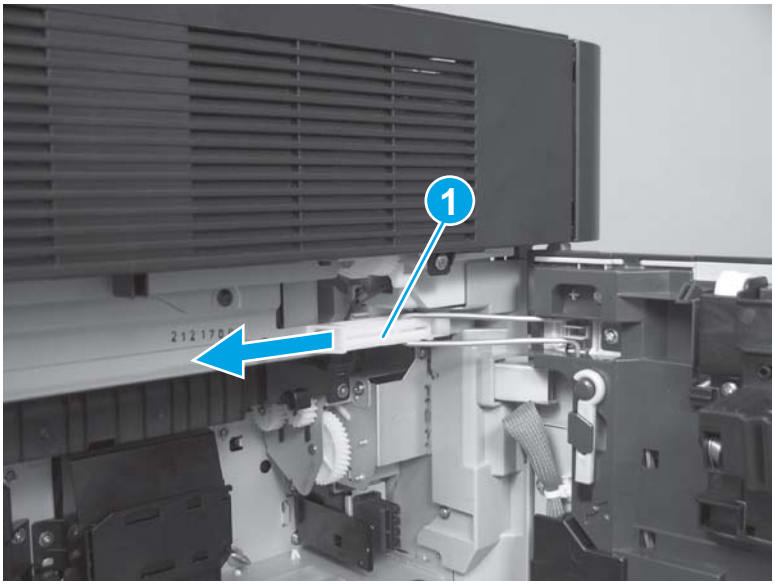
3. Open the right door, and then remove one screw.

Figure 1-439 Remove the fuser drive assembly (3 of 10)



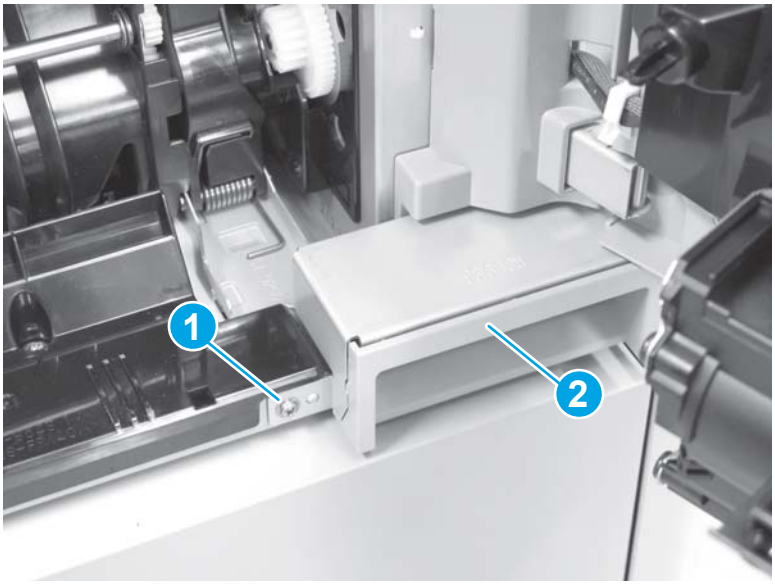
4. Slide the retainer arm and guide to the left to disengage it from the chassis.

Figure 1-440 Remove the fuser drive assembly (4 of 10)



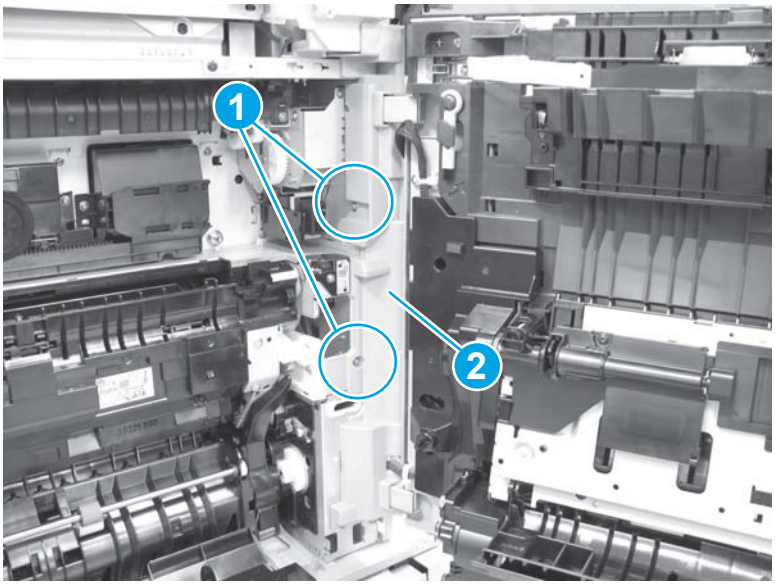
5. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the handle (callout 2).

Figure 1-441 Remove the fuser drive assembly (5 of 10)



6. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the right inner cover (callout 2).

Figure 1-442 Remove the fuser drive assembly (6 of 10)

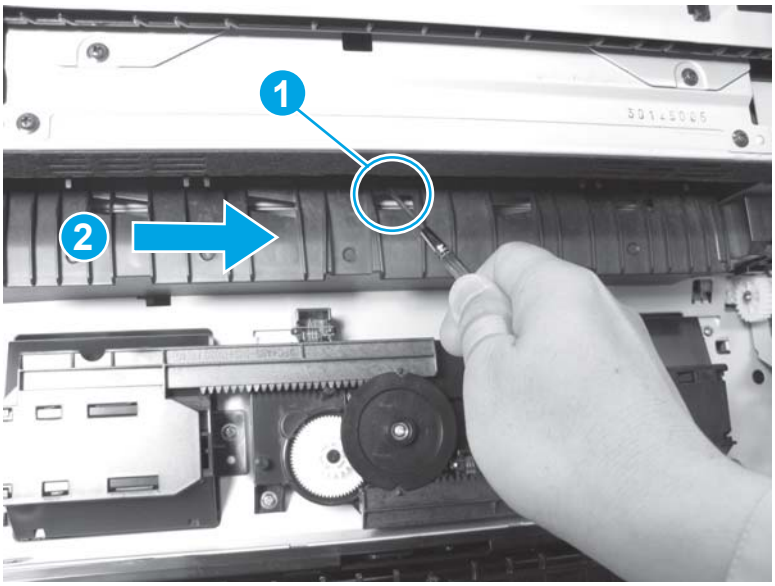


7. Use a small flat-blade screwdriver to release one plastic pin (callout 1), and then slide the duct to the right (callout 2) to remove it.

TIP: Use the arrow embossed on the duct to locate the pin (callout 1).

Reinstallation tip Lift up on the pin when the duct is reinstalled.

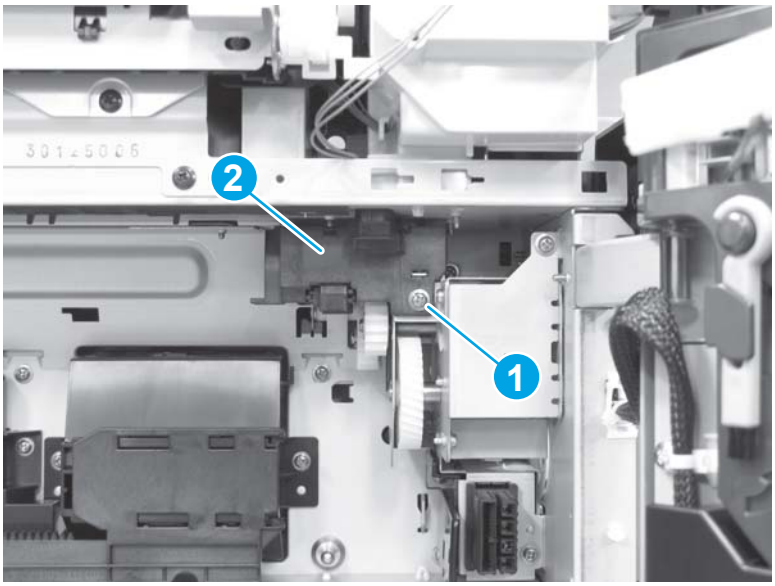
Figure 1-443 Remove the fuser drive assembly (7 of 10)



8. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then separate the fuser cover open detection sensor holder (callout 2) from the chassis.

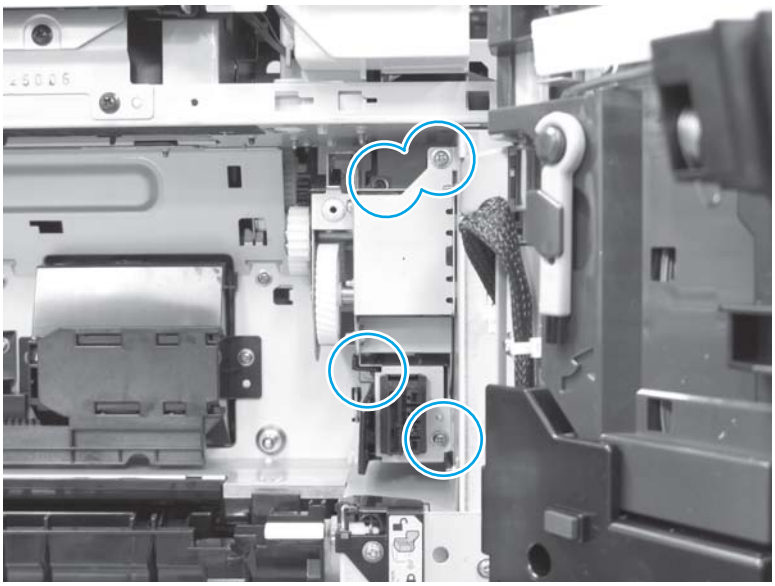
⚠ CAUTION: The holder is still attached to the product. Do not attempt to completely remove the holder. Separate it from the product, and move it out of the way.

Figure 1-444 Remove the fuser drive assembly (8 of 10)



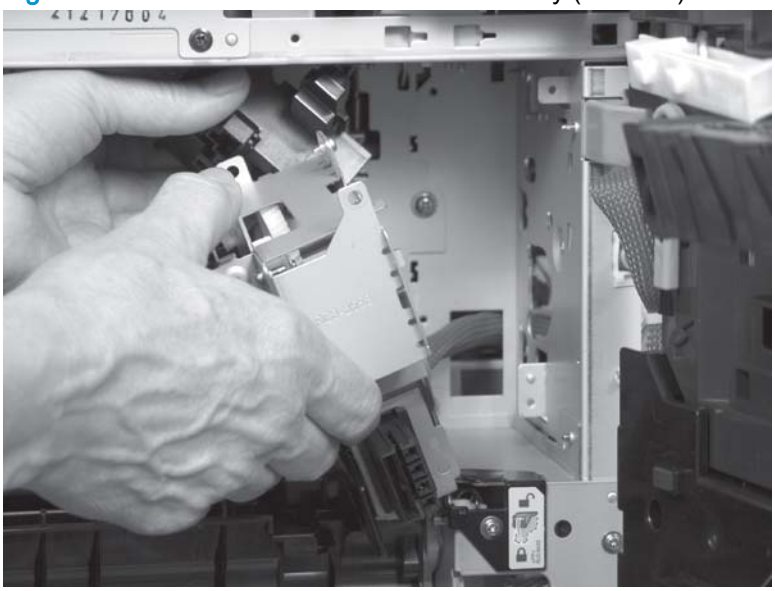
9. Remove four screws.

Figure 1-445 Remove the fuser drive assembly (9 of 10)



10. Remove the fuser drive assembly.

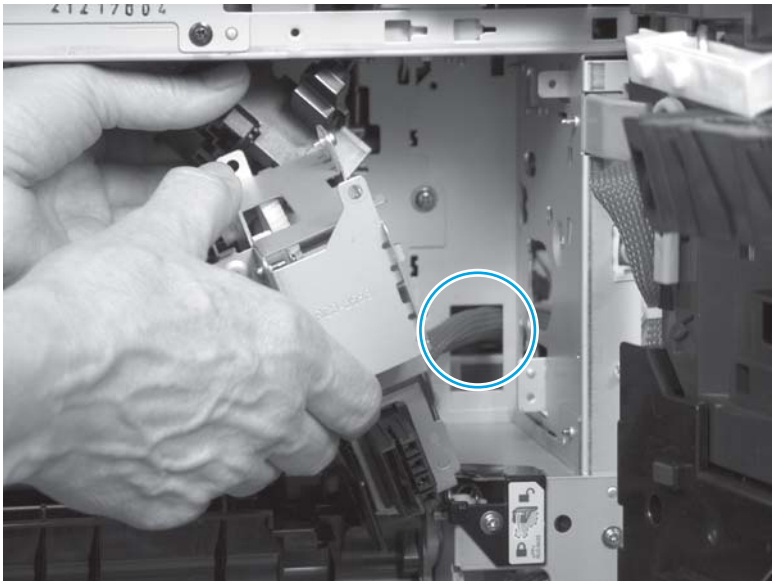
Figure 1-446 Remove the fuser drive assembly (10 of 10)



Reinstall the fuser drive assembly

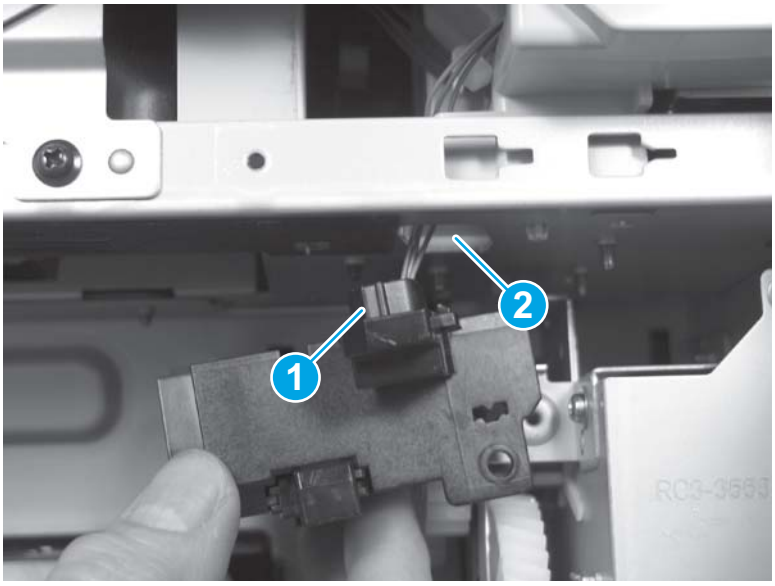
1. Make sure that the wire harness is routed through the correct opening in the chassis when reinstalling the assembly.

Figure 1-447 Reinstall the fuser drive assembly (1 of 4)



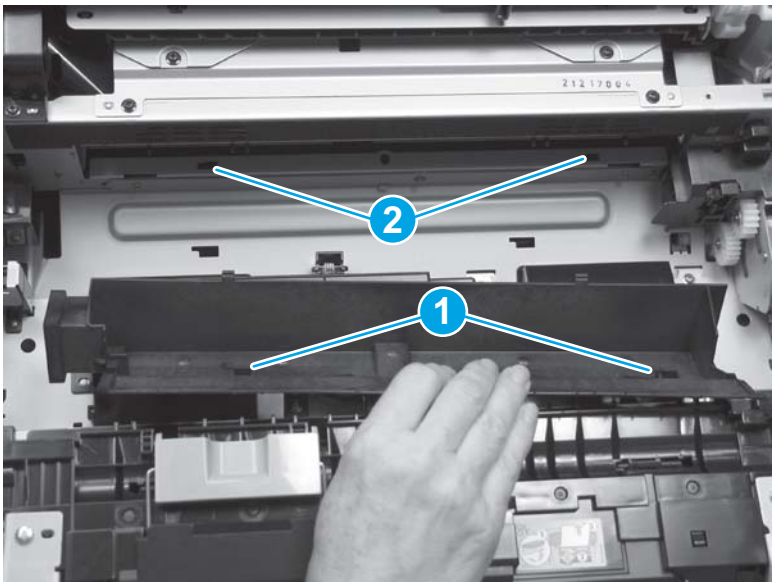
2. When reinstalling the fuser cover open detection sensor holder, make sure that the tab on the holder (callout 1) is installed in the opening in the chassis (callout 2).

Figure 1-448 Reinstall the fuser drive assembly (2 of 4)



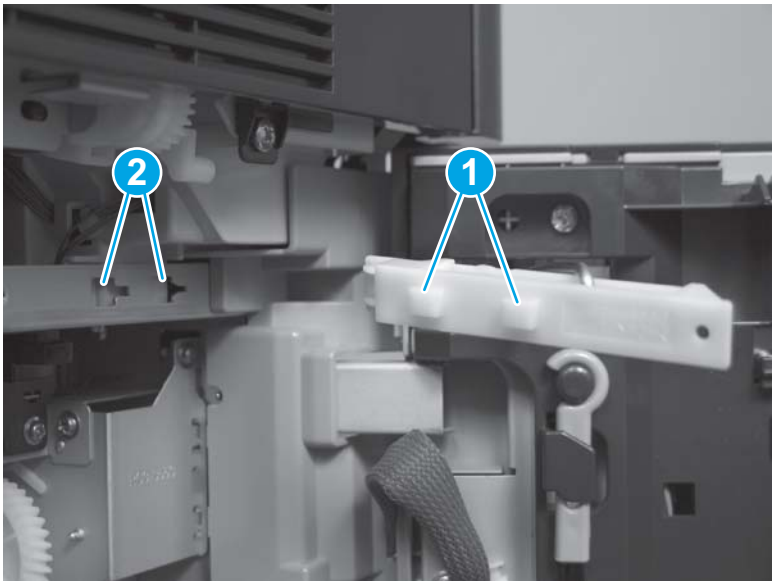
3. When reinstalling the duct, make sure that the tabs on the duct (callout 1) are installed in the slots in the chassis (callout 2).

Figure 1-449 Reinstall the fuser drive assembly (3 of 4)



4. When reinstalling the retainer arm, make sure that the tabs on the arm (callout 1) are installed in the slots in the chassis (callout 2).

Figure 1-450 Reinstall the fuser drive assembly (4 of 4)



Scanner cover

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

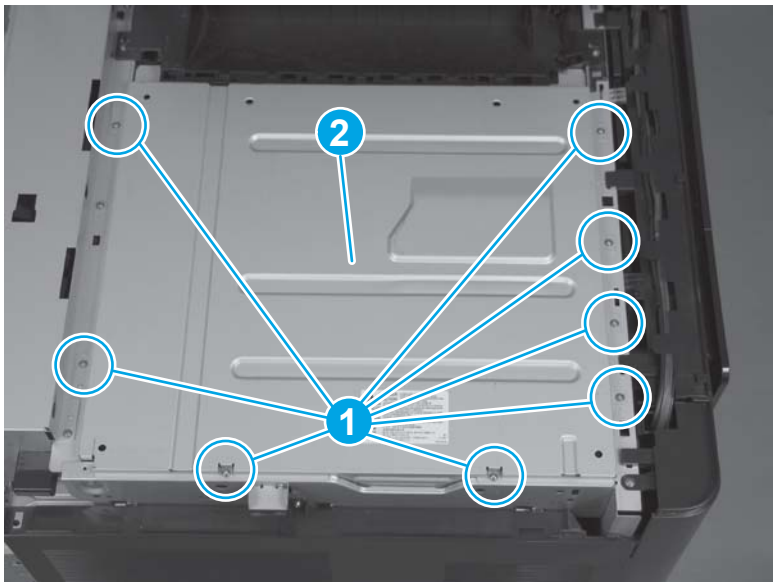
- Control panel assembly (M880). See Control panel assembly (M880) on page 53.
- Scanner back cover (M880). See Scanner back cover (M880) on page 88.
- Remove one of the following, depending upon product configuration:
  - Face-down bin. See Face-down bin on page 101.
  - Intermediate paper transport unit (IPTU). See IPTU assembly on page 437.
- Switch back cover. See Switch back cover on page 105.
- Right upper rear cover (M855). See Right upper rear cover (M855) on page 96.
- Right upper rear cover (M880). See Right upper rear cover (M880) on page 108.
- Front top cover. See Front top cover on page 115.
- Rear top cover. See Rear top cover (M855) on page 116.
- Document feeder assembly (M880). See Document feeder assembly (M880) on page 154.
- Scanner assembly (M880). See Scanner assembly (M880) on page 162.

Remove the scanner cover

Remove eight screws (callout 1) and then remove the scanner cover (callout 2).

CAUTION: Be careful. Do not drop any of the screws into the product.

Figure 1-451 Remove the scanner cover



Laser/scanner assembly (yellow and magenta)

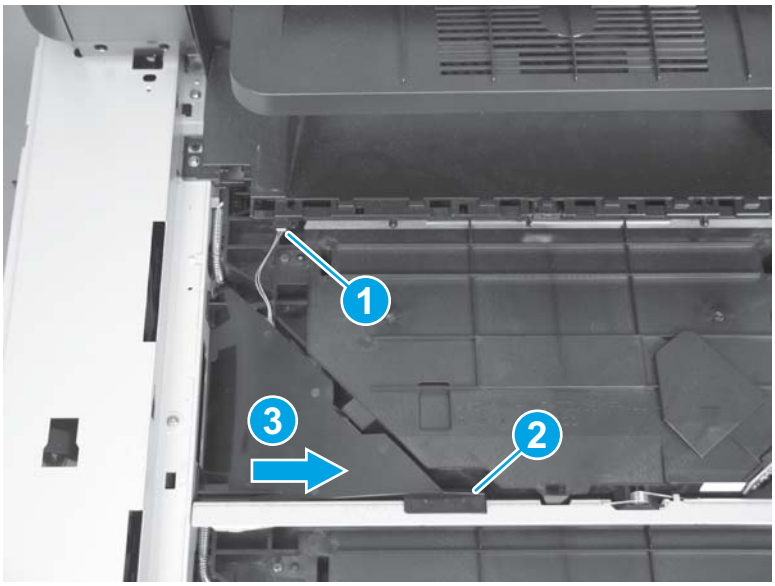
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Scanner back cover (M880). See Scanner back cover (M880) on page 88.
- Remove one of the following, depending upon product configuration:
  - Face-down bin. See Face-down bin on page 101.
  - Intermediate paper transport unit (IPTU). See IPTU assembly on page 437.
- Switch back cover. See Switch back cover on page 105.
- Right upper rear cover (M855). See Right upper rear cover (M855) on page 96.
- Right upper rear cover (M880). See Right upper rear cover (M880) on page 108.
- Front top cover. See Front top cover on page 115.
- Rear top cover. See Rear top cover (M855) on page 116.
- Document feeder assembly (M880). See Document feeder assembly (M880) on page 154.
- Scanner assembly (M880). See Scanner assembly (M880) on page 162.
- Scanner cover. See Scanner cover on page 306.

Remove the laser/scanner assembly (yellow and magenta)

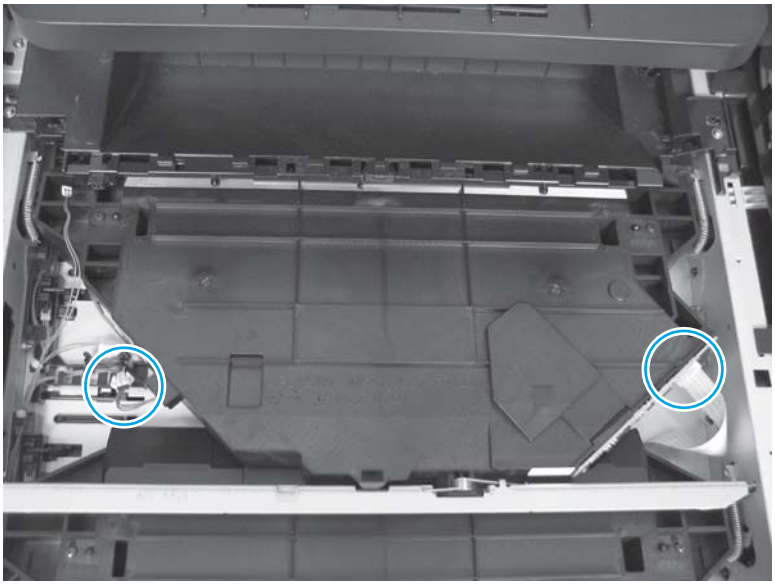
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then slide the corner cover to the right (callout 3) to remove it.

   Figure 1-452 Remove the laser/scanner assembly (yellow and magenta; 1 of 6)

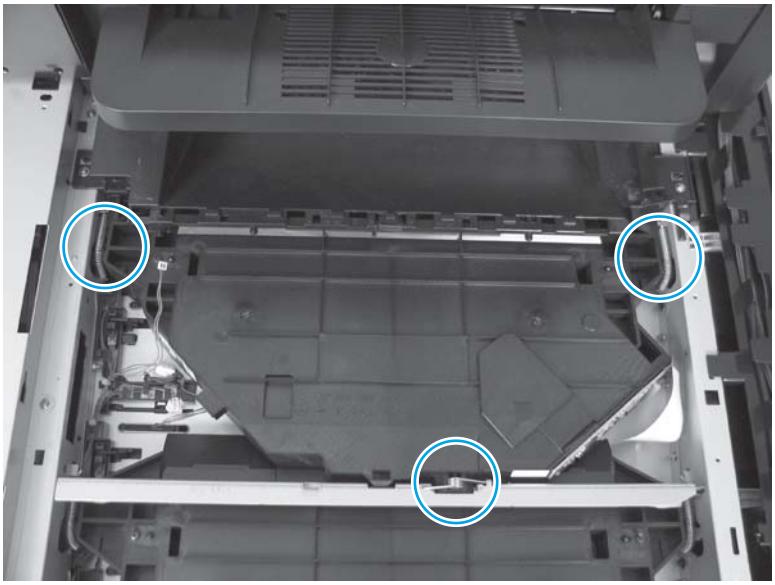
2. Disconnect two connectors.

Figure 1-453 Remove the laser/scanner assembly (yellow and magenta; 2 of 6)



3. Remove three springs.

Figure 1-454 Remove the laser/scanner assembly (yellow and magenta; 3 of 6)

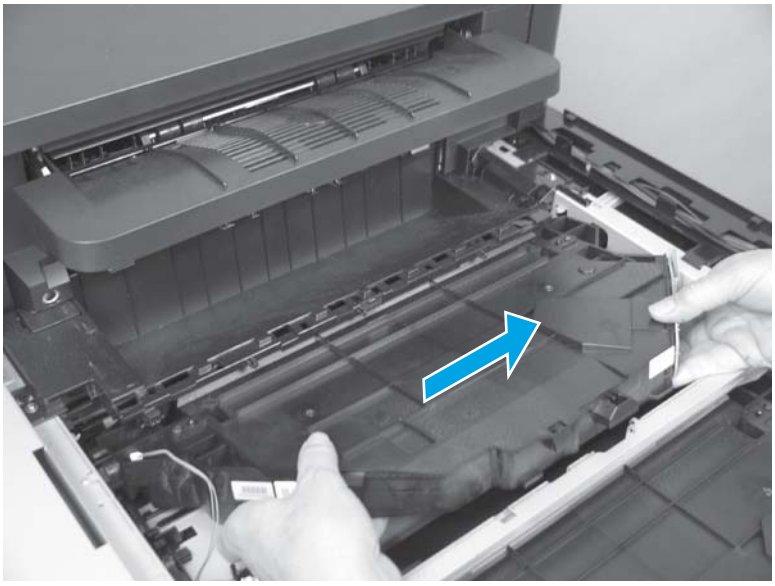


TIP: Hold the spring in place with one hand while releasing it with needle-nose pliers in the other hand.

Figure 1-455 Remove the laser/scanner assembly (yellow and magenta; 4 of 6)

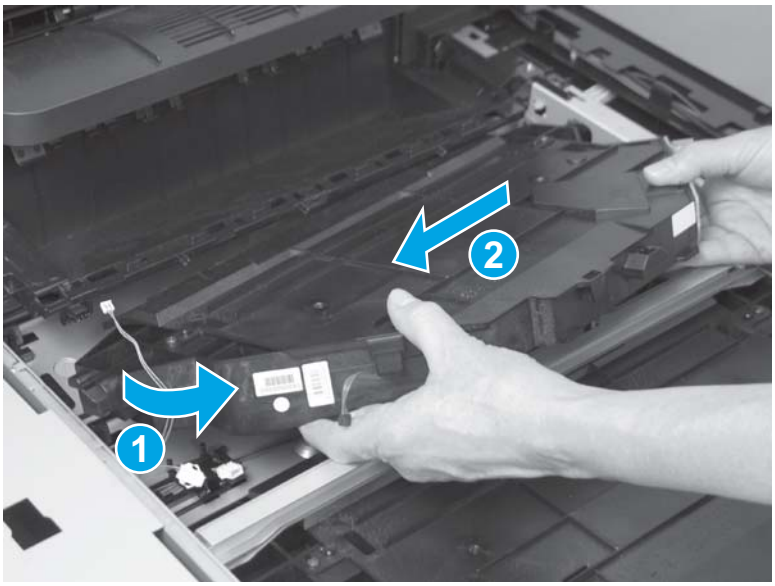
4. Lift up on the edge of the assembly closest to the left door, and then slide the assembly toward the front of the product.

Figure 1-456 Remove the laser/scanner assembly (yellow and magenta; 5 of 6)



5. Rotate the left side of the assembly toward the left door (callout 1), and then slide the assembly toward the back of the product (callout 2) to remove it.

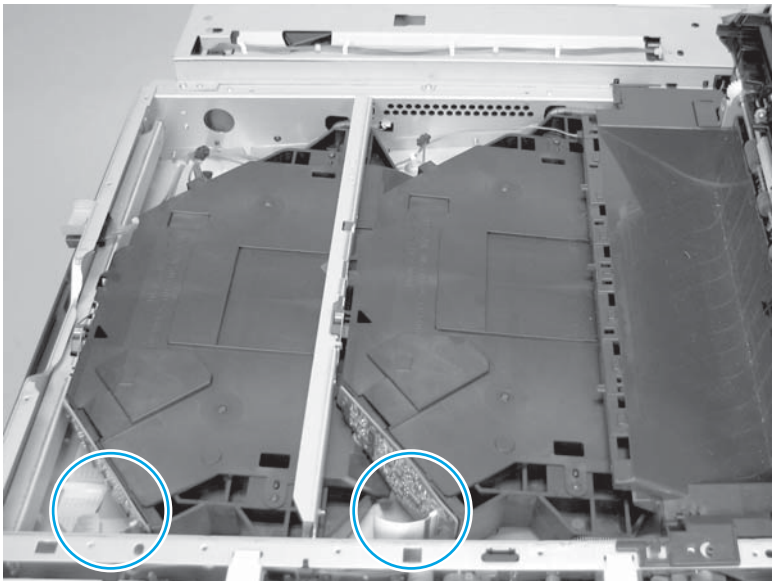
Figure 1-457 Remove the laser/scanner assembly (yellow and magenta; 6 of 6)



Reinstall the laser/scanner assembly (yellow and magenta)

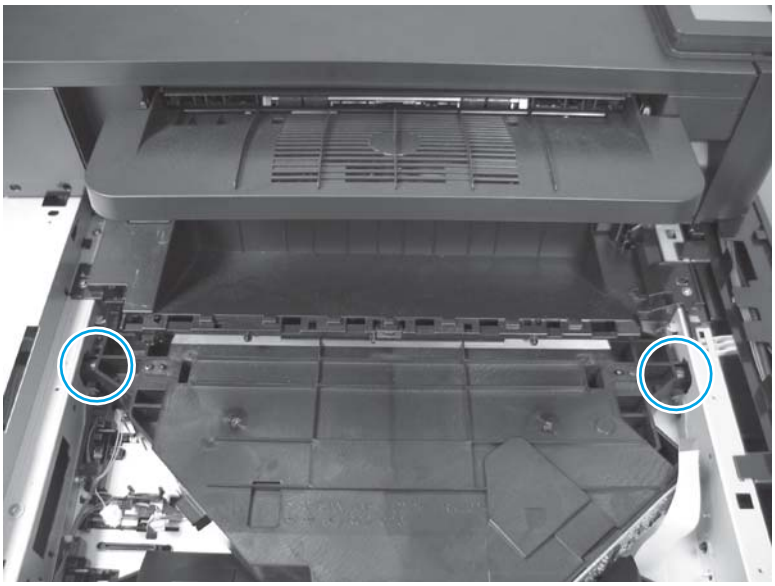
1. CAUTION: Use care when reinstalling the cables for the laser/scanner assemblies. The traces on the cable ends can be damaged when reinserted.

Figure 1-458 Reinstall the laser/scanner assembly (yellow and magenta; 1 of 2)



2. CAUTION: Make sure that the tabs on each side of the laser/scanner are fully seated.

Figure 1-459 Reinstall the laser/scanner assembly (yellow and magenta; 2 of 2)



Laser/scanner assembly (cyan and black)

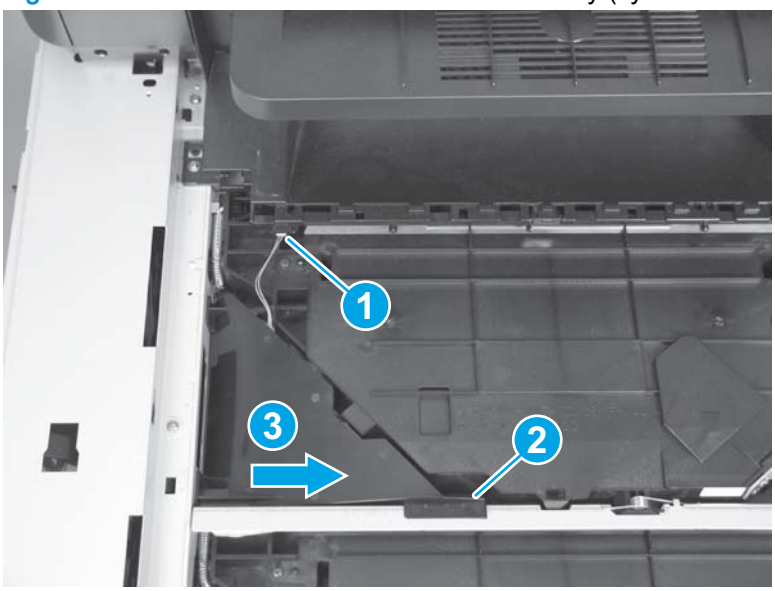
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Scanner back cover (M880). See Scanner back cover (M880) on page 88.
- Remove one of the following, depending upon product configuration:
  - Face-down bin. See Face-down bin on page 101.
  - Intermediate paper transport unit (IPTU). See IPTU assembly on page 437.
- Right upper rear cover (M855). See Right upper rear cover (M855) on page 96.
- Right upper rear cover (M880). See Right upper rear cover (M880) on page 108.
- Front top cover. See Front top cover on page 115.
- Rear top cover. See Rear top cover (M855) on page 116.
- Document feeder assembly (M880). See Document feeder assembly (M880) on page 154.
- Scanner assembly (M880). See Scanner assembly (M880) on page 162.
- Scanner cover. See Scanner cover on page 306.

Remove the laser/scanner assembly (cyan and black)

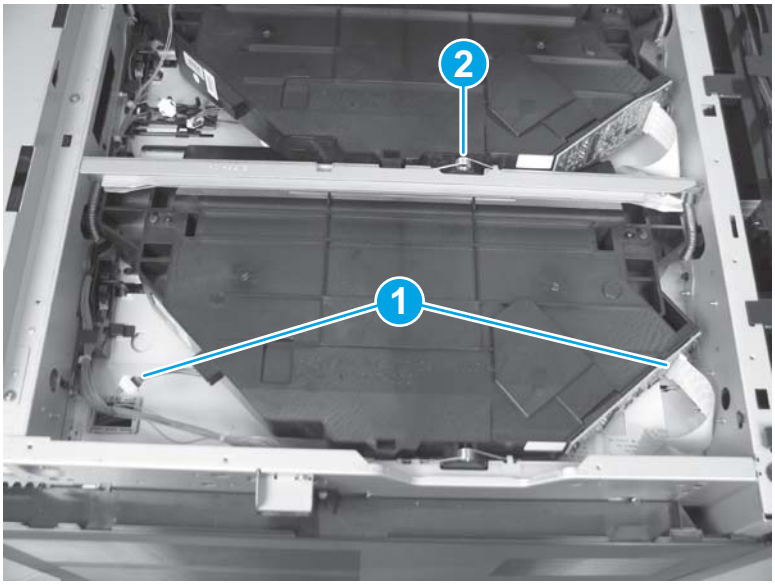
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then slide the corner cover to the right (callout 3) to remove it.

Figure 1-460 Remove the laser/scanner assembly (cyan and black; 1 of 8)



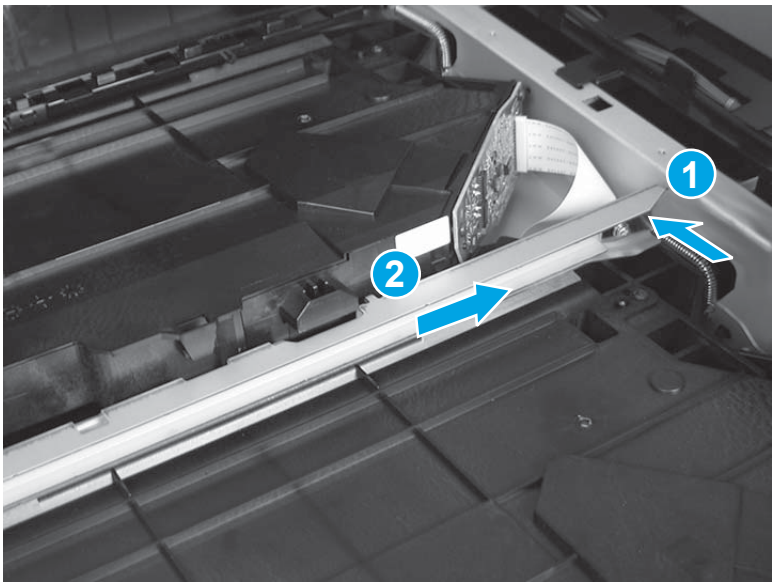
2. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove one spring (callout 2).

Figure 1-461 Remove the laser/scanner assembly (cyan and black; 2 of 8)



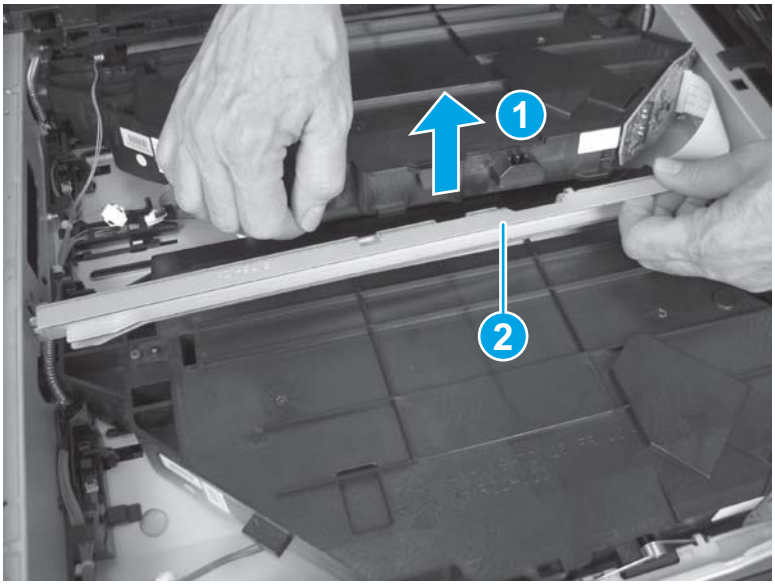
3. Press and hold one spring-loaded tab (callout 1), and then slide the sheet-metal bar toward the front door (callout 2) to release it.

Figure 1-462 Remove the laser/scanner assembly (cyan and black; 3 of 8)



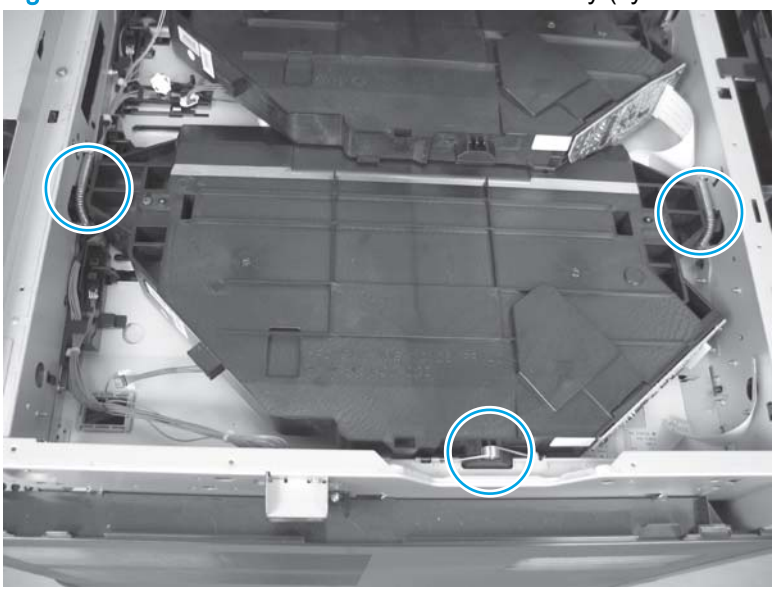
4. Lift up the edge of the laser/scanner assembly (yellow and magenta; callout 1), and then remove the bar (callout 2).

Figure 1-463 Remove the laser/scanner assembly (cyan and black; 4 of 8)



5. Remove three springs.

Figure 1-464 Remove the laser/scanner assembly (cyan and black; 5 of 8)

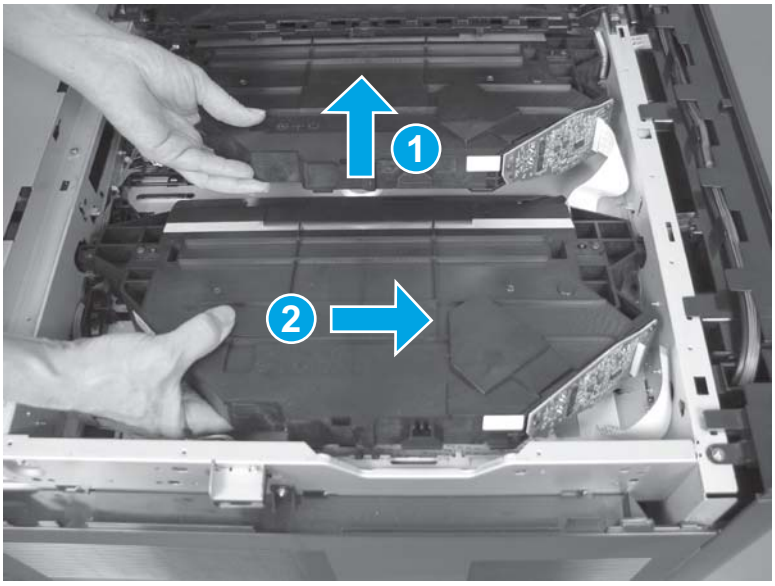


TIP: Hold the spring in place with one hand while releasing it with needle-nose pliers in the other hand.

Figure 1-465 Remove the laser/scanner assembly (cyan and black; 6 of 8)

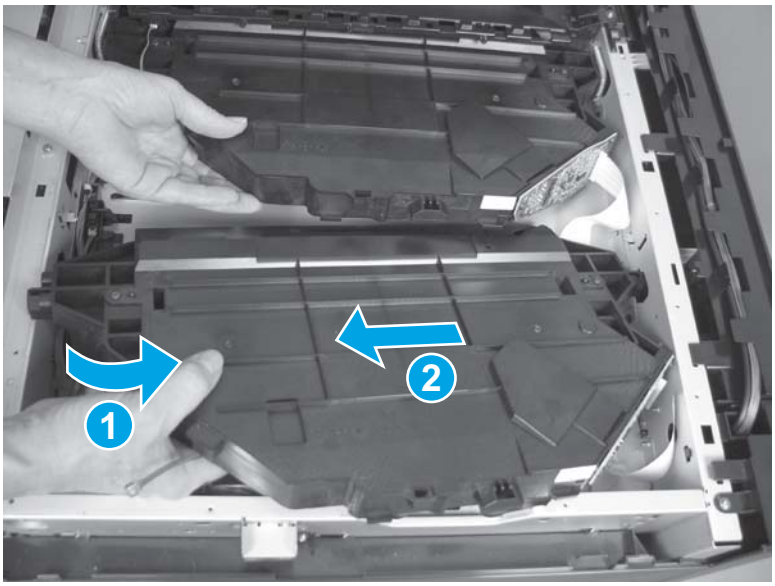
6. Lift up the edge of the laser/scanner assembly (yellow and magenta) (callout 1), and then slide the laser/scanner (cyan and black) to the right (callout 2).

Figure 1-466 Remove the laser/scanner assembly (cyan and black; 7 of 8)



7. Lift up the edge of the laser/scanner assembly (yellow and magenta), rotate the left side of the assembly towards the left door (callout 1), and then slide the assembly toward the back of the product (callout 2) to remove it.

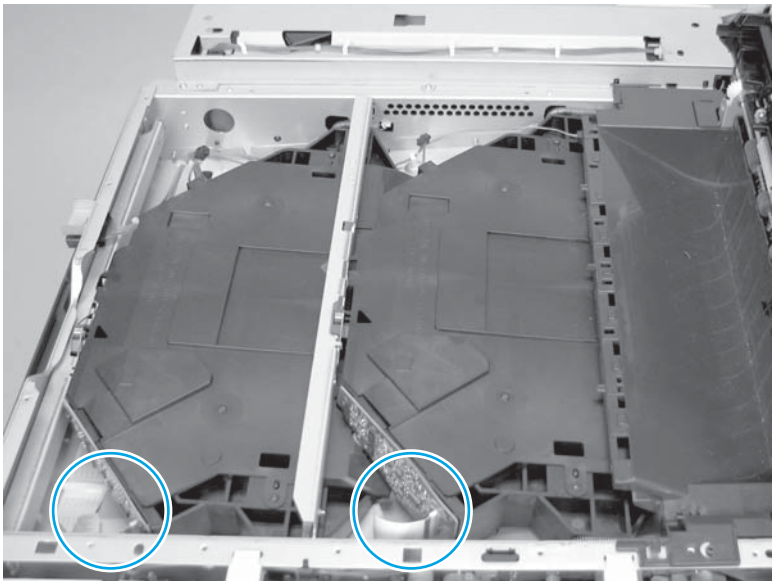
Figure 1-467 Remove the laser/scanner assembly (cyan and black; 8 of 8)



Reinstall the laser/scanner assembly (cyan and black)

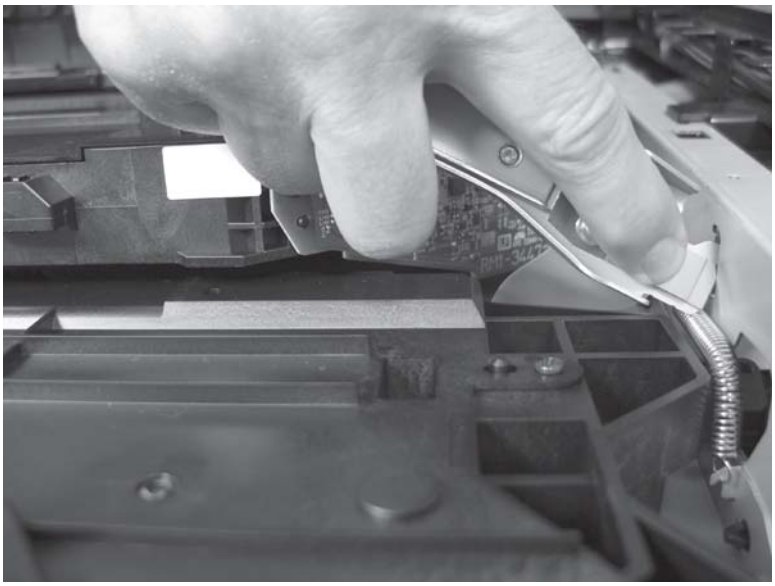
1. ⚠ **CAUTION:** Use care when reinstalling the cables for the laser/scanner assemblies. The traces on the cable ends can be damaged when reinserted.

Figure 1-468 Reinstall the laser/scanner assembly (cyan and black; 1 of 3)



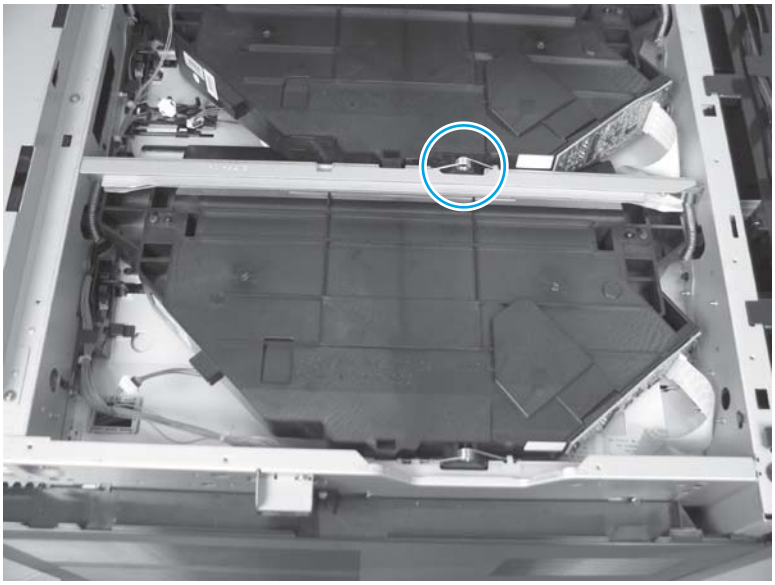
2. When reinstalling the bar, install the hook on the bar in the slot in the chassis as shown below.

Figure 1-469 Reinstall the laser/scanner assembly (cyan and black; 2 of 3)



3. Make sure that the spring on the laser/scanner assembly (yellow and magenta) is in place.

Figure 1-470 Reinstall the laser/scanner assembly (cyan and black; 3 of 3)



Duplex reverse assembly (M855)

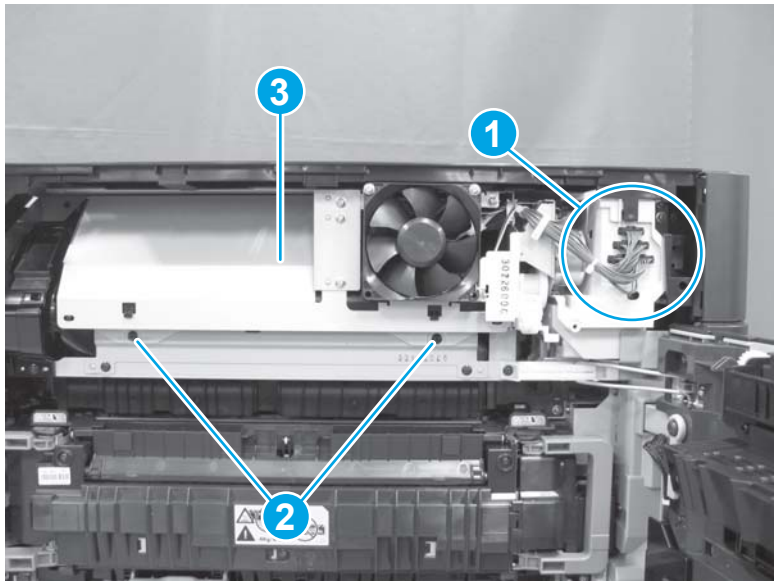
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Switch back cover. See Switch back cover on page 105.

Remove the duplex reverse assembly (M855)

Disconnect four connectors (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the duplex reverse assembly (callout 3).

Figure 1-471 Remove the duplex reverse assembly (M855)



Duplex reverse assembly (M880)

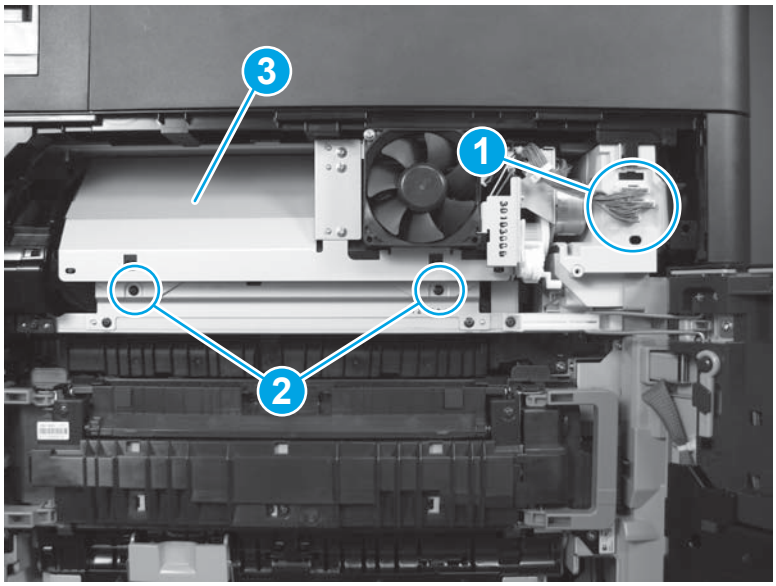
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Switch back cover. See Switch back cover on page 105.

Remove the duplex reverse assembly (M880)

Disconnect three connectors (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the duplex reverse assembly (callout 3).

Figure 1-472 Remove the duplex reverse assembly (M880)



VOC fan (M855)

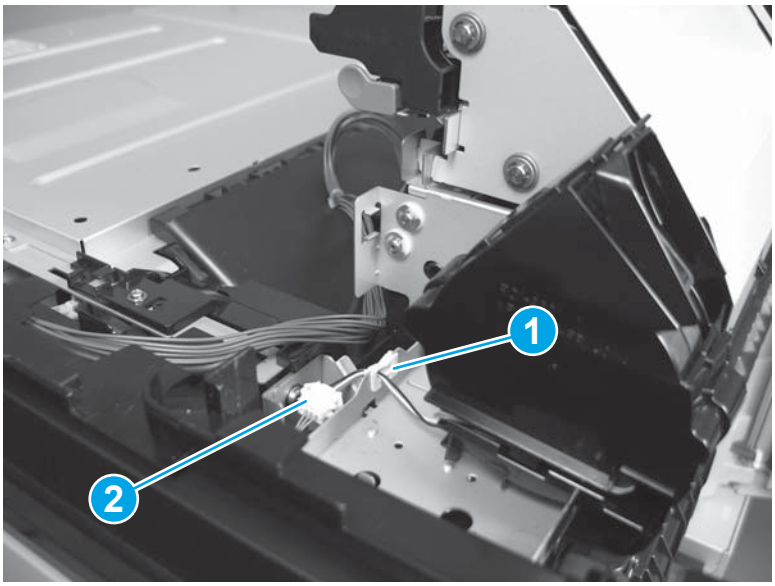
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Switch back tray. See Switch back tray on page 22.
- Control panel (M855). See Control panel assembly (M855) on page 47.
- Right upper rear cover (M855). See Right upper rear cover (M855) on page 96.
- Hardware integration pocket (HIP) cover (M855). See Hardware integration pocket (HIP) cover (M855) on page 97.
- Remove one of the following, depending upon product configuration:
  - Face-down bin. See Face-down bin on page 101.
  - Intermediate paper transport unit (IPTU). See IPTU assembly on page 437.
- Switch back cover. See Switch back cover on page 105.
- Right upper front cover (M855). See Right upper front cover (M855) on page 120.
- Front top cover. See Front top cover on page 115.
- Rear top cover. See Rear top cover (M855) on page 116.
- Right upper cover (M855). See Right upper cover (M855) on page 124.

Remove the VOC fan (M855)

1. At the top of the product, release the wire harness from the retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect one connector (callout 2).

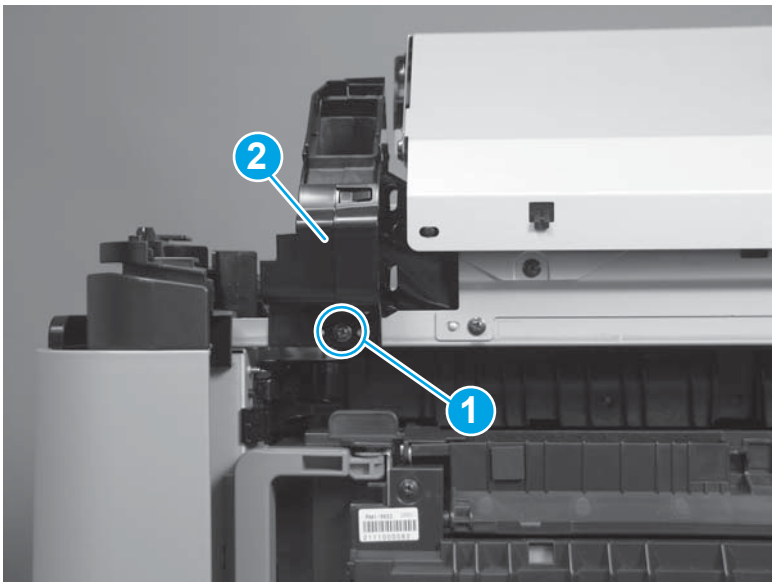
   Figure 1-473 Remove the VOC fan (M855; 1 of 2)

2. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the VOC fan (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip When the fan is reinstalled, make sure that the tab on the bottom fits into the slot provided on the chassis.

Figure 1-474 Remove the VOC fan (M855; 2 of 2)



VOC fan (M880)

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Switch back tray. See Switch back tray on page 22.
- Scanner back cover (M880). See Scanner back cover (M880) on page 88.
- Remove one of the following, depending upon product configuration:
  - Face-down bin. See Face-down bin on page 101.
  - Intermediate paper transport unit (IPTU). See IPTU assembly on page 437.
- Switch back cover. See Switch back cover on page 105.
- Rear upper rear cover (M880). See Rear upper rear cover (M880) on page 107.
- Right upper rear cover (M880). See Right upper rear cover (M880) on page 108.
- Rear upper MFP cover (M880). See Rear upper MFP cover (M880) on page 109.
- Left upper rear cover (M880). See Left upper rear cover and rear upper B cover (M880) on page 111.
- Rear upper front cover. See Rear upper front cover (M880) on page 113.
- Front top cover. See Front top cover on page 115.
- Right upper front cover (M880). See Right upper front cover (M880) on page 122.
- Document feeder assembly (M880). See Document feeder assembly (M880) on page 154.
- Scanner assembly (M880). See Scanner assembly (M880) on page 162.
- Duplex reverse assembly (M880). See Duplex reverse assembly (M880) on page 320.

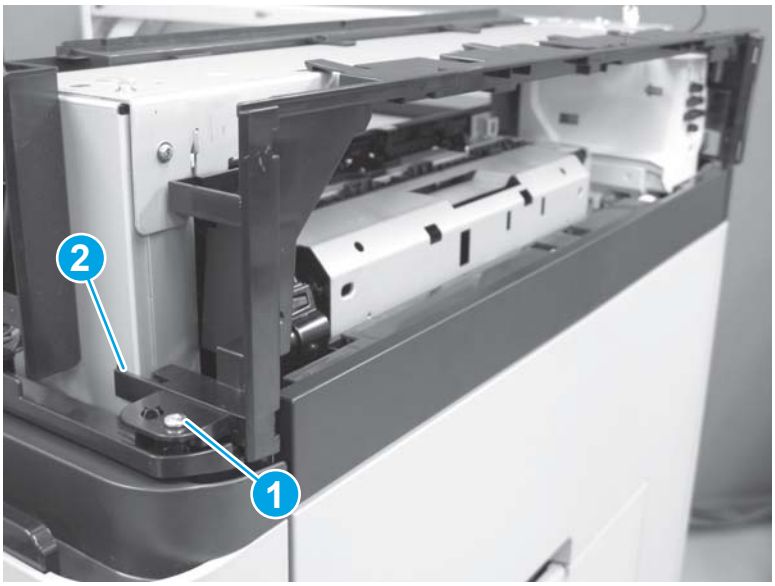
Remove the VOC fan (M880)

1. Remove one screw.

Figure 1-475 Remove the VOC fan (M880; 1 of 6)

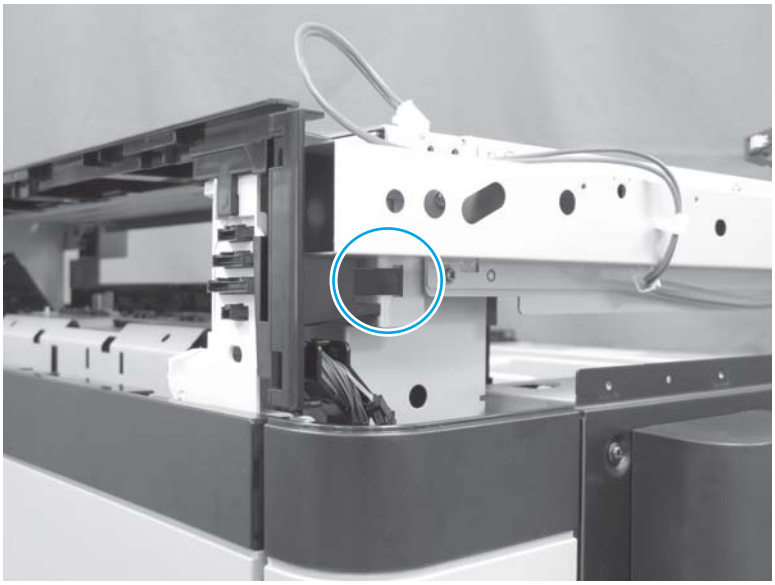
2. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release one tab (callout 2).

Figure 1-476 Remove the VOC fan (M880; 2 of 6)



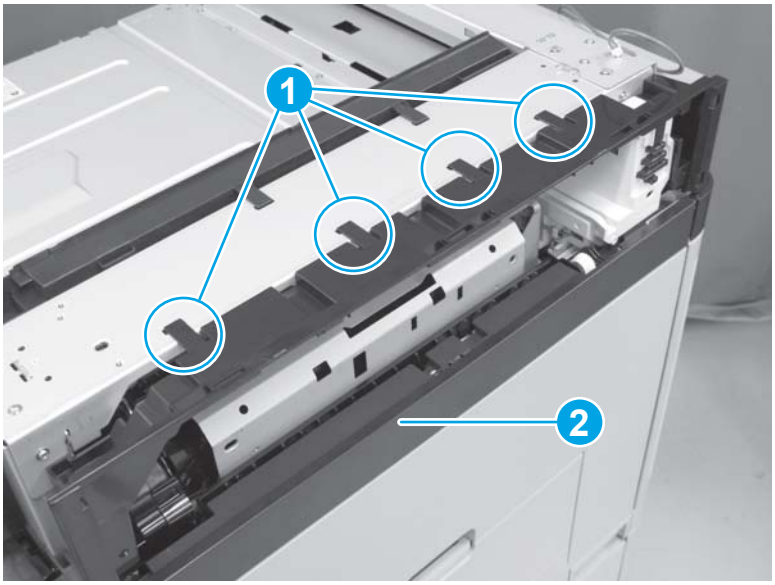
3. Release one tab.

Figure 1-477 Remove the VOC fan (M880; 3 of 6)



4. Release four tabs (callout 1), and then remove the switch back inner cover (callout 2).

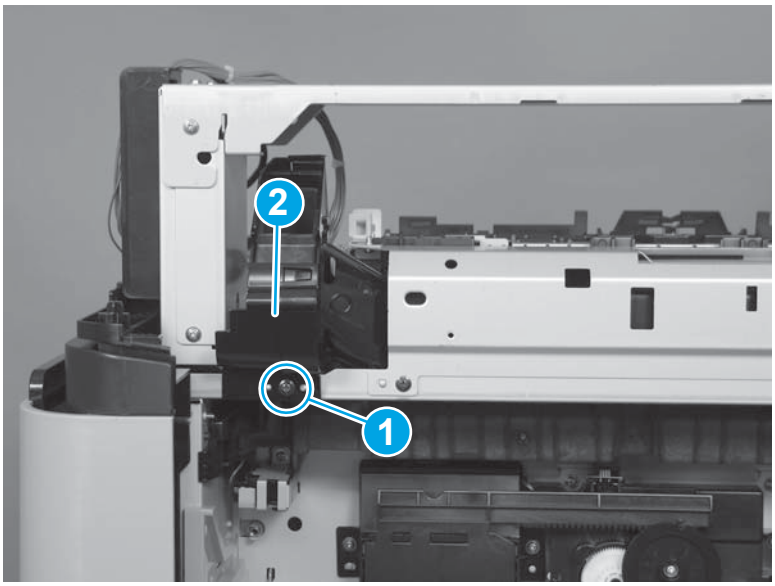
Figure 1-478 Remove the VOC fan (M880; 4 of 6)



5. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then lift the VOC fan (callout 2) away from the product.

CAUTION: The VOC fan is still attached to the product by a wire harness. Do not attempt to completely remove the VOC fan.

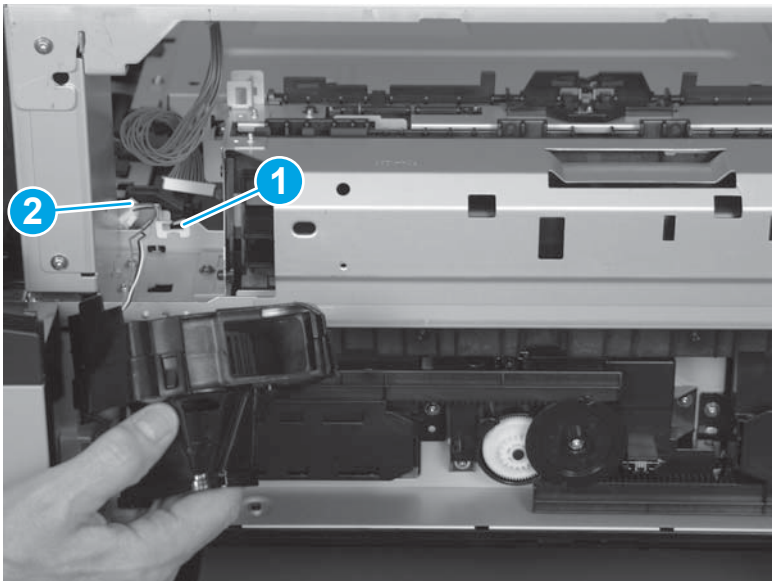
Figure 1-479 Remove the VOC fan (M880; 5 of 6)



6. Release the wire harness from the retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect one connector (callout 2) to remove the VOC fan.

Reinstallation tip When the fan is reinstalled, make sure that the tab on the bottom fits into the slot provided on the chassis.

Figure 1-480 Remove the VOC fan (M880; 6 of 6)



Face-down delivery assembly(M855)

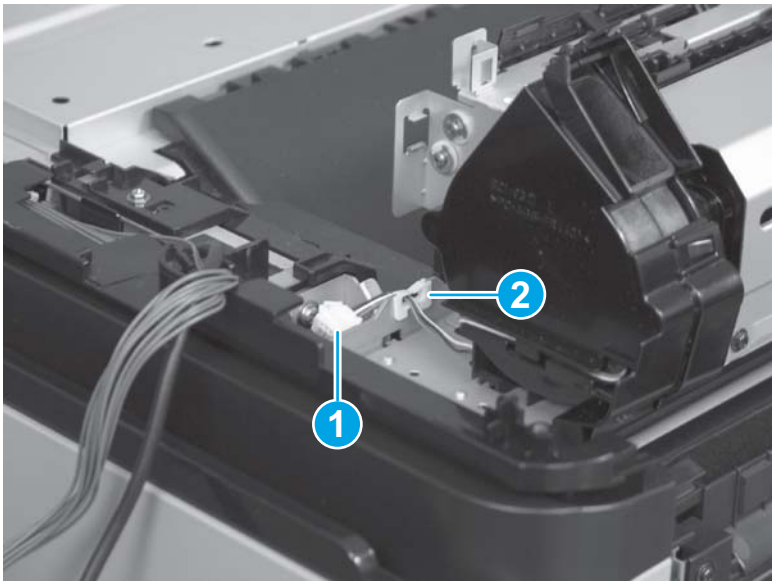
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Switch back tray. See Switch back tray on page 22.
- Control panel (M855). See Control panel assembly (M855) on page 47.
- Right upper rear cover (M855). See Right upper rear cover (M855) on page 96.
- Hardware integration pocket (HIP) cover (M855). See Hardware integration pocket (HIP) cover (M855) on page 97.
- Remove one of the following, depending upon product configuration:
  - Face-down bin. See Face-down bin on page 101.
  - Intermediate paper transport unit (IPTU). See IPTU assembly on page 437.
- Switch back cover. See Switch back cover on page 105.
- Right upper front cover (M855). See Right upper front cover (M855) on page 120.
- Front top cover. See Front top cover on page 115.
- Rear top cover. See Rear top cover (M855) on page 116.
- Right upper cover (M855). See Right upper cover (M855) on page 124.
- Duplex reverse assembly (M855). See Duplex reverse assembly (M855) on page 319.

Remove the face-down delivery assembly (M855)

1. At the top of the product, disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then release the wire harness from the retainer (callout 2).

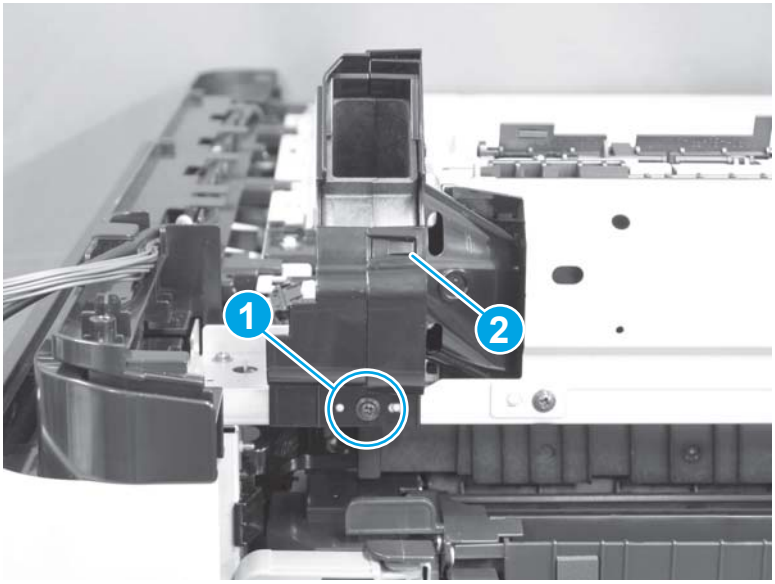
   Figure 1-481 Remove the face-down delivery assembly (M855; 1 of 8)

2. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the VOC fan (callout 2).

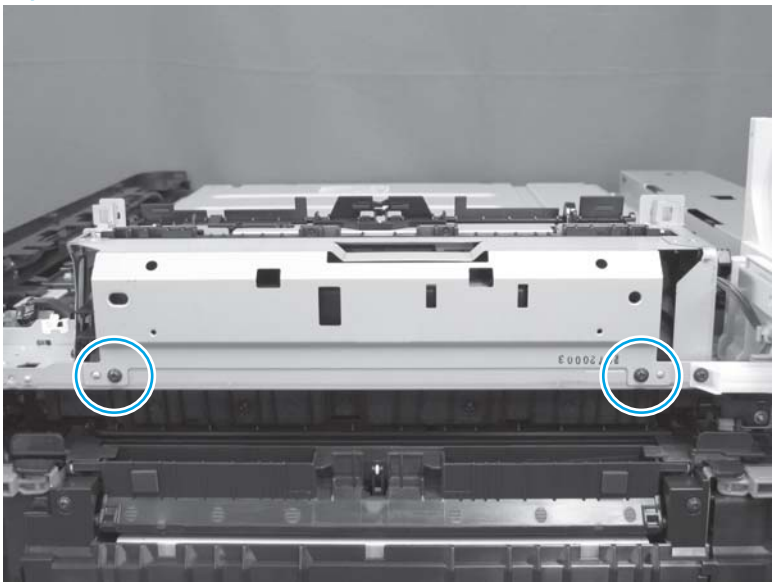
Reinstallation tip When the fan is reinstalled, make sure that the tab on the bottom fits into the slot provided on the chassis.

Figure 1-482 Remove the face-down delivery assembly (M855; 2 of 8)



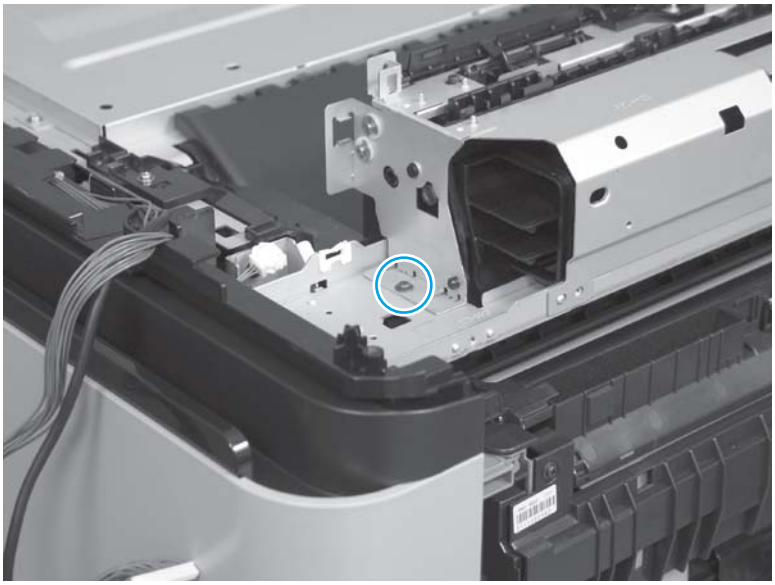
3. Remove two screws.

Figure 1-483 Remove the face-down delivery assembly (M855; 3 of 8)



4. Remove one screw.

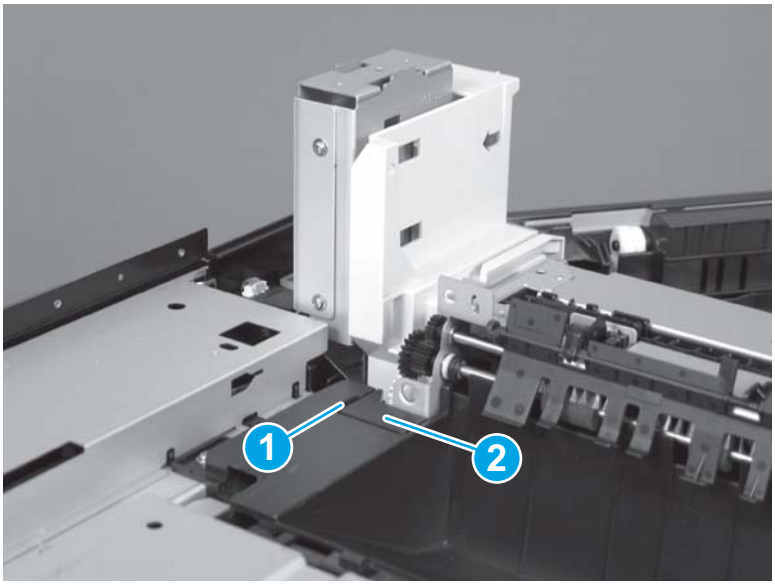
Figure 1-484 Remove the face-down delivery assembly (M855; 4 of 8)



5. Release one tab (callout 1), and then remove one cover (callout 2).

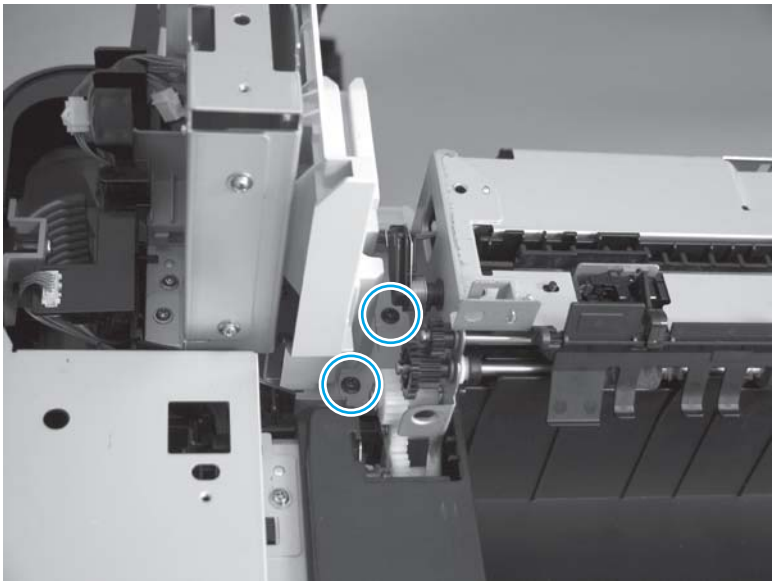
TIP: Use the arrow embossed on the cover to locate the tab.

Figure 1-485 Remove the face-down delivery assembly (M855; 5 of 8)



6. Remove two screws.

Figure 1-486 Remove the face-down delivery assembly (M855; 6 of 8)

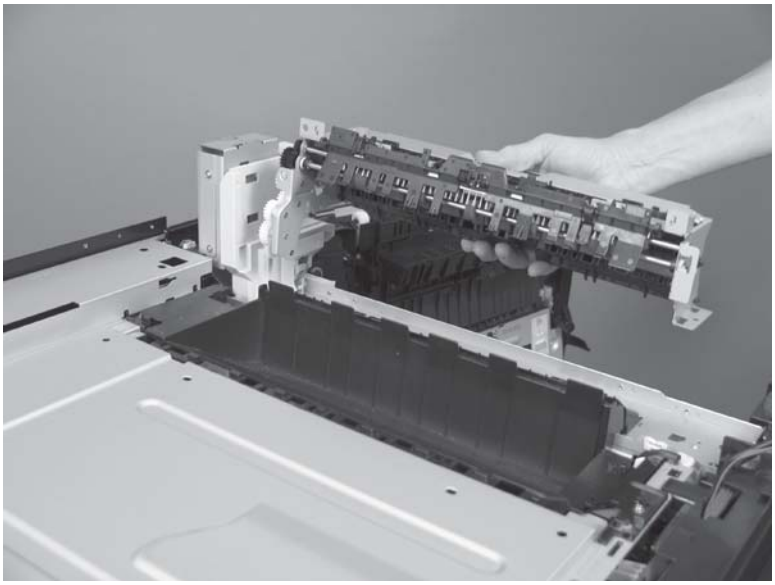


7. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 1-487 Remove the face-down delivery assembly (M855; 7 of 8)

8. Remove the assembly.

Figure 1-488 Remove the face-down delivery assembly (M855; 8 of 8)



Face-down delivery assembly (M880)

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Switch back tray. See Switch back tray on page 22.
- Scanner back cover (M880). See Scanner back cover (M880) on page 88.
- Remove one of the following, depending upon product configuration:
  - Face-down bin. See Face-down bin on page 101.
  - Intermediate paper transport unit (IPTU). See IPTU assembly on page 437.
- Switch back cover. See Switch back cover on page 105.
- Rear upper rear cover (M880). See Rear upper rear cover (M880) on page 107.
- Right upper rear cover (M880). See Right upper rear cover (M880) on page 108.
- Rear upper MFP cover (M880). See Rear upper MFP cover (M880) on page 109.
- Left upper rear cover (M880). See Left upper rear cover and rear upper B cover (M880) on page 111.
- Rear upper front cover. See Rear upper front cover (M880) on page 113.
- Front top cover. See Front top cover on page 115.
- Right upper front cover (M880). See Right upper front cover (M880) on page 122.
- Document feeder assembly (M880). See Document feeder assembly (M880) on page 154.
- Scanner assembly (M880). See Scanner assembly (M880) on page 162.
- Duplex reverse assembly (M880). See Duplex reverse assembly (M880) on page 320.

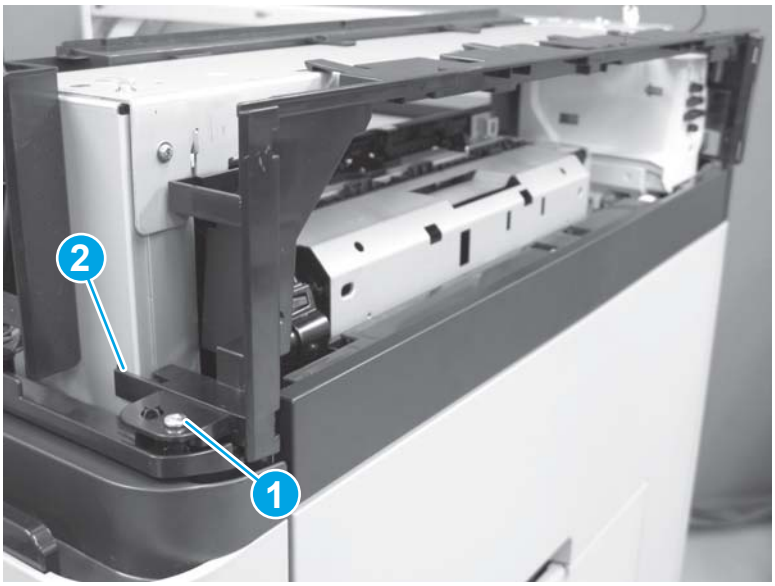
Remove the face-down delivery assembly (M880)

1. Remove one screw.

Figure 1-489 Remove the face-down delivery assembly (M880; 1 of 19)

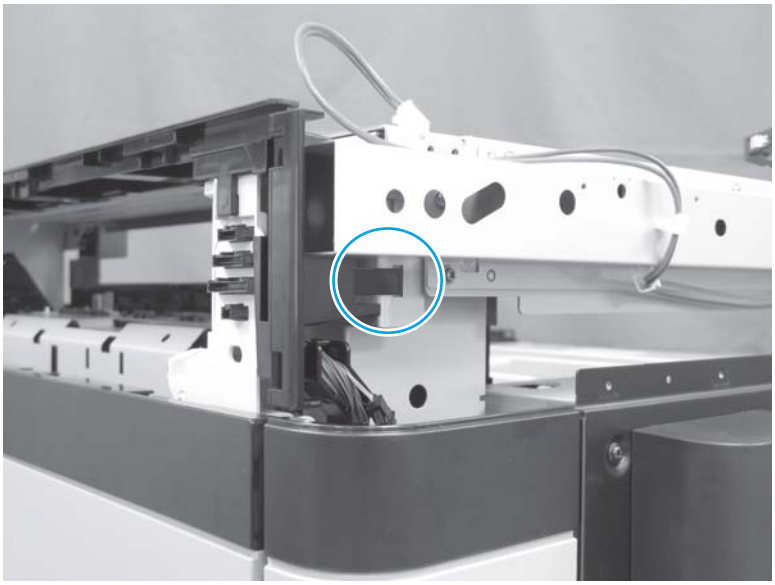
2. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release one tab (callout 2).

Figure 1-490 Remove the face-down delivery assembly (M880; 2 of 19)



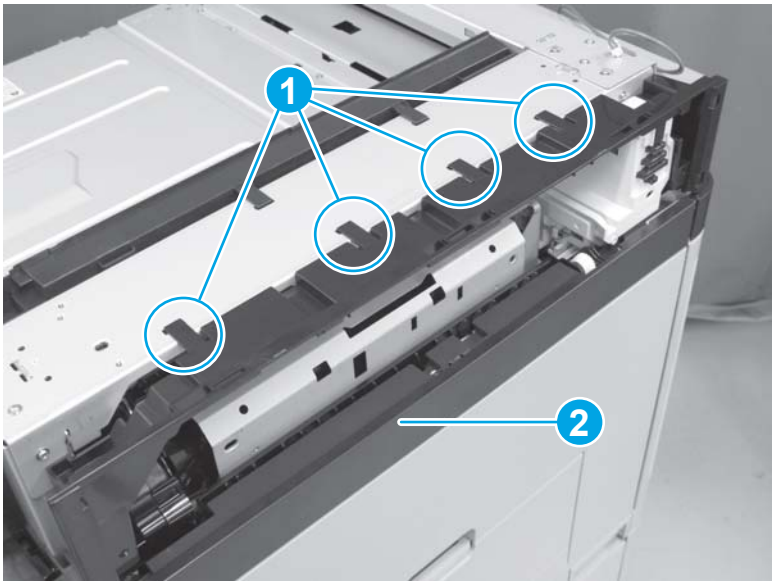
3. Release one tab.

Figure 1-491 Remove the face-down delivery assembly (M880; 3 of 19)



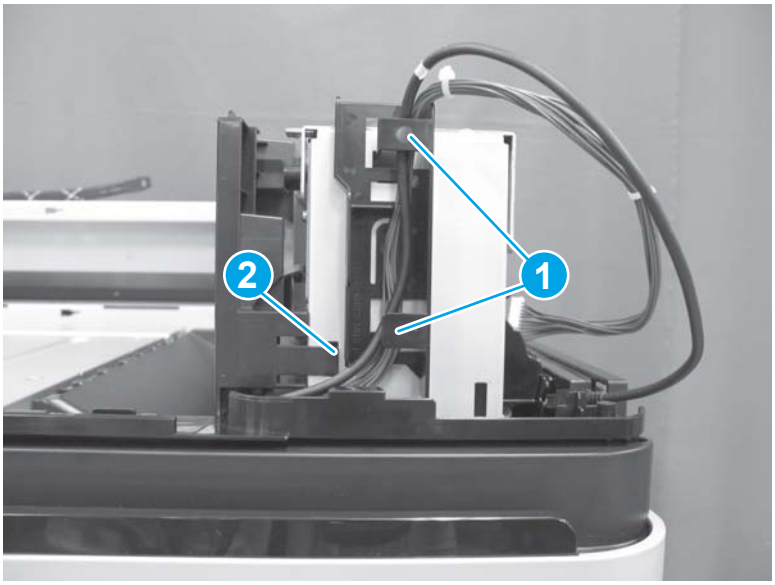
4. Release four tabs (callout 1), and then remove the switch back inner cover (callout 2).

Figure 1-492 Remove the face-down delivery assembly (M880; 4 of 19)



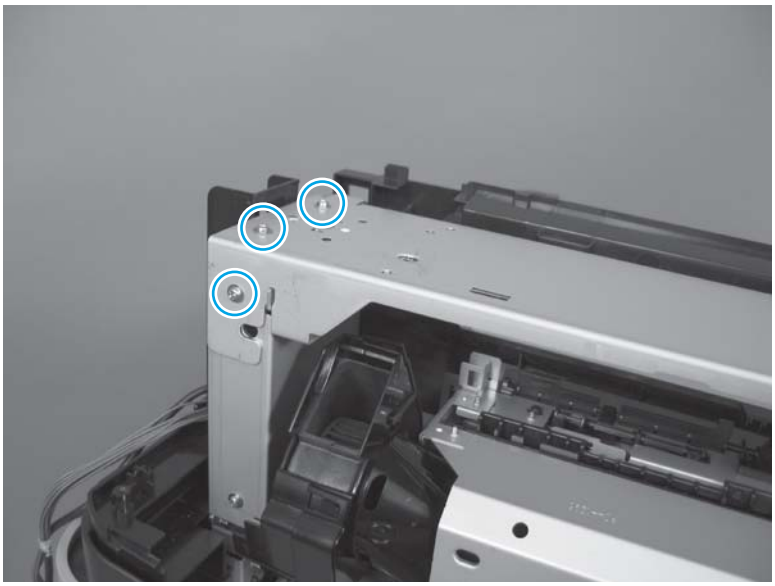
5. Release the wire harness and USB cable from the guide (callout 1), and then release one tab (callout 2).

Figure 1-493 Remove the face-down delivery assembly (M880; 5 of 19)



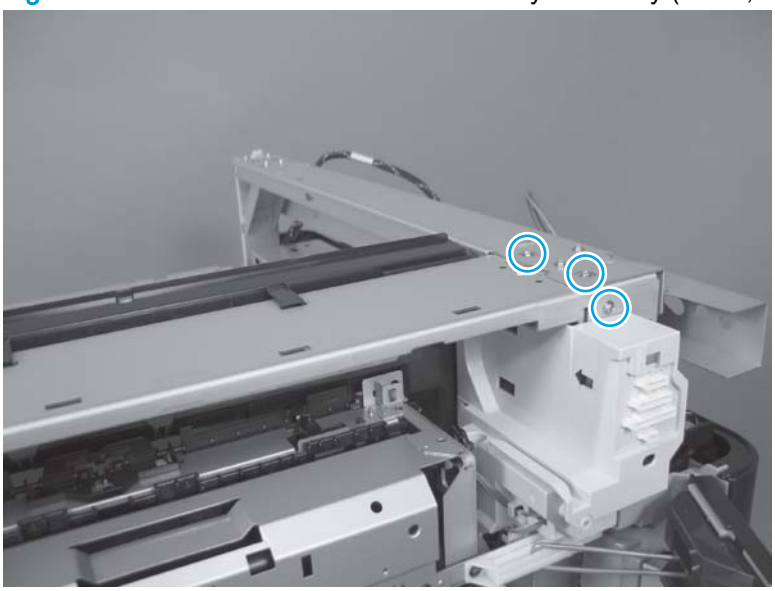
6. Remove three screws.

Figure 1-494 Remove the face-down delivery assembly (M880; 6 of 19)



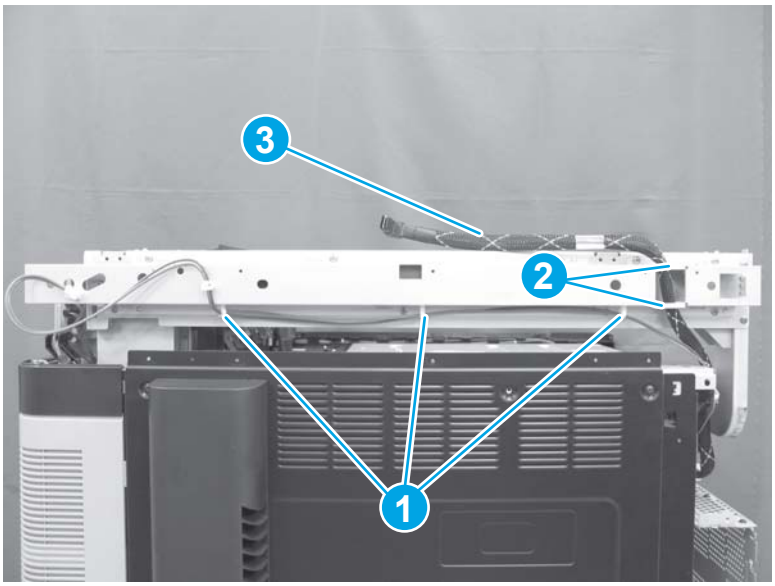
7. Remove three screws.

Figure 1-495 Remove the face-down delivery assembly (M880; 7 of 19)



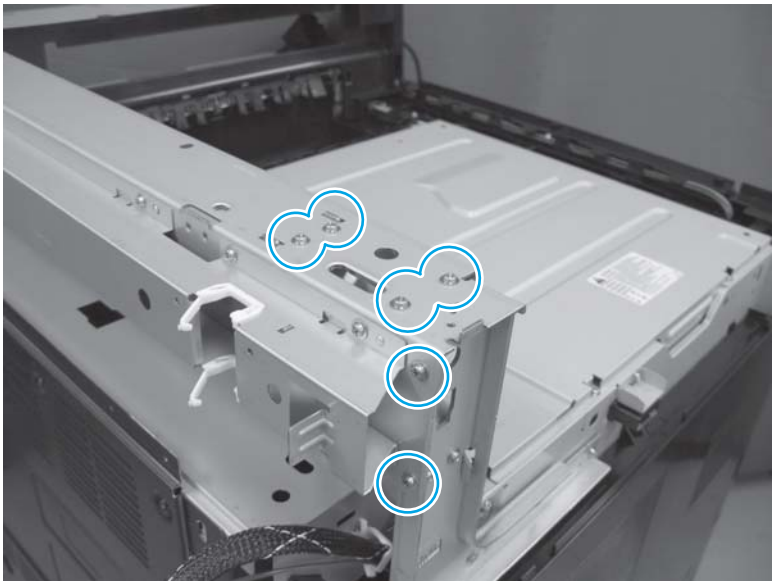
8. Release the wire harness from the retainers (callout 1), open two retainers (callout 2), and then release a second wire harness (callout 3) from the sheet-metal bracket.

Figure 1-496 Remove the face-down delivery assembly (M880; 8 of 19)



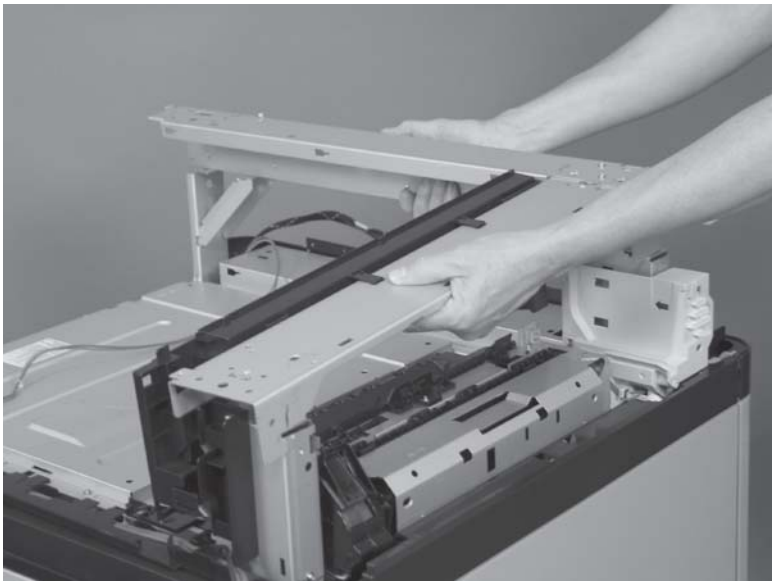
9. Remove six screws.

Figure 1-497 Remove the face-down delivery assembly (M880; 9 of 19)



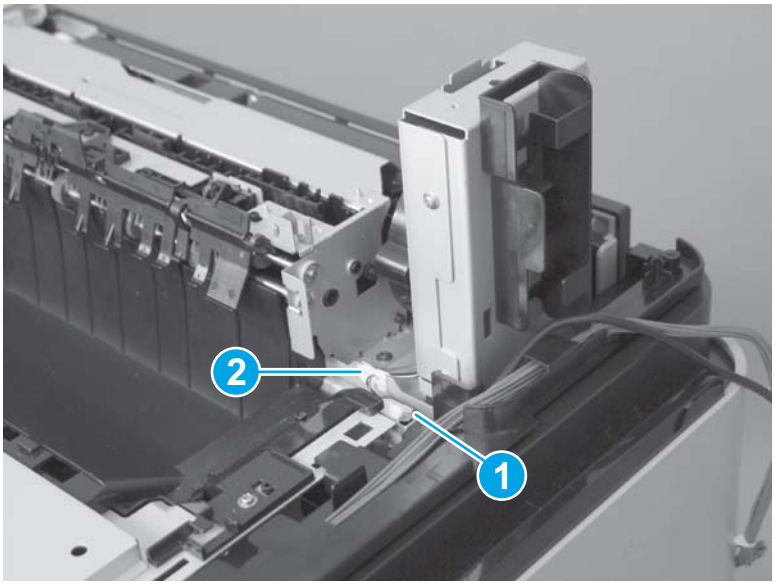
10. Remove the sheet-metal bracket.

Figure 1-498 Remove the face-down delivery assembly (M880; 10 of 19)



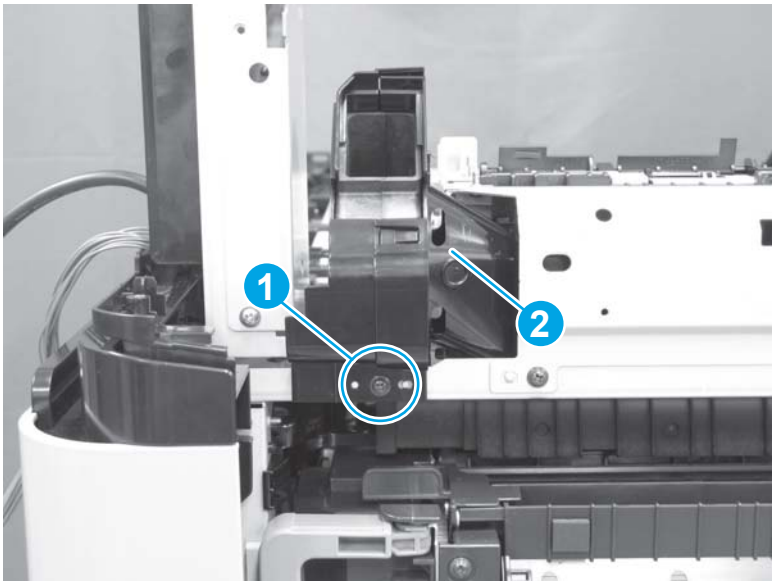
11. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then release the wire harness from the retainer (callout 2).

Figure 1-499 Remove the face-down delivery assembly (M880; 11 of 19)



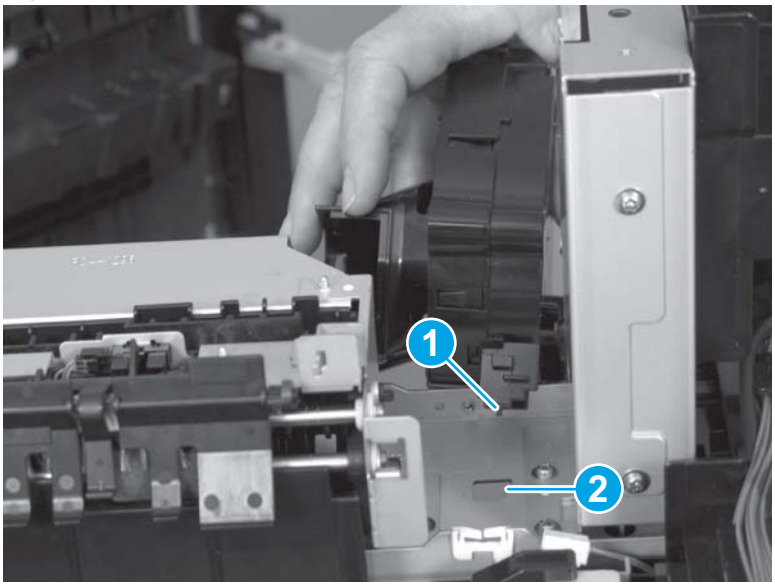
12. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the VOC fan (callout 2).

Figure 1-500 Remove the face-down delivery assembly (M880; 12 of 19)



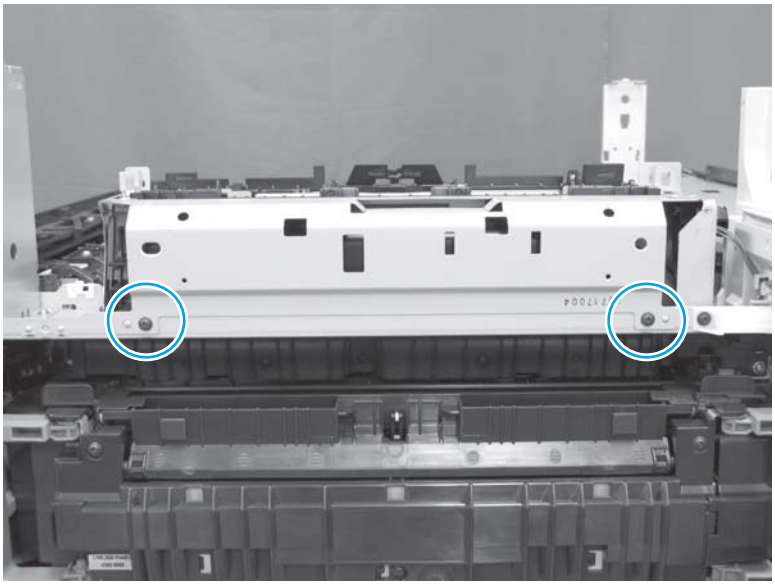
Reinstallation tip When the fan is reinstalled, make sure that the tab (callout 1) on the fan fits into the slot (callout 2) on the chassis.

Figure 1-501 Remove the face-down delivery assembly (M880; 13 of 19)



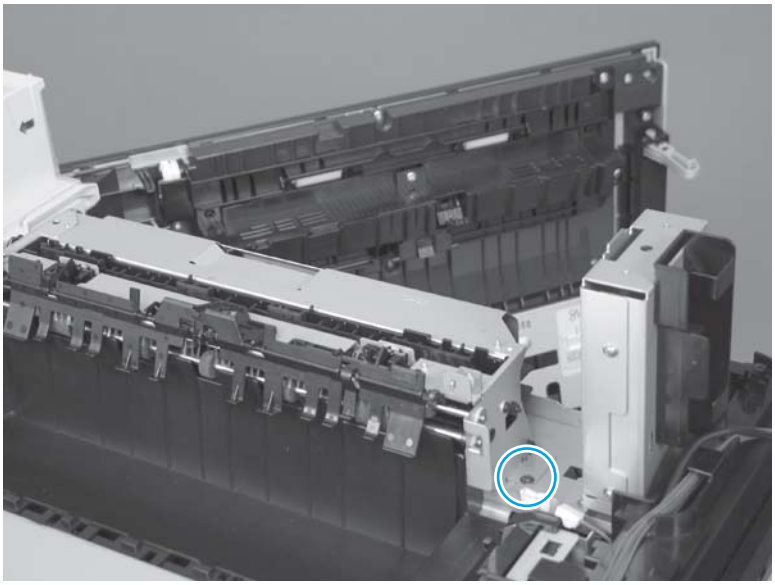
13. Remove two screws.

Figure 1-502 Remove the face-down delivery assembly (M880; 14 of 19)



14. Remove one screw.

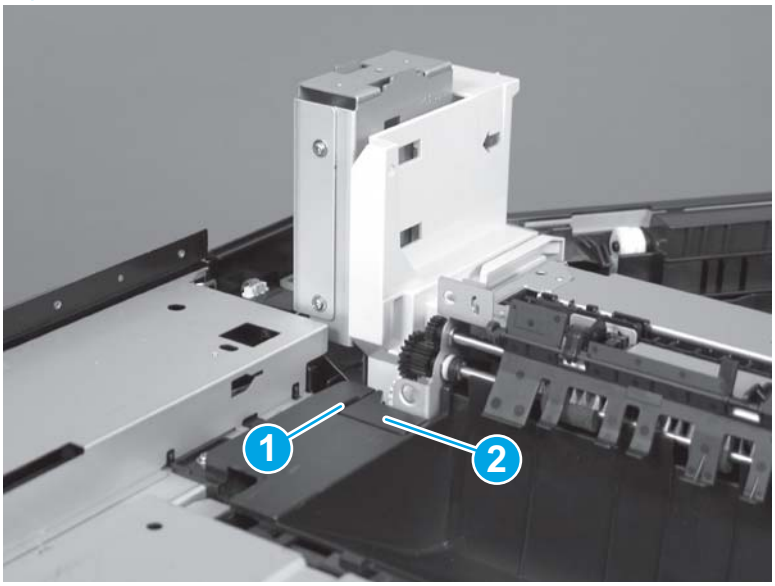
Figure 1-503 Remove the face-down delivery assembly (M880; 15 of 19)



15. Release one tab (callout 1), and then remove one cover (callout 2).

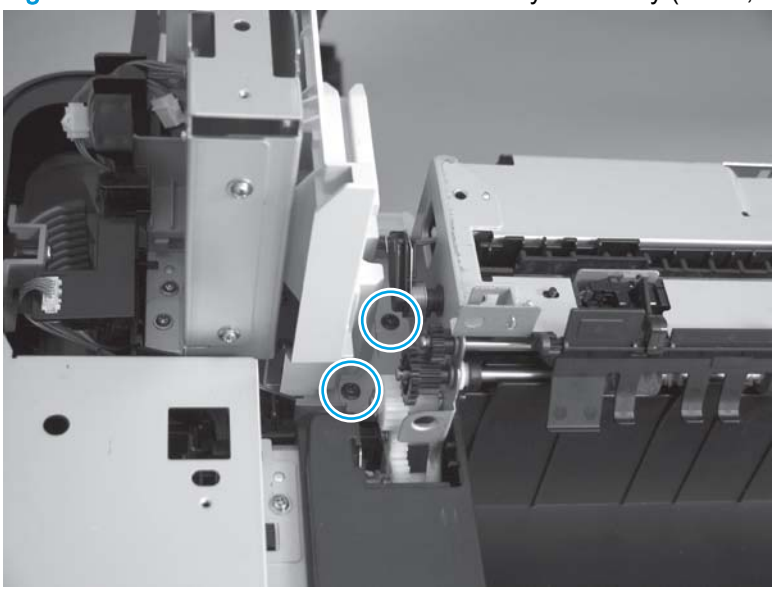
TIP: Use the arrow embossed on the cover to locate the tab.

Figure 1-504 Remove the face-down delivery assembly (M880; 16 of 19)



16. Remove two screws.

Figure 1-505 Remove the face-down delivery assembly (M880; 17 of 19)

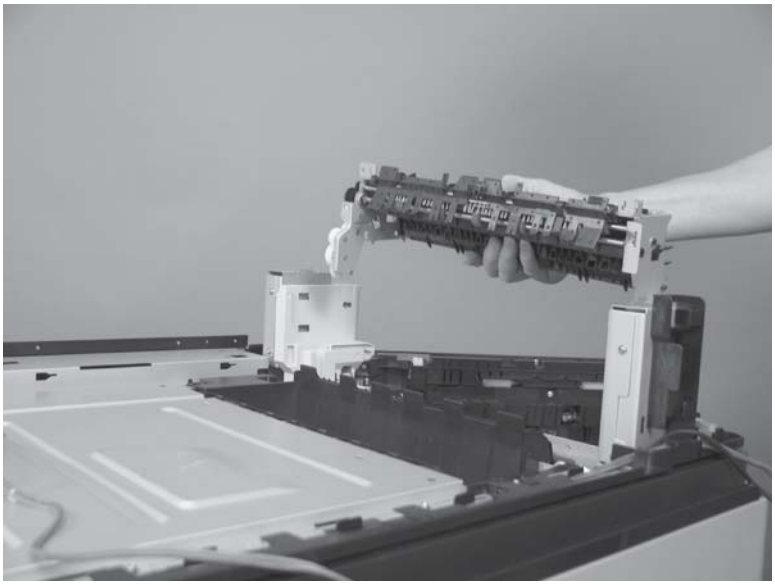


17. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 1-506 Remove the face-down delivery assembly (M880; 18 of 19)

18. Remove the assembly.

Figure 1-507 Remove the face-down delivery assembly (M880; 19 of 19)



Face-down cover

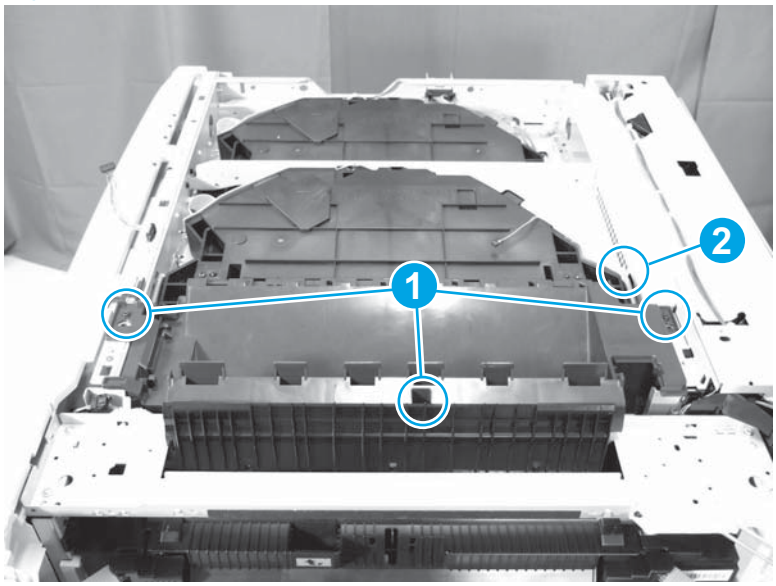
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Switch back tray. See Switch back tray on page 22.
- Control panel assembly (M855). See Control panel assembly (M855) on page 47.
- Control panel assembly (M880). See Control panel assembly (M880) on page 53.
- Scanner back cover (M880). See Scanner back cover (M880) on page 88.
- Right upper rear cover (M855). See Right upper rear cover (M855) on page 96.
- Right upper rear cover (M880). See Right upper rear cover (M880) on page 108.
- Remove one of the following, depending upon product configuration:
  - Face-down bin. See Face-down bin on page 101.
  - Intermediate paper transport unit (IPTU). See IPTU assembly on page 437.
- Switch back cover. See Switch back cover on page 105.
- Front top cover. See Front top cover on page 115.
- Rear top cover. See Rear top cover (M855) on page 116.
- Right upper front cover (M855). See Right upper front cover (M855) on page 120.
- Right upper front cover (M880). See Right upper front cover (M880) on page 122.
- Right upper cover (M855). See Right upper cover (M855) on page 124.
- Document feeder assembly (M880). See Document feeder assembly (M880) on page 154.
- Scanner assembly (M880). See Scanner assembly (M880) on page 162.
- Scanner cover. See Scanner cover on page 306.
- Duplex reverse assembly (M880). See Duplex reverse assembly (M880) on page 320.
- Duplex reverse assembly (M855). See Duplex reverse assembly (M855) on page 319.
- Face-down delivery assembly (M855). See Face-down delivery assembly(M855) on page 327.
- Face-down delivery assembly (M880). See Face-down delivery assembly (M880) on page 332.

Remove the face-down cover

Remove three screws (callout 1), disconnect one connector (callout 2), and then remove the face-down cover.

Figure 1-508 Remove face-down cover

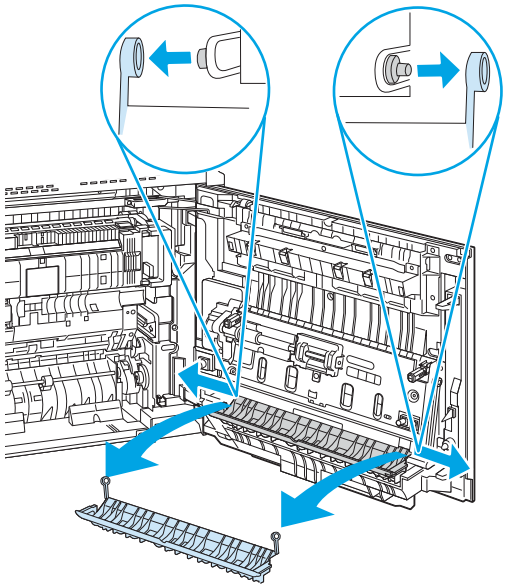


Duplexing feed assembly

IMPORTANT: If you are installing a replacement duplexing feed assembly, you must use the Service menu to set the New Duplex Roller item to Yes. See Reinstall the duplexing feed assembly on page 349.

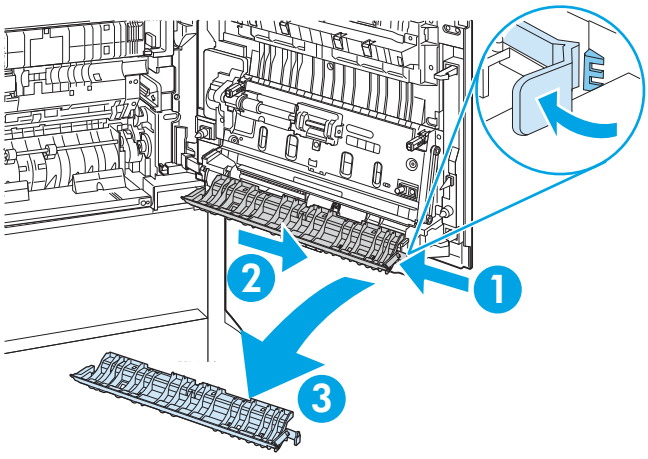
1. Open the right door.
2. Release two hinge pins and then remove the paper-feed cover.

Figure 1-509 Remove the duplexing feed assembly (1 of 7)



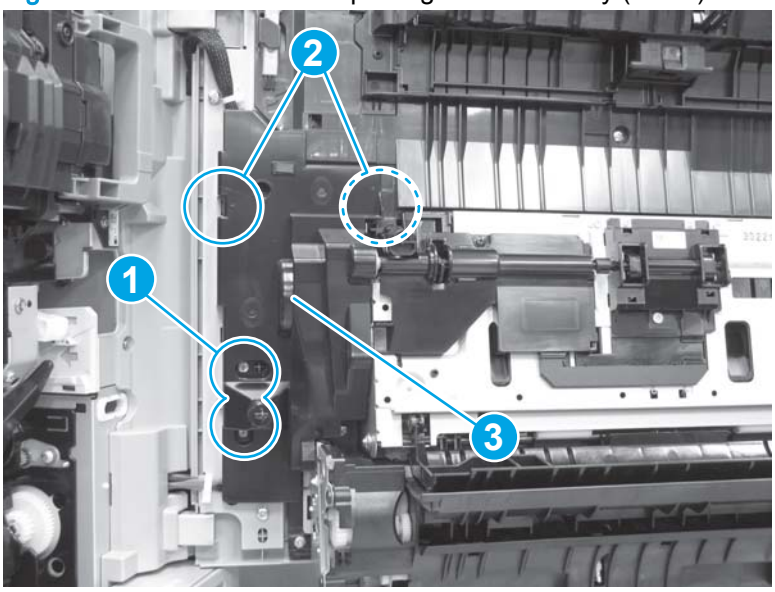
3. Release one tab (callout 1), slide the multipurpose upper feed guide to the right to release it (callout 2), and then lift it away from the door (callout 3) to remove it.

Figure 1-510 Remove the duplexing feed assembly (2 of 7)



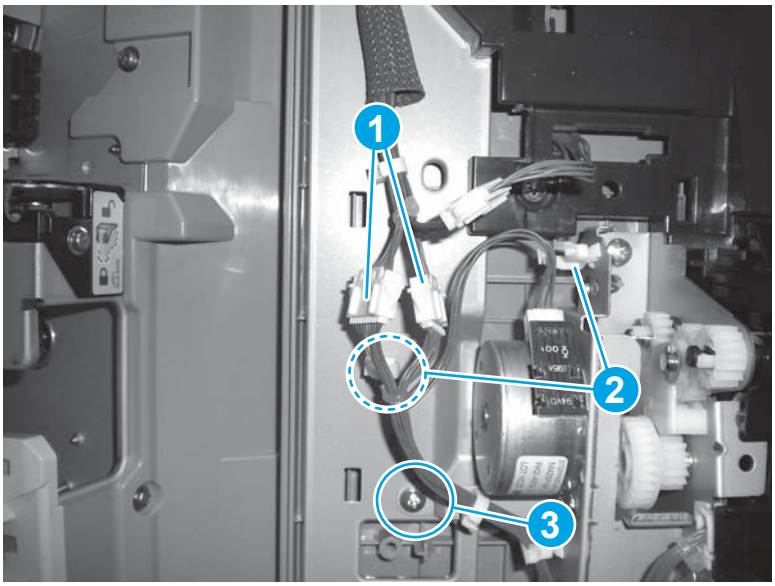
4. On the right door assembly, remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1), release two tabs (callout 2), and then remove the motor cover (callout 3).

Figure 1-511 Remove the duplexing feed assembly (3 of 7)



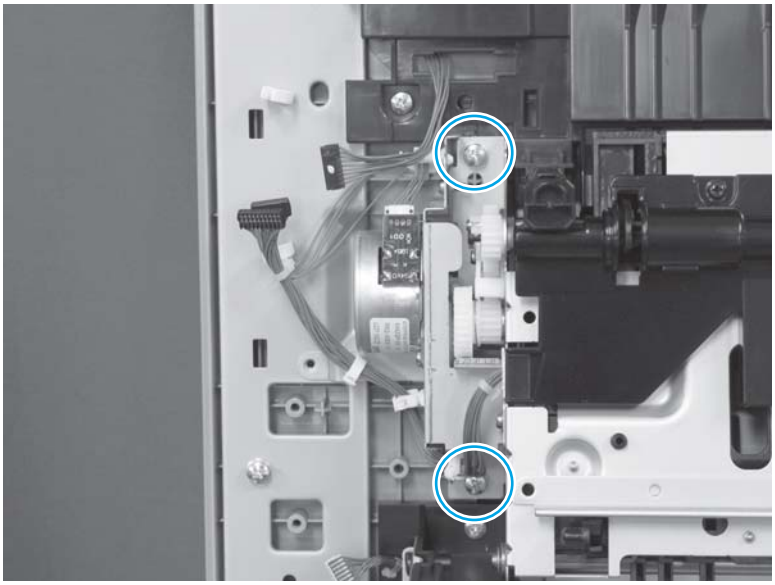
5. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), release the wire harnesses from two retainers (callout 2), and then remove one screw (callout 3).

Figure 1-512 Remove the duplexing feed assembly (4 of 7)



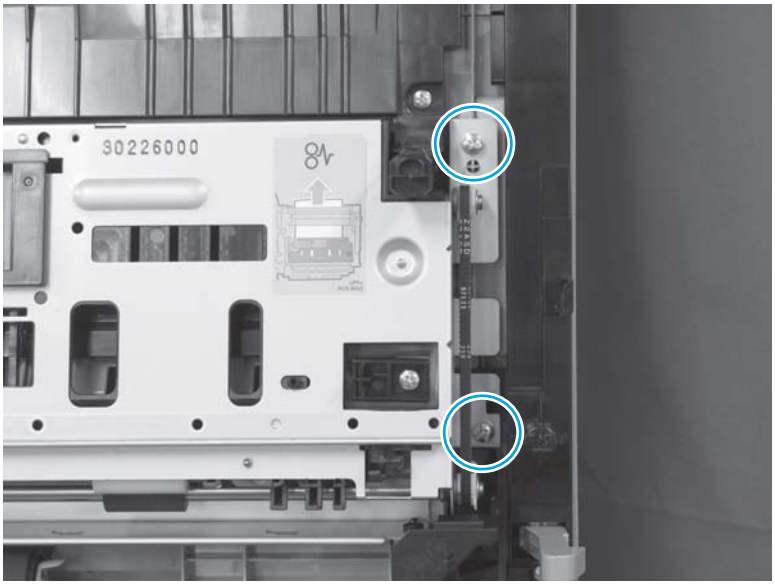
6. Remove two screws.

Figure 1-513 Remove the duplexing feed assembly (5 of 7)



7. Remove two screws.

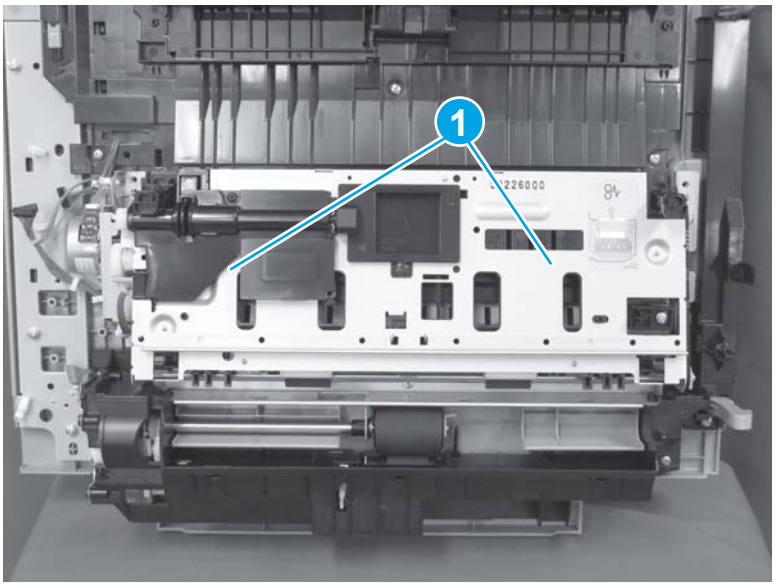
Figure 1-514 Remove the duplexing feed assembly (6 of 7)



8. Remove the duplexing feed assembly (callout 1).

Reinstallation tip When reinstalling the duplexing feed assembly, make sure that there are no gaps between the part and the door.

Figure 1-515 Remove the duplexing feed assembly (7 of 7)



Reinstall the duplexing feed assembly

IMPORTANT: If a replacement duplexing feed assembly is installed, you must follow the instructions below to reset the counter. Failure to follow these instructions might result in more frequent paper jams.

Installing a replacement duplexing feed assembly

If a replacement duplexing feed assembly is installed, do the following:

1. From the Home screen on the control panel, scroll to and touch the Device Maintenance button.
2. Open the Service menu.
3. On the sign-in screen, select the Service Access Code option from the drop-down list.
4. Enter one of the following service access codes:
   - **M855**: 11085513
   - **M880**: 11088013
5. Reset the following value:
   - New Duplex Roller; set to Yes

Multipurpose tray (Tray 1) pickup assembly

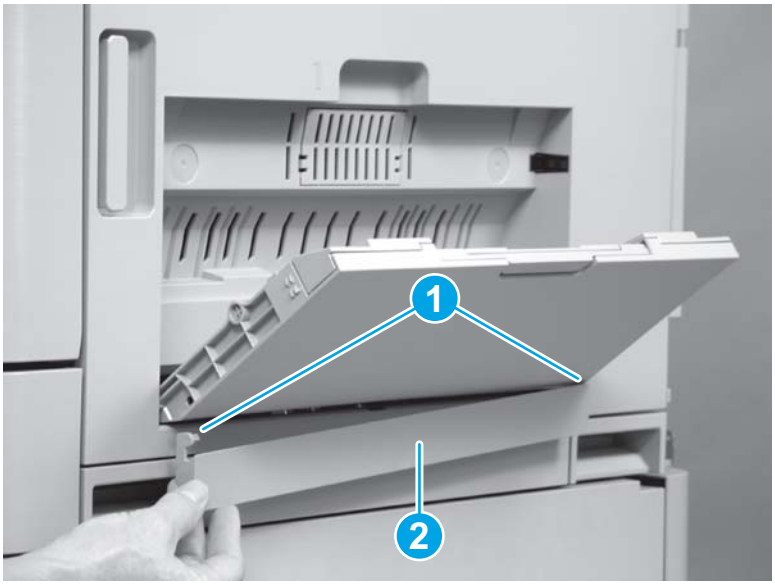
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Duplexing feed assembly. See Duplexing feed assembly on page 345

Remove the multipurpose tray (Tray 1) pickup assembly

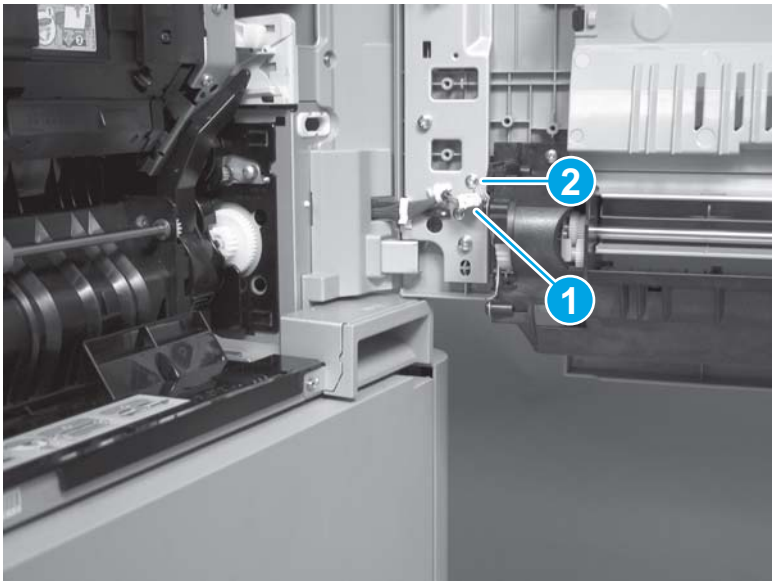
1. Open Tray 1, release two hinge pins (callout 1), and then remove the Tray 1 lower cover (callout 2).

   Figure 1-516 Remove the multipurpose tray (Tray 1) pickup assembly (1 of 10)

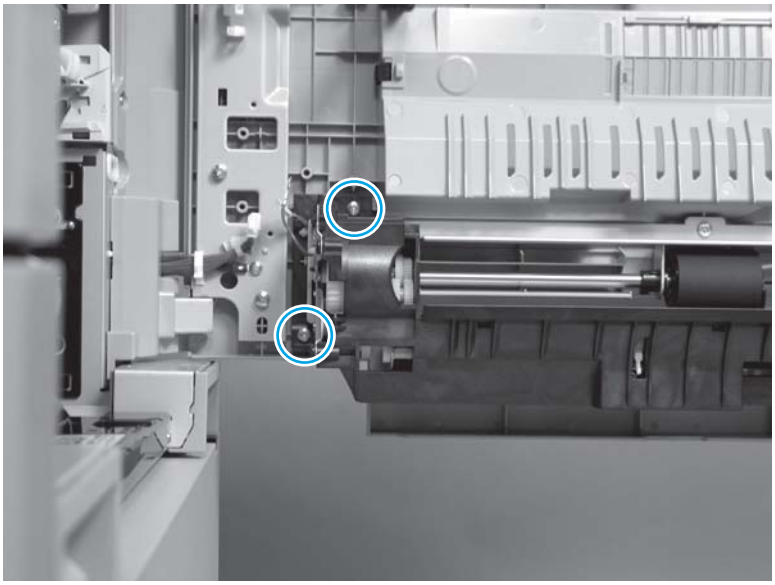
2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2) to release the ground wire.

   Figure 1-517 Remove the multipurpose tray (Tray 1) pickup assembly (2 of 10)

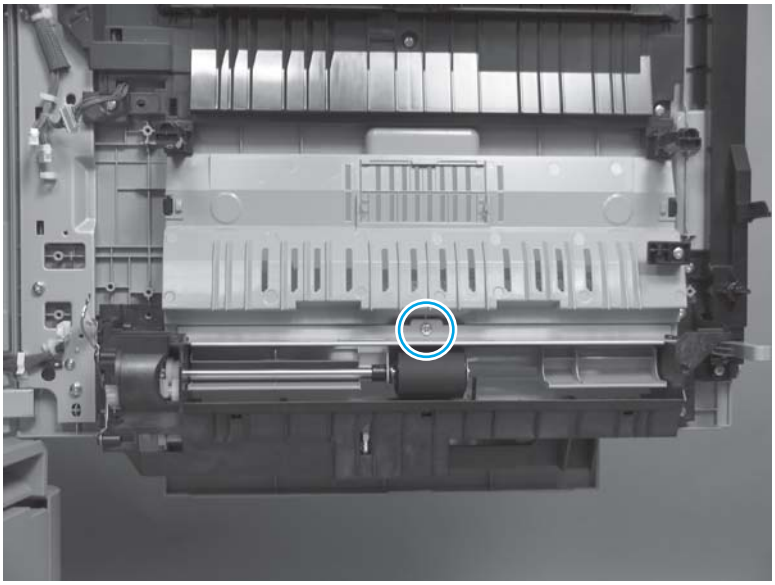
3. Remove two screws.

Figure 1-518 Remove the multipurpose tray (Tray 1) pickup assembly (3 of 10)



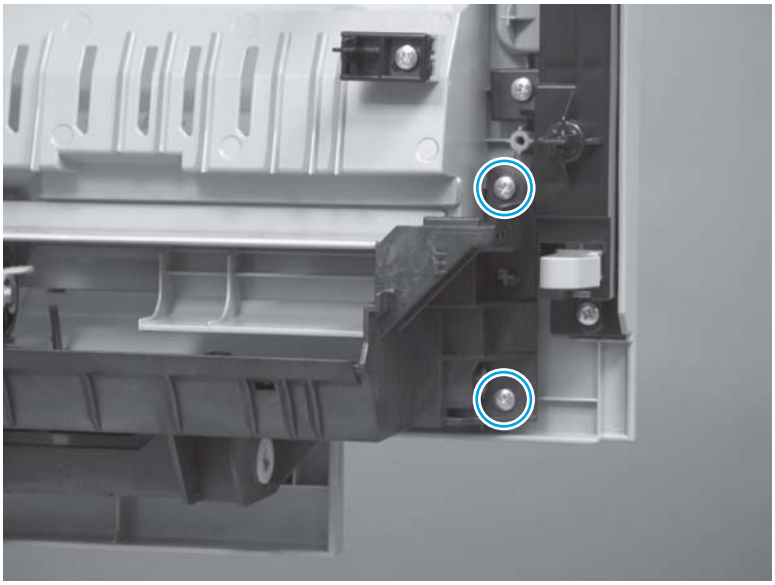
4. Remove one screw.

Figure 1-519 Remove the multipurpose tray (Tray 1) pickup assembly (4 of 10)



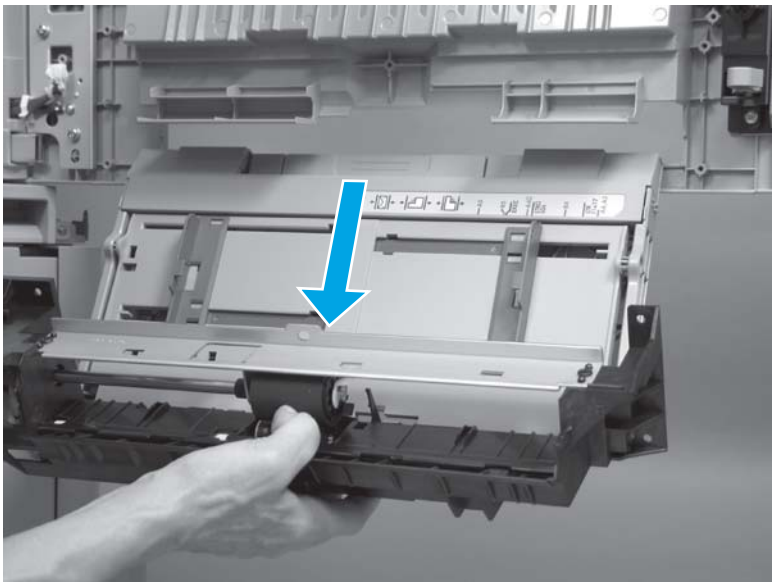
5. Remove two screws.

Figure 1-520 Remove the multipurpose tray (Tray 1) pickup assembly (5 of 10)



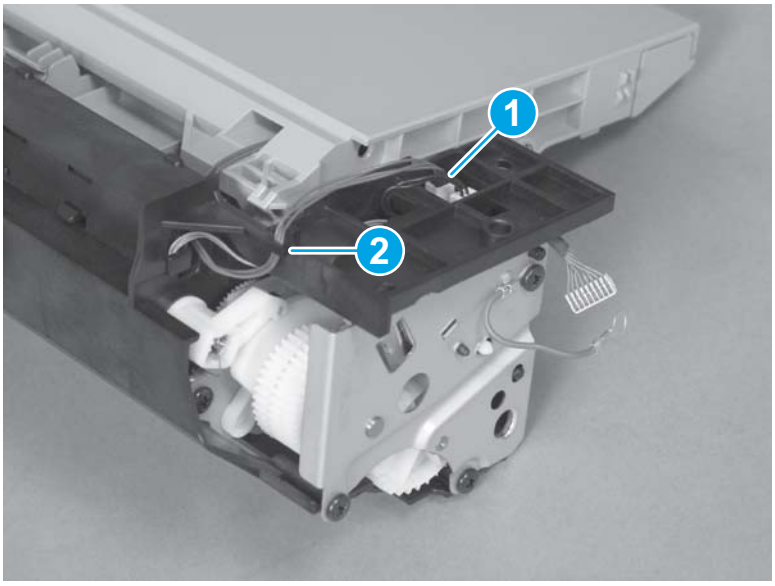
6. Make sure that Tray 1 is open, and then pull downward to remove Tray 1 and the Tray 1 pickup assembly together.

Figure 1-521 Remove the multipurpose tray (Tray 1) pickup assembly (6 of 10)



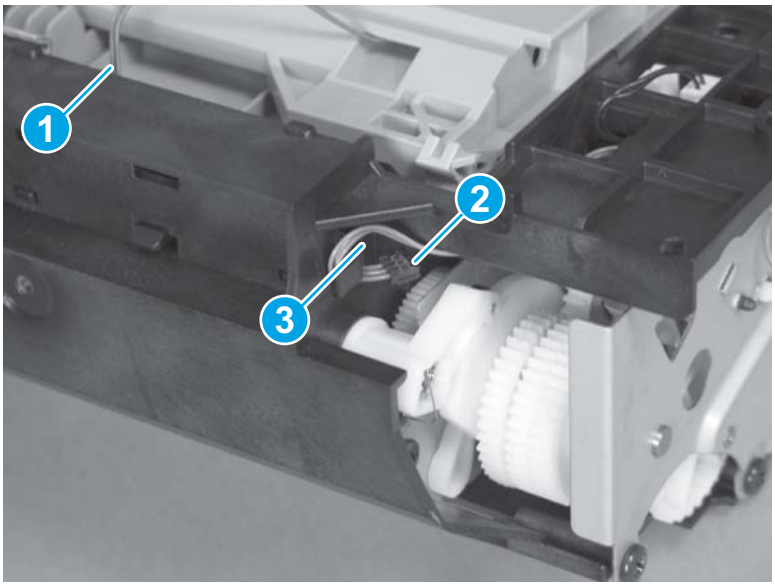
7. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then release the wire harness from the guide (callout 2).

Figure 1-522 Remove the multipurpose tray (Tray 1) pickup assembly (7 of 10)



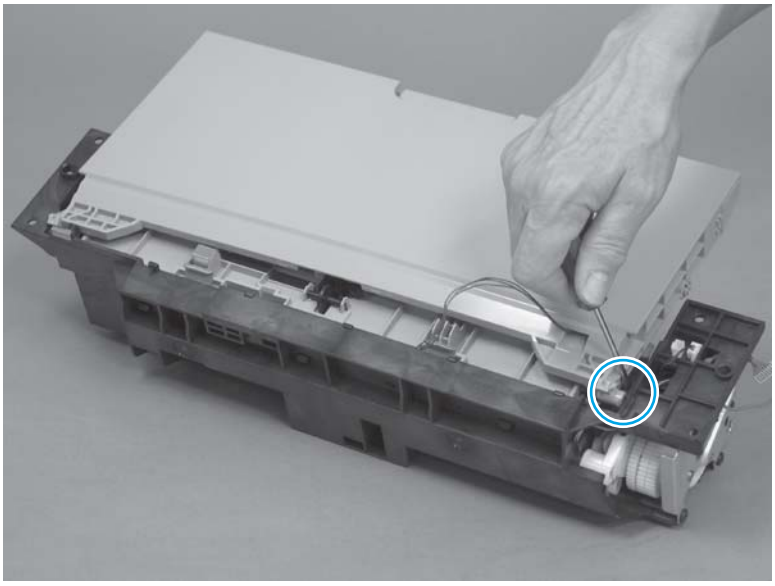
8. Gently pull on one wire harness (callout 1) to bring the connector (callout 2) through the slot (callout 3).

Figure 1-523 Remove the multipurpose tray (Tray 1) pickup assembly (8 of 10)



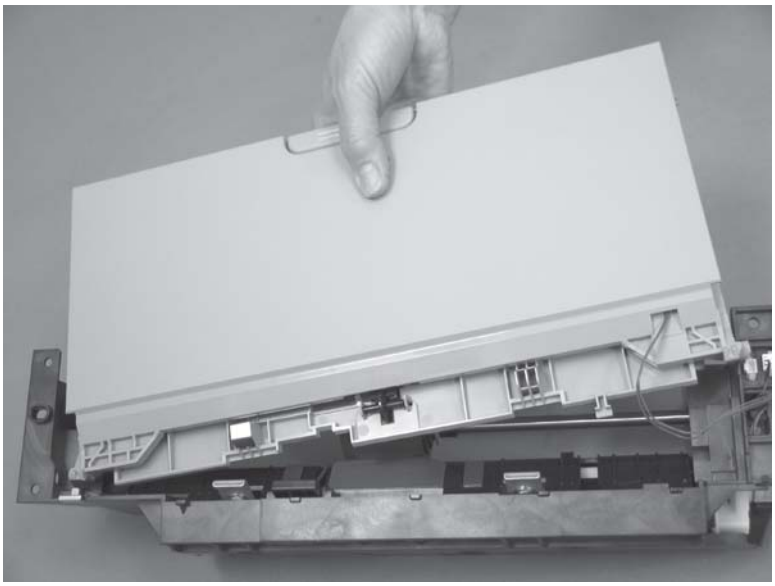
9. Use a small flat-blade screwdriver to release the shaft at the left side of the tray, and then separate the tray and the pickup assembly.

Figure 1-524 Remove the multipurpose tray (Tray 1) pickup assembly (9 of 10)



10. Remove Tray 1 from the pickup assembly.

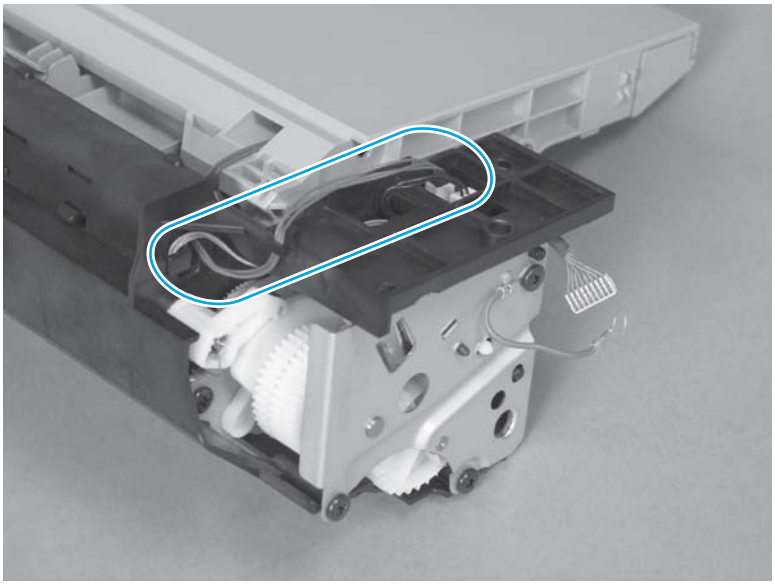
Figure 1-525 Remove the multipurpose tray (Tray 1) pickup assembly (10 of 10)



Reinstall the multipurpose tray (Tray 1) pickup assembly

Make sure that the wire harness is correctly installed when the assembly is reinstalled.

Figure 1-526 Reinstall the multipurpose tray (Tray 1) pickup assembly



Input accessories

This section includes information about the following topics:

- High-capacity input (HCI) feeder
- 1x500- and 3x500-sheet feeders
- Shared input accessory covers and doors

High-capacity input (HCI) feeder

NOTE: Some of the procedures in this section require the product to be removed from the input accessory.

Location of major components

Figure 1-527 External covers and doors

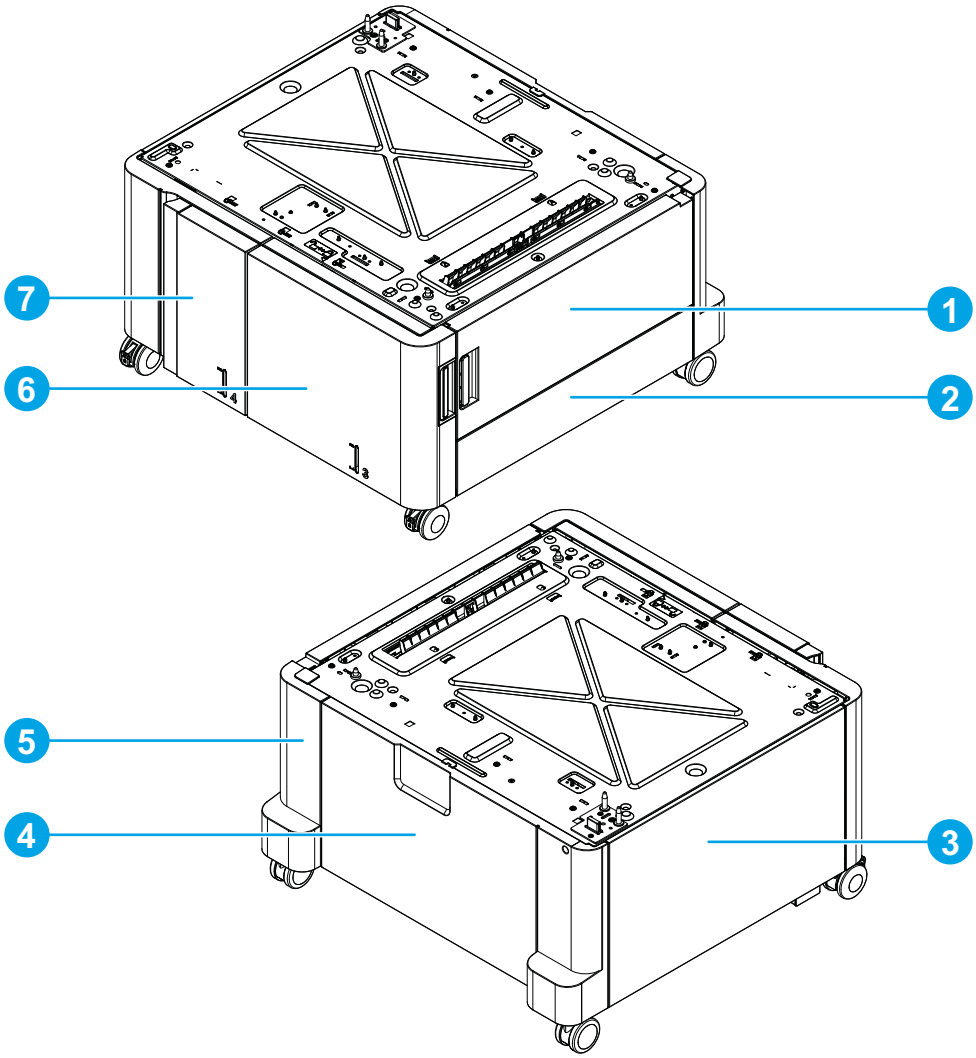


Table 1-11 External covers and doors

Item	Description	Item	Description
1	Right door assembly	5	Right rear cover
2	Right lower cover	6	Right tray
3	Left cover	7	Left tray
4	Rear cover		

Figure 1-528 Main assemblies (1 of 2)

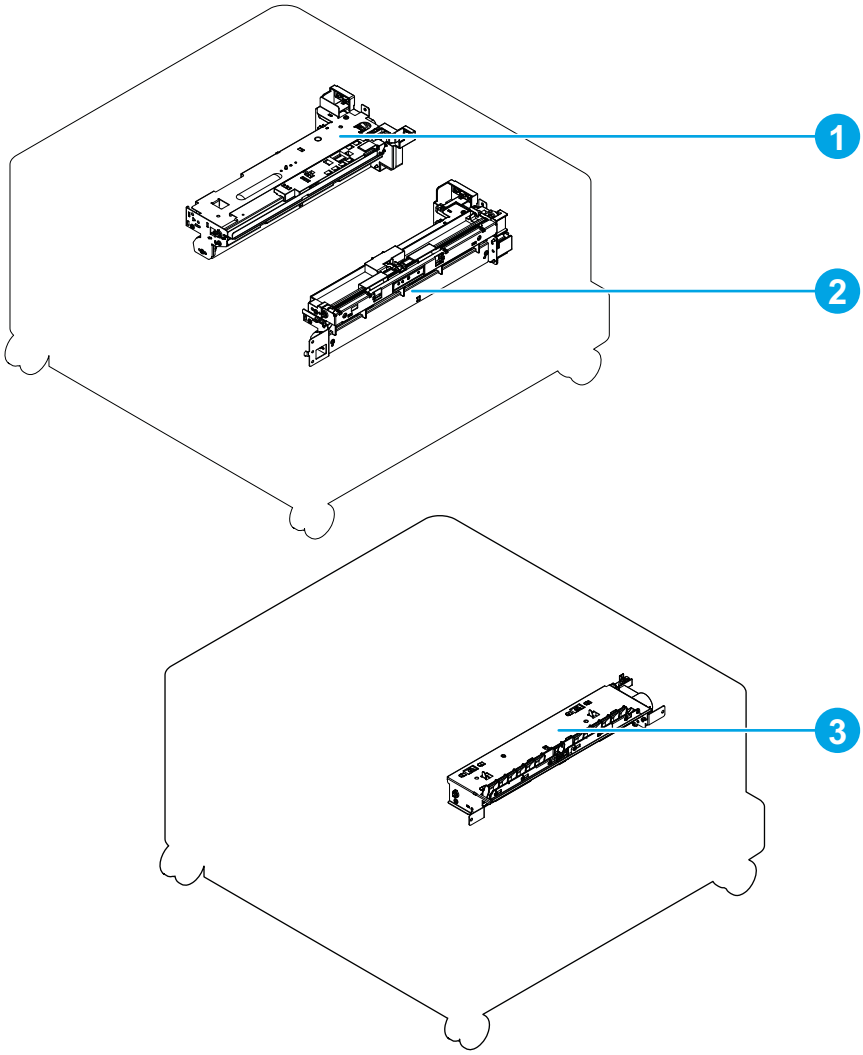


Table 1-12 Main assemblies (1 of 2)

Item	Description	Item	Description
1	Left tray pickup assembly	3	Merge assembly
2	Right tray pickup assembly		

Figure 1-529 Main assemblies (2 of 2)

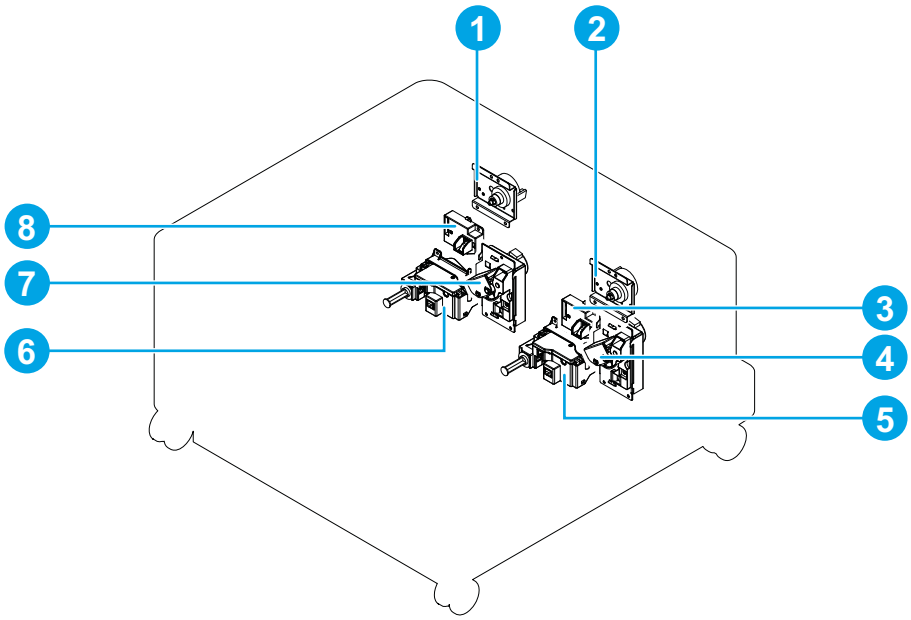


Table 1-13 Main assemblies (2 of 2)

Item	Description	Item	Description
1	Left tray pickup drive assembly	5	Right tray automatic close assembly
2	Right tray pickup drive assembly	6	Left tray automatic close assembly
3	Right tray media-level sensor assembly	7	Left tray lifter drive assembly
4	Right tray lifter drive assembly	8	Left tray media-level sensor assembly

Figure 1-530 Printed circuit assembly (PCA)

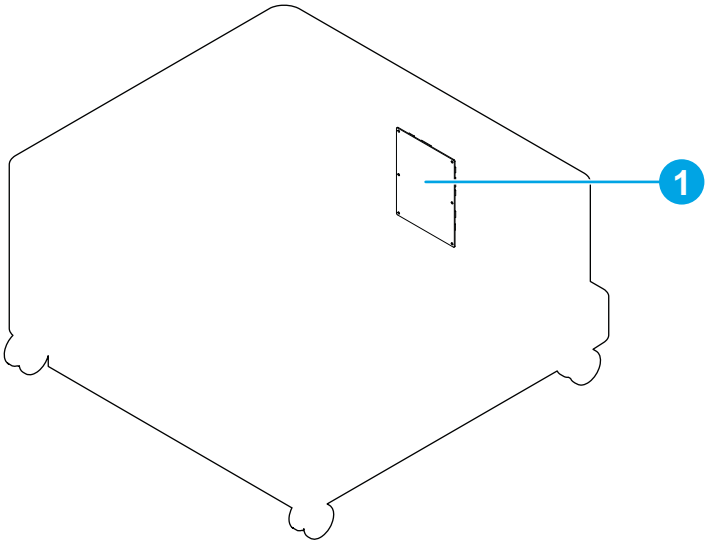


Table 1-14 Printed circuit assembly (PCA)

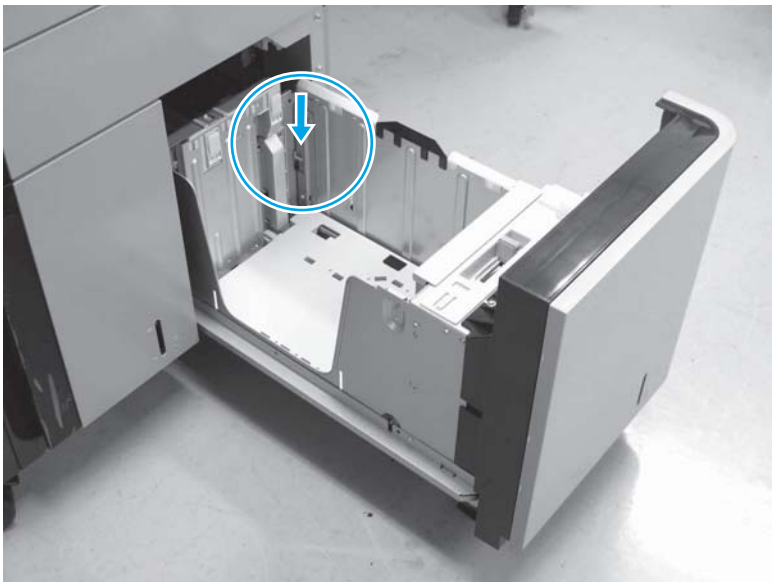
Item	Description	Item	Description
1	HCI controller PCA		

HCI right tray

1. Open the right tray.
2. Lower the tray release lever, and then remove the right tray.

NOTE: When the tray is reinstalled, the release lever automatically returns to the locked position.

Figure 1-531 Remove the HCI right tray

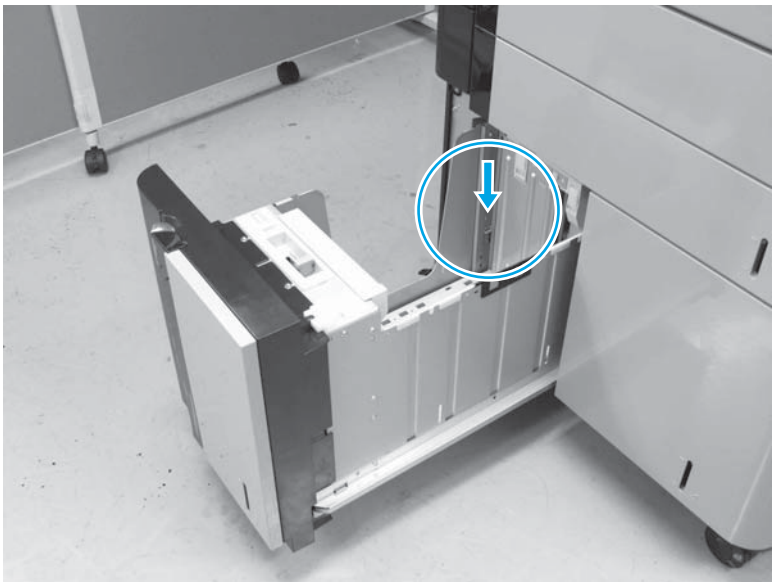


HCI left tray

1. Open the left tray.
2. Lower the tray release lever, and then remove the left tray.

NOTE: When the tray is reinstalled, the release lever automatically returns to the locked position.

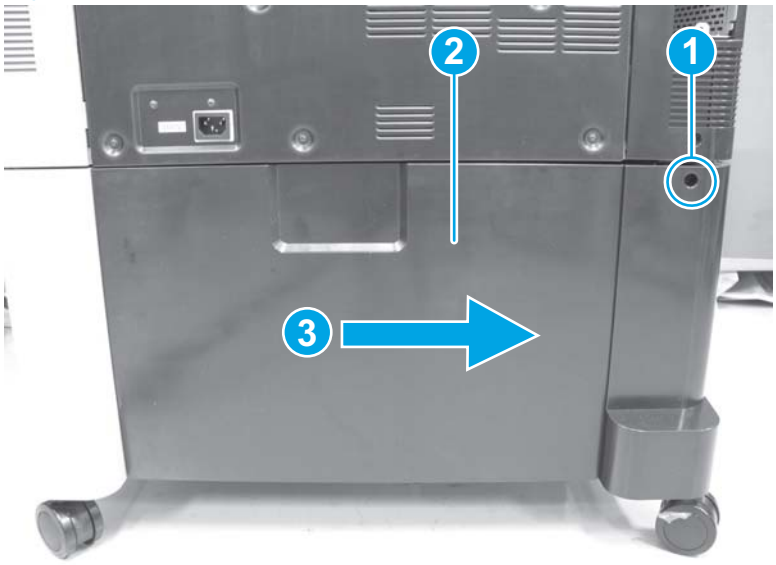
Figure 1-532 Remove the HCI left tray



HCI rear cover

Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the rear cover (callout 2) toward the left door to remove it (callout 3).

Figure 1-533 Remove the HCI rear cover



HCI right lower cover

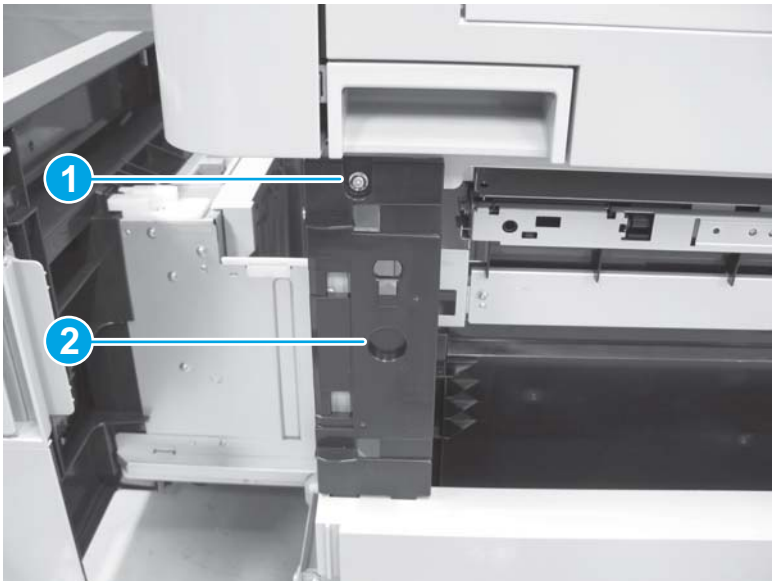
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- HCI rear cover. See HCI rear cover on page 362.
- HCI, 1x500, and 3x500 right door assembly. See HCI, 1x500, and 3x500 right door assembly on page 428.
- HCI, 1x500, and 3x500 right rear cover. See HCI, 1x500, and 3x500 right rear cover on page 430.

Remove the HCI right lower cover

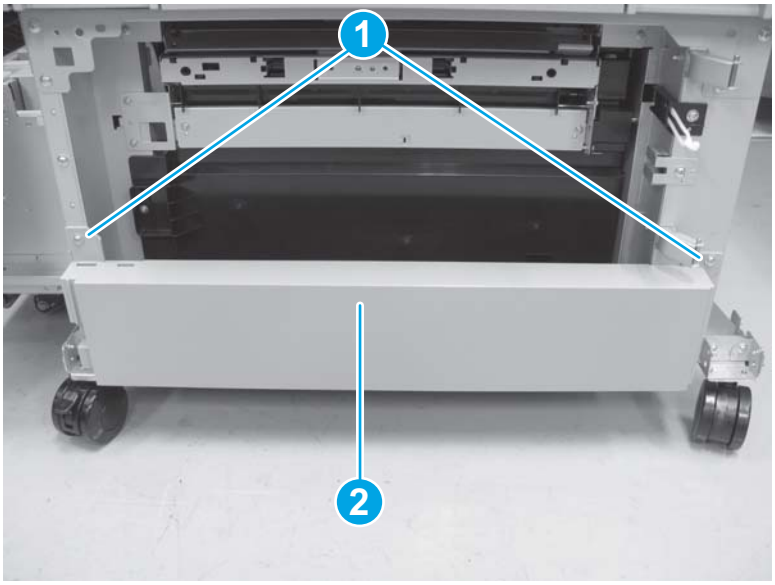
1. Open the right tray.
2. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the lock holder (callout 2).

Figure 1-534 Remove the HCI right lower cover (1 of 2)



3. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the HCI right lower cover (callout 2).

Figure 1-535 Remove the HCI right lower cover (2 of 2)



HCI right tray pickup motor

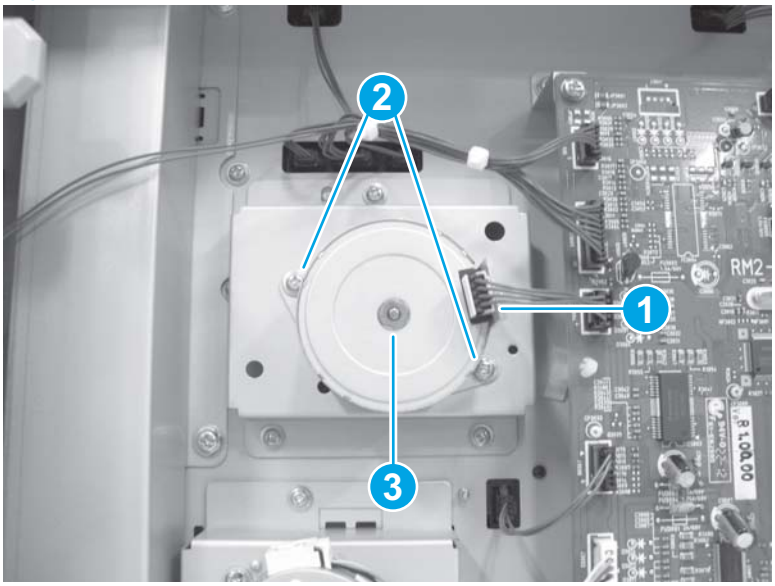
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- HCI rear cover. See HCI rear cover on page 362.

Remove the HCI right tray pickup motor

Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the right tray pickup motor (callout 3).

Figure 1-536 Remove the HCI right tray pickup motor



HCI right tray pickup drive

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

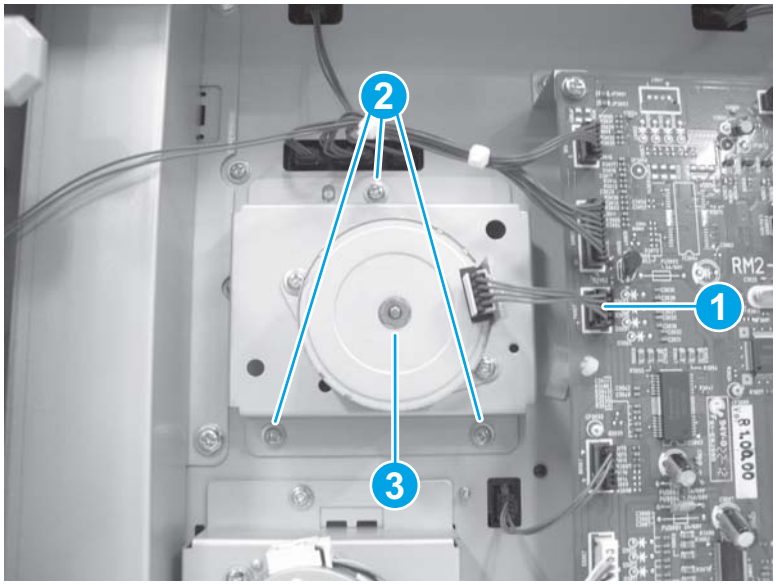
- HCI rear cover. See HCI rear cover on page 362.

Remove the HCI right tray pickup drive

Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove three screws (callout 2), and then remove the right tray pickup drive (callout 3).

NOTE: If you are replacing the HCI right tray pickup drive, remove the HCI right tray pickup motor from the old part and move it to the replacement part. See HCI right tray pickup motor on page 365.

Figure 1-537 Remove the HCI right tray pickup drive (1 of 2)



HCI left tray pickup motor

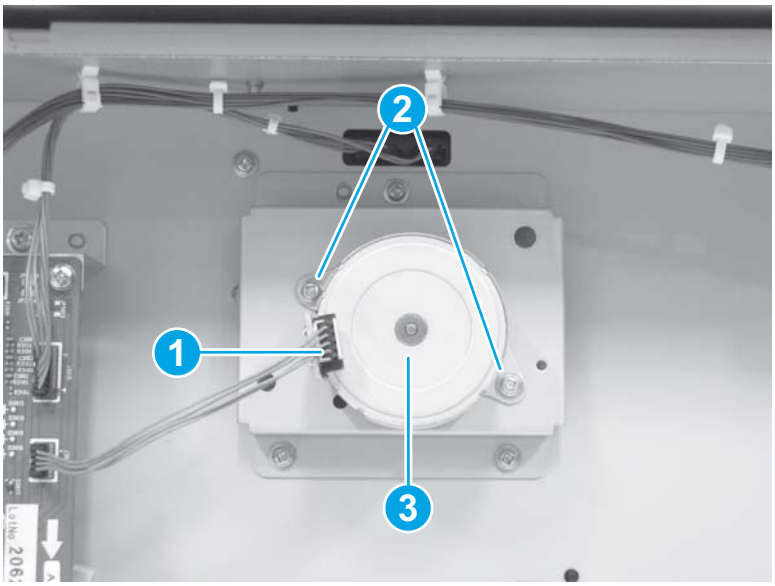
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- HCI rear cover. See HCI rear cover on page 362.

Remove the HCI left tray pickup motor

Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the left tray pickup motor (callout 3).

Figure 1-538 Remove the HCI left tray pickup motor



HCI left tray pickup drive

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

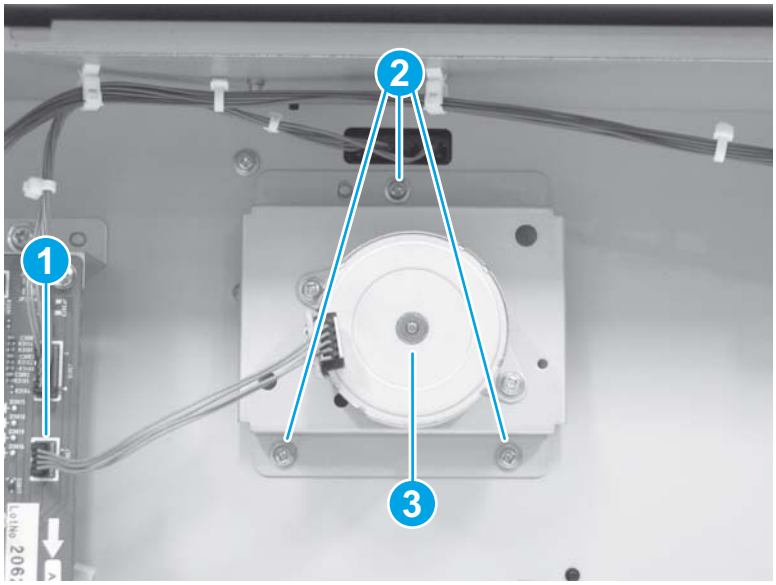
- HCI rear cover. See HCI rear cover on page 362.

Remove the HCI left tray pickup drive

Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove three screws (callout 2), and then remove the left tray pickup drive (callout 3).

NOTE: If you are replacing the HCI left tray pickup drive, remove the HCI left tray pickup motor from the old part and move it to the replacement part. See HCI left tray pickup motor on page 367.

Figure 1-539 Remove the HCI left tray pickup drive



HCI right tray lifter drive assembly

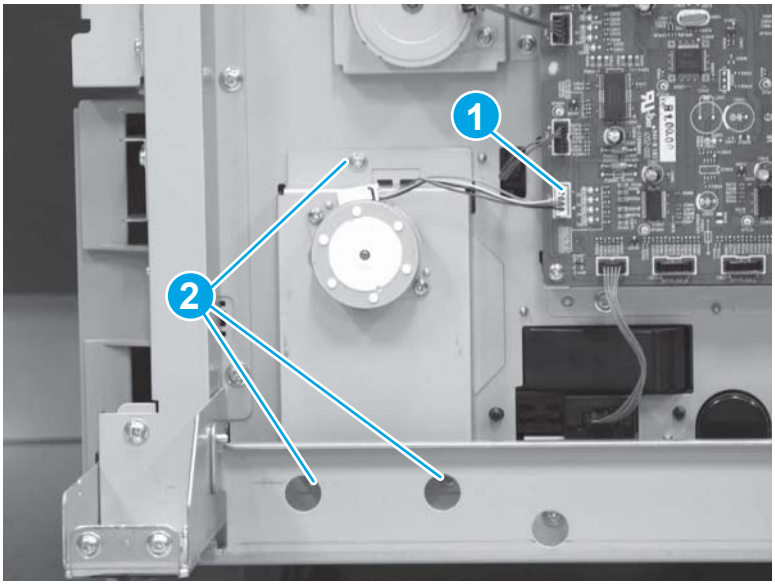
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- HCI rear cover. See HCI rear cover on page 362.

Remove the HCI right tray lifter drive assembly

1. Open the HCI right tray.
2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove three screws (callout 2), and then lift the assembly up to remove it.

Figure 1-540 Remove the HCI right tray lifter drive assembly



HCI left tray lifter drive assembly

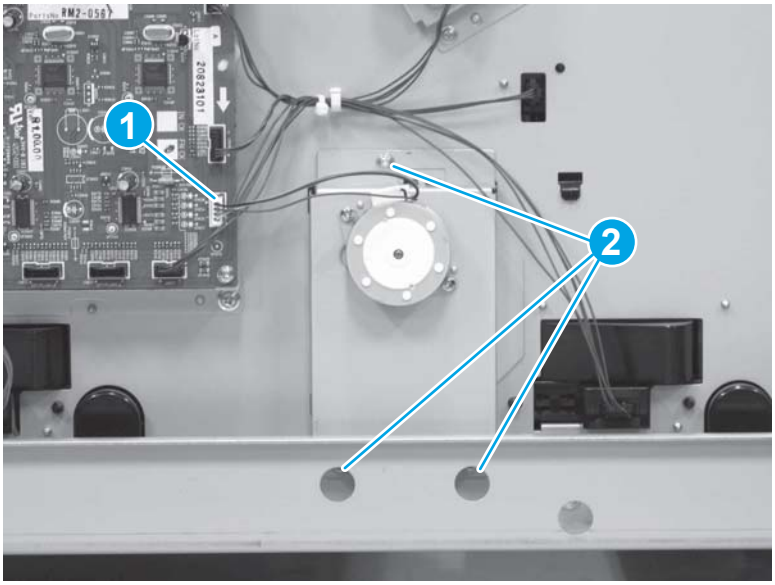
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- HCI rear cover. See HCI rear cover on page 362.

Remove the HCI left tray lifter drive assembly

1. Open the HCI left tray.
2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove three screws (callout 2), and then lift the assembly up to remove it

Figure 1-541 Remove the HCI left tray lifter drive assembly



HCI right tray media-level sensor assembly

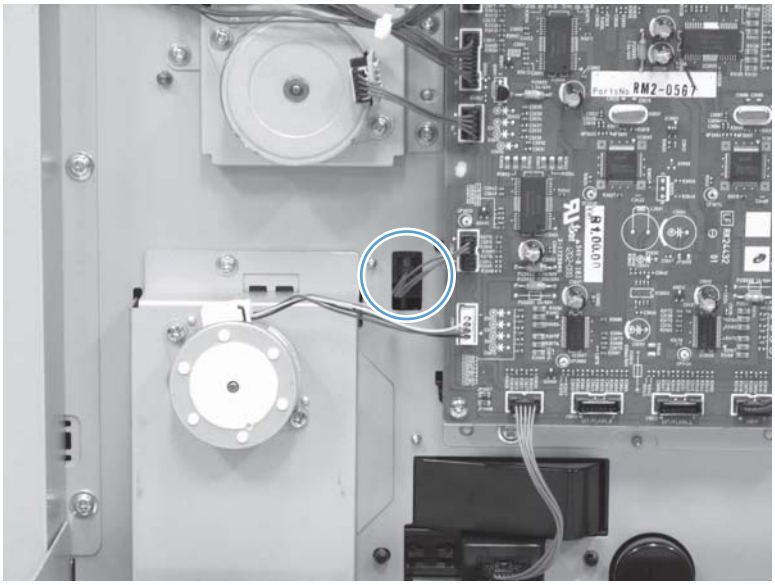
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- HCI right tray. See HCI right tray on page 360.
- HCI rear cover. See HCI rear cover on page 362.

Remove the HCI right tray media-level sensor assembly

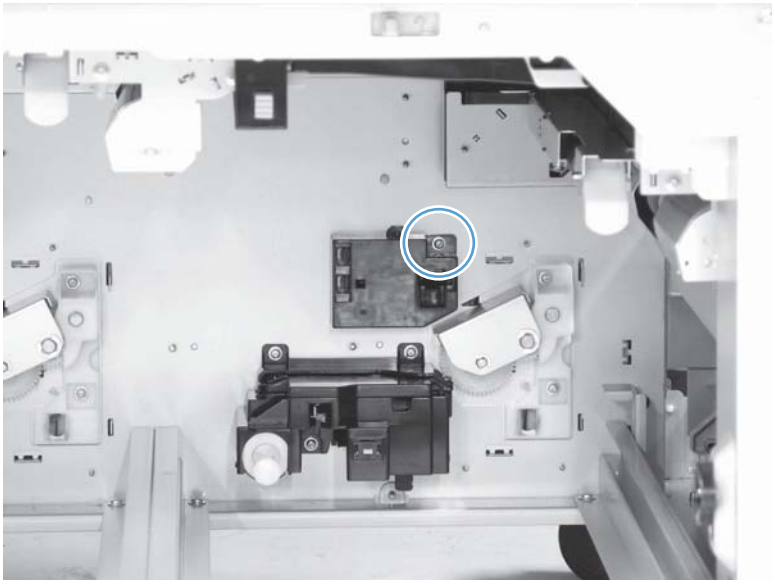
1. Disconnect one connector.

   Figure 1-542 Remove the HCI right tray media-level sensor assembly (1 of 2)

2. From inside the tray cavity, remove one screw, and then remove the assembly.

   Figure 1-543 Remove the HCI right tray media-level sensor assembly (2 of 2)

HCI left tray media-level sensor assembly

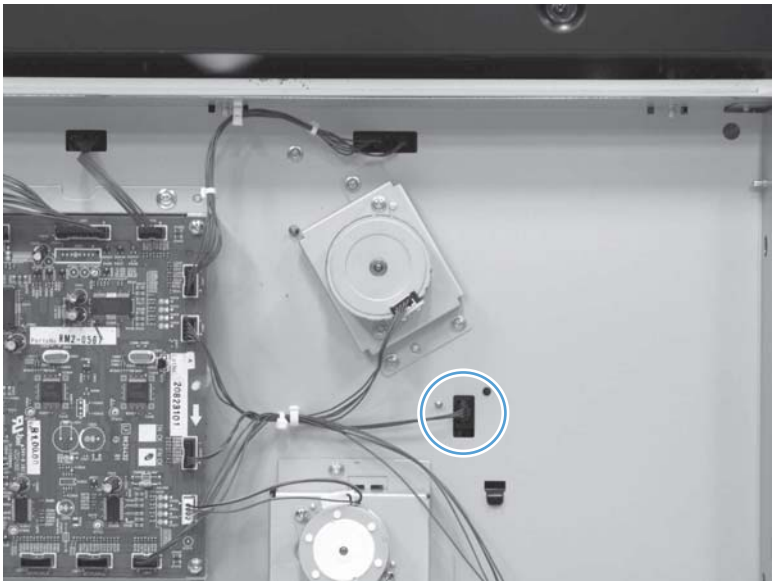
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- HCI left tray. See HCI left tray on page 361.
- HCI rear cover. See HCI rear cover on page 362.

Remove the HCI left tray media-level sensor assembly

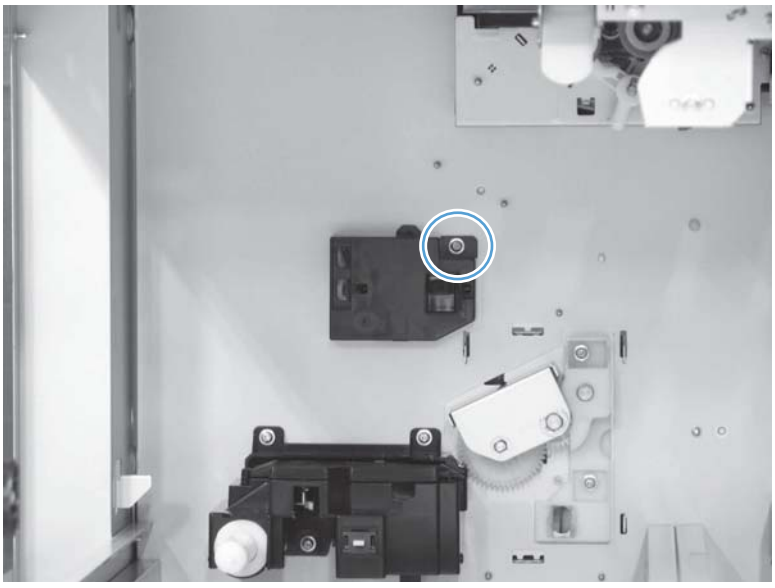
1. Disconnect one connector.

   Figure 1-544 Remove the HCI left tray media-level sensor assembly (1 of 2)

2. From inside the tray cavity, remove one screw, and then remove the assembly.

   Figure 1-545 Remove the HCI left tray media-level sensor assembly (2 of 2)

HCI right tray automatic close assembly

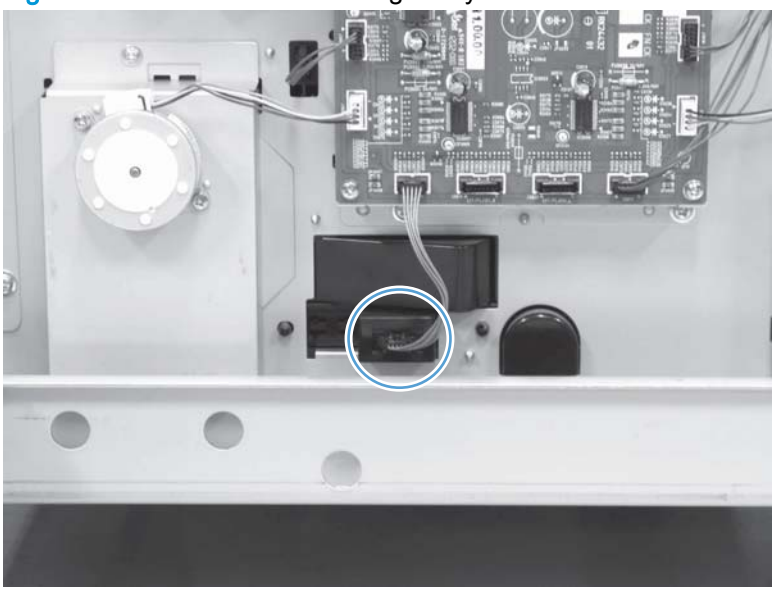
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- HCI right tray. See HCI right tray on page 360.
- HCI rear cover. See HCI rear cover on page 362.

Remove the HCI right tray automatic close assembly

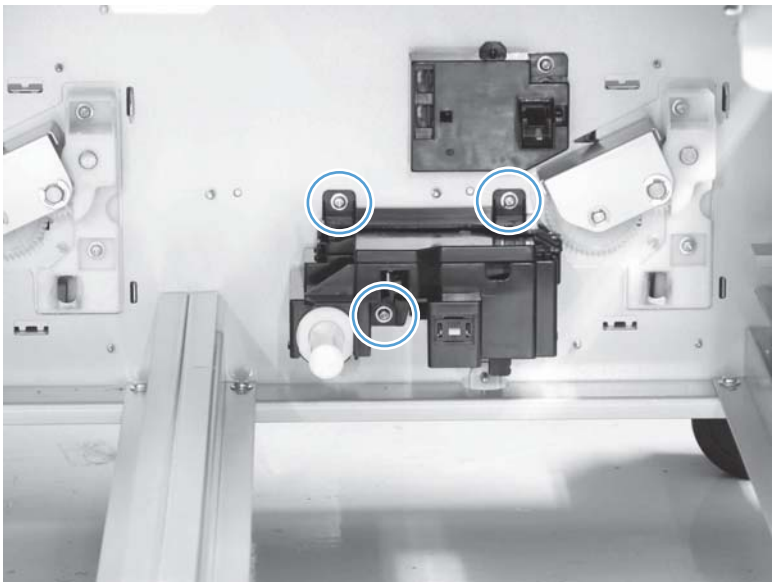
1. Disconnect one connector.

   Figure 1-546 Remove the HCI right tray automatic close assembly (1 of 2)

2. From inside the tray cavity, remove three screws, and then remove the assembly.

   Figure 1-547 Remove the HCI right tray automatic close assembly (2 of 2)

HCI left tray automatic close assembly

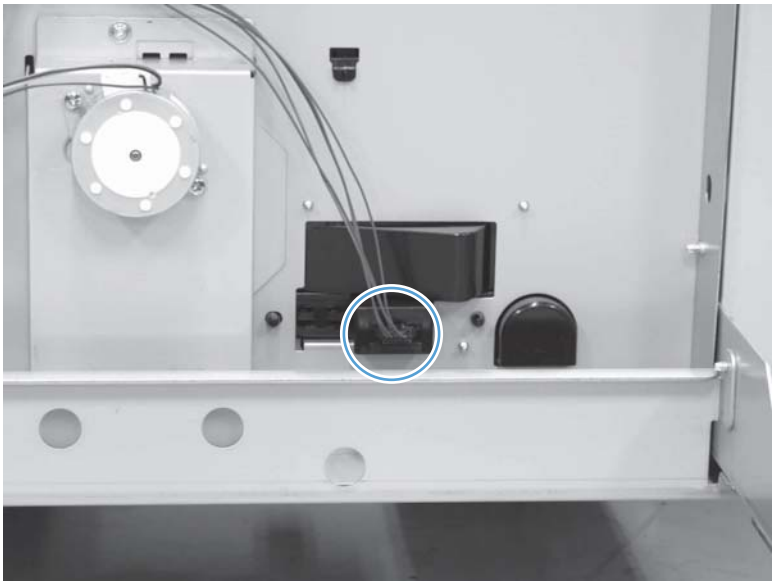
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- HCI left tray. See HCI left tray on page 361.
- HCI rear cover. See HCI rear cover on page 362.

Remove the HCI left tray automatic close assembly

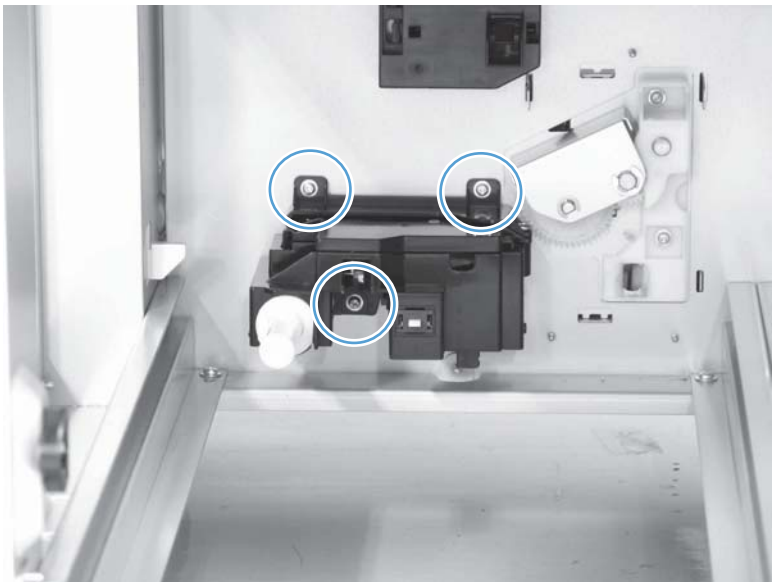
1. Disconnect one connector.

   Figure 1-548 Remove the HCI left tray automatic close assembly (1 of 2)

2. From inside the tray cavity, remove three screws, and then remove the assembly.

   Figure 1-549 Remove the HCI left tray automatic close assembly (2 of 2)

HCI right tray pickup assembly

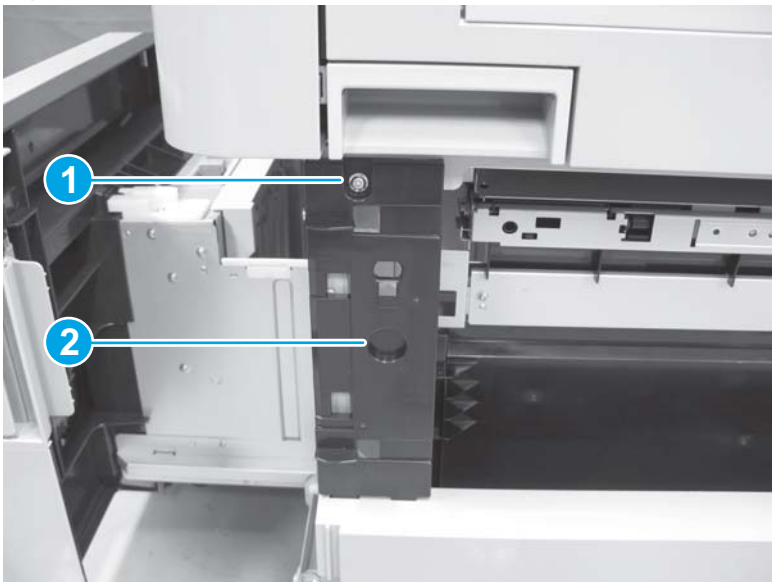
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- HCI right tray. See HCI right tray on page 360.
- HCI rear cover. See HCI rear cover on page 362.
- HCI right tray pickup drive. See HCI right tray pickup drive on page 366.

Remove the HCI right tray pickup assembly

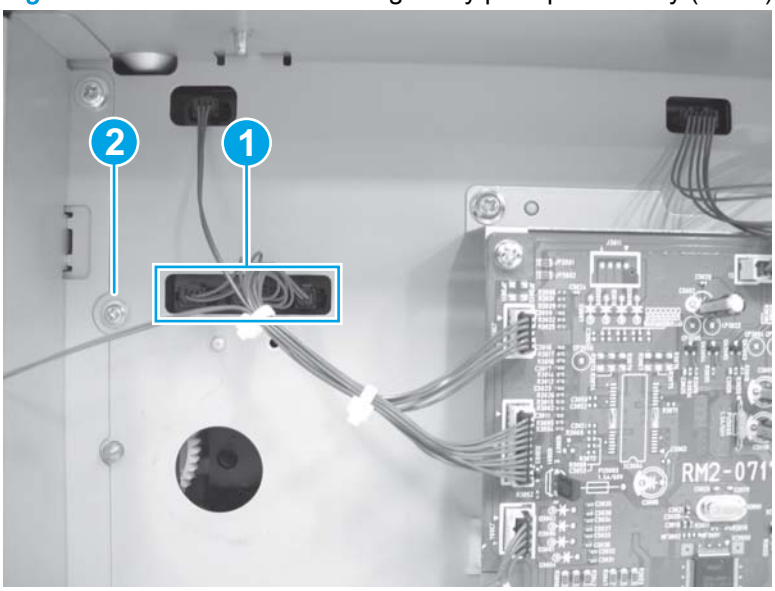
1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the lock holder (callout 2).

Figure 1-550 Remove the HCI right tray pickup assembly (1 of 3)



2. Disconnect three connectors (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

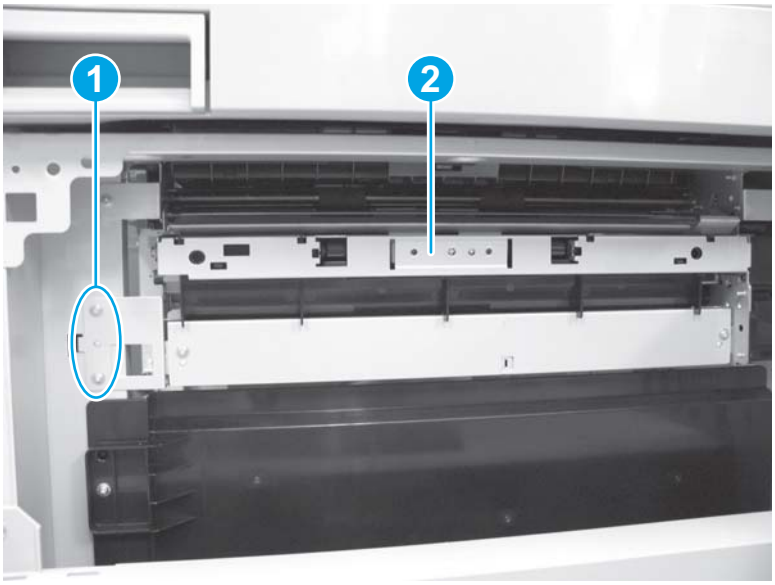
Figure 1-551 Remove the HCI right tray pickup assembly (2 of 3)



3. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the assembly (callout 2).

TIP: For easier removal, lift up on the merge assembly flap, and then remove (or replace) the pickup assembly from the right side of the HCI chassis (rather than from inside the tray cavity).

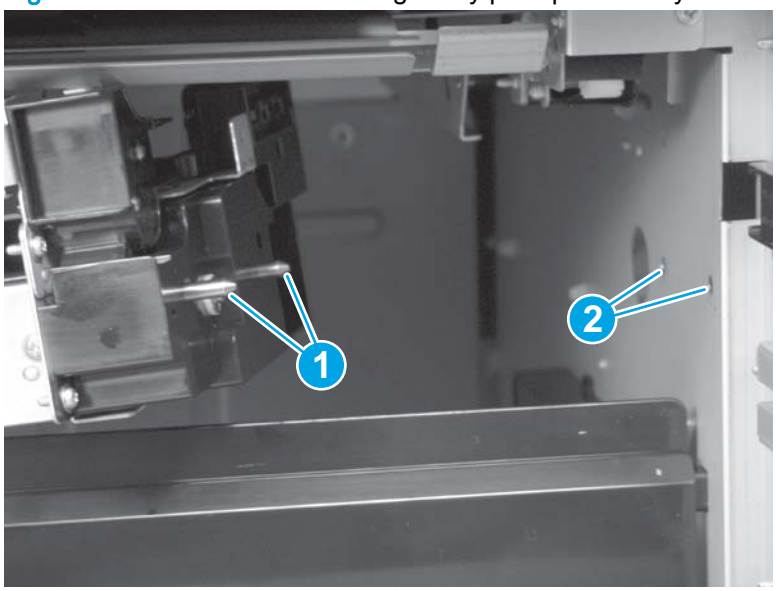
Figure 1-552 Remove the HCI right tray pickup assembly (3 of 3)



Reinstall the HCI right tray pickup assembly

Make sure that the pins (callout 1) on the HCI right tray pickup assembly are inserted in the holes (callout 2) in the product.

Figure 1-553 Reinstall the HCI right tray pickup assembly



HCI left tray pickup assembly

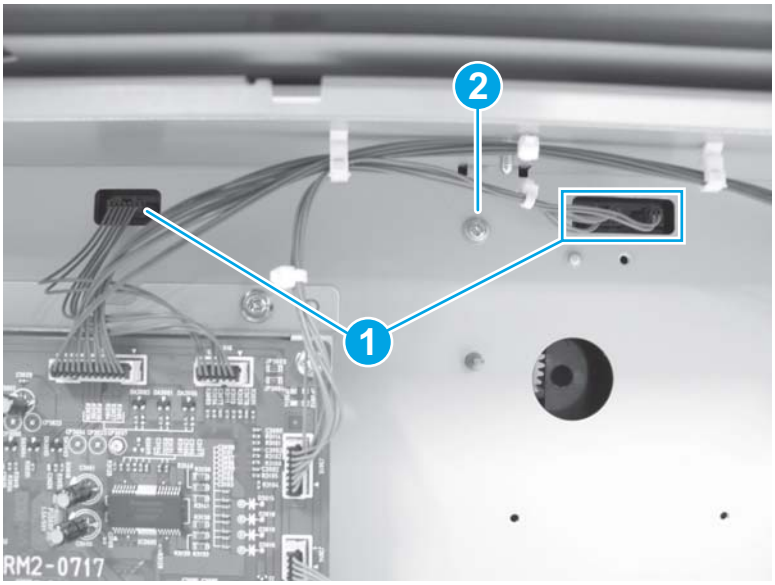
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- HCI right tray. See HCI right tray on page 360.
- HCI left tray. See HCI left tray on page 361.
- HCI rear cover. See HCI rear cover on page 362.
- HCI left tray pickup drive. See HCI left tray pickup drive on page 368.

Remove the HCI left tray pickup assembly

1. Disconnect three connectors (callout 1) and then remove one screw (callout 2).

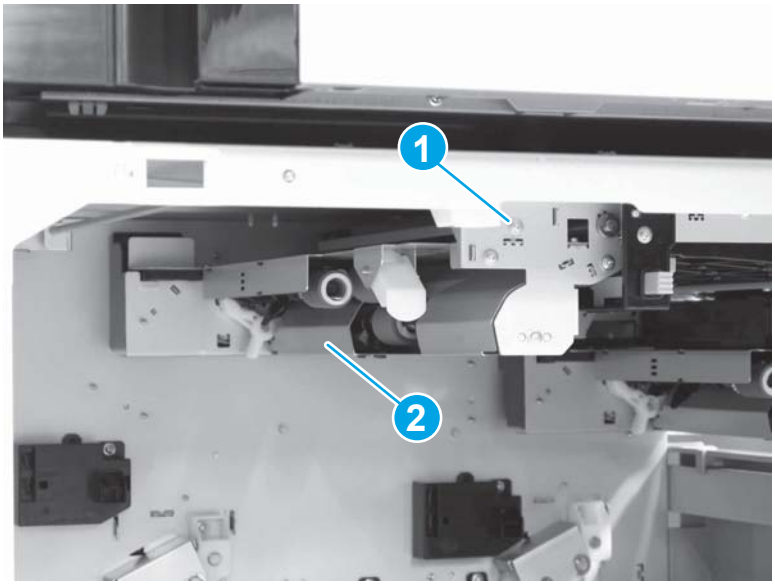
   Figure 1-554 Remove the HCI left tray pickup assembly (1 of 2)



2. From inside the tray cavity, remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the assembly (callout 2).

TIP: Support the assembly when removing the screw (callout 1) so that it does not fall.

Figure 1-555 Remove the HCI left tray pickup assembly (2 of 2)



Reinstall the HCI left tray pickup assembly

Make sure that the pins (callout 1) on the HCI left tray pickup assembly are inserted in the holes (callout 2) in the product.

Figure 1-556 Reinstall the HCI left tray pickup assembly (1 of 2)

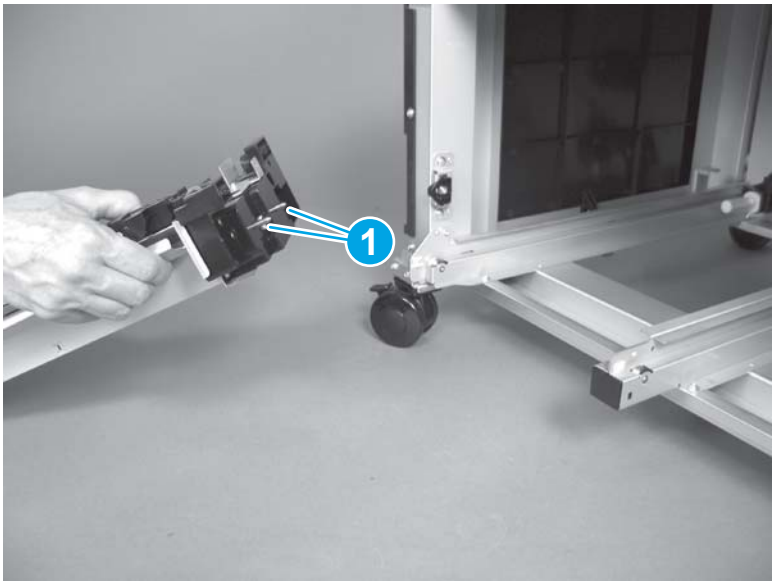
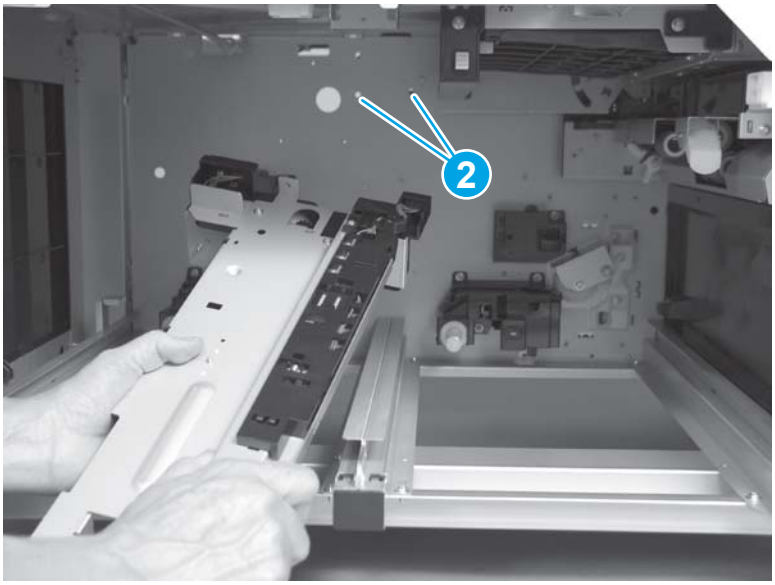


Figure 1-557 Reinstall the HCI left tray pickup assembly (2 of 2)



HCI merge assembly

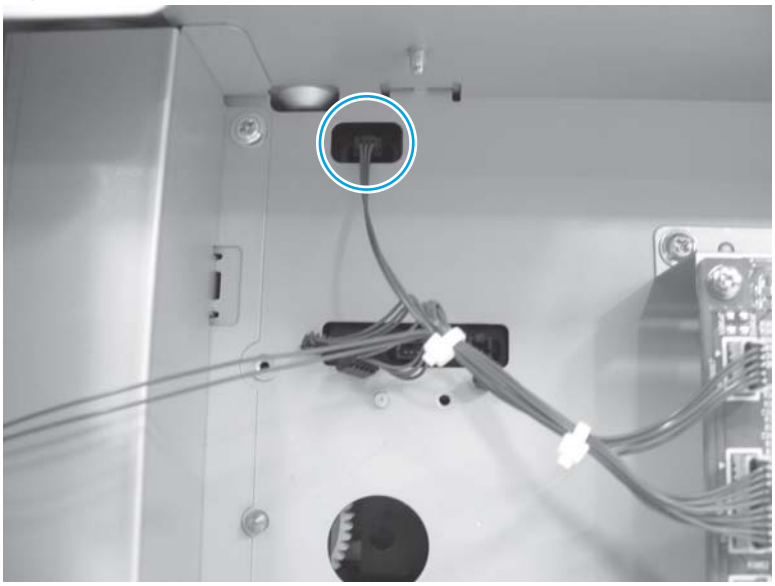
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- HCI right tray. See HCI right tray on page 360.
- HCI rear cover. See HCI rear cover on page 362.
- HCI right tray pickup drive. See HCI right tray pickup drive on page 366.
- HCI right tray pickup assembly. See HCI right tray pickup assembly on page 375.
- HCI, 1x500, and 3x500 right door assembly. See HCI, 1x500, and 3x500 right door assembly on page 428.

Remove the HCI merge assembly

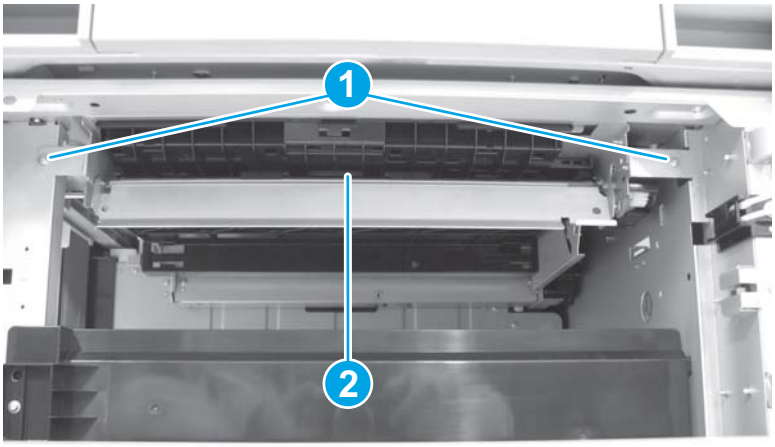
1. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 1-558 Remove the HCI merge assembly (1 of 2)



2. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the assembly (callout 2).

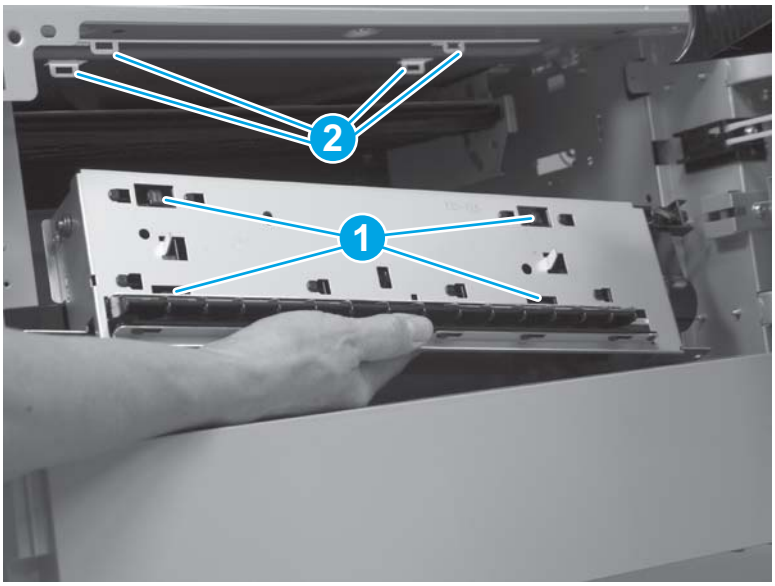
Figure 1-559 Remove the HCI merge assembly (2 of 2)



Reinstall the HCI merge assembly

Make sure that the tabs on the merge assembly (callout 1) are installed in the slots (callout 2) in the product.

Figure 1-560 Reinstall the HCI merge assembly



HCI controller PCA

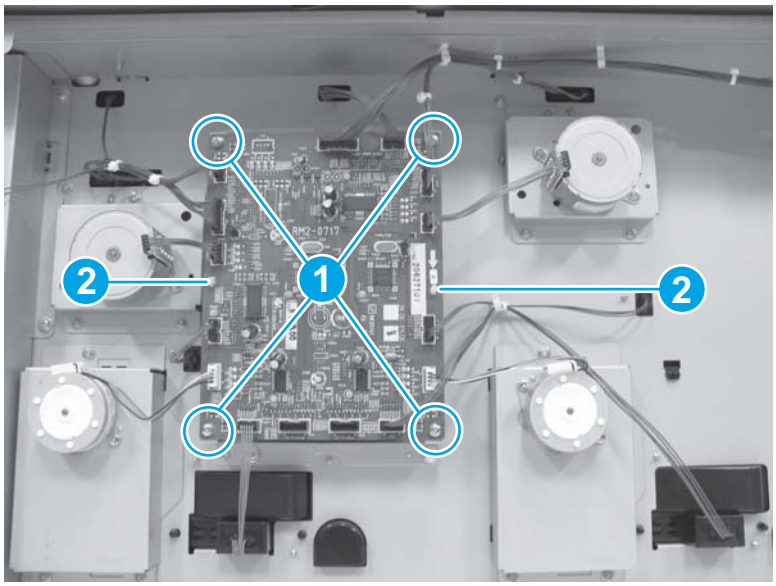
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- HCI rear cover. See HCI rear cover on page 362.

Remove the HCI controller PCA

Disconnect all of the connectors on the HCI controller PCA, remove four screws (callout 1), release two standoffs (callout 2), and then remove the PCA.

Figure 1-561 Remove the HCI controller PCA



1x500- and 3x500-sheet feeders

NOTE: Some of the procedures in this section require the product to be removed from the input accessory.

Location of major components

Figure 1-562 External covers and doors (1x500-sheet feeder)

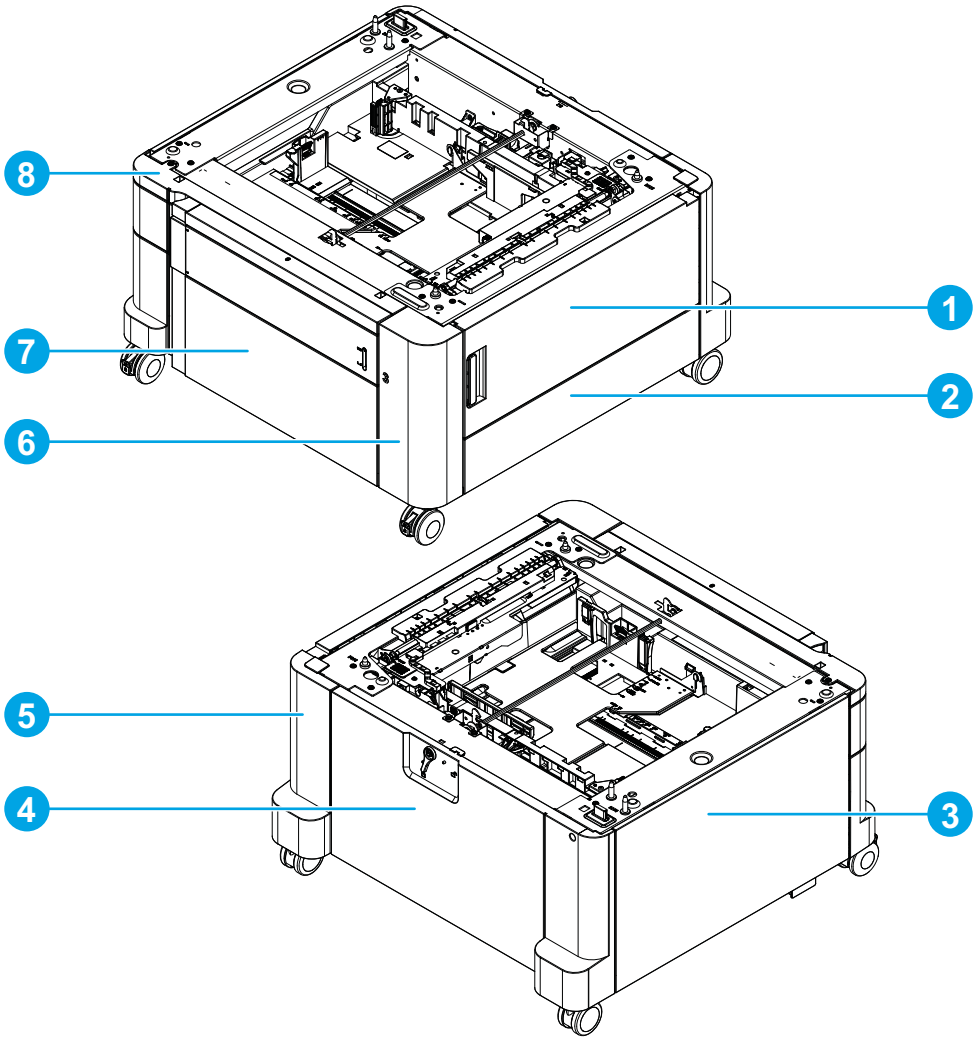


Table 1-15 External covers and doors (1x500-sheet feeder)

Item	Description	Item	Description
1	Right door	5	Right rear cover
2	Right lower cover	6	Right front cover
3	Left cover	7	Storage box door
4	Rear cover	8	Upper front cover

Figure 1-563 External covers and doors (3x500-sheet feeder)

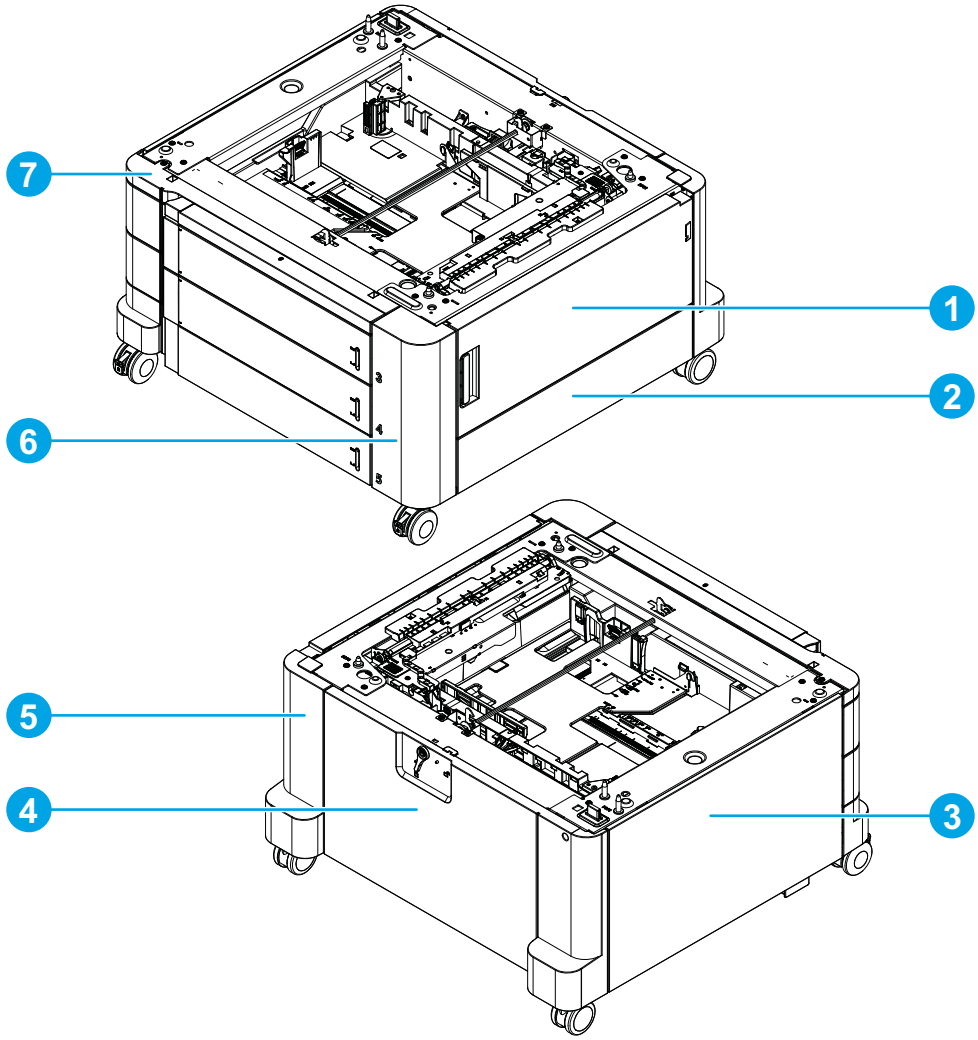


Table 1-16 External covers and doors (3x500-sheet feeder)

Item	Description	Item	Description
1	Right door	5	Right rear cover
2	Right lower cover	6	Right front cover
3	Left cover	7	Upper front cover
4	Rear cover		

Figure 1-564 Main assemblies (1x500-sheet feeder)

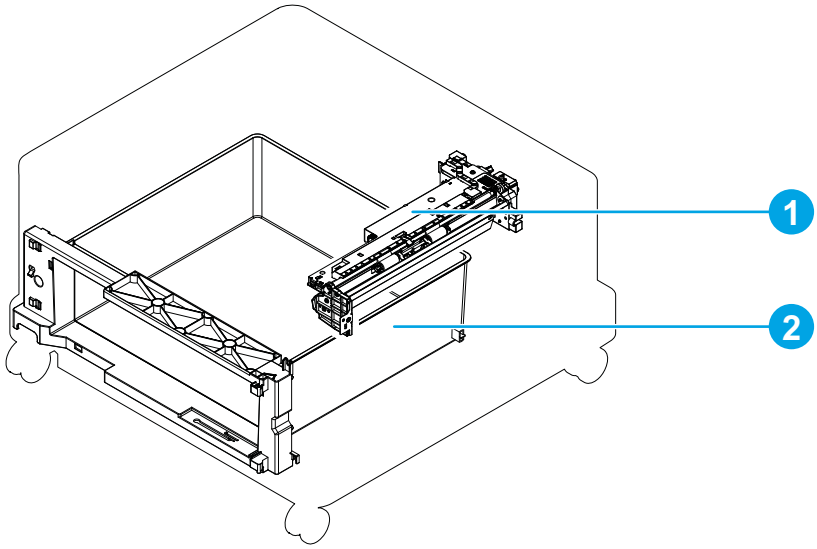


Table 1-17 Main assemblies (1x500-sheet feeder)

Item	Description	Item	Description
1	Tray 3 pickup assembly (1x500)	2	Storage box assembly

Figure 1-565 Main assemblies (3x500-sheet feeder)

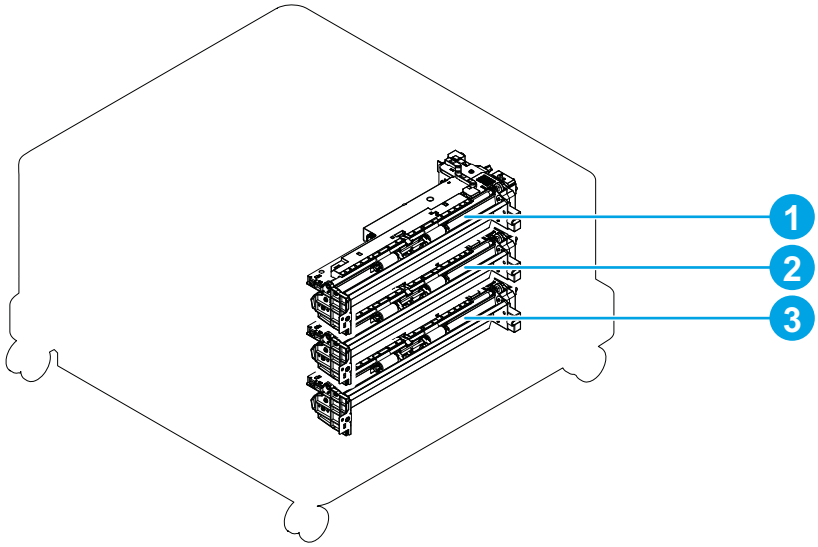


Table 1-18 Main assemblies (3x500-sheet feeder)

Item	Description	Item	Description
1	Tray 3 pickup assembly (3x500)	3	Tray 5 pickup assembly (3x500)
2	Tray 4 pickup assembly (3x500)		

Figure 1-566 Printed circuit assembly (PCA)

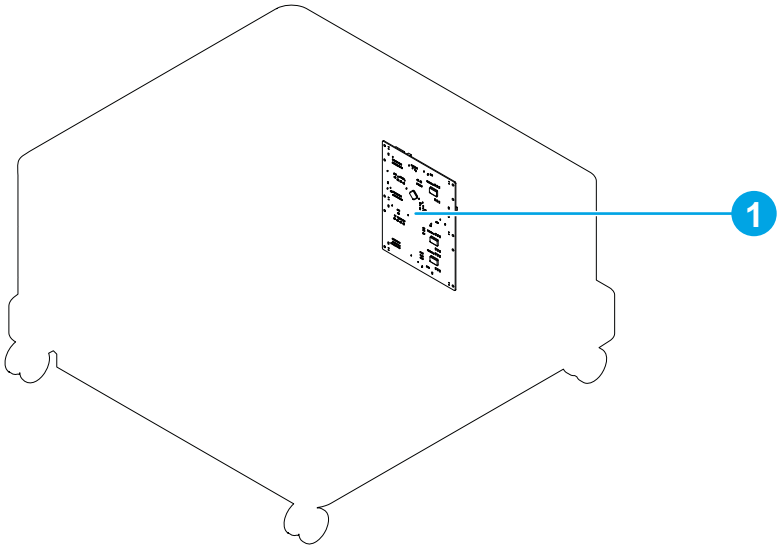


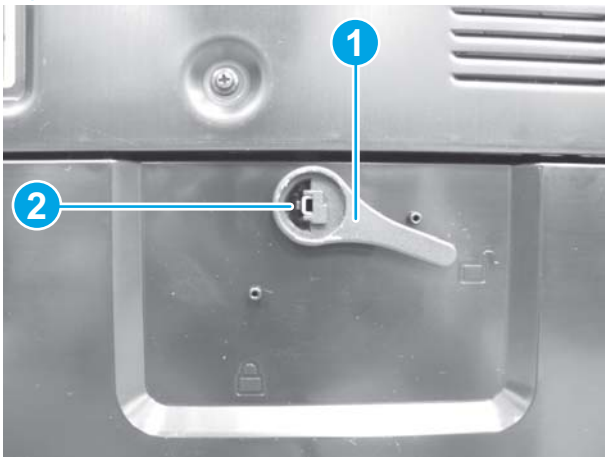
Table 1-19 Printed circuit assembly (PCA)

Item	Description	Item	Description
1	Controller PCA (1x500, 3x500)		

1x500 and 3x500 rear cover

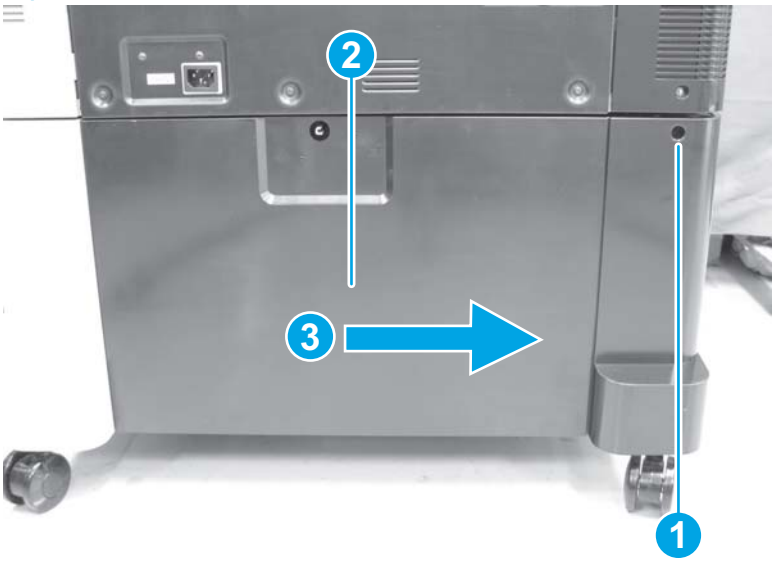
1. Move the lock lever (callout 1) to the unlocked position. Release one tab (callout 2), and then remove the lock lever.

Figure 1-567 Remove the 1x500 and 3x500 rear cover (1 of 2)



2. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the rear cover (callout 2) toward the left door (callout 3) to remove it.

Figure 1-568 Remove the 1x500 and 3x500 rear cover (2 of 2)



1x500 and 3x500 right front cover

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- 1x500 Tray 3(1x500 only). See Tray 2, 1x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 4, and 3x500 Tray 5 on page 18.
- 3x500 Tray 3 (3x500 only). See Tray 2, 1x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 4, and 3x500 Tray 5 on page 18.

Remove the 1x500 and 3x500 right front cover

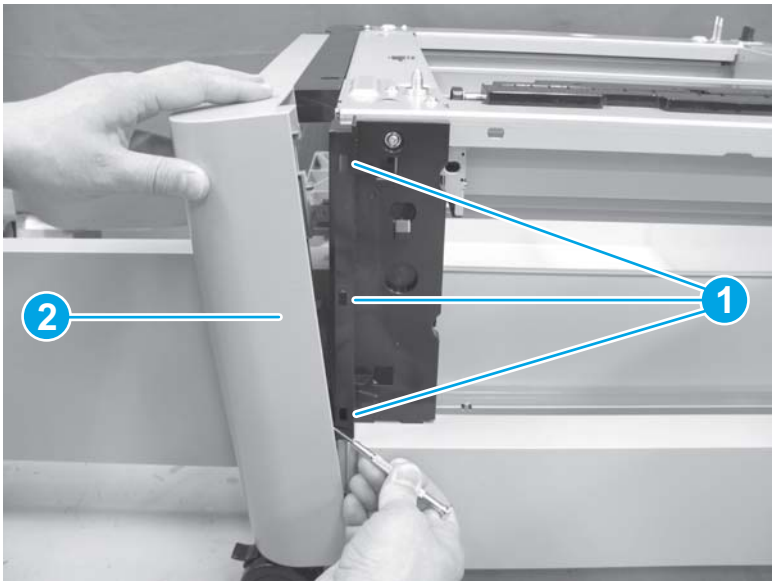
1. Remove one screw.

   Figure 1-569 Remove the 1x500 and 3x500 right front cover (1 of 2)

2. Open the 1x500 and 3x500 right door.
3. **1x500 only**: Open the 1x500 storage box door.

4. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release three tabs (callout 1), and then lift the right front cover (callout 2) away from the product.

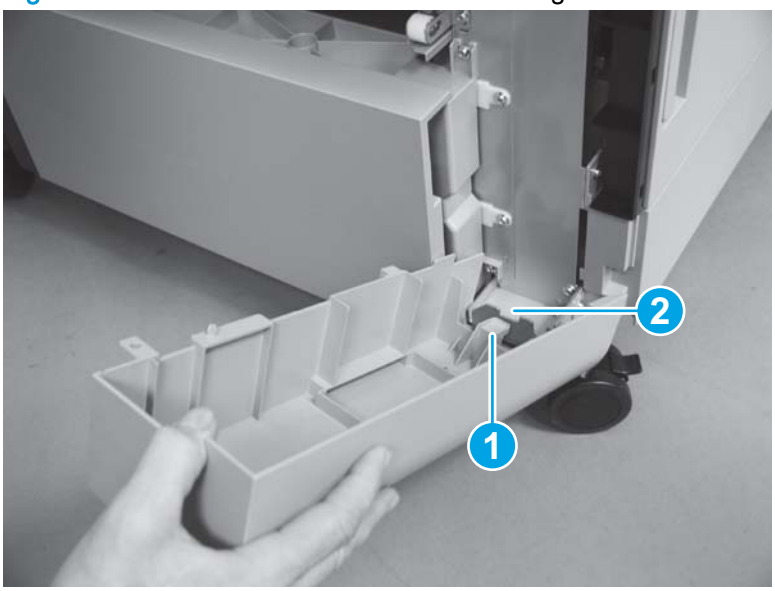
Figure 1-570 Remove the 1x500 and 3x500 right front cover (2 of 2)



Reinstall the 1x500 and 3x500 right front cover

Make sure that the tab on the cover (callout 1) is positioned over the sheet-metal slot (callout 2) in the product.

Figure 1-571 Reinstall the 1x500 and 3x500 right front cover



1x500 and 3x500 upper front face cover

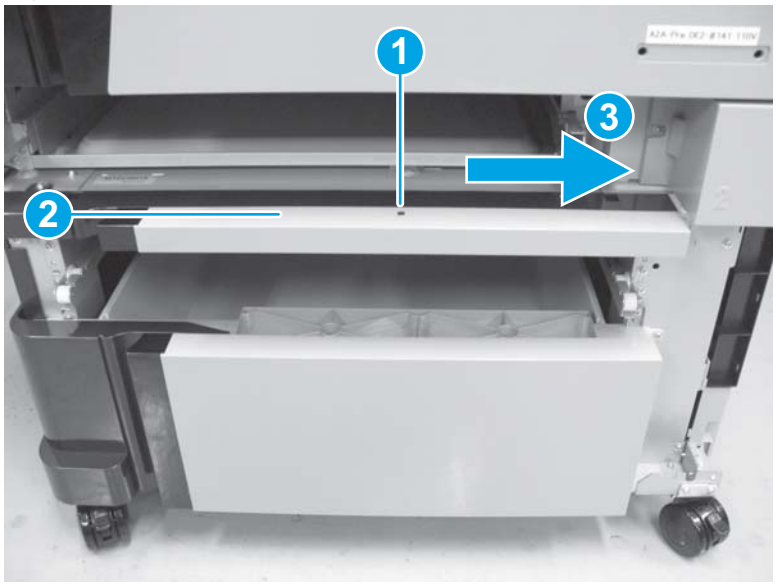
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Tray 2. See Tray 2, 1x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 4, and 3x500 Tray 5 on page 18.
- 1x500 Tray 3 (1x500 only). See Tray 2, 1x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 4, and 3x500 Tray 5 on page 18.
- 3x500 Tray 3 (3x500 only). See Tray 2, 1x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 4, and 3x500 Tray 5 on page 18.
- 1x500 and 3x500 right front cover. See 1x500 and 3x500 right front cover on page 388.

Remove the 1x500 and 3x500 upper front face cover

Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the upper front face cover (callout 2) toward the right door to remove it (callout 3).

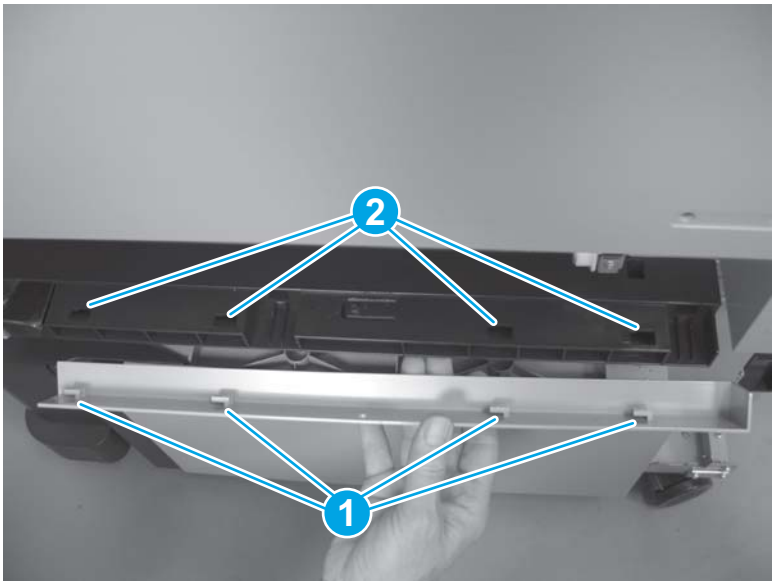
Figure 1-572 Remove the 1x500 and 3x500 upper front face cover



Reinstall the 1x500 and 3x500 upper front face cover

Make sure that the three tabs on the cover (callout 1) are positioned in the slots (callout 2) in the product.

Figure 1-573 Reinstall the 1x500 and 3x500 upper front face cover



1x500 and 3x500 upper front cover

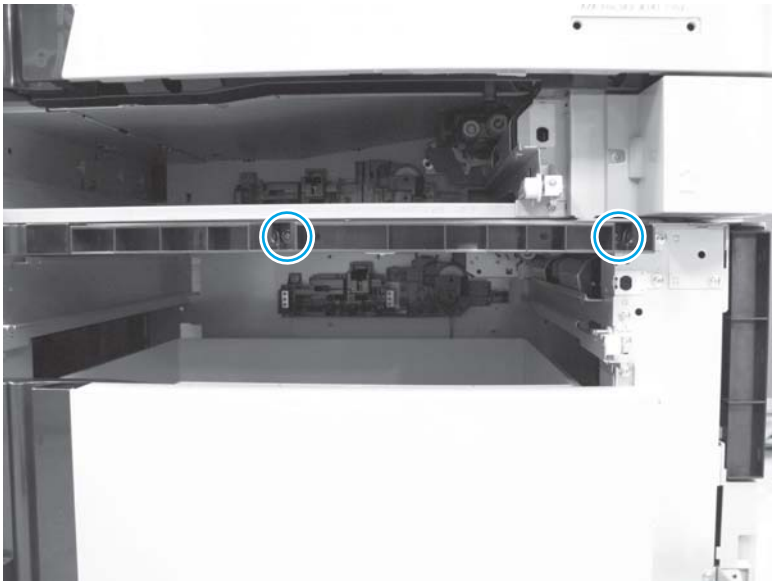
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Tray 2. See Tray 2, 1x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 4, and 3x500 Tray 5 on page 18.
- 1x500 Tray 3 (1x500 only). See Tray 2, 1x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 4, and 3x500 Tray 5 on page 18.
- 3x500 Tray 3 (3x500 only). See Tray 2, 1x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 4, and 3x500 Tray 5 on page 18.
- 1x500 and 3x500 right front cover. See 1x500 and 3x500 right front cover on page 388.
- 1x500 and 3x500 upper front face cover. See 1x500 and 3x500 upper front face cover on page 390.

Remove the 1x500 and 3x500 right front cover

1. Remove two screws.

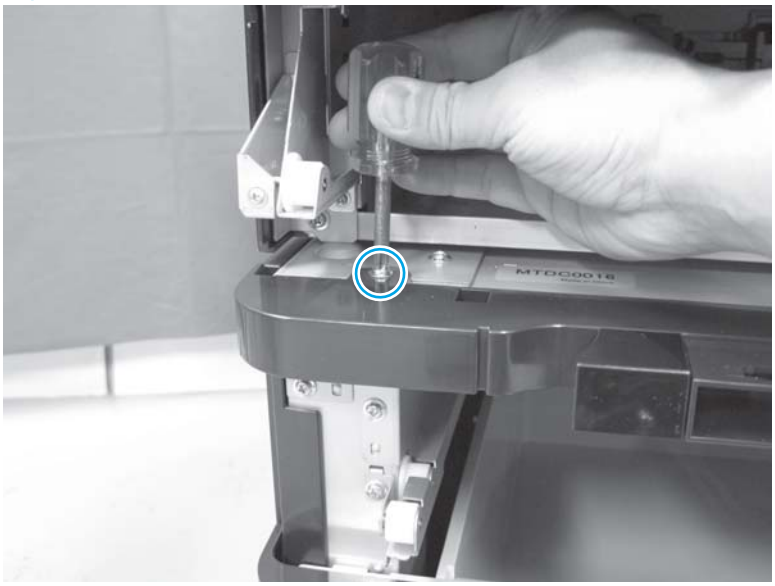
Figure 1-574 Remove the 1x500 and 3x500 upper front cover (1 of 4)



2. Remove one screw.

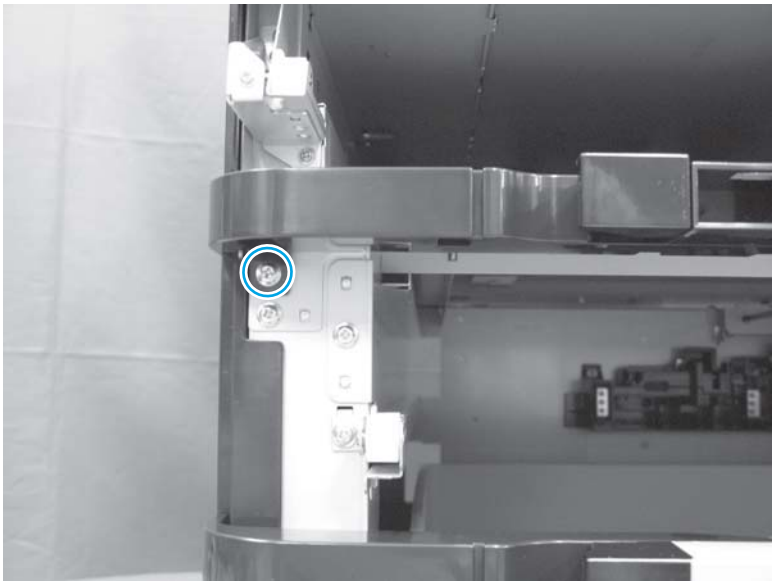
TIP: Use a Phillips-head screwdriver with a short shaft to remove this screw.

Figure 1-575 Remove the 1x500 and 3x500 upper front cover (2 of 4)



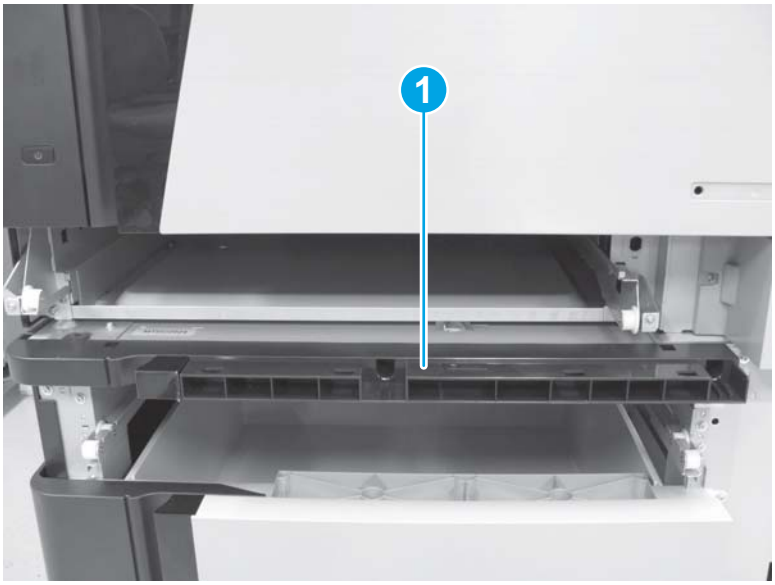
3. Remove one screw.

Figure 1-576 Remove the 1x500 and 3x500 upper front cover (3 of 4)



4. Lift up to remove the upper front cover (callout 1).

Figure 1-577 Remove the 1x500 and 3x500 upper front cover (4 of 4)



1x500 and 3x500 upper front left face cover

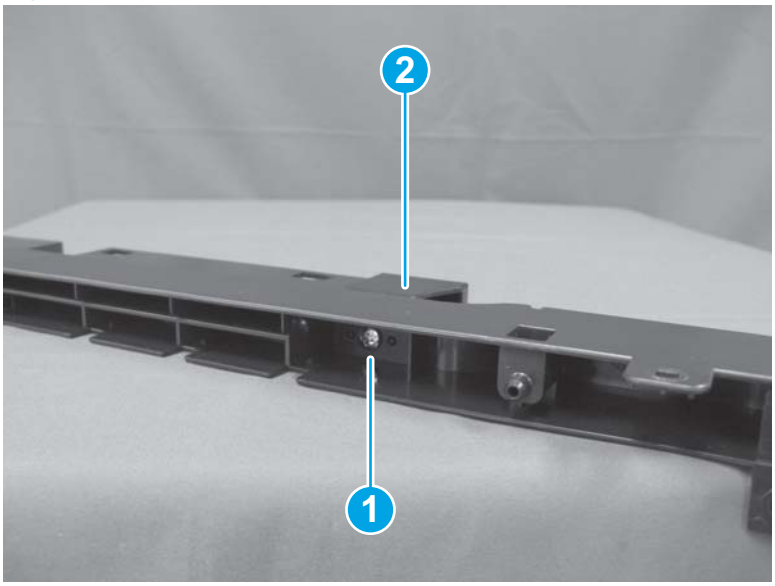
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Tray 2. See Tray 2, 1x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 4, and 3x500 Tray 5 on page 18.
- 1x500 Tray 3 (1x500 only). See Tray 2, 1x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 4, and 3x500 Tray 5 on page 18.
- 3x500 Tray 3 (3x500 only). See Tray 2, 1x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 4, and 3x500 Tray 5 on page 18.
- 1x500 and 3x500 right front cover. See 1x500 and 3x500 right front cover on page 388.
- 1x500 and 3x500 upper front face cover. See 1x500 and 3x500 upper front face cover on page 390.
- 1x500 and 3x500 upper front cover. See 1x500 and 3x500 upper front cover on page 392.

Remove the 1x500 and 3x500 upper front left face cover

Remove one screw from the 1x500 and 3x500 upper front cover (callout 1), and then remove the upper front left face cover (callout 2).

Figure 1-578 Remove the 1x500 and 3x500 upper front left face cover



1x500 storage box door

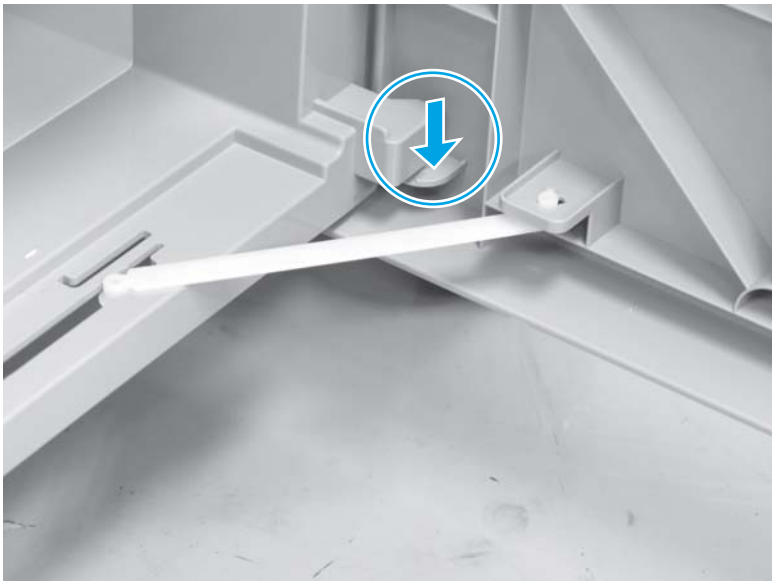
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- 1x500 Tray 3. See Tray 2, 1x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 4, and 3x500 Tray 5 on page 18.
- 1x500 and 3x500 right front cover. See 1x500 and 3x500 right front cover on page 388.

Remove the 1x500 storage box door

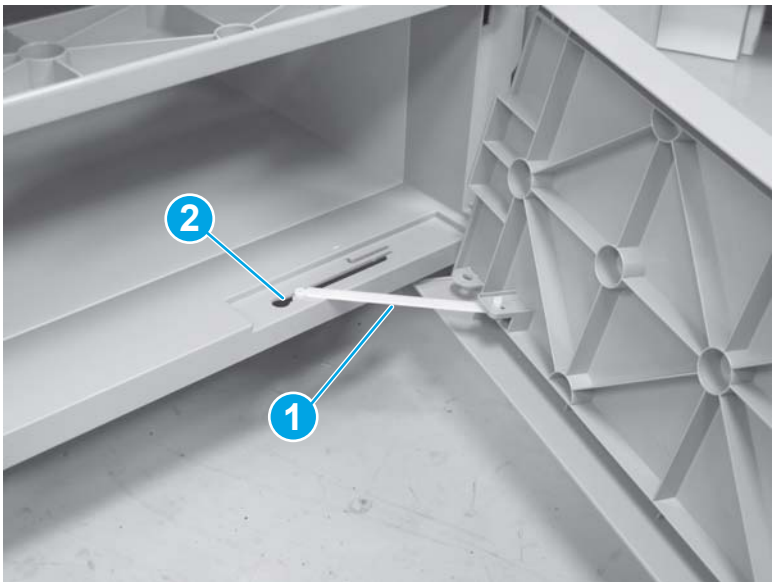
1. Press down on one tab to release the door hinge.

Figure 1-579 Remove the 1x500 storage box door (1 of 3)



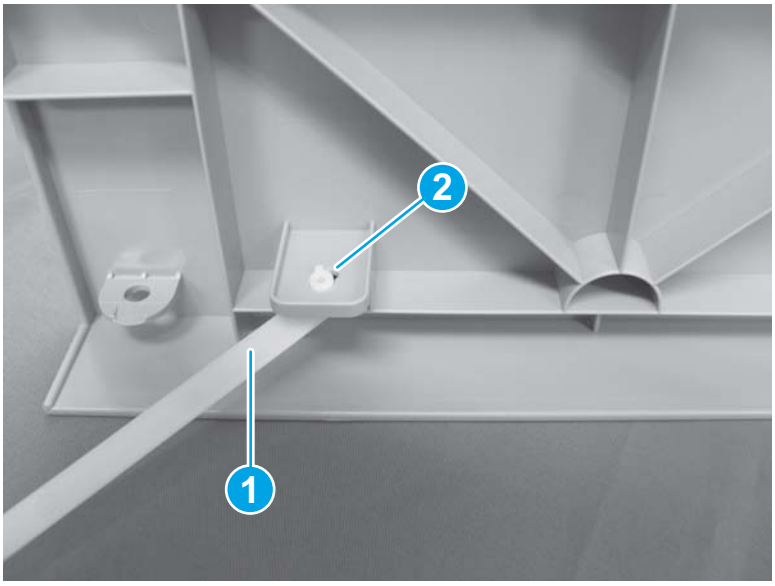
2. Release the link arm (callout 1) from the slot (callout 2).

Figure 1-580 Remove the 1x500 storage box door (2 of 3)



3. If you are replacing the storage box door, remove the link arm (callout 1) from the slot on the door (callout 2) and install it on the replacement door.

Figure 1-581 Remove the 1x500 storage box door (3 of 3)



1x500 storage box

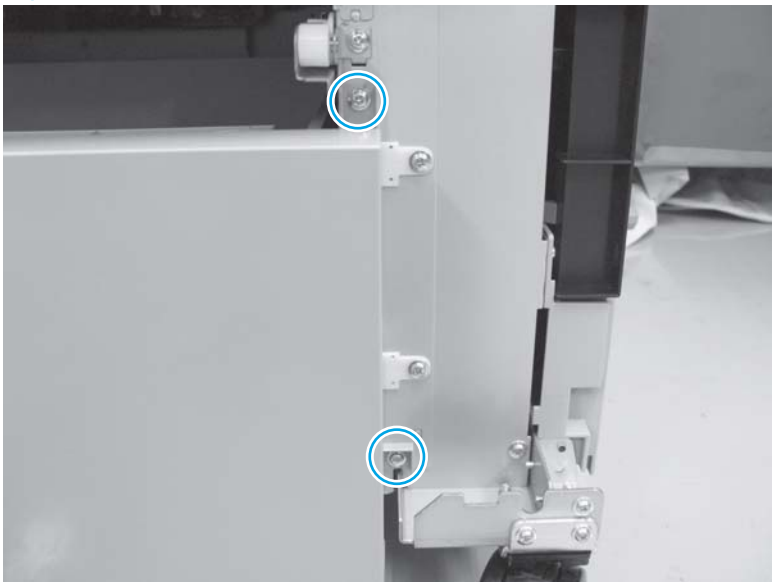
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- 1x500 Tray 3 (1x500 only). See Tray 2, 1x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 4, and 3x500 Tray 5 on page 18.
- 1x500 and 3x500 right front cover. See 1x500 and 3x500 right front cover on page 388.
- 1x500 storage box door (1x500 only). See 1x500 storage box door on page 396.

Remove the 1x500 storage box

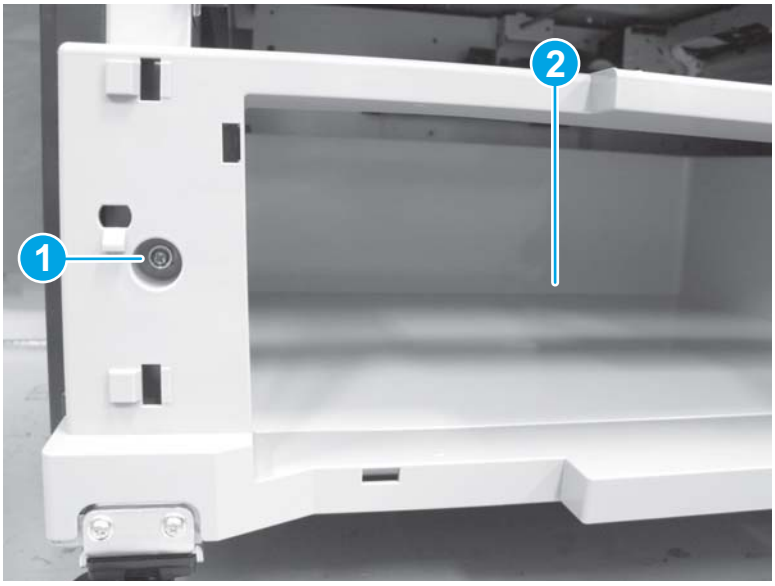
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 1-582 Remove the 1x500 storage box (1 of 2)



2. Remove one screw (callout 1) and then lift the storage box (callout 2) out of the printer to remove it.

Figure 1-583 Remove the 1x500 storage box (2 of 2)



1x500 and 3x500 right lower cover

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

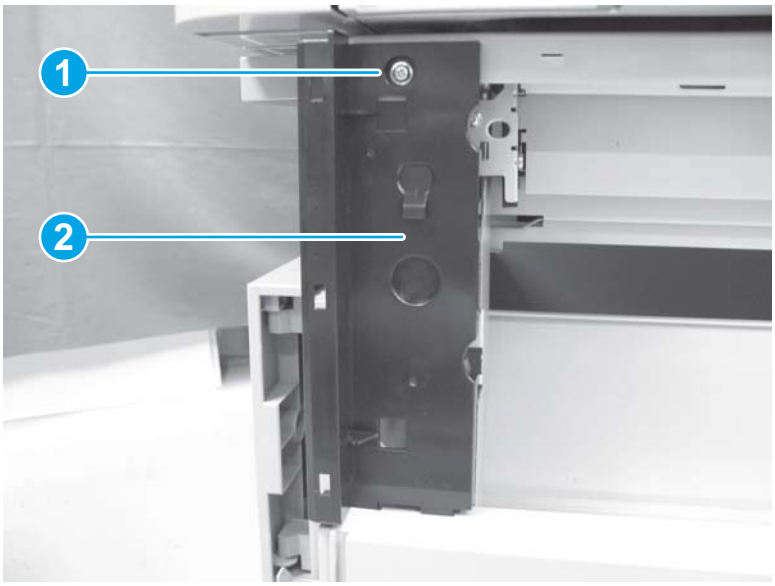
- 1x500 and 3x500 right front cover. See 1x500 and 3x500 right front cover on page 388.
- HCI, 1x500, and 3x500 right door assembly. See HCI, 1x500, and 3x500 right door assembly on page 428.
- HCI, 1x500, and 3x500 right rear cover. See HCI, 1x500, and 3x500 right rear cover on page 430.

Remove the 1x500 and 3x500 right lower cover

NOTE: The 1x500 right lower cover is shown below. The procedure is the same for the 3x500 right lower cover.

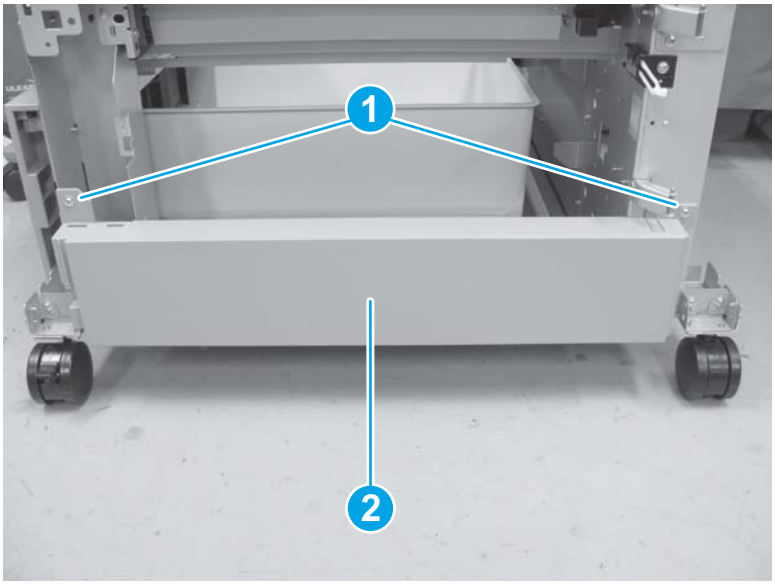
1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the lock holder (callout 2).

Figure 1-584 Remove the 1x500 and 3x500 right lower cover (1 of 2)



2. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the right lower cover (callout 2).

Figure 1-585 Remove the 1x500 and 3x500 right lower cover (2 of 2)



1x500 Tray 3 pickup assembly

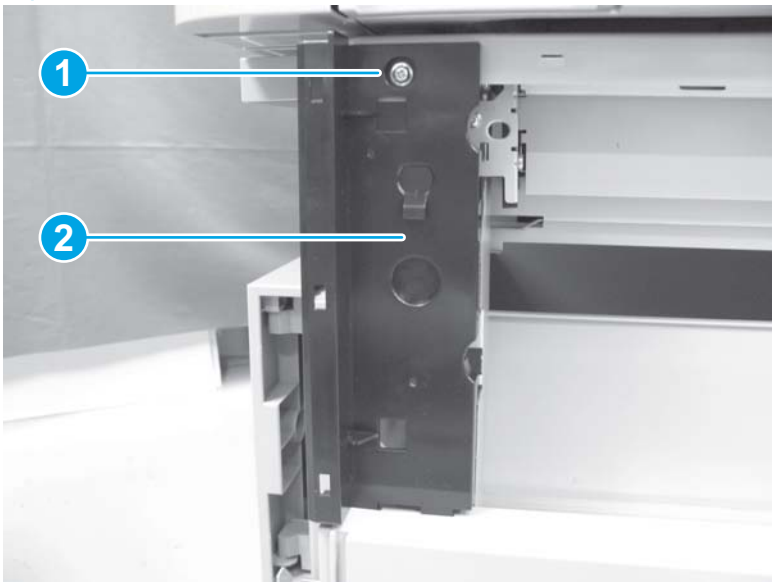
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- 1x500 Tray 3. See Tray 2, 1x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 4, and 3x500 Tray 5 on page 18.
- 1x500 and 3x500 rear cover. See 1x500 and 3x500 rear cover on page 387.
- 1x500 and 3x500 right front cover. See 1x500 and 3x500 right front cover on page 388.

Remove the 1x500 Tray 3 pickup assembly

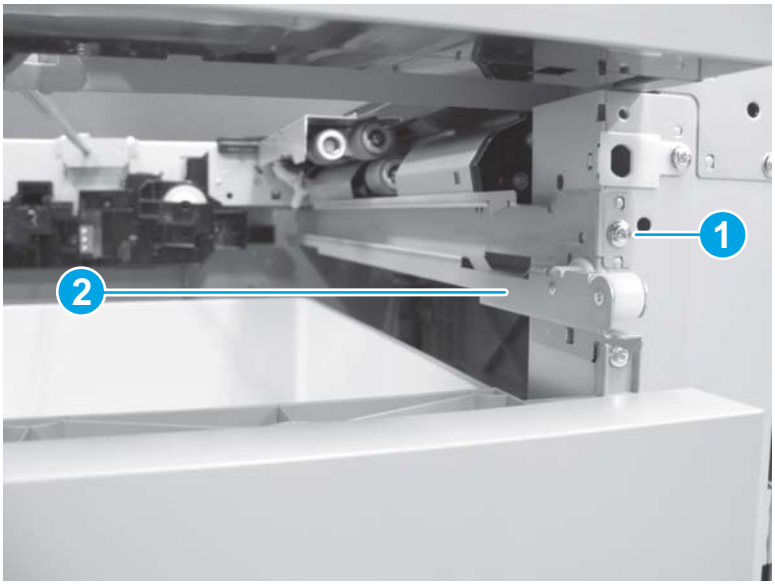
1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the lock holder (callout 2).

Figure 1-586 Remove the 1x500 Tray 3 pickup assembly (1 of 5)



2. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the tray guide rail (callout 2).

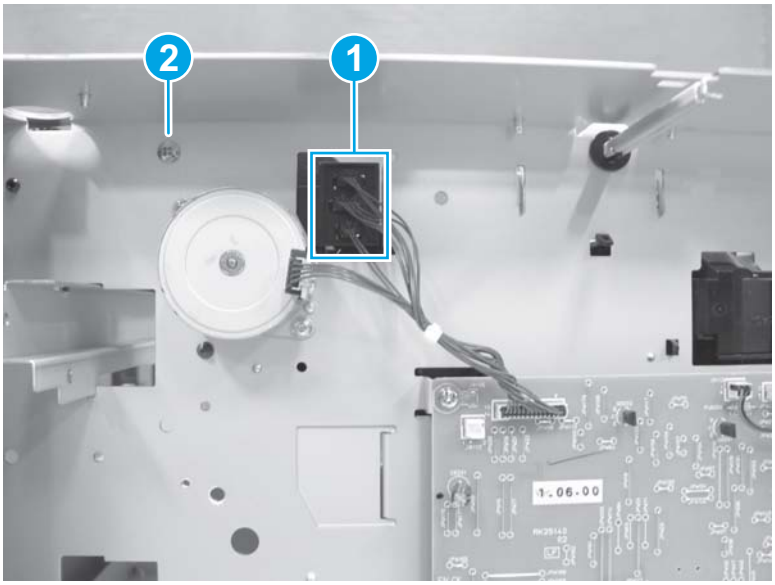
Figure 1-587 Remove the 1x500 Tray 3 pickup assembly (2 of 5)



3. Disconnect three connectors (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

NOTE: The connectors and screw are located on the back of the product.

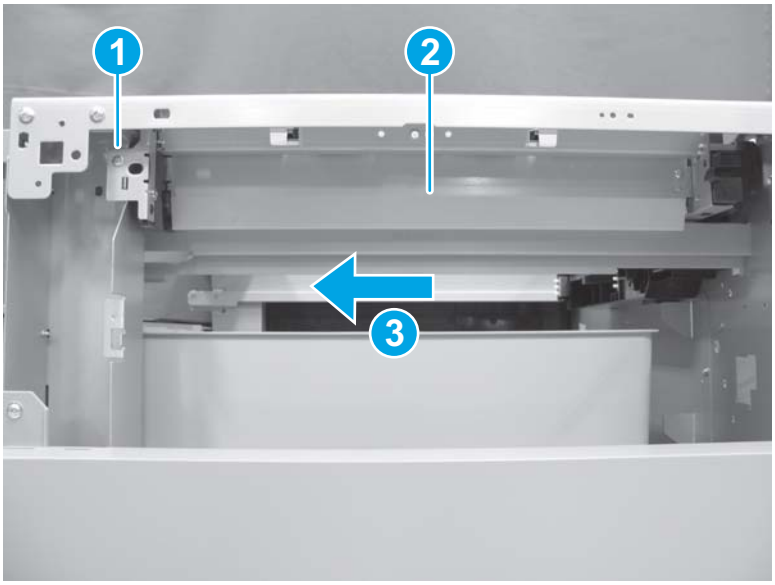
Figure 1-588 Remove the 1x500 Tray 3 pickup assembly (3 of 5)



4. Remove one screw (callout 1). Hold the tray pickup assembly (callout 2), and then slide it toward the front of the product (callout 3) to release it.

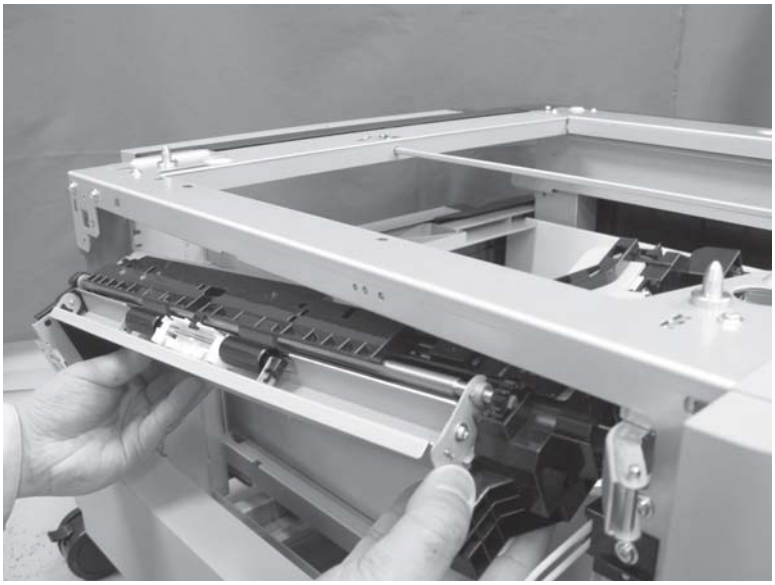
NOTE: The screw and tray pickup assembly are located on the right side of the product.

Figure 1-589 Remove the 1x500 Tray 3 pickup assembly (4 of 5)



5. Remove the tray pickup assembly.

Figure 1-590 Remove the 1x500 Tray 3 pickup assembly (5 of 5)



Reinstall the 1x500 Tray 3 pickup assembly

1. Make sure that the shaft on the tray pickup assembly (callout 1) is positioned in the hole (callout 2) in the product.

NOTE: Callout 2 shows the location of the hole from the back of the product.

Figure 1-591 Reinstall the 1x500 Tray 3 pickup assembly (1 of 4)

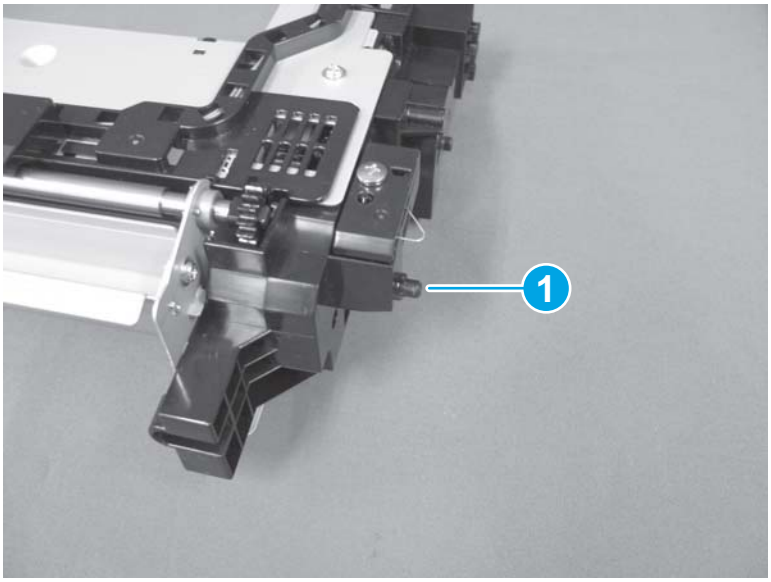
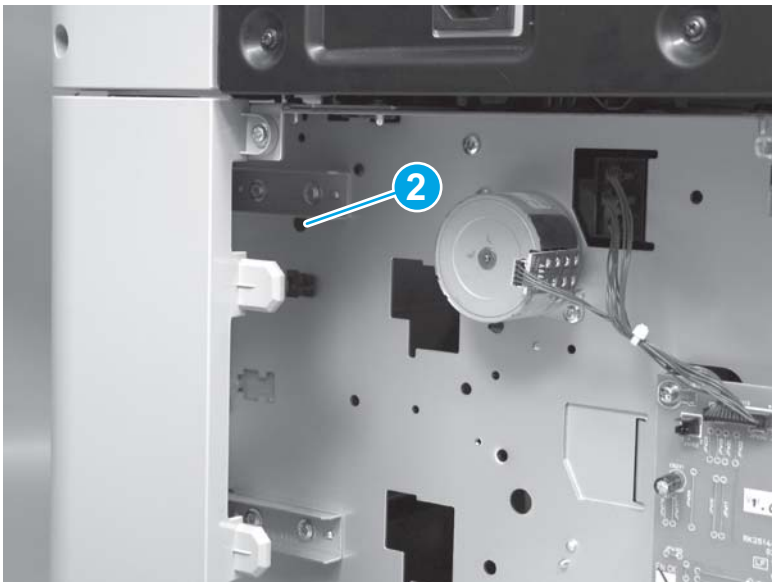
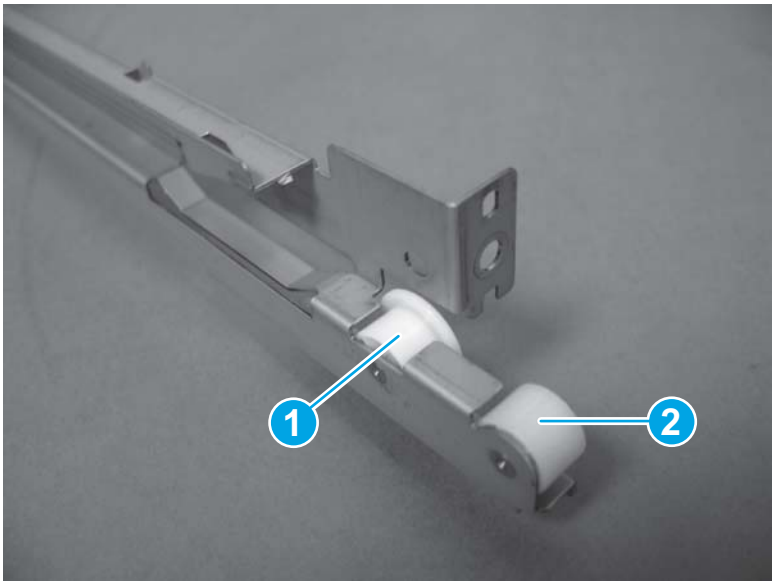


Figure 1-592 Reinstall the 1x500 Tray 3 pickup assembly (2 of 4)



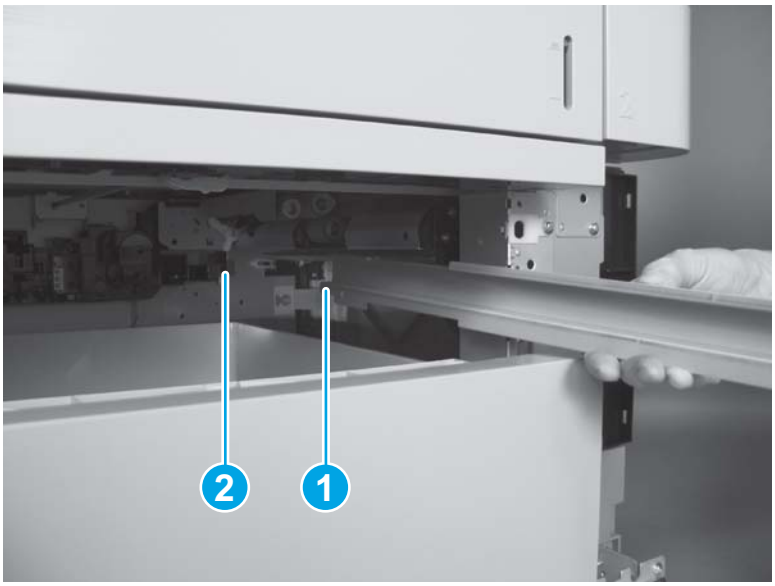
2. If the gear (callout 1) or the roller (callout 2) fall off of the tray guide rail, make sure that they are reinstalled correctly

Figure 1-593 Reinstall the 1x500 Tray 3 pickup assembly (3 of 4)



3. Install the end of the tray guide rail (callout 1) into the slot in the product (callout 2).

Figure 1-594 Reinstall the 1x500 Tray 3 pickup assembly (4 of 4)



3x500 Tray 3 pickup assembly

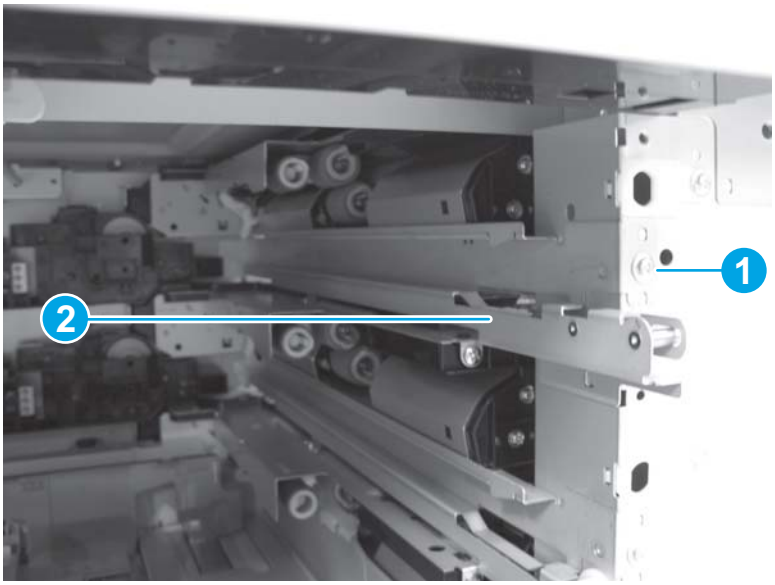
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- 3x500 Tray 3. See Tray 2, 1x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 4, and 3x500 Tray 5 on page 18.
- 3x500 Tray 4. See Tray 2, 1x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 4, and 3x500 Tray 5 on page 18.
- 1x500 and 3x500 rear cover. See 1x500 and 3x500 rear cover on page 387.
- 1x500 and 3x500 right front cover. See 1x500 and 3x500 right front cover on page 388.
- 3x500 Tray 4 pickup assembly. See 3x500 Tray 4 pickup assembly on page 412.

Remove the 3x500 Tray 3 pickup assembly

1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the tray guide rail (callout 2).

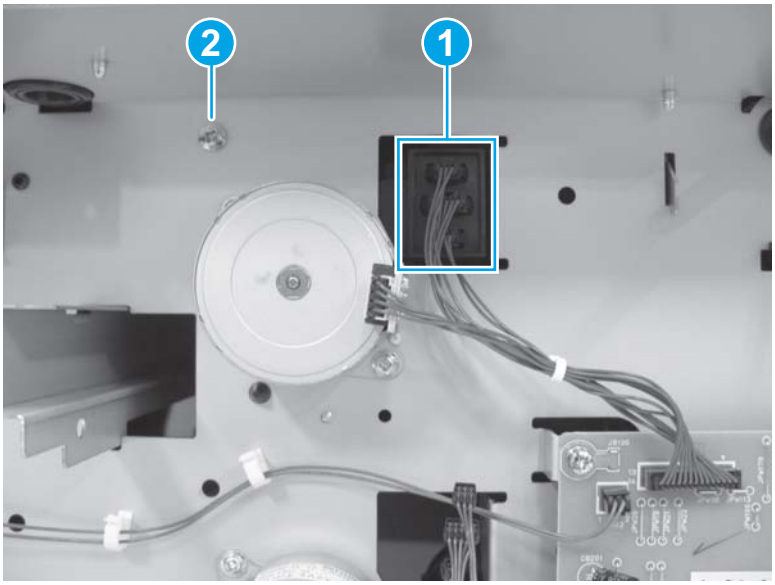
Figure 1-595 Remove the 3x500 Tray 3 pickup assembly (1 of 4)



2. Disconnect three connectors (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

NOTE: The connectors and screw are located on the back of the product.

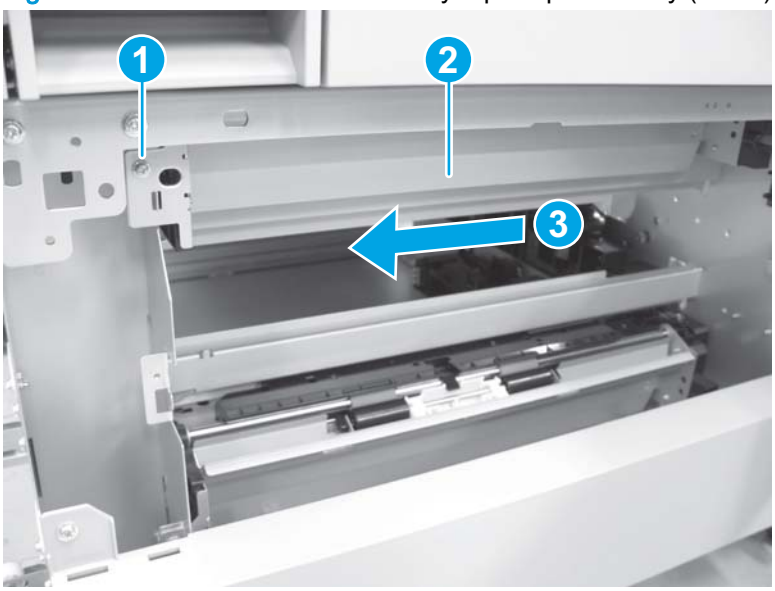
Figure 1-596 Remove the 3x500 Tray 3 pickup assembly (2 of 4)



3. Remove one screw (callout 1). Hold the tray pickup assembly (callout 2), and then slide it toward the front of the product (callout 3) to release it.

NOTE: The screw and tray pickup assembly are located on the right side of the product.

Figure 1-597 Remove the 3x500 Tray 3 pickup assembly (3 of 4)



4. Remove the tray pickup assembly.

Figure 1-598 Remove the 3x500 Tray 3 pickup assembly (4 of 4

Reinstall the 3x500 Tray 3 pickup assembly

1. Make sure that the shaft on the tray pickup assembly (callout 1) is positioned in the hole (callout 2) in the product.

NOTE: Callout 2 shows the location of the hole from the back of the product.

Figure 1-599 Reinstall the 3x500 Tray 3 pickup assembly (1 of 4)

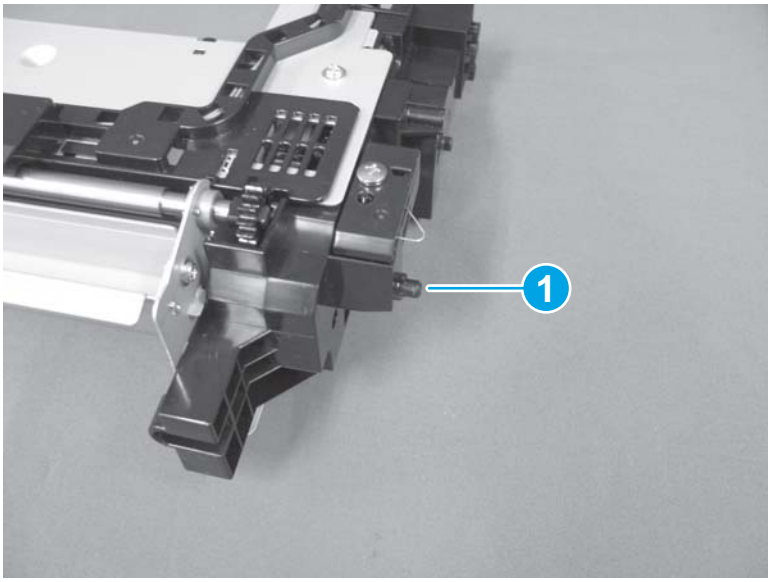
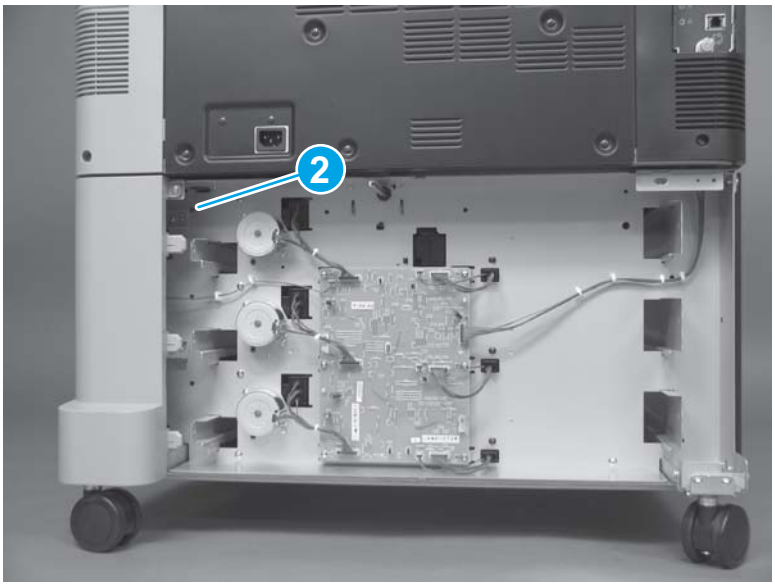
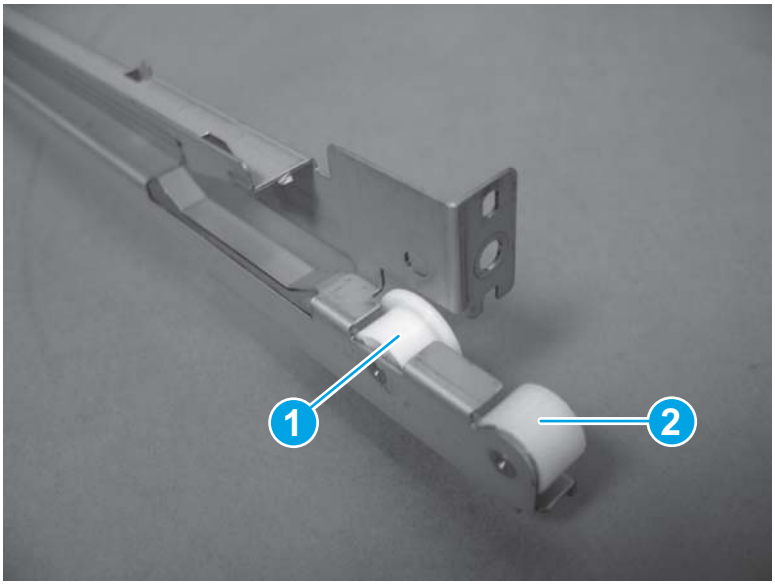


Figure 1-600 Reinstall the 3x500 Tray 3 pickup assembly (2 of 4)



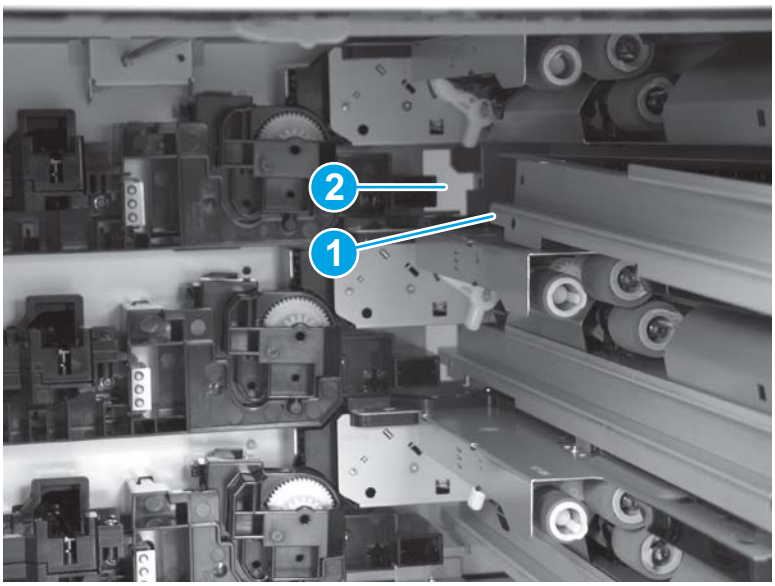
2. If the gear (callout 1) or the roller (callout 2) fall off of the tray guide rail, make sure that they are reinstalled correctly

Figure 1-601 Reinstall the 3x500 Tray 3 pickup assembly (3 of 4)



3. Install the end of the tray guide rail (callout 1) into the slot in the product (callout 2).

Figure 1-602 Reinstall the 3x500 Tray 3 pickup assembly (4 of 4)



3x500 Tray 4 pickup assembly

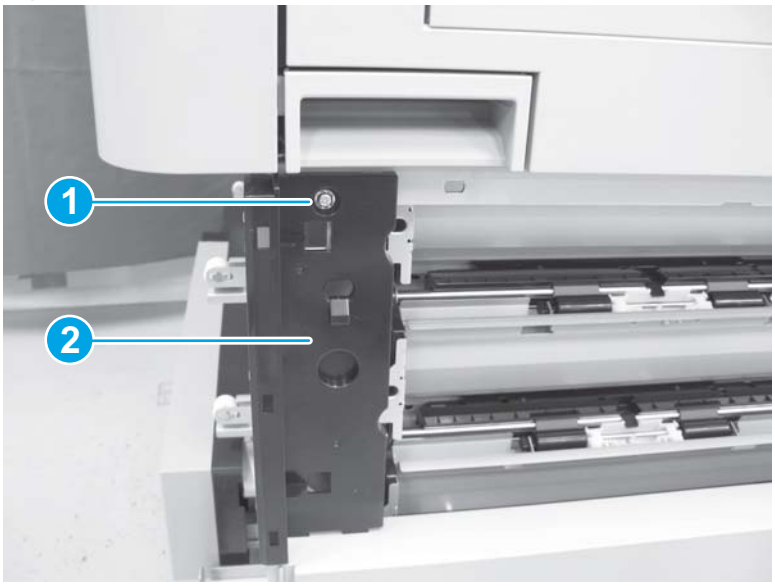
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- 3x500 Tray 4. See Tray 2, 1x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 4, and 3x500 Tray 5 on page 18.
- 1x500 and 3x500 rear cover. See 1x500 and 3x500 rear cover on page 387.
- 1x500 and 3x500 right front cover. See 1x500 and 3x500 right front cover on page 388.

Remove the 3x500 Tray 4 pickup assembly

1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the lock holder (callout 2).

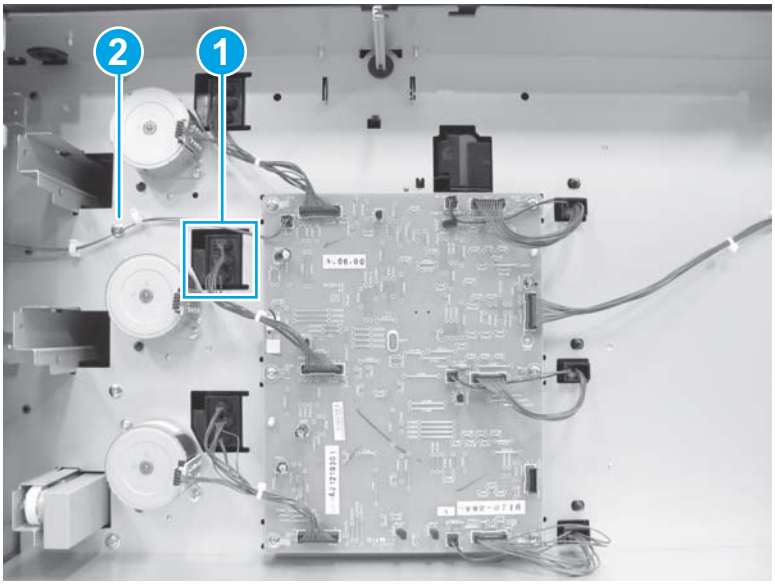
Figure 1-603 Remove the 3x500 Tray 4 pickup assembly (1 of 4)



2. Disconnect three connectors (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

NOTE: The connectors and screw are located on the back of the product.

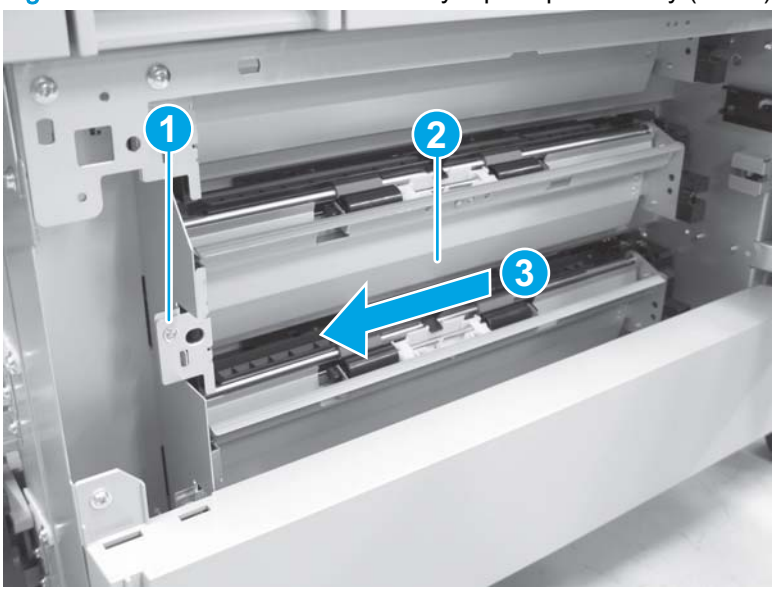
Figure 1-604 Remove the 3x500 Tray 4 pickup assembly (2 of 4)



3. Remove one screw (callout 1). Hold the tray pickup assembly (callout 2), and then slide it toward the front of the product (callout 3) to release it.

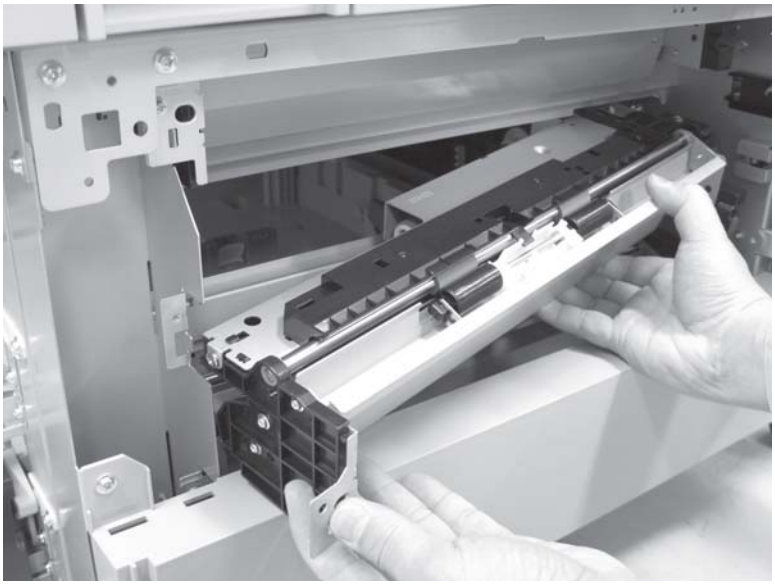
NOTE: The screw and tray pickup assembly are located on the right side of the product.

Figure 1-605 Remove the 3x500 Tray 4 pickup assembly (3 of 4)



4. Remove the tray pickup assembly.

Figure 1-606 Remove the 3x500 Tray 4 pickup assembly (4 of 4)



Reinstall the 3x500 Tray 4 pickup assembly

Make sure that the shaft on the tray pickup assembly (callout 1) is positioned in the hole (callout 2) in the product.

NOTE: Callout 2 shows the location of the hole from the back of the product.

Figure 1-607 Reinstall the 3x500 Tray 4 pickup assembly (1 of 2)

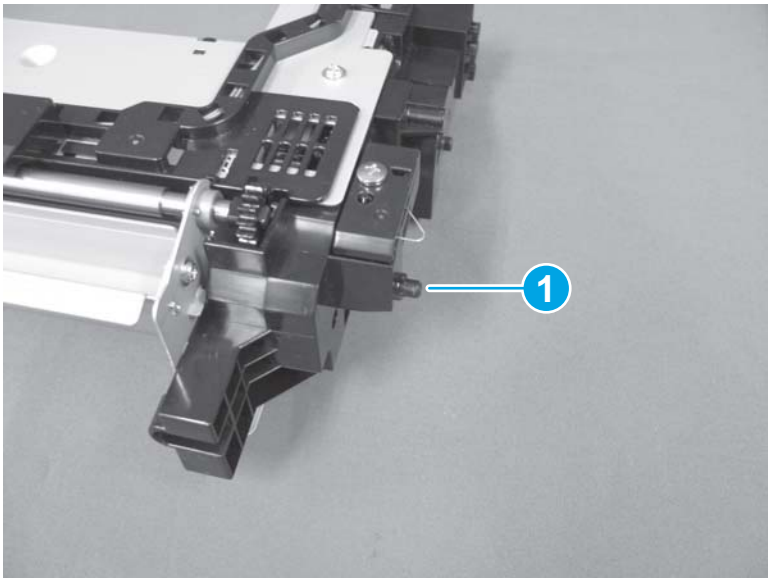
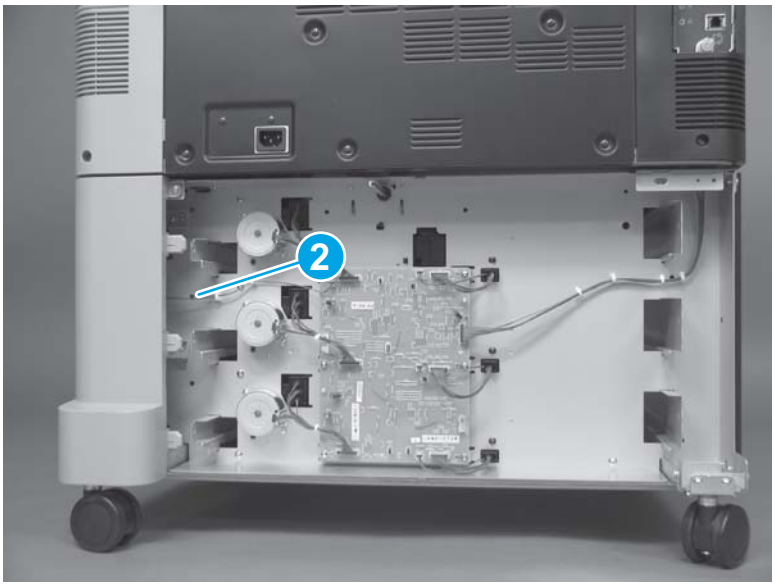


Figure 1-608 Reinstall the 3x500 Tray 4 pickup assembly (2 of 2)



3x500 Tray 5 pickup assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

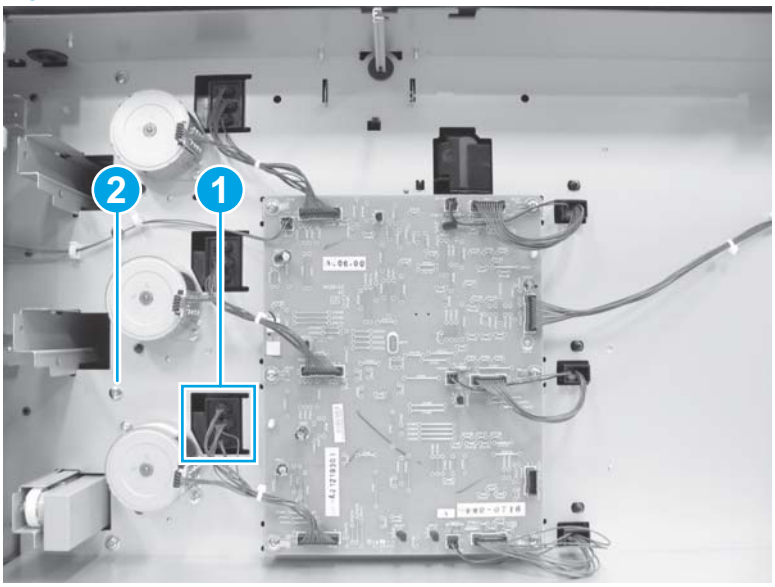
- 3x500 Tray 5. See Tray 2, 1x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 4, and 3x500 Tray 5 on page 18.
- 1x500 and 3x500 rear cover. See 1x500 and 3x500 rear cover on page 387.
- 1x500 and 3x500 right front cover. See 1x500 and 3x500 right front cover on page 388.
- 1x500 and 3x500 right lower cover. See 1x500 and 3x500 right lower cover on page 400.
- HCI, 1x500, and 3x500 right door assembly. See HCI, 1x500, and 3x500 right door assembly on page 428.
- HCI, 1x500, and 3x500 right rear cover. See HCI, 1x500, and 3x500 right rear cover on page 430.

Remove the 3x500 Tray 5 pickup assembly

1. Disconnect three connectors (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

NOTE: The connectors and screw are located on the back of the product.

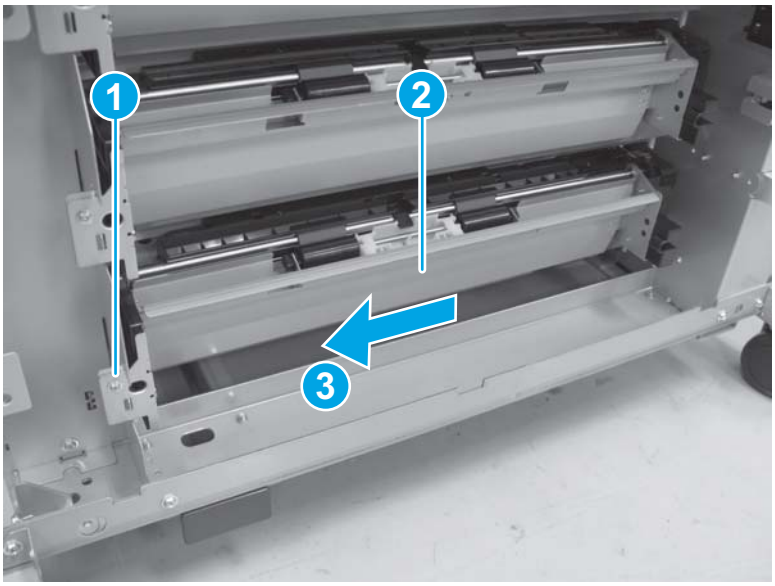
Figure 1-609 Remove the 3x500 Tray 5 pickup assembly (1 of 3)



2. Remove one screw (callout 1). Hold the tray pickup assembly (callout 2), and then slide it toward the front of the product (callout 3) to release it.

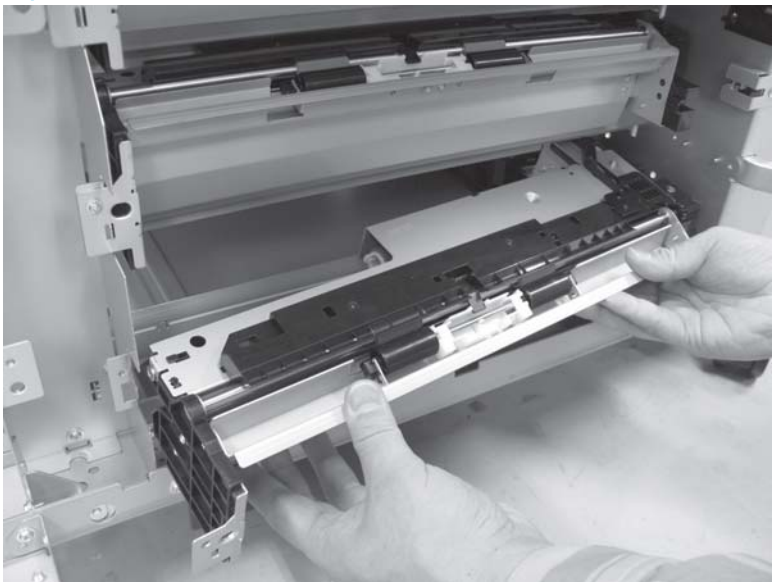
NOTE: The screw and tray pickup assembly are located on the right side of the product.

Figure 1-610 Remove the 3x500 Tray 5 pickup assembly (2 of 3)



3. Remove the tray pickup assembly.

Figure 1-611 Remove the 3x500 Tray 5 pickup assembly (3 of 3)



Reinstall the 3x500 Tray 5 pickup assembly

Make sure that the shaft on the tray pickup assembly (callout 1) is positioned in the hole (callout 2) in the product.

NOTE: Callout 2 shows the location of the hole from the back of the product.

Figure 1-612 Reinstall the 3x500 Tray 5 pickup assembly (1 of 2)

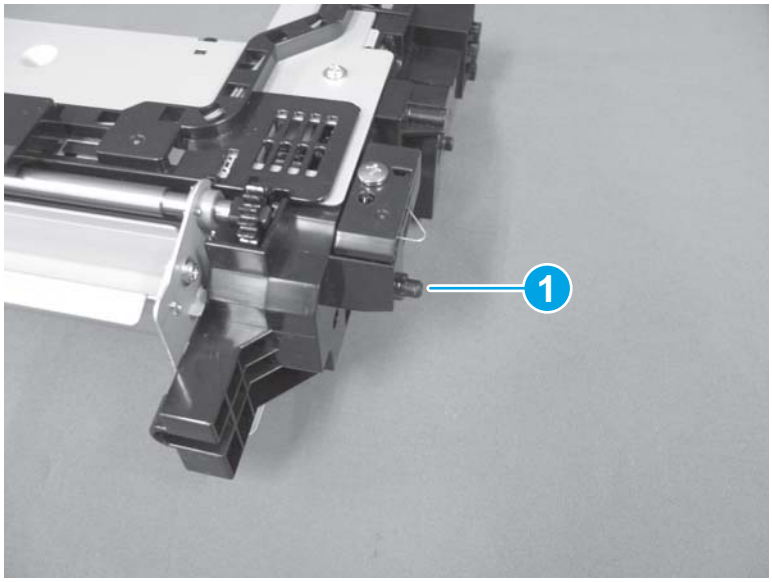
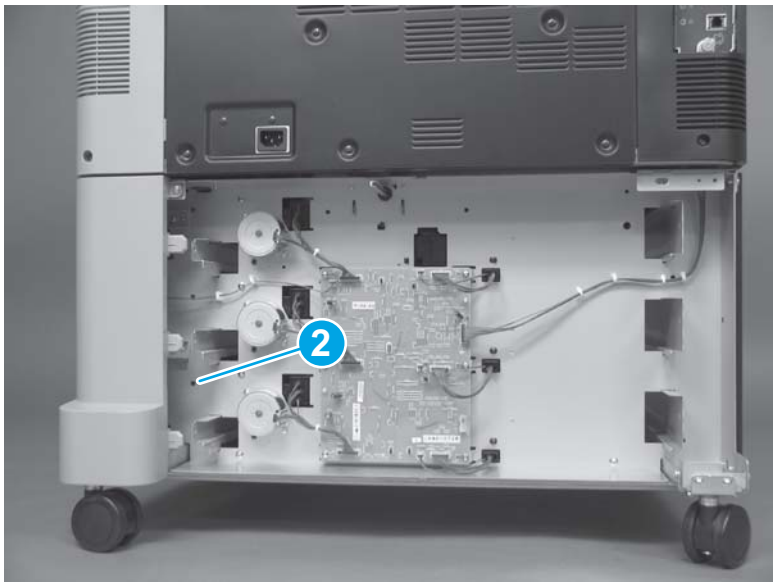


Figure 1-613 Reinstall the 3x500 Tray 5 pickup assembly (2 of 2)



1x500 Tray 3 automatic close assembly

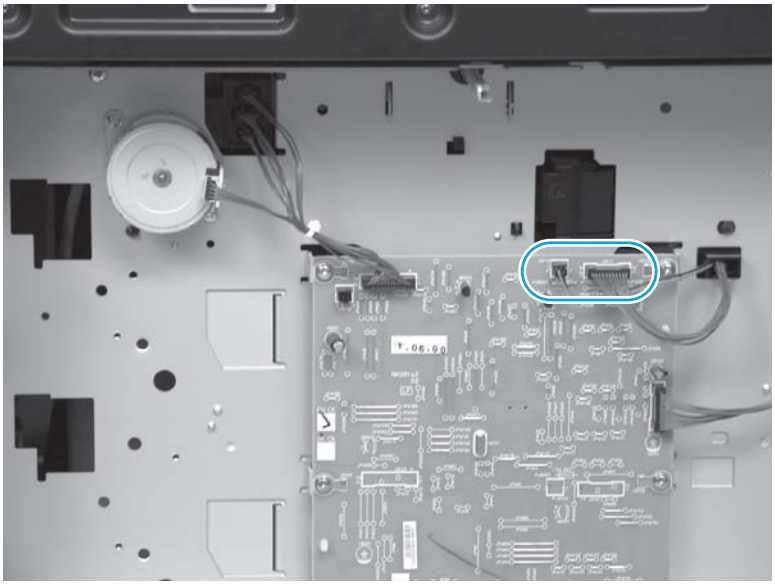
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- 1x500 Tray 3. See Tray 2, 1x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 4, and 3x500 Tray 5 on page 18.
- 1x500 and 3x500 rear cover. See 1x500 and 3x500 rear cover on page 387.

Remove the 1x500 Tray 3 automatic close assembly

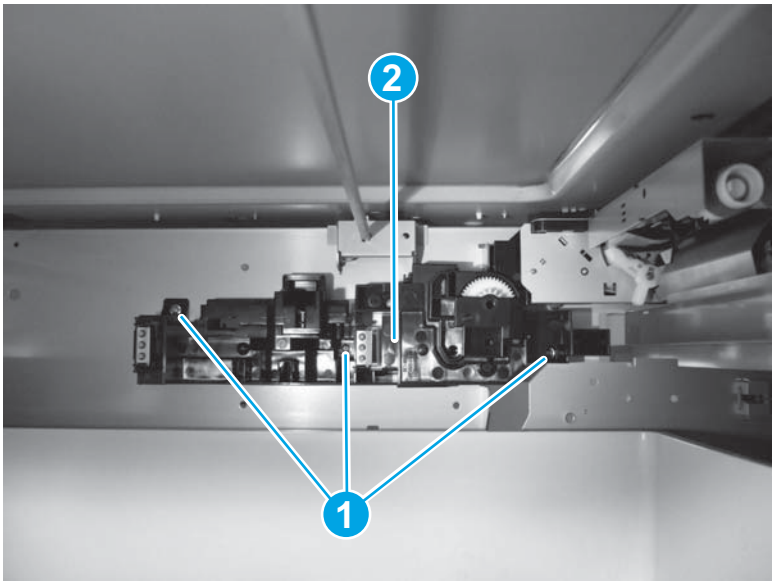
1. Disconnect two connectors on the back of the product.

Figure 1-614 Remove the 1x500 Tray 3 automatic close assembly (1 of 2)



2. From inside the tray cavity, remove three screws (callout 1), and then remove the automatic close assembly (callout 2).

Figure 1-615 Remove the 1x500 Tray 3 automatic close assembly (2 of 2)



3x500 Tray 3, Tray 4, and Tray 5 automatic close assemblies

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

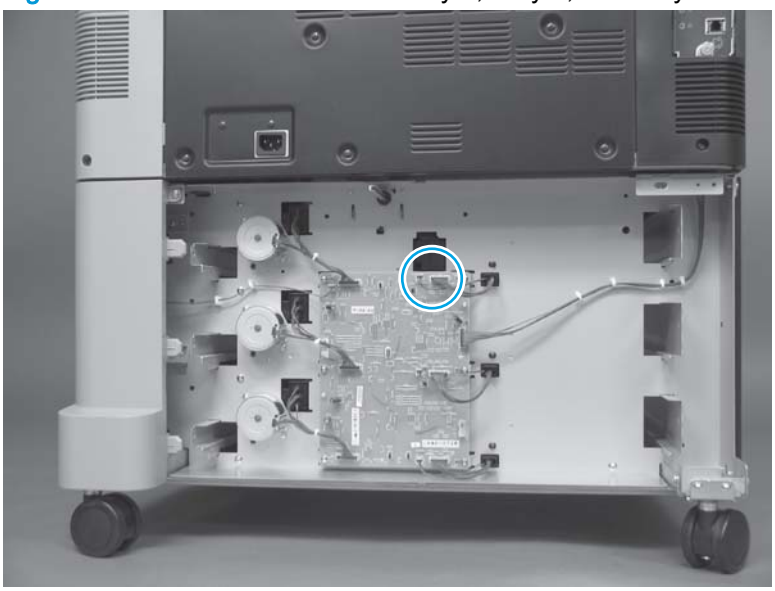
- 3x500 Tray 3. See Tray 2, 1x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 4, and 3x500 Tray 5 on page 18.
- 3x500 Tray 4. See Tray 2, 1x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 4, and 3x500 Tray 5 on page 18.
- 3x500 Tray 5. See Tray 2, 1x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 4, and 3x500 Tray 5 on page 18.
- 1x500 and 3x500 rear cover. See 1x500 and 3x500 rear cover on page 387.

Remove the 3x500 Tray 3, Tray 4, and Tray 5 automatic close assemblies

NOTE: The 3x500 Tray 3 automatic close assembly is shown below. The procedure is the same for the 3x500 Tray 4 or Tray 5 automatic close assemblies.

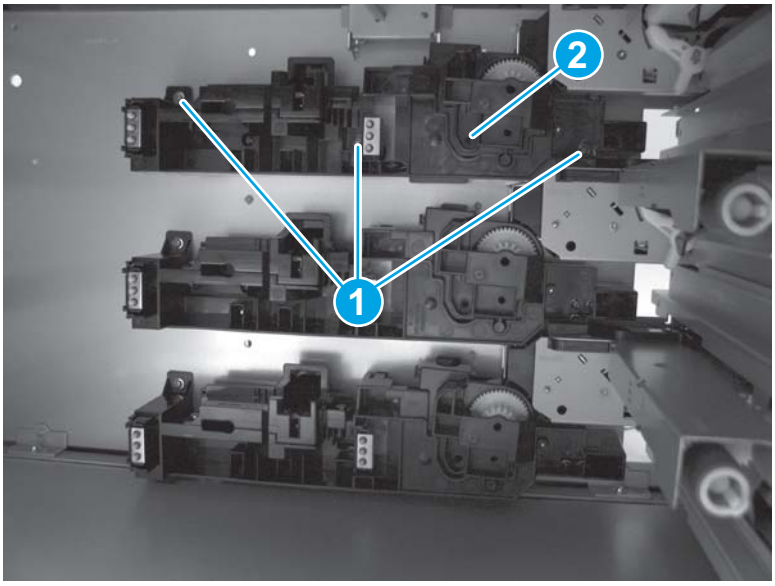
1. Disconnect two connectors on the back of the product.

Figure 1-616 Remove the 3x500 Tray 3, Tray 4, and Tray 5 automatic close assemblies (1 of 2)



2. From inside the tray cavity, remove three screws (callout 1), and then remove the automatic close assembly (callout 2).

Figure 1-617 Remove the 3x500 Tray 3, Tray 4, and Tray 5 automatic close assemblies (2 of 2)



1x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 3, Tray 4, and Tray 5 pickup motors

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- 1x500 and 3x500 rear cover. See 1x500 and 3x500 rear cover on page 387.

Remove the 1x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 3, Tray 4, and Tray 5 pickup motors

1. Locate the pickup motors:
   - 1x500 Tray 3 pickup motor (callout 1)
   - 3x500 Tray 3 pickup motor (callout 2)
   - 3x500 Tray 4 pickup motor (callout 3)
   - 3x500 Tray 5 pickup motor (callout 4)

Figure 1-618 1x500 pickup motor location

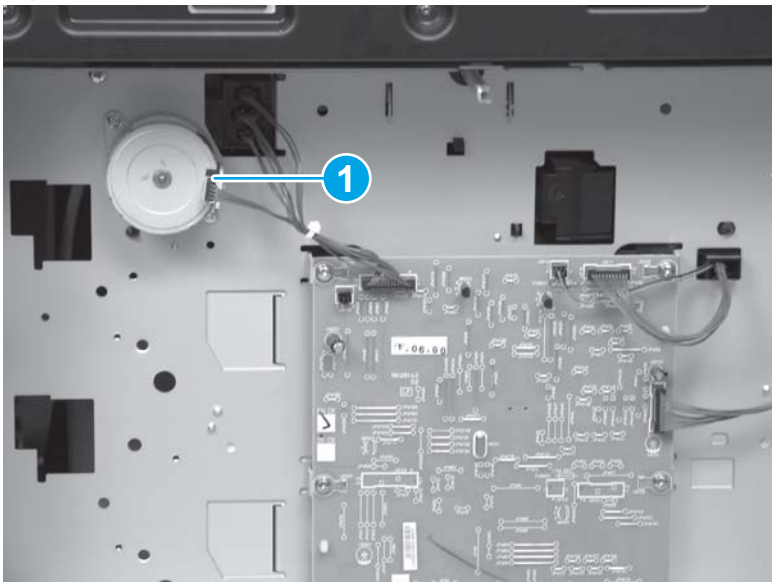
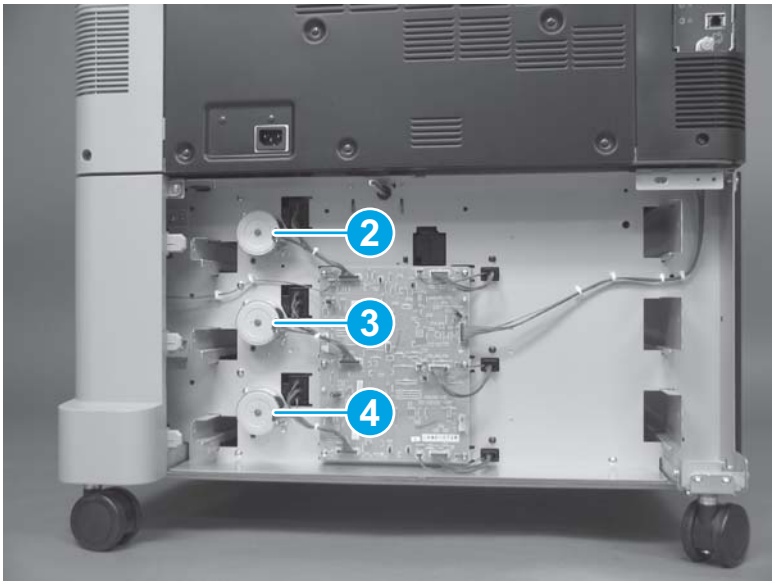


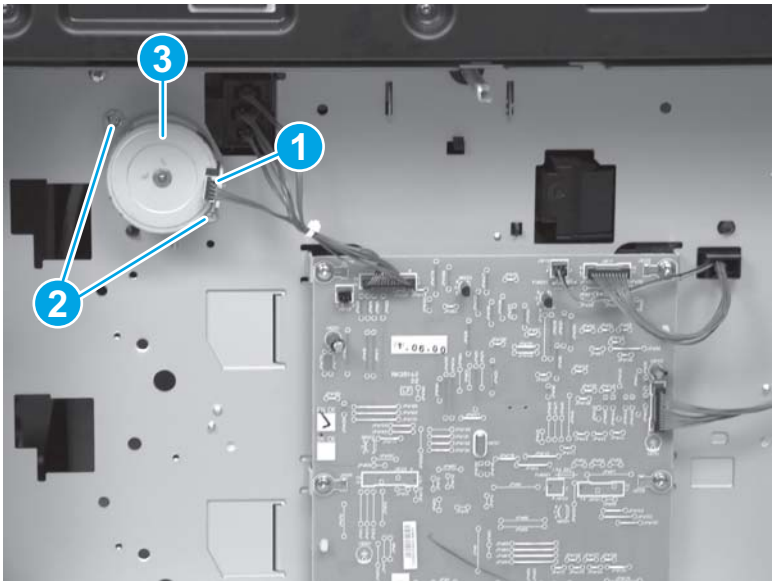
Figure 1-619 3x500 pickup motor locations



2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the pickup motor (callout 3).

NOTE: The 1x500 Tray 3 pickup motor is shown below. The procedure is the same for the 3x500 Tray 3, Tray 4, and Tray 5 pickup motors.

Figure 1-620 Remove the 1x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 3, Tray 4, and Tray 5 pickup motors



1x500 and 3x500 controller PCA

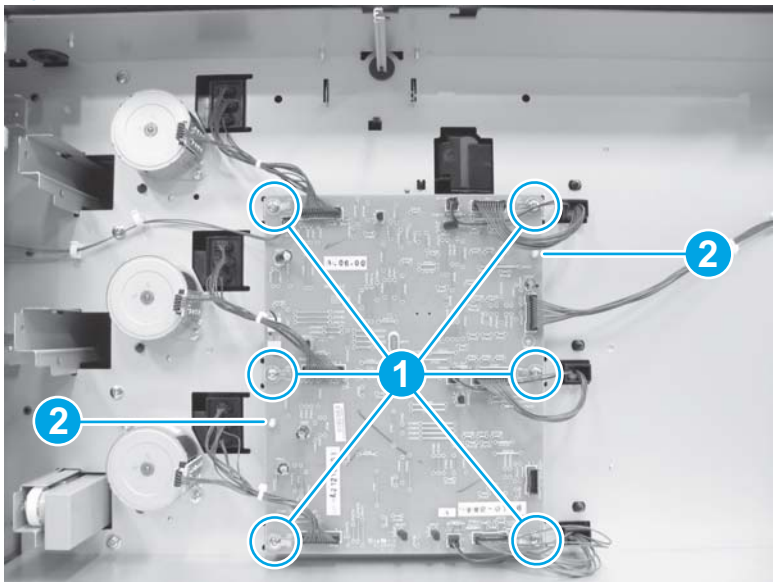
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- 1x500 and 3x500 rear cover. See 1x500 and 3x500 rear cover on page 387.

Remove the HCI controller PCA

Disconnect all of the connectors on the 1x500 and 3x500 controller PCA, remove six screws (callout 1), release two standoffs (callout 2), and then remove the PCA.

Figure 1-621 Remove the HCI controller PCA



Shared input accessory covers and doors

HCI, 1x500, and 3x500 left cover

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

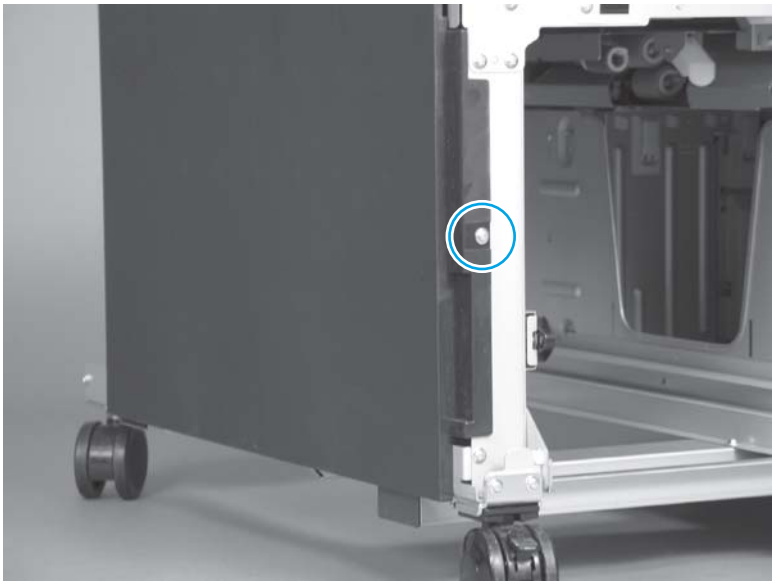
- 3x500 Tray 3 (3x500 only). See Tray 2, 1x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 4, and 3x500 Tray 5 on page 18.
- 3x500 Tray 4 (3x500 only). See Tray 2, 1x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 3, 3x500 Tray 4, and 3x500 Tray 5 on page 18.
- HCI left tray (HCI only). See HCI left tray on page 361.
- HCI rear cover (HCI only). See HCI rear cover on page 362.
- 1x500 and 3x500 rear cover (1x500 and 3x500 only). See 1x500 and 3x500 rear cover on page 387.
- 1x500 and 3x500 right front cover (1x500 and 3x500 only). See 1x500 and 3x500 right front cover on page 388.
- 1x500 and 3x500 upper front face cover (1x500 and 3x500 only). See 1x500 and 3x500 upper front face cover on page 390.
- 1x500 and 3x500 upper front cover (1x500 and 3x500 only). See 1x500 and 3x500 upper front cover on page 392.
- 1x500 storage box door (1x500 only). See 1x500 storage box door on page 396.
- 1x500 storage box (1x500 only). See 1x500 storage box on page 398.

Remove the HCI, 1x500, and 3x500 left cover

NOTE: The HCI is shown below.

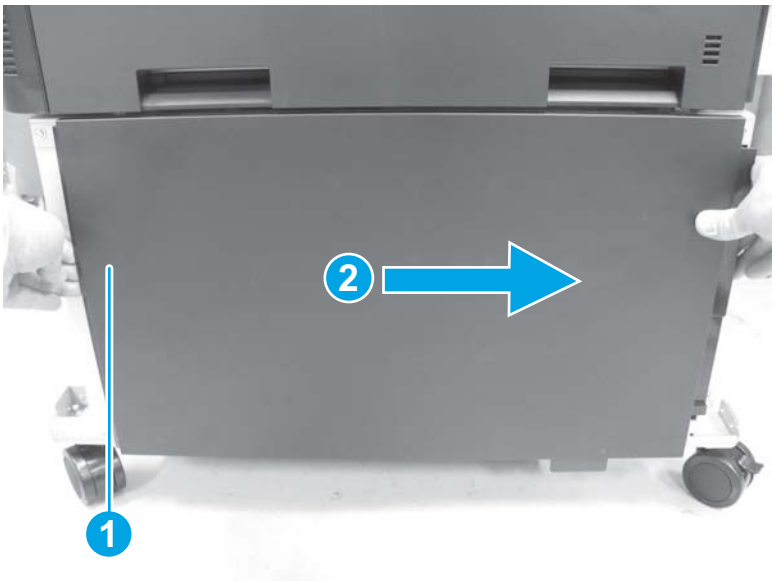
1. Remove one screw.

Figure 1-622 Remove the HCI, 1x500, and 3x500 left cover (1 of 2)



2. Pull out slightly on the back edge of the cover to release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the cover toward the front of the product (callout 2) to remove it.

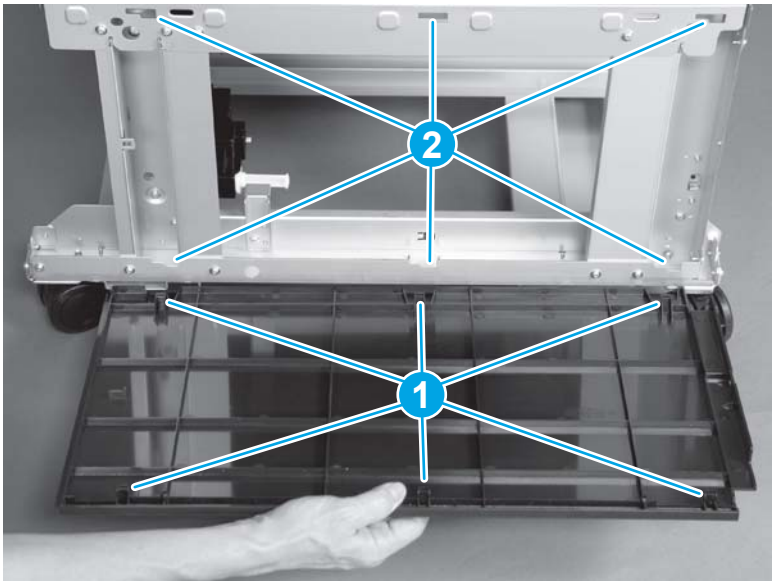
Figure 1-623 Remove the HCI, 1x500, and 3x500 left cover (2 of 2)



Reinstall the HCI, 1x500, and 3x500 left cover

Make sure that the tabs (callout 1) on the cover are positioned in the slots (callout 2) in the product.

Figure 1-624 Reinstall the HCI, 1x500, and 3x500 left cover

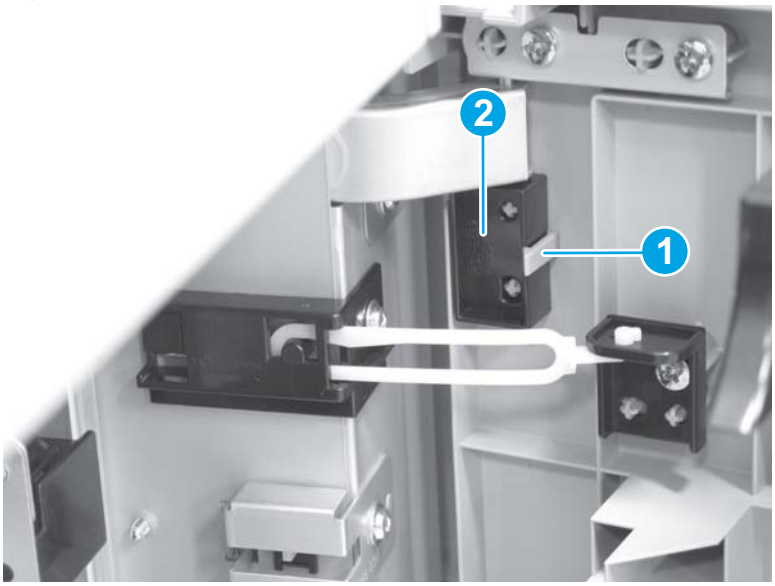


HCI, 1x500, and 3x500 right door assembly

Remove the HCI, 1x500, and 3x500 right door assembly

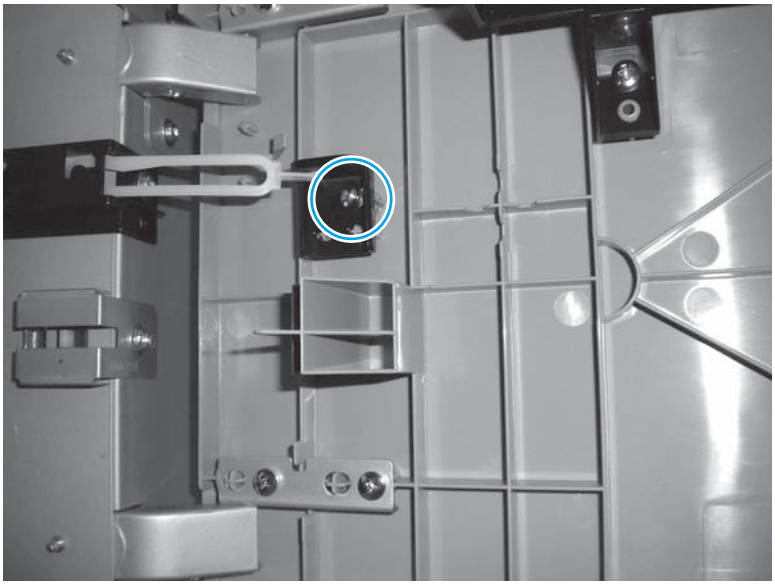
1. Open the right door assembly. Release one tab (callout 1), and then remove one stopper (callout 2).

   Figure 1-625 Remove the HCI, 1x500, and 3x500 right door assembly (1 of 3)

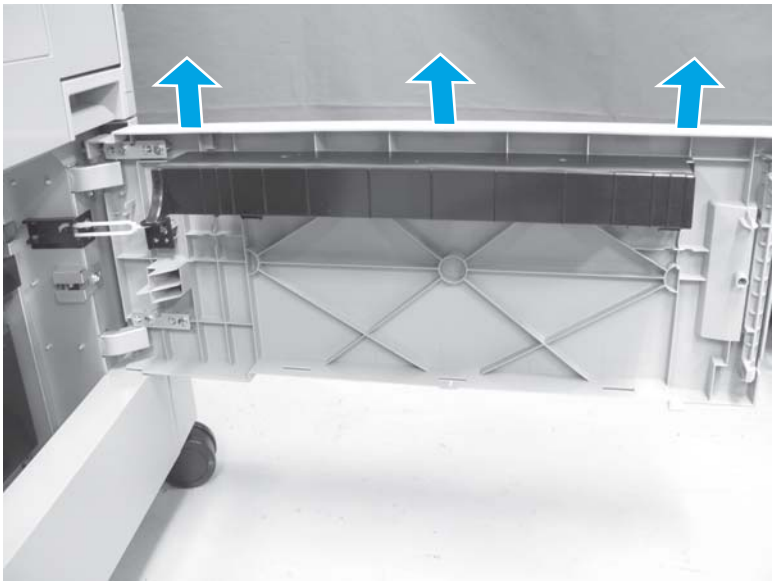
2. Remove one screw.

   Figure 1-626 Remove the HCI, 1x500, and 3x500 right door assembly (2 of 3)

3. Lift the door straight up to remove it.

Figure 1-627 Remove the HCI, 1x500, and 3x500 right door assembly (3 of 3)



HCI, 1x500, and 3x500 right rear cover

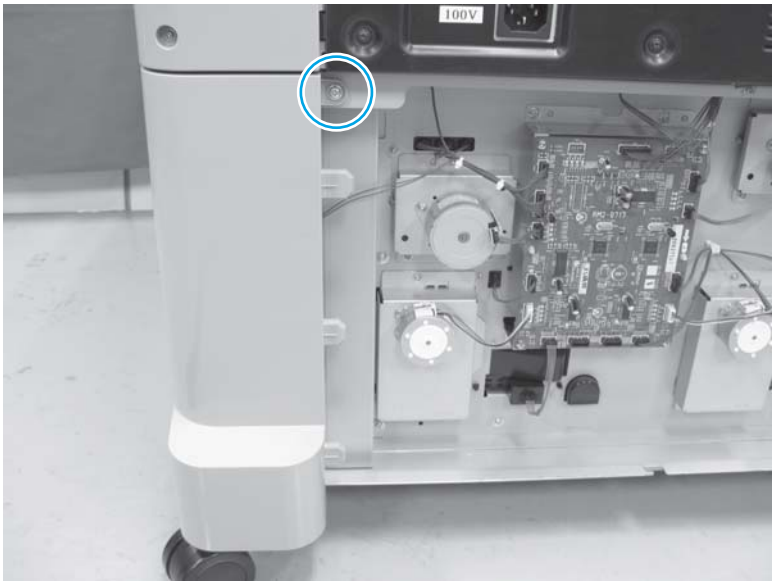
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- HCI rear cover (HCI only). See HCI rear cover on page 362.
- 1x500 and 3x500 rear cover (1x500 or 3x500 only). See 1x500 and 3x500 rear cover on page 387.

Remove the HCI, 1x500, and 3x500 right rear cover

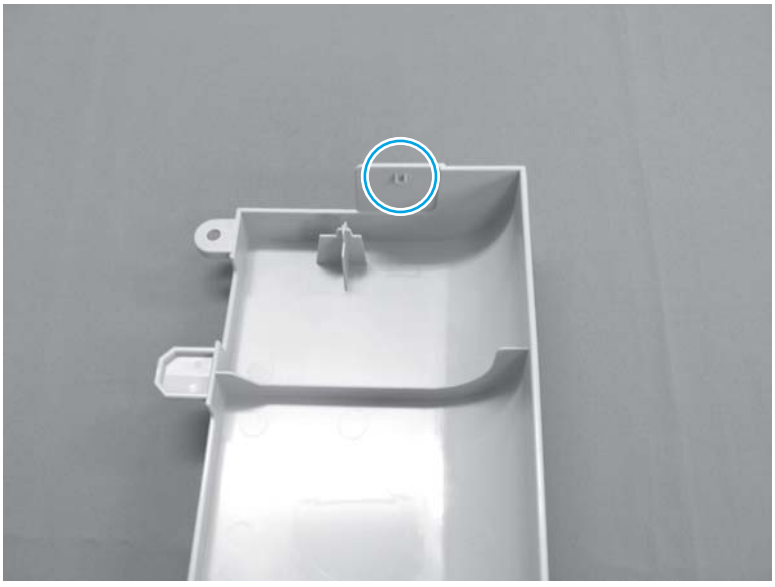
1. Remove one screw.

Figure 1-628 Remove the HCI, 1x500, and 3x500 right rear cover (1 of 4)



2. Note the location of the tab on the top of the cover.

Figure 1-629 Remove the HCI, 1x500, and 3x500 right rear cover (2 of 4)



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release one tab.

Figure 1-630 Remove the HCI, 1x500, and 3x500 right rear cover (3 of 4)

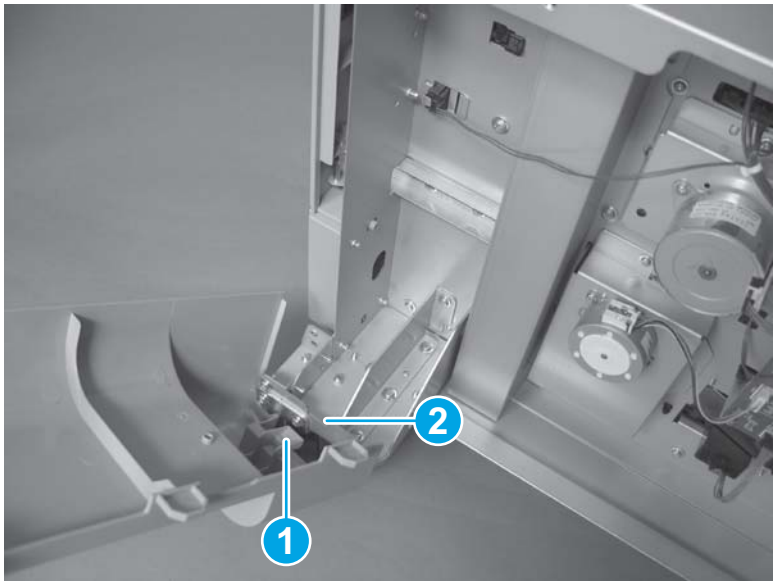
4. Remove the right rear cover.

Figure 1-631 Remove the HCI, 1x500, and 3x500 right rear cover (4 of 4)

Reinstall the HCI right rear cover

Make sure that the tab on the cover (callout 1) is installed over the sheet-metal slot on the product (callout 2).

Figure 1-632 Reinstall the HCI, 1x500, and 3x500 right rear cover

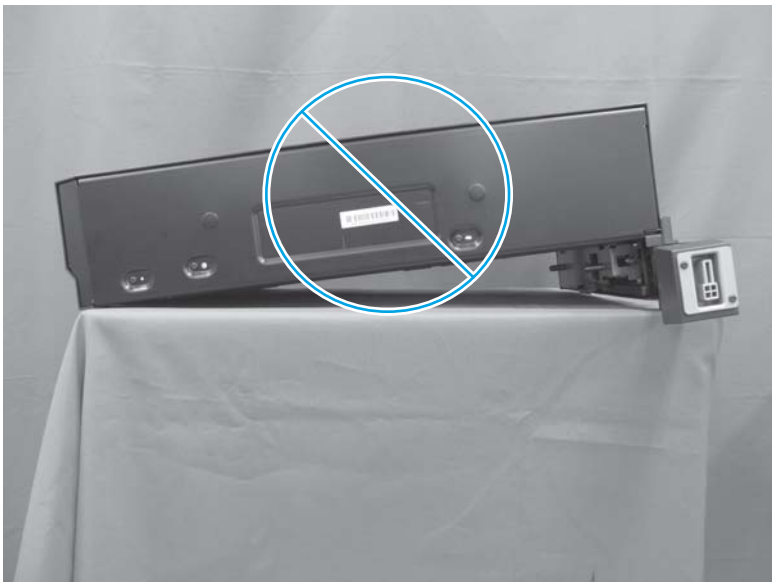


Intermediate paper transport unit (IPTU)

⚠ **CAUTION:** To avoid damaging the intermediate paper transport unit (IPTU), place it on the edge of a work surface as shown below to service it.

Figure 1-633 Correct placement of the IPTU for servicing

Figure 1-634 Incorrect placement of the IPTU for servicing



Location of major components

Figure 1-635 IPTU covers (1 of 2)

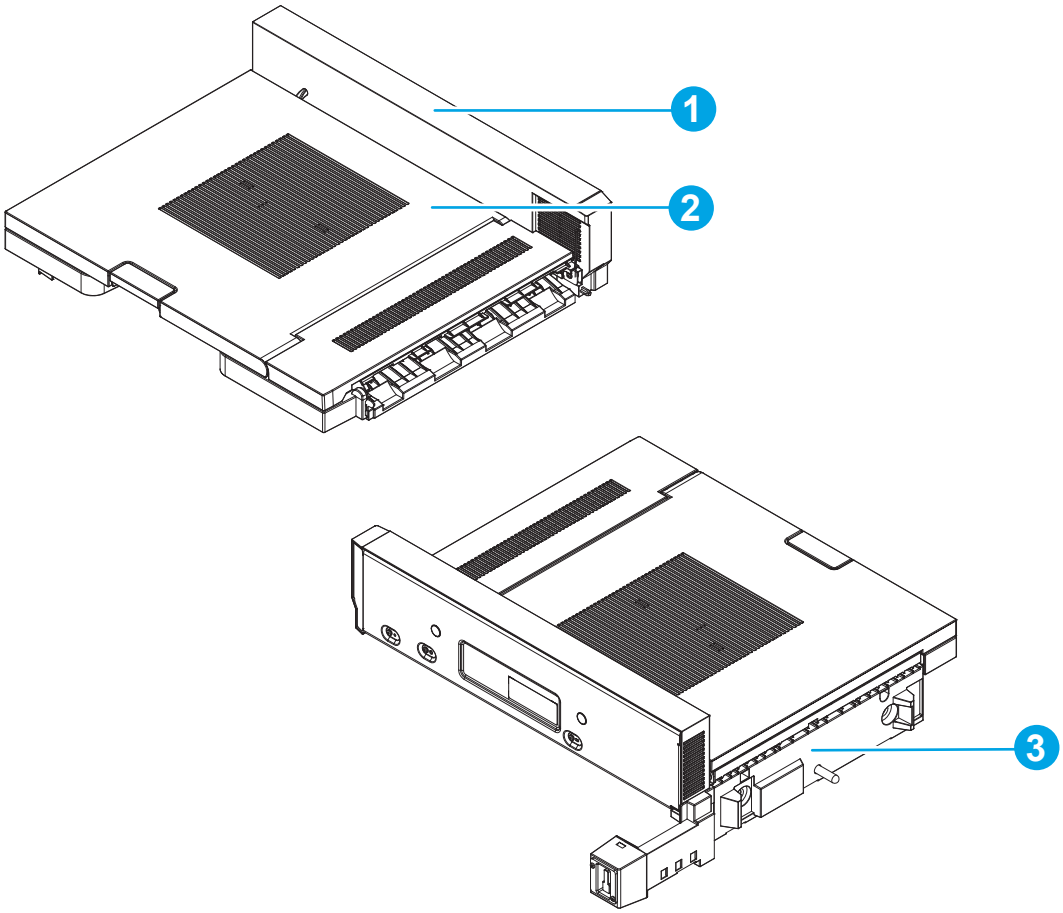


Table 1-20 IPTU covers (1 of 2)

Item	Description
1	Side panel assembly
2	Upper guide assembly
3	Finisher lock assembly

Figure 1-636 IPTU covers (2 of 2)

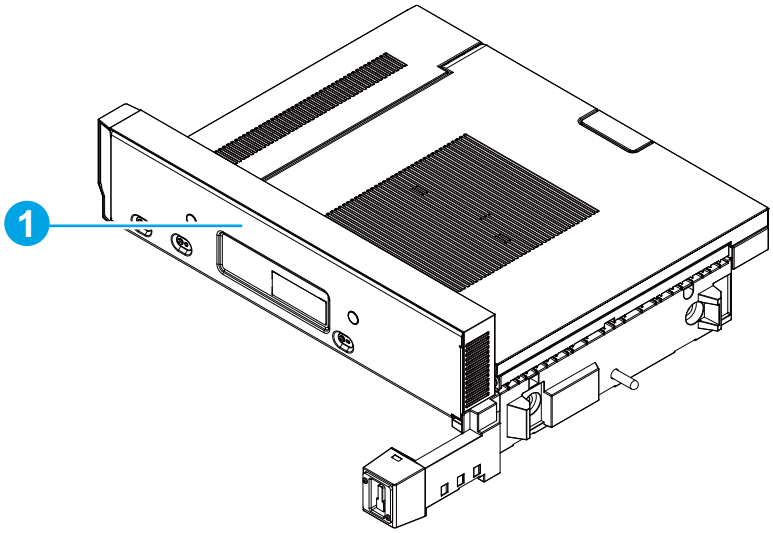


Table 1-21 IPTU covers (2 of 2)

Item	Description
1	Rear cover

Figure 1-637 IPTU main assemblies

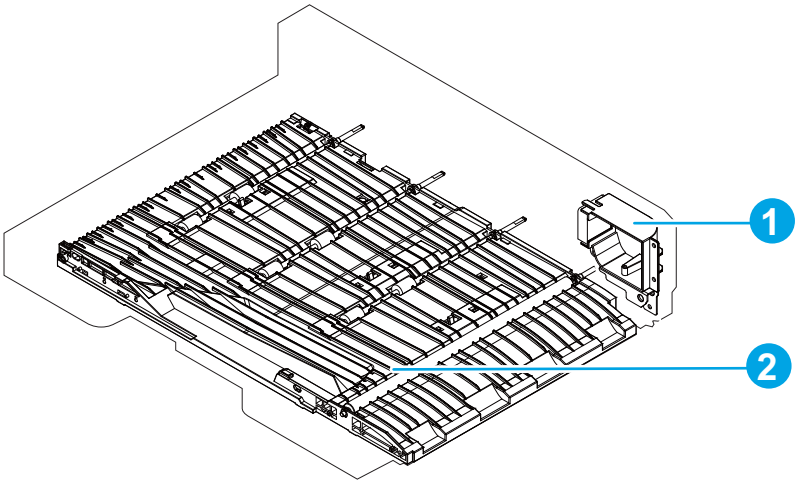


Table 1-22 IPTU main assemblies

Item	Description
1	IPTU fan assembly
2	Lower guide assembly

Figure 1-638 IPTU PCA

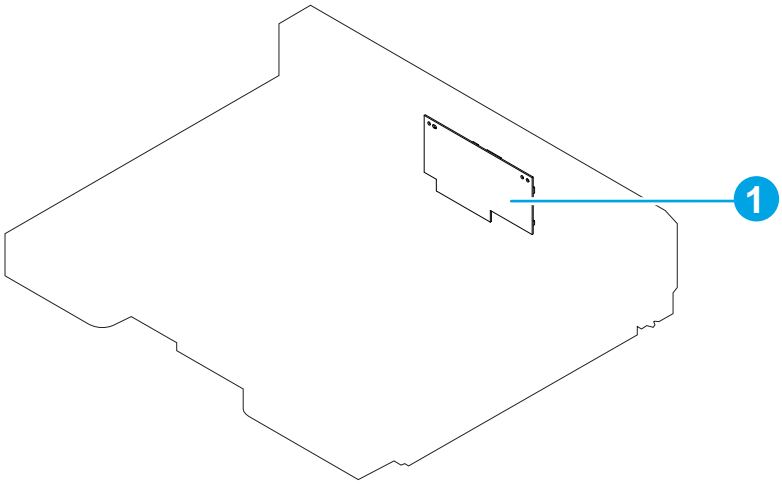


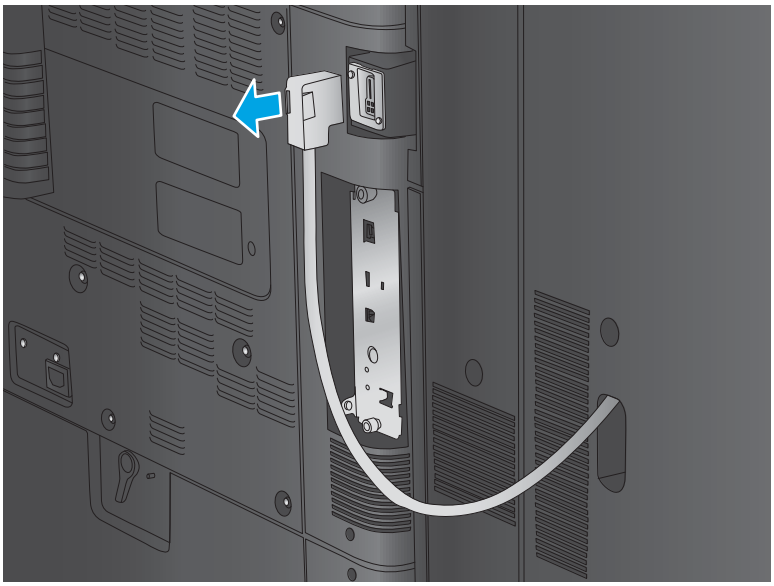
Table 1-23 IPTU PCA

Item	Description
1	IPTU driver PCA

IPTU assembly

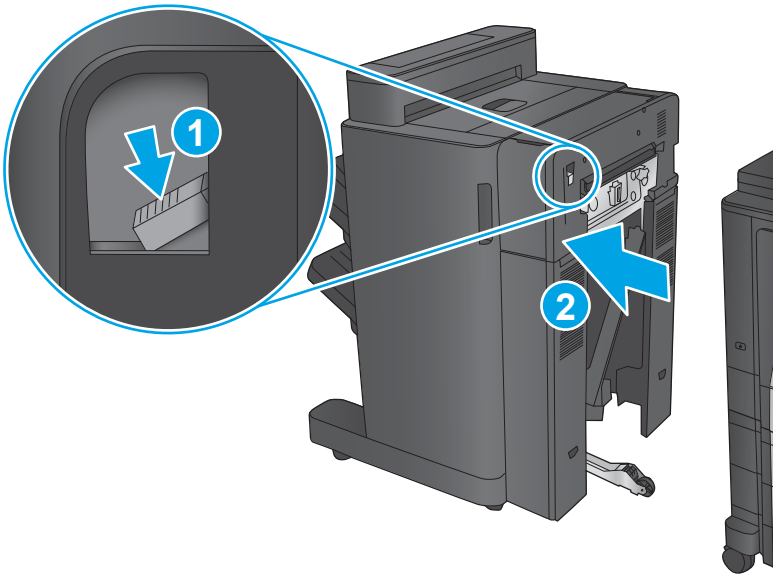
1. Turn the product off.
2. If a finishing accessory is attached, unplug the device from the printer.

Figure 1-639 Remove the IPTU (1 of 4)



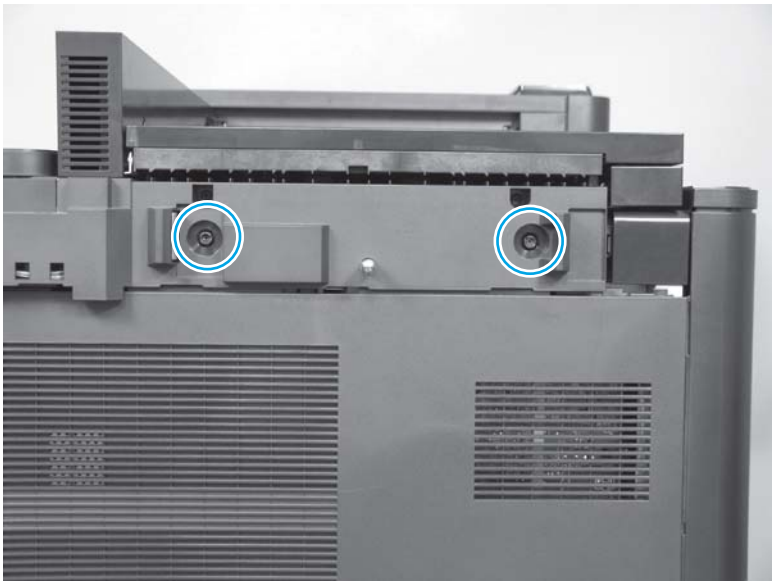
3. Press the release button down and hold it down (callout 1) as you slide the finishing accessory away from the product (callout 2).

Figure 1-640 Remove the IPTU (2 of 4)



4. Remove two screws.

Figure 1-641 Remove the IPTU (3 of 4)



5. Slide the IPTU away from the product to remove it.

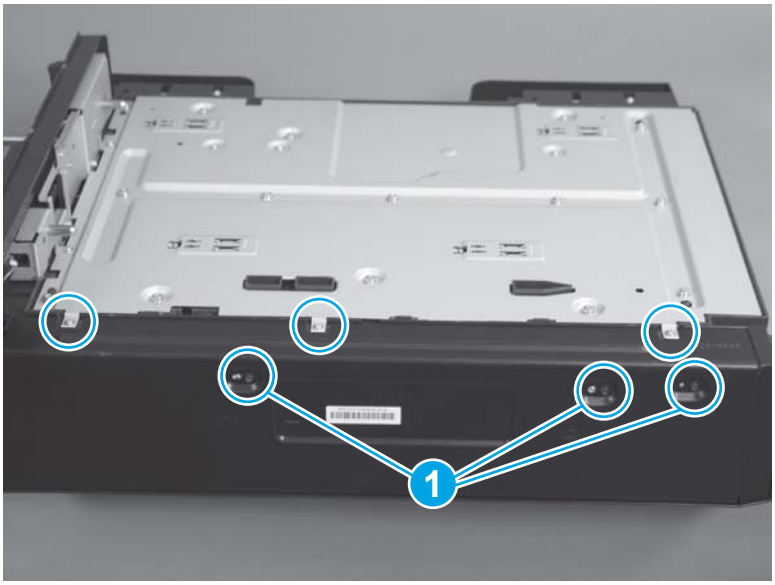
Figure 1-642 Remove the IPTU (4 of 4)

IPTU rear cover

1. Place the IPTU face-down, and then remove six screws.

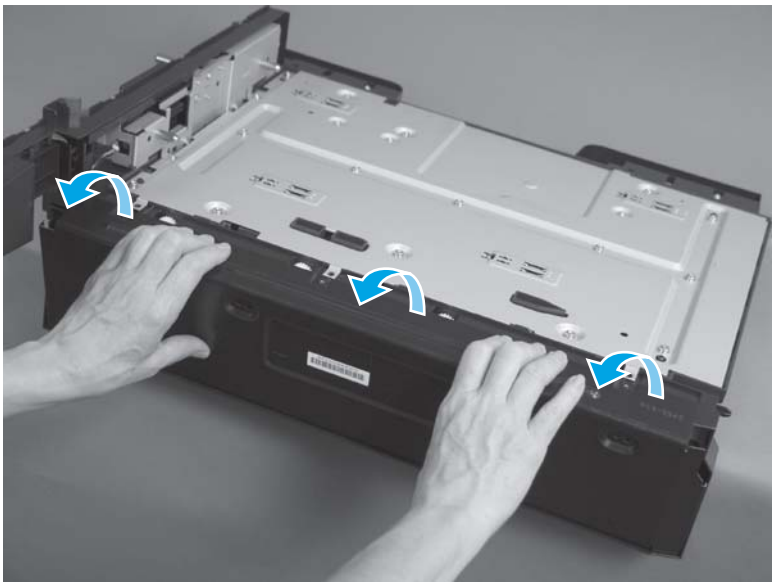
Reinstallation tip Three of these screws (callout 1) have washers attached. Make sure that these screws are reinstalled in the same locations.

Figure 1-643 Remove the IPTU rear cover (1 of 3)



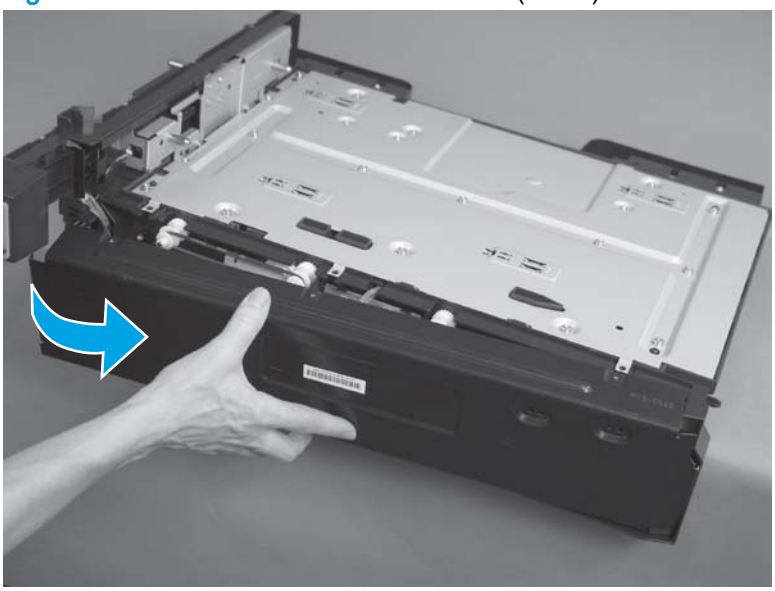
2. Rotate the top edge of the cover away from the IPTU.

Figure 1-644 Remove the IPTU rear cover (2 of 3)



3. Rotate the left edge of the cover away from the IPTU, and then remove the cover.

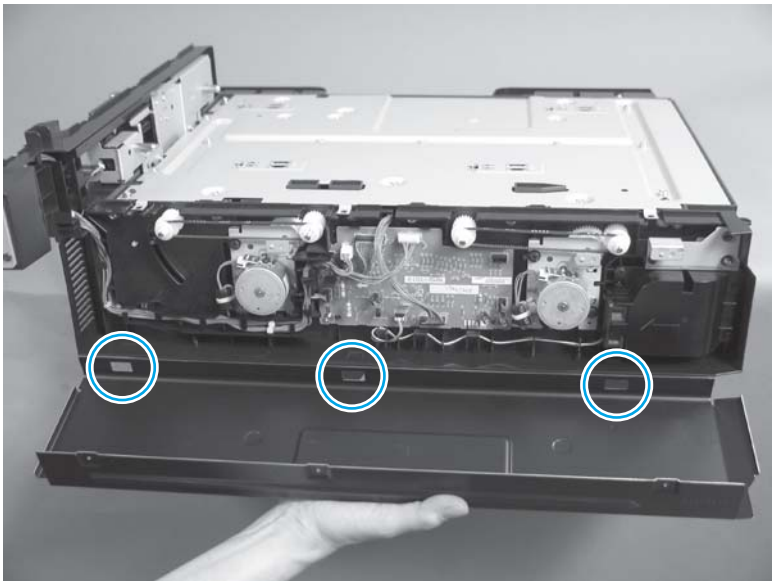
Figure 1-645 Remove the IPTU rear cover (3 of 3)



Reinstall the IPTU rear cover

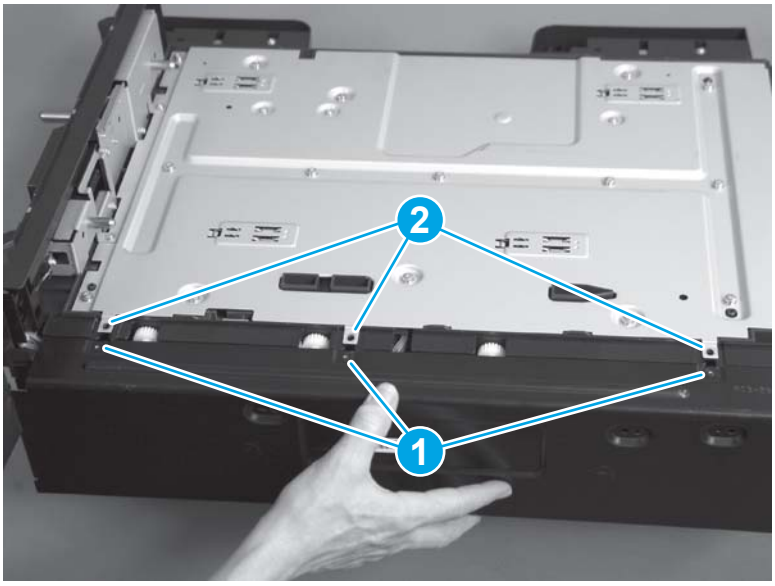
1. Make sure that the slots in the cover are aligned with the tabs on the IPTU.

Figure 1-646 Reinstall the IPTU rear cover (1 of 2)



2. Make sure that the indentations on the cover (callout 1) slide underneath the metal tabs (callout 2) on the IPTU.

Figure 1-647 Reinstall the IPTU rear cover (2 of 2)



IPTU driver PCA

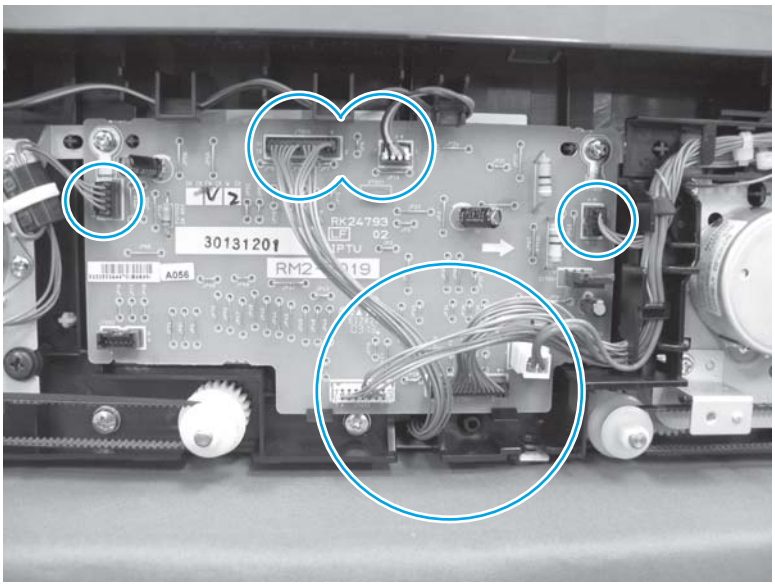
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- IPTU rear cover. See IPTU rear cover on page 439.

Remove the IPTU driver PCA

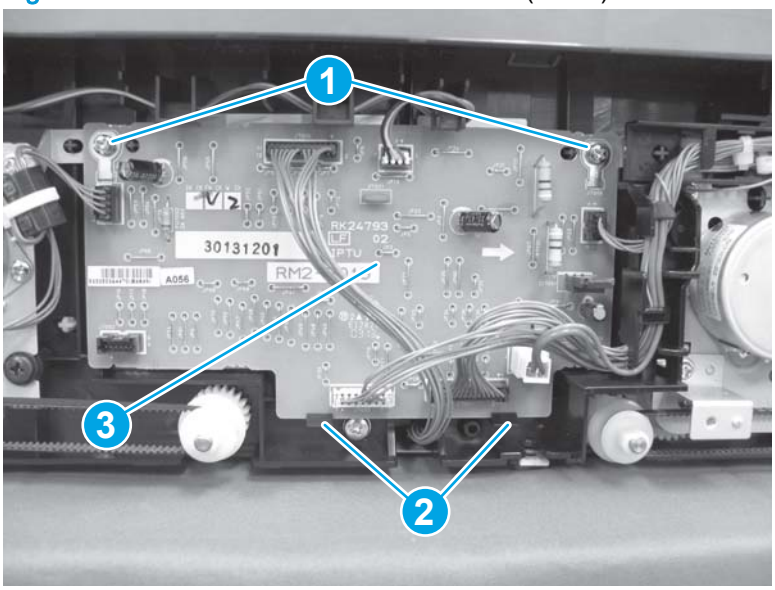
1. Disconnect seven connectors.

Figure 1-648 Remove the IPTU driver PCA (1 of 2)



2. Remove two screws (callout 1), release two tabs, and then remove the IPTU driver PCA (callout 3).

Figure 1-649 Remove the IPTU driver PCA (2 of 2)



IPTU finisher lock assembly

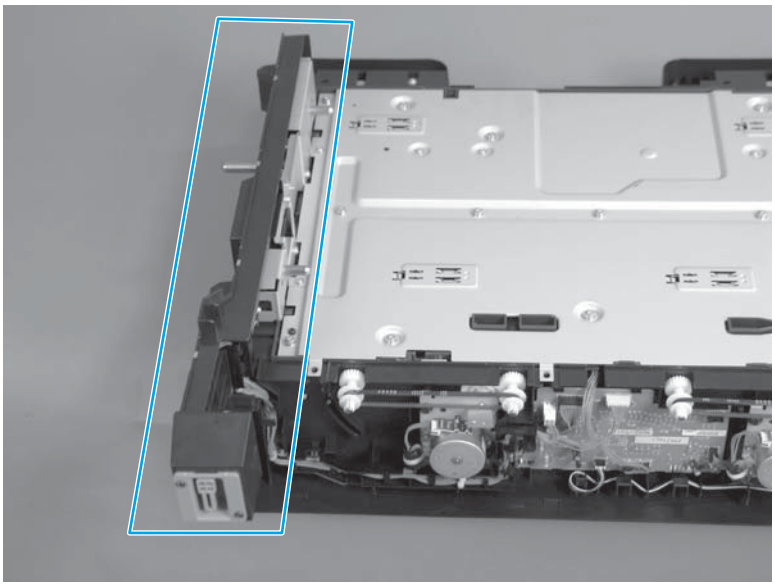
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- IPTU rear cover. See IPTU rear cover on page 439.

Remove the IPTU finisher lock assembly

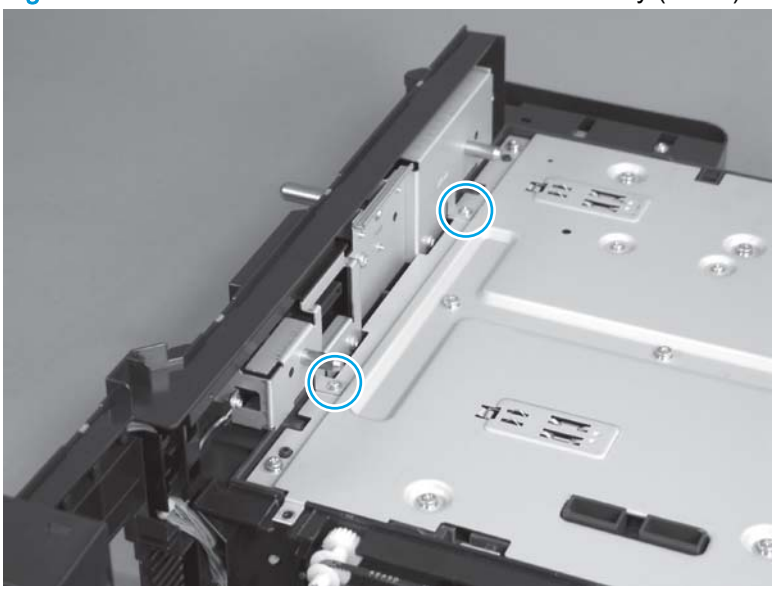
1. Place the IPTU face-down, and then locate the finisher lock assembly.

Figure 1-650 Remove the IPTU finisher lock assembly (1 of 5)



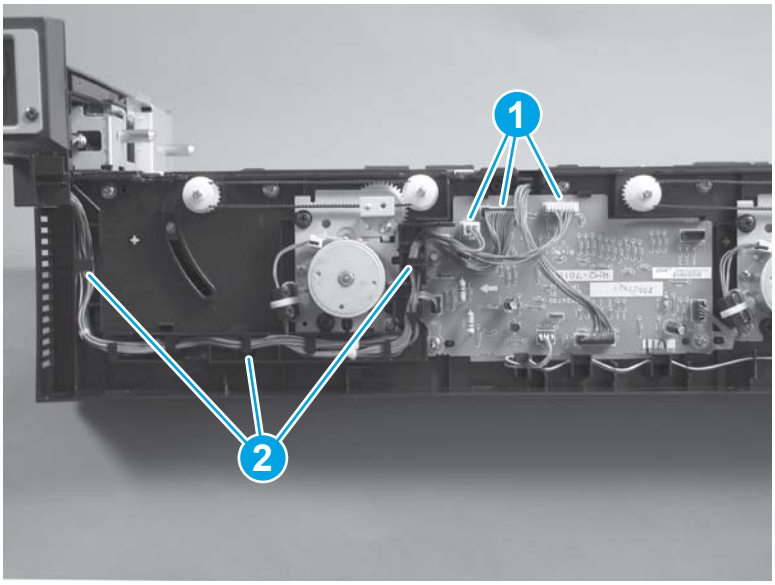
2. Remove two screws.

Figure 1-651 Remove the IPTU finisher lock assembly (2 of 5)



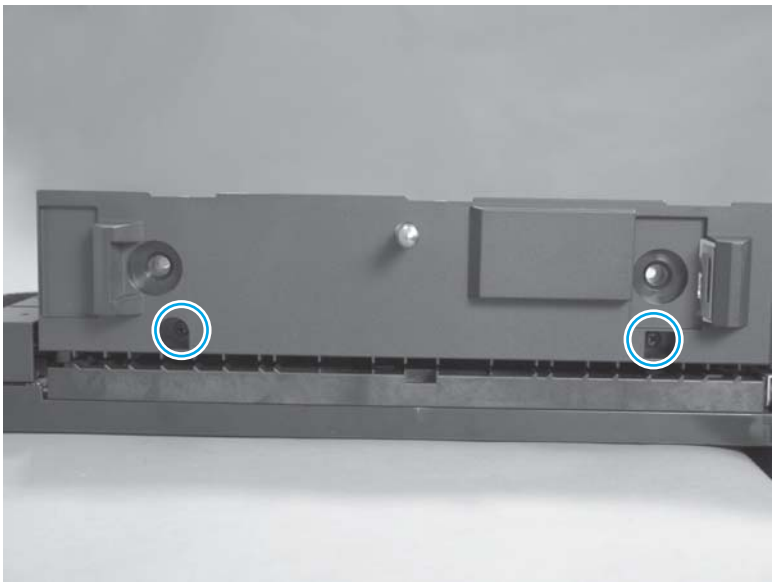
3. Disconnect three connectors (callout 1) on the IPTU driver PCA, and then remove the wire harnesses from the guides (callout 2).

Figure 1-652 Remove the IPTU finisher lock assembly (3 of 5)



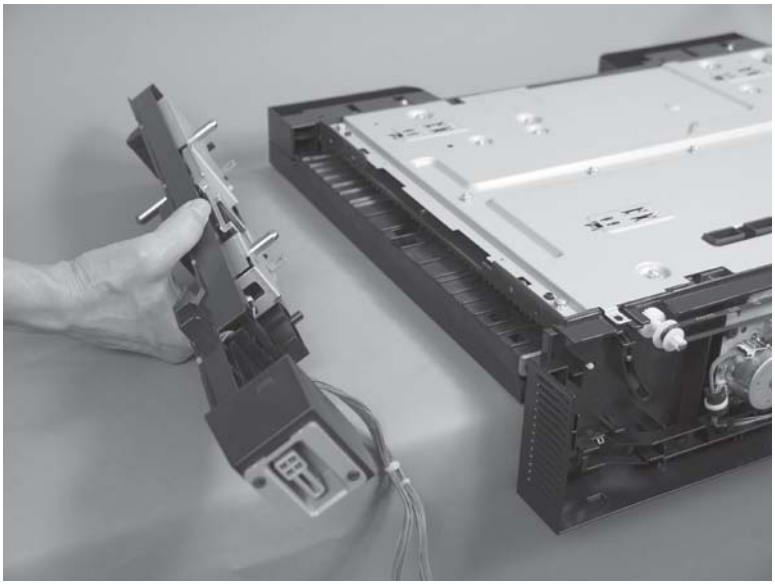
4. Remove two screws.

Figure 1-653 Remove the IPTU finisher lock assembly (4 of 5)



5. Remove the IPFU finisher lock assembly.

Figure 1-654 Remove the IPTU finisher lock assembly (5 of 5)



IPTU fan assembly

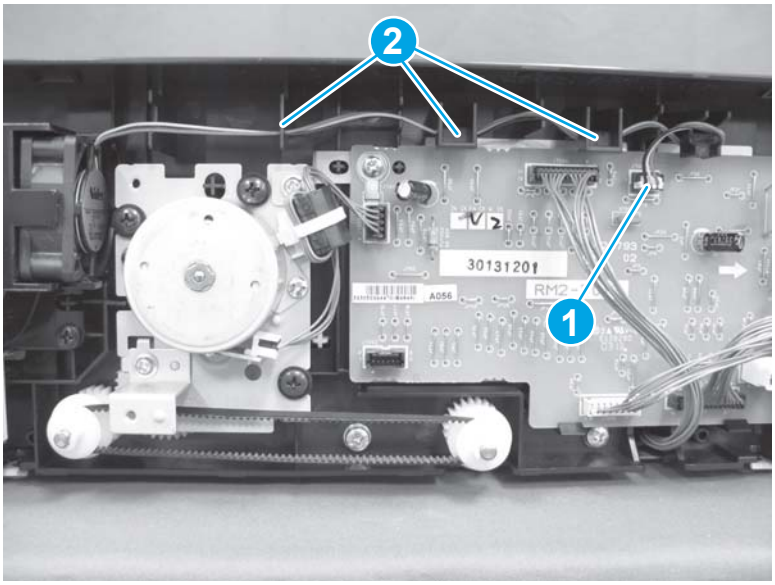
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- IPTU rear cover. See IPTU rear cover on page 439.

Remove the IPTU fan assembly

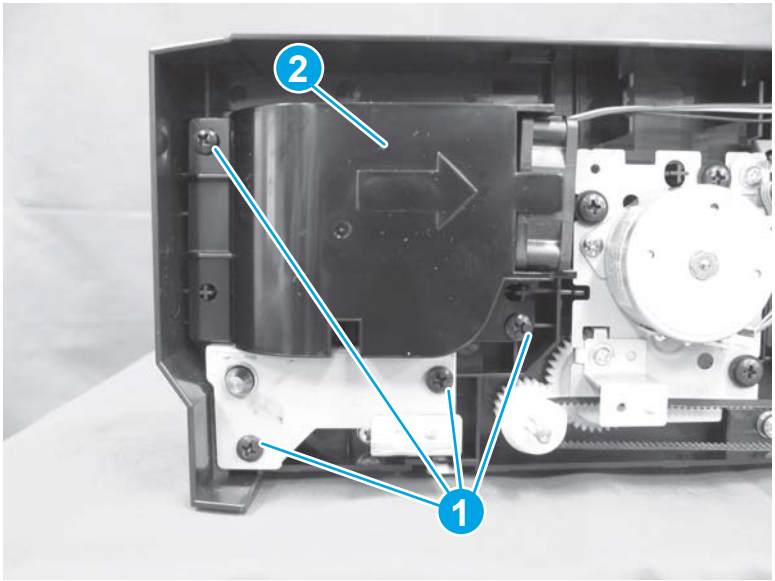
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then release the wire harness from the guide (callout 2).

Figure 1-655 Remove the IPTU fan assembly (1 of 2)



2. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the fan assembly (callout 2).

Figure 1-656 Remove the IPTU fan assembly (2 of 2)



IPTU side panel assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

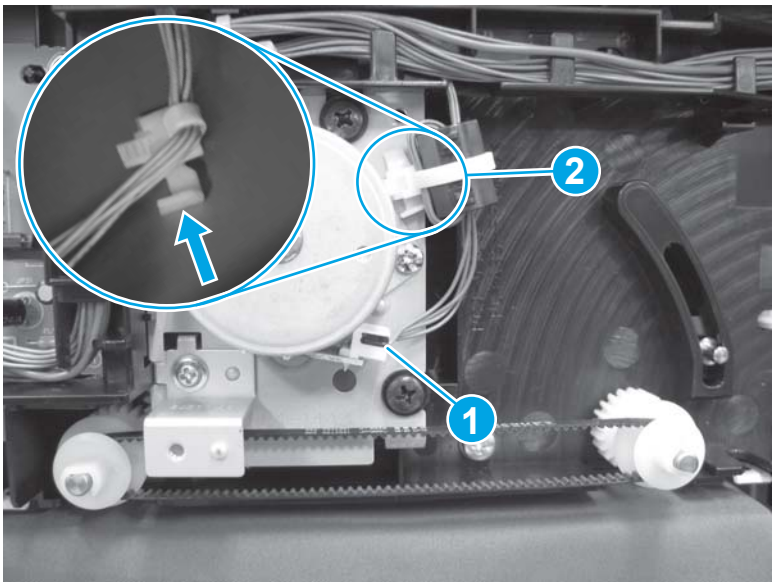
- IPTU rear cover. See IPTU rear cover on page 439.
- IPTU finisher lock assembly. See IPTU finisher lock assembly on page 443.
- IPTU fan assembly. See IPTU fan assembly on page 446.
- IPTU driver PCA. See IPTU driver PCA on page 442.

Remove the IPTU side panel assembly

1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove one wire tie (callout 2).

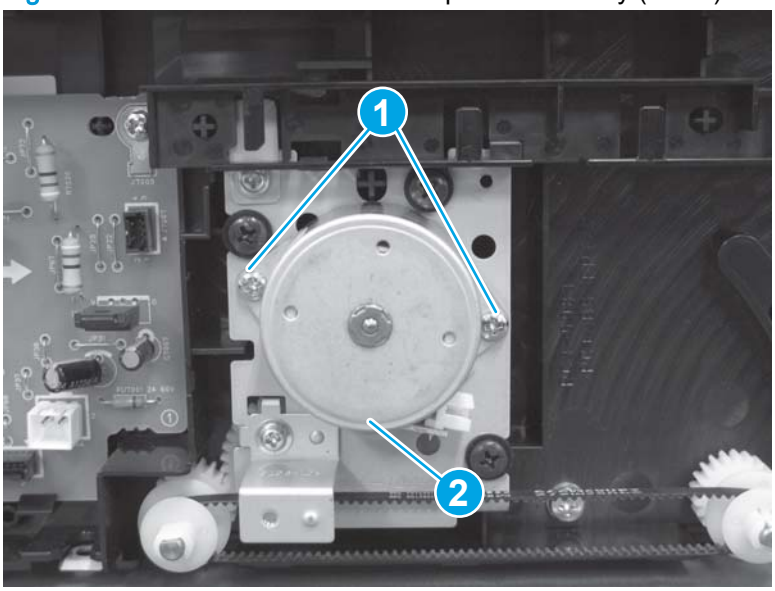
TIP: To release the wire tie (callout 2), push in on the tab, and then remove the wire tie from the chassis.

Figure 1-657 Remove the IPTU side panel assembly (1 of 6)



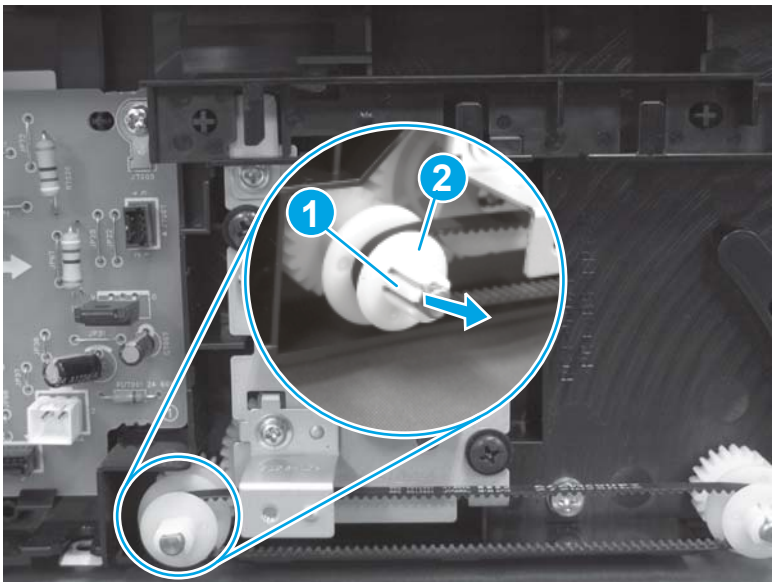
2. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the right assist motor (callout 2).

Figure 1-658 Remove the IPTU side panel assembly (2 of 6)



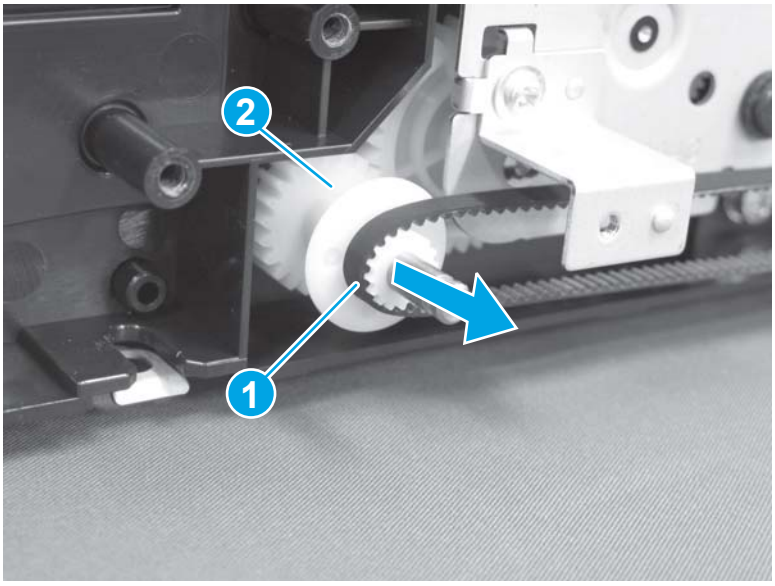
3. Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the gear retainer (callout 2) off of the shaft to remove it.

Figure 1-659 Remove the IPTU side panel assembly (3 of 6)



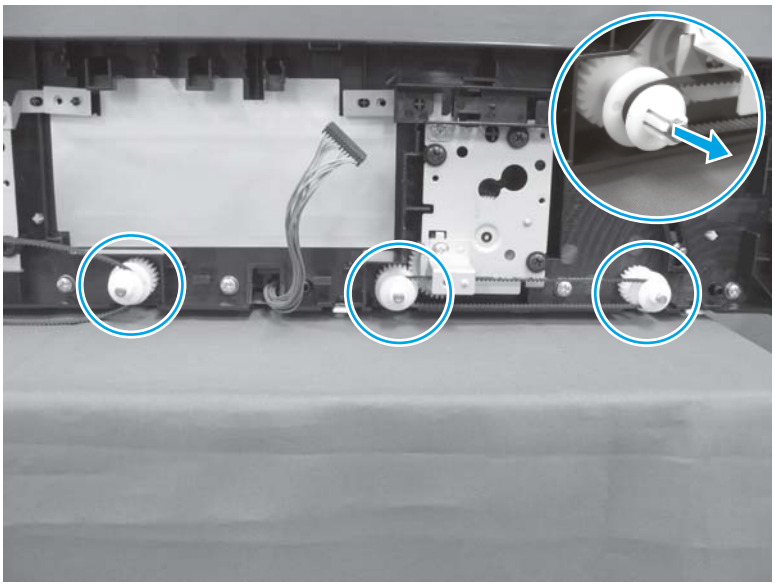
4. Remove one drive belt (callout 1), and then slide the drive gear (callout 2) off of the shaft to remove it.

Figure 1-660 Remove the IPTU side panel assembly (4 of 6)



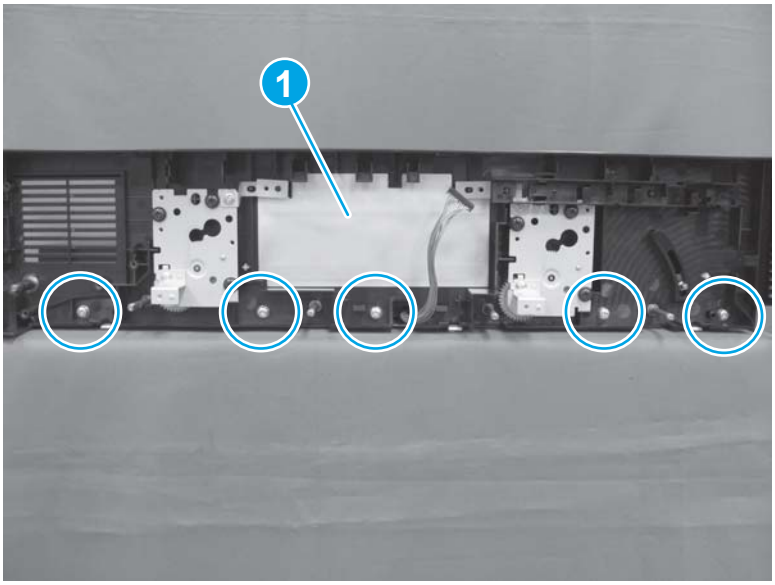
5. Repeat the previous two steps for the remaining three gear retainers, drive belts, and drive gears.

Figure 1-661 Remove the IPTU side panel assembly (5 of 6)



6. Remove five screws, and then remove the side panel assembly (callout 1).

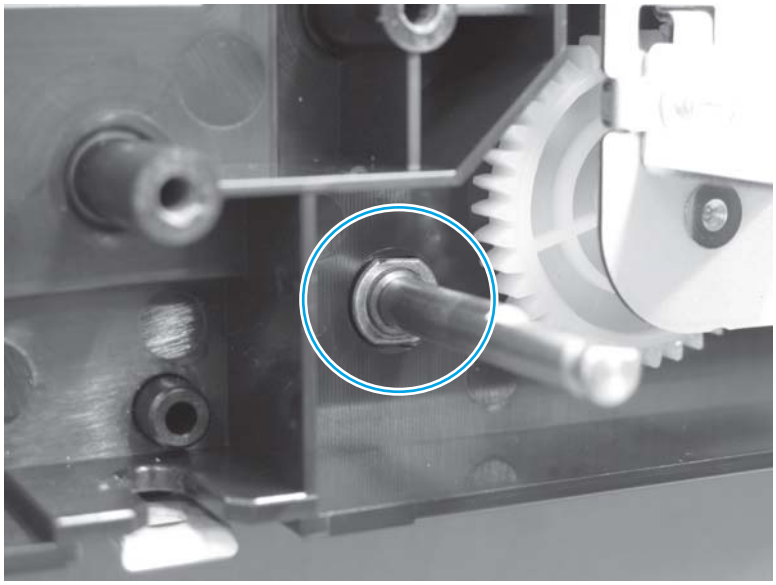
Figure 1-662 Remove the IPTU side panel assembly (6 of 6)



Reinstall the IPTU side panel assembly

When the side panel assembly is reinstalled, make sure that the bushings on the four drive-gear shafts are correctly installed as shown below.

Figure 1-663 Reinstall the IPTU side panel assembly



IPTU upper and lower guide assemblies

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- IPTU rear cover. See IPTU rear cover on page 439.

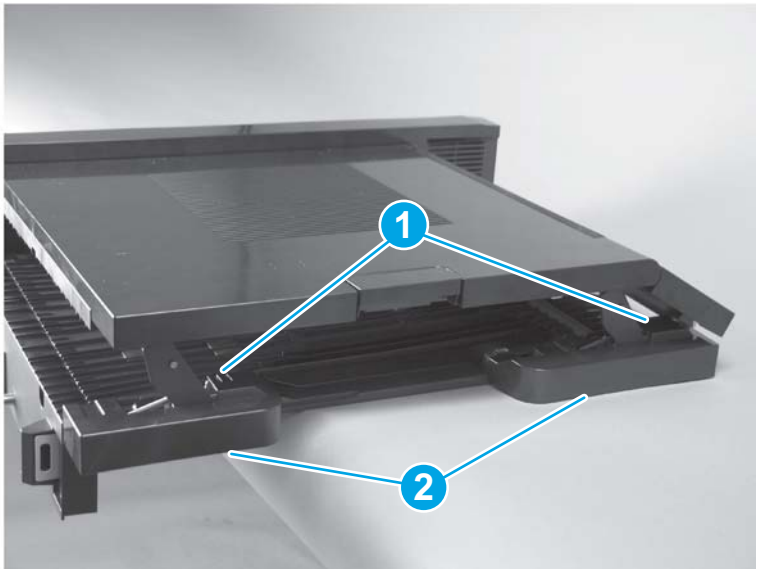
Remove the IPTU upper and lower guide assemblies

1. Turn the IPTU face-down, and then remove two screws.

   Figure 1-664 Remove the IPTU upper and lower guide assemblies (1 of 9)

2. Turn the IPTU face-up, release two tabs (callout 1), and then remove two covers (callout 2).

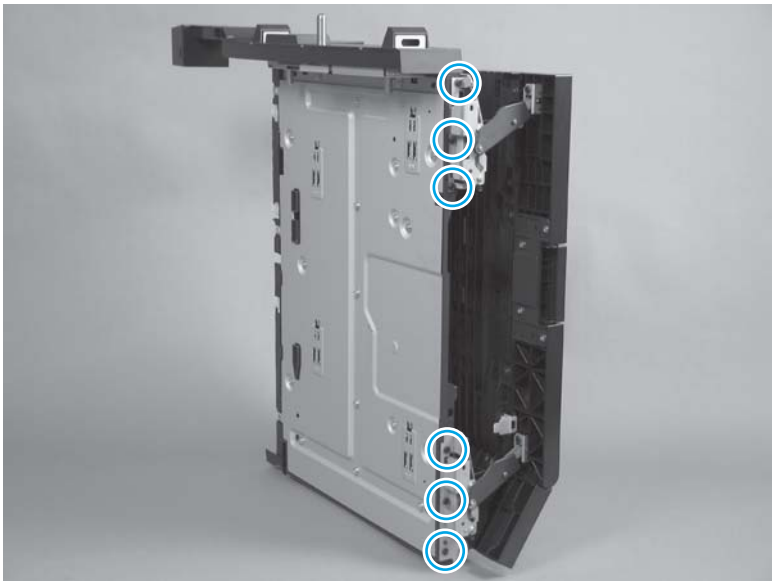
   Figure 1-665 Remove the IPTU upper and lower guide assemblies (2 of 9)

3. Remove six screws.

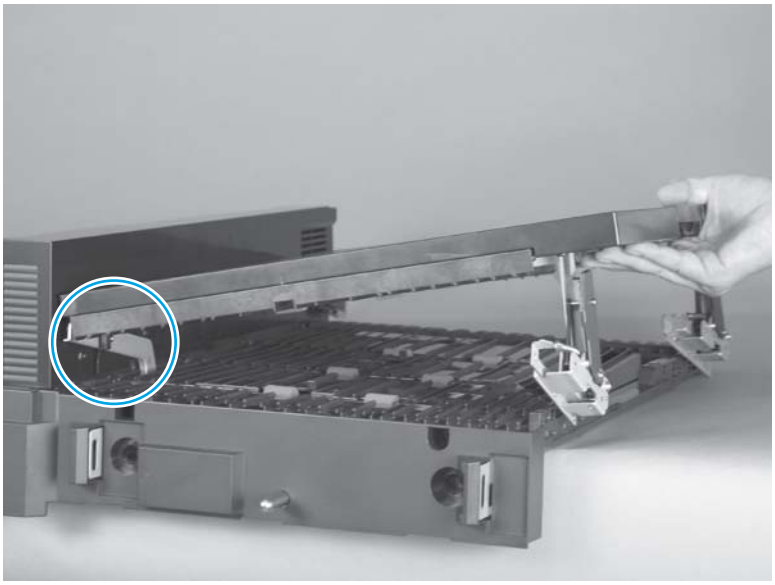
NOTE: These are self-tapping screws.

Figure 1-666 Remove the IPTU upper and lower guide assemblies (3 of 9)



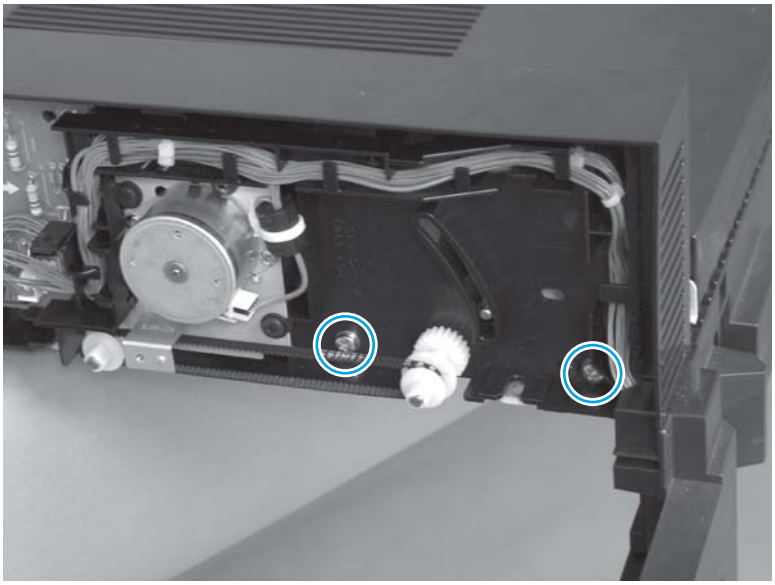
4. Lift the upper guide away from the IPTU, and then locate one hinge.

Figure 1-667 Remove the IPTU upper and lower guide assemblies (4 of 9)



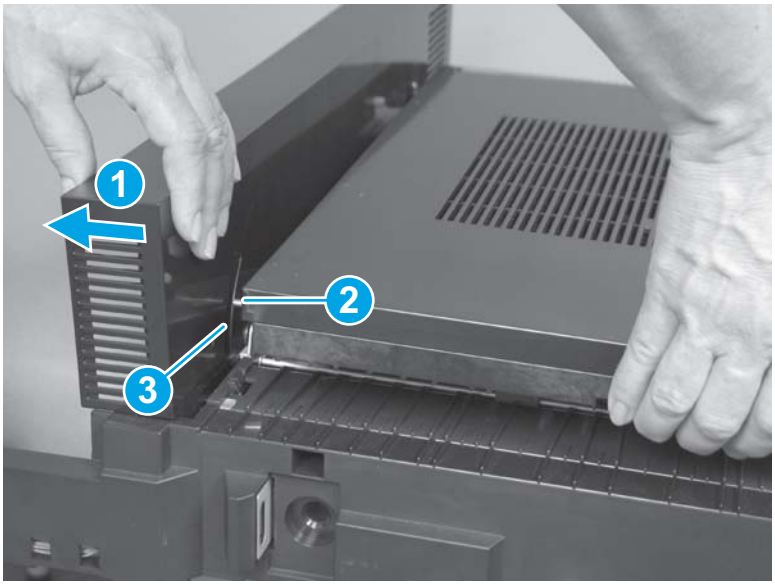
5. Remove two screws from the rear of the IPTU.

Figure 1-668 Remove the IPTU upper and lower guide assemblies (5 of 9)



6. Flex the plastic cover (callout 1) to release the hinge (callout 2) from the slot (callout 3).

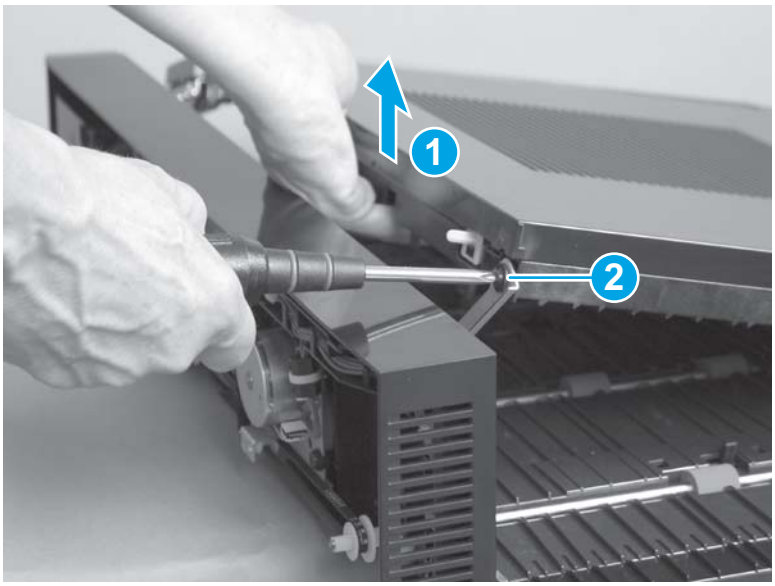
Figure 1-669 Remove the IPTU upper and lower guide assemblies (6 of 9)



7. Lift the upper guide assembly (callout 1) until the screw (callout 2) in the hinge is visible. Remove the screw.

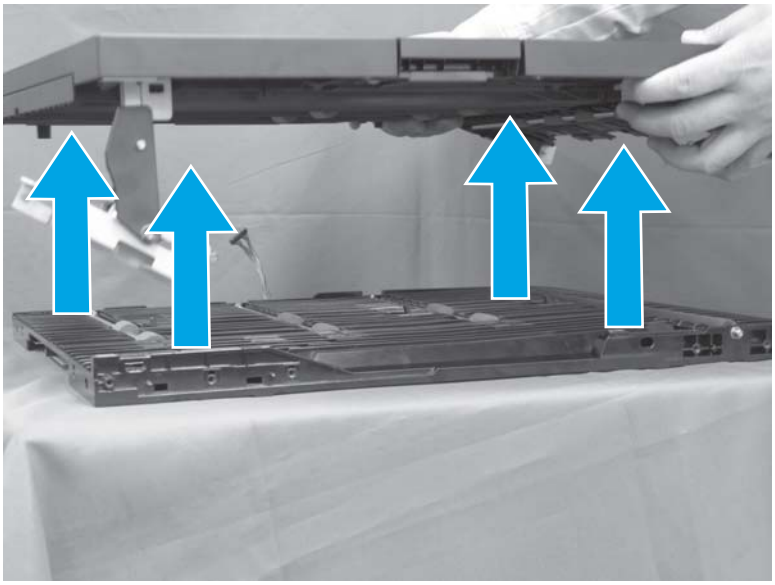
NOTE: This screw is different from the other screws in the assembly. Make sure to reinstall this screw in the hinge.

Figure 1-670 Remove the IPTU upper and lower guide assemblies (7 of 9)



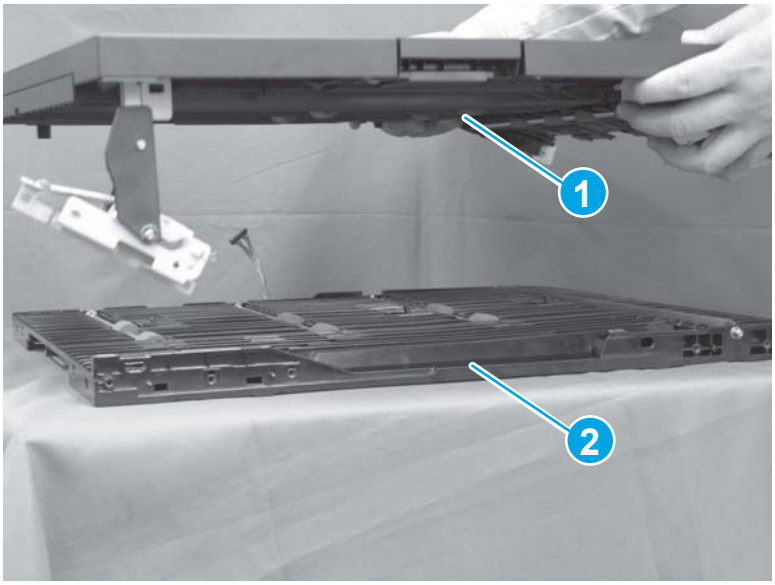
8. Lift the upper guide assembly straight up to remove it.

Figure 1-671 Remove the IPTU upper and lower guide assemblies (8 of 9)



9. Locate the upper guide assembly (callout 1) and the lower guide assembly (callout 2).

Figure 1-672 Remove the IPTU upper and lower guide assemblies (9 of 9)



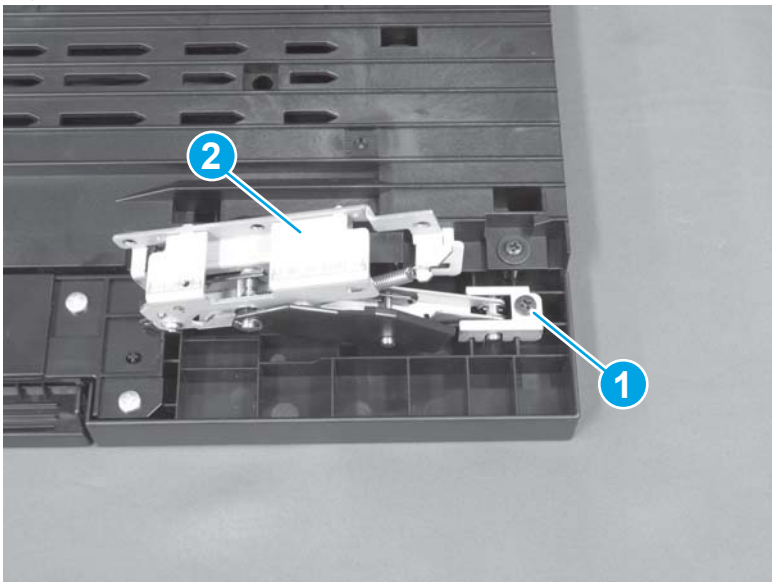
Install a replacement IPTU upper guide assembly

If you are installing a replacement upper guide assembly, follow these steps to remove the left- and right-assist assemblies, and then install them on the replacement upper guide assembly

1. Turn the upper guide assembly over to access the bottom of the assembly.

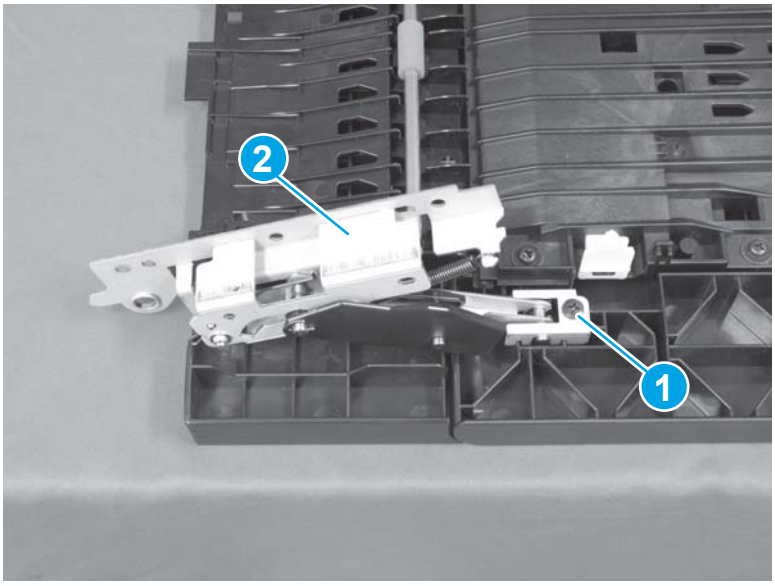
   Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the left-assist assembly (callout 2).

   Figure 1-673 Install a replacement IPTU upper guide assembly (1 of 2)



2. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the right-assist assembly (callout 2).

   Figure 1-674 Install a replacement IPTU upper guide assembly (2 of 2)



Finishing accessories

⚠ **CAUTION:** Turn the product off and disconnect the finishing accessory from the product before servicing.

This section includes information about the following topics:

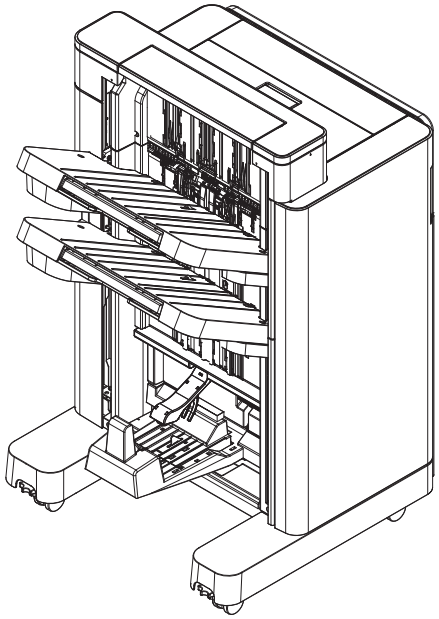
- Identify the finishing accessories
- Identifying finishing accessory covers and doors
- Shared finishing accessory assemblies
- Booklet maker accessory
- Booklet maker and stapler/stacker with hole punch accessories

Identify the finishing accessories

- Booklet maker (BM)

  Includes booklet maker and stapler functions.

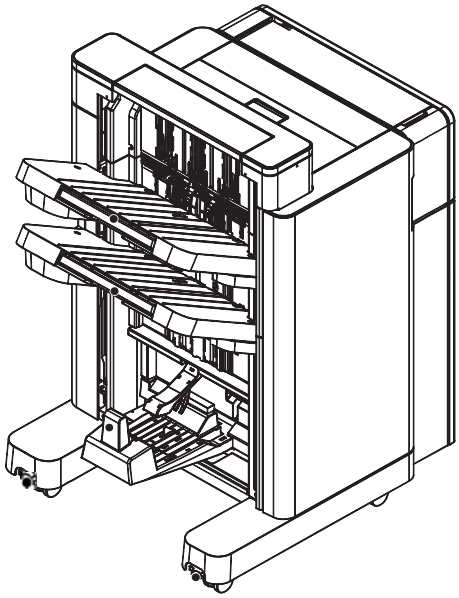
  Figure 1-675 Identify the BM finishing accessory

- Booklet maker with hole punch (BMHP)

  Includes booklet maker and hole punch (2/3 or 2/4) functions.

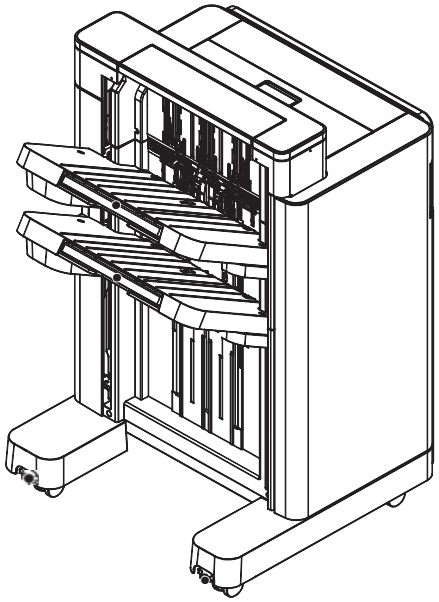
  Figure 1-676 Identify the BMHP finishing accessory

- Stapler/stacker (SS)

  Includes stapler functions.

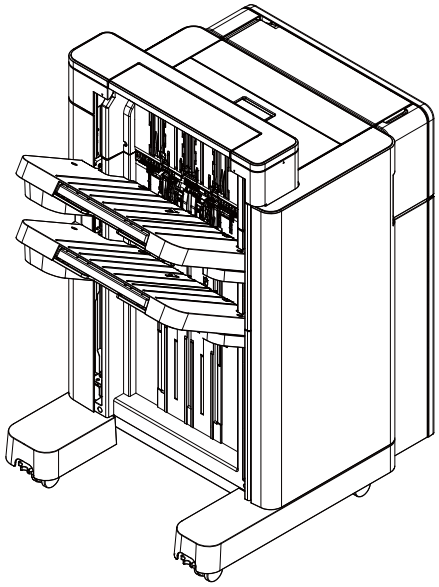
  Figure 1-677 Identify the SS finishing accessory

- Stapler/stacker with hole punch (SSHP)

  Includes stapler and hole punch (2/3 or 2/4) functions.

  Figure 1-678 Identify the SSHP finishing accessory

Identifying finishing accessory covers and doors

Figure 1-679 Stapler stacker covers and doors

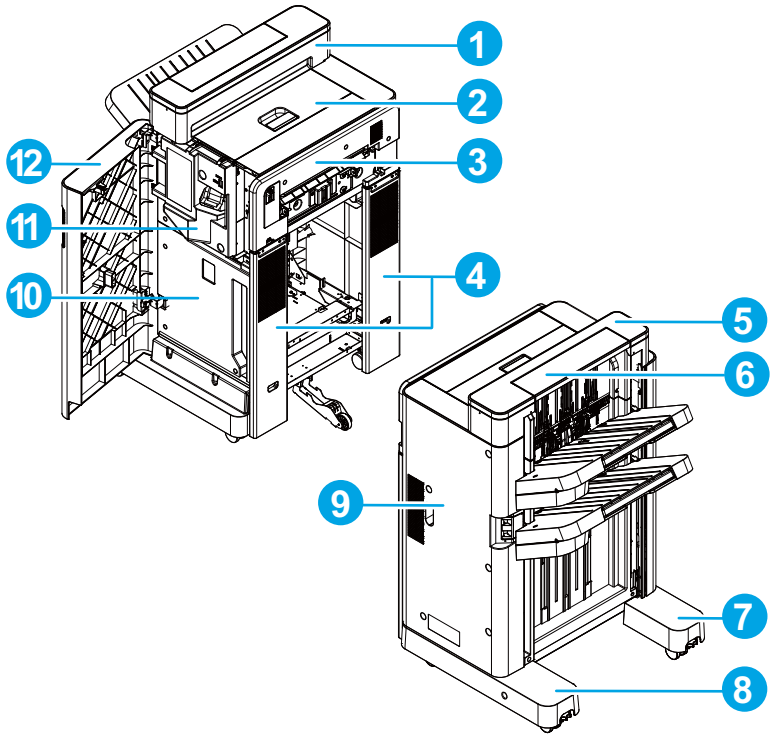


Table 1-24 Stapler stacker covers and doors

Item	Description	Item	Description
1	Step lower cover	7	Front foot cover
2	Top door assembly	8	Rear foot cover
3	Latch assembly	9	Rear cover
4	Latch lower cover	10	Inner lower cover
5	Step top cover	11	Inner upper cover assembly
6	Open-close step cover	12	Front door assembly

Figure 1-680 Stapler stacker with hole punch covers and doors

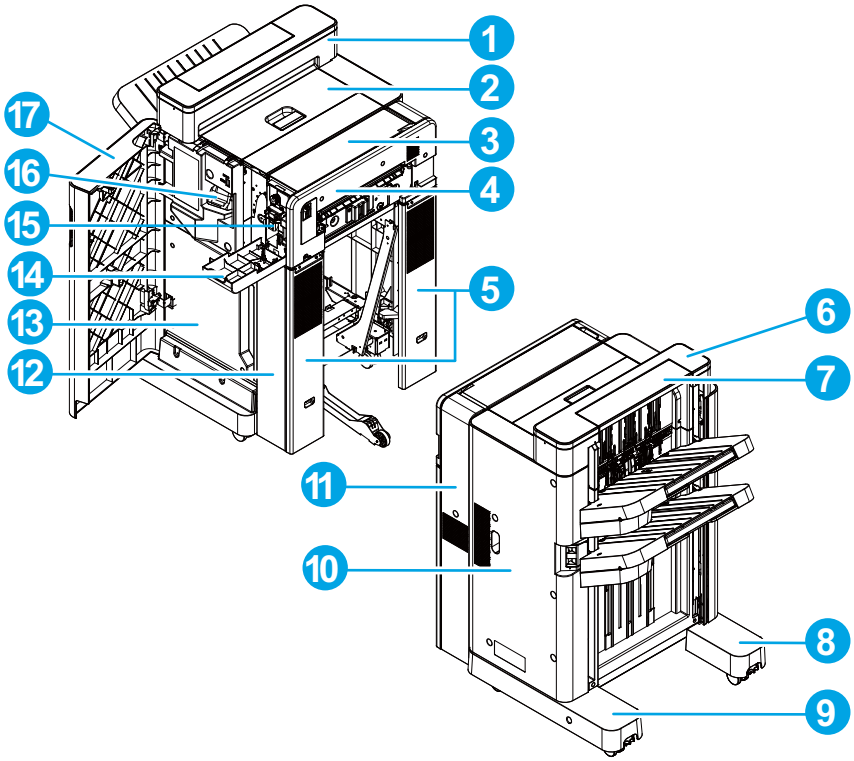


Table 1-25 Stapler stacker with hole punch covers and doors

Item	Description	Item	Description
1	Step lower cover	10	Rear cover
2	Top door assembly	11	Punch rear cover
3	Punch top cover	12	Punch lower cover
4	Latch assembly	13	Inner lower cover
5	Latch lower cover	14	Punch front cover
6	Step top cover	15	Punch inner cover
7	Open-close step cover	16	Inner upper cover assembly
8	Front foot cover	17	Front door assembly
9	Rear foot cover		

Figure 1-681 Booklet maker covers and doors

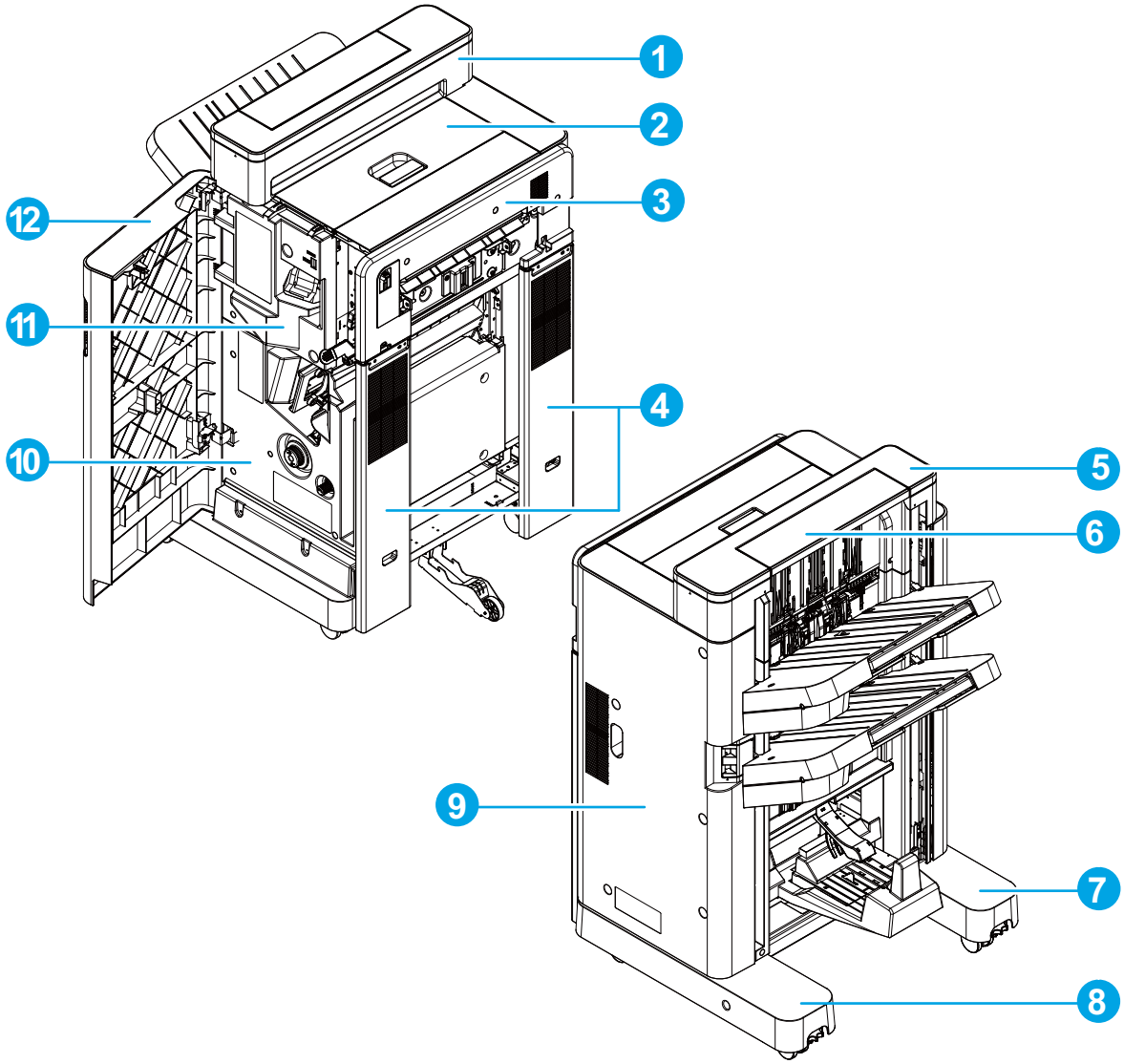


Table 1-26 Booklet maker covers and doors

Item	Description	Item	Description
1	Step lower cover	7	Front foot cover
2	Top door assembly	8	Rear foot cover
3	Latch assembly	9	Rear cover
4	Latch lower cover	10	Inner lower cover
5	Step top cover	11	Inner upper cover assembly
6	Open-close step cover	12	Front door assembly

Figure 1-682 Booklet maker with hole punch covers and doors

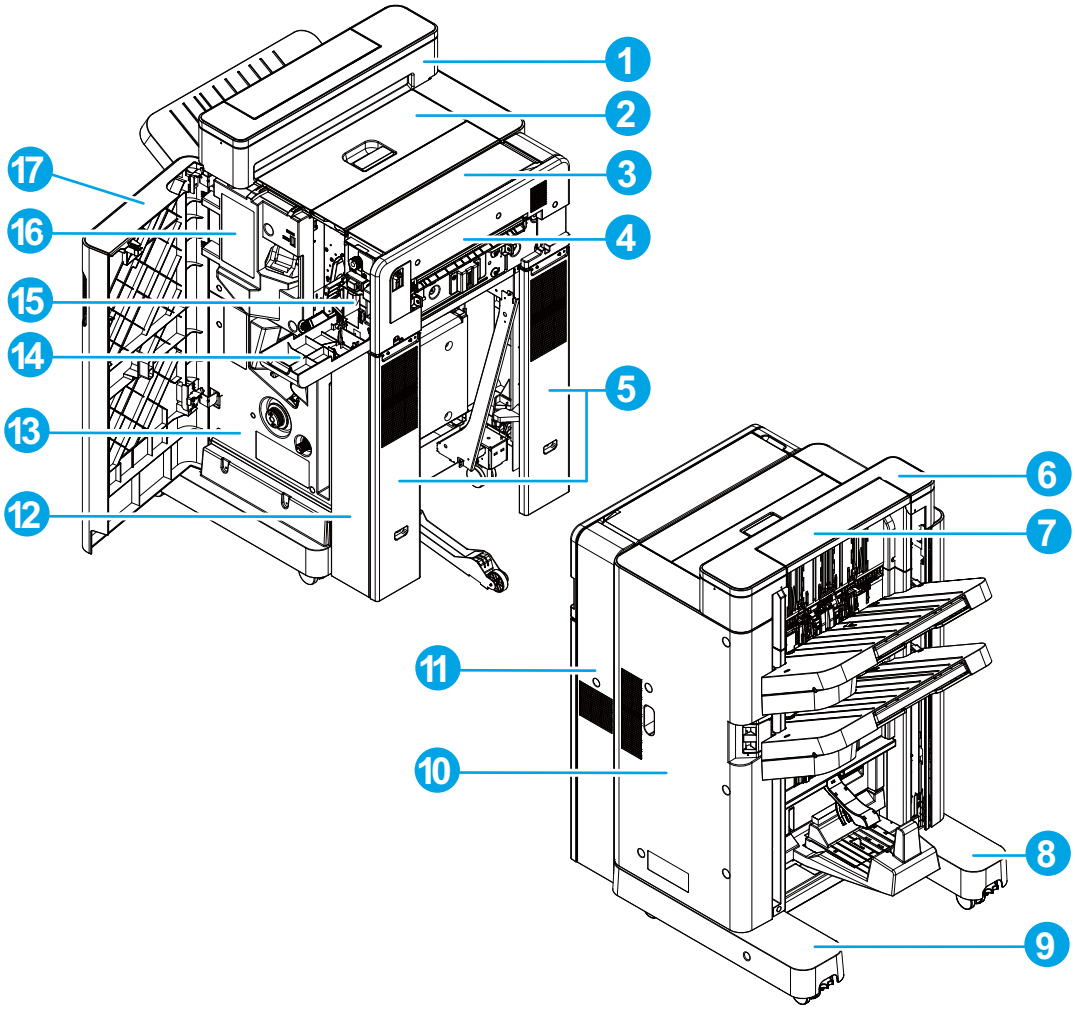


Table 1-27 Booklet maker with hole punch covers and doors

Item	Description	Item	Description
1	Step lower cover	10	Rear cover
2	Top door assembly	11	Punch rear cover
3	Punch top cover	12	Punch lower cover
4	Latch assembly	13	Inner lower cover
5	Latch lower cover	14	Punch front cover
6	Step top cover	15	Punch inner cover
7	Open-close step cover	16	Inner upper cover assembly
8	Front foot cover	17	Front door assembly
9	Rear foot cover		

Shared finishing accessory assemblies

The assemblies described in this section are found on each of the finishing accessories.

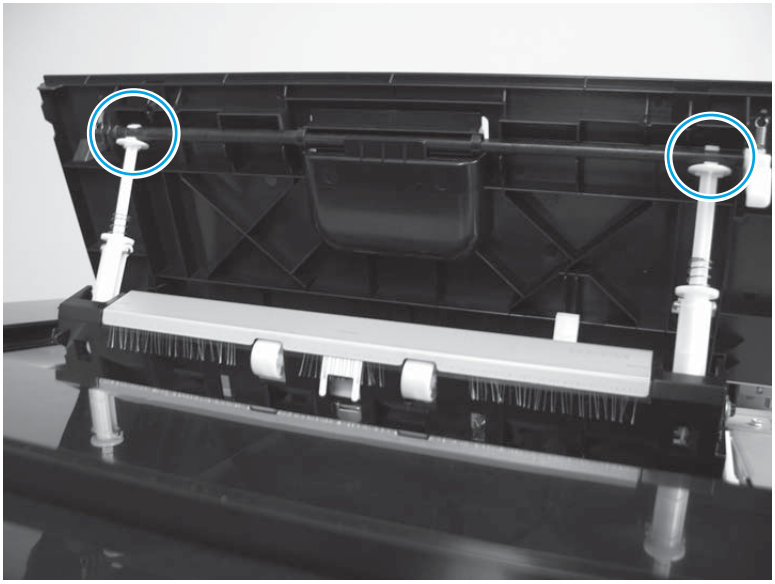
- Top cover lock assembly
- Latch lower covers (front and rear)
- Latch assembly
- Open/closed stepped cover assembly
- Upper stepped cover assembly
- Lower stepped cover assembly
- Top door assembly
- Front door
- Inner upper cover assembly
- Clutch assembly (front side)
- Sensor switch assembly
- Inner lower cover assembly
- Front foot cover assembly
- Bin cable guide cover
- Rear cover assembly
- Main controller PCA assembly
- Entrance upper guide assembly
- Rear foot cover assembly
- Stack wall upper assembly and upper wall guide assembly
- Upper cross member assembly
- Paper feed drive assembly
- Pressure roller assembly
- Stack upper bin and lower bin assemblies
- Height wall assembly
- Paper face sensor and flag assembly
- Staple subassembly
- Staple connecting cable assembly
- Staple assembly
- Paper detect holder assembly

- Operation tray assembly
- Swing guide assembly
- Return roller assembly
- Clutch assembly (rear side)
- Stack ejection motor assembly
- Press motor assembly
- Common driver PCA assembly
- Interface cable assembly
- Paper pass assembly

Top cover lock assembly

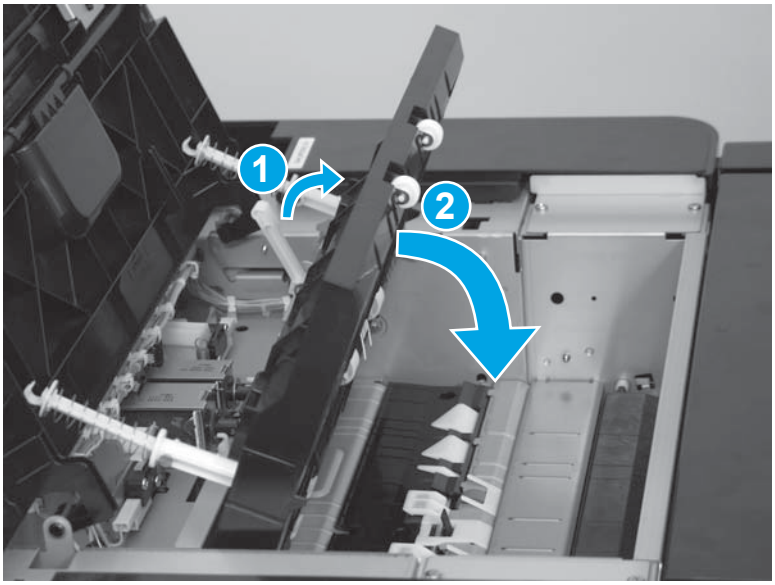
1. Open the top cover, carefully unsnap two spring loaded arms to release them from the latch shaft, and then move the cover out of the way.

Figure 1-683 Remove the top cover lock assembly (1 of 3)



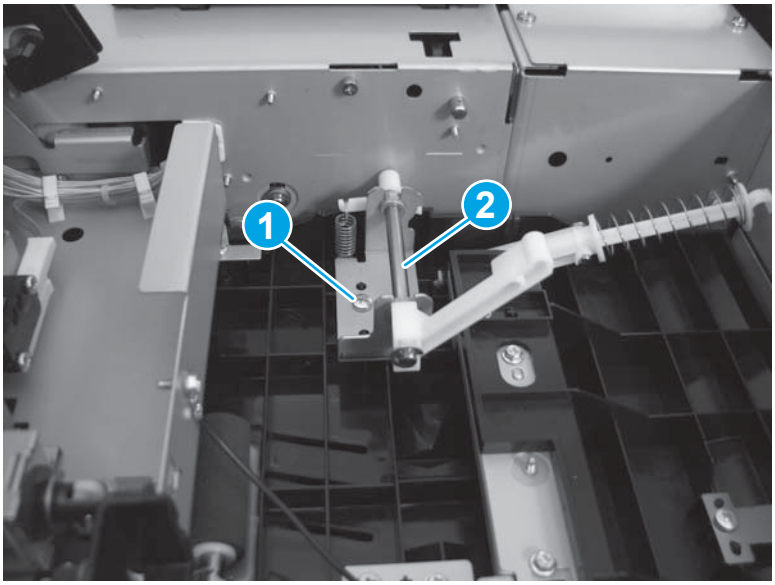
2. Move the upper cover out of the way, release one lever (callout 1) which holds the entrance upper guide assembly in the open position, and then lower the guide assembly (callout 2) into the accessory.

Figure 1-684 Remove the top cover lock assembly (2 of 3)



3. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the upper cover lock assembly (callout 2).

Figure 1-685 Remove the top cover lock assembly (3 of 3)

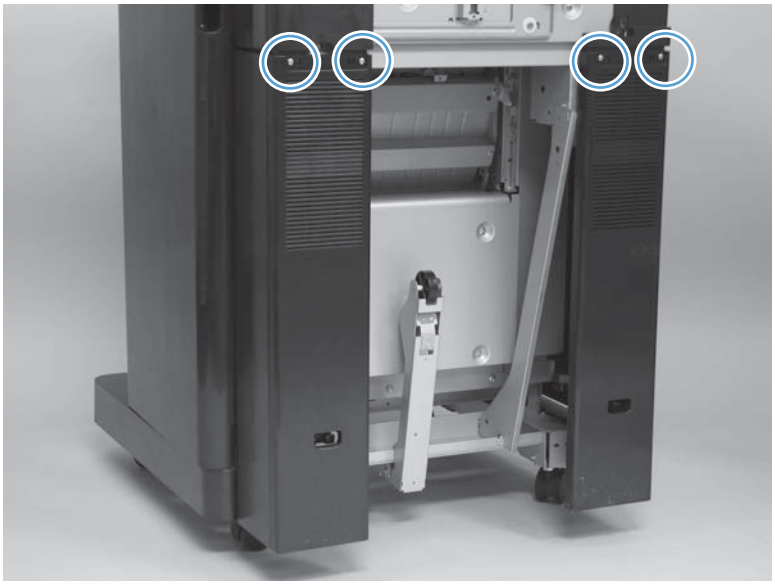


Latch lower covers (front and rear)

NOTE: The cover shown in the following procedure is installed on a booklet maker with hole punch (BMHP) accessory, however the procedure is the same for all of the finishing accessories.

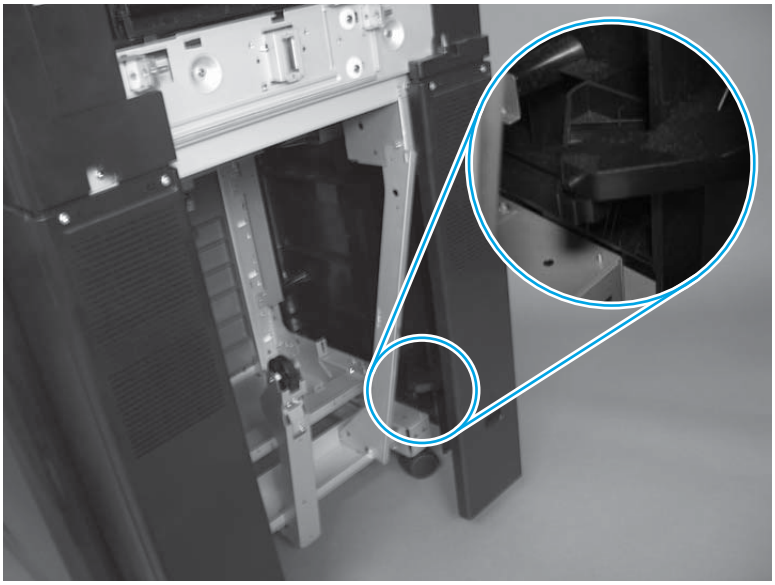
1. Remove four screws.

Figure 1-686 Remove the latch lower covers (front and rear; 1 of 3)



2. Before proceeding, take note of the two locator pins on the back side of each cover. These are positioning pins and must be correctly installed to assure proper alignment of the covers when they are reinstalled.

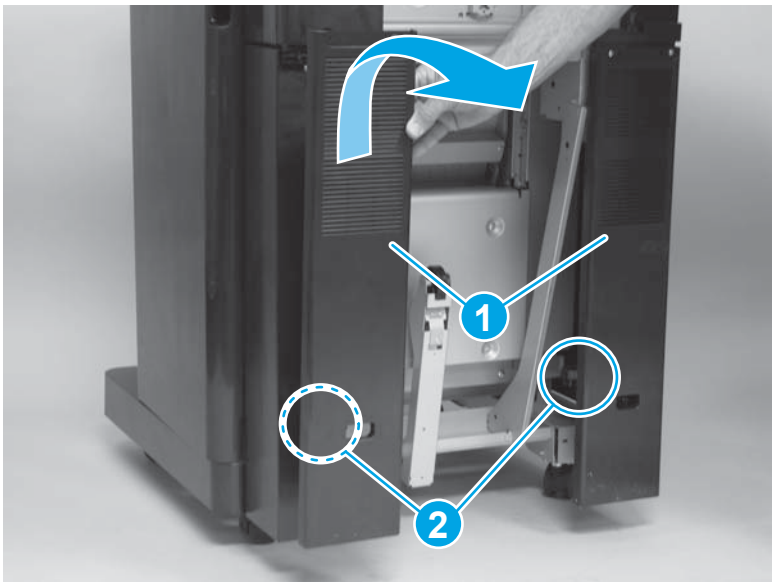
Figure 1-687 Remove the latch lower covers (front and rear; 2 of 3)



3. Remove the covers (callout 1) by moving the top of the cover outward to release the positioning pins (callout 2).

TIP: As the cover is removed, you might need to reach behind the cover to release the two locator pins on the back side of the cover.

Figure 1-688 Remove the latch lower covers (front and rear; 3 of 3)



Latch assembly

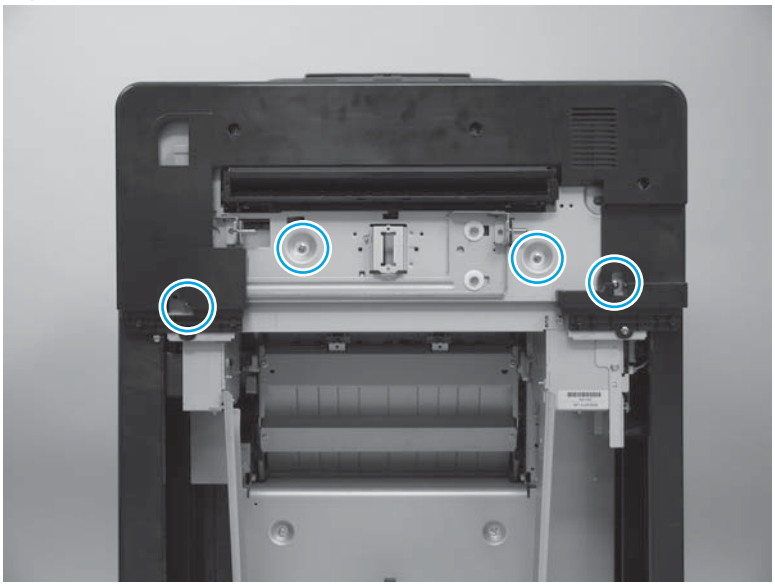
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Latch lower covers (front and rear). See Latch lower covers (front and rear) on page 468.

Remove the latch assembly

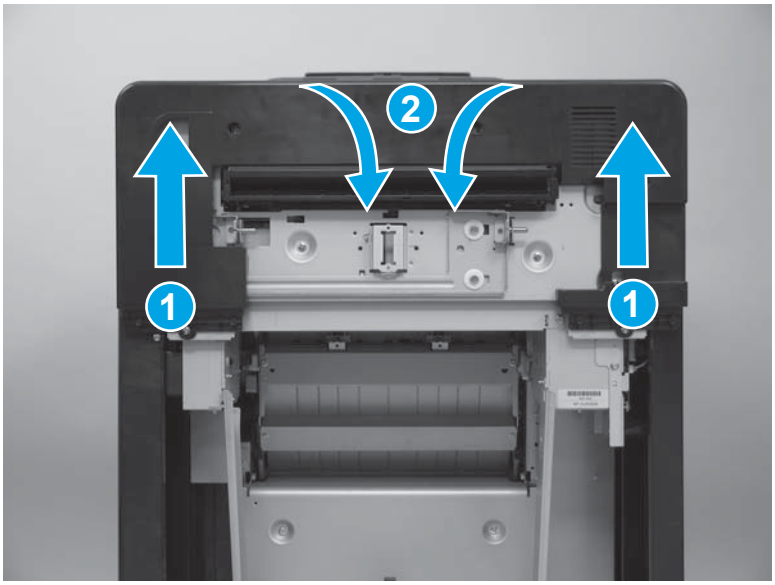
1. Remove four screws.

Figure 1-689 Remove the latch assembly (1 of 2)



2. Lift the assembly straight up to release it (callout 1), and then rotate the assembly away from the paper path entrance (callout 2) to remove it.

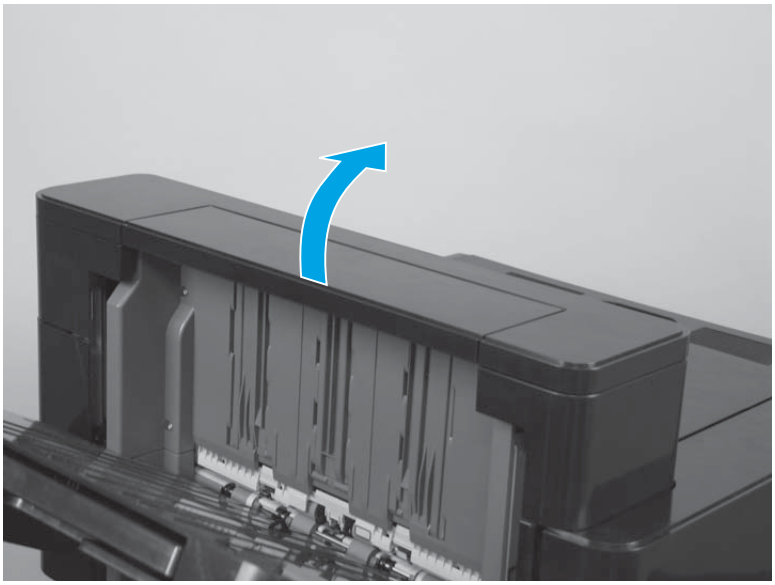
Figure 1-690 Remove the latch assembly (2 of 2)



Open/closed stepped cover assembly

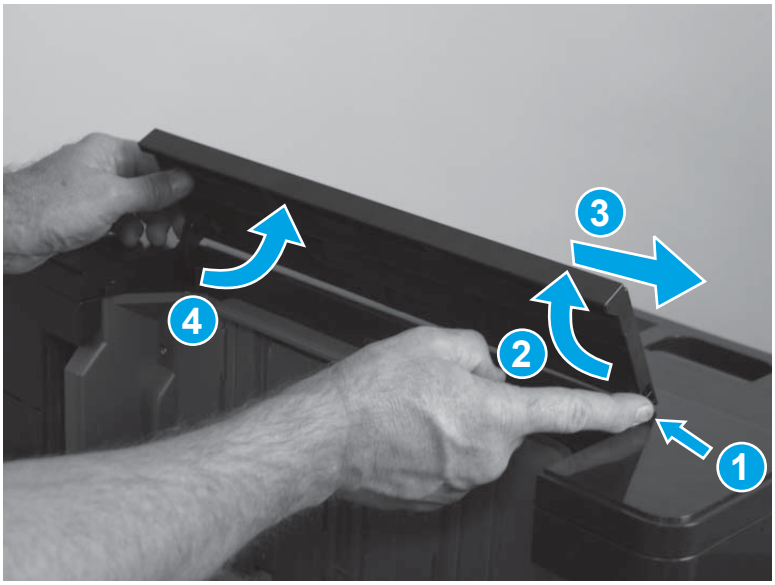
1. Open the cover.

Figure 1-691 Remove the open/close stepped cover assembly (1 of 2)



2. Carefully push in on the cover hinge (callout 1) to release the hinge pin, lift the rear edge of the cover out and up (callout 2), and then slide the cover to the right (callout 3). Unlatch the left hinge of cover by swinging it out and up to remove cover (callout 4).

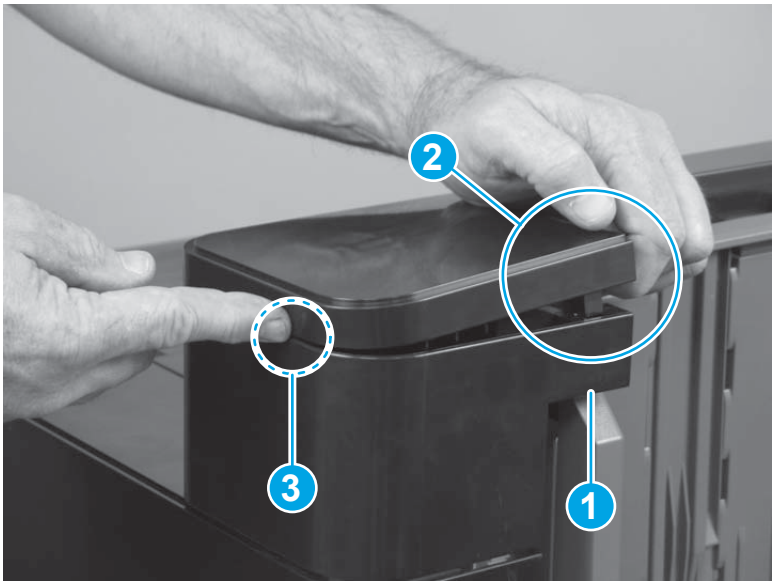
Figure 1-692 Remove the open/close stepped cover assembly (2 of 2)



Upper stepped cover assembly

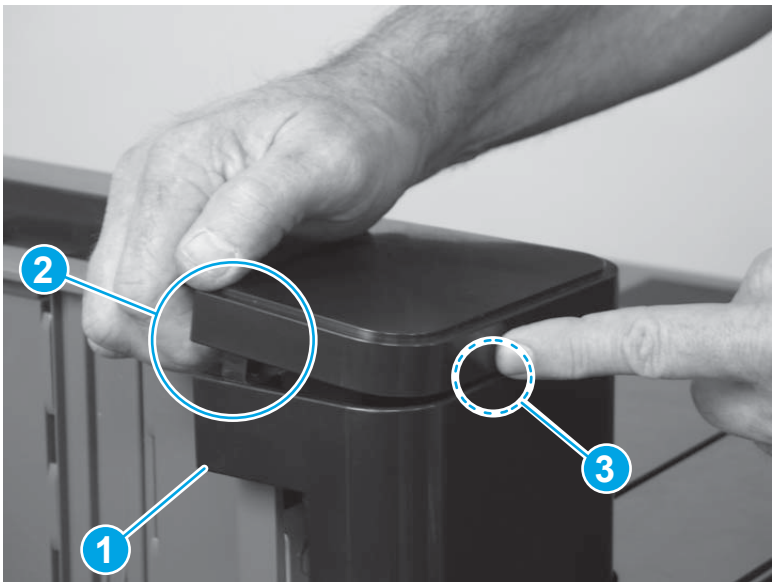
1. Use your finger to release one tab (callout 1), carefully pull up on the corner of the cover (callout 2), and then push in on the cover to release a second tab (callout 3).

Figure 1-693 Remove the upper stepped cover assembly (1 of 4)



2. Use your finger to release one tab (callout 1), carefully pull up on the opposite corner of the cover (callout 2), and then push in on the cover to release a second tab (callout 3).

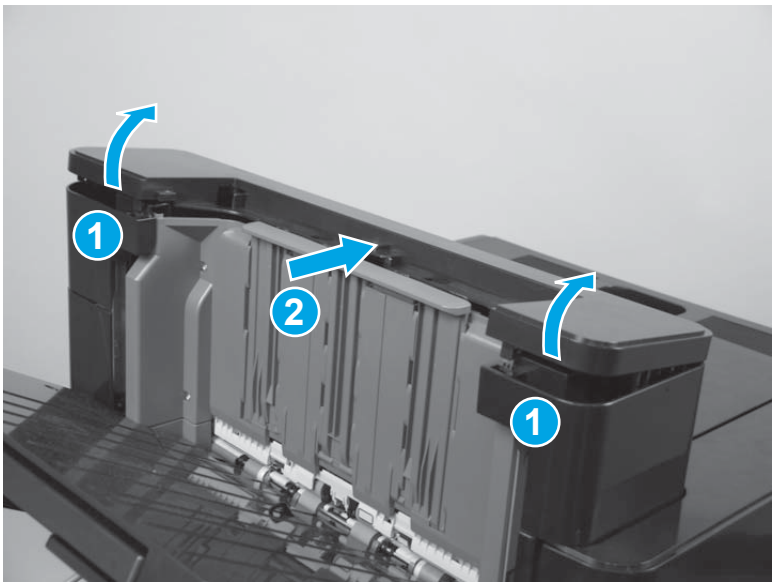
Figure 1-694 Remove the upper stepped cover assembly (2 of 4)



3. Rotate the edge of the cover nearest the stack bins (callout 1) up and away from the accessory.

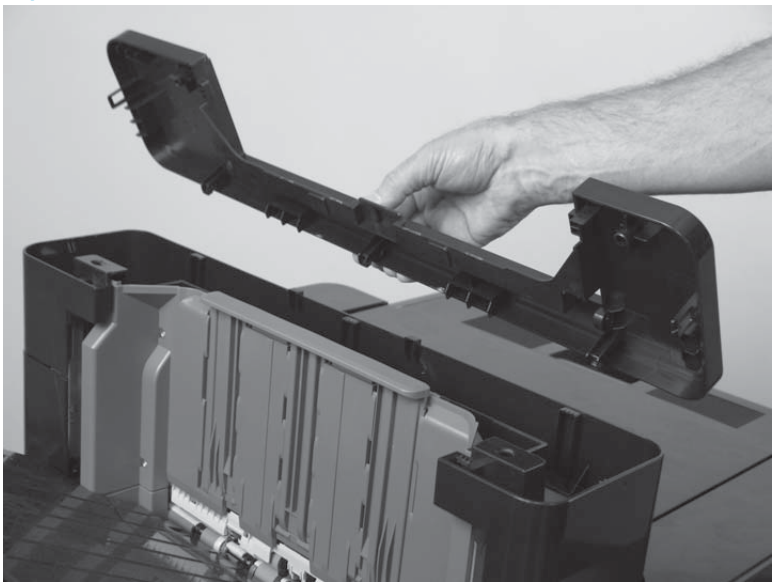
TIP: As you rotate the cover up, push in on the center of the cover (callout 2) to make it easier to remove.

Figure 1-695 Remove the upper stepped cover assembly (3 of 4)



4. Remove the cover.

Figure 1-696 Remove the upper stepped cover assembly (4 of 4)



Lower stepped cover assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

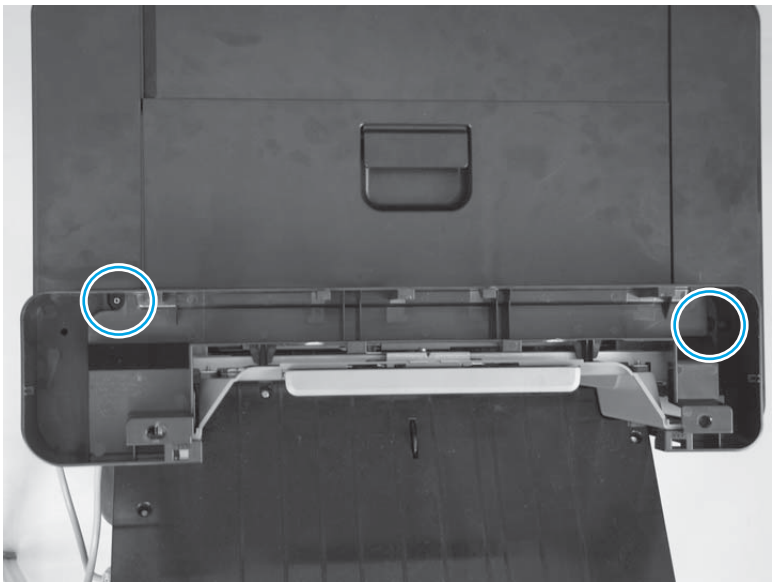
- Open/closed stepped cover assembly. See Open/closed stepped cover assembly on page 471.
- Upper stepped cover assembly. See Upper stepped cover assembly on page 472.

Remove the lower stepped cover assembly

1. Remove two screws.

NOTE: From the top of the accessory, look down into the lower stepped cover to locate these screws.

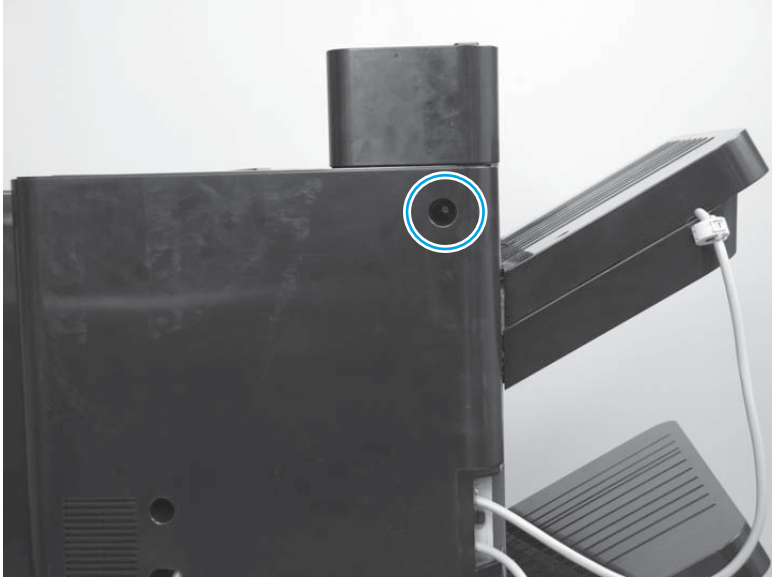
Figure 1-697 Remove the lower stepped cover assembly (1 of 5)



2. Remove one screw (callout 1) from the rear cover.

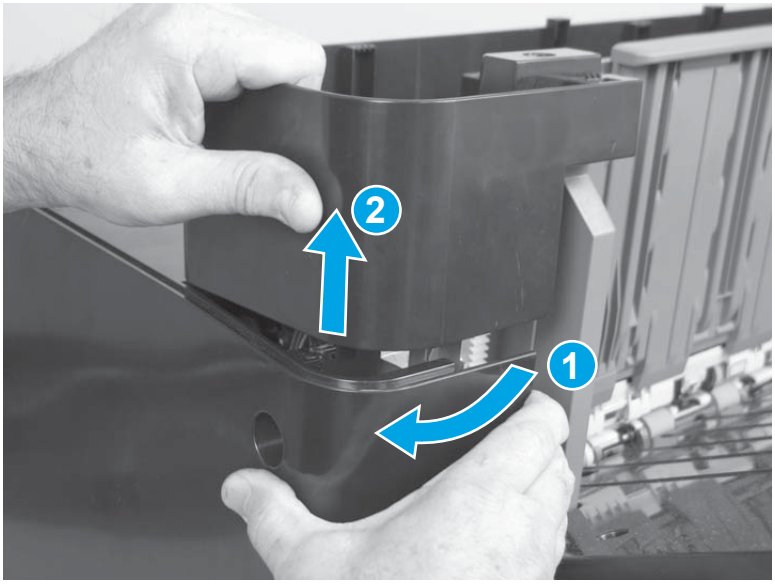
TIP: Removing this screw is necessary to release the rear cover from the lower stepped cover when it is removed.

Figure 1-698 Remove the lower stepped cover assembly (2 of 5)



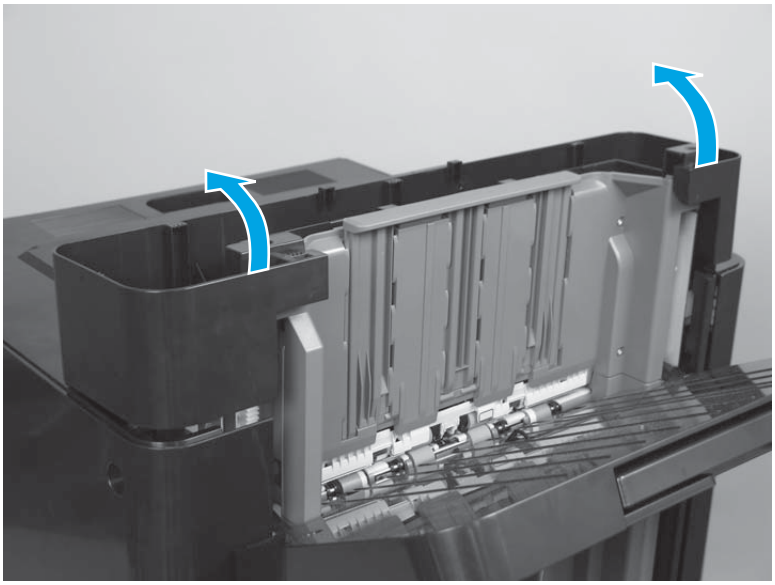
3. Carefully flex the corner of the rear cover away from the accessory (callout 1), and then slightly lift up and push in (callout 2) on the lower stepped cover to release one tab.

Figure 1-699 Remove the lower stepped cover assembly (3 of 5)



4. Rotate the edge of the cover nearest the stack bins up and away from the accessory.

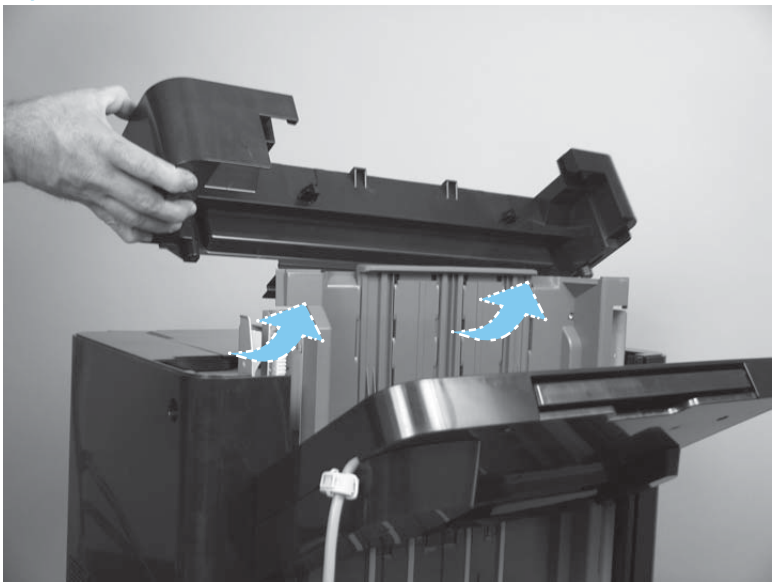
Figure 1-700 Remove the lower stepped cover assembly (4 of 5)



5. Remove the cover.

TIP: Lift and rotate the cover as shown below so that the cover will slide out from under the top door.

Figure 1-701 Remove the lower stepped cover assembly (5 of 5)



Reinstall the lower stepped cover

When the cover is reinstalled, open the top cover and make sure that the slots in the cover are underneath the sheet-metal tabs on the chassis.

Figure 1-702 Reinstall the lower stepped cover (1 of 2)

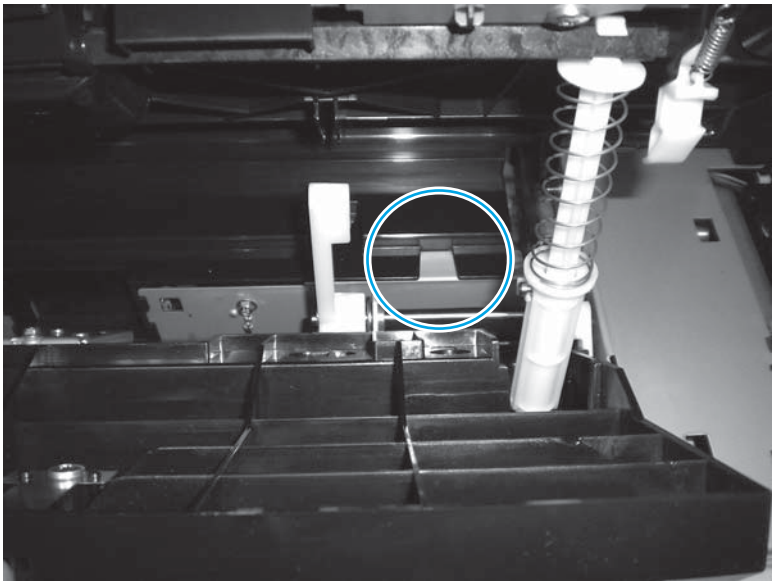
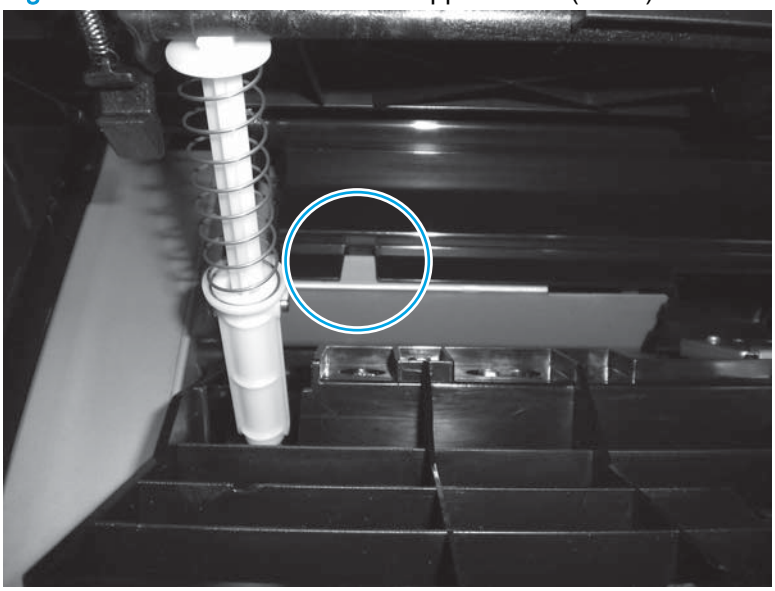


Figure 1-703 Reinstall the lower stepped cover (2 of 2)

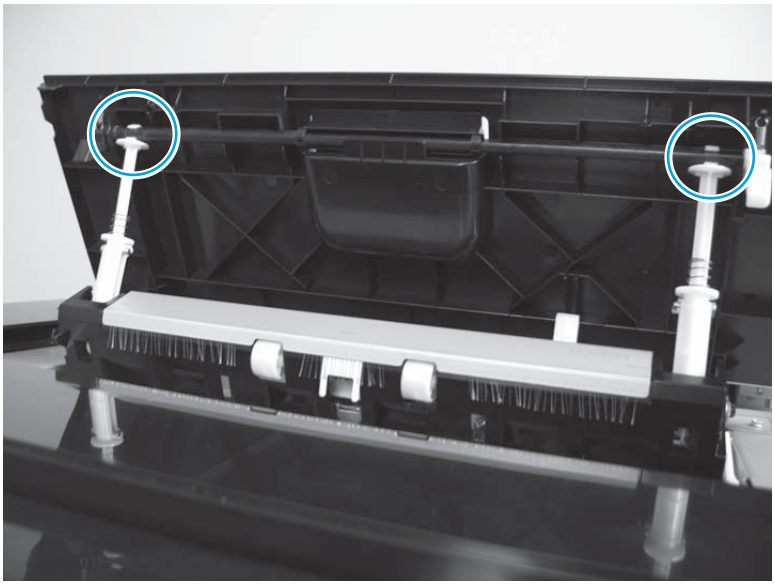


Top door assembly

NOTE: The following figures show the top door assembly on the stapler/stacker with hole punch (SSHP) finishing accessory. This removal procedure is the same for all of the finishing accessories.

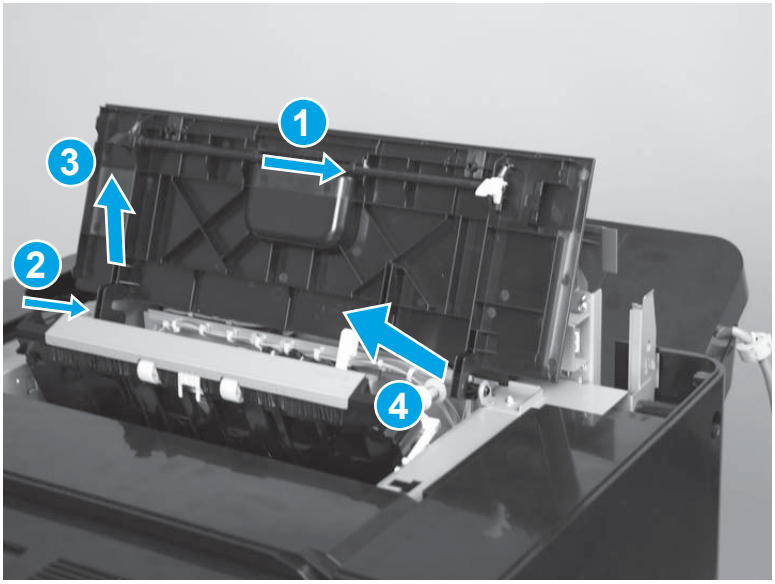
1. Open the door, and then carefully unsnap two spring loaded arms to release them from the latch shaft.

Figure 1-704 Remove the top door assembly (1 of 2)



2. From the front of the finisher, slide the top door slightly towards the rear of the accessory until it stops (callout 1). Carefully press in on the front hinge to release the hinge from the bracket (callout 2), and then lift it out of the bracket (callout 3). Slide the top of the door towards the front of the accessory to release the rear hinge (callout 4) from the rear bracket to remove the door.

Figure 1-705 Remove the top door assembly (2 of 2)



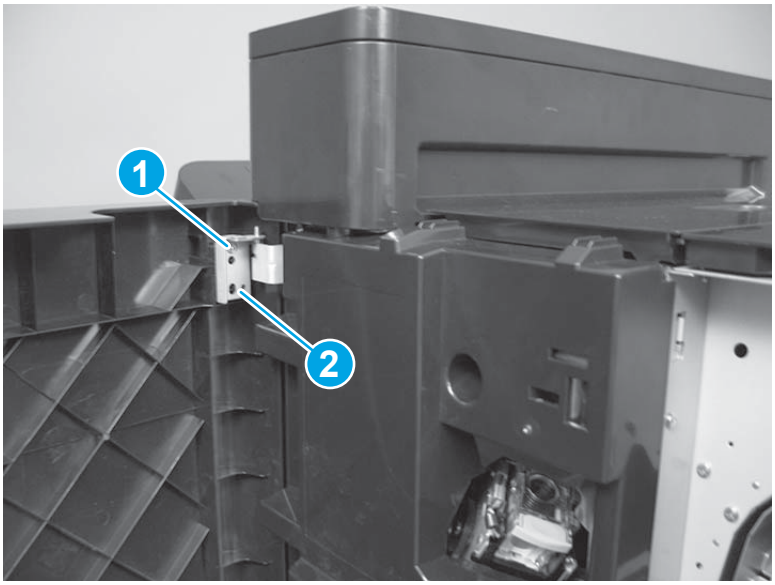
Front door

Remove the front door

1. Open the front door.
2. Support the door, and then remove one self tapping screw (callout 1) and the sheet-metal hinge (callout 2).

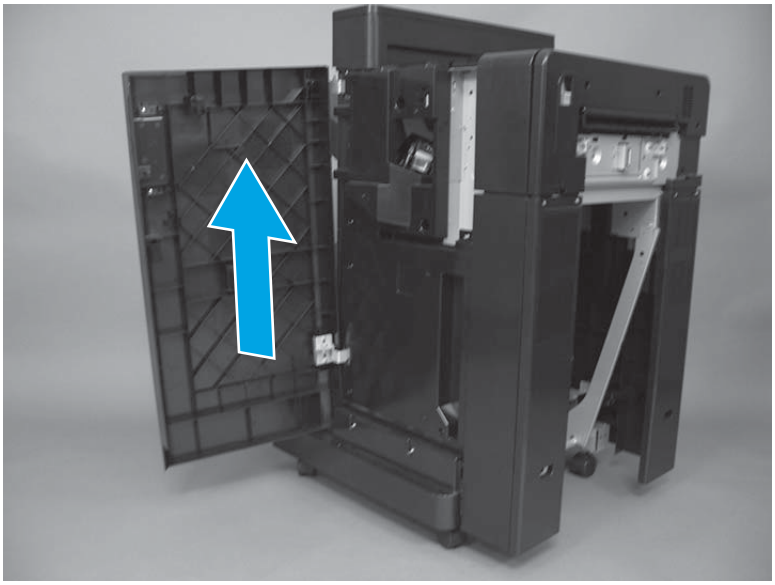
TIP: To reinstall the self-tapping screw, first turn it counterclockwise (1/4 turn) to align it with the existing thread pattern, and then carefully turn it clockwise to tighten. Do not overtighten.

Figure 1-706 Remove the front door (1 of 2)



3. With the door slightly angled away from the accessory so that it will not interfere with other accessory covers, lift the door up and off of the bottom hinge to remove it.

Figure 1-707 Remove the front door (2 of 2)

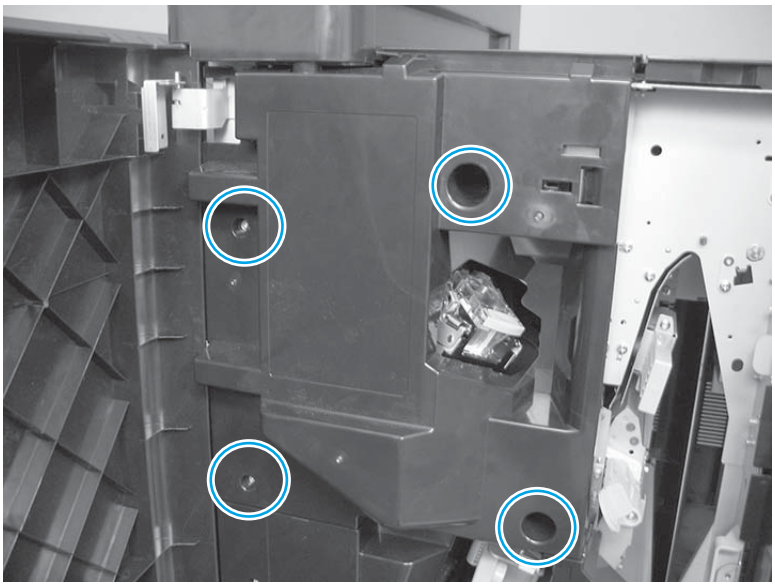


Inner upper cover assembly

TIP: If the cover needs to be moved out of the way to gain access to assemblies immediately behind the cover, use the following procedure. If the cover needs to be removed to service other assemblies on the accessory, go to Inner upper cover assembly (remove) on page 481.

1. Open the front door.
2. Remove four screws.

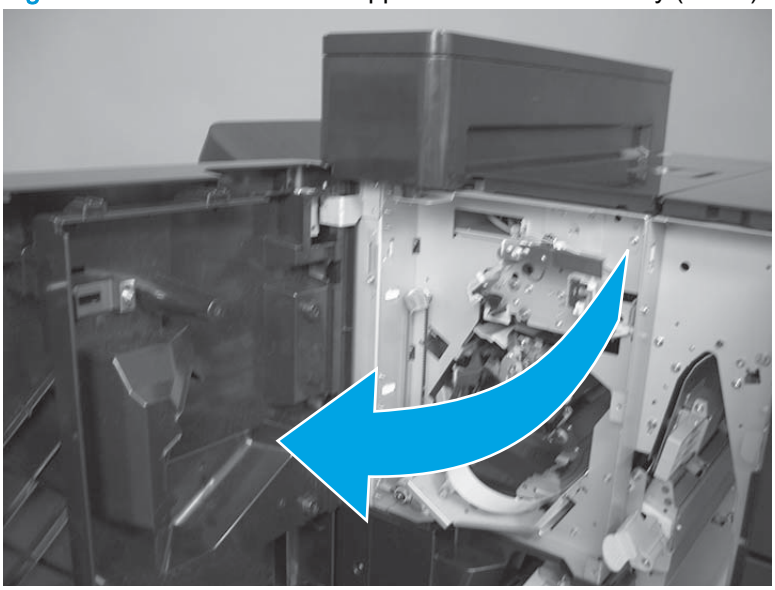
Figure 1-708 Move the inner upper cover out of the way (1 of 2)



3. Rotate the cover towards the front door to move it out of the way.

CAUTION: To prevent damage to the cover, make sure that it does not bind on the upper front door hinge when you move it out of the way.

Figure 1-709 Move the inner upper cover out of the way (2 of 2)



Inner upper cover assembly (remove)

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

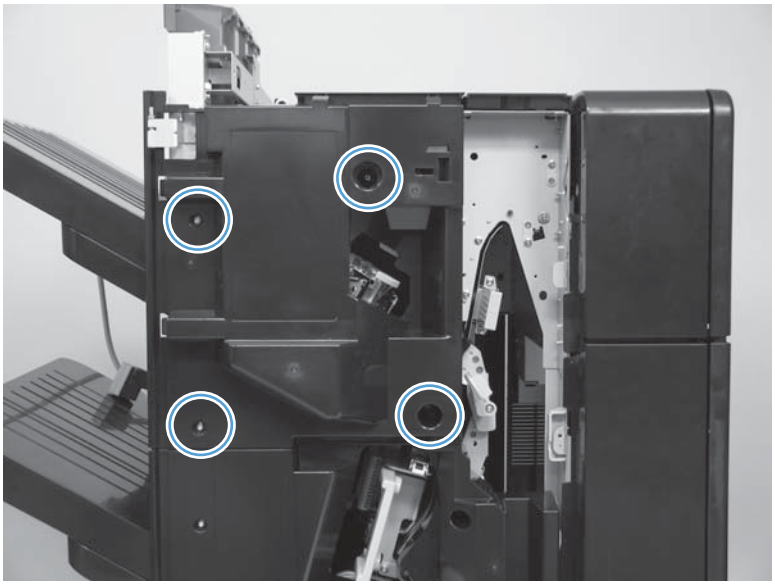
- Front door. See Front door on page 479.

Remove the inner upper cover assembly

The figures in this section show the stepped covers removed. You do not need to remove the stepped covers to remove the inner upper cover assembly.

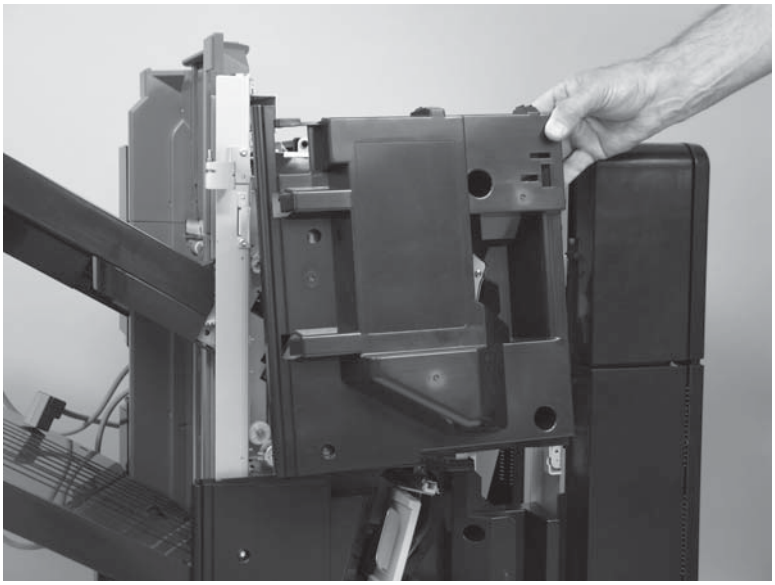
1. Remove four screws.

Figure 1-710 Remove the inner upper cover assembly (1 of 2)



2. Remove the cover.

Figure 1-711 Remove the inner upper cover assembly (2 of 2)



Clutch assembly (front side)

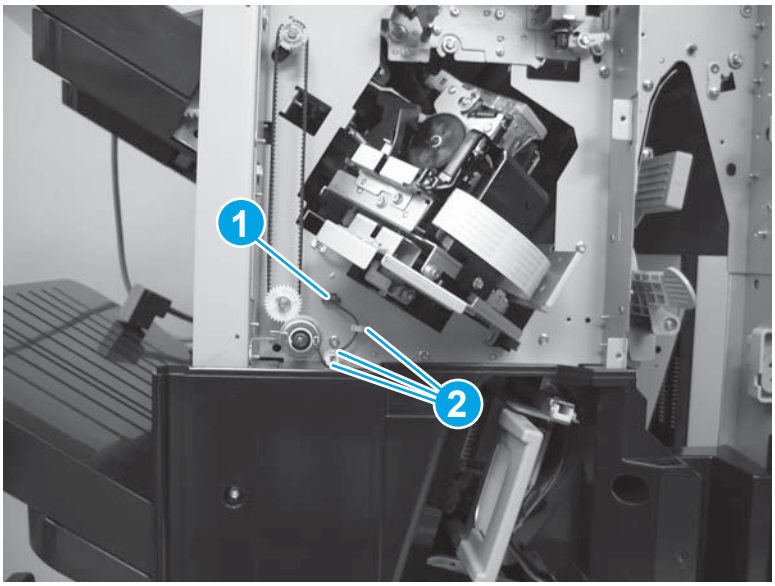
Before proceeding, do the following:

- Move the inner upper cover assembly. See Inner upper cover assembly on page 480.

Remove the clutch assembly (front side)

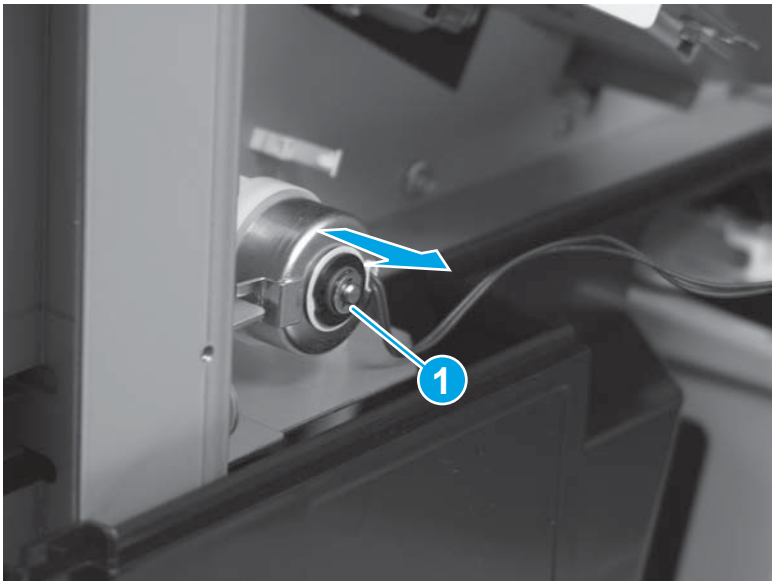
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then release the wire harness from three retainers (callout 2).

   Figure 1-712 Remove the clutch assembly (front side; 1 of 2)

2. Remove one e-ring (callout 1), and then slide the clutch off of the shaft to remove it.

   Figure 1-713 Remove the clutch assembly (front side; 2 of 2)

Sensor switch assembly

Before proceeding, do the following:

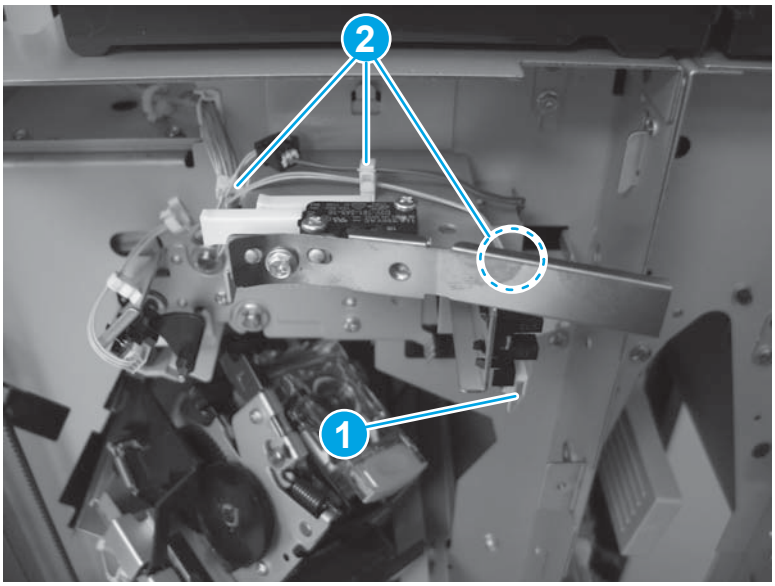
- Move the inner upper cover assembly. See Inner upper cover assembly on page 480.

Remove the sensor switch assembly

⚠ **WARNING!** Make sure that the accessory interface cable is disconnected from the product. Line voltage exists at the switch when the accessory interface cable is connected to the product—even if the product is power is turned off.

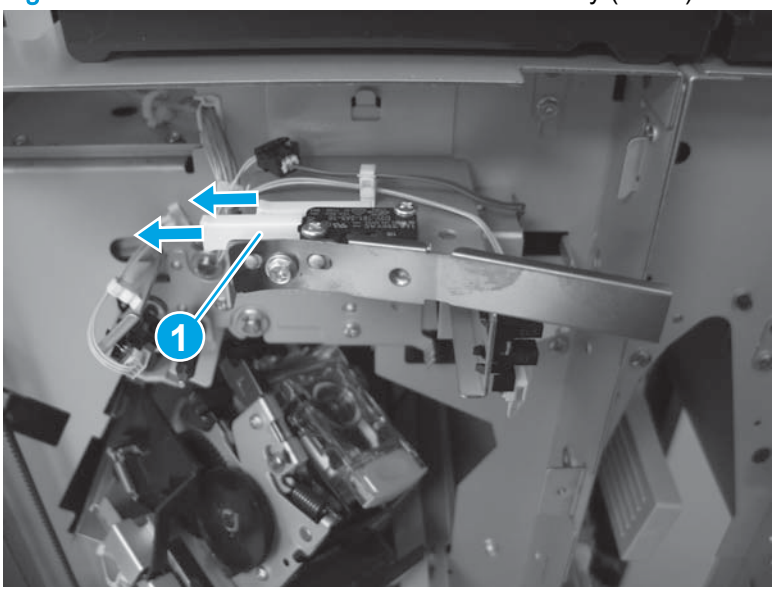
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then release the wire harnesses from three retainers (callout 2).

Figure 1-714 Remove the sensor switch assembly (1 of 4)



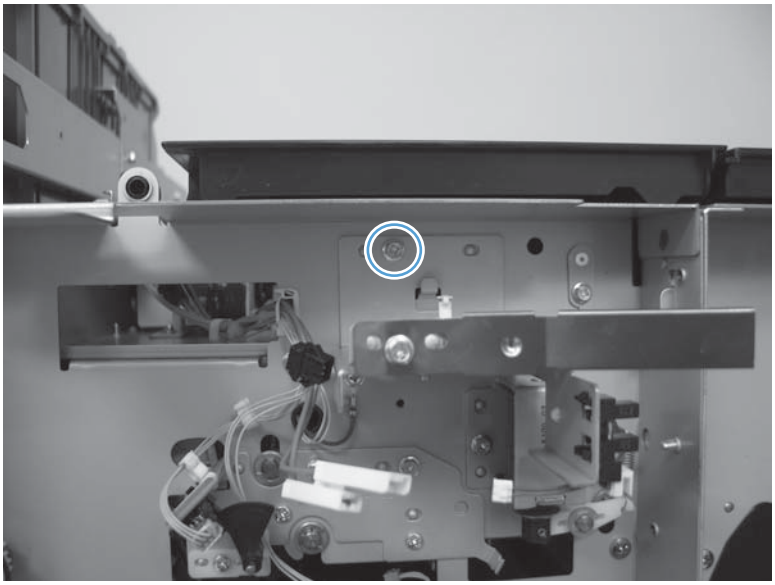
2. Use a small flat-blade screwdriver to disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 1-715 Remove the sensor switch assembly (2 of 4)



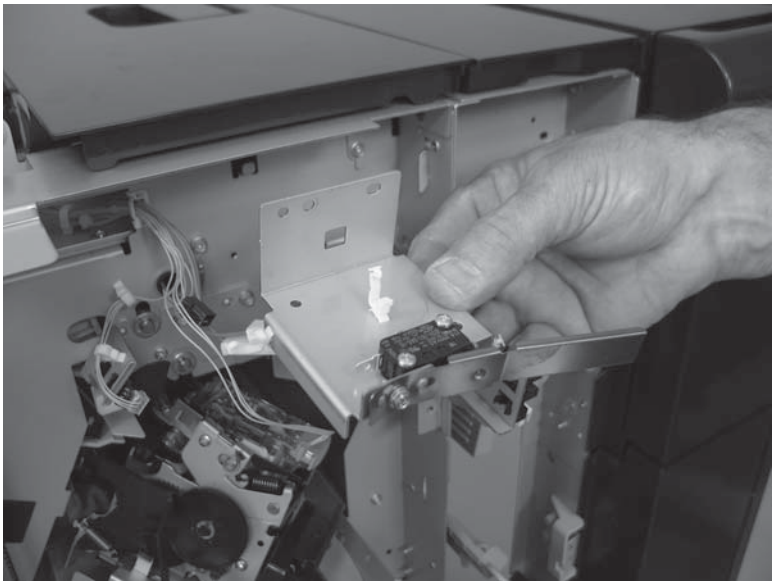
3. Remove one screw.

Figure 1-716 Remove the sensor switch assembly (3 of 4)



4. Remove the assembly.

Figure 1-717 Remove the sensor switch assembly (4 of 4)



Inner lower cover assembly

TIP: If the cover needs to be moved out of the way to gain access to assemblies immediately behind the cover, use the following procedure. If the cover needs to be removed to service other assemblies on the accessory, go to Inner lower cover assembly (remove) on page 488.

1. Open the front door.
2. Move the inner upper cover out of the way. See Inner upper cover assembly on page 480.
3. Do one of the following:
   - **Booklet maker (BM) and booklet maker with hole punch (BMHP)**: Remove four screws.

     Figure 1-718 Move the inner lower cover out of the way (1 of 4)

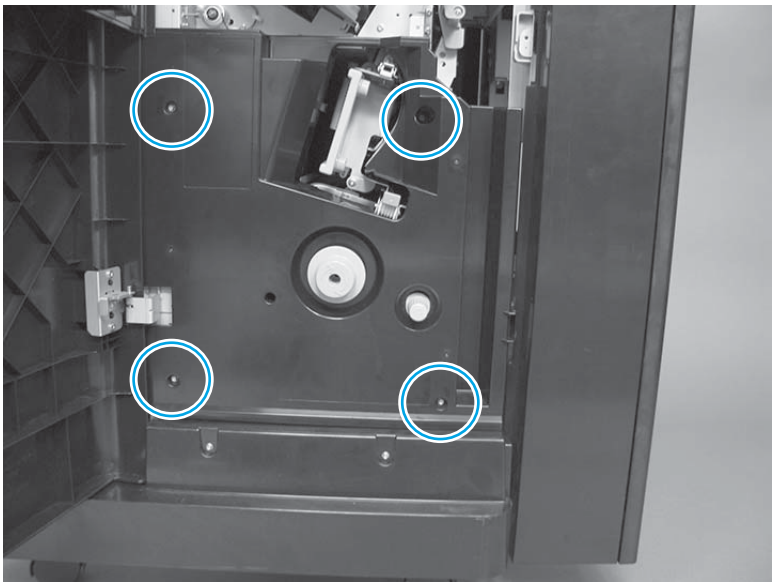
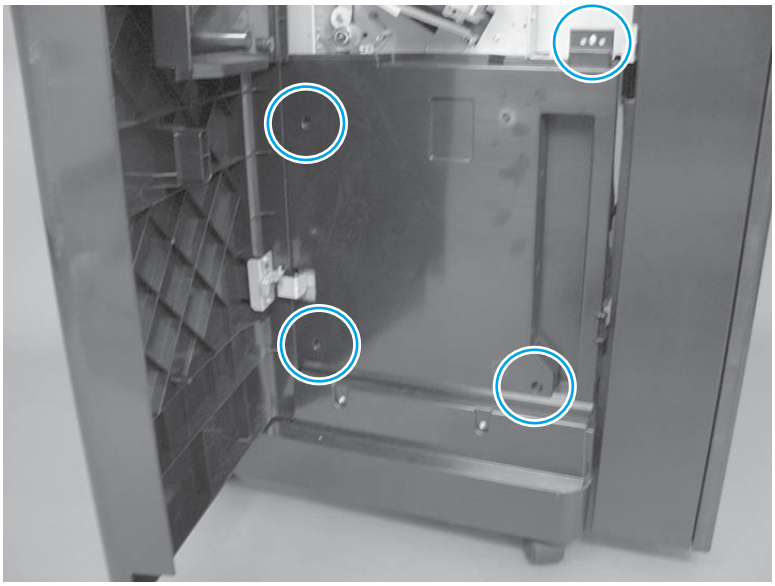
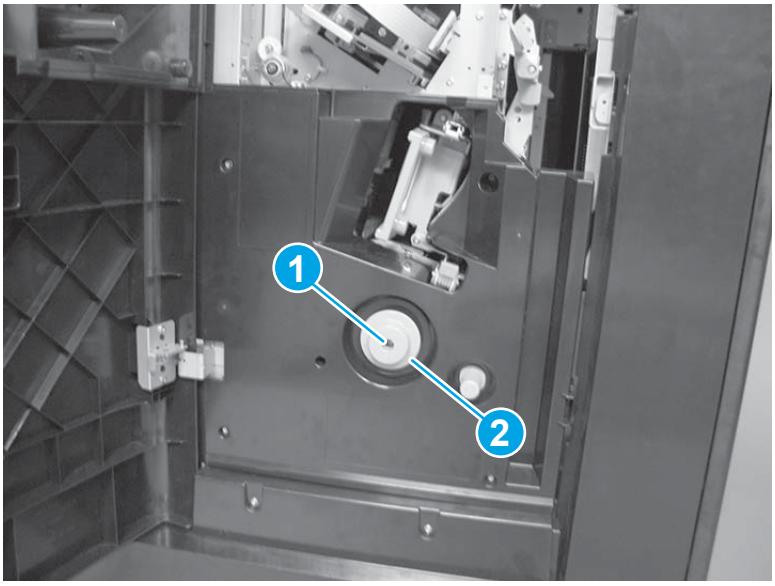
     
   - **Stapler/stacker (SS) and stapler/stacker with hole punch (SSHP)**: Remove four screws.

     Figure 1-719 Move the inner lower cover out of the way (2 of 4)

4. **Booklet maker (BM) and booklet maker with hole punch (BMHP) only**: Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the green knob (callout 2).

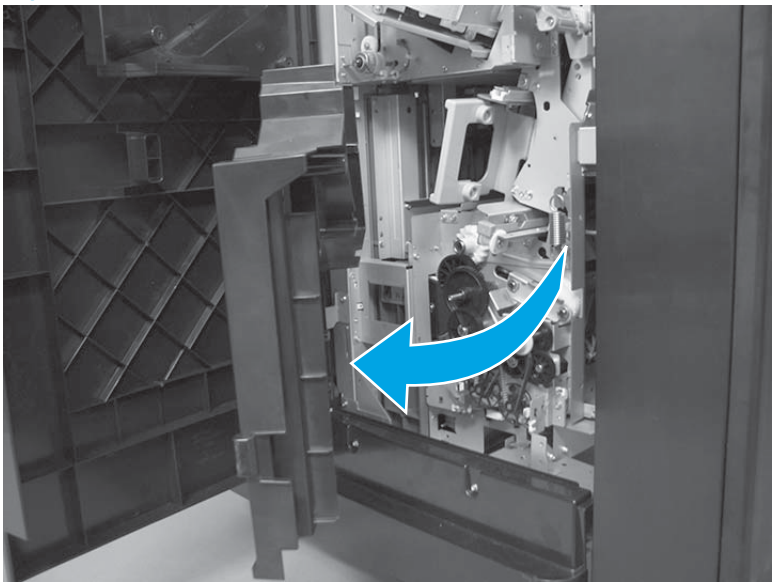
Figure 1-720 Move the inner lower cover out of the way (3 of 4)



5. Slide the cover toward the front door so that it will not interfere with the inner upper cover, and then rotate the cover towards the front door to move it out of the way.

⚠ CAUTION: To prevent damage to the cover, make sure that it does not bind on the upper front door hinge when you move it out of the way.

Figure 1-721 Move the inner lower cover out of the way (4 of 4)



Inner lower cover assembly (remove)

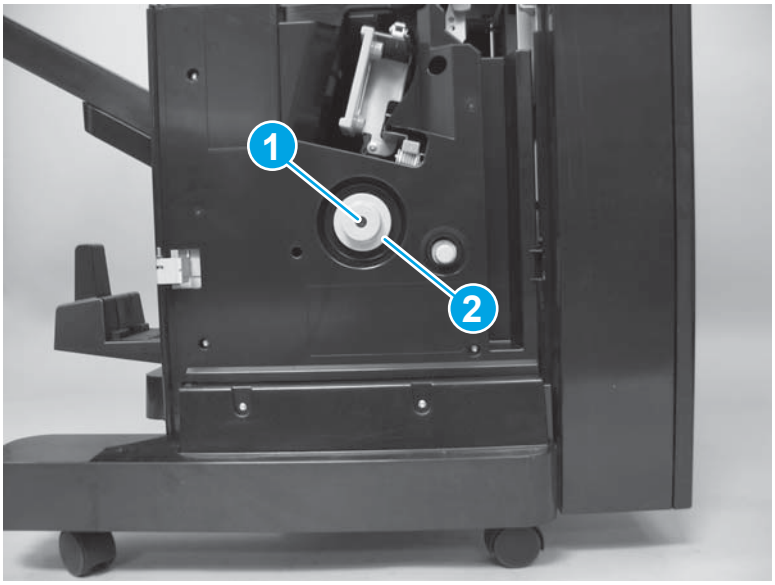
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Front door. See Front door on page 479.
- Inner upper cover assembly. See Inner upper cover assembly on page 480.

Remove the inner lower cover assembly

1. **Booklet maker (BM) and booklet maker with hole punch (BMHP) only**: Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the green knob (callout 2).

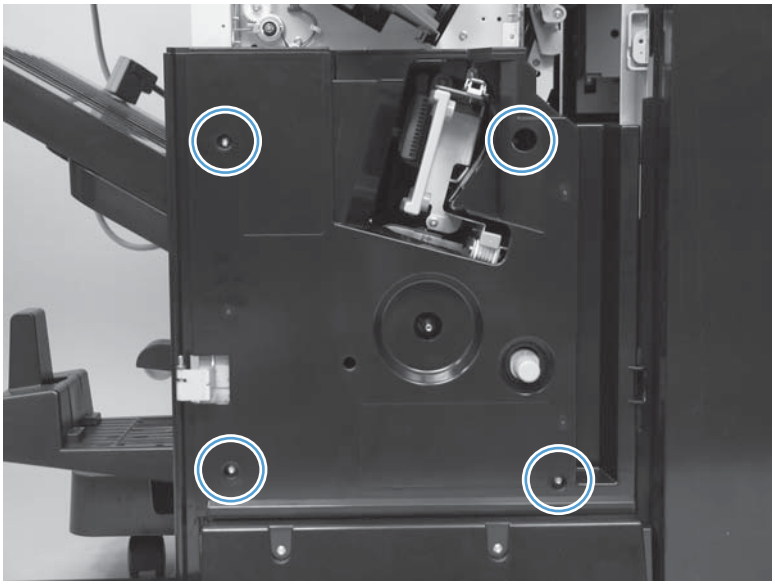
   Figure 1-722 Remove the inner lower cover assembly (1 of 4)

2. Do one of the following:

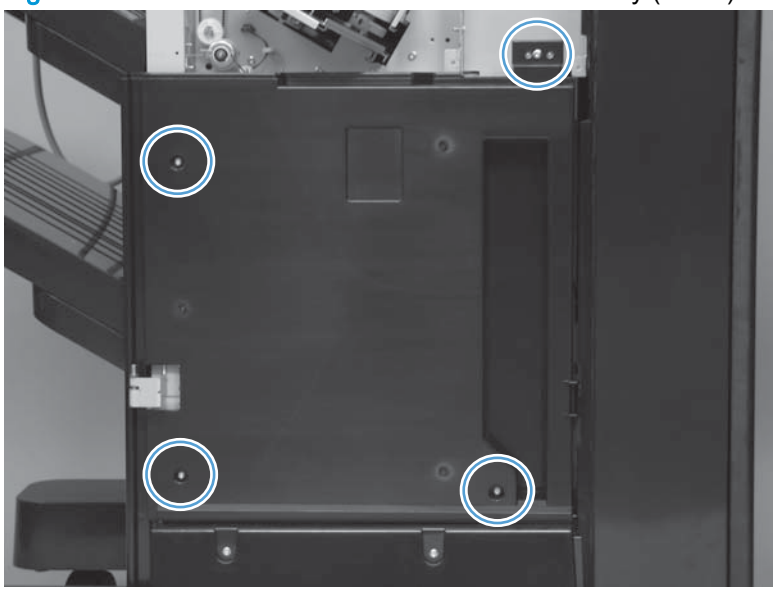
   - **Booklet maker (BM) and booklet maker with hole punch (BMHP)**: Remove four screws.

     Figure 1-723 Remove the inner lower cover assembly (2 of 4)

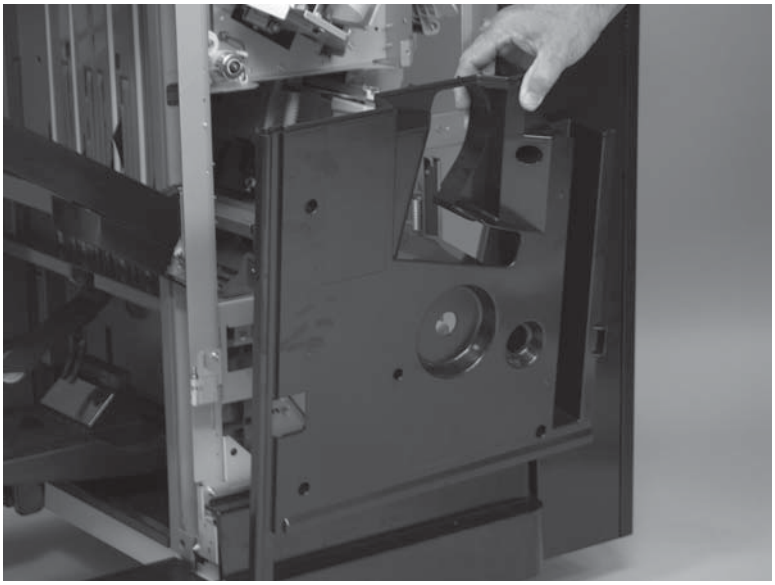
- **Stapler/stacker (SS) and stapler/stacker with hole punch (SSHP)**: Remove four screws.

Figure 1-724 Remove the inner lower cover assembly (2 of 4)



3. Remove the cover.

Figure 1-725 Remove the inner lower cover assembly (4 of 4)



Front foot cover assembly

NOTE: The cover shown in the following procedure is installed on a booklet maker with hole punch (BMHP) accessory, however the procedure is the same for all of the finishing accessories.

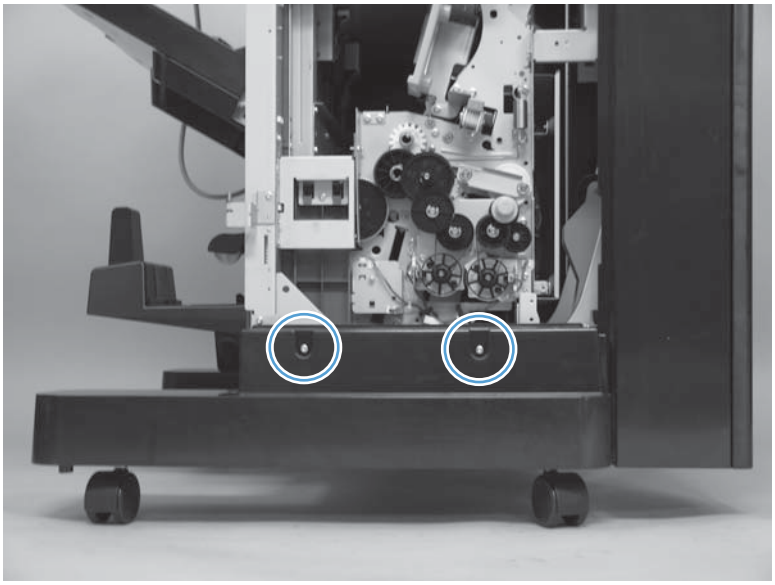
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Front door. See Front door on page 479.
- Inner upper cover assembly. See Inner upper cover assembly on page 480.
- Inner lower cover assembly. See Inner lower cover assembly on page 486.

Remove the front foot cover assembly

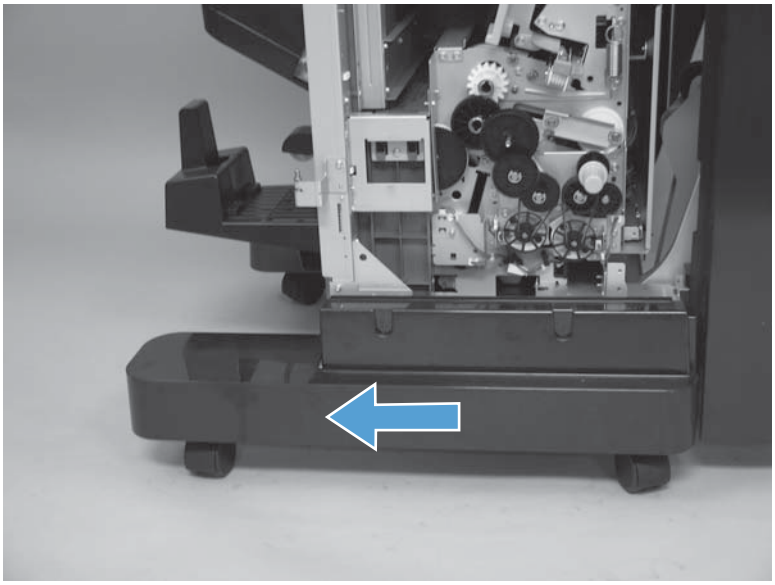
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 1-726 Remove the front foot cover assembly (1 of 2)



2. Slightly slide the cover to the left to release it, and then remove the cover.

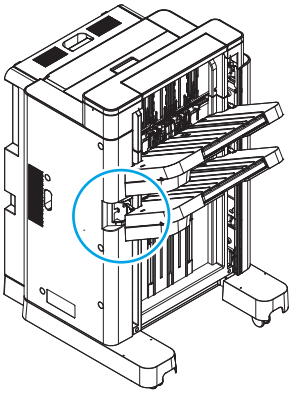
Figure 1-727 Remove the front foot cover assembly (2 of 2)



Bin cable guide cover

1. Use the figure below to locate the bin cable guide cover.

Figure 1-728 Remove the bin cable guide cover (1 of 6)



2. If the upper or lower stack bin prevents access to this cover, do the following:

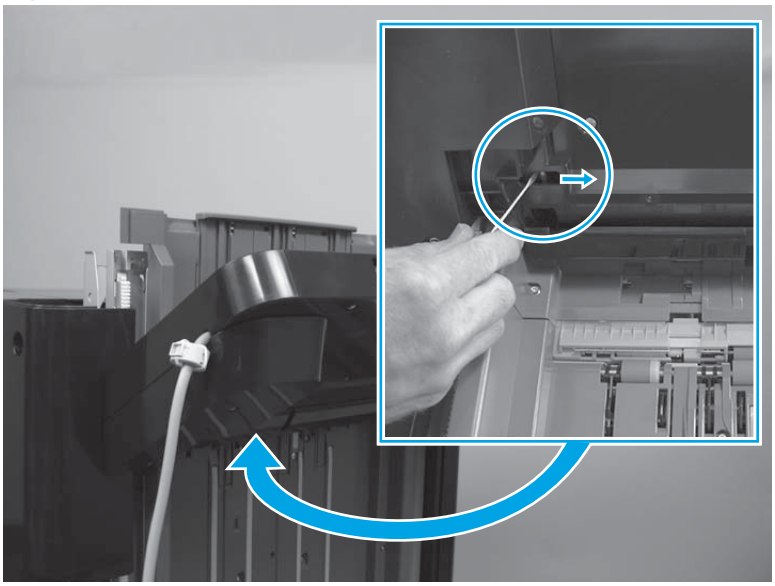
TIP: Push up on the bin to move it toward the top of the accessory. To move the bin down, use the following procedure to release the clutch.

a. Support the bin.

b. Release the bin clutch located on the underside of the bin, and then lower the bin to access the cover.

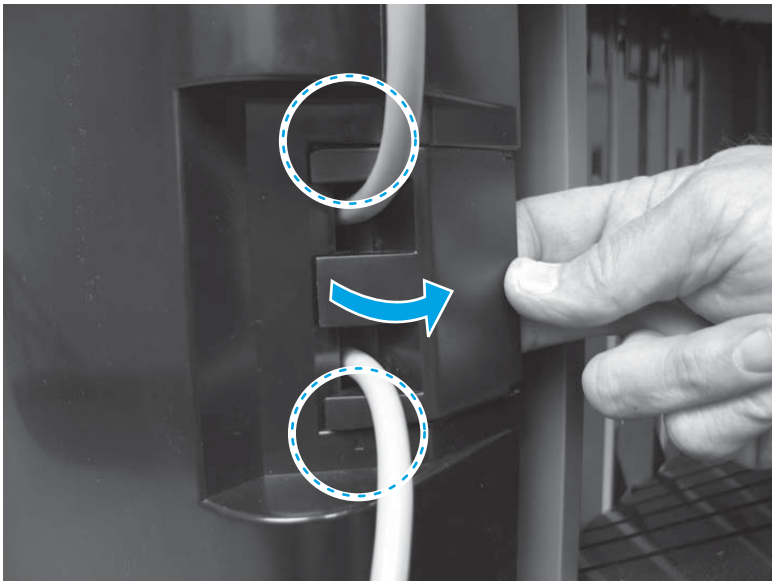
TIP: Use a small flat-blade screwdriver to slide the raised portion of the clutch toward the spring to release the clutch and lower the bin.

Figure 1-729 Remove the bin cable guide cover (2 of 6)



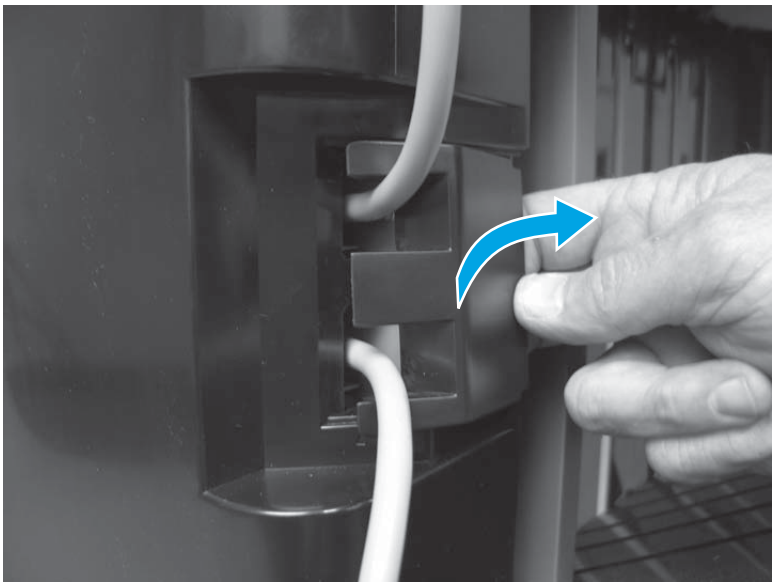
3. Use your fingers to reach in behind the cover, and then rotate the end of the cover—near the stack bin cables—away from the accessory to release two tabs.

Figure 1-730 Remove the bin cable guide cover (3 of 6)



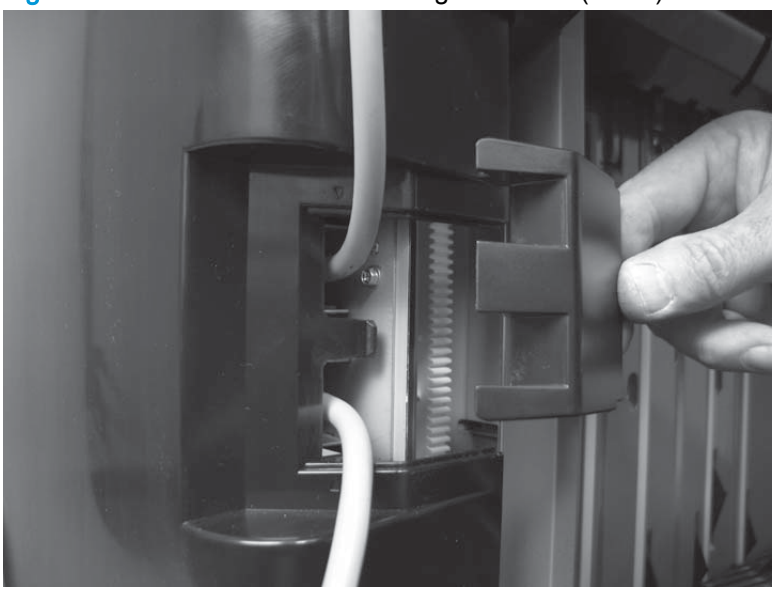
4. Slide the cover towards the stack bins to release it.

Figure 1-731 Remove the bin cable guide cover (4 of 6)



5. Remove the cover.

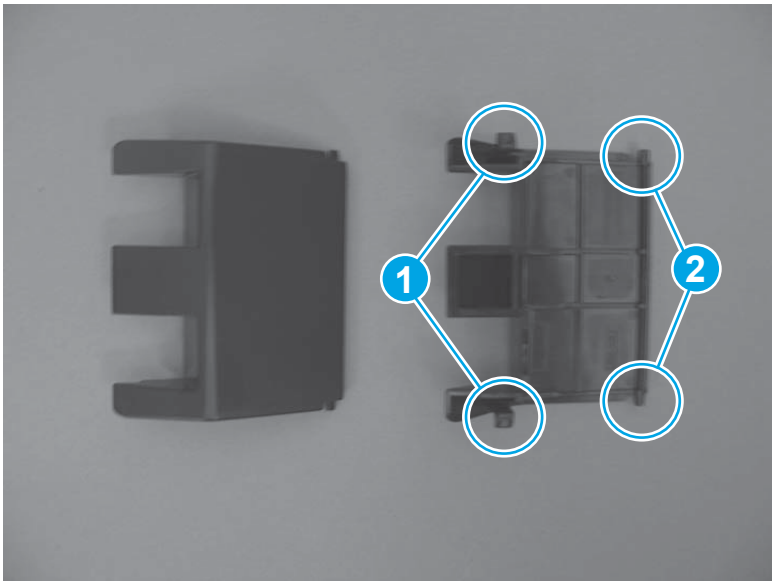
Figure 1-732 Remove the bin cable guide cover (5 of 6)



6. After the cover is removed, take note of the location of the two latching tabs (callout 1) and the two positioning tabs (callout 2).

When the bin cable guide cover is reinstalled, these tabs must be correctly positioned so that the cover is correctly installed and the bin cables will not bind on the cover when the bins move up and down.

Figure 1-733 Remove the bin cable guide cover (6 of 6)



Reinstall the bin cable guide cover

If the cover is not correctly installed, the bin cable guide cover can bind on the cover, which causes the upper and lower stack bins to not function correctly. If the bins cannot function correctly, a 66.60.32 error message appears on the control-panel display.

Make sure that the cover correctly fits flush against the rear cover when it is correctly installed—there should not be a gap between the bin cable guide cover and the rear cover.

Figure 1-734 Bin cable guide cover correctly installed

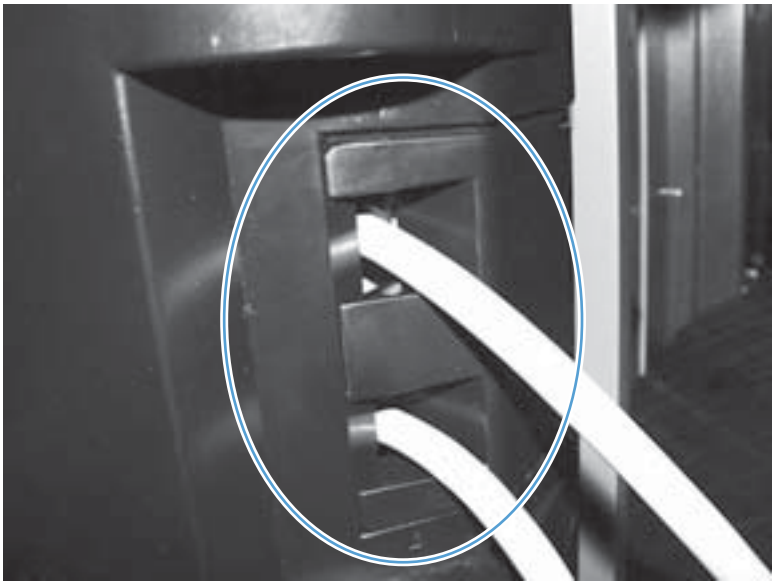
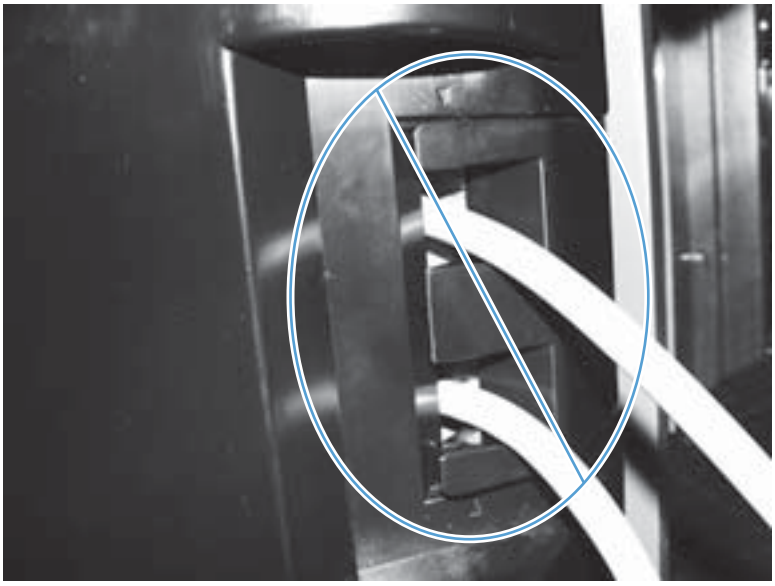


Figure 1-735 Bin cable guide cover incorrectly installed



Rear cover assembly

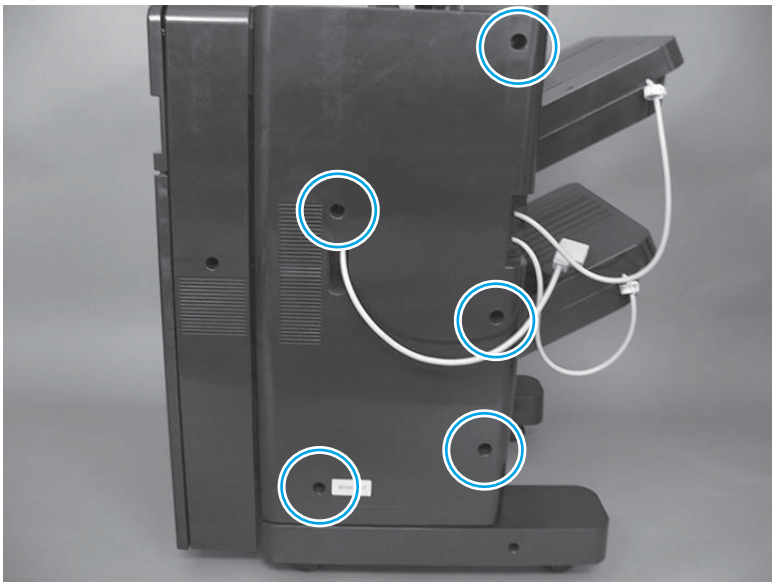
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Bin cable guide cover. See Bin cable guide cover on page 492.

Remove the rear cover assembly

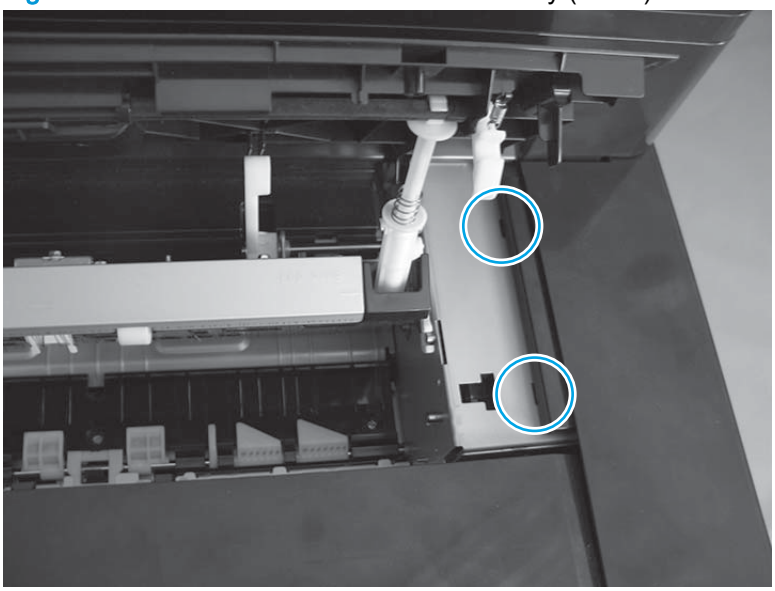
1. Remove five screws.

Figure 1-736 Remove the rear cover assembly (1 of 4)



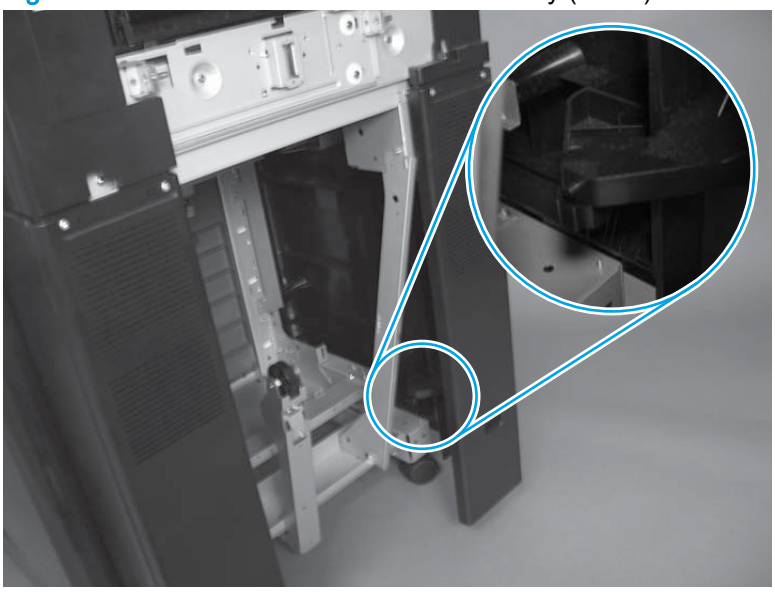
2. Open the top door assembly, and then lift up on the rear cover to release two tabs.

Figure 1-737 Remove the rear cover assembly (2 of 4)



3. As the cover is removed, you might need to reach behind the latch cover, and then release two locator pins on the back side of the cover.

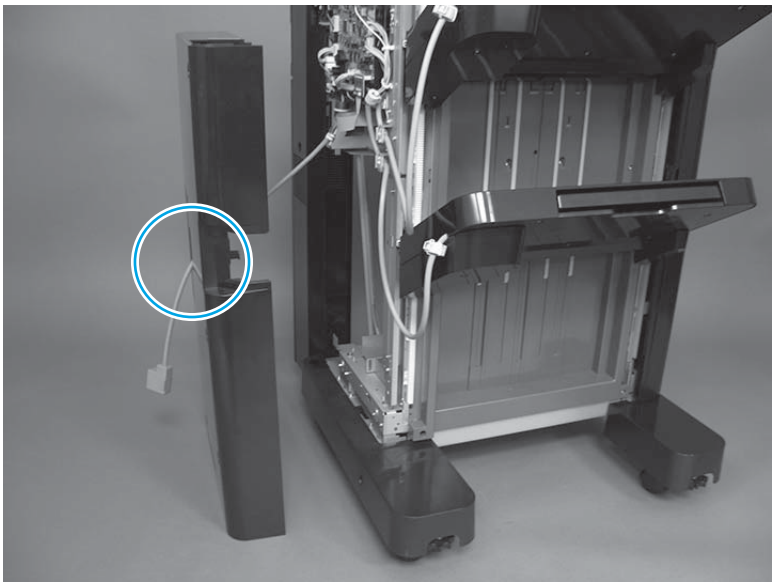
Figure 1-738 Remove the rear cover assembly (3 of 4)



4. Remove the cover.

NOTE: As the cover is removed, carefully feed the interface cable through the hole provided in the cover.

Figure 1-739 Remove the rear cover assembly (4 of 4)



Main controller PCA assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Bin cable guide cover. See Bin cable guide cover on page 492.
- Rear cover assembly. See Rear cover assembly on page 496.

Remove the main controller PCA assembly

CAUTION: ESD sensitive assembly.

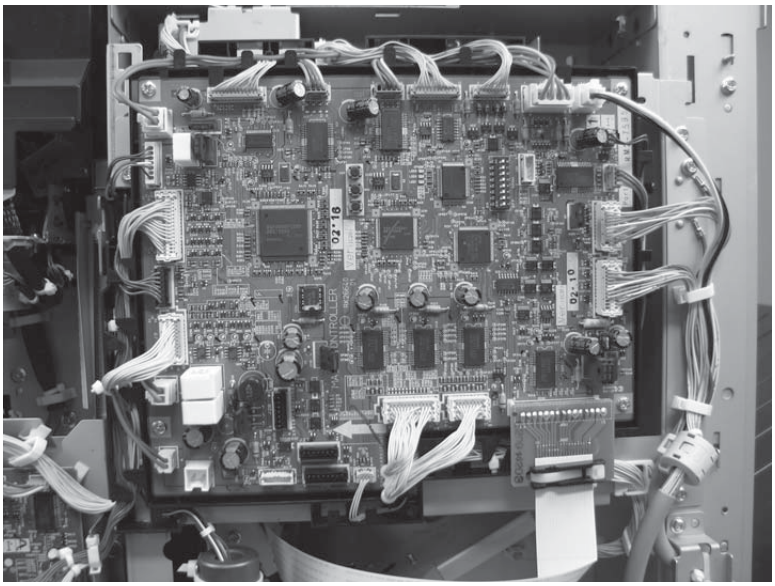
1. Disconnect 22 of the connectors, and then release the wire harnesses from the guides.

TIP: Releasing the wire harnesses from the guides first will make it easier to disconnect some of the connectors on the PCA.

NOTE: The following connectors are not used on the PCA:

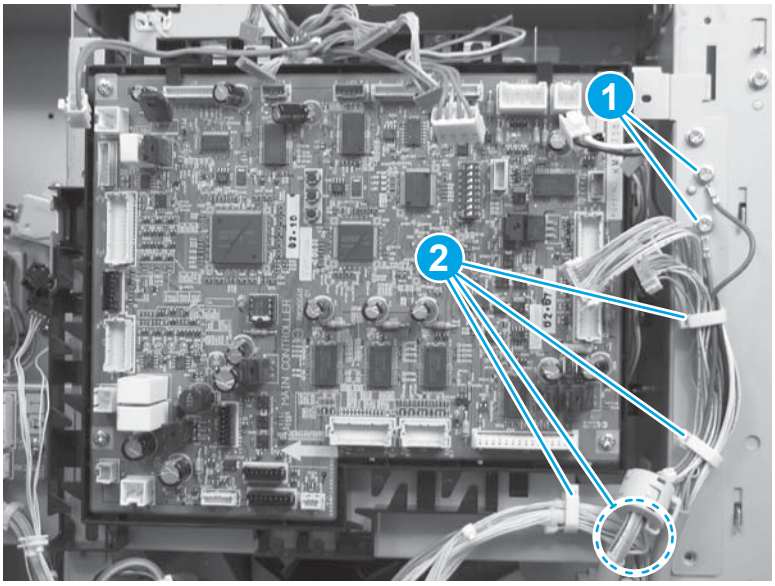
- Booklet maker: J25, J27, J28, and J32
- Booklet maker with hole punch: J21, J25, J27, and J28
- Stapler/stacker with hole punch: J12, J15, J25, J27, J28, and J30
- Stapler/stacker: J9, J16, and J32

Figure 1-740 Remove the main controller PCA assembly (1 of 6)



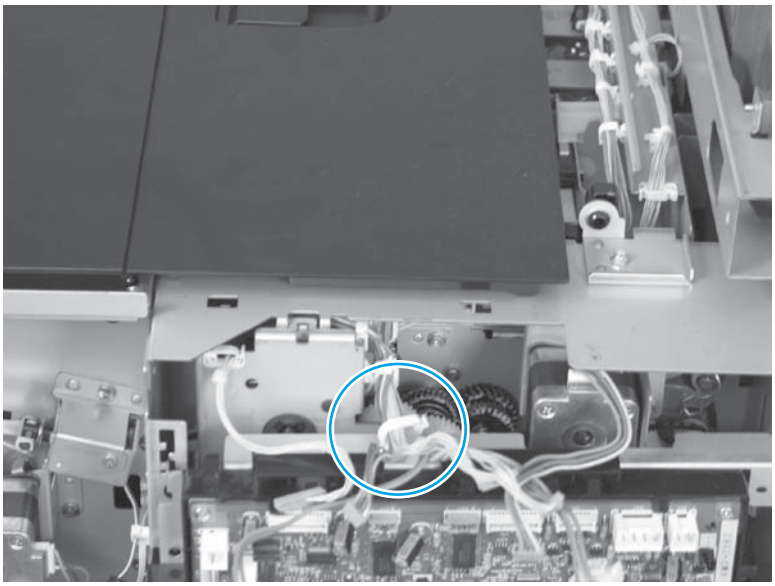
2. Remove two screws (callout 1) to release two ground wires, and then release the wire harnesses from four retainers (callout 2).

Figure 1-741 Remove the main controller PCA assembly (2 of 6)



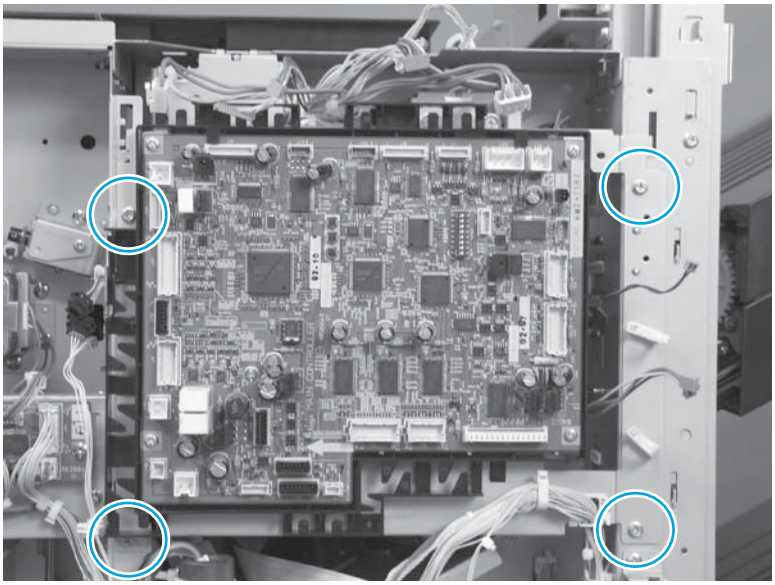
3. Release the wire harnesses from one retainer at the top of the sheet-metal PCA mounting bracket.

Figure 1-742 Remove the main controller PCA assembly (3 of 6)



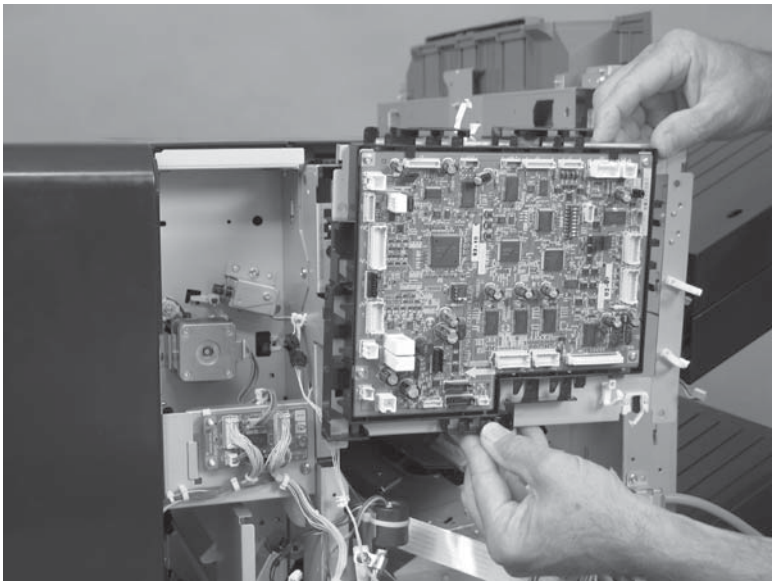
4. Remove four screws.

Figure 1-743 Remove the main controller PCA assembly (4 of 6)



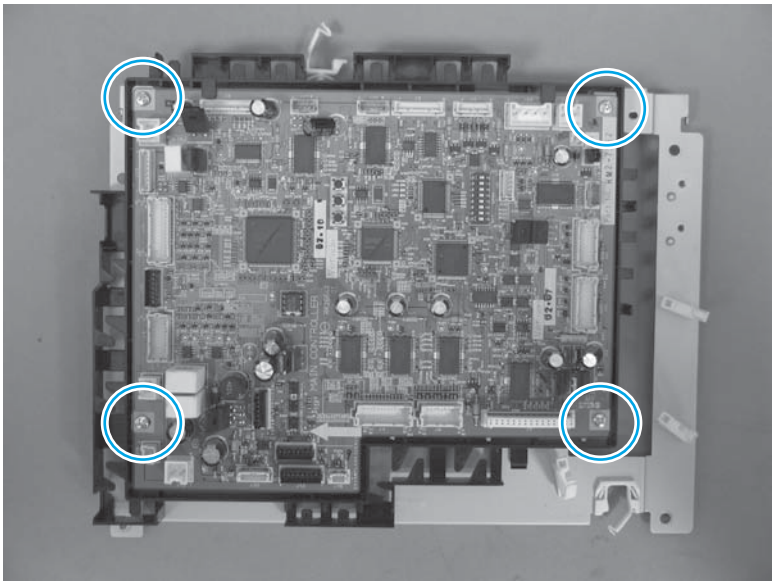
5. Lift up on the main controller PCA assembly to release it, and then remove the assembly.

Figure 1-744 Remove the main controller PCA assembly (5 of 6)



6. **Optional step**: Remove four screws, and then separate the main controller PCA from the sheet-metal mounting bracket.

Figure 1-745 Remove the main controller PCA assembly (6 of 6)

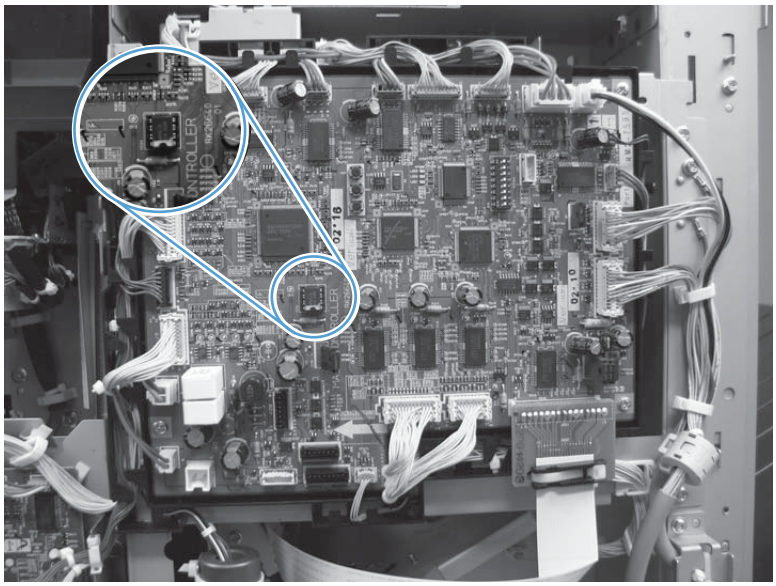


Install a replacement main controller PCA assembly

The main controller PCA assembly includes a removable memory device that contains important calibration information for the accessory. Carefully remove this device—place a small flat blade screwdriver between the memory device and the socket, and then gently pry the device out of the socket—and then install it on the replacement PCA to retain the calibration information.

⚠ **CAUTION:** When you install the memory device, the notch on the device and the notch on the socket must be aligned. If the memory device is not correctly installed, the device polarity will be reversed, which will damage the memory device.

Figure 1-746 Install a replacement main controller PCA assembly



Adjustments

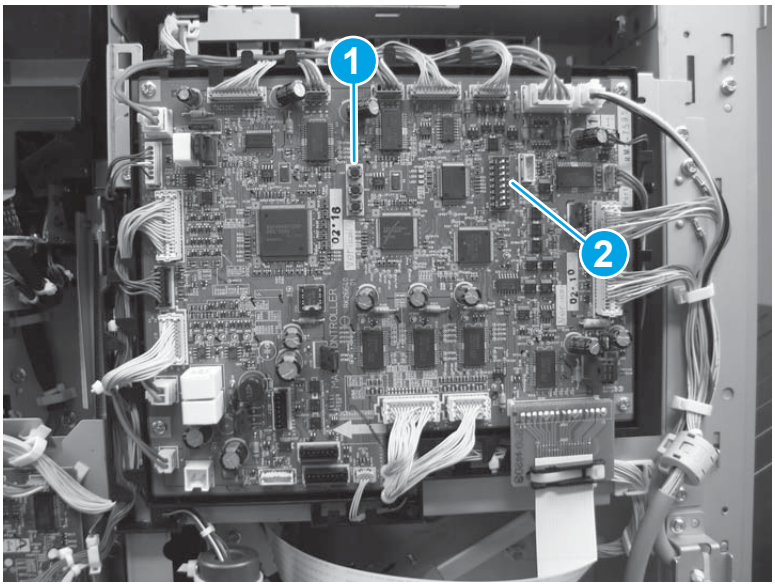
These adjustments are for the primary stapler unit for both the stapler stacker and booklet maker accessories. Test the finishing accessory functions after replacing the main controller PCA. If needed, use these procedures to make performance adjustments.

Access the main controller switches

- SW1, SW2, and SW3 (callout 1)
- DIPSW4 (callout 2)

NOTE: DIPSW4 has eight electronic switches that can be configured in the ON or OFF position. The controller PCA is marked ON and OFF to show the current switch position.

Figure 1-747 Main controller PCA switches

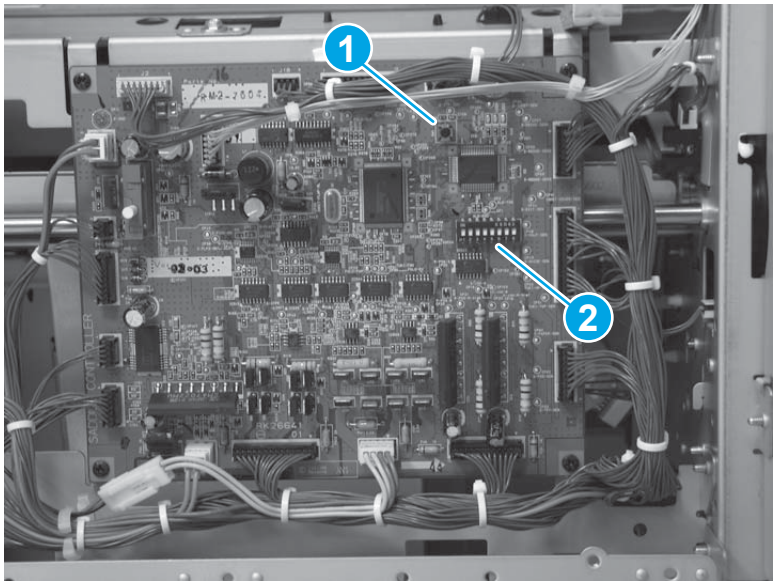


Access the saddle controller switches (BM only)

- SW1 (callout 1)
- DIPSW (callout 2)

NOTE: DIPSW has eight electronic switches that can be configure in the ON or OFF position. The controller PCA is marked ON and OFF to show the current switch position.

Figure 1-748 Booklet maker controller PCA switches

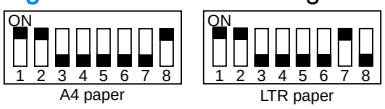


Adjust the alignment position

Perform this adjustment if the alignment position must be changed.

1. Turn the product power off, and then disconnect the interface cable from the product.
2. Access the main controller PCA, and then set DIPSW4 to one of the following:

   Figure 1-749 DIPSW4 alignment settings

3. Connect the interface cable to the product, and then turn the product power on.
4. Press SW3 on the main controller PCA. When SW3 is pressed, the swing guide opens and the alignment plate moves to the prescribed position.
5. Place ten sheets of A4 or LTR paper between the alignment plates and align them squarely against the stopper.

   NOTE: The object of this calibration is to adjust the plates so that they lightly and evenly touch the sides of the stacked paper.

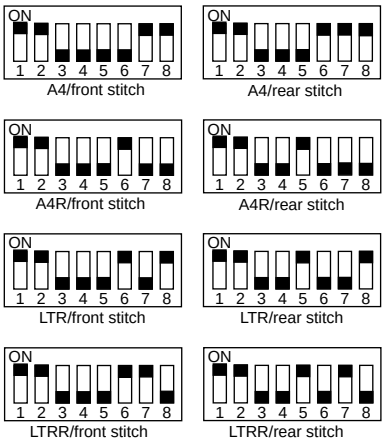
6. Press SW1 or SW2 on the main controller PCA and adjust the alignment plate against the paper. The adjustment range is -/+ 4.2 mm (0.165 in).
   - Pressing SW1 moves the alignment plate 0.42 mm (0.016 in) forward
   - Pressing SW2 moves the alignment plate 0.42 mm (0.016 in) backward
7. When the adjustment is complete, remove the paper, and then press SW3 once to write the adjustment values to the memory device on the PCA.
8. Return all of the switches on DIPSW4 to the OFF position.
9. Turn the product power off, and then install the covers.

Adjust the staple position

Adjust the stapler position if the staple position must be changed. This adjustment sets the front and rear stitches with A4/A4R when the paper used for adjustment is AB type and with LTR/LTRR when the paper is INCH type.

1. Turn the product power off, and then disconnect the interface cable from the product.
2. Access the main controller PCA, and then set DIPSW4 according to paper/stitch position used for adjustment:

   Figure 1-750 DIPSW4 staple position settings

3. Connect the interface cable to the product, and then turn the product power on.
4. Press SW3 on the main controller PCA. When SW3 is pressed, the swing guide opens and the alignment plate moves to the prescribed position.
5. Place two sheets paper between the alignment plates and align them squarely against the stopper, and then push the rear edge of the paper against the rear alignment plate.

   If the gap between the front alignment plate and front edge of the paper is 1 mm (0.039 in) or greater, adjust the plate alignment before continuing. See Adjust the alignment position on page 504.
6. Press SW3 on the main controller PCA once to staple the paper. Remove the stapled paper and verify the staple position.
7. Press SW3 on the main controller PCA once.
8. If the staple position is correct, insert a sheet of paper between the aligning plates and align it against the stopper, push the far end edge of the paper to the rear aligning plate, press SW3 once (stapling action/store adjustment value), and then proceed to step 10.
9. If the staple position is incorrect, press SW1 or SW2 on the main controller PCA to adjust the staple position.
   - Pressing SW1 moves the alignment plate 0.49 mm (0.019 in) forward
   - Pressing SW2 moves the alignment plate 0.49 mm (0.019 in) backward
10. Repeat step 4 and step 5 until the staple is in the correct position.

11. Return all of the switches on DIPSW4 to the OFF position.
12. Turn the product power off, and then install the covers.

Adjust the folding position to the stitch position (booklet maker only)

Adjust the position of the booklet fold by changing the settings of bits six through eight of DIPSW on the booklet maker controller PCA to match the booklet stapling (stitching) position.

If the booklet maker controller PCA has been replaced, be sure to set the new DIPSW so that the settings will be the same as those on the old DIPSW.

Perform this adjustment if you must change the folding position. Set the DIPSW on the booklet maker controller PCA to match the stitching position (adjusting the distance over which the paper positioning plate is moved to the folding position from the stitching position).

1. Turn the product power off, and then disconnect the interface cable from the product.
2. Access the booklet maker controller PCA, and then set DIPSW. To establish a baseline for measurements, set bits 1 through 8 of DIPSW on the booklet maker controller PCA as follows:

NOTE: Do not change bit 5.

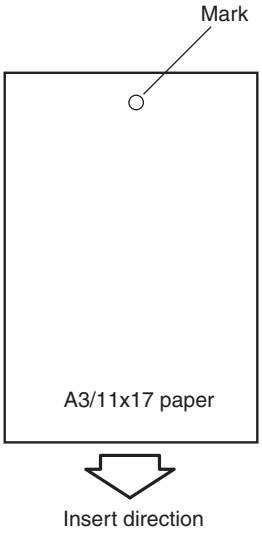
Figure 1-751 DIPSW folding position settings

Do not change bit 5.

3. Do the following:
   - Open the front door and the paper-jam-access guide plate on the saddle guide assembly.
   - At the rear of the accessory, tape the actuator of the inlet-cover sensor (saddle guide assembly PI9) and inlet door switch (saddle guide assembly SW1) so that both sensor and switch remain activated. This simulates the saddle guide in the closed position throughout the adjustment procedure.

4. Using two sheets of A3 or 11 x 17 paper, mark the top of the paper as shown below. This is a reference mark to show a specific end of the paper. The mark just needs to be somewhere at one end of the paper as shown below.

Figure 1-752 Mark the paper

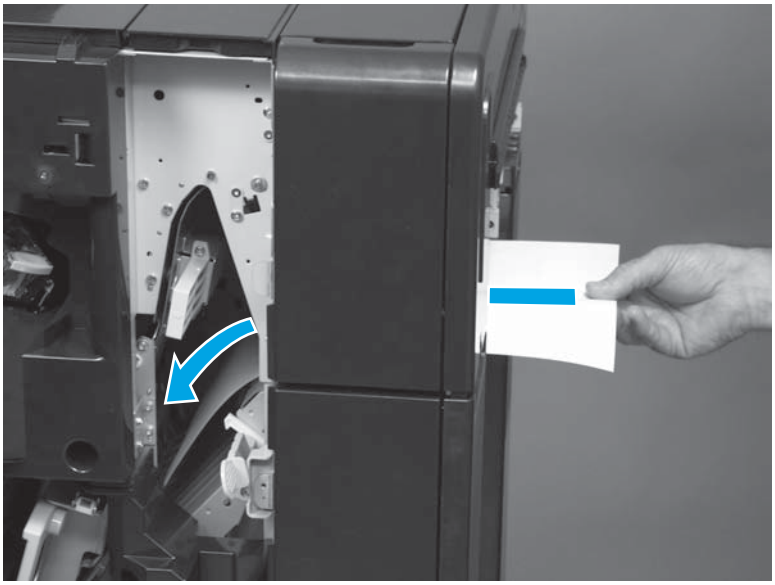


5. Close the saddle guide assembly and the front door of the accessory. Reconnect the interface cable from the booklet maker to the product. Turn the product power on, and wait until the product is in a Ready state.

6. Press SW1 on the booklet maker controller PCA to activate the feed motor (M1). You will need to press and hold down SW1 for three seconds or longer if 11 x 17 paper is used.

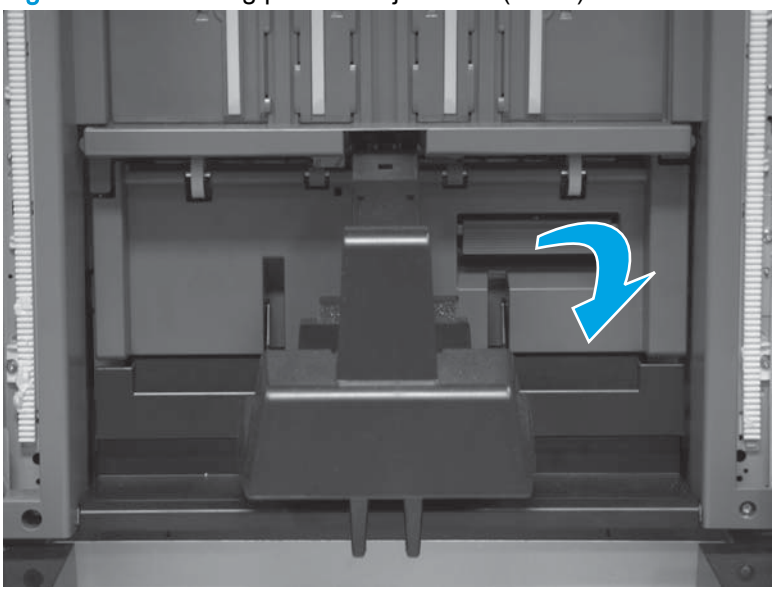
7. Open the front door of the accessory, and then open saddle guide assembly (callout 1). Insert the two sheets of marked paper into the paper path (callout 2) leading to the folding unit and past the booklet stapler unit (callout 3). Push them in by hand until the front edge of the sheets push against the paper positioning plate.

Figure 1-753 Folding position adjustment (1 of 3)



8. Opening the booklet jam access door.

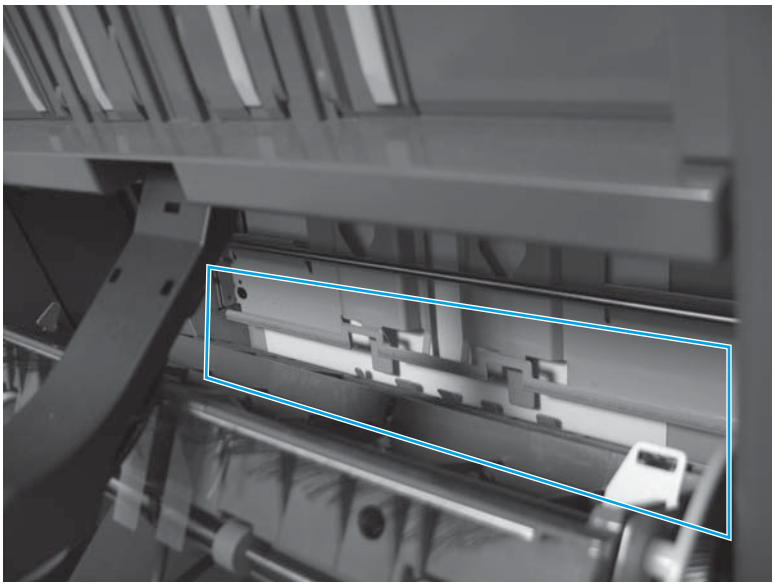
Figure 1-754 Folding position adjustment (2 of 3)



9. Verify that the paper is properly located against the paper positioning plate (callout 1).

NOTE: It is important for the bottom of the sheets of paper to be squarely resting on the paper positioning plate for the adjustment to be accurate. Check that the paper is even along the four tabs on the plate.

Figure 1-755 Folding position adjustment (3 of 3)



10. Close the saddle guide assembly.

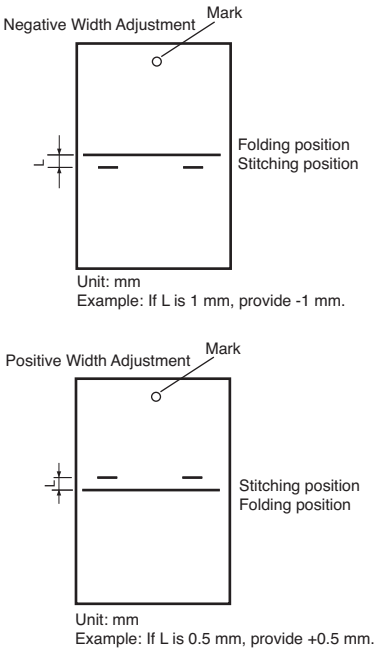
11. Press SW1 on the booklet maker controller PCA. The saddle stitcher unit will "stitch" the sheets, and fold and deliver the stack automatically to the booklet output bin.

12. Measure the distance (L) between the stitching position and the folding position. Then perform a positive-width adjustment or a negative-width adjustment to suit the relationship between the stitching position and the folding position.

NOTE: If the L adjustment is significantly larger than what the adjustment allows, the most common cause is that the paper was not fully inserted and resting squarely on the paper position plate.

- If the stitching position is above the folding position, perform a positive-width adjustment.
- If the stitching position is below the folding position, perform a negative-width adjustment.

Figure 1-756 Positive and negative width adjustment



13. Refer to the following tables, and then change the settings of bits 6 through 8 on DIPSW.

Table 1-28 DIPSW settings

DIPSW Bit settings			Setting 0.5 mm (0.019 in) units
Bit 6	Bit 7	Bit 8	
OFF	ON	ON	+3
OFF	ON	OFF	+2
OFF	OFF	ON	+1
OFF	OFF	OFF	0
ON	OFF	ON	-1
ON	ON	OFF	-2
ON	ON	ON	-3
ON	OFF	OFF	

Table 1-29 Do not change these DIPSW settings

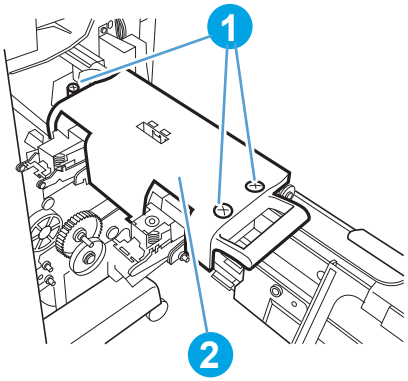
DIPSW Bit settings		
Bit 6	Bit 7	Bit 8
ON	OFF	OFF

14. When adjustment has been completed and the stitch staples are within the fold line, set DIPSW bits 1 to 4 (only) to OFF.
15. Remove the tape from the actuator arm of switch SW1 and PI9 on the rear frame of the accessory.

Adjust the stitcher unit

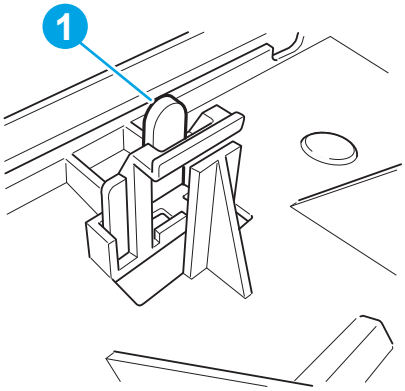
1. Open the front cover.
2. Pull out the stitcher mount unit to the front. Pull the stitcher towards you and then pull up.
3. Remove three screws (callout 1) and then remove the stitcher cover (callout 2).

Figure 1-757 Adjust the stitcher (1 of 6)



4. Remove the stitcher positioning tool (callout 1) from the back of the cover.

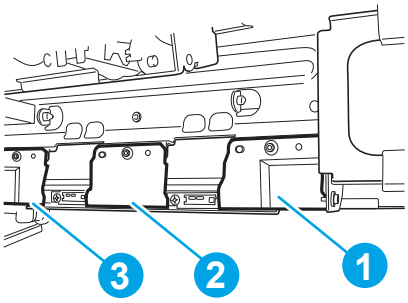
Figure 1-758 Adjust the stitcher (2 of 6)



5. To adjust the front stitcher, remove the front guide plate (callout 1) and center guide plate (callout 2). To adjust the rear stitcher, remove the center guide plate (callout 2) and the rear guide plate (callout 3).

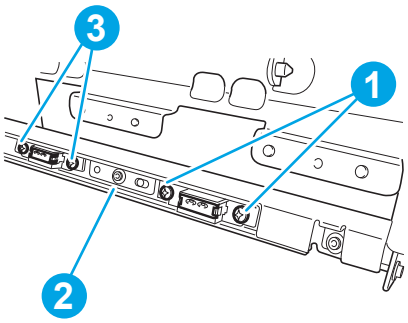
TIP: Remove one screw from each plate to remove the plates.

Figure 1-759 Adjust the stitcher (3 of 6)



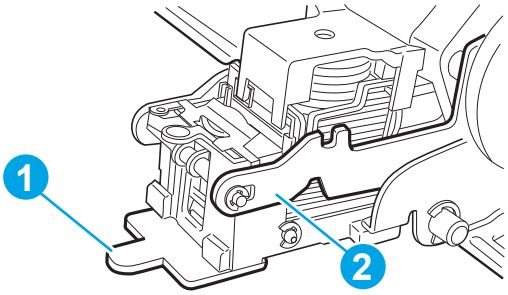
6. To adjust the front stitcher, loosen the two screws (callout 1) on the stitcher mount (callout 2). To adjust the rear stitcher, loosen the two screws (callout 3) on the stitcher mount.

Figure 1-760 Adjust the stitcher (4 of 6)



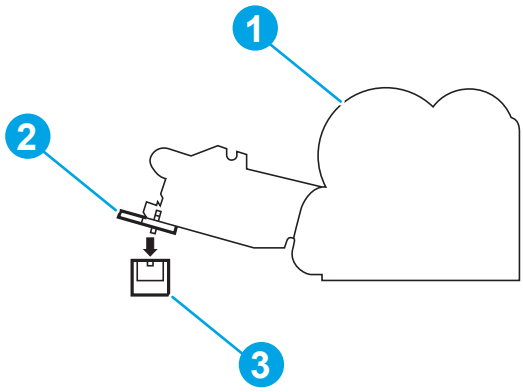
7. Insert the tool (callout 1) into the staple slot of the stitcher (callout 2).

Figure 1-761 Adjust the stitcher (5 of 6)



8. Tilt the stitcher, and turn the stitcher gear (callout 1) to match the recess of the tool (callout 2) and the mount (callout 3) and then tighten the screws on the stitcher mount.

Figure 1-762 Adjust the stitcher (6 of 6)



Entrance upper guide assembly

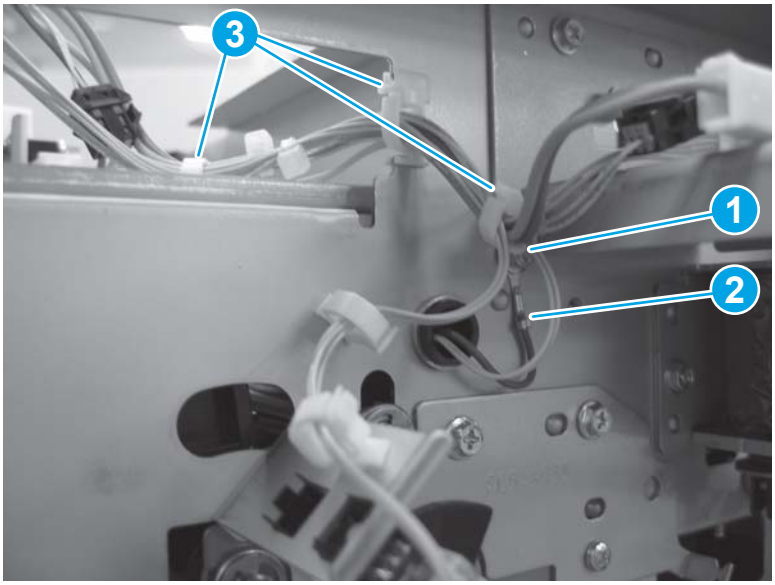
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Open/closed stepped cover assembly. See Open/closed stepped cover assembly on page 471.
- Upper stepped cover assembly. See Upper stepped cover assembly on page 472.
- Lower stepped cover assembly. See Lower stepped cover assembly on page 474.
- Top door assembly. See Top door assembly on page 478.
- Front door. See Front door on page 479.
- Inner upper cover assembly. See Inner upper cover assembly on page 480.

Remove the entrance upper guide assembly

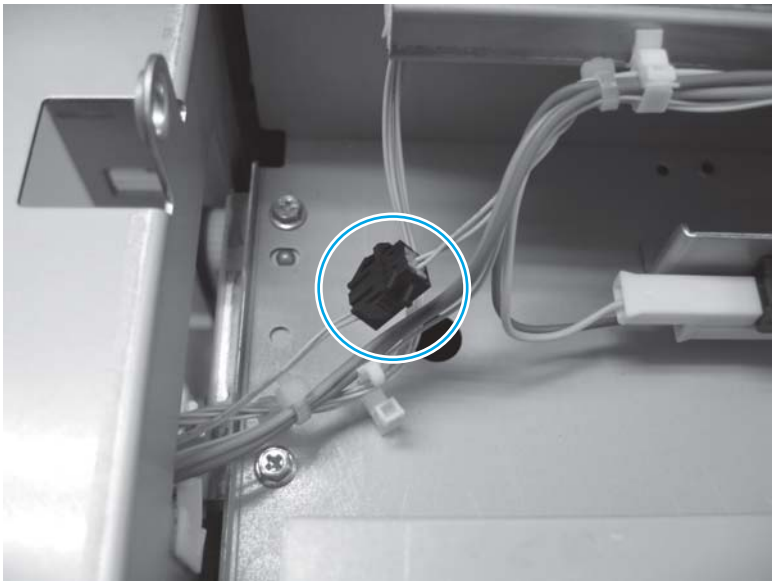
1. On the upper front chassis, remove one screw (callout 1) to release the ground wire (callout 2), and then release the wire harness from three retainers (callout 3).

Figure 1-763 Remove the entrance upper guide assembly (1 of 3)



2. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 1-764 Remove the entrance upper guide assembly (2 of 3)



3. Do the following:

   a. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the door lock assembly (callout 2).

   b. Remove one screw (callout 3) to release the remove the ground wire (callout 4).

   TIP: Use a small Phillips-head screwdriver to remove this screw.

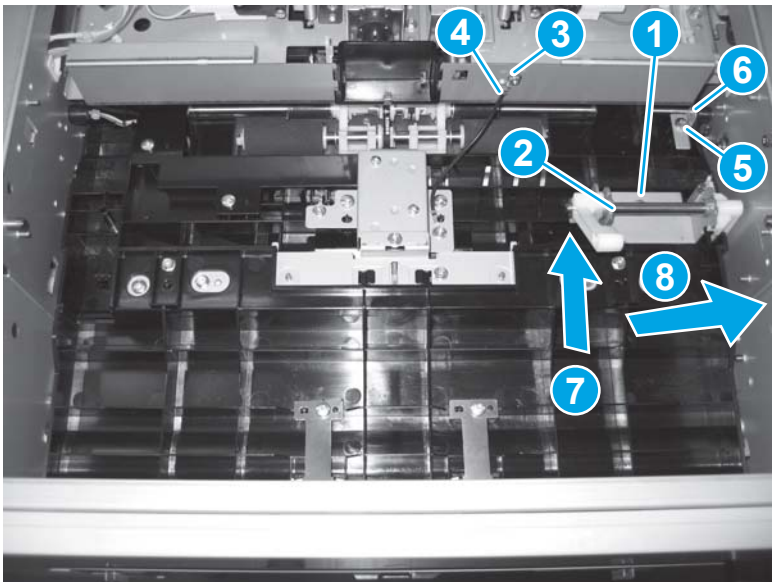
   c. Remove one screw (callout 5), and then remove the hinge pin (callout 6).

   d. Lift the assembly up (callout 7), and then slide it to the right (carefully remove the wire harness through the access hole in the chassis) to remove it (callout 8).

   NOTE: The figure below shows the entrance guide assembly in the BM accessory. The assembly in the SSHP accessory is considerably smaller (about one half the size shown), but the procedure is the same.

Reinstallation tip Carefully guide the wire harness through the access hole in the chassis when you reinsert the entrance assembly.

Figure 1-765 Remove the entrance upper guide assembly (3 of 3)



Rear foot cover assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Latch lower covers (front and rear). See Latch lower covers (front and rear) on page 468.

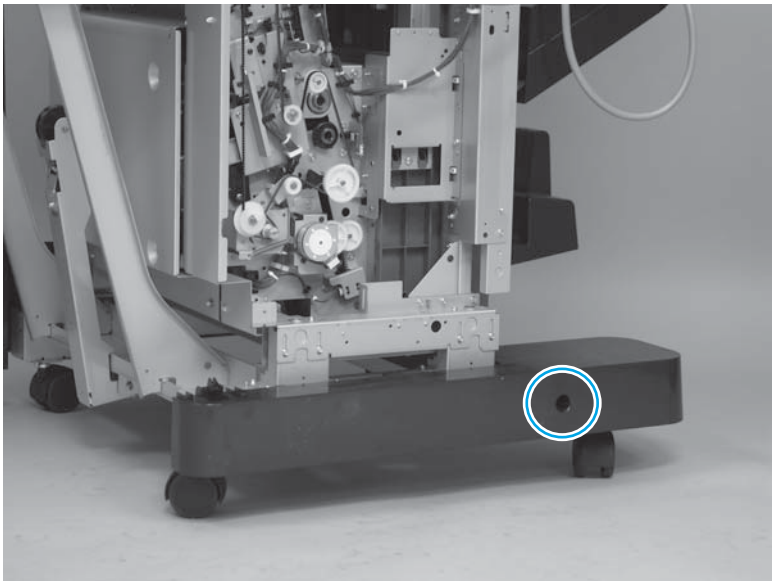
NOTE: Only the rear latch lower cover needs to be removed.

- Latch assembly assembly. See Latch assembly on page 470.
- Bin cable guide cover. See Bin cable guide cover on page 492.
- Rear cover assembly. See Rear cover assembly on page 496.
- For all models with a hole punch assembly installed:
  - Punch lower front cover assembly. See Punch lower front cover assembly on page 684.
  - Punch rear cover assembly. See Punch rear cover assembly on page 686.

Remove the rear foot cover assembly

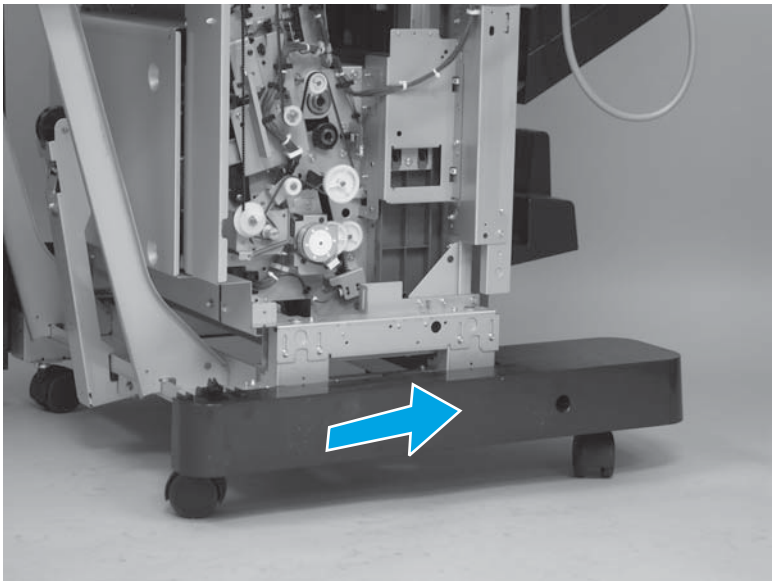
1. Remove one screw.

Figure 1-766 Remove the rear foot cover assembly (1 of 2)



2. Slightly slide the cover to the right to release it, and then remove the cover.

Figure 1-767 Remove the rear foot cover assembly (2 of 2)



Stack wall upper assembly and upper wall guide assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Open/closed stepped cover. See Open/closed stepped cover assembly on page 471.
- Upper stepped cover. See Upper stepped cover assembly on page 472.
- Lower stepped cover. See Lower stepped cover assembly on page 474.

Remove the stack wall upper assembly and upper wall guide assembly

1. If the upper stack bin is in the raised position do the following:

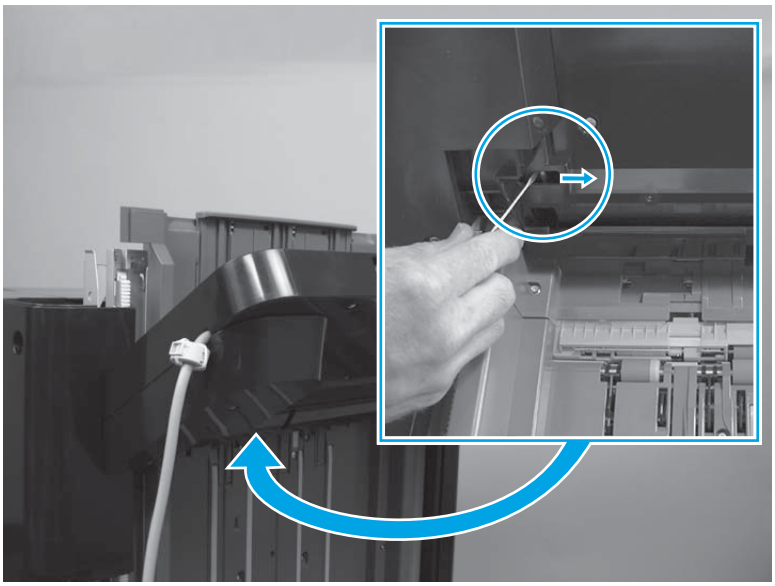
   a. Support the bin.

   b. Release the bin clutch located on the underside of the bin, and then lower the bin to access the cover.

   TIP: Use a small flat-blade screwdriver to slide the raised portion of the clutch toward the spring to release the clutch and lower the bin.

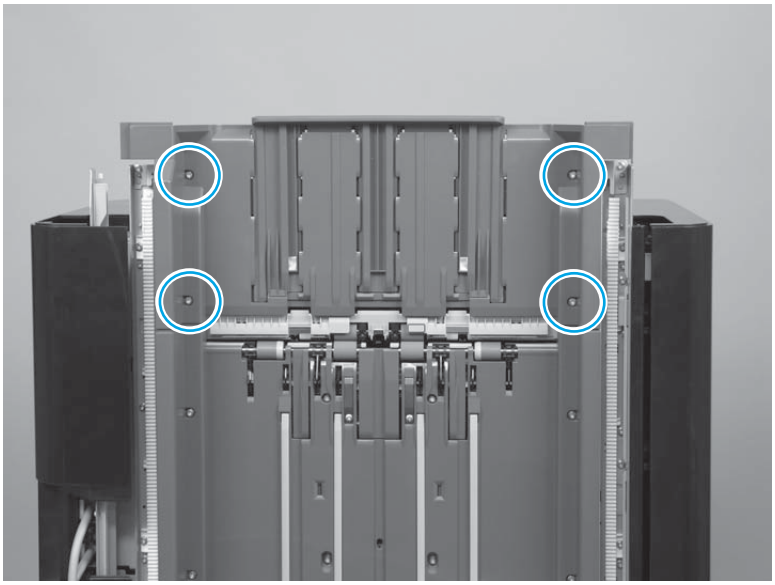
   c. Lower the bin to access the stack wall upper cover.

Figure 1-768 Remove the stack wall upper assembly and upper wall guide assembly (1 of 5)



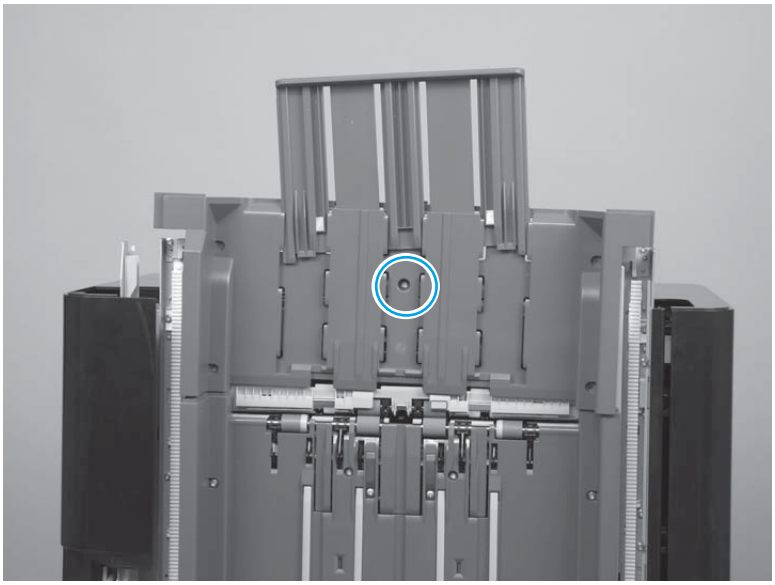
2. Remove four screws.

Figure 1-769 Remove the stack wall upper assembly and upper wall guide assembly (2 of 5)



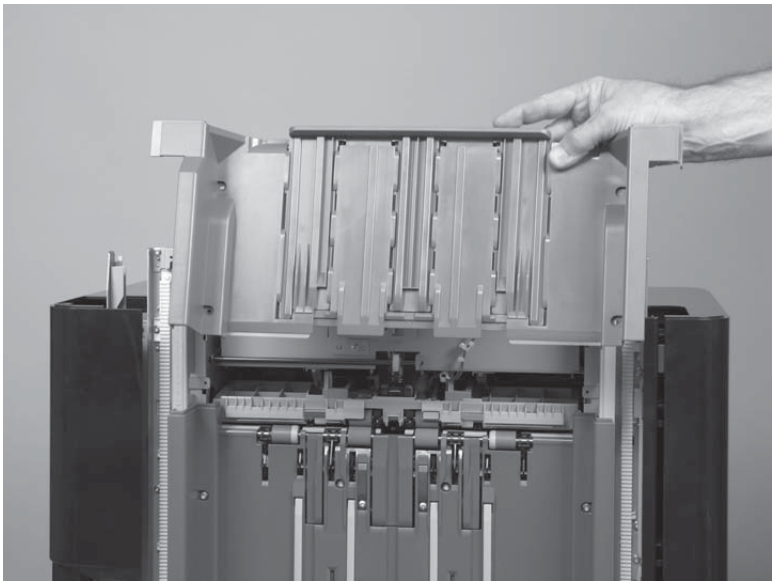
3. Raise the upper wall guide, and then remove one screw.

Figure 1-770 Remove the stack wall upper assembly and upper wall guide assembly (3 of 5)



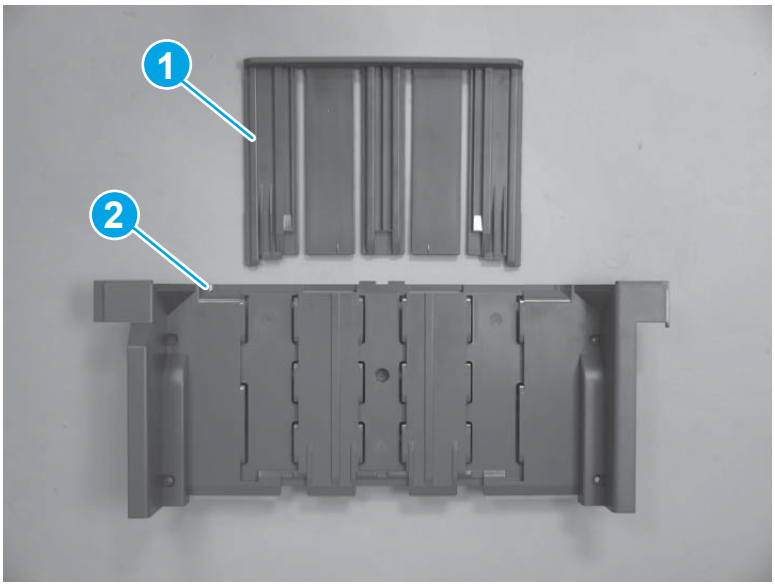
4. Remove the cover.

Figure 1-771 Remove the stack wall upper assembly and upper wall guide assembly (4 of 5)



5. If necessary, separate the upper guide wall (callout 1) from the stack wall upper assembly (callout 2).

Figure 1-772 Remove the stack wall upper assembly and upper wall guide assembly (5 of 5)



Upper cross member assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

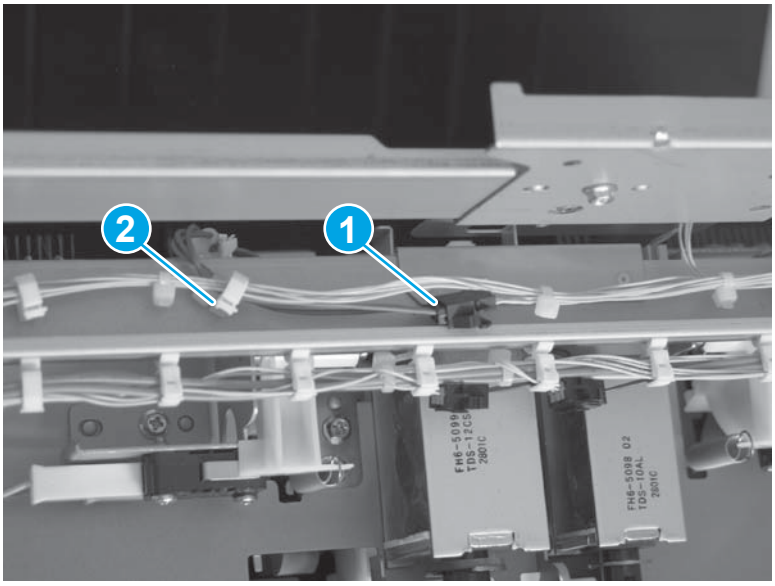
- Latch lower covers (front and rear). See Latch lower covers (front and rear) on page 468.
- Open/closed stepped cover. See Open/closed stepped cover assembly on page 471.
- Upper stepped cover. See Upper stepped cover assembly on page 472.
- Lower stepped cover. See Lower stepped cover assembly on page 474.
- Top door assembly. See Top door assembly on page 478.
- Front door. See Front door on page 479.
- Inner upper cover. See Inner upper cover assembly on page 480.
- Bin cable guide cover. See Bin cable guide cover on page 492.
- Rear cover. See Rear cover assembly on page 496.
- Stack wall upper cover. See Stack wall upper assembly and upper wall guide assembly on page 518.

Remove the upper cross member assembly

1. At the top of the accessory, disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then release the wire harness from one retainer (callout 2).

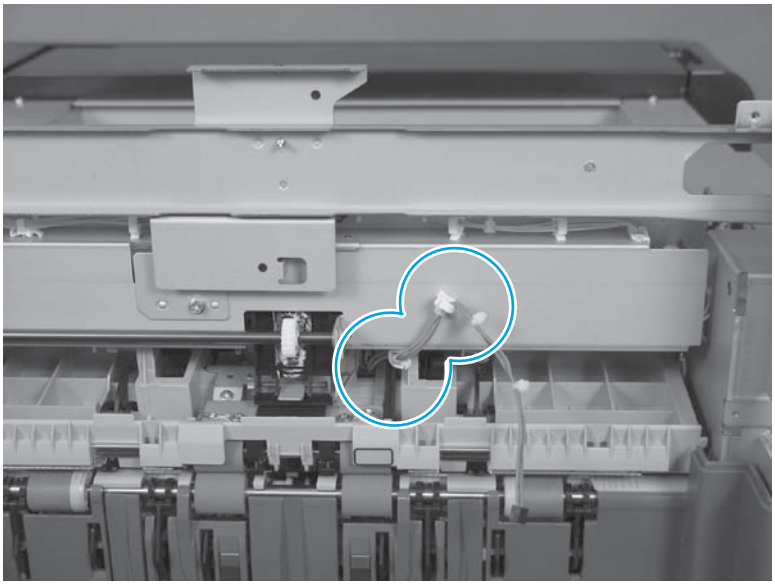
TIP: The connector is located near the two solenoids mounted at the middle of the cross member assembly.

Figure 1-773 Remove the upper cross member assembly (1 of 13)



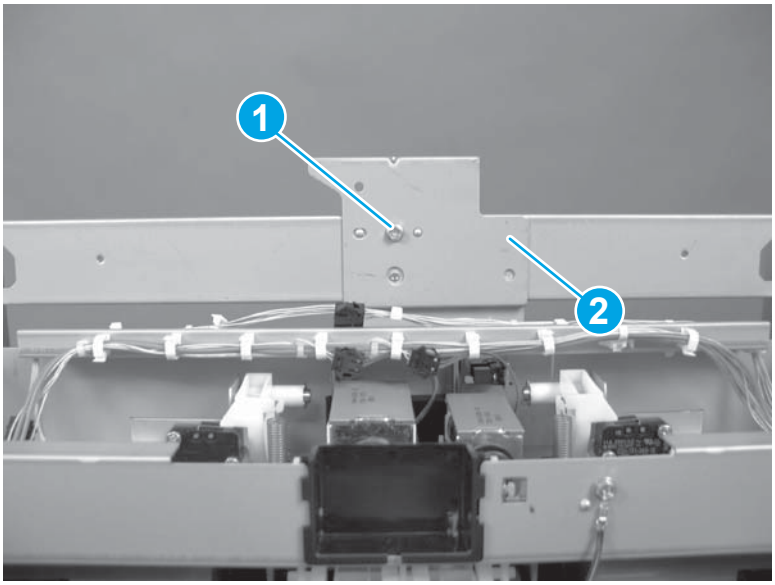
2. Release the wire harness from two retainers, and move it out of the way.

Figure 1-774 Remove the upper cross member assembly (2 of 13)



3. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the sheet-metal bracket (callout 2).

Figure 1-775 Remove the upper cross member assembly (3 of 13)

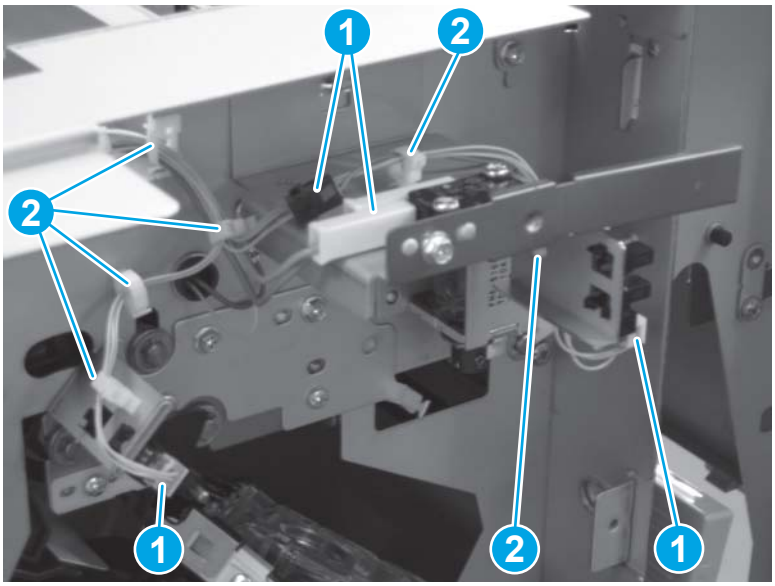


4. At the front of the accessory, disconnect four connectors (callout 1), and then remove the wire from the six wire retainers (callout 2).

WARNING! Make sure that the accessory interface cable is disconnected from the product. Line voltage exists at the switch when the accessory interface cable is connected to the product —even if the product is power is turned off.

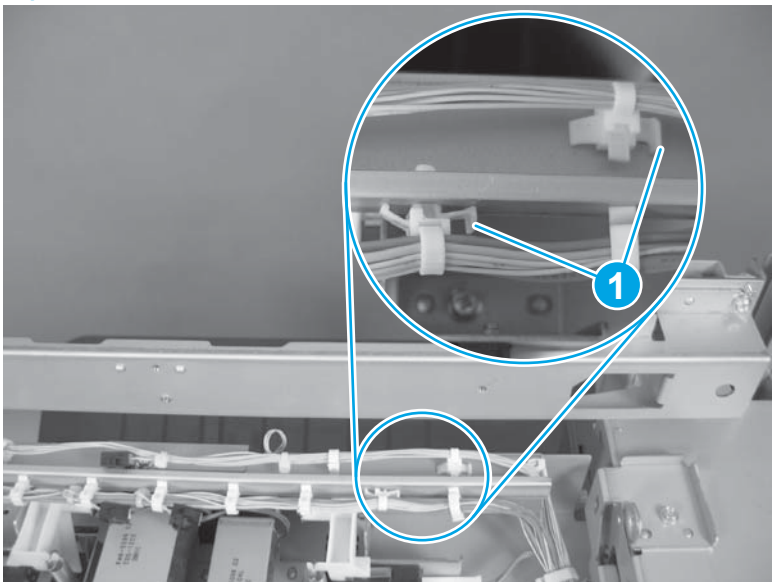
TIP: Use a small flat-blade screwdriver to loosen, and then remove the large white-plastic connector on the front door detection switch.

Figure 1-776 Remove the upper cross member assembly (4 of 13)



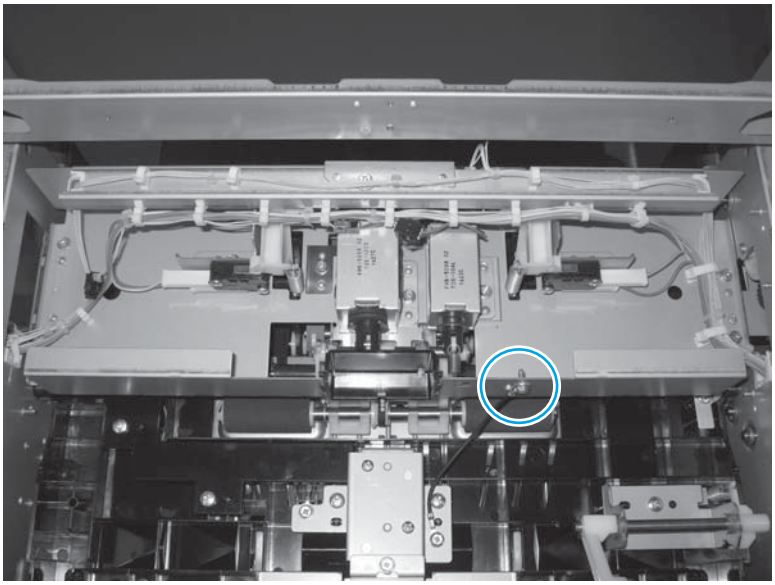
5. Release two tabs (callout 1), and then remove two wire tie retainers.

Figure 1-777 Remove the upper cross member assembly (5 of 13)



6. Remove one screw to release the ground wire.

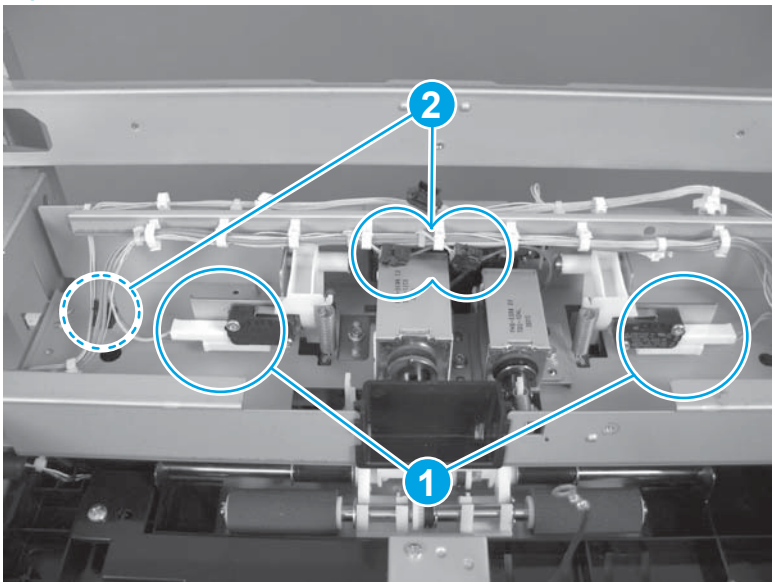
Figure 1-778 Remove the upper cross member assembly (6 of 13)



7. Release two connectors (callout 1) and three inline connectors (callout 2).

TIP: Use a small flat-blade screwdriver to loosen, and then remove the two large white-plastic connectors (callout 1).

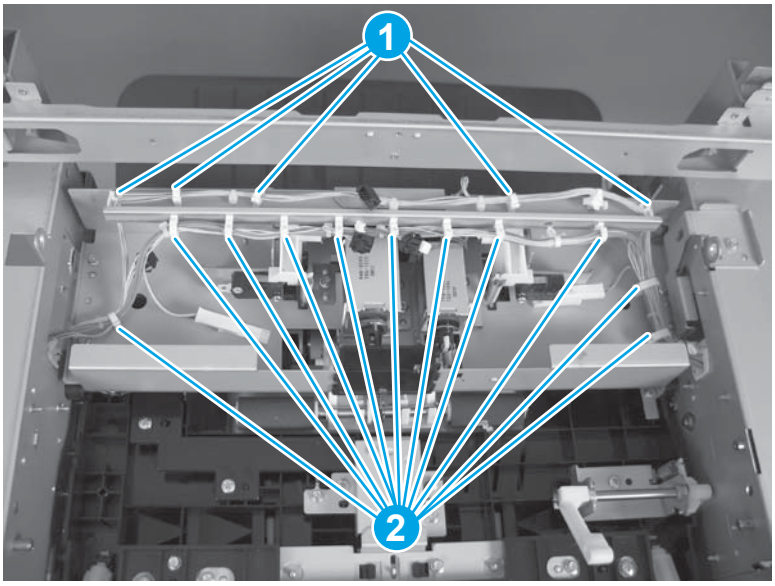
Figure 1-779 Remove the upper cross member assembly (7 of 13)



8. Release the wire harnesses from five retainers (callout 1) along the top of the assembly, and then release the wire harnesses from eleven retainers (callout 2) along the inside of the assembly.

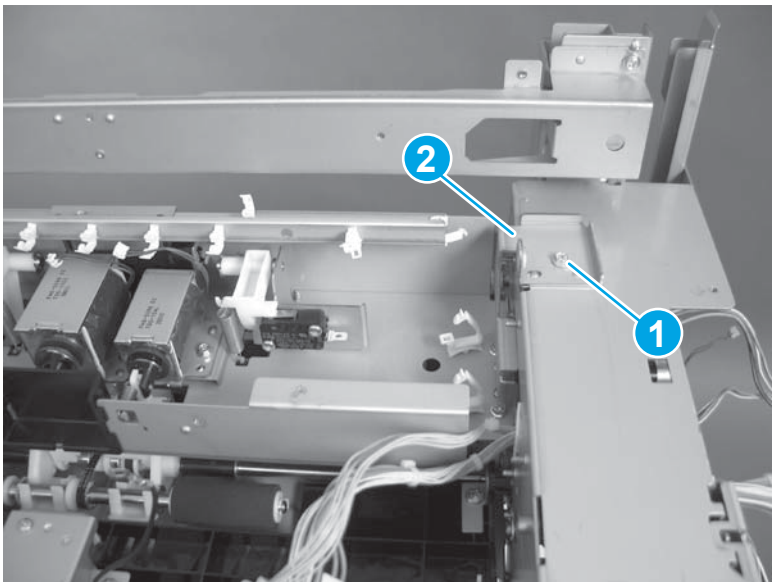
TIP: Move the wire harnesses out of the way.

Figure 1-780 Remove the upper cross member assembly (8 of 13)



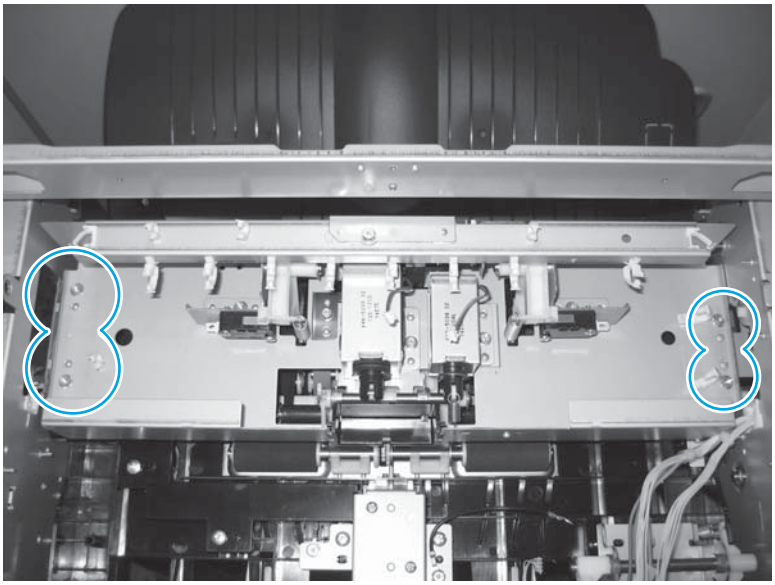
9. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the sheet-metal hinge bracket (callout 2).

Figure 1-781 Remove the upper cross member assembly (9 of 13)



10. Remove four screws.

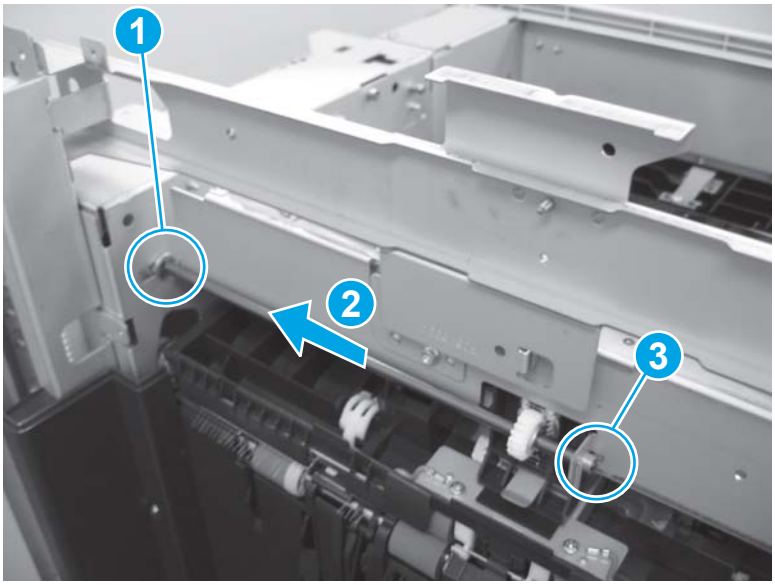
Figure 1-782 Remove the upper cross member assembly (10 of 13)



11. Remove one e-ring (callout 1), slide the gear shaft to the left (callout 2), remove one bushing (callout 3), and then move the gear shaft out of the way.

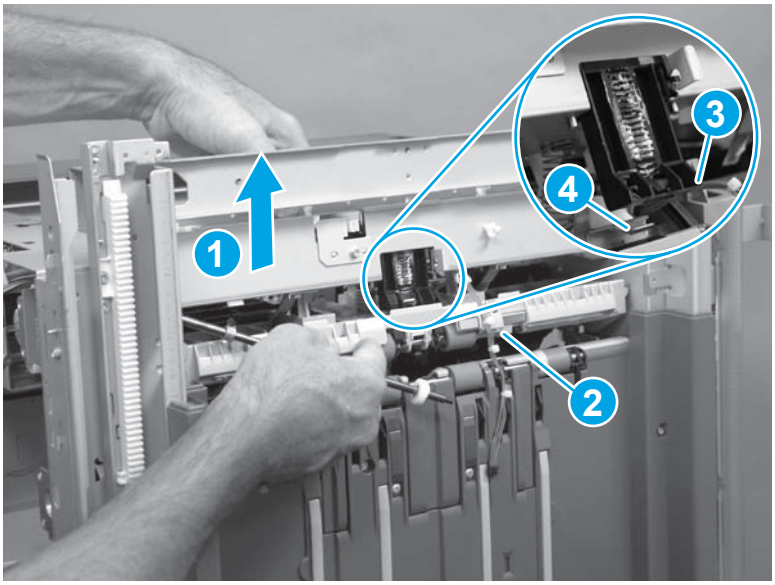
⚠ CAUTION: Do not lose the bushing (callout 3).

Figure 1-783 Remove the upper cross member assembly (11 of 13)



12. Carefully rotate the edge of the upper cross member assembly up (callout 1), support the swing guide assembly (callout 2), and then separate the swing-pressure rack (callout 3) from the sheet-metal tab (callout 4).

Figure 1-784 Remove the upper cross member assembly (12 of 13)



13. Remove the assembly.

⚠ CAUTION: The black plastic bracket (callout 1) along the front edge of the assembly and the spring (callout 2) underneath the assembly are not captive. Do not lose these parts when removing or handling the assembly.

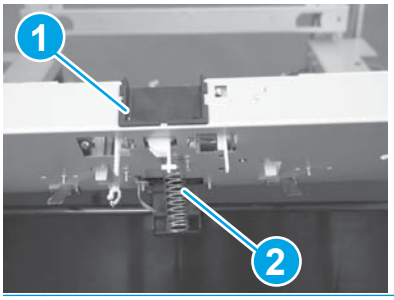
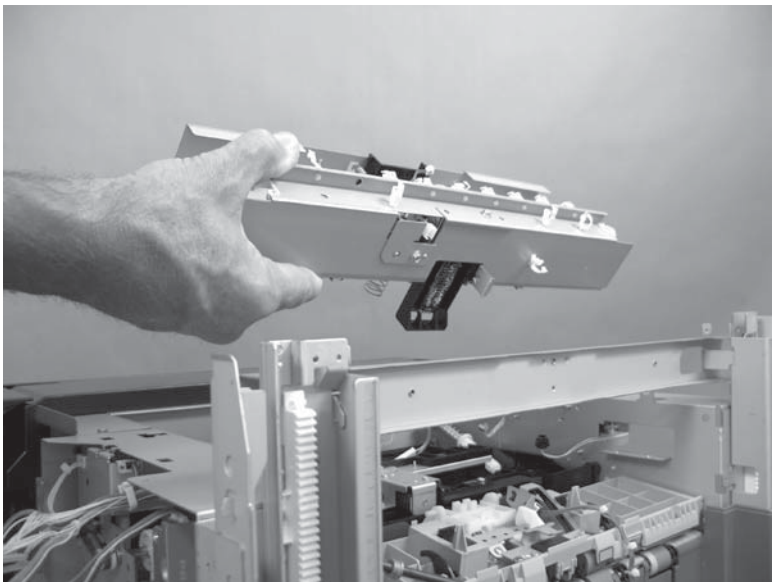


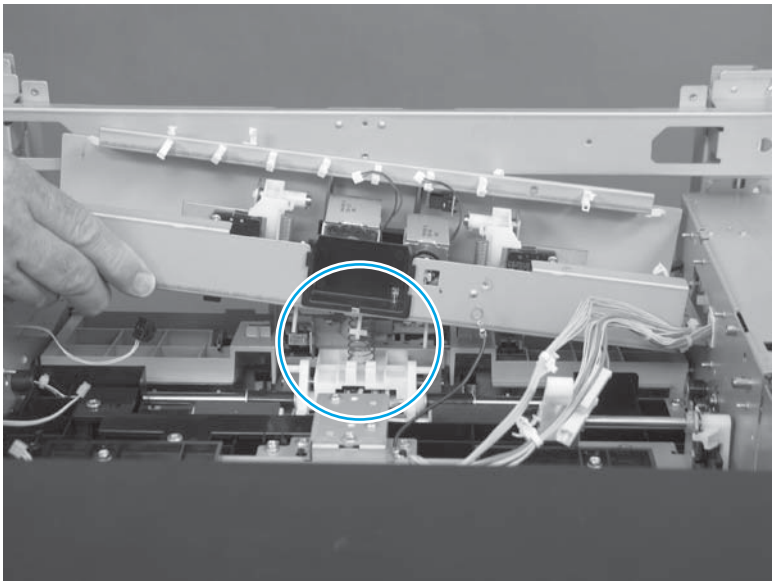
Figure 1-785 Remove the upper cross member assembly (13 of 13)



Reinstall the upper cross member assembly

1. When the assembly is positioned in the accessory, make sure that the spring underneath the assembly is seated on the pedestal on the swing guide.

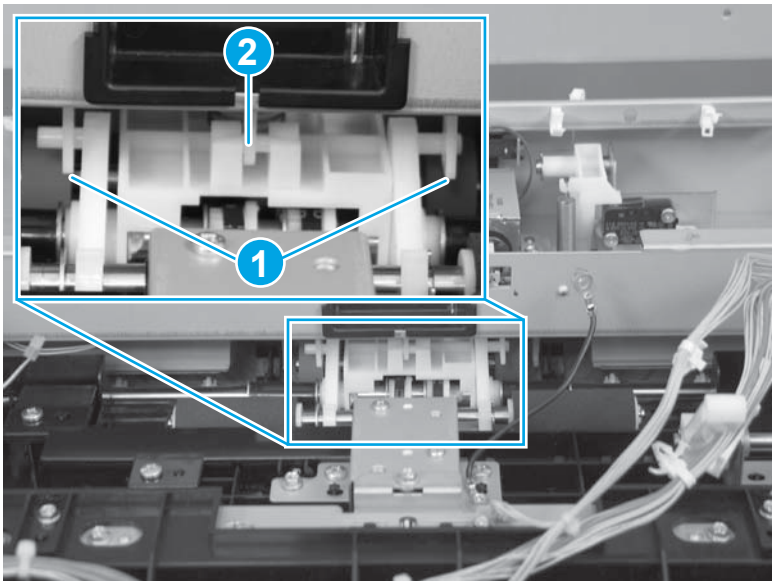
Figure 1-786 Reinstall the upper cross member assembly (1 of 7)



2. Verify that the two pivot arms are positioned in front of the pins (callout 1), and that the locking bar is seated in the cradle (callout 2).

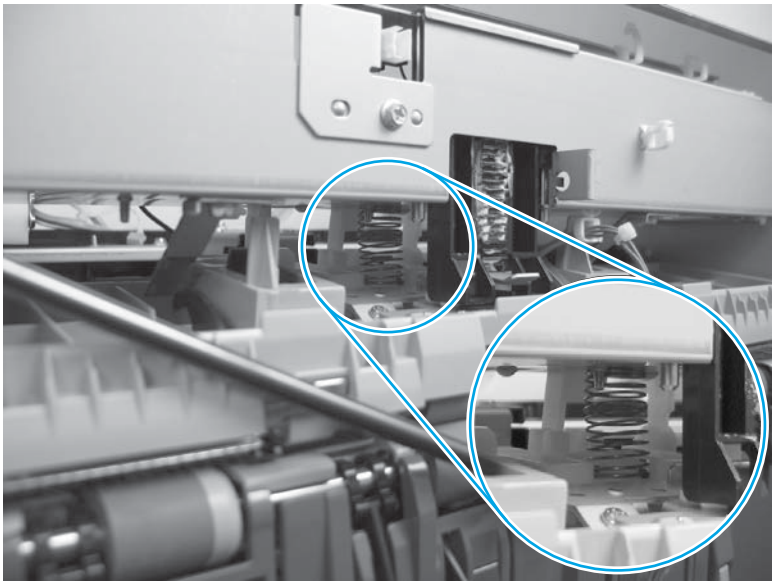
Reinstallation tip If after the upper cross member assembly is removed and replaced the message **13.60.A1 Jam in Top Left Door** appears on the control panel display (or in the event log) after the product power is turned on, the two pivot arms or the locking bar might not have been properly installed.

Figure 1-787 Reinstall the upper cross member assembly (2 of 7)



3. Install the mounting screws to secure the assembly to the chassis. Recheck the spring underneath the assembly. Verify that the spring is correctly positioned.

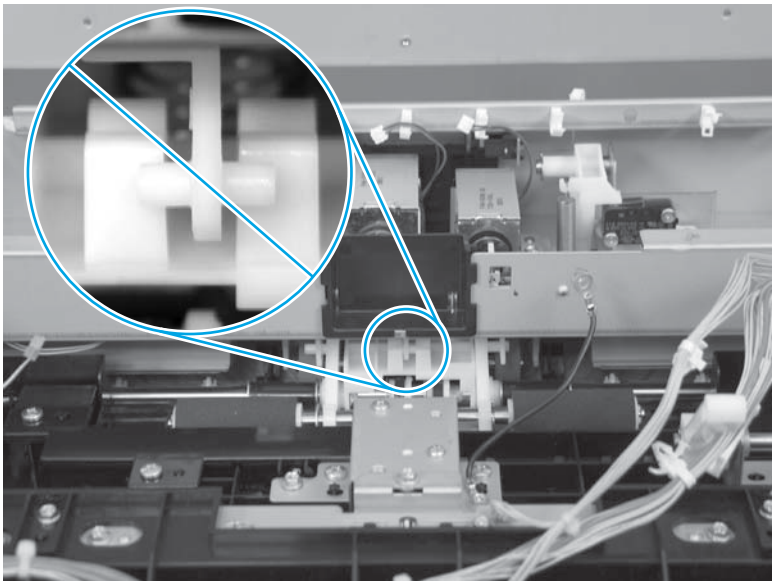
Figure 1-788 Reinstall the upper cross member assembly (3 of 7)



4. Recheck the locking bar underneath the assembly. Verify that it is correctly positioned in the cradle. If it is not correctly positioned, slightly lift up the upper cross member assembly and reposition the locking bar in the cradle.

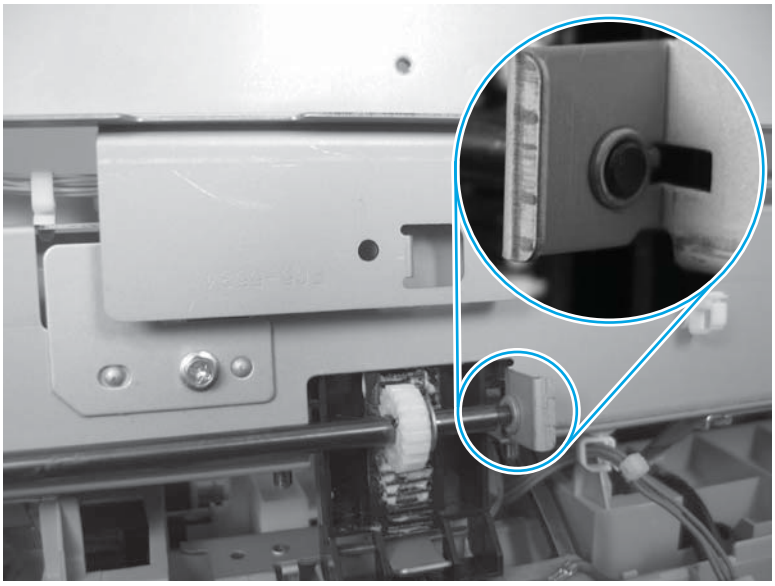
TIP: If necessary, slightly loosen, but do not remove, the assembly mounting screws to allow the assembly to be lifted up. Make sure that you retighten the mounting screws.

Figure 1-789 Reinstall the upper cross member assembly (4 of 7)



5. To reinstall the gear shaft right-side bushing, align the keyed portion of the bushing with the slot in the chassis mounting tab.

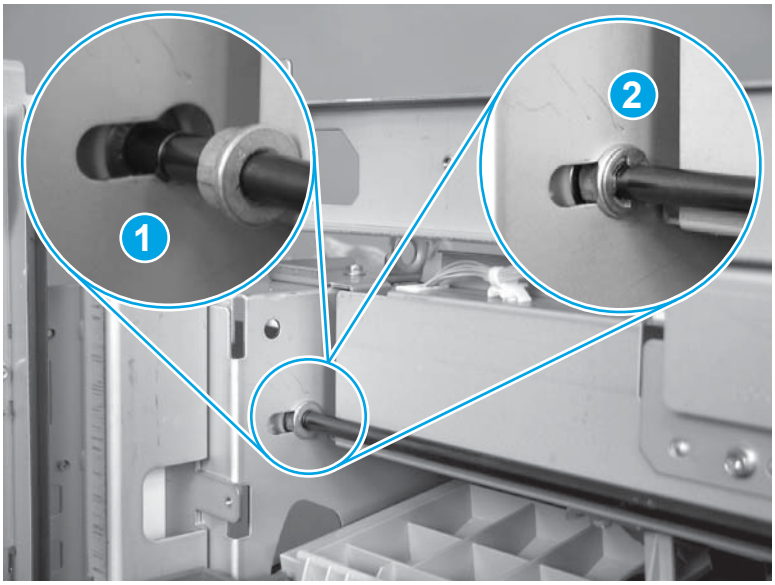
Figure 1-790 Reinstall the upper cross member assembly (5 of 7)



6. To reinstall the gear shaft left-side bushing, align the keyed portion of the bushing with the slot in the chassis (callout 1), and then install the e-ring (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip If the e-ring slot on the gear shaft is not visible, make sure that the drive gear, clutch, and pin—on the drive gear side of the shaft—are correctly assembled. If necessary, see the following optional step to reassemble the gear-shaft-pin assembly.

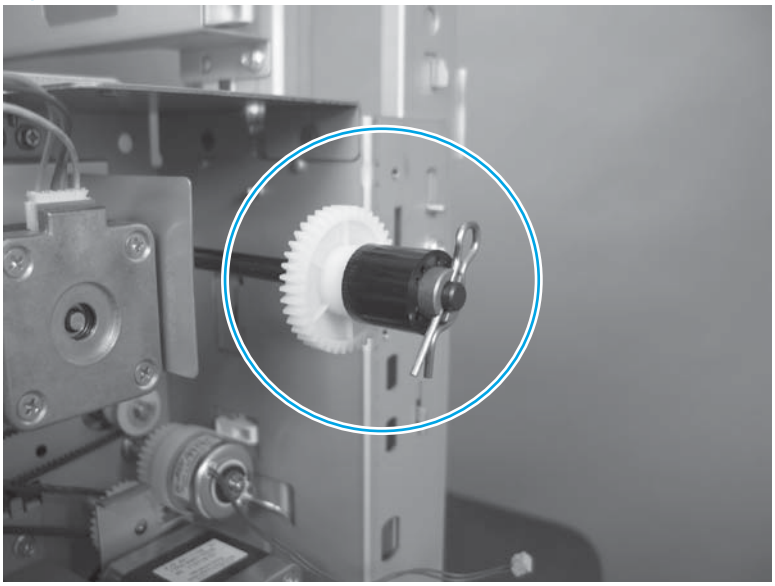
Figure 1-791 Reinstall the upper cross member assembly (6 of 7)



7. **Optional step**: Make sure that the clutch is correctly position on the gear—two tabs on the clutch engage two slots on the gear face—and that the pin is positioned in the slot on the end of the shaft.

   Reinstall the gear shaft left-side bushing, and then install the e-ring (callout 2). See Figure 1-791 Reinstall the upper cross member assembly (6 of 7) on page 531.

Figure 1-792 Reinstall the upper cross member assembly (7 of 7)



Paper feed drive assembly

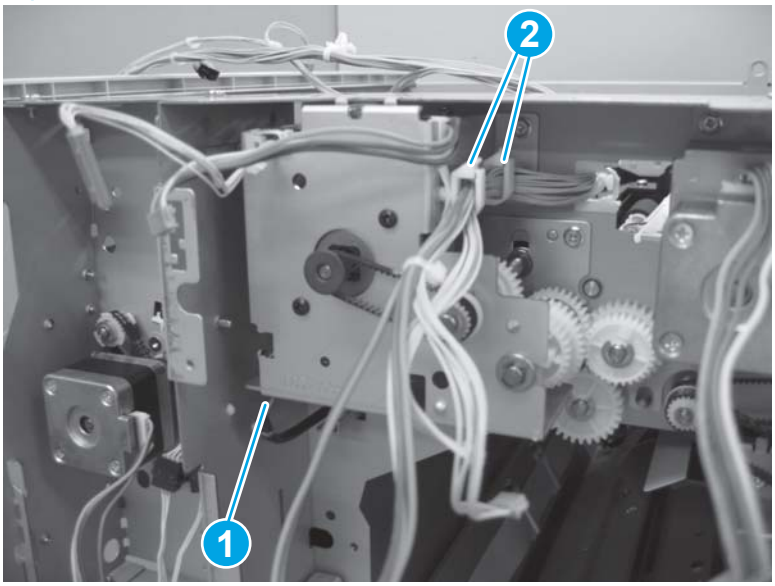
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Bin cable guide cover. See Bin cable guide cover on page 492.
- Rear cover assembly. See Rear cover assembly on page 496.
- Main controller PCA assembly. See Main controller PCA assembly on page 498.

Remove the paper feed drive assembly

1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1) and then release two retainers (callout 2).

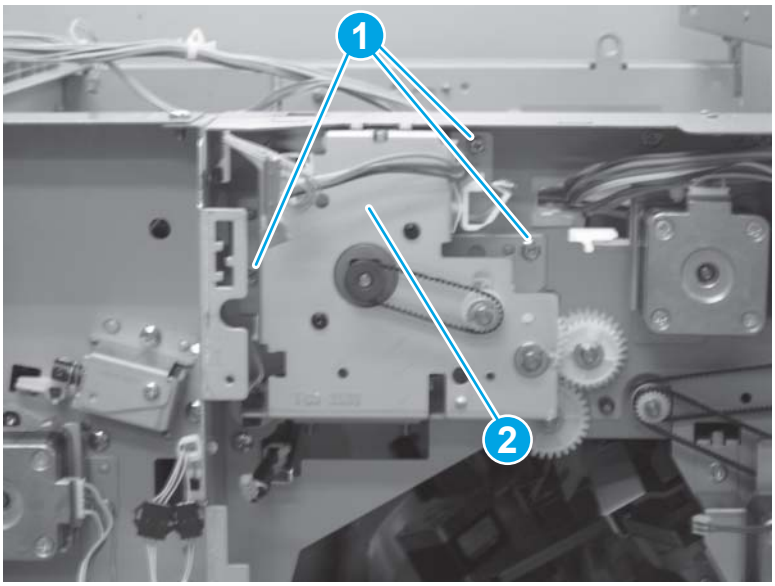
Figure 1-793 Remove the paper feed drive assembly (1 of 2)



2. Remove three screws (callout 1), and then remove the paper feed drive assembly (callout 2).

NOTE: As you remove the assembly, slip the drive belt located behind the assembly off of the drive gear. Do not lose the belt.

Figure 1-794 Remove the paper feed drive assembly (2 of 2)



Pressure roller assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

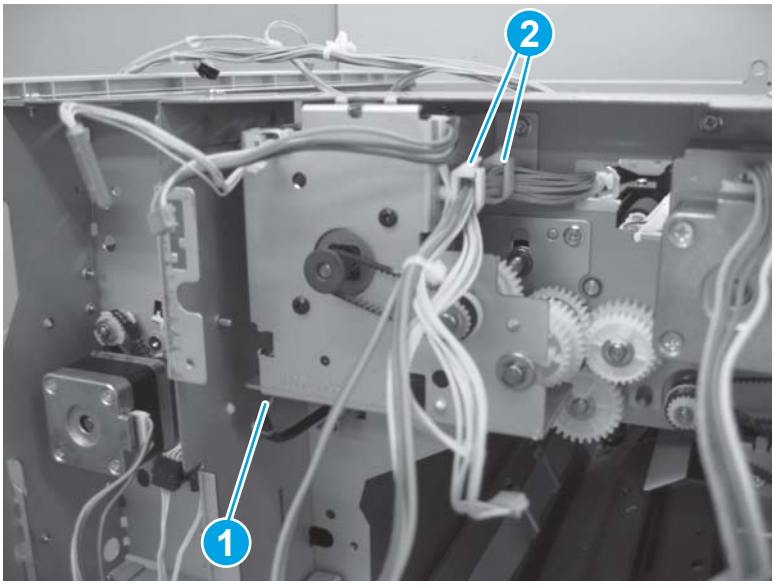
- Latch lower covers (front and rear). See Latch lower covers (front and rear) on page 468.
- Open/closed stepped cover assembly. See Open/closed stepped cover assembly on page 471.
- Upper stepped cover assembly. See Upper stepped cover assembly on page 472.
- Lower stepped cover assembly. See Lower stepped cover assembly on page 474.
- Top cover assembly. See Top door assembly on page 478.
- Front door. See Front door on page 479.
- Inner upper cover assembly. See Inner upper cover assembly on page 480.
- Bin cable guide cover. See Bin cable guide cover on page 492.
- Rear cover assembly. See Rear cover assembly on page 496.
- Main controller PCA assembly. See Main controller PCA assembly on page 498.
- Stack wall upper cover assembly. See Stack wall upper assembly and upper wall guide assembly on page 518.
- Upper cross member assembly. See Upper cross member assembly on page 521.

Remove the pressure roller assembly

NOTE: Some of the figures in this procedure show white plastic drive gears. The gears in the accessory are black plastic. However, this removal procedure is correct for this accessory.

1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1) and then release two retainers (callout 2).

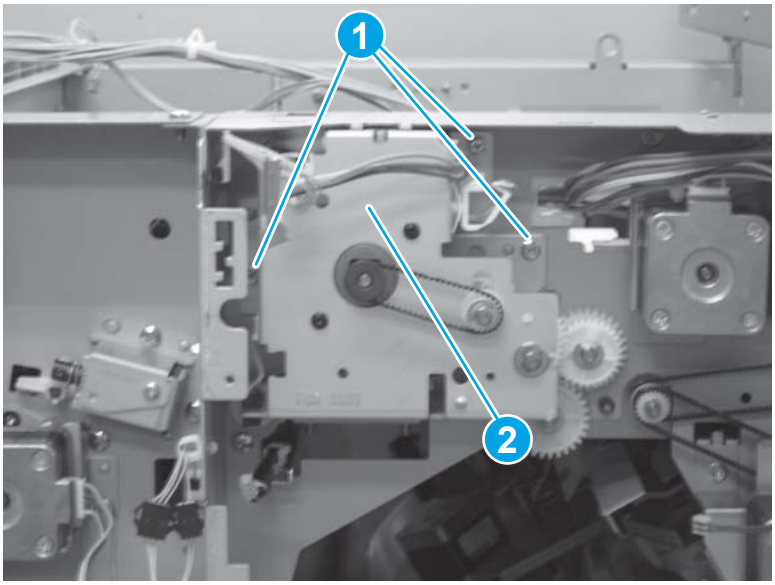
Figure 1-795 Remove the pressure roller assembly (1 of 8)



2. Remove three screws (callout 1), and then remove the paper feed motor assembly (callout 2).

NOTE: As you remove the assembly, slip the drive belt located behind the assembly off of the drive gear. Do not lose the belt. Make sure that you connect the belt to the gear when the paper feed motor assembly is reinstalled.

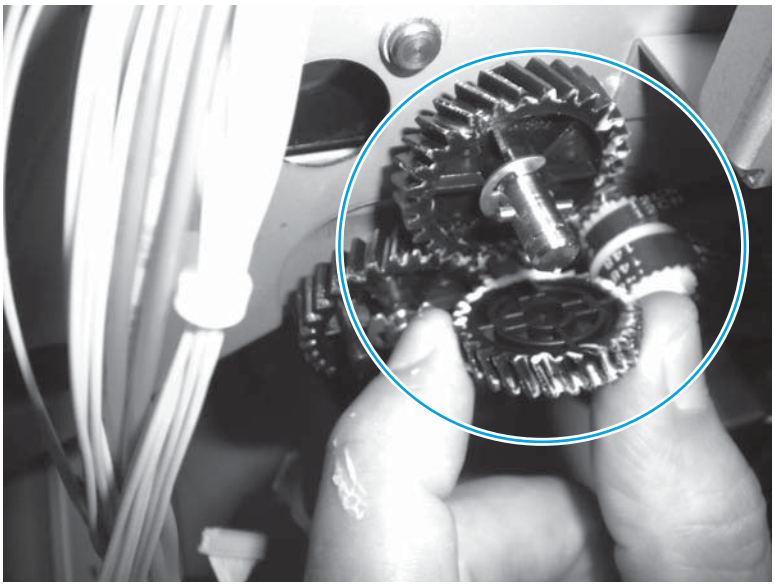
Figure 1-796 Remove the pressure roller assembly (2 of 8)



3. Rotate the outer gear until the square box on the face of the gear is facing down. This horizontally aligns the locking pin behind the gear, and lessens the possibility of the pin falling into the accessory when the gear is removed in the next step.

NOTE: The outer gear is shown removed in the figure below.

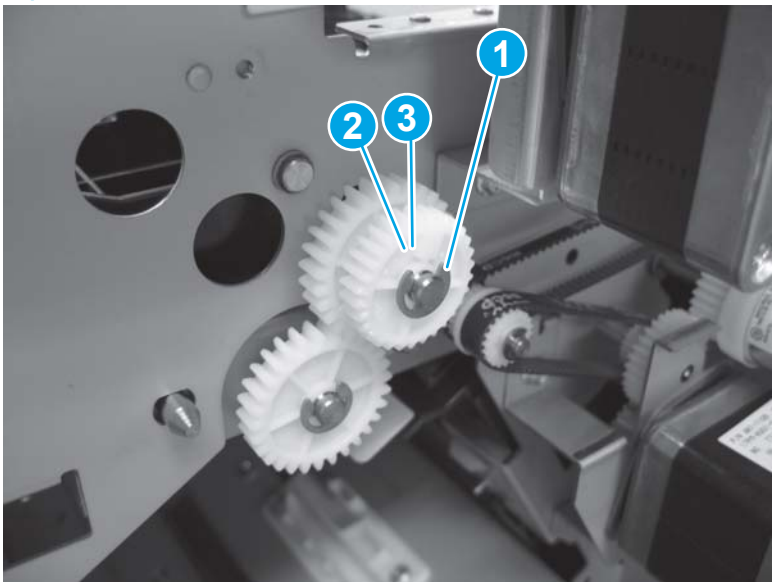
Figure 1-797 Remove the pressure roller assembly (3 of 8)



4. Remove one e-ring (callout 1), one gear (callout 2), and one pin (callout 3) behind the gear.

Reinstallation tip Use the horizontal pin alignment described above to reinstall the pin.

Figure 1-798 Remove the pressure roller assembly (4 of 8)

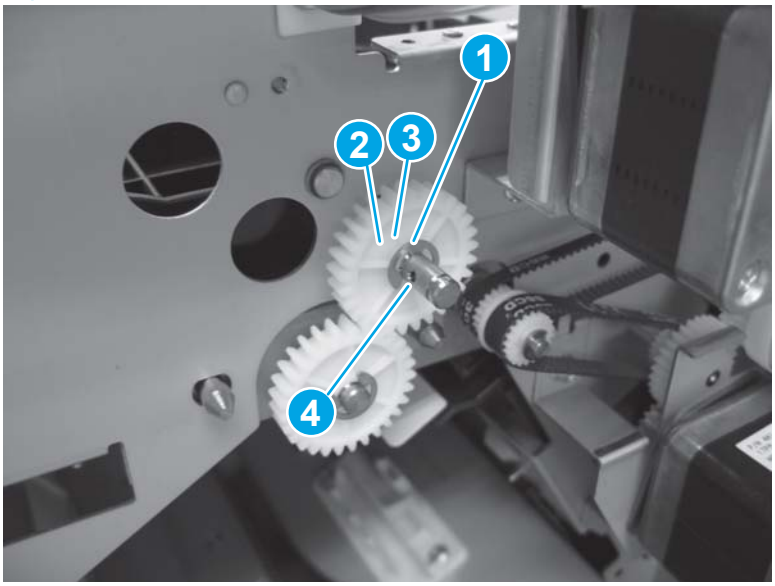


5. Remove one e-ring (callout 1), one gear (callout 2), and one pin (callout 3) behind the gear.

NOTE: Before proceeding, rotate the inner gear until the visible hole in the shaft (callout 4) is horizontal to prevent the locking pin behind the gear from falling out of the shaft.

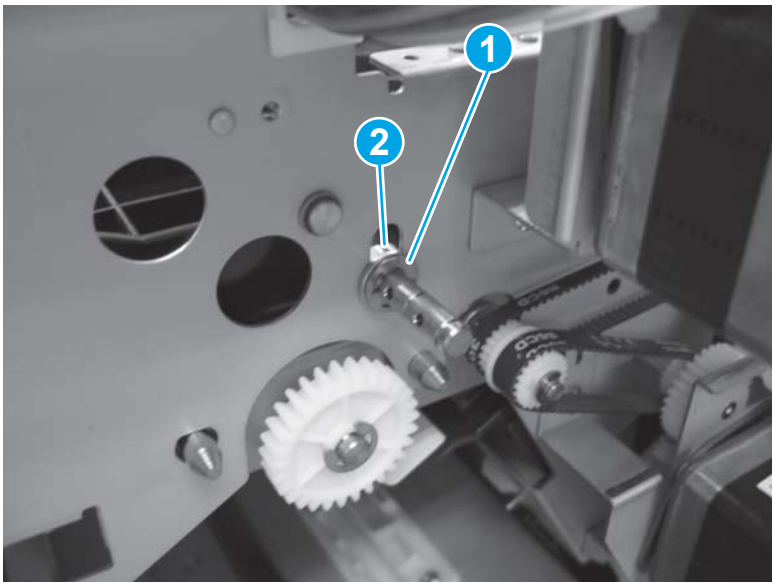
Reinstallation tip Use the horizontal pin alignment described above to reinstall the pin.

Figure 1-799 Remove the pressure roller assembly (5 of 8)



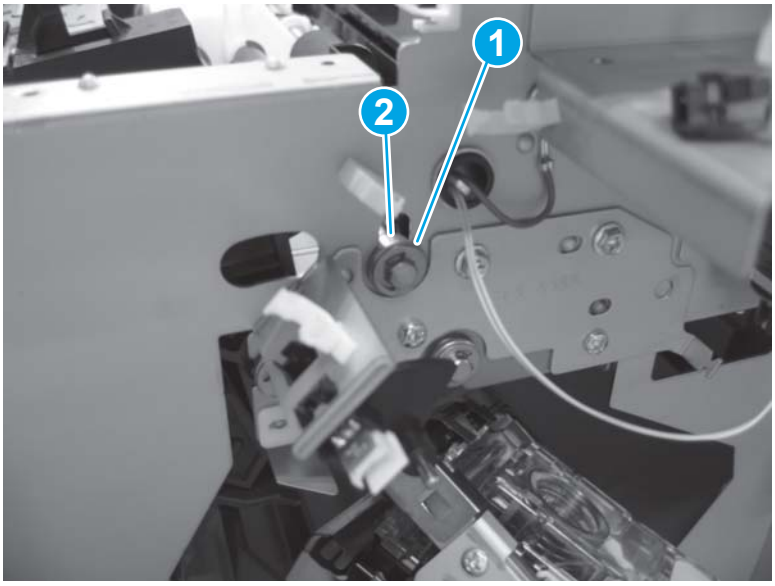
6. Remove the e-ring (callout 1) and then remove one bushing (callout 2).

Figure 1-800 Remove the pressure roller assembly (6 of 8)



7. At the opposite side of the accessory, remove the e-ring (callout 1) and then remove one bushing (callout 2).

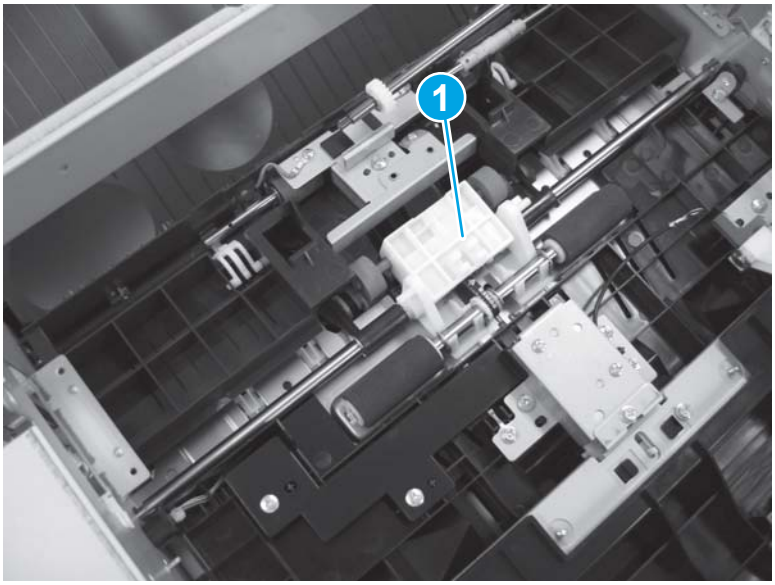
Figure 1-801 Remove the pressure roller assembly (7 of 8)



8. Grasp the plastic component (callout 1) in the middle of the assembly, lift it up to clear the metal bracket, and then slide the assembly to the rear to release the front of the shaft. Lift the pressure roller assembly out of the accessory to remove it.

Reinstallation tip When the assembly is reinstalled, first position the rear of the shaft in the hole of the chassis.

Figure 1-802 Remove the pressure roller assembly (8 of 8)



Stack upper bin and lower bin assemblies

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Latch lower covers (front and rear). See Latch lower covers (front and rear) on page 468.
- Open/closed stepped cover assembly. See Open/closed stepped cover assembly on page 471.
- Upper stepped cover assembly. See Upper stepped cover assembly on page 472.
- Lower stepped cover assembly. See Lower stepped cover assembly on page 474.
- Remove the following assemblies only if you need to remove the lower bin:
  - Front door. See Front door on page 479.
  - Inner upper cover assembly. See Inner upper cover assembly on page 480.
- Bin cable guide cover. See Bin cable guide cover on page 492.
- Rear cover assembly. See Rear cover assembly on page 496.
- Stack wall upper cover assembly. See Stack wall upper assembly and upper wall guide assembly on page 518.

Remove stack upper bin and lower bin assemblies

NOTE: The stack upper bin assembly and the stack lower bin assembly look identical, but are different. Do not reverse the locations of the bins when they are reinstalled.

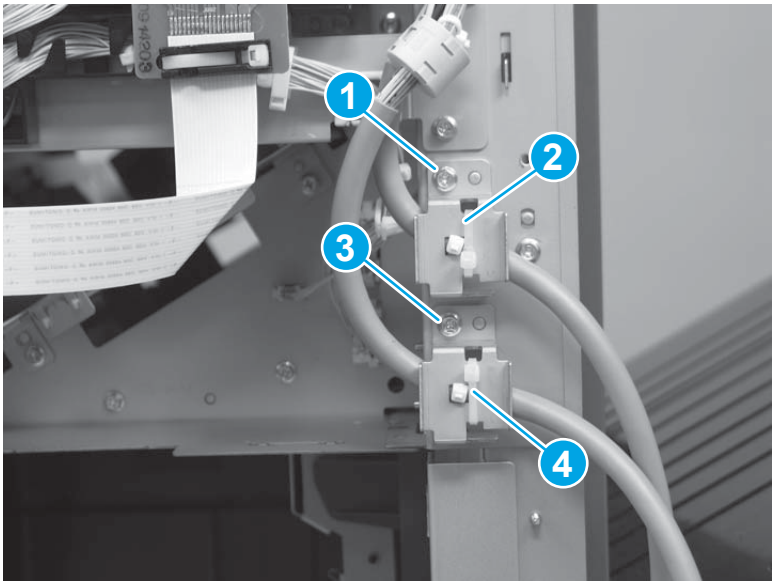
The upper bin assembly has two connectors and a ground wire at the end of the cable. The lower bin assembly has only one connector and a ground wire at the end of the cable. Also, the lower bin assembly has a coil around the end of the cable.

1. Do the following:

   Stack upper bin assembly: Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the upper sheet-metal cable retainer (callout 2).

   Stack lower bin assembly: Remove one screw (callout 3), and then remove the lower sheet-metal cable retainer (callout 4).

   Figure 1-803 Remove the stack upper bin and lower bin assemblies (1 of 5)

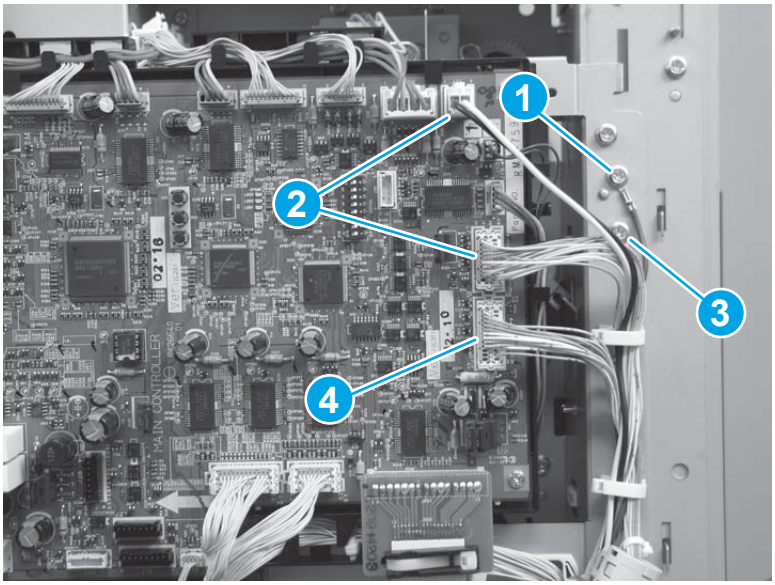
   

2. Release the wire harnesses from two retainers, and then do the following:

   Stack upper bin assembly: Remove one ground screw (callout 1), and then disconnect two connectors (callout 2) on the controller PCA (J7 and J14).

   Stack lower bin assembly: Remove one ground screw (callout 3), and then disconnect one connector (callout 4) on the controller PCA (J8).

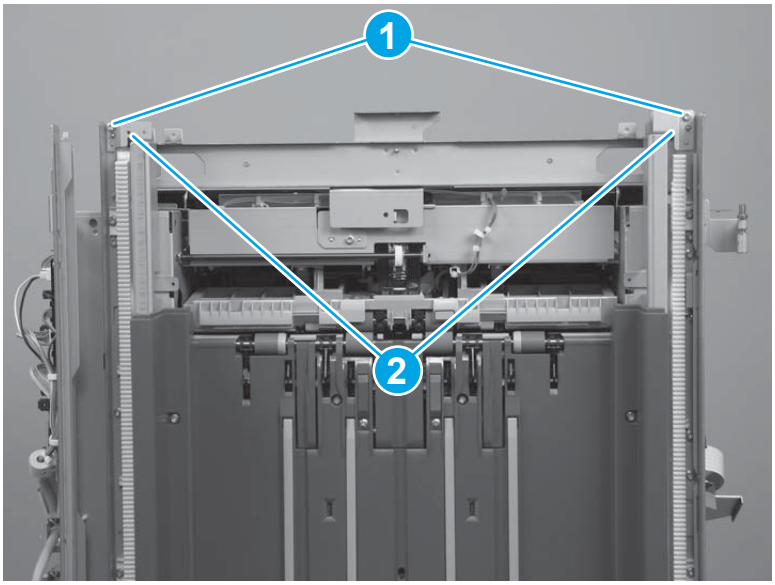
   Figure 1-804 Remove the stack upper bin and lower bin assemblies (2 of 5)



3. Remove two screws (callout 1) and the sheet-metal stop brackets (callout 2).

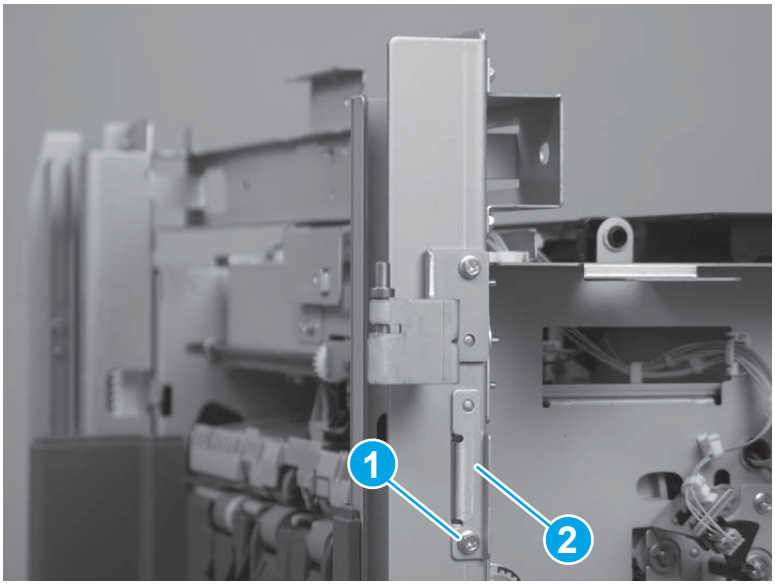
TIP: The upper bin can be removed now.

Figure 1-805 Remove the stack upper bin and lower bin assemblies (3 of 5)



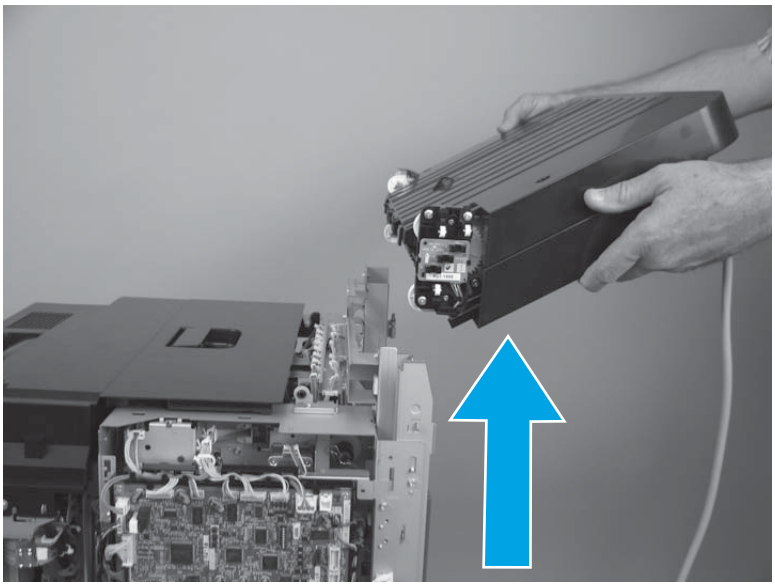
4. **Lower bin assembly only**: If you are removing the lower bin, remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the sheet-metal stop bracket (callout 2).

Figure 1-806 Remove the stack upper bin and lower bin assemblies (4 of 5)



5. Carefully slide the bin up and off of the finishing accessory.

Figure 1-807 Remove the stack upper bin and lower bin assemblies (5 of 5)



Reinstall the stack upper bin and lower bin assemblies

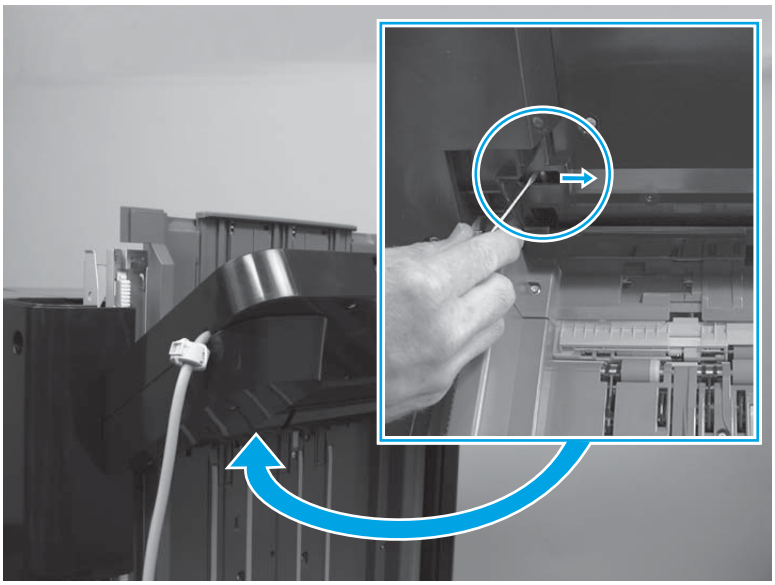
When the bins are reinstalled, use the following procedure to release the clutch and slide the bin down onto the accessory.

⚠ **CAUTION:** If both of the bins are reinstalled, do not install the upper bin directly on top of the lower bin. Leave a vertical gap between the bins. If the bins are not separated, an error message will appear on the control-panel display, and the bins might be damaged when the product power is turned on.

1. Support the bin.
2. Release the bin clutch located on the underside of the bin, and then lower the bin to access the cover.

TIP: Use a small flat-blade screwdriver to slide the raised portion of the clutch toward the spring to release the clutch and lower the bin.

Figure 1-808 Reinstall the stack wall upper assembly and upper wall guide assembly (1 of 2)

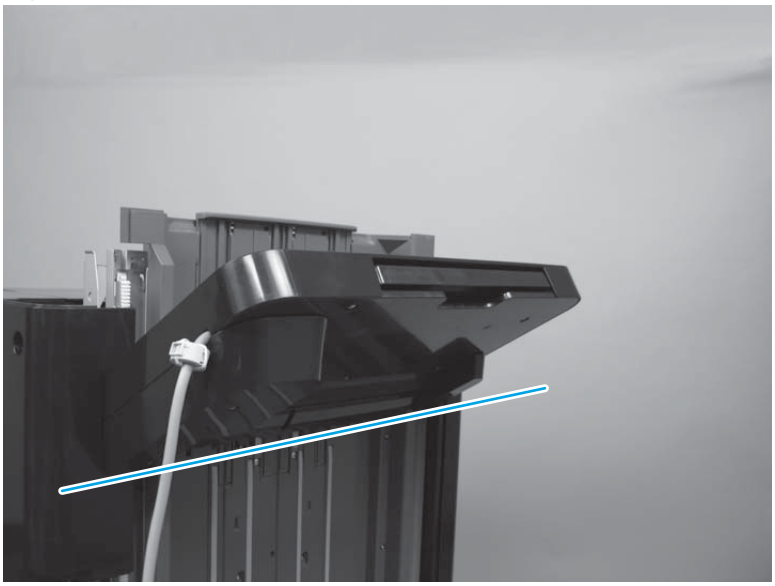


3. The bins must be installed so that they are level from side to side so that they will not bind on the track. If after installing the bins they are not level from side to side, remove them, and then reinstall the bins.

CAUTION: The bins might be damaged when they move up and down if they are not correctly installed.

TIP: Lower the installed bin down to the exit rollers to check for level installation.

Figure 1-809 Reinstall the stack wall upper assembly and upper wall guide assembly (2 of 2)



Height wall assembly

NOTE: This assembly is described in the parts chapter as the following:

- Height wall lower assembly (stapler/stacker and stapler stacker with hole punch)
- Height wall center assembly (booklet maker)

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

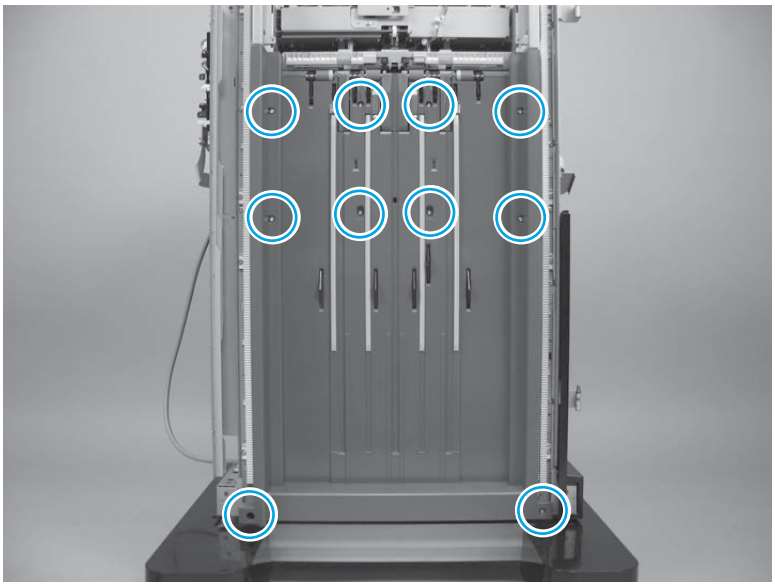
- Open/closed stepped cover assembly. See Open/closed stepped cover assembly on page 471.
- Upper stepped cover assembly. See Upper stepped cover assembly on page 472.
- Lower stepped cover assembly. See Lower stepped cover assembly on page 474.
- Bin cable guide cover. See Bin cable guide cover on page 492.
- Rear cover assembly. See Rear cover assembly on page 496.
- Stack wall upper cover assembly. See Stack wall upper assembly and upper wall guide assembly on page 518.
- Stack upper bin and lower bin assemblies. See Stack upper bin and lower bin assemblies on page 540.

Remove the height wall center assembly

NOTE: The following figures show the height wall assembly on the stapler/stacker with hole punch finishing accessory. This removal procedure is the same for all of the finishing accessories.

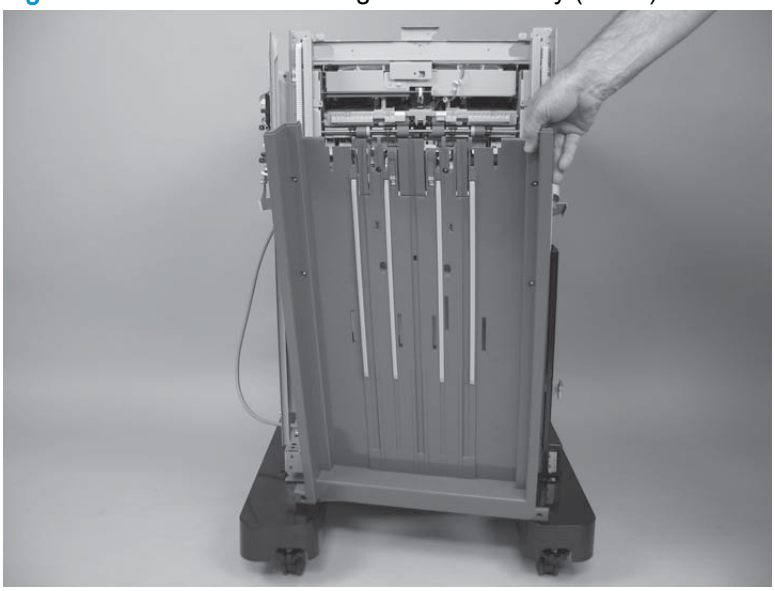
1. Remove ten screws.

Figure 1-810 Remove the height wall assembly (1 of 2)



2. Remove the cover.

Figure 1-811 Remove the height wall assembly (2 of 2)



Reinstall the height wall assembly

Make sure that the black bracket is in the down position when the height wall assembly is reinstalled. If the bracket is in the up position when the assembly is reinstalled, the upper stack wall will not move up and down.

Figure 1-812 Reinstall the height wall assembly

Paper face sensor and flag assembly

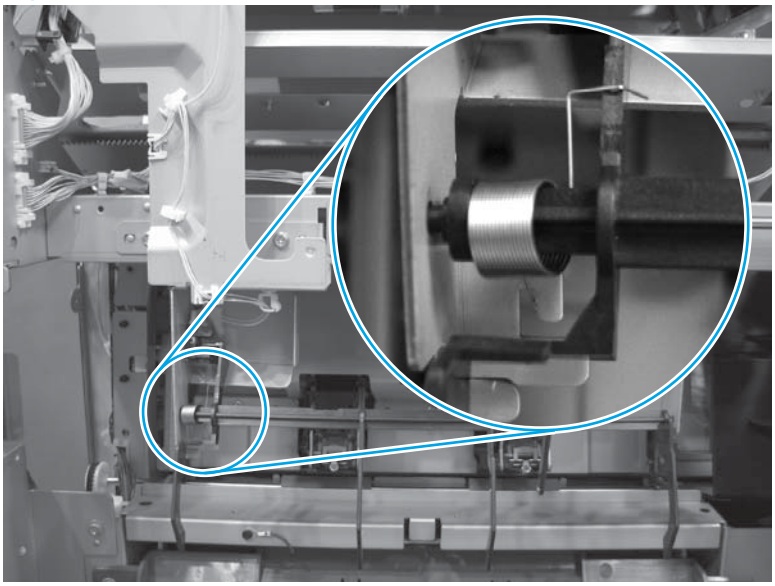
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Open/closed stepped cover assembly. See Open/closed stepped cover assembly on page 471.
- Upper stepped cover assembly. See Upper stepped cover assembly on page 472.
- Lower stepped cover assembly. See Lower stepped cover assembly on page 474.
- Bin cable guide cover. See Bin cable guide cover on page 492.
- Rear cover assembly. See Rear cover assembly on page 496.
- Stack wall upper cover assembly. See Stack wall upper assembly and upper wall guide assembly on page 518.
- Stack upper bin and lower bin assemblies. See Stack upper bin and lower bin assemblies on page 540.
- Height wall assembly. See Height wall assembly on page 546.

Remove the paper face sensor and flag assembly

1. From the output side of the accessory, note how the spring on the left end of the flag is installed.

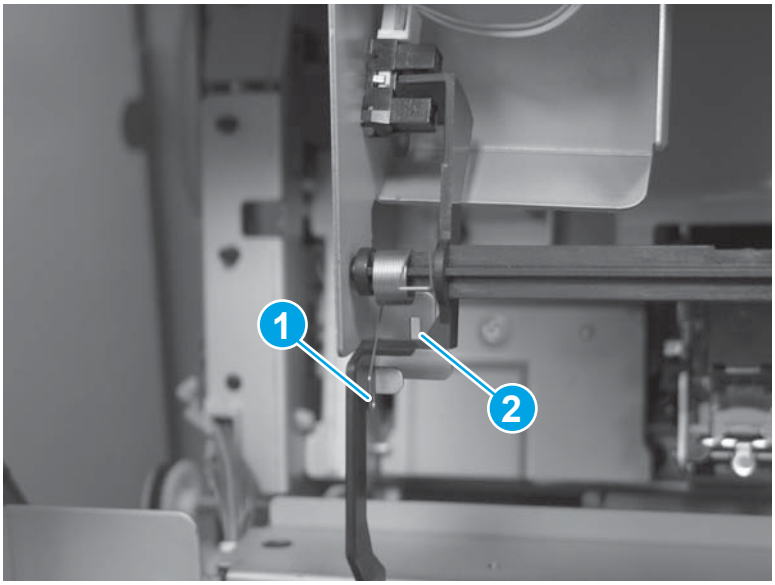
Figure 1-813 Remove the paper face sensor and flag assembly (1 of 9)



2. Disengage the bottom portion of the spring (callout 1) from the tab (callout 2) on the chassis.

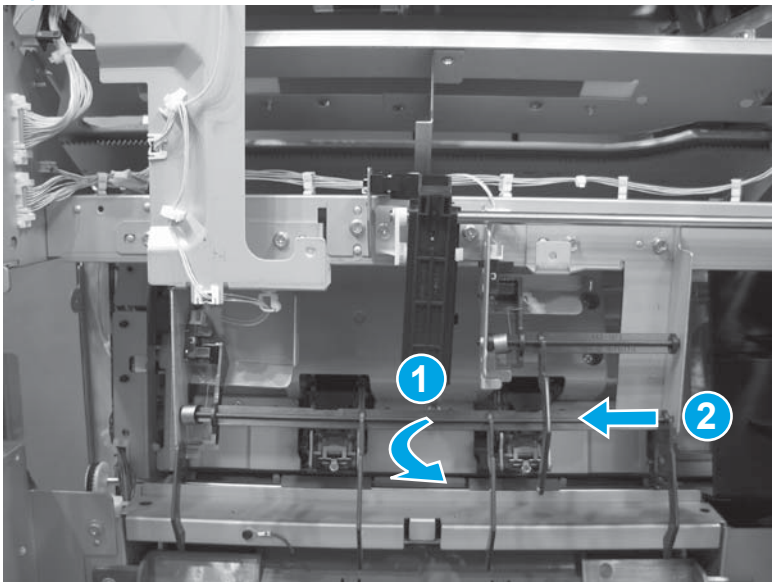
NOTE: The figure below shows the spring disengaged.

Figure 1-814 Remove the paper face sensor and flag assembly (2 of 9)



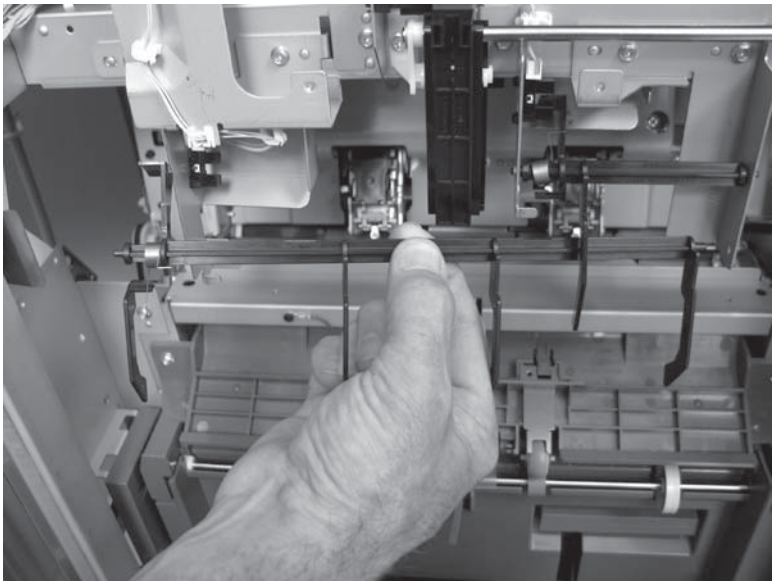
3. Carefully flex the middle of the flag shaft away from the accessory (callout 1), and then disengage the end of the shaft from the mounting hole in the chassis (callout 2).

Figure 1-815 Remove the paper face sensor and flag assembly (3 of 9)



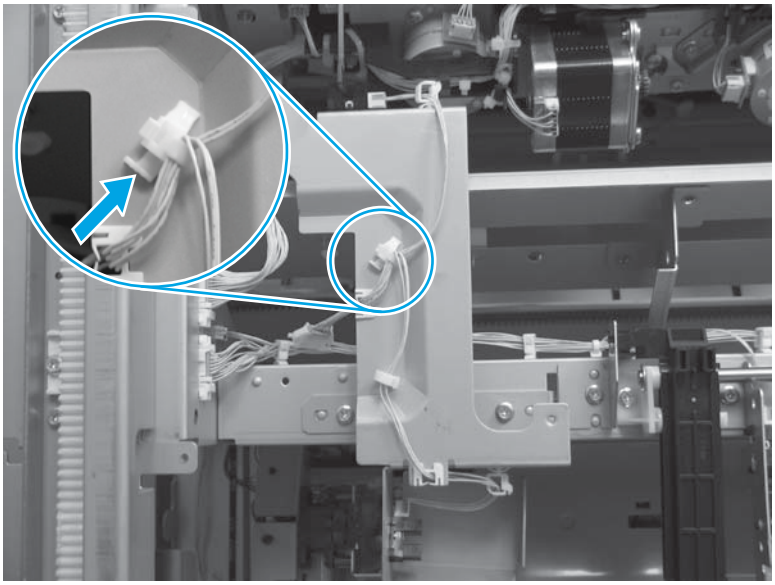
4. Remove the paper sensor flag.

Figure 1-816 Remove the paper face sensor and flag assembly (4 of 9)



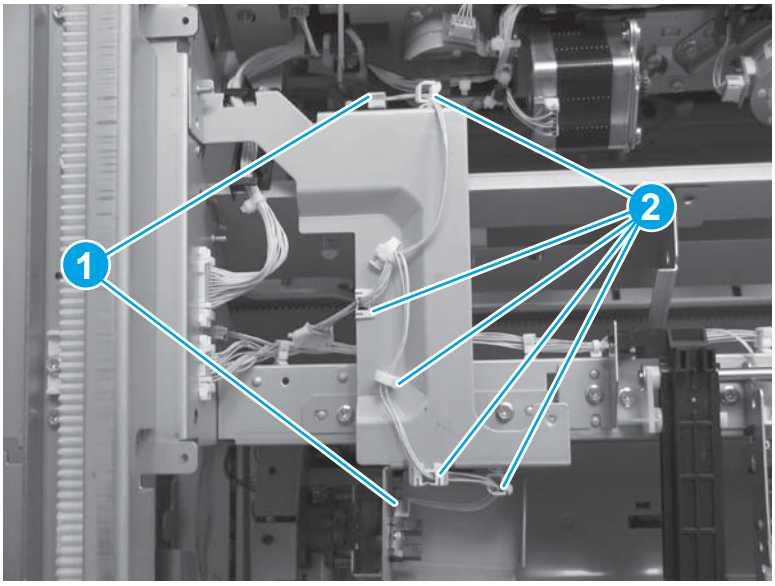
5. Release one tab, and then release the wire tie retainer.

Figure 1-817 Remove the paper face sensor and flag assembly (5 of 9)



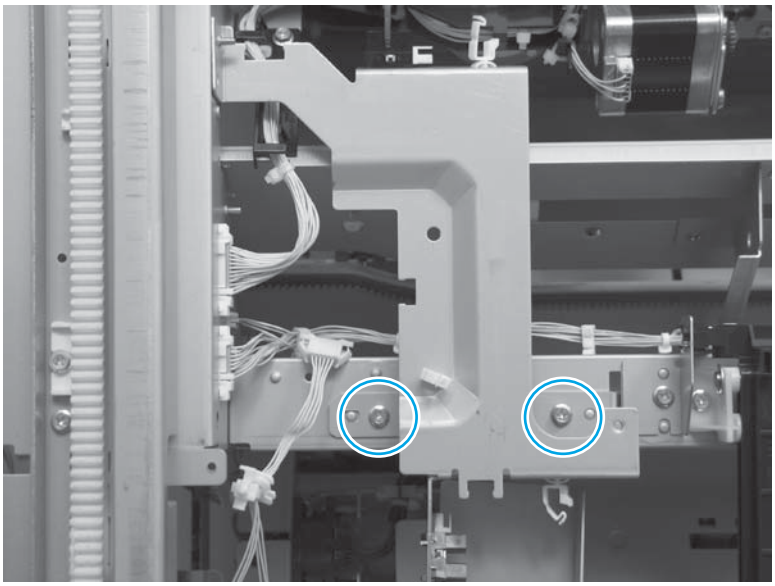
6. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then release the wire harnesses from five retainers (callout 2).

Figure 1-818 Remove the paper face sensor and flag assembly (6 of 9)



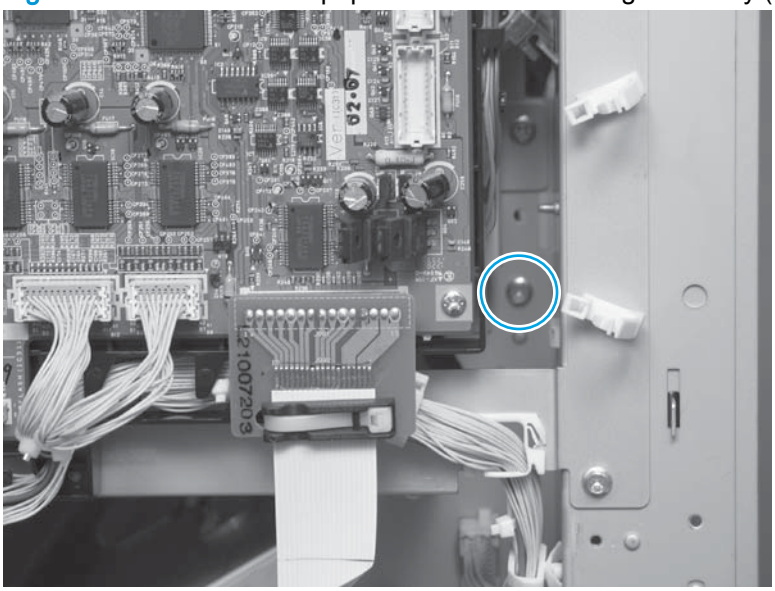
7. Remove two screws.

Figure 1-819 Remove the paper face sensor and flag assembly (7 of 9)



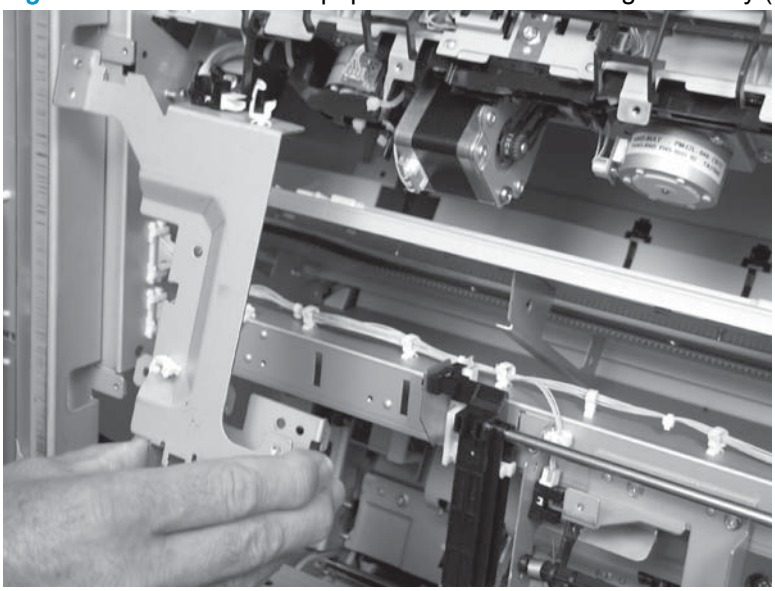
8. At the rear of the accessory, remove one screw.

Figure 1-820 Remove the paper face sensor and flag assembly (8 of 9)



9. Remove the assembly.

Figure 1-821 Remove the paper face sensor and flag assembly (9 of 9)



Staple subassembly

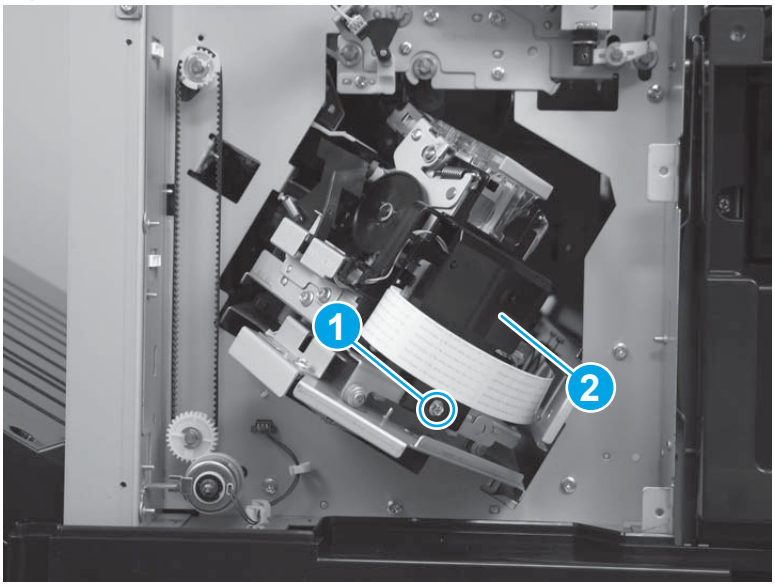
Before proceeding, do the following:

- Move the inner upper cover assembly out of the way. See Inner upper cover assembly on page 480.

Remove the staple subassembly

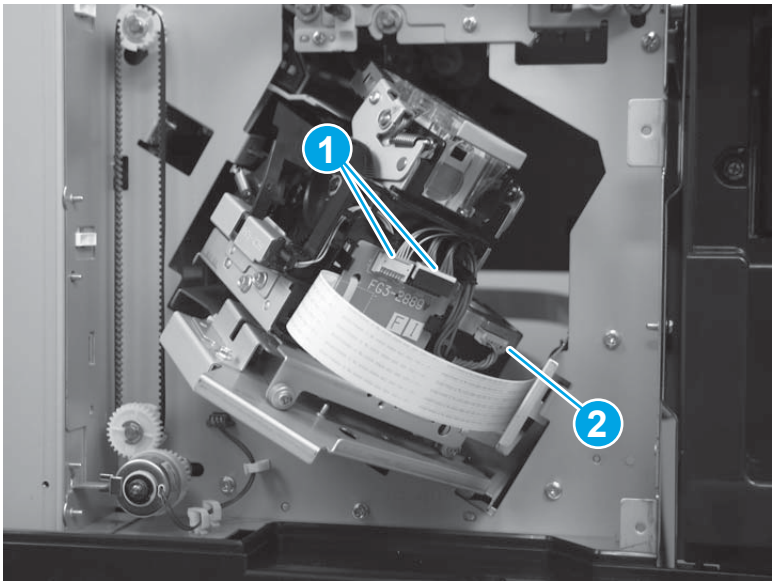
1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the protective cover (callout 2)

   Figure 1-822 Remove the staple subassembly (1 of 6)

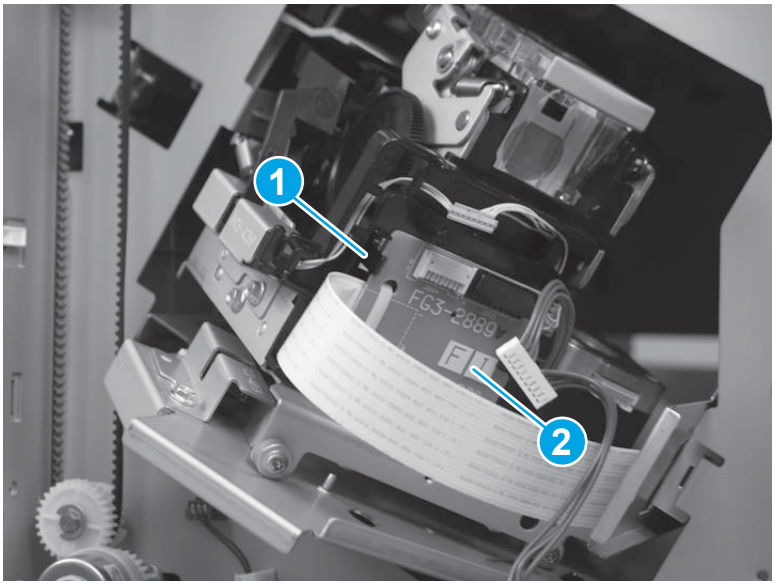
2. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1) on the PCA, and then disconnect one connector (callout 2) on the motor.

   Figure 1-823 Remove the staple subassembly (2 of 6)

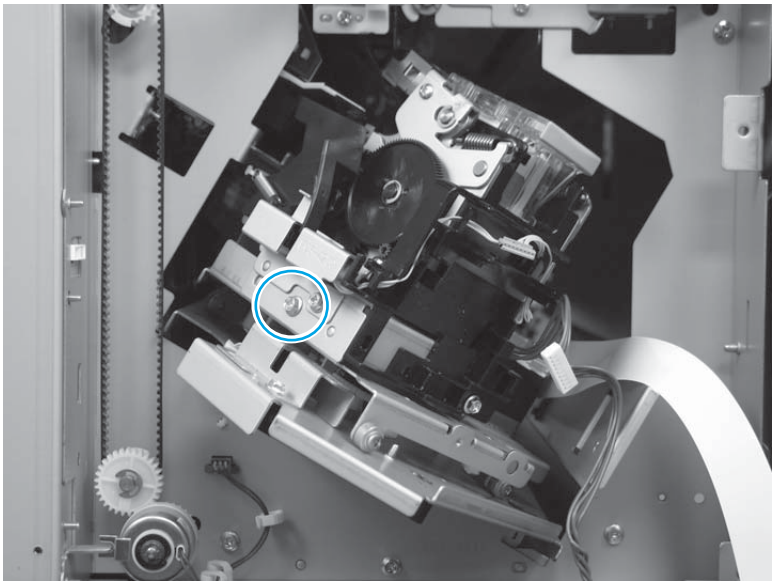
3. Release one tab (callout 1), and then remove the sub staple PCA (callout 2).

Figure 1-824 Remove the staple subassembly (3 of 6)



4. Remove one screw.

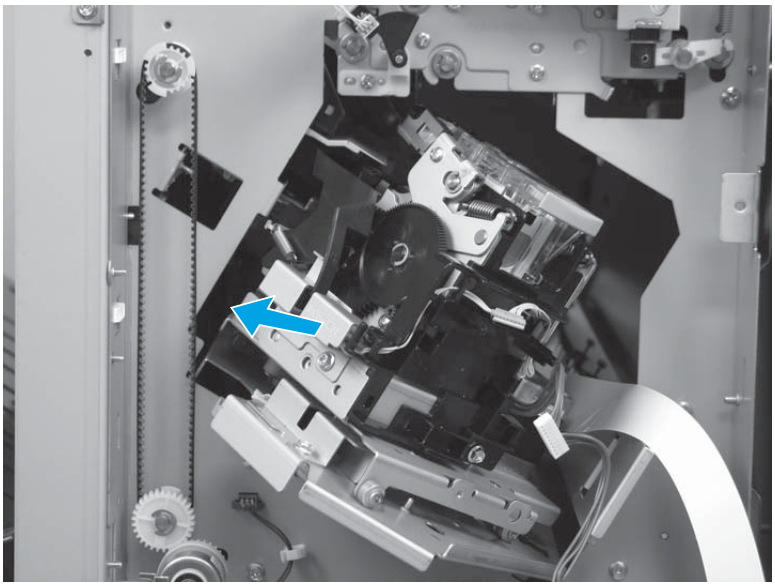
Figure 1-825 Remove the staple subassembly (4 of 6)



5. Slide the staple subassembly away from the staple subassembly motor to release the rear tabs of the assembly from the sheet-metal bracket.

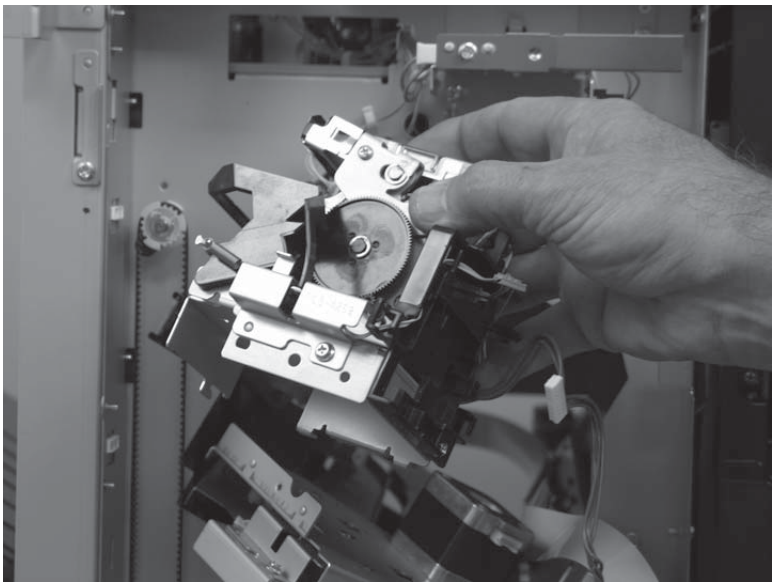
TIP: When you reinstall the staple subassembly, make sure that the rear tabs of the assembly engage the slots in the sheet-metal bracket.

Figure 1-826 Remove the staple subassembly (5 of 6)



6. Remove the staple subassembly.

Figure 1-827 Remove the staple subassembly (6 of 6)



Staple connecting cable assembly

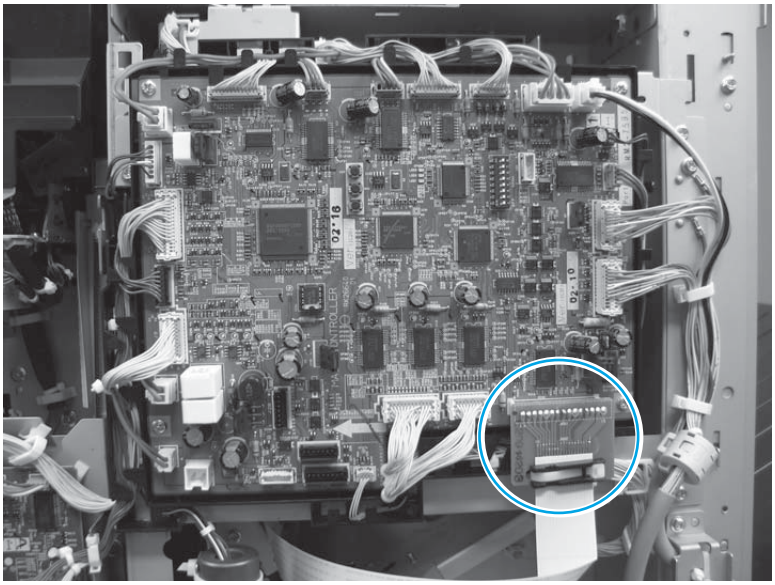
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Move the inner upper cover assembly out of the way. See Inner upper cover assembly on page 480.
- Bin cable guide cover. See Bin cable guide cover on page 492.
- Rear cover assembly. See Rear cover assembly on page 496.
- Staple subassembly. See Staple subassembly on page 553.

Remove the staple connecting cable assembly

1. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 1-828 Remove the staple connecting cable assembly (1 of 2)

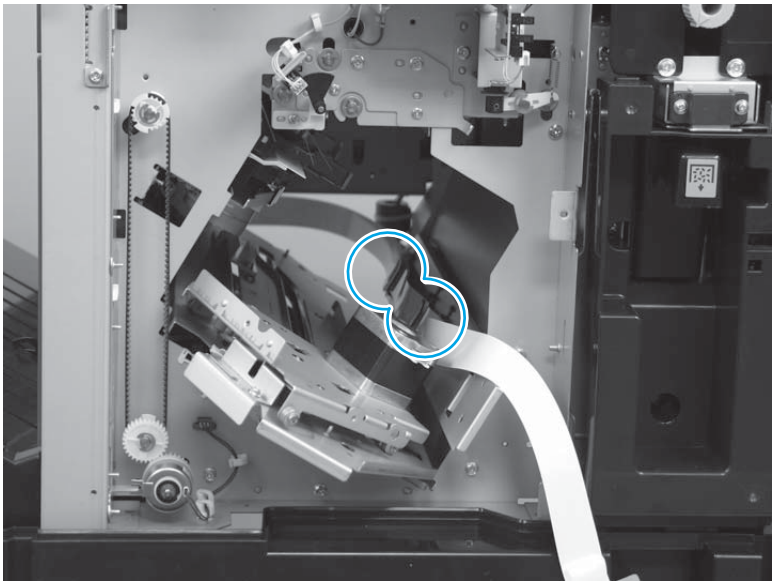


2. Release the cable from three retainers, and then remove the cable.

Reinstallation tip When the cable is reinstalled, make sure that it is positioned correctly and will not be pulled tight at either end when the staple subassembly moves along the staple assembly.

Align the black marks on the cable with the black marks on the chassis to place the cable in the correct position.

Figure 1-829 Remove the staple connecting cable assembly (2 of 2)



Staple assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

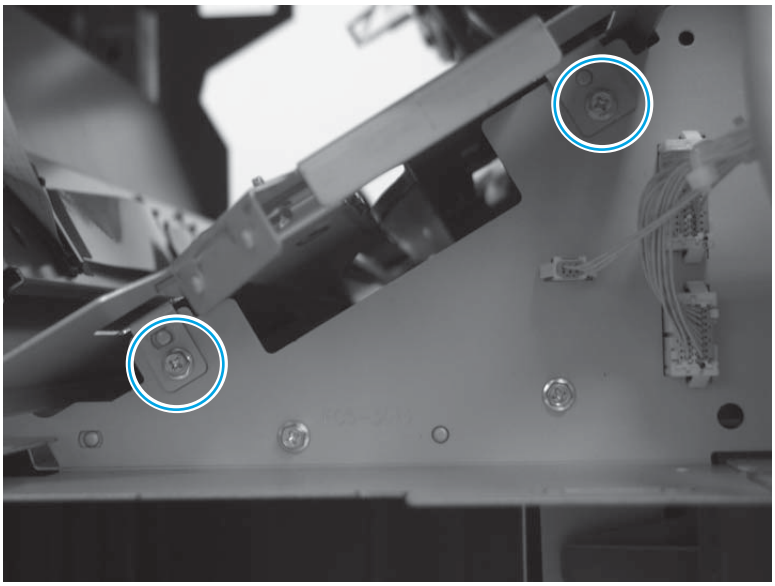
- Move the inner upper cover assembly out of the way. See Inner upper cover assembly on page 480.
- Bin cable guide cover. See Bin cable guide cover on page 492.
- Rear cover assembly. See Rear cover assembly on page 496.
- Staple subassembly. See Staple subassembly on page 553.

Remove the staple assembly

1. Remove two screws.

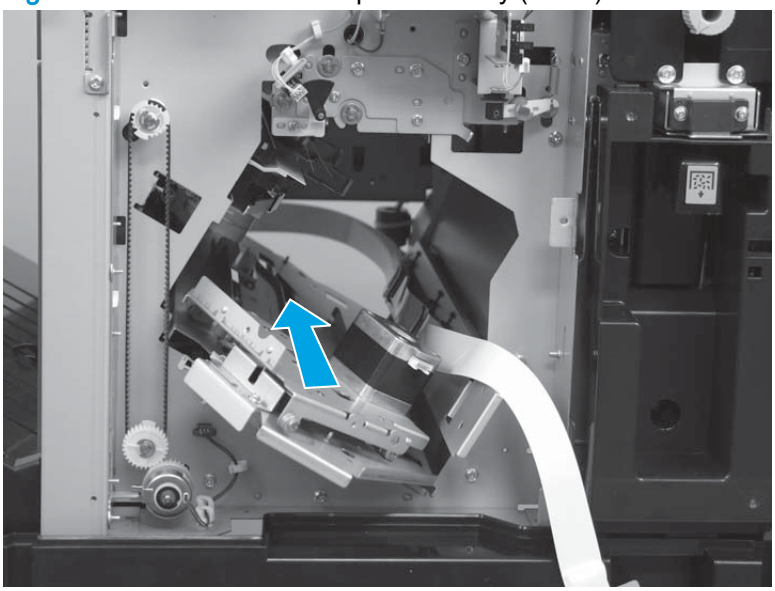
NOTE: These screws are located under the controller PCA at the rear side of the accessory.

Figure 1-830 Remove the staple assembly (1 of 7)



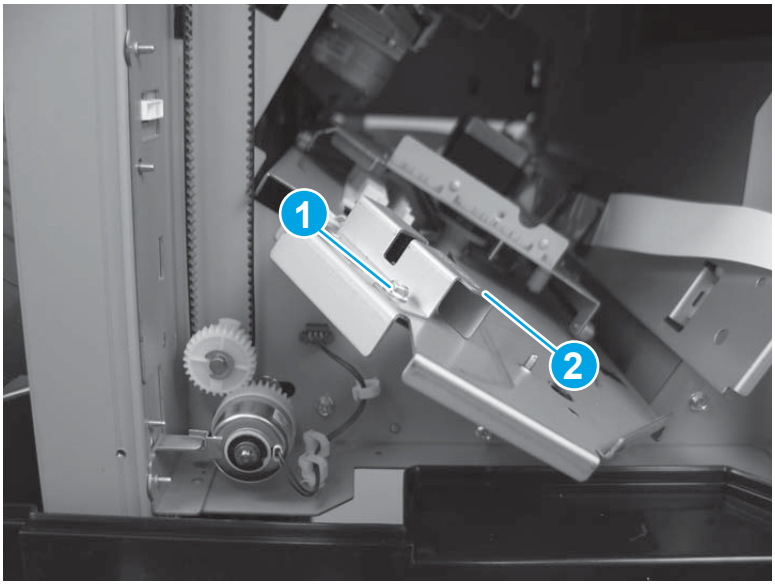
2. Carefully push the staple subassembly base into the accessory.

Figure 1-831 Remove the staple assembly (2 of 7)



3. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the sheet-metal sensor cover (callout 2).

Figure 1-832 Remove the staple assembly (3 of 7)

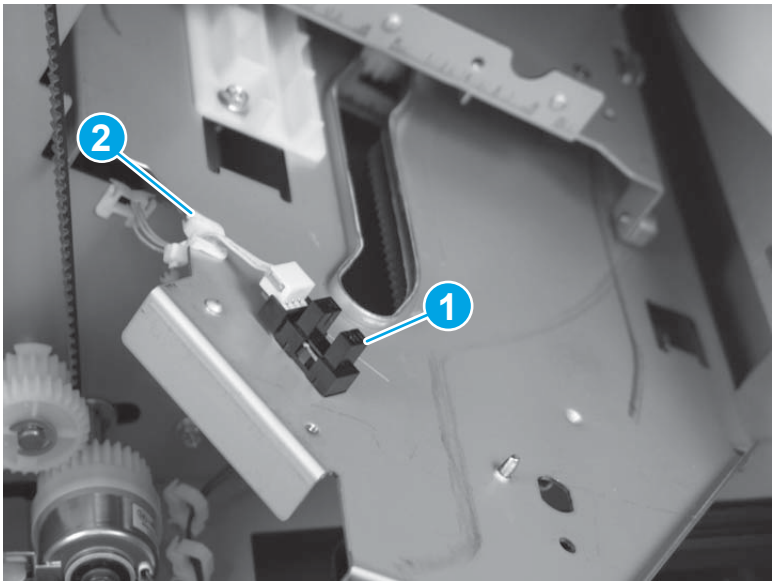


4. Release one sensor (callout 1), and then release one wire retainer (callout 2).

   To remove the sensor, use your finger to release the sensor tabs from the underside of the assembly.

TIP: It is easier to release the entire retainer from the sheet-metal stapler assembly tray than to try to release the wire harness from the retainer.

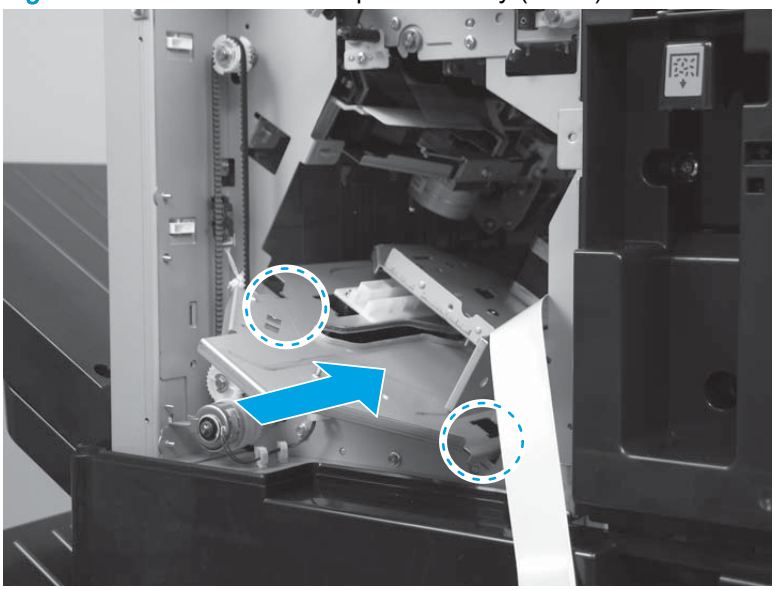
Figure 1-833 Remove the staple assembly (4 of 7)



5. Carefully push the stapler assembly about one-half way into the accessory to release two tabs under the front edge of the assembly.

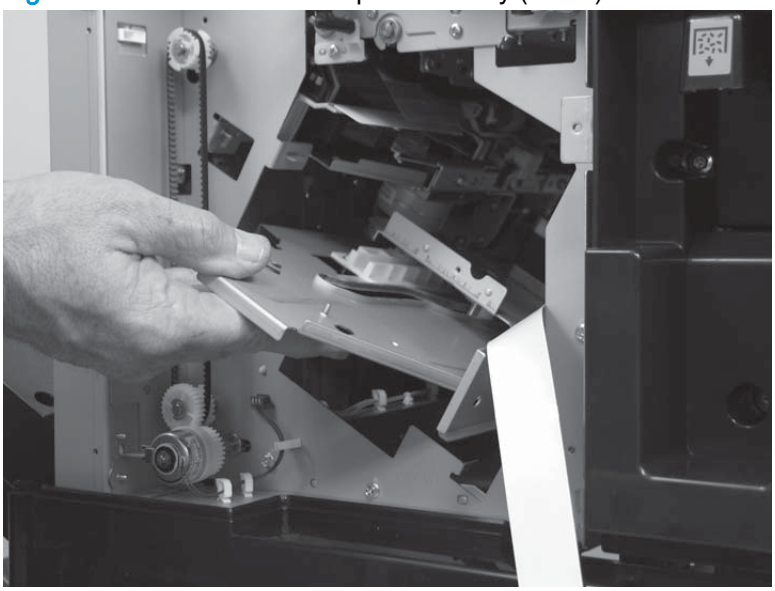
Reinstallation tip Make sure that the two tabs are engaged in the slots in the chassis when the assembly is reinstalled.

Figure 1-834 Remove the staple assembly (5 of 7)



6. Lift up the stapler assembly.

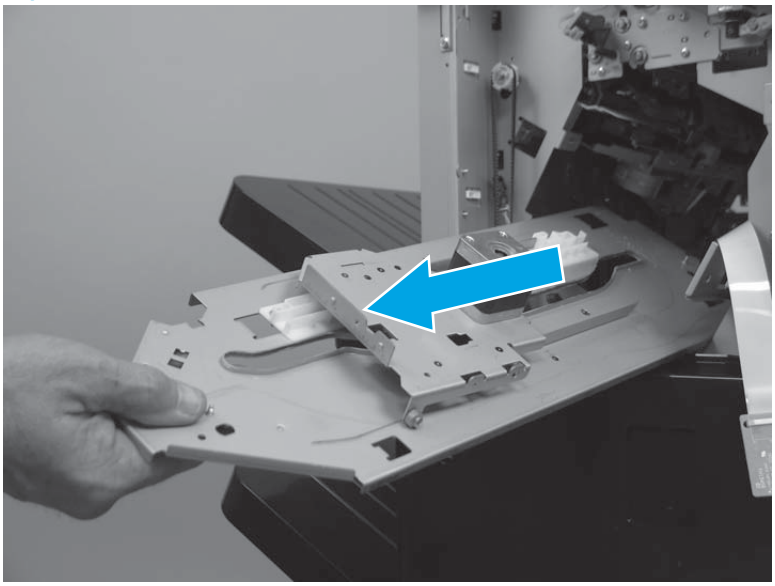
Figure 1-835 Remove the staple assembly (6 of 7)



7. Carefully slide the stapler assembly out of the accessory.

TIP: You might have to move the staple assembly up and down, and rotate it right and left, as you slide it out of the accessory to completely remove it.

Figure 1-836 Remove the staple assembly (7 of 7)



Paper detect holder assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

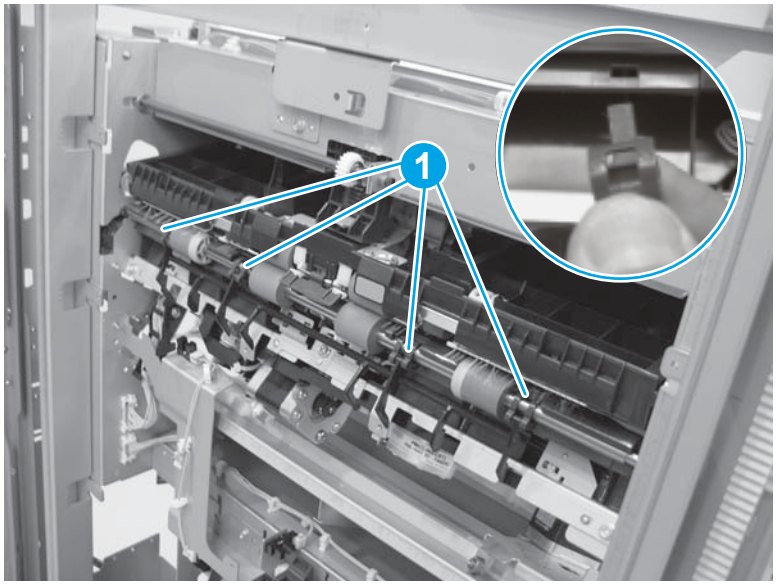
- Open/closed stepped cover assembly. See Open/closed stepped cover assembly on page 471.
- Upper stepped cover assembly. See Upper stepped cover assembly on page 472.
- Lower stepped cover assembly. See Lower stepped cover assembly on page 474.
- Bin cable guide cover. See Bin cable guide cover on page 492.
- Rear cover assembly. See Rear cover assembly on page 496.
- Stack wall upper cover. See Stack wall upper assembly and upper wall guide assembly on page 518.
- Stack upper bin and lower bin assembly. See Stack upper bin and lower bin assemblies on page 540.
- Height wall assembly. See Height wall assembly on page 546.

Remove the paper detect holder assembly

To remove the paper detect assembly, start at one end, grip each snap fastener at the base, and gently pull them to remove one at a time.

⚠ **CAUTION:** The assembly is very fragile. Grip the assembly by the snap fasteners (callout 1) and not by the arm.

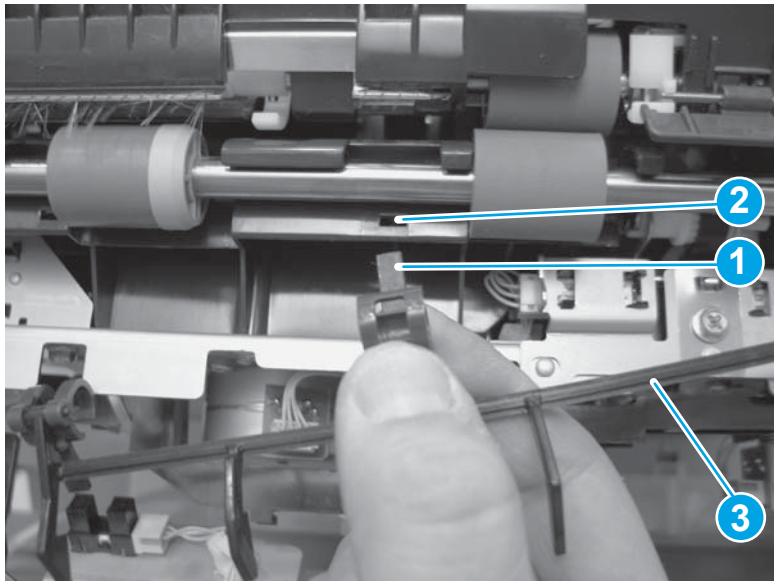
Figure 1-837 Remove the paper detect holder assembly



Reinstall the paper detect holder assembly

When reinstalling, the small tab (callout 1) on each snap fastener must be inserted into a hole (callout 2). The paper detect assembly (callout 3) will not work properly if the tabs are not installed correctly.

Figure 1-838 Reinstall the paper detect holder assembly



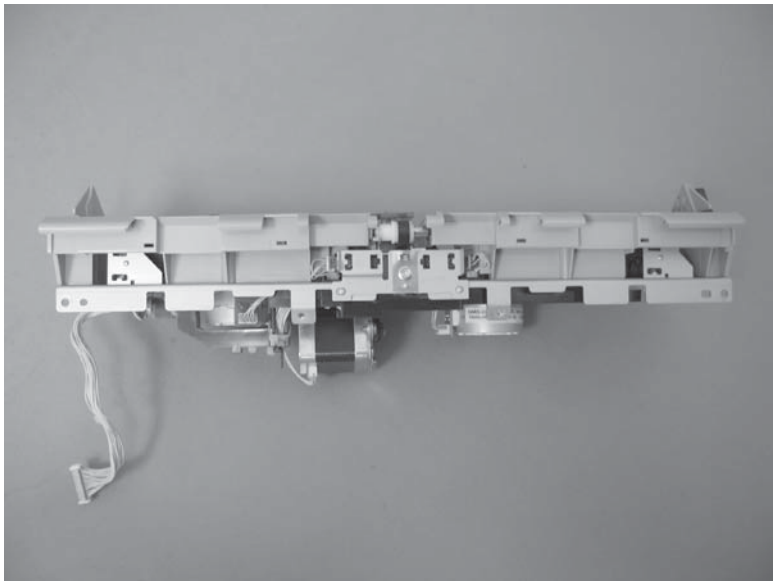
Operation tray assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Open/closed stepped cover assembly. See Open/closed stepped cover assembly on page 471.
- Upper stepped cover assembly. See Upper stepped cover assembly on page 472.
- Lower stepped cover assembly. See Lower stepped cover assembly on page 474.
- Front door. See Front door on page 479.
- Inner upper cover assembly. See Inner upper cover assembly on page 480.
- Bin cable guide cover. See Bin cable guide cover on page 492.
- Rear cover assembly. See Rear cover assembly on page 496.
- Main controller PCA assembly. See Main controller PCA assembly on page 498.
- Stack wall upper cover assembly. See Stack wall upper assembly and upper wall guide assembly on page 518.
- Stack upper bin and lower bin assembly. See Stack upper bin and lower bin assemblies on page 540.
- Height wall assembly. See Height wall assembly on page 546.
- Paper detect holder assembly. See Paper detect holder assembly on page 562.

The following figure shows the operation tray assembly. Use this figure to identify the assembly in the accessory.

Figure 1-839 Identify the operation tray assembly

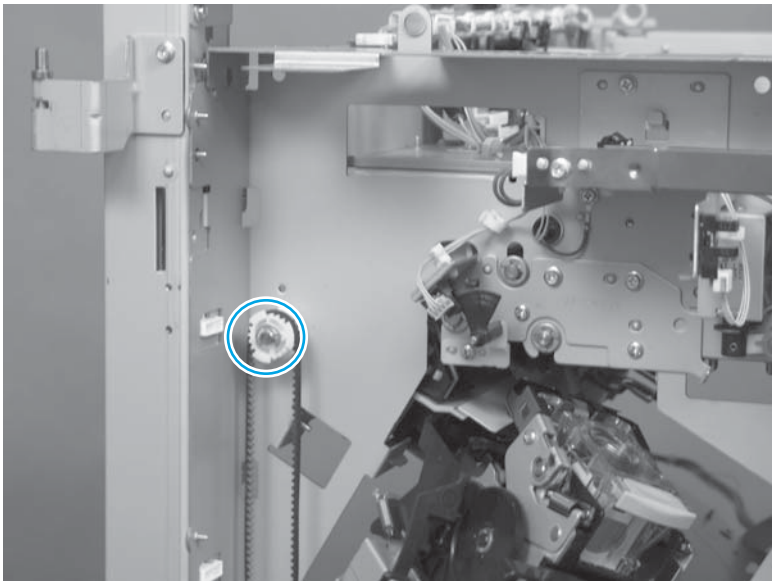


Remove the operation tray assembly

NOTE: Some of the figures in this procedure show white plastic drive gears. The gears in the accessory are black plastic. However, this removal procedure is correct for this accessory.

1. Remove one e-ring.

Figure 1-840 Remove the operation tray assembly (1 of 11)



2. Carefully slide the gear and belt (callout 1) off of the shaft, and then remove the locking pin (callout 2). The locking pin behind the gear is not captive. Do not lose the pin when removing the gear and belt.

TIP: Before removing the gear, rotate the gear until the lines on the gear face are vertical. This horizontally aligns the pin, and minimizes the possibility of it falling into the accessory when the gear is removed.

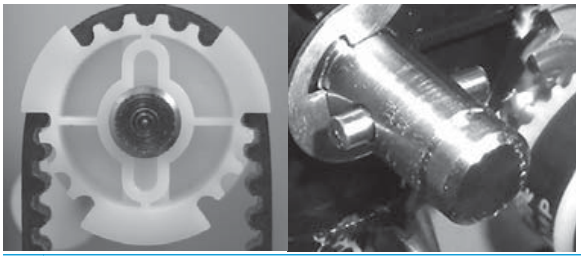
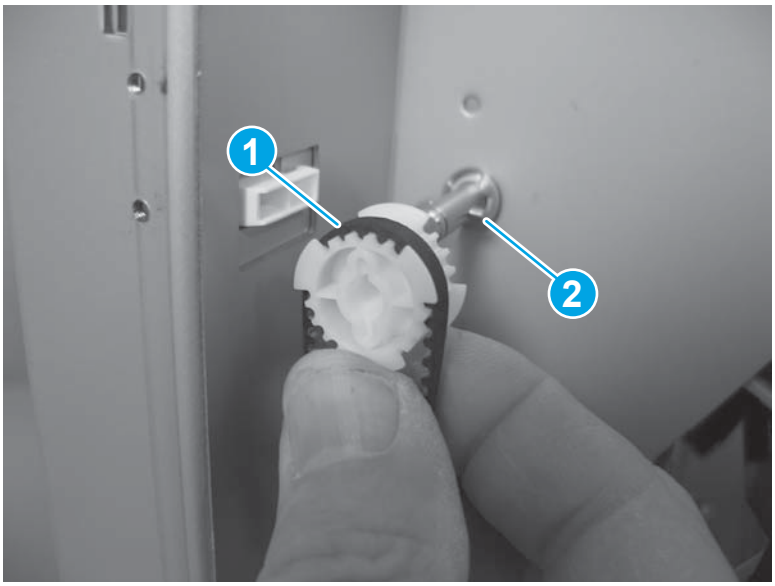


Figure 1-841 Remove the operation tray assembly (2 of 11)



3. Remove one e-ring.

Figure 1-842 Remove the operation tray assembly (3 of 11)

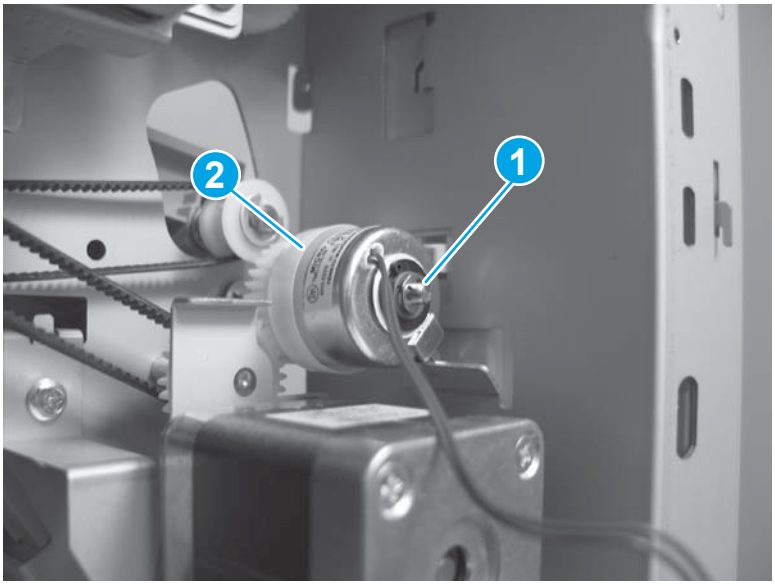
4. Remove one small-flat washer and one bearing.

TIP: It is easier to remove the washer and bearing by using a small flat-blade screwdriver.

Figure 1-843 Remove the operation tray assembly (4 of 11)

5. At the rear of the accessory, remove one e-ring (callout 1), and then slide the clutch (callout 2) off of the shaft to remove it.

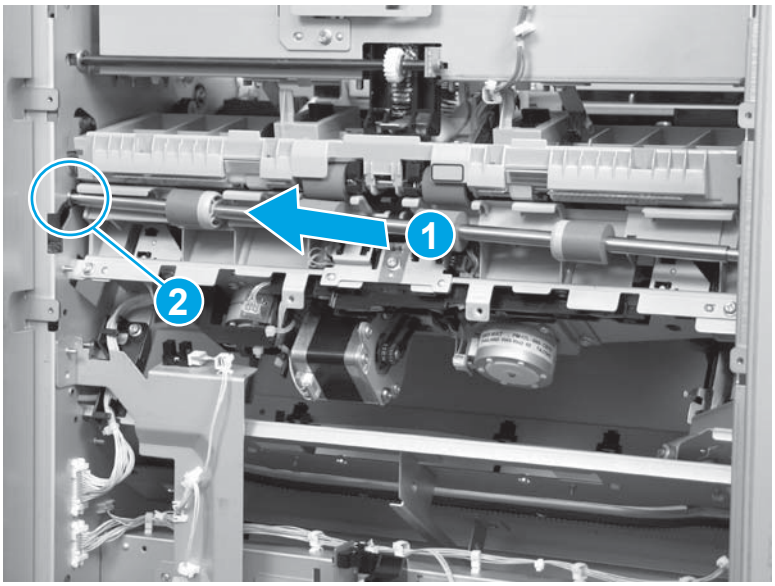
Figure 1-844 Remove the operation tray assembly (5 of 11)



6. Slide the stack-delivery roller to the left (callout 1) to release the bearing (callout 2).

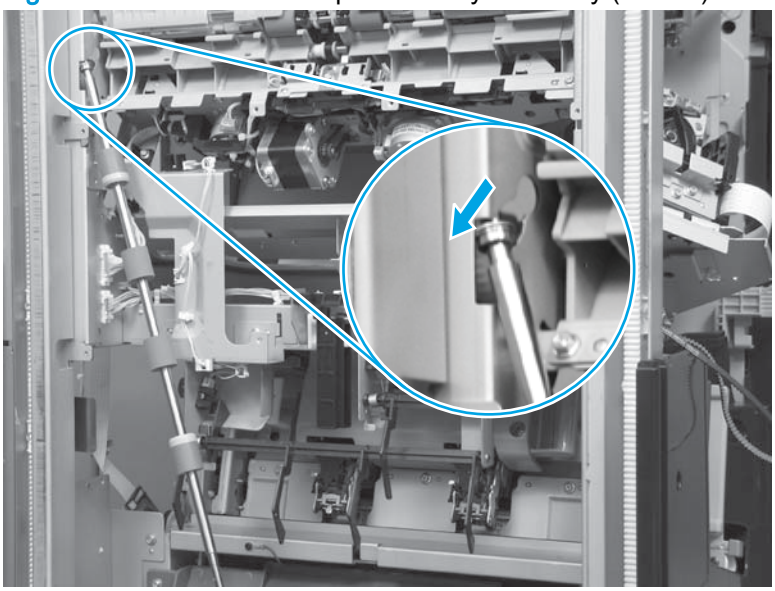
CAUTION: Avoid touching the rollers on the assembly. Skin oils can cause paper handling problems.

Figure 1-845 Remove the operation tray assembly (6 of 11)



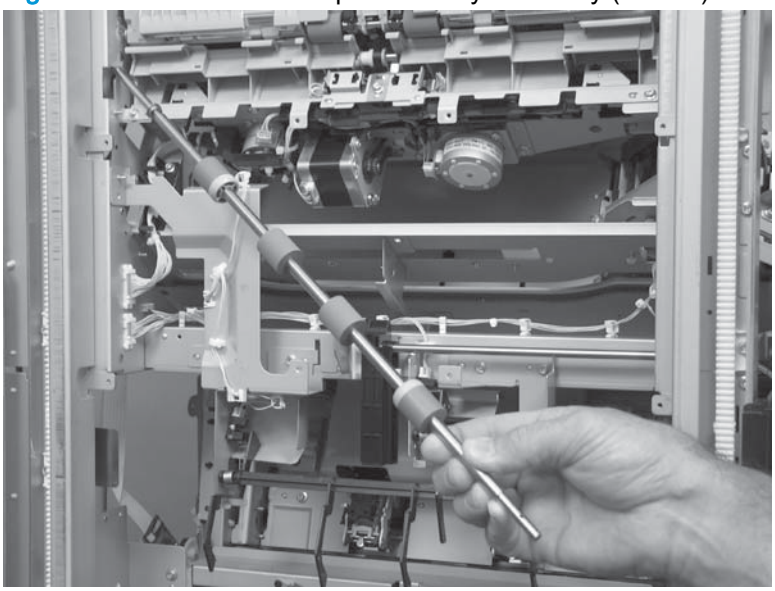
7. Carefully slide the bearing down the slot in the chassis.

Figure 1-846 Remove the operation tray assembly (7 of 11)



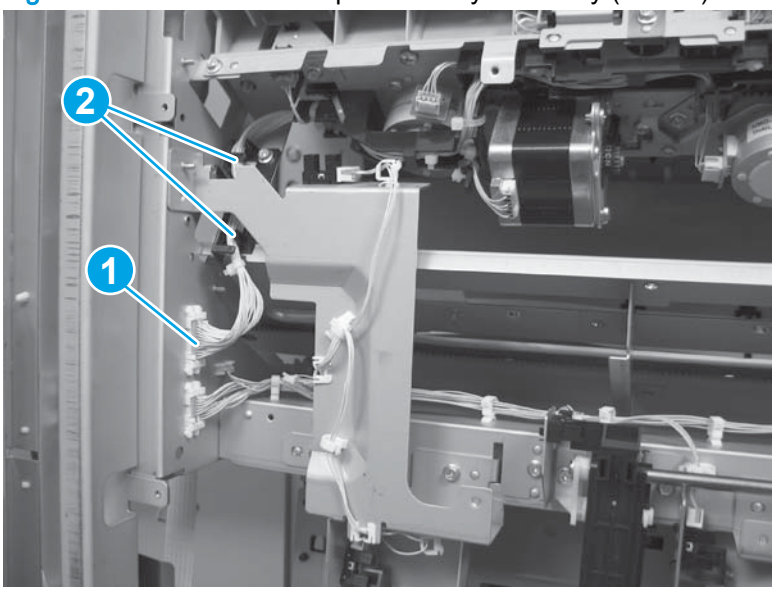
8. Remove the stack-delivery roller.

Figure 1-847 Remove the operation tray assembly (8 of 11)



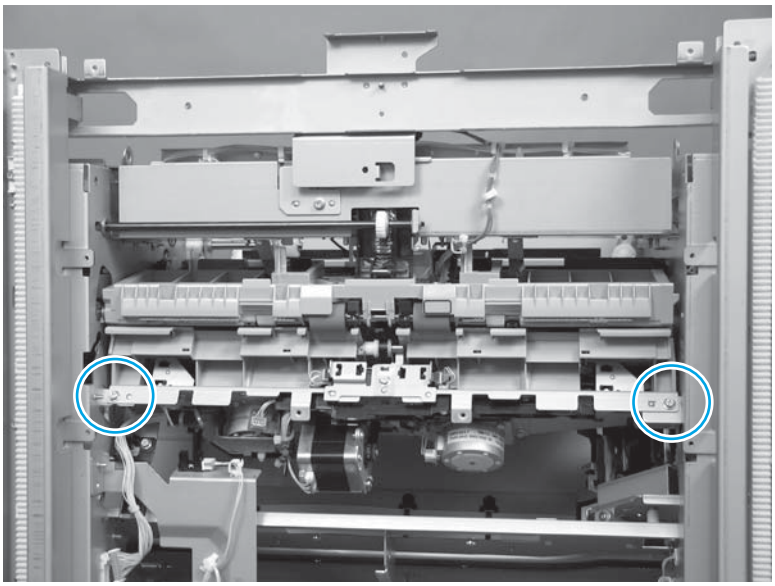
9. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then release the wire harness from the guide (callout 2).

Figure 1-848 Remove the operation tray assembly (9 of 11)



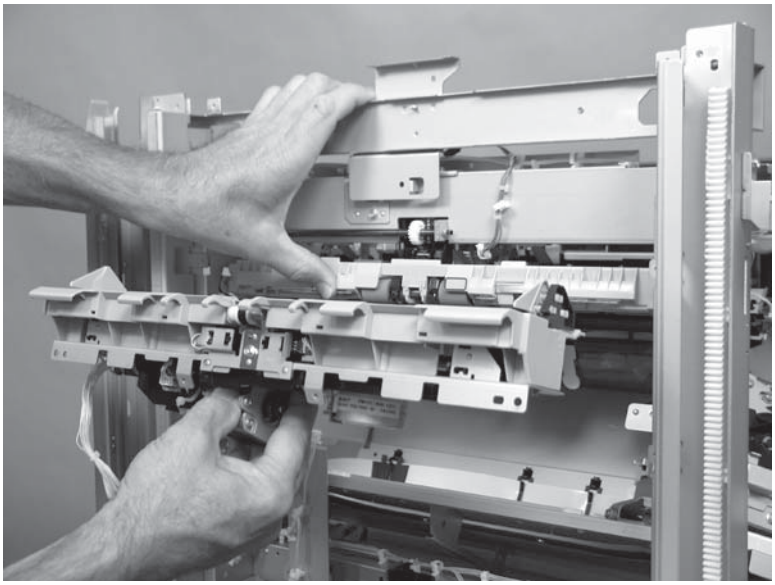
10. Remove two screws.

Figure 1-849 Remove the operation tray assembly (10 of 11)



11. Raise the swing guide assembly, and then remove the operation tray assembly.

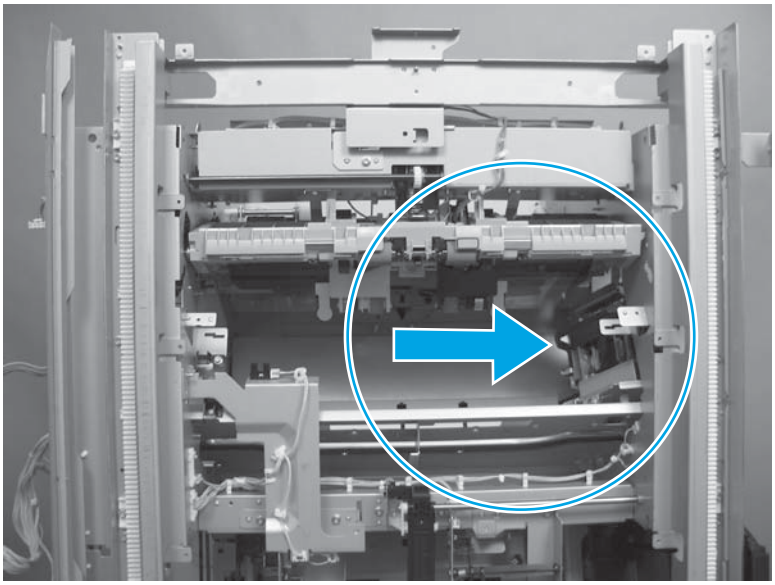
Figure 1-850 Remove the operation tray assembly (11 of 11)



Reinstall the operation tray assembly

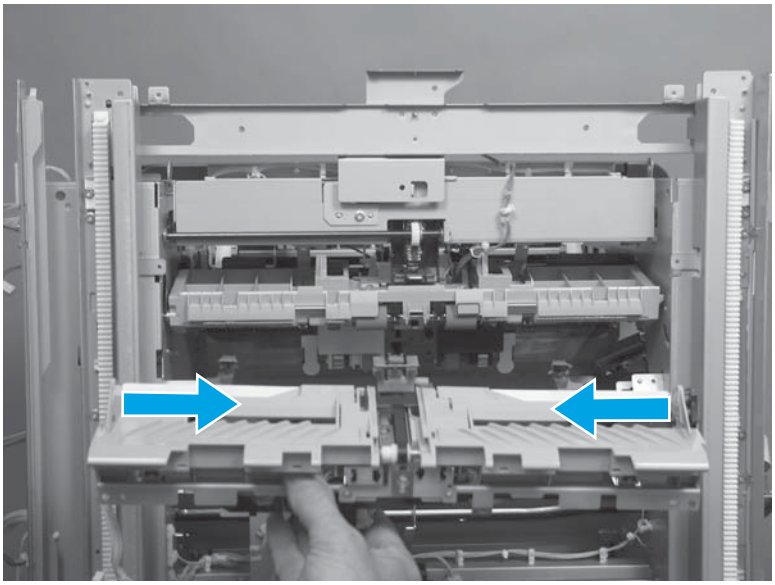
1. Before installing the operation tray assembly, make sure that the staple assembly is out of the way.

Figure 1-851 Reinstall the operation tray assembly (1 of 5)



2. On the assembly, slide the joggers to the inside position.

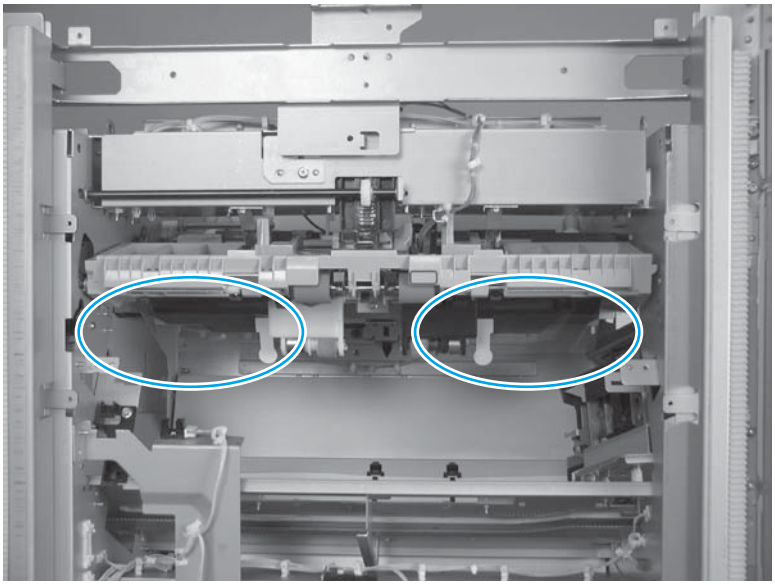
Figure 1-852 Reinstall the operation tray assembly (2 of 5)



3. When the assembly is installed, do not damage the mylar sheets inside the accessory.

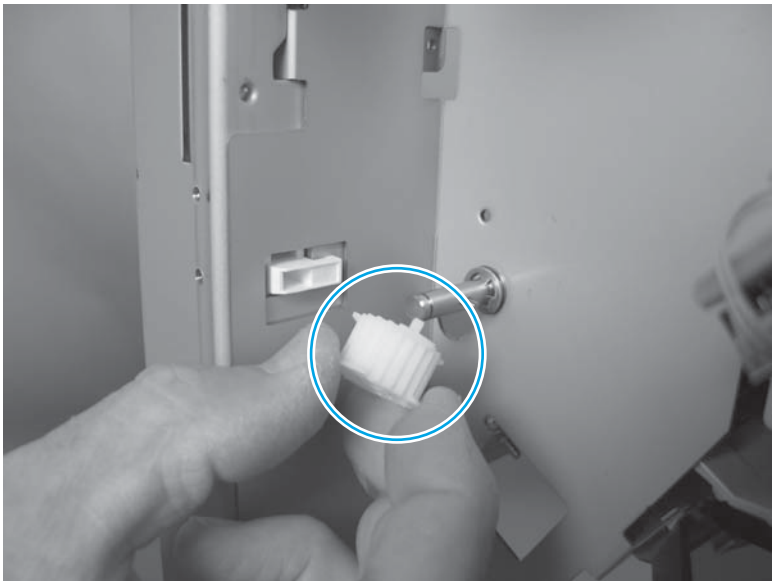
Locate the plastic pin on the back side of the gear. Install the gear with this pin facing the chassis. Then rotate the shaft so the hole is horizontal. Insert the metal locking pin, and then place the belt on the gear and slide the gear on the shaft so that it aligns with the locking pin in the slots on the gear.

Figure 1-853 Reinstall the operation tray assembly (3 of 5)



4. Before installing the drive gear, make sure that it will be positioned on the shaft with the white-plastic pin on the back of the gear facing the chassis.

Figure 1-854 Reinstall the operation tray assembly (4 of 5)

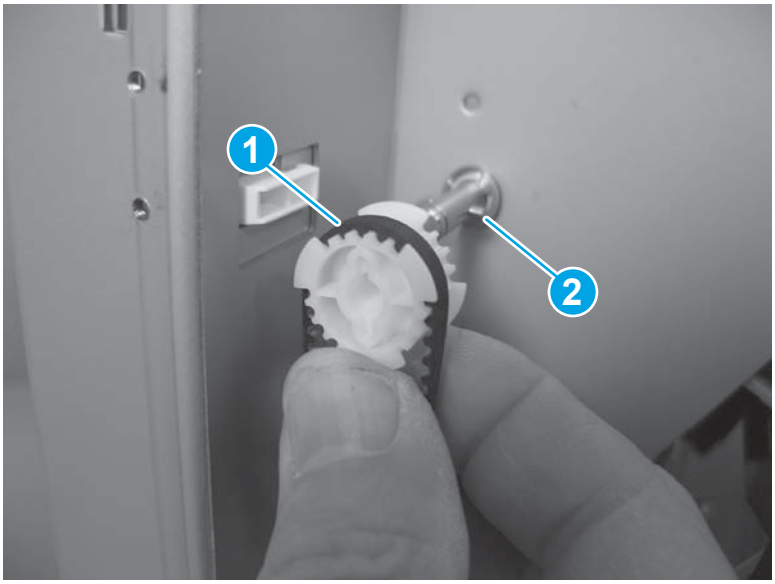


5. Rotate the shaft so that the locking pin hole is horizontal, install the locking pin (callout 1), place the belt on the gear, and then slide the gear onto the shaft (callout 2).

TIP: Rotate the gear until the lines on the gear face are vertical so that the slot on the back side of the gear for the locking pin is horizontally aligned.

When the gear is correctly installed on the shaft, the shaft should rotate when the gear is rotated —the gear should not freely rotate on the shaft.

Figure 1-855 Reinstall the operation tray assembly (5 of 5)



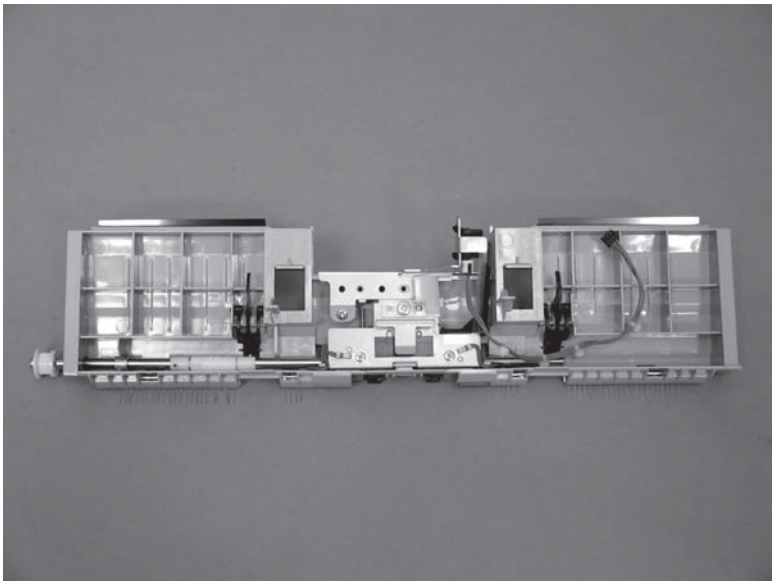
Swing guide assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Open/closed stepped cover assembly. See Open/closed stepped cover assembly on page 471.
- Upper stepped cover assembly. See Upper stepped cover assembly on page 472.
- Lower stepped cover assembly. See Lower stepped cover assembly on page 474.
- Top door assembly. See Top door assembly on page 478.
- Front door. See Front door on page 479.
- Inner upper cover assembly. See Inner upper cover assembly on page 480.
- Bin cable guide cover. See Bin cable guide cover on page 492.
- Rear cover assembly. See Rear cover assembly on page 496.
- Main controller PCA assembly. See Main controller PCA assembly on page 498.
- Stack wall upper cover assembly. See Stack wall upper assembly and upper wall guide assembly on page 518.
- Stack upper bin and lower bin assembly. See Stack upper bin and lower bin assemblies on page 540.
- Height wall assembly. See Height wall assembly on page 546.
- Paper detect holder assembly. See Paper detect holder assembly on page 562.
- Operation tray assembly. See Operation tray assembly on page 564.

The following figure shows the swing guide assembly. Use this figure to identify the assembly in the accessory.

Figure 1-856 Identify the operation tray assembly

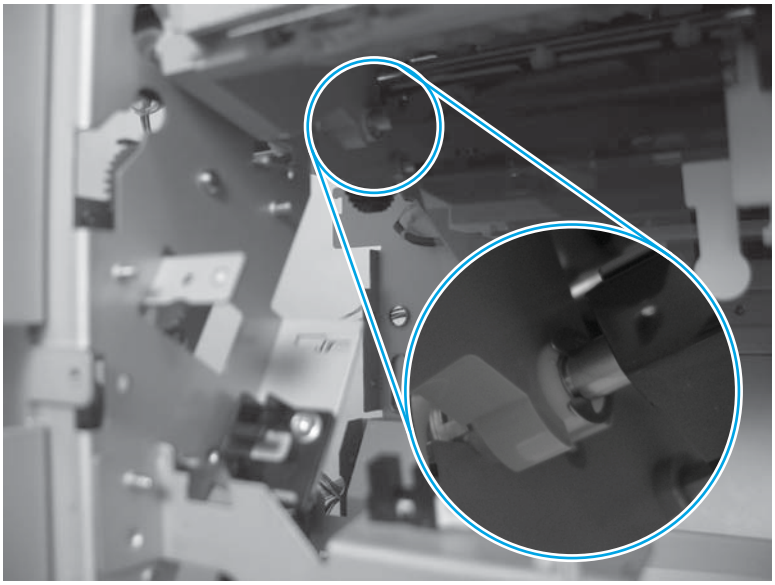


Remove the swing guide assembly

1. Look inside the accessory where the operation tray assembly was removed. Locate and remove one e-ring.

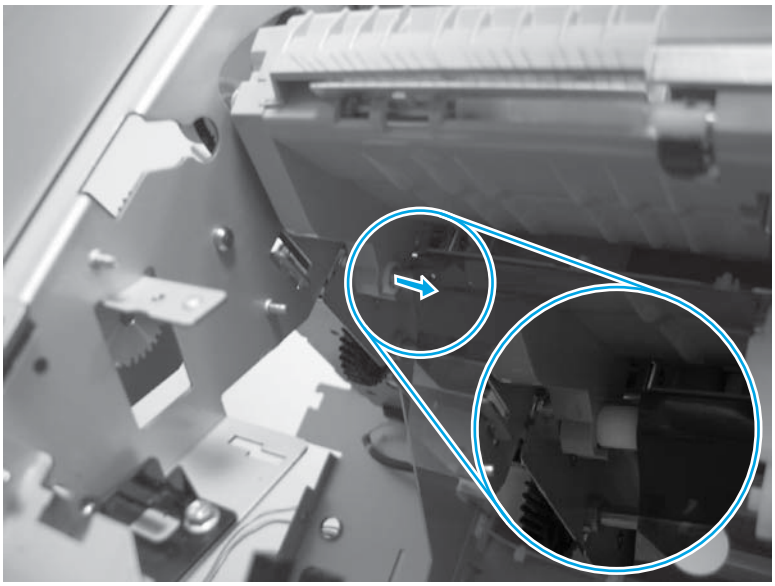
NOTE: This e-ring is located on the inside rear wall of the chassis.

Figure 1-857 Remove the swing guide assembly (1 of 12)



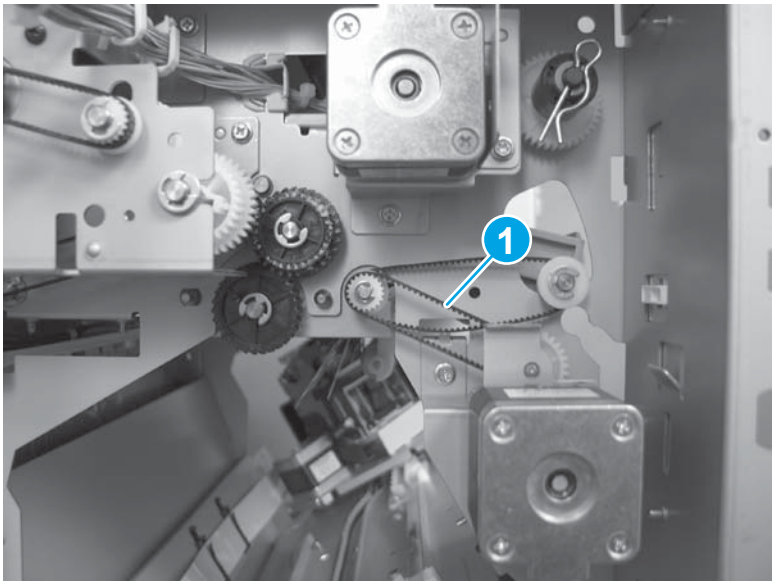
2. Slide the white-plastic bushing out of the holder.

Figure 1-858 Remove the swing guide assembly (2 of 12)



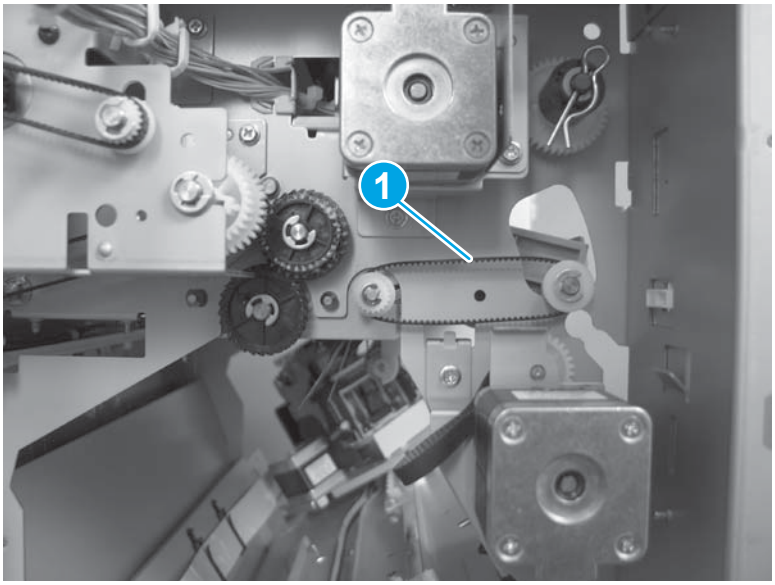
3. Release one belt (callout 1), and then move it out of the way.

Figure 1-859 Remove the swing guide assembly (3 of 12)



4. Remove one belt (callout 1).

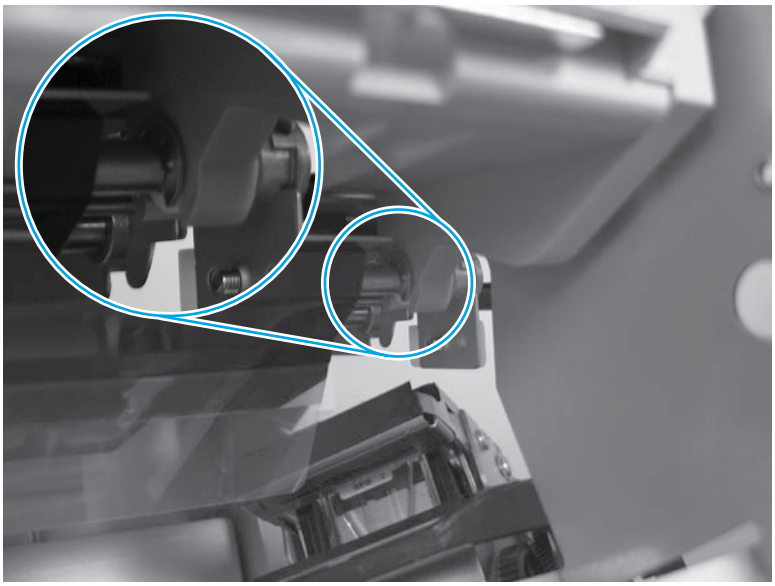
Figure 1-860 Remove the swing guide assembly (4 of 12)



5. Look inside the accessory where the operation tray assembly was removed. Locate and remove one e-ring. Slide the bushing out of the holder.

NOTE: This e-ring and bushing are located on the inside front wall of the chassis.

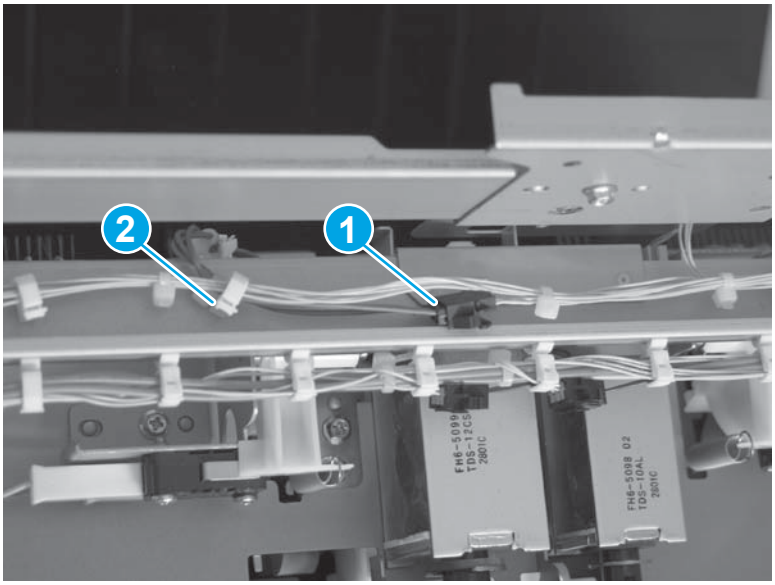
Figure 1-861 Remove the swing guide assembly (5 of 12)



6. At the top of the accessory, disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then release the wire harness from one retainer (callout 2).

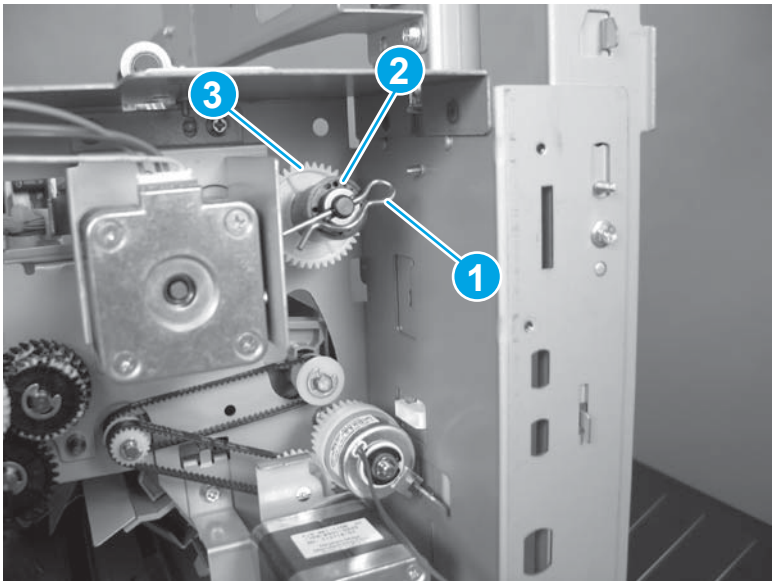
TIP: Follow the wire harness to the swing guide assembly, and release two more retainers (not shown) on the front and bottom of the cross member assembly.

Figure 1-862 Remove the swing guide assembly (6 of 12)



7. At the rear of the accessory, remove one retainer pin (callout 1), and then slide the clutch (callout 2) and gear (callout 3) off the shaft to remove them.

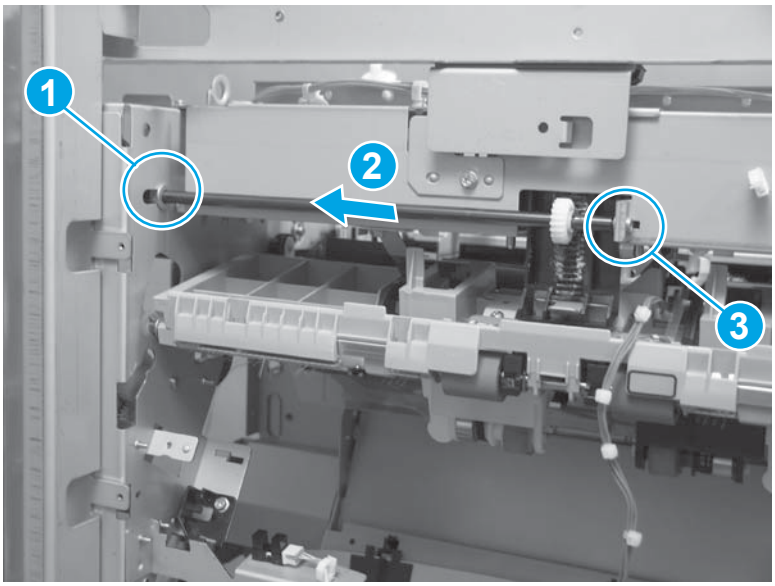
Figure 1-863 Remove the swing guide assembly (7 of 12)



8. At the output side of the accessory, remove one e-ring (callout 1), slide the gear shaft to the left (callout 2), and then remove one bushing (callout 3).

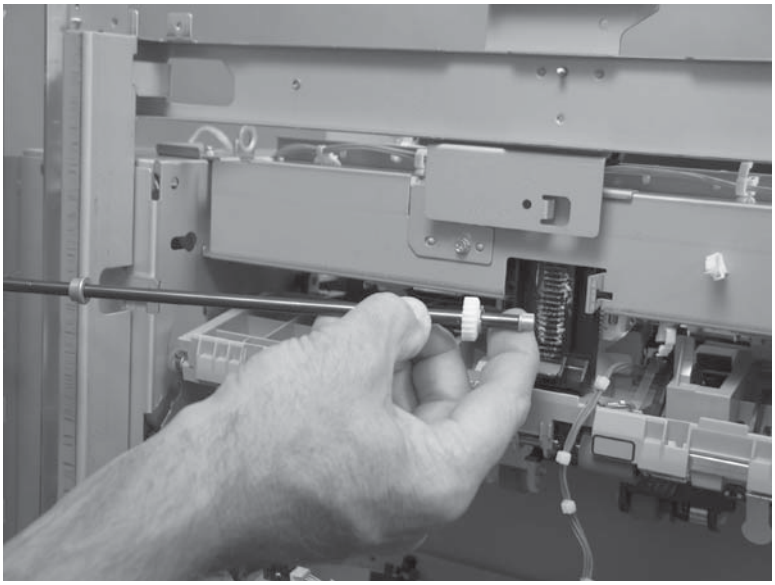
⚠ CAUTION: Do not lose the bushing (callout 3).

Figure 1-864 Remove the swing guide assembly (8 of 12)



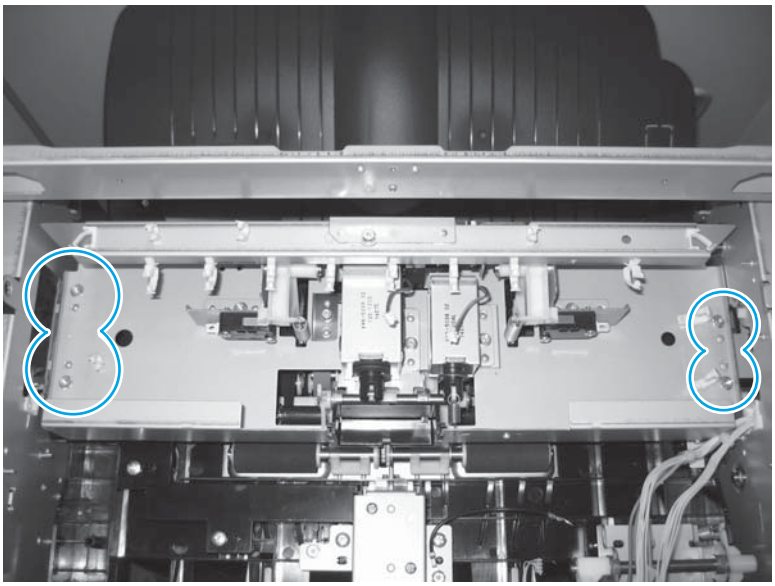
9. Remove the gear-shaft assembly.

Figure 1-865 Remove the swing guide assembly (9 of 12)



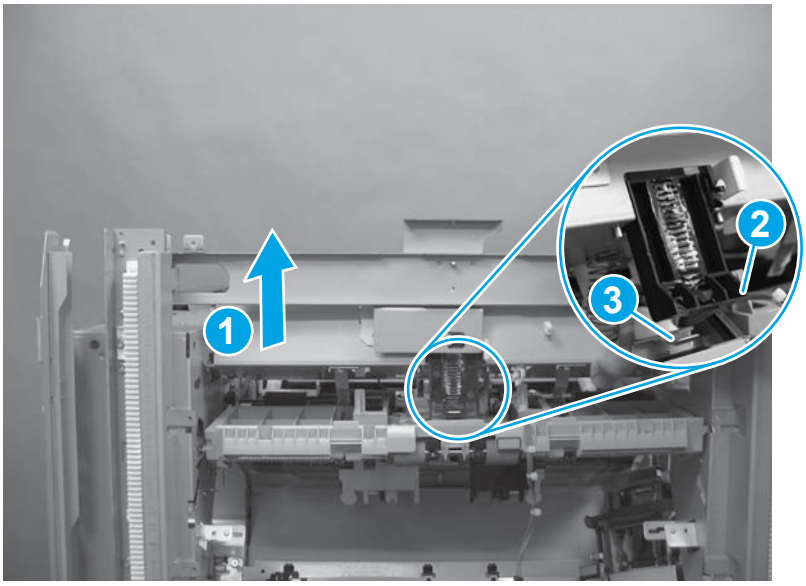
10. At the top of the accessory, loosen, but do not remove, four screws on the upper cross member assembly.

Figure 1-866 Remove the swing guide assembly (10 of 12)



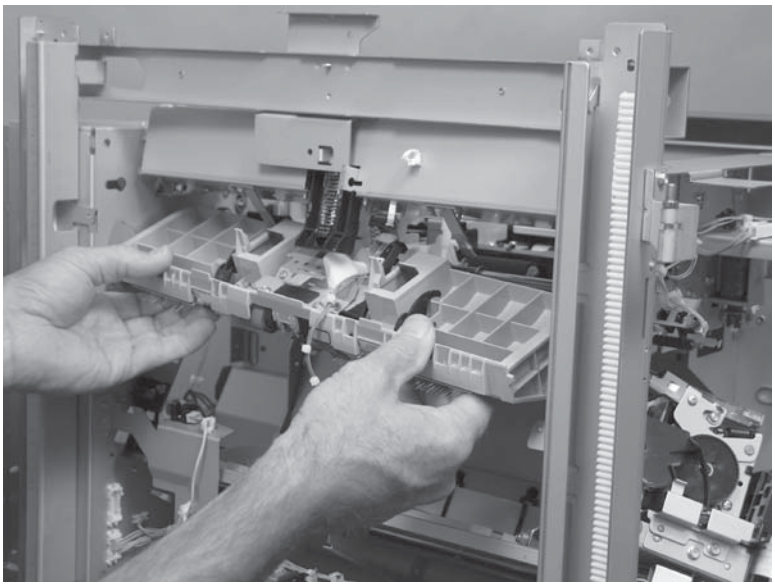
11. Carefully lift up on the edge of the upper cross member assembly (callout 1), and then separate the black-plastic gear rack (callout 2) from the sheet-metal tab (callout 3).

Figure 1-867 Remove the swing guide assembly (11 of 12)



12. Carefully remove the swing guide assembly.

Figure 1-868 Remove the swing guide assembly (12 of 12)



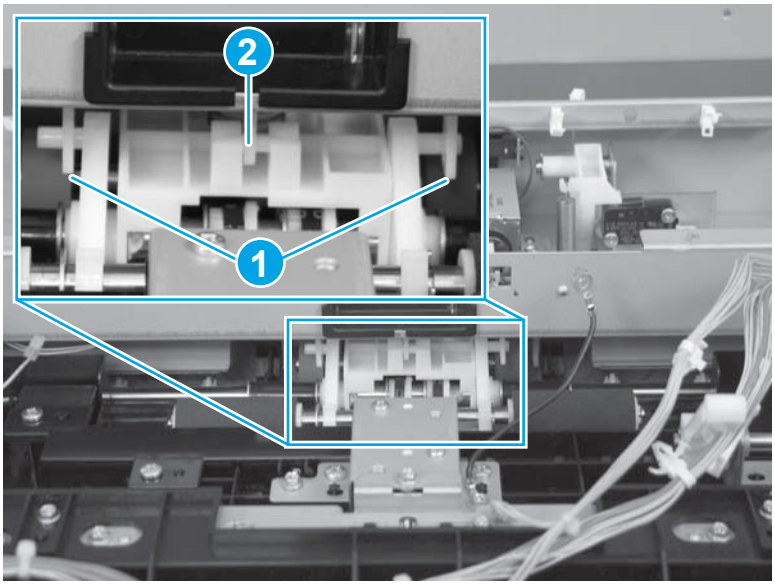
Reinstall the swing guide assembly

1. After the swing guide is reinstalled, verify that the two pivot arms on the upper cross member are positioned in front of the pins (callout 1), and that the locking bar is seated in the cradle (callout 2).

NOTE: Do not forget to retighten the four upper cross member mounting screws.

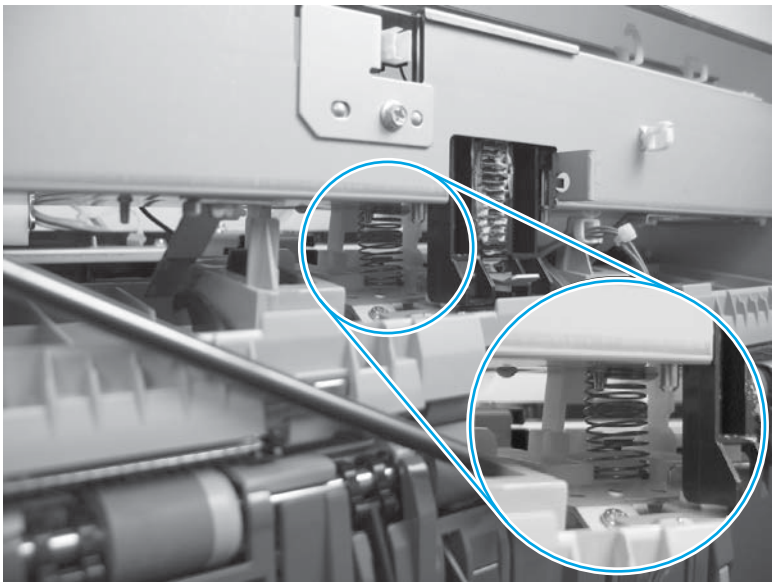
Reinstallation tip If the swing guide assembly is removed and replaced and the message **13.60.A1 Jam in Top Left Door** appears on the control panel display (or in the event log) after the product power is turned on, the two pivot arms or the locking bar might not have been properly installed.

Figure 1-869 Reinstall the swing guide assembly (1 of 7)



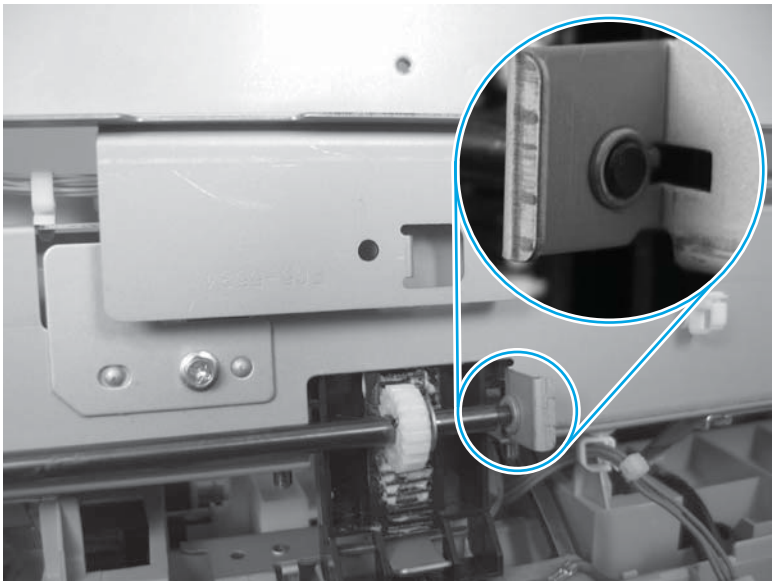
2. Verify that the spring underneath the upper cross member assembly is correctly positioned.

Figure 1-870 Reinstall the swing guide assembly (2 of 7)



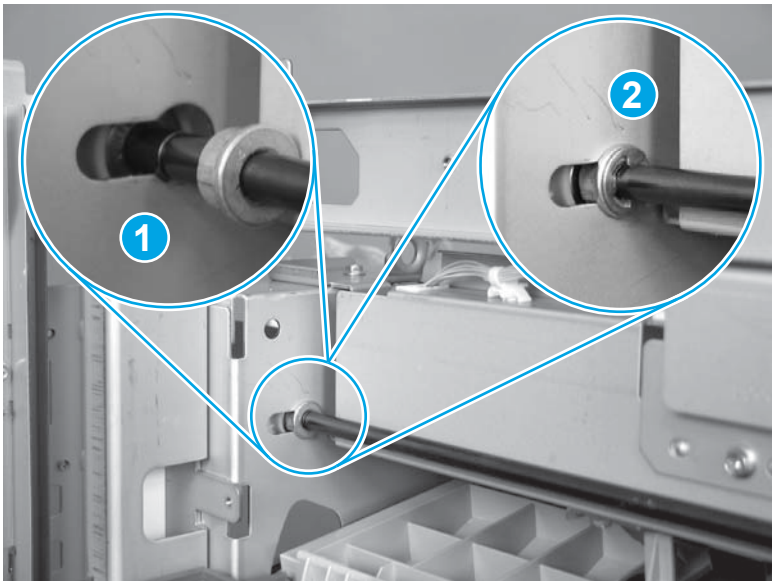
3. To reinstall the gear shaft right-side bushing, align the keyed portion of the bushing with the slot in the chassis mounting tab.

Figure 1-871 Reinstall the swing guide assembly (3 of 7)



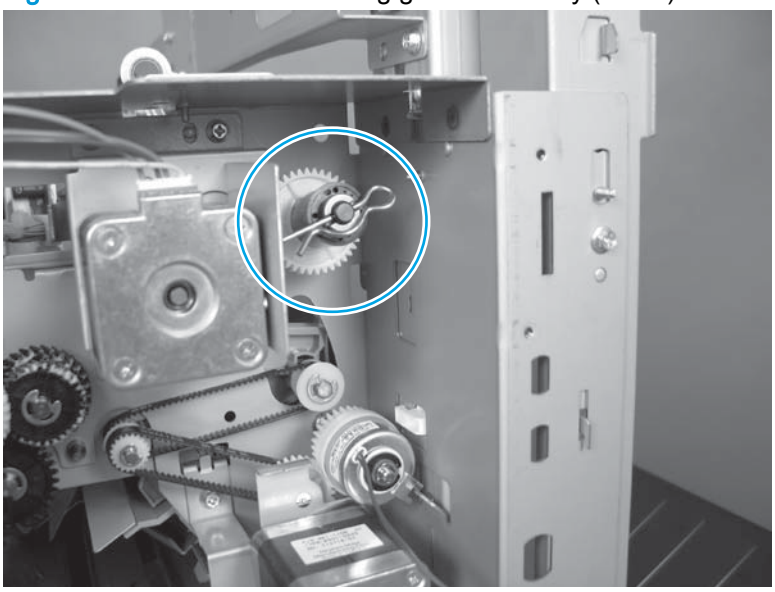
4. To reinstall the gear shaft left-side bushing, align the keyed portion of the bushing with the slot in the chassis (callout 1), and then install the e-ring (callout 2).

Figure 1-872 Reinstall the swing guide assembly (4 of 7)



5. Make sure that the clutch is correctly position on the gear—two tabs on the clutch engage two slots on the gear face—and that the pin is positioned in the slot on the end of the shaft.

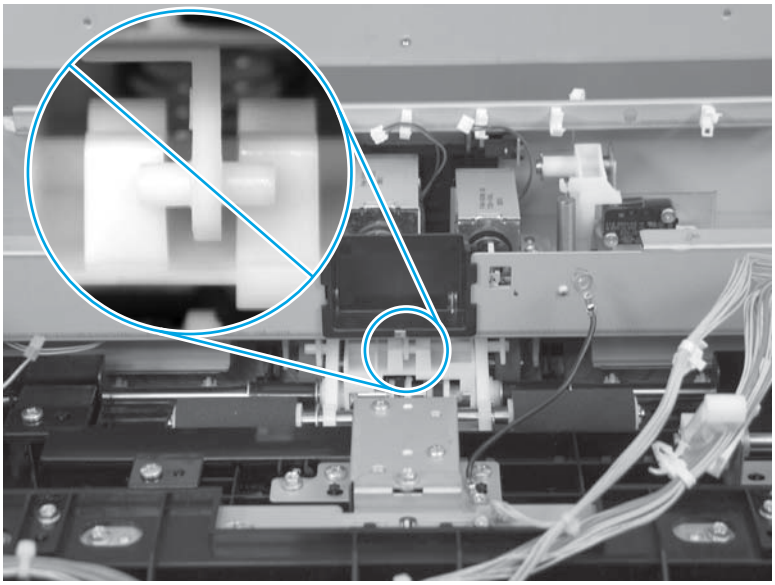
Figure 1-873 Reinstall the swing guide assembly (5 of 7)



6. Recheck the locking bar underneath the upper cross member assembly. Verify that it is correctly positioned in the cradle. If it is not correctly positioned, slightly lift up the upper cross member assembly and reposition the locking bar in the cradle.

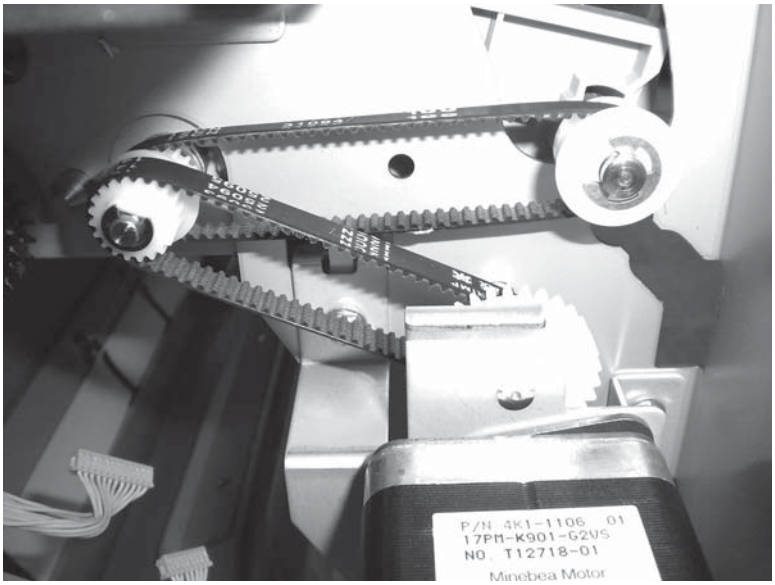
TIP: If necessary, slightly loosen, but do not remove, the assembly mounting screws to allow the assembly to be lifted up. Make sure that you retighten the mounting screws.

Figure 1-874 Reinstall the swing guide assembly (6 of 7)



7. Make sure that the drive belts are correctly installed.

Figure 1-875 Reinstall the swing guide assembly (7 of 7)



Return roller assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

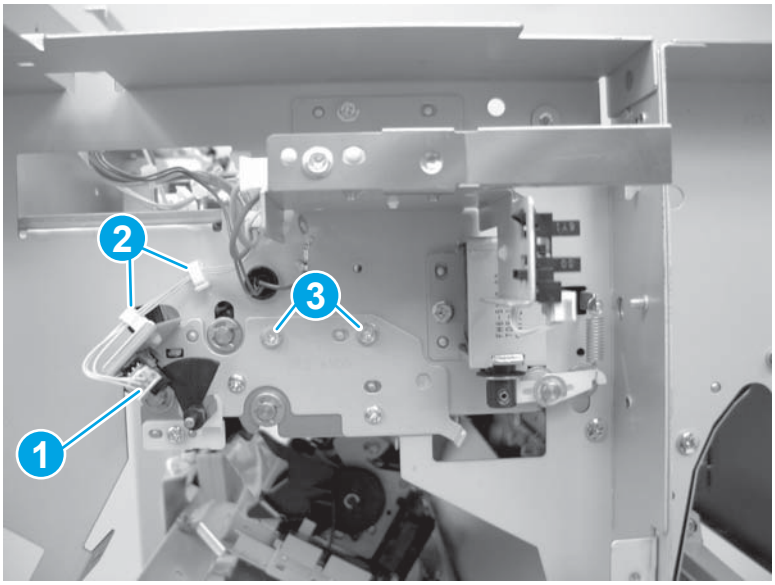
- Latch lower covers (front and rear). See Latch lower covers (front and rear) on page 468.
- Open/closed stepped cover assembly. See Open/closed stepped cover assembly on page 471.
- Upper stepped cover assembly. See Upper stepped cover assembly on page 472.
- Lower stepped cover assembly. See Lower stepped cover assembly on page 474.
- Top door assembly. See Top door assembly on page 478.
- Front door. See Front door on page 479.
- Inner upper cover assembly. See Inner upper cover assembly on page 480.
- Bin cable guide cover. See Bin cable guide cover on page 492.
- Rear cover assembly. See Rear cover assembly on page 496.
- Main controller PCA assembly. See Main controller PCA assembly on page 498.
- Stack wall upper cover assembly. See Stack wall upper assembly and upper wall guide assembly on page 518.
- Stack upper bin and lower bin assembly. See Stack upper bin and lower bin assemblies on page 540.
- Height wall assembly. See Height wall assembly on page 546.
- Paper detect holder assembly. See Paper detect holder assembly on page 562.
- Operation tray assembly. See Operation tray assembly on page 564.
- Swing guide assembly. See Swing guide assembly on page 575.

Remove the return roller assembly

1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), release two wire retainers (callout 2), and then remove two screws (callout 3).

TIP: To make removing the return roller assembly easier, push the stapler assembly all the way inside the accessory.

Figure 1-876 Remove the return roller assembly (1 of 2)

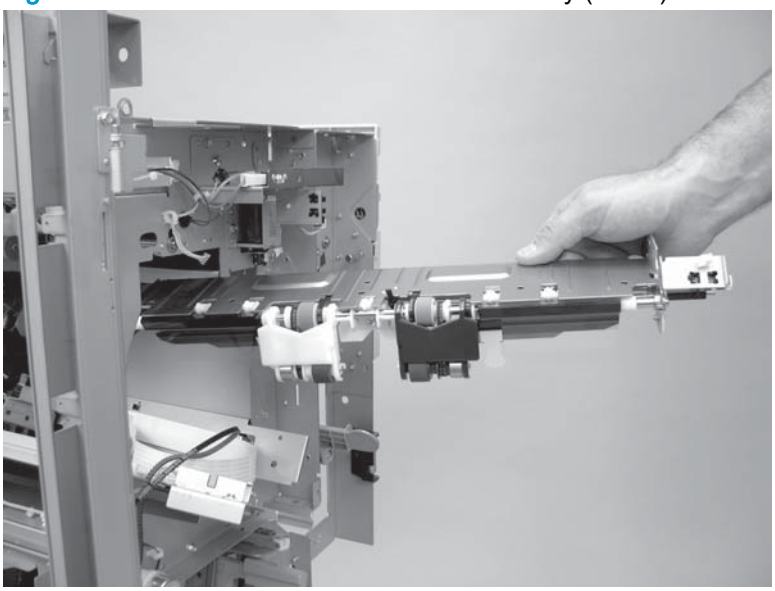


2. Remove the return roller assembly from the front side of the chassis.

NOTE: When you remove the assembly, use both hands to support the return roller.

TIP: Do not damage the mylar sheet during removal or replacement.

Figure 1-877 Remove the return roller assembly (2 of 2)



Clutch assembly (rear side)

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

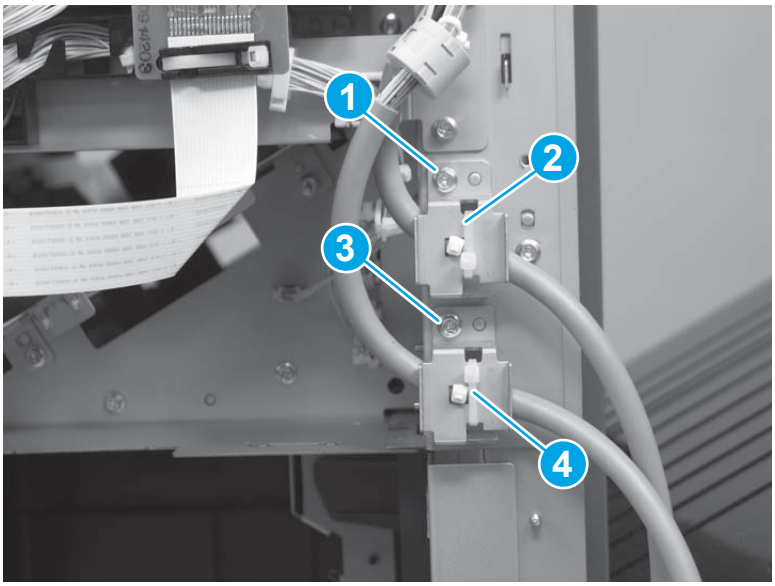
- Bin cable guide cover. See Bin cable guide cover on page 492.
- Rear cover assembly. See Rear cover assembly on page 496.

Remove the clutch assembly (rear side)

1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the upper sheet-metal cable retainer (callout 2).

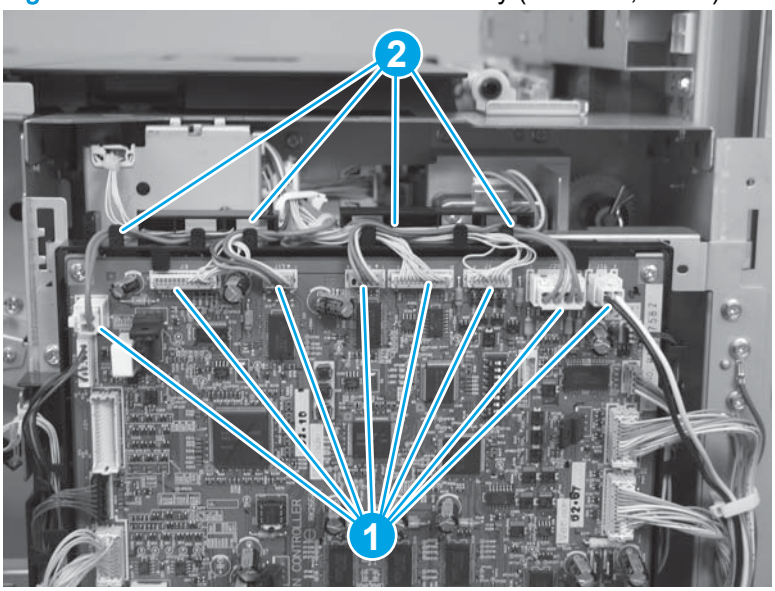
   Remove one screw (callout 3), and then remove the lower sheet-metal cable retainer (callout 4).

   Figure 1-878 Remove the clutch assembly (rear side; 1 of 6)

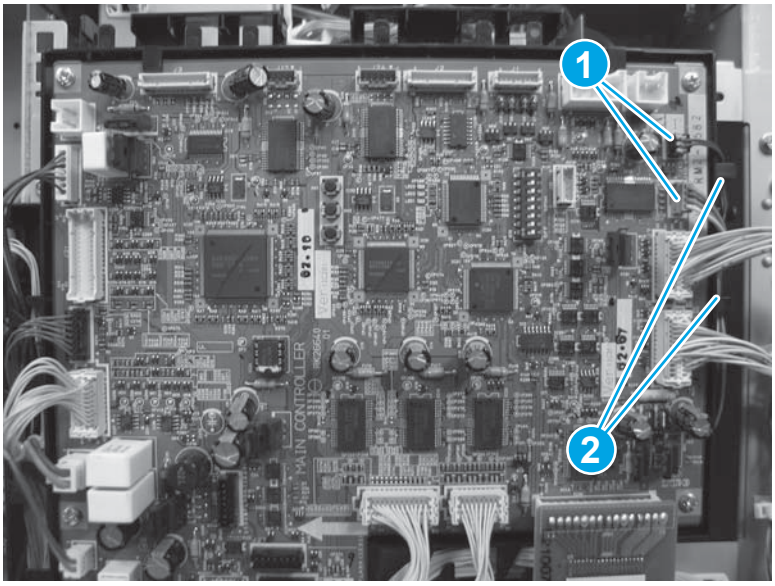
2. Disconnect eight connectors (callout 1), and then release the four wire harnesses from the retainer and guide (callout 2).

   Figure 1-879 Remove the clutch assembly (rear side; 2 of 6)

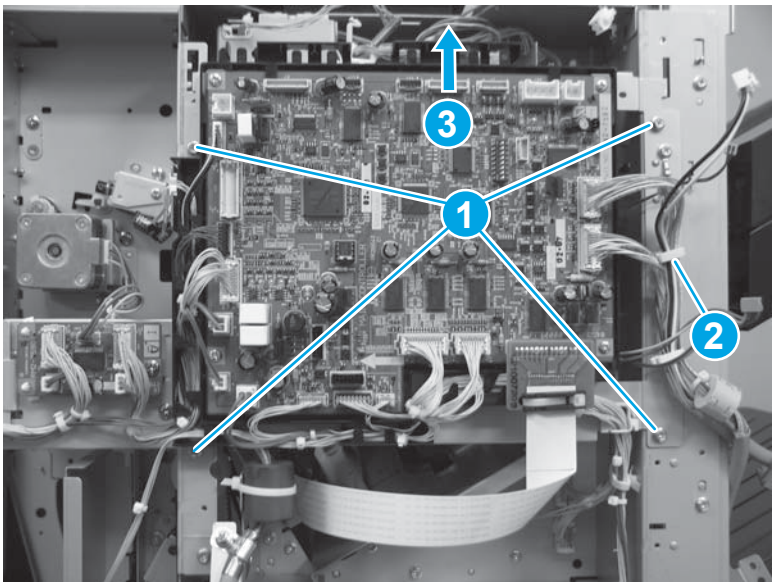
3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then release the two wire harnesses from the retainers (callout 2).

Figure 1-880 Remove the clutch assembly (rear side; 3 of 6)



4. Remove four screws (callout 1), release the wire harness from one retainer (callout 2), and then slightly lift up on the controller PCA sheet-metal bracket (callout 3) to release it.

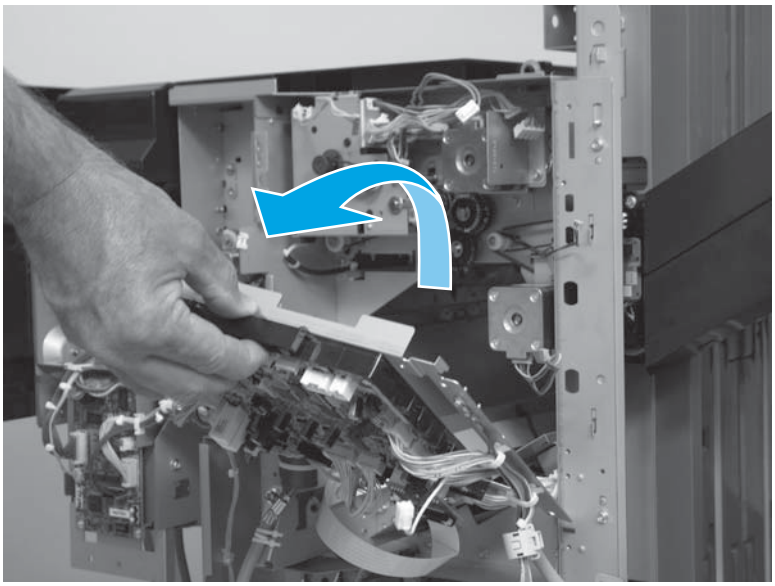
Figure 1-881 Remove the clutch assembly (rear side; 4 of 6)



5. Carefully rotate the top of the controller PCA away from the chassis and then move it out of the way.

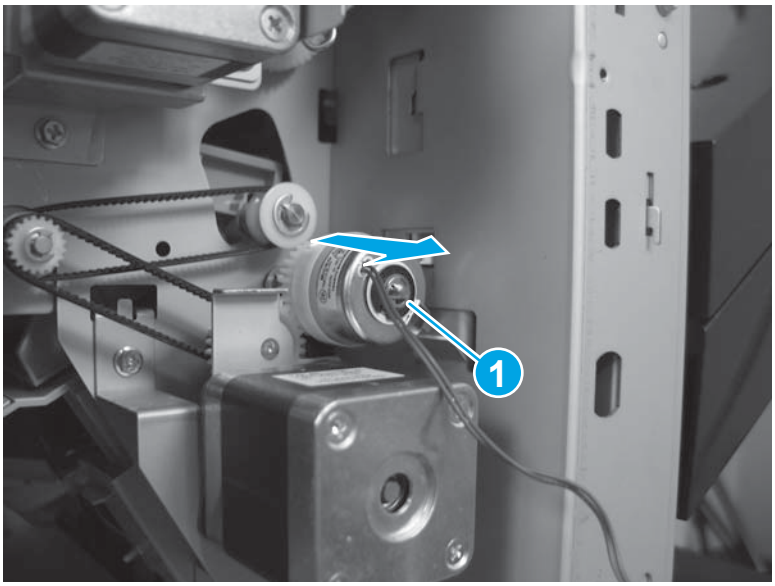
NOTE: If needed, release additional wire harnesses from retainers to make it easier to rotate the PCA out of the way.

Figure 1-882 Remove the clutch assembly (rear side; 5 of 6)



6. Remove one e-ring (callout 1), and then slide the clutch off the shaft to remove it.

Figure 1-883 Remove the clutch assembly (rear side; 6 of 6)



Stack ejection motor assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

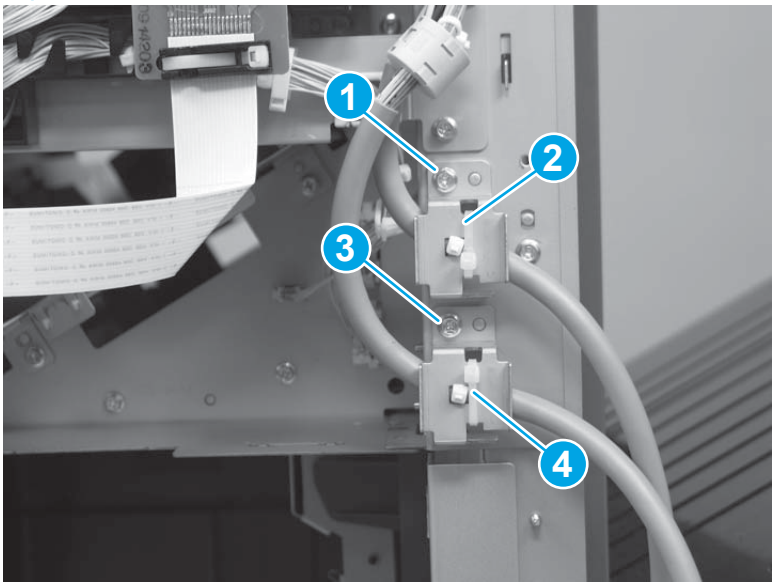
- Bin cable guide cover. See Bin cable guide cover on page 492.
- Rear cover assembly. See Rear cover assembly on page 496.

Remove the stack ejection motor assembly

1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the upper sheet-metal cable retainer (callout 2).

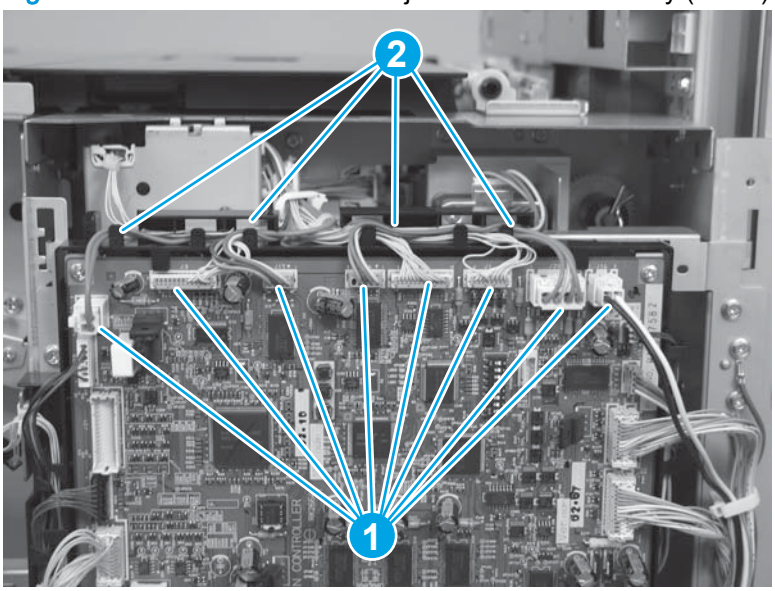
   Remove one screw (callout 3), and then remove the lower sheet-metal cable retainer (callout 4).

   Figure 1-884 Remove the stack ejection motor assembly (1 of 7)

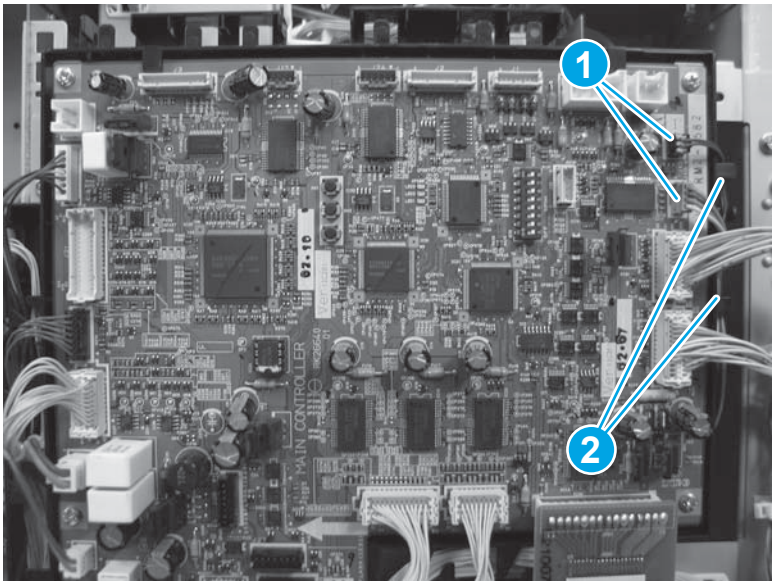
2. Disconnect eight connectors (callout 1), and then release the four wire harnesses from the retainer and guide (callout 2).

   Figure 1-885 Remove the stack ejection motor assembly (2 of 7)

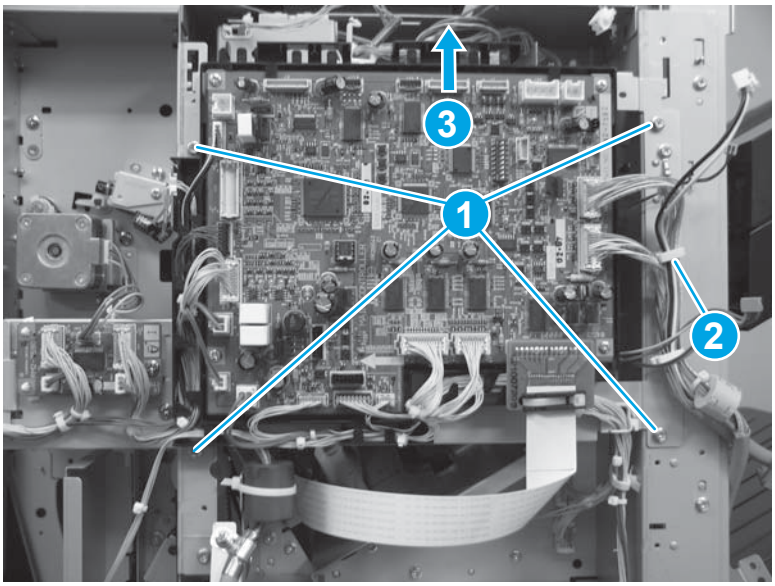
3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then release the two wire harnesses from the retainers (callout 2).

Figure 1-886 Remove the stack ejection motor assembly (3 of 7)



4. Remove four screws (callout 1), release the wire harness from one retainer (callout 2), and then slightly lift up on the controller PCA sheet-metal bracket (callout 3) to release it.

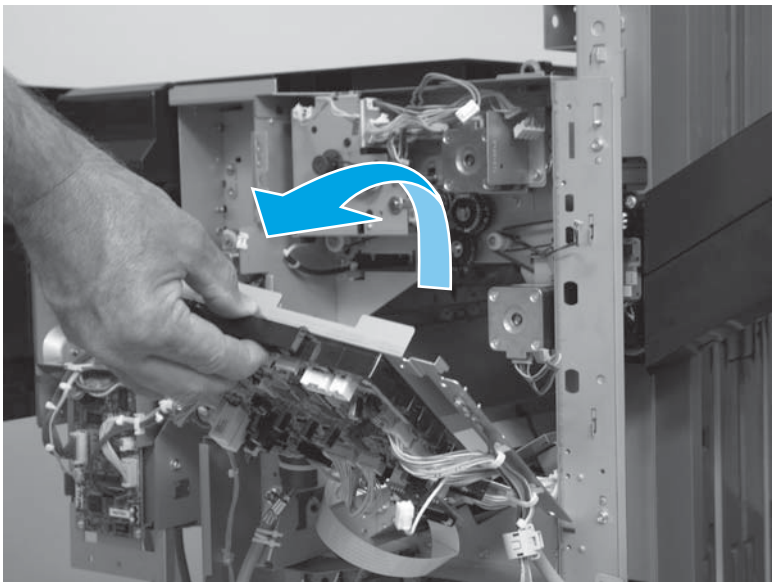
Figure 1-887 Remove the stack ejection motor assembly (4 of 7)



5. Carefully rotate the top of the controller PCA away from the chassis and move it out of the way.

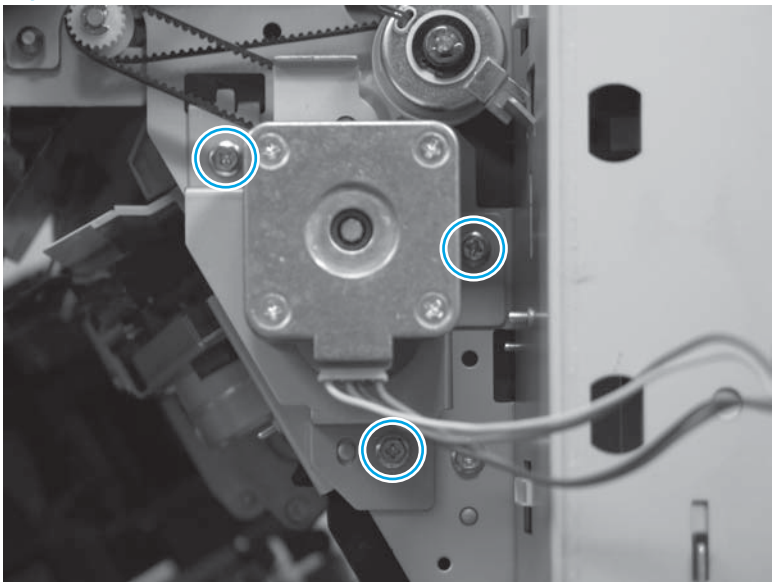
NOTE: If needed, release additional wire harnesses from retainers to make it easier to rotate the PCA out of the way.

Figure 1-888 Remove the stack ejection motor assembly (5 of 7)



6. Remove three screws.

Figure 1-889 Remove the stack ejection motor assembly (6 of 7)

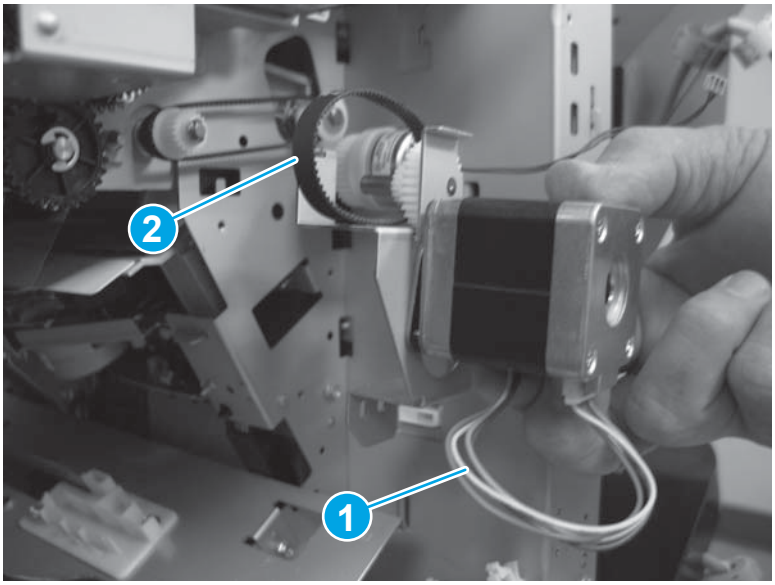


7. Remove the motor and drive belt.

CAUTION: The drive belt behind the motor is not captive. Do not lose the belt when the motor is removed.

Reinstallation tip If you are installing a replacement motor, remove the wire harness (callout 1) and drive belt (callout 2) from the discarded motor, and then install them on the replacement motor.

Figure 1-890 Remove the stack ejection motor assembly (7 of 7)



Press motor assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

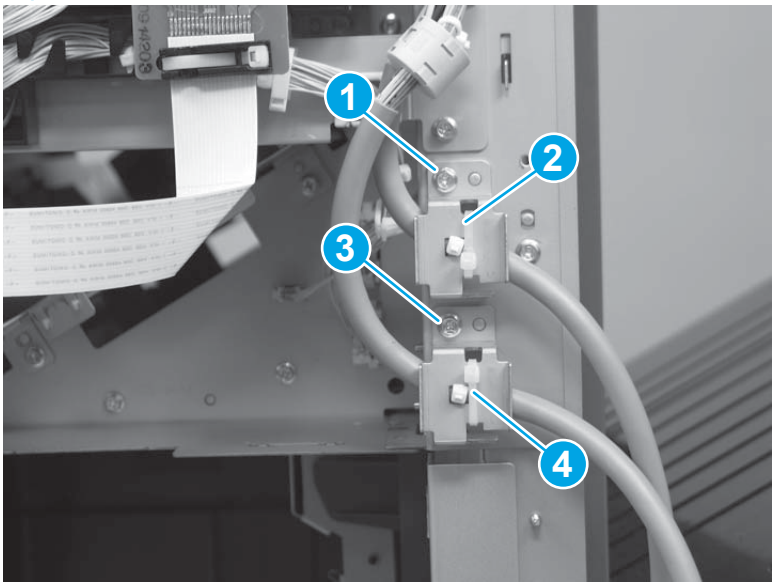
- Bin cable guide cover. See Bin cable guide cover on page 492.
- Rear cover assembly. See Rear cover assembly on page 496.

Remove the press motor assembly

1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the upper sheet-metal cable retainer (callout 2).

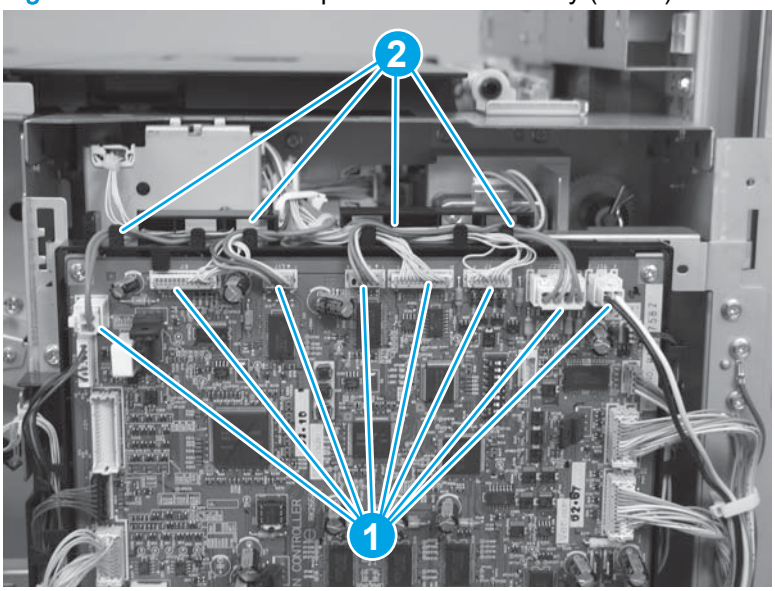
   Remove one screw (callout 3), and then remove the lower sheet-metal cable retainer (callout 4).

   Figure 1-891 Remove the press motor assembly (1 of 7)

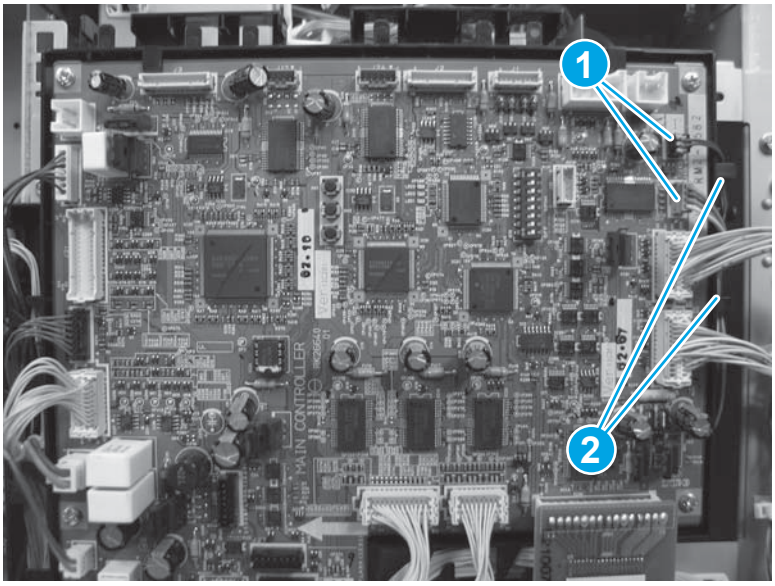
2. Disconnect eight connectors (callout 1), and then release the four wire harnesses from the retainer and guide (callout 2).

   Figure 1-892 Remove the press motor assembly (2 of 7)

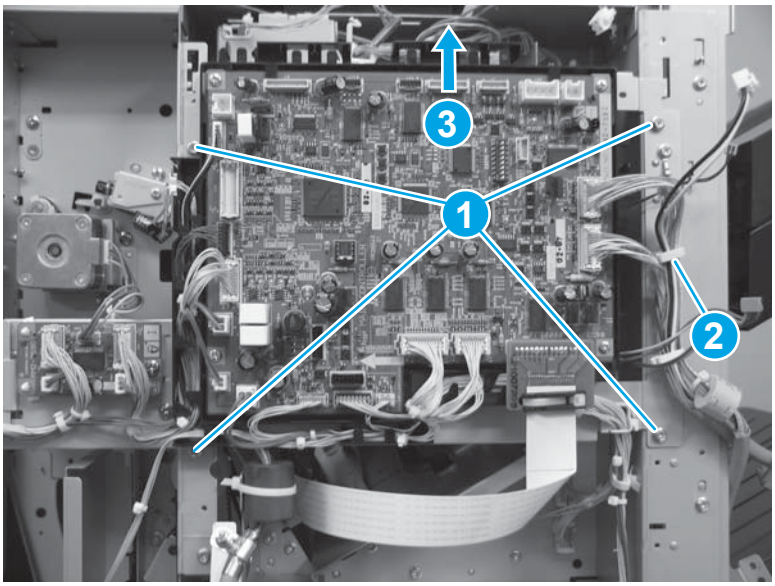
3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then release the two wire harnesses from the retainers (callout 2).

Figure 1-893 Remove the press motor assembly (3 of 7)



4. Remove four screws (callout 1), release the wire harness from one retainer (callout 2), and then slightly lift up on the controller assembly PCA sheet-metal bracket (callout 3) to release it.

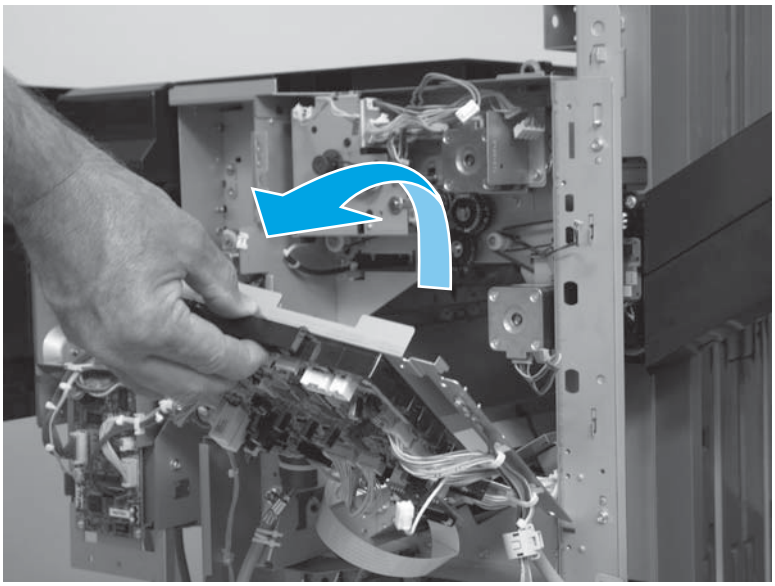
Figure 1-894 Remove the press motor assembly (4 of 7)



5. Carefully rotate the top of the controller PCA away from the chassis and move it out of the way.

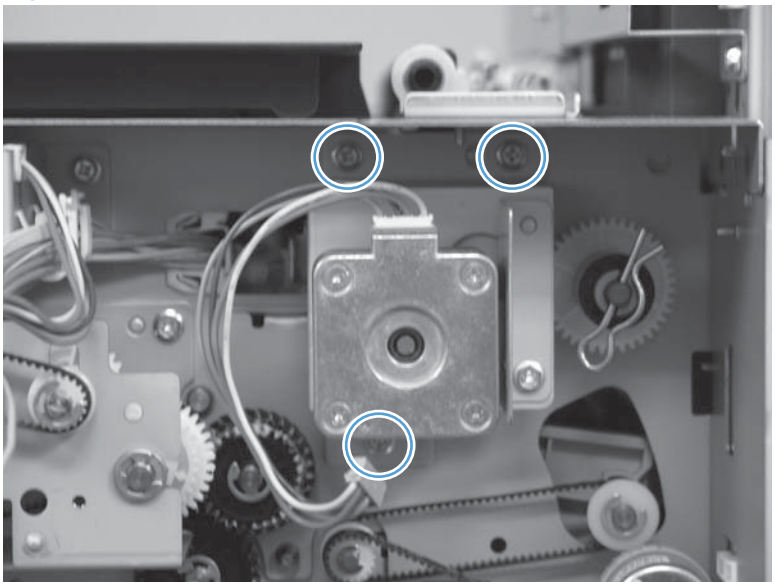
NOTE: If needed, release additional wire harnesses from retainers to make it easier to rotate the PCA out of the way.

Figure 1-895 Remove the press motor assembly (5 of 7)



6. Support the motor, and then remove three screws.

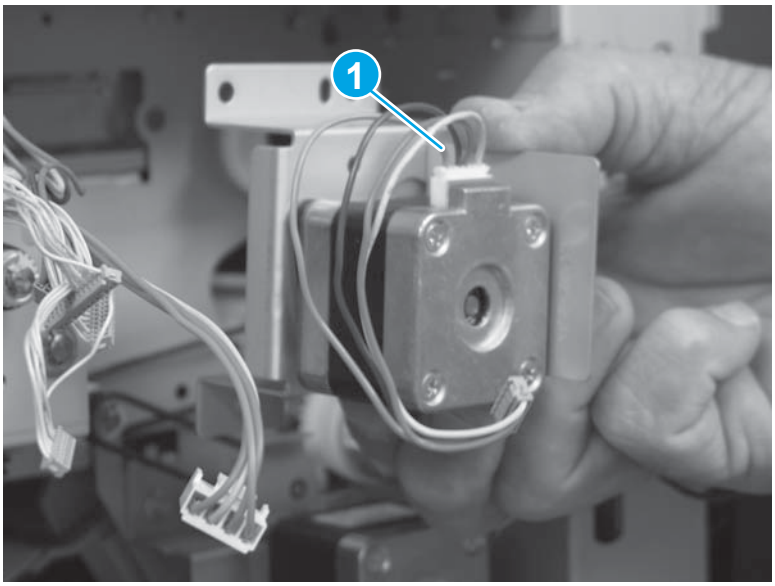
Figure 1-896 Remove the press motor assembly (6 of 7)



7. Remove the motor.

Reinstallation tip If you are installing a replacement motor, remove the wire harness (callout 1) from the discarded motor, and then install it on the replacement motor.

Figure 1-897 Remove the press motor assembly (7 of 7)



Common driver PCA assembly

NOTE: Only the booklet maker and stapler stacker accessories have a common driver PCA.

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Bin cable guide cover. See Bin cable guide cover on page 492.
- Rear cover assembly. See Rear cover assembly on page 496.

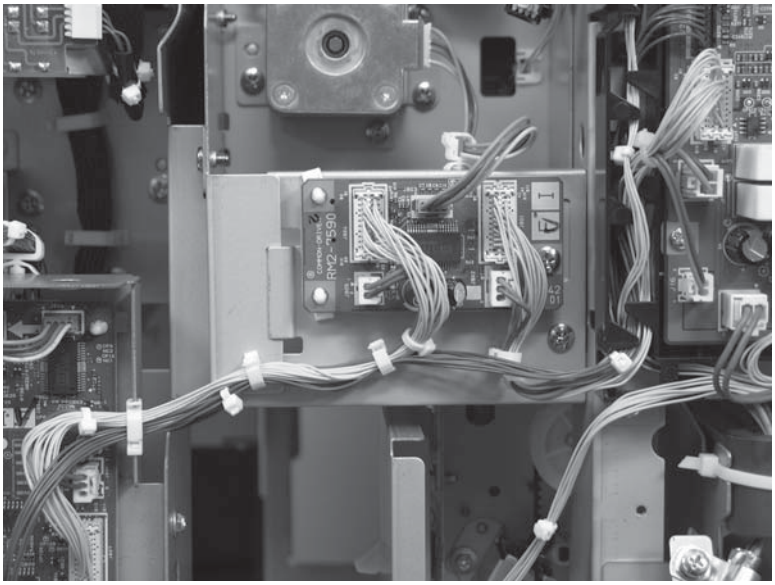
Remove the common controller PCA assembly

CAUTION: ESD sensitive assembly.

NOTE: The following connectors are not used on the PCA: J804, and J805.

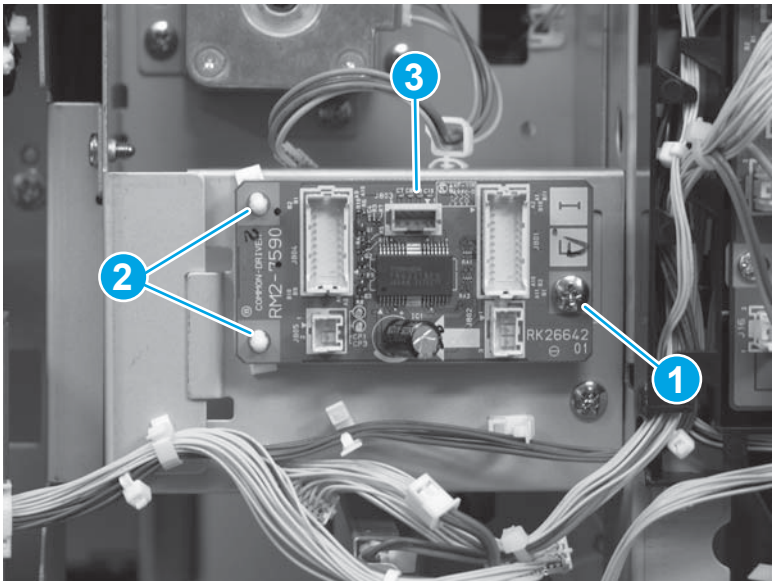
1. Disconnect all of the connectors.

Figure 1-898 Remove the common driver PCA assembly (1 of 2)



2. Remove one screw (callout 1), use a pair of needle-nose pliers to release two standoffs (callout 2), and then remove the PCA (callout 3).

Figure 1-899 Remove the common driver PCA assembly (2 of 2)



Interface cable assembly

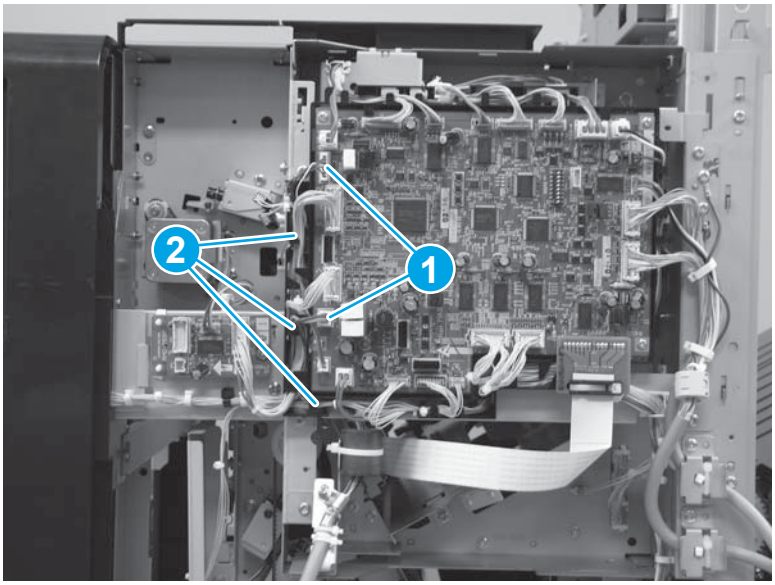
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Bin cable guide cover. See Bin cable guide cover on page 492.
- Rear cover assembly. See Rear cover assembly on page 496.

Remove the interface cable assembly

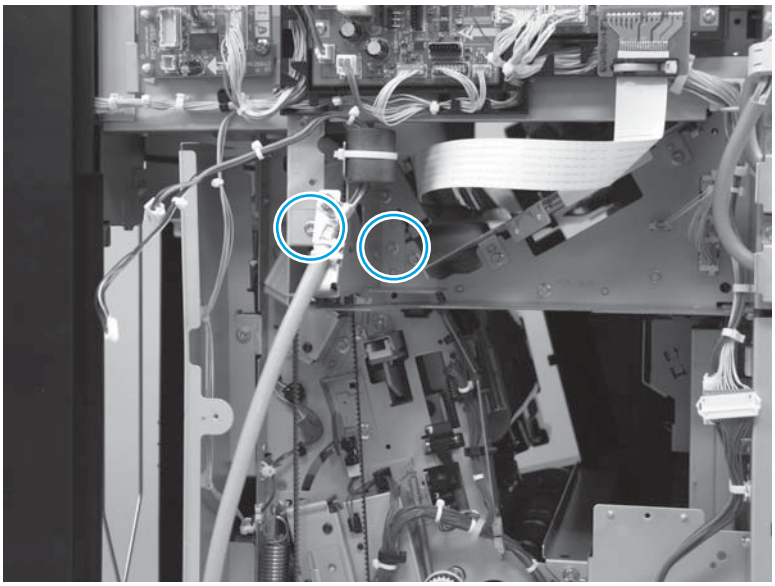
1. Disconnect two connectors on the main controller PCA (J11 and J29; callout 1), and then release the wire harness from the retainer (callout 2).

Figure 1-900 Remove the interface cable assembly (1 of 3)



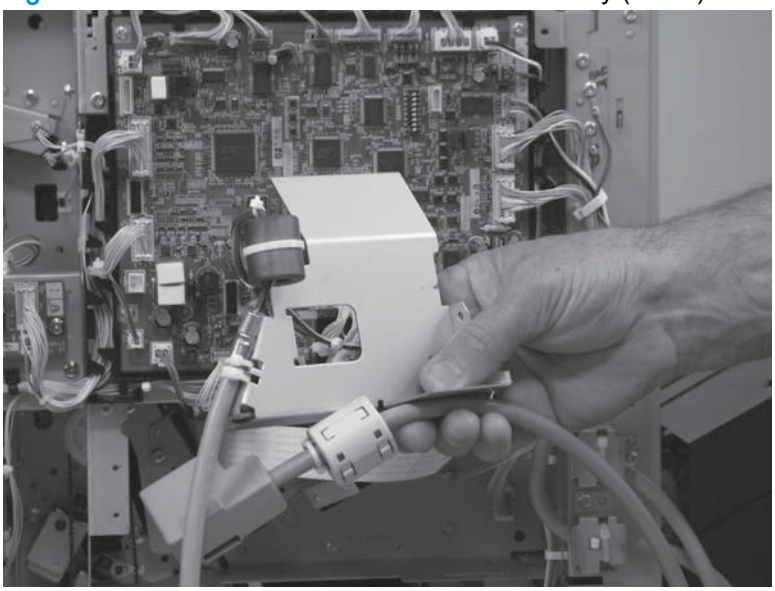
2. Remove two screws.

Figure 1-901 Remove the interface cable assembly (2 of 3)



3. Remove the assembly.

Figure 1-902 Remove the interface cable assembly (3 of 3)



Paper pass assembly

NOTE: This assembly is installed only on the stapler/stacker (SS) model.

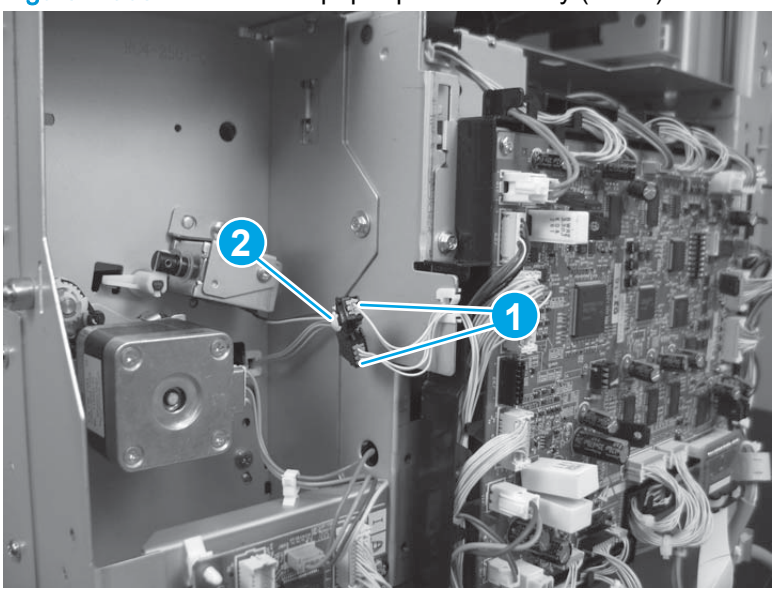
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Latch lower covers (front and rear). See Latch lower covers (front and rear) on page 468.
- Latch assembly. See Latch assembly on page 470.
- Front door. See Front door on page 479.
- Inner upper cover. See Inner upper cover assembly on page 480.
- Bin cable guide cover. See Bin cable guide cover on page 492.
- Rear cover assembly. See Rear cover assembly on page 496.
- For all models with a hole punch assembly installed:
  - Punch lower front cover assembly. See Punch lower front cover assembly on page 684.
  - Punch rear cover assembly. See Punch rear cover assembly on page 686.
  - Punch waste tray. See Punch waste tray on page 688.
  - Punch inner cover assembly. See Punch inner cover assembly on page 689.
  - Punch upper cover assembly. See Punch top cover on page 691.
  - Punch hole assembly. See Punch hole assembly on page 694.

Remove the paper pass assembly

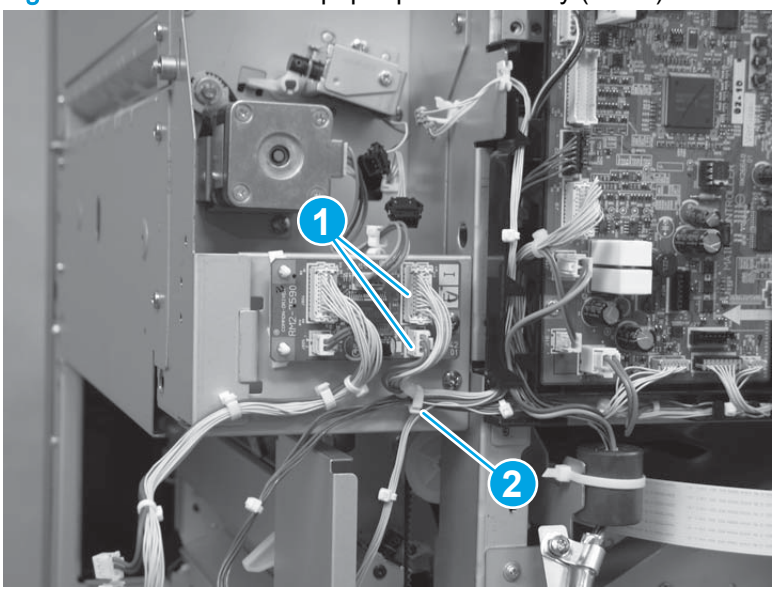
1. Disconnect two in-line connectors (callout 1), and then release the wire harnesses from one retainer (callout 2).

Figure 1-903 Remove the paper pass assembly (1 of 6)



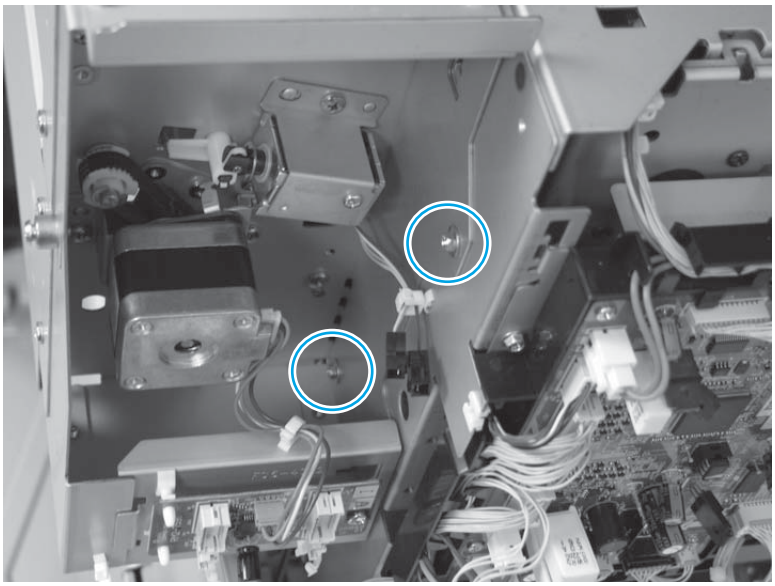
2. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then release the wire harnesses from one retainer (callout 2).

Figure 1-904 Remove the paper pass assembly (2 of 6)



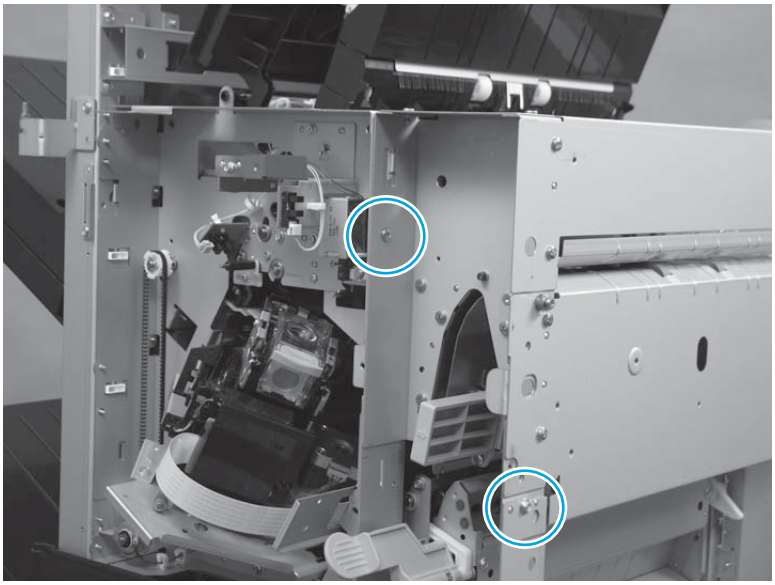
3. Remove two screws.

Figure 1-905 Remove the paper pass assembly (3 of 6)



4. Remove two screws.

Figure 1-906 Remove the paper pass assembly (4 of 6)



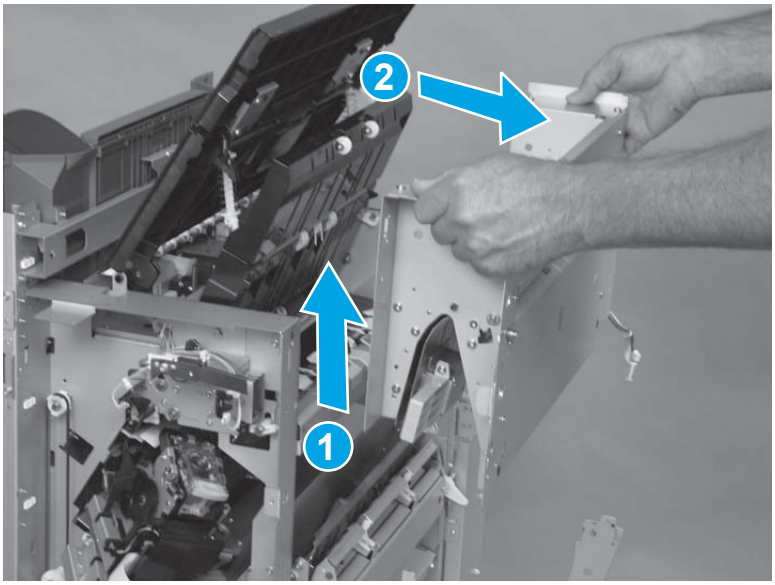
5. Remove two screws.

TIP: These screws are located under the assembly, near the saddle guide assembly.

Figure 1-907 Remove the paper pass assembly (5 of 6)

6. Lift the assembly up to release it (callout 1), and then remove the assembly (callout 2).

Figure 1-908 Remove the paper pass assembly (6 of 6)



Booklet maker accessory

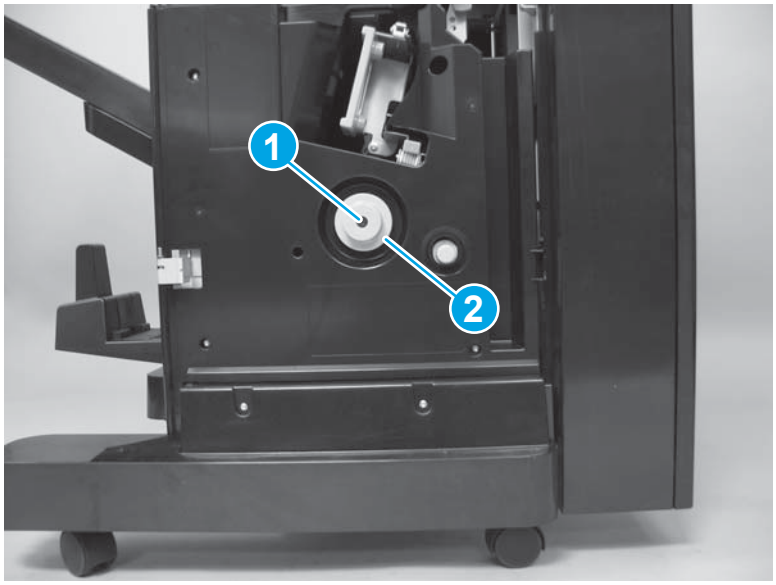
The assemblies described in this section are unique to the booklet-maker (BM) finishing accessory. For information about removing and replacing assemblies that are common to all of the finishing accessories, see Shared finishing accessory assemblies on page 464.

- Knob
- Saddle output bin assembly
- Right cover assembly (BM PCA)
- Booklet maker controller PCA
- Inner side plate assembly
- Guide sensor assembly
- Guide motor assembly
- Saddle motor assembly (SS and BM)
- Saddle feed motor assembly
- Folding-motor mount assembly
- Delivery switch mount assembly
- Saddle stapler assembly
- Lower left guide assembly
- Saddle delivery inner cover, front assembly
- Saddle delivery inner cover, rear assembly
- Saddle guide assembly
- Saddle feed assembly
- Saddle assembly
- Upper delivery guide assembly
- Saddle paper delivery assembly
- Saddle rear end sensor assembly

Knob

Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the green knob (callout 2).

Figure 1-909 Remove the knob



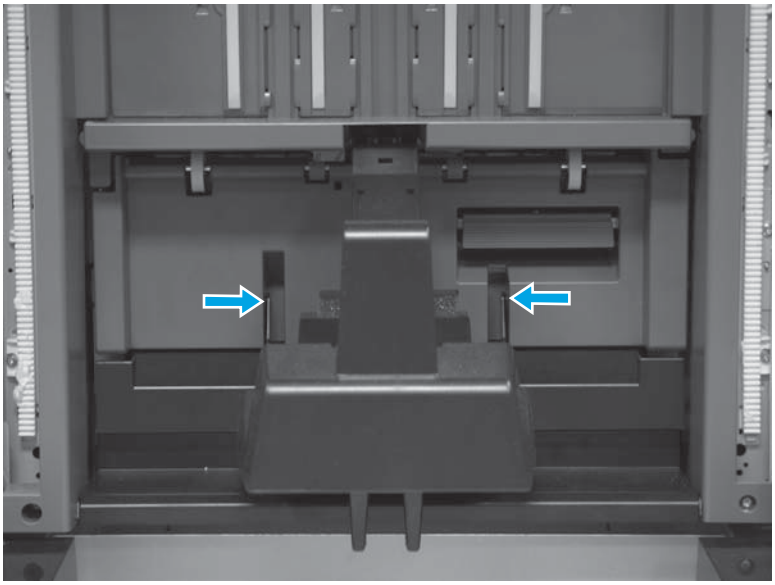
Saddle output bin assembly

1. Carefully push in on the bin hinges to release the hinge pins, and then separate the bin from the finishing accessory.

CAUTION: The saddle output bin is still connected to the finishing accessory by a wire harness. Do not attempt to completely remove the bin.

TIP: Use a small flat-blade screwdriver to push in on the bin hinges and release them.

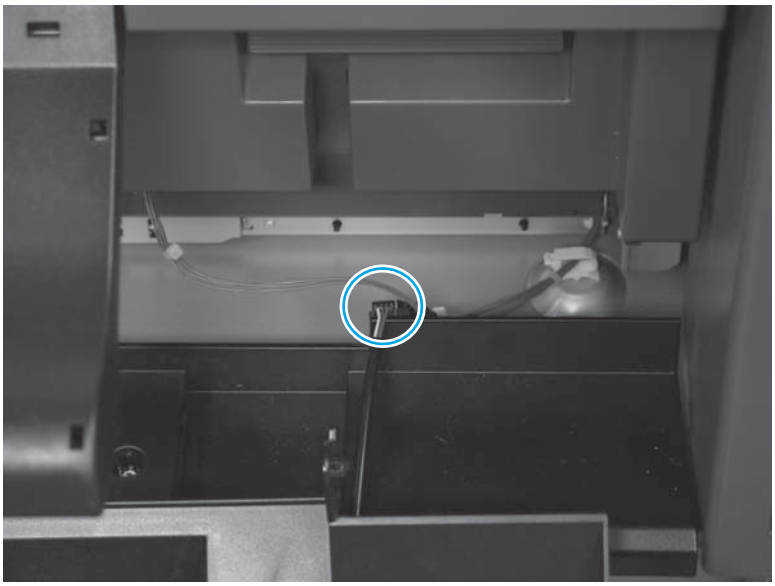
Figure 1-910 Remove the saddle output bin assembly (1 of 2)



2. Disconnect one in-line connector, and then remove the bin.

Reinstallation tip Make sure that this connector is reconnected before you reinstall the assembly.

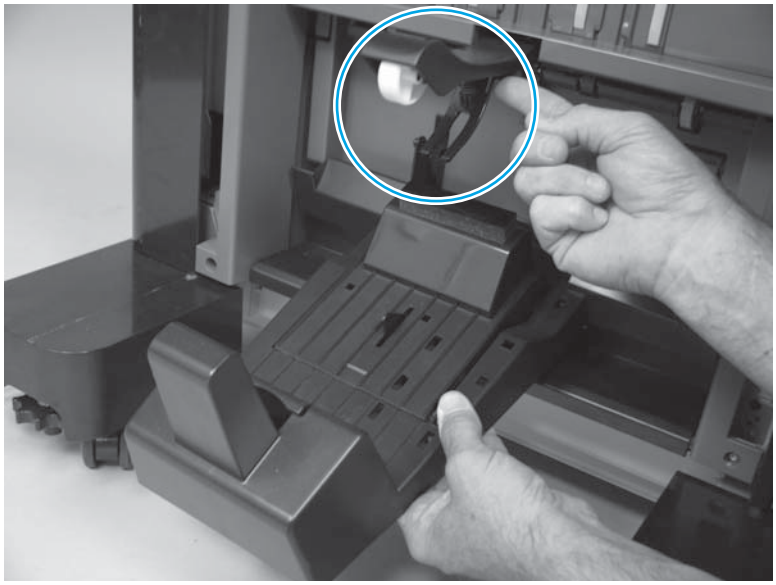
Figure 1-911 Remove the saddle output bin assembly (2 of 2)



Reinstall the saddle output bin

The spring loaded arm above the saddle output bin assembly can be easily dislodged. Hold the arm out of the way when you position the assembly on the accessory. Make sure that the arm is intact when the assembly is installed.

Figure 1-912 Reinstall the saddle output bin assembly



Right cover assembly (BM PCA)

NOTE: For booklet maker (BM) models only.

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

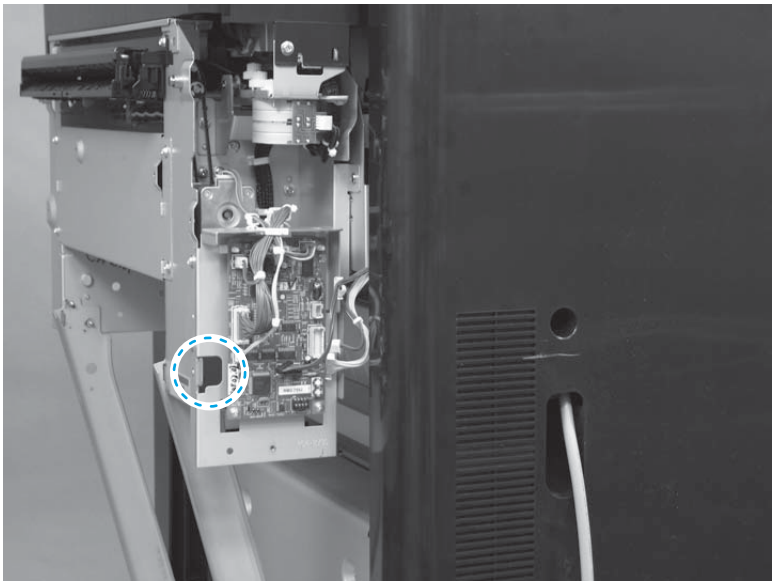
- Latch lower covers (front and rear). See Latch lower covers (front and rear) on page 468.
- Latch assembly. See Latch assembly on page 470.
- For all models with a hole punch assembly installed:
  - Punch lower front cover assembly. See Punch lower front cover assembly on page 684.
  - Punch rear cover assembly. See Punch rear cover assembly on page 686.
  - Punch waste tray. See Punch waste tray on page 688.
  - Punch inner cover assembly. See Punch inner cover assembly on page 689.
  - Punch upper cover assembly. See Punch top cover on page 691.
  - Punch hole assembly. See Punch hole assembly on page 694.

Remove the right cover assembly (BM PCA)

1. Remove two screws.

TIP: These screws fasten the rear sheet-metal support bracket to the punch assembly. Use the hole provided in the chassis next to the punch controller PCA to gain access to these screws.

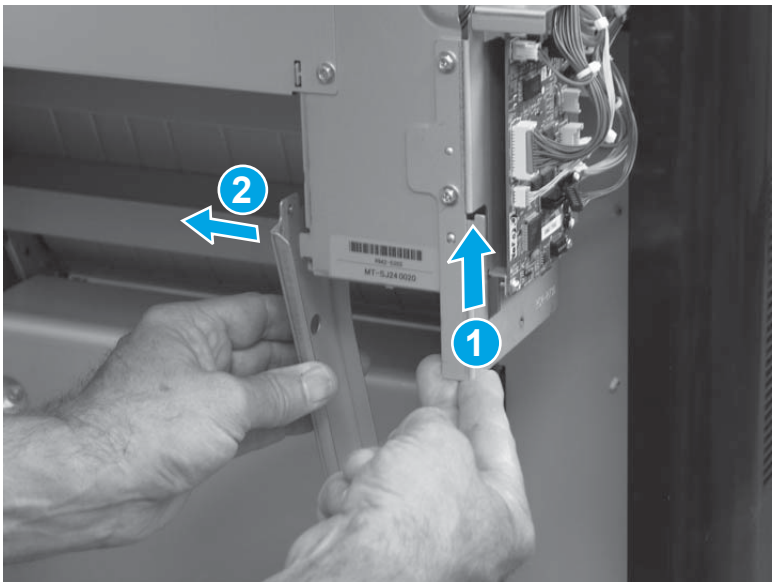
Figure 1-913 Remove the right cover assembly (BM PCA; 1 of 7)



2. Slightly lift up on the punch hole assembly (callout 1), and then disengage the sheet-metal support bracket (callout 2).

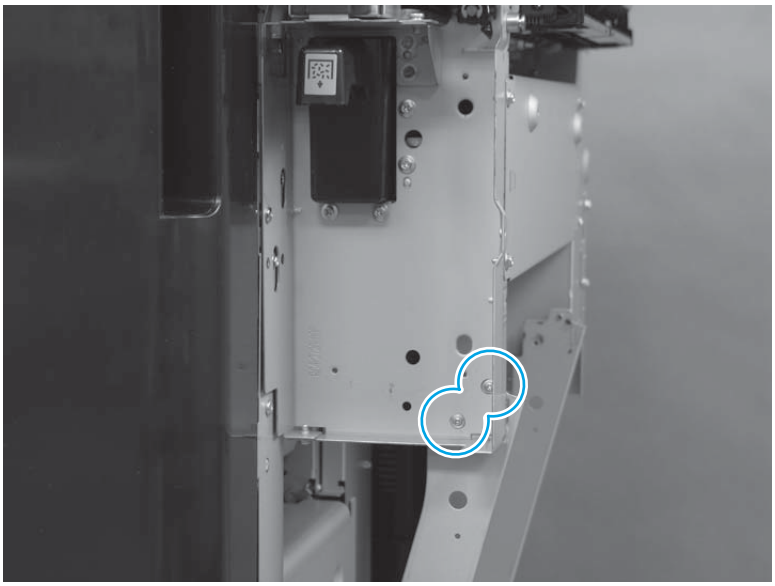
NOTE: The punch hole assembly is still fastened to the accessory chassis, but you should be able to disengage the support bracket.

Figure 1-914 Remove the right cover assembly (BM PCA; 2 of 7)



3. Remove two screws.

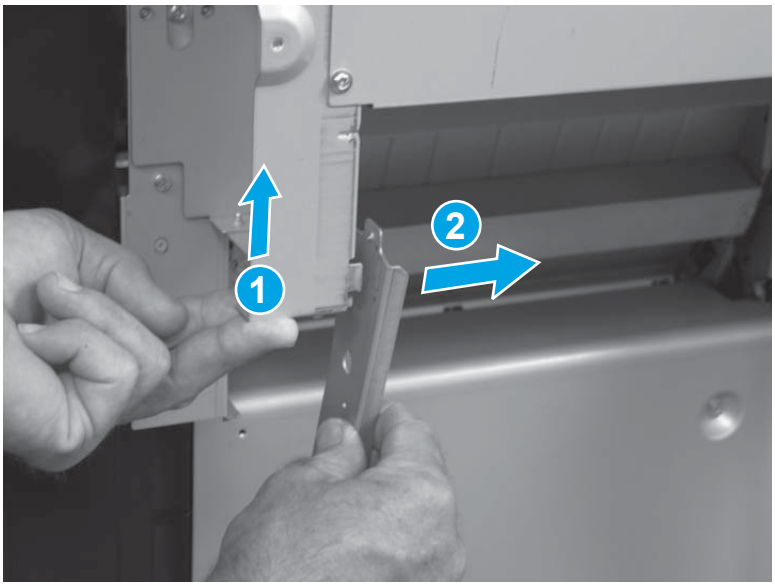
Figure 1-915 Remove the right cover assembly (BM PCA; 3 of 7)



4. Slightly lift up on the punch hole assembly (callout 1), and then disengage the sheet-metal support bracket (callout 2).

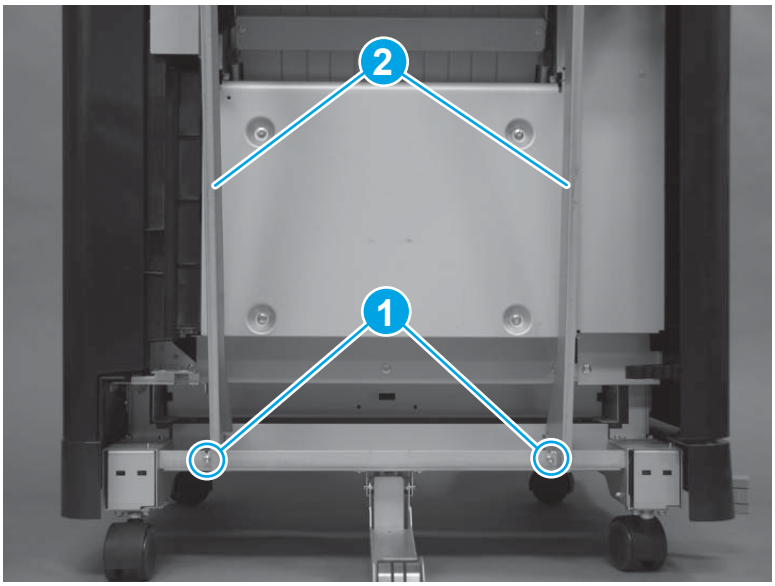
NOTE: The punch hole assembly is still fastened to the accessory chassis, but you should be able to disengage the support bracket.

Figure 1-916 Remove the right cover assembly (BM PCA; 4 of 7)



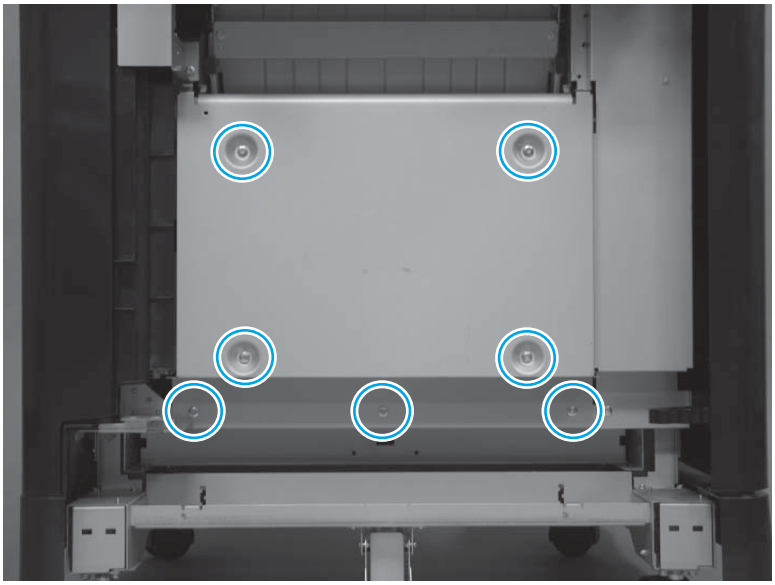
5. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the sheet-metal support brackets (callout 2).

Figure 1-917 Remove the right cover assembly (BM PCA; 5 of 7)



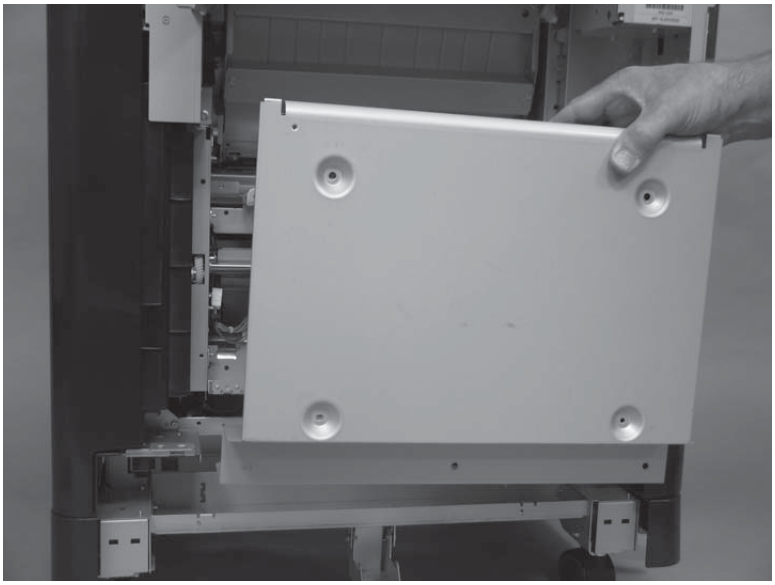
6. Remove seven screws.

Figure 1-918 Remove the right cover assembly (BM PCA; 6 of 7)



7. Remove the cover.

Figure 1-919 Remove the right cover assembly (BM PCA; 7 of 7)



Booklet maker controller PCA

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

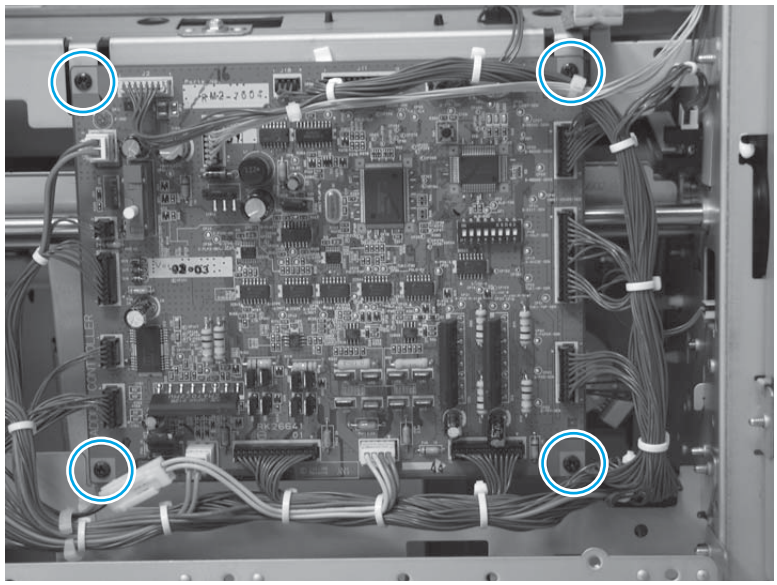
- Latch lower covers (front and rear). See Latch lower covers (front and rear) on page 468.
- Right cover assembly (BM PCA). See Right cover assembly (BM PCA) on page 611.

Remove the booklet maker controller PCA

⚠ CAUTION: ESD sensitive assembly.

Disconnect all of the connectors, remove four screws, and then remove the PCA.

Figure 1-920 Remove the booklet maker controller PCA



Inner side plate assembly

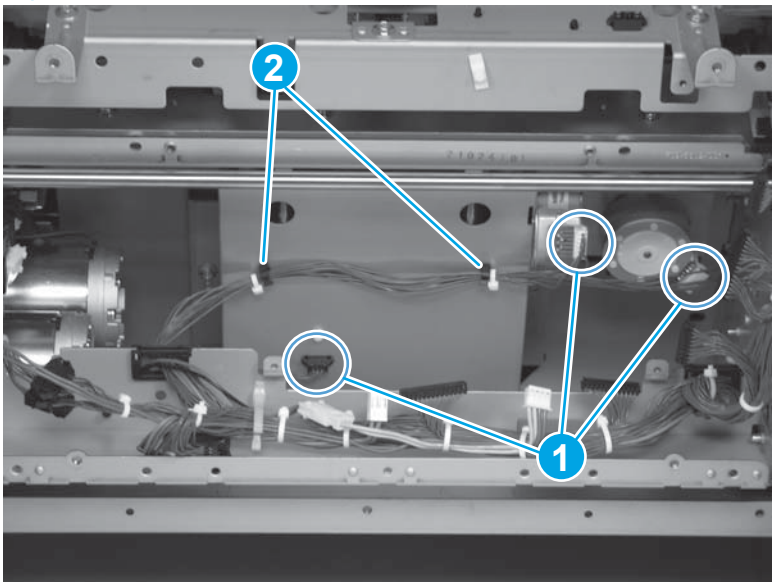
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Latch lower covers (front and rear). See Latch lower covers (front and rear) on page 468.
- Bin cable guide cover. See Bin cable guide cover on page 492.
- Rear cover assembly. See Rear cover assembly on page 496.
- Right cover assembly (BM PCA). See Right cover assembly (BM PCA) on page 611.
- Booklet maker controller PCA. See Booklet maker controller PCA on page 615.

Remove the inner side plate assembly

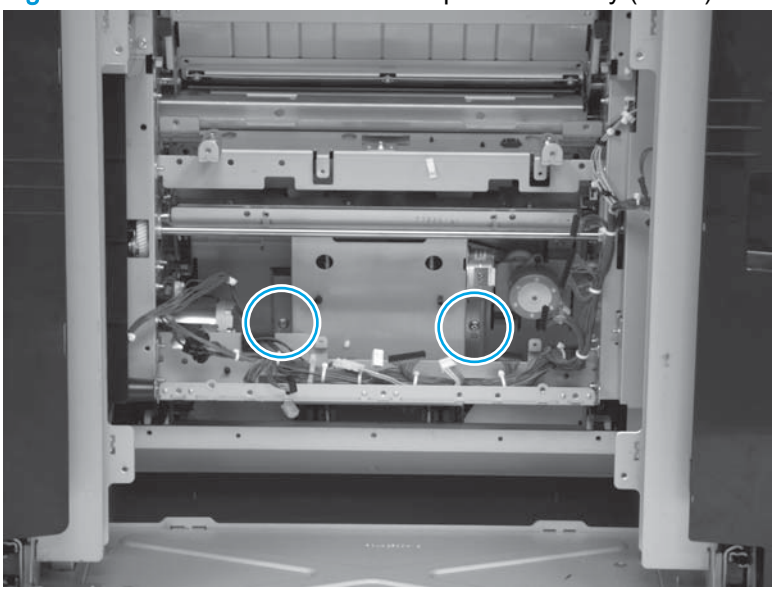
1. Disconnect three connectors (callout 1), and then release the wire harnesses from two retainers (callout 2).

Figure 1-921 Remove the inner side plate assembly (1 of 8)



2. Remove two screws.

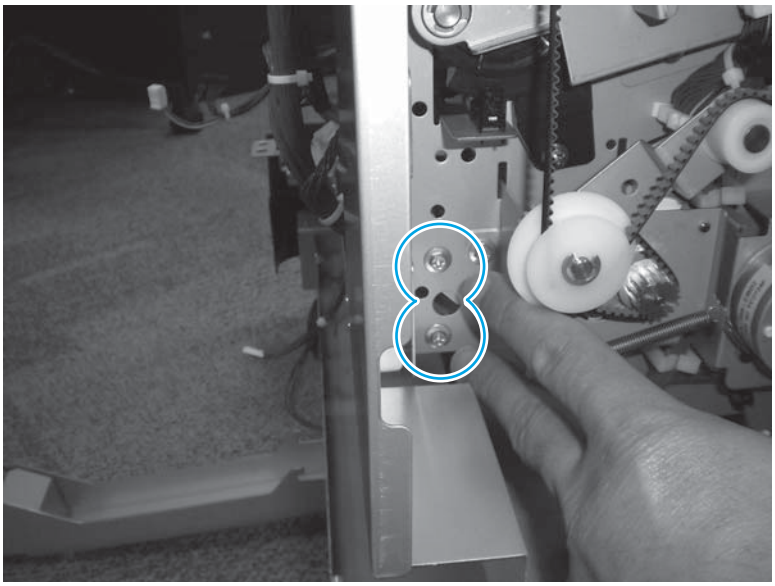
Figure 1-922 Remove the inner side plate assembly (2 of 8)



3. At the drive gear side of the accessory, remove two screws.

TIP: Removing these screws loosens the tray under the assembly. When the tray is loose it can be slightly moved out of the way, which makes removing the inner side plate assembly easier.

Figure 1-923 Remove the inner side plate assembly (3 of 8)

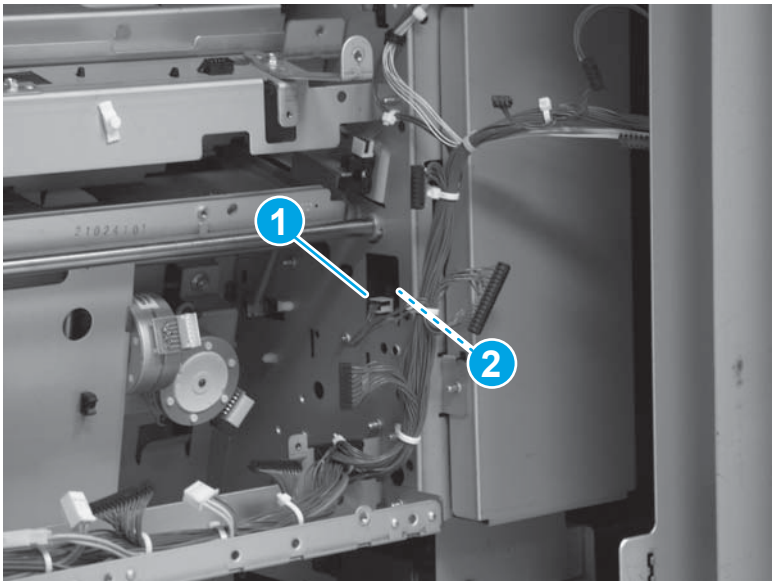


4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and move the wire harness out of the way.

CAUTION: When you remove the assembly, do not allow the right end of the shaft on the assembly damage the sensor (callout 2).

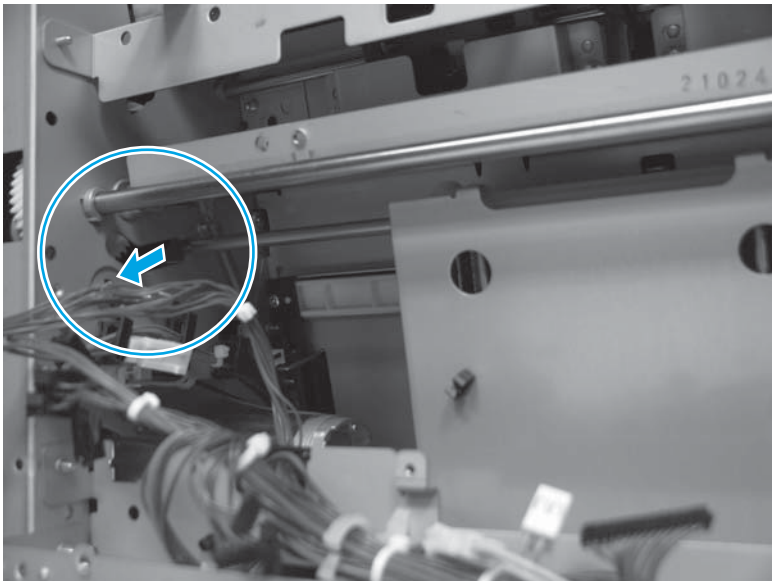
Reinstallation tip Make sure that you reconnect the sensor connector (callout 1) when the assembly is reinstalled.

Figure 1-924 Remove the inner side plate assembly (4 of 8)



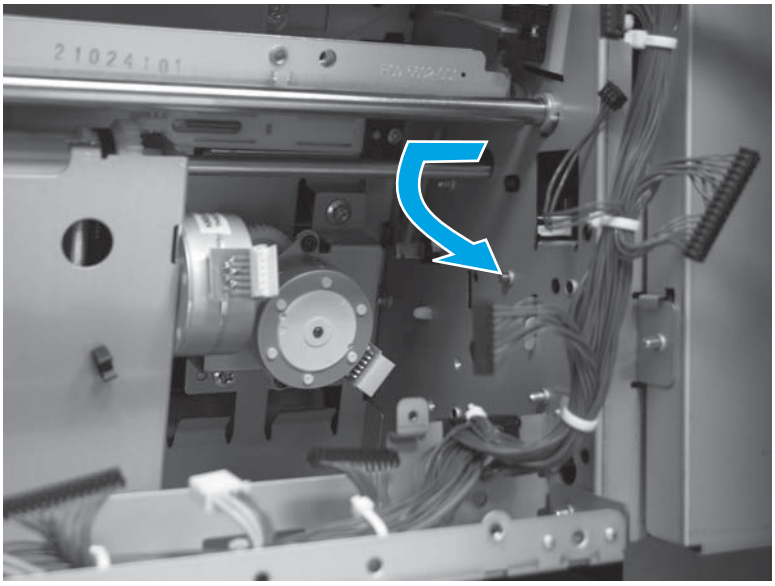
5. Slide the left end of the assembly shaft forward in the mounting hole provided in the chassis.

Figure 1-925 Remove the inner side plate assembly (5 of 8)



6. Slightly slide the assembly toward the left, and then rotate the right side of the shaft out of the hole in the chassis.

Figure 1-926 Remove the inner side plate assembly (6 of 8)

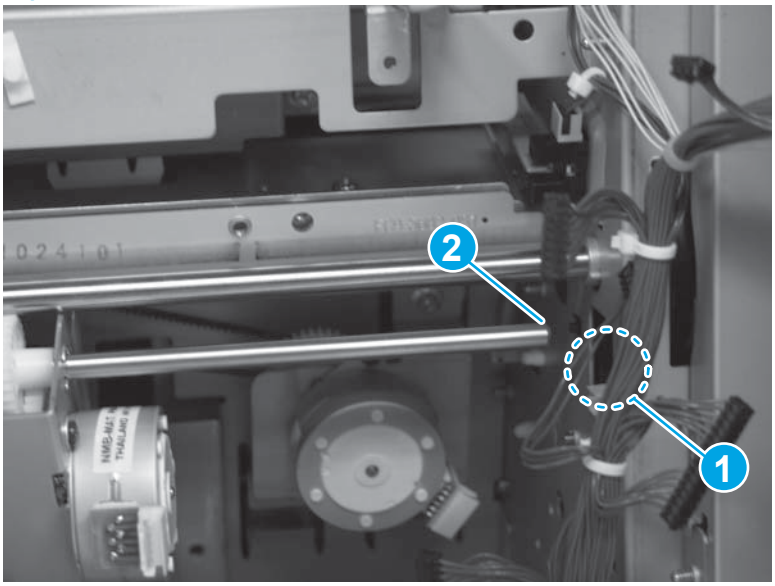


7. Continue to move the assembly toward the left until the right side of the shaft is past the chassis.

CAUTION: Do not damage the sensor (callout 1) with the end of the shaft (callout 2) when the shaft is rotated out of the chassis.

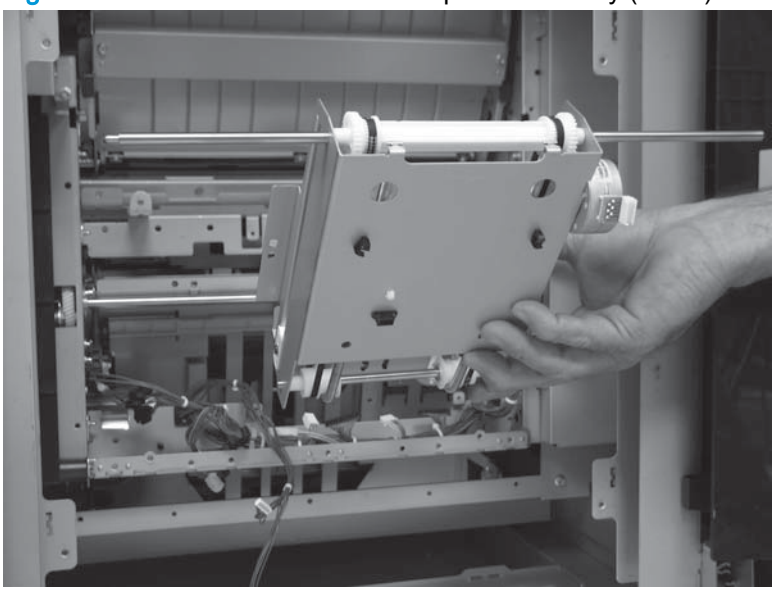
TIP: The assembly might feel stuck as you remove it. Continue to move the assembly left, and rotate the right end of the shaft out of the chassis. It might take some time to get the shaft out of the chassis.

Figure 1-927 Remove the inner side plate assembly (7 of 8)



8. Carefully remove the assembly.

Figure 1-928 Remove the inner side plate assembly (8 of 8)



Before reinstalling the inner side plate assembly

To avoid damage to the assembly sensors, and to make reinstallation of the assembly easier, move the inner plate on the assembly to the middle of the inner plate assembly. After positioning the inner plate assembly, go to Reinstall the inner side plate assembly on page 621.

Figure 1-929 Inner plate assembly in the up position

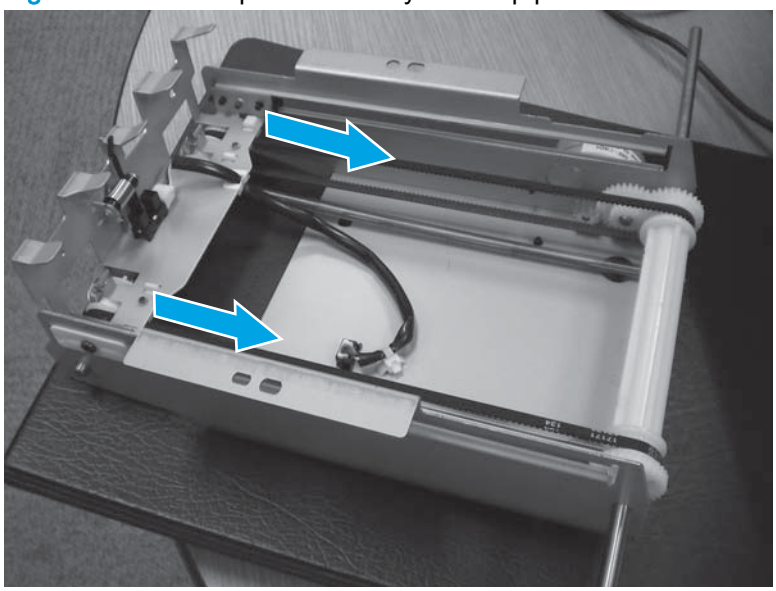
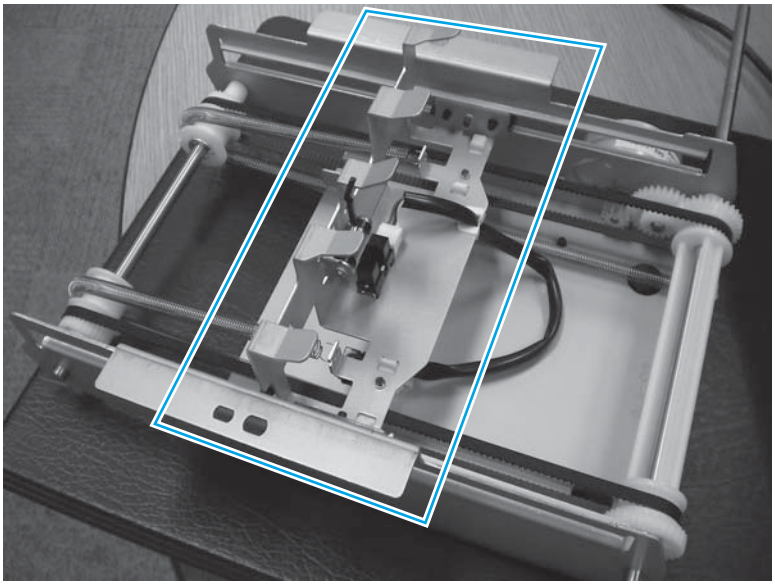


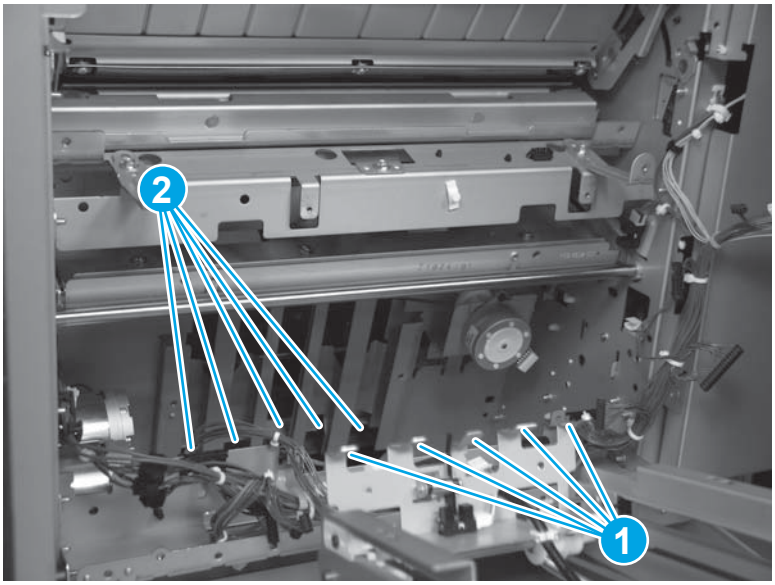
Figure 1-930 Inner plate assembly in the middle position



Reinstall the inner side plate assembly

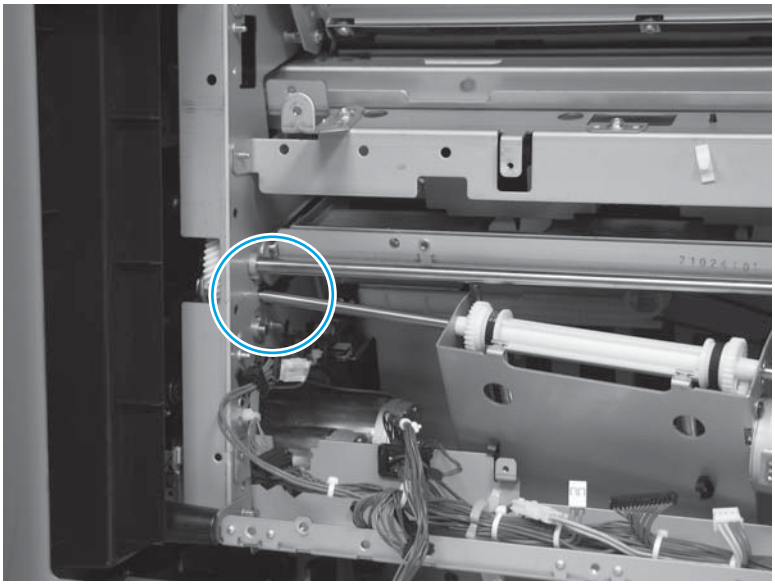
1. Position the assembly in the chassis by aligning the sheet-metal fingers of the inner plate assembly (callout 1) with the slots (callout 2) in the saddle assembly.

Figure 1-931 Reinstall the inner side plate assembly (1 of 3)



2. Slide the left end of the assembly shaft into the hole in the chassis.

Figure 1-932 Reinstall the inner side plate assembly (2 of 3)

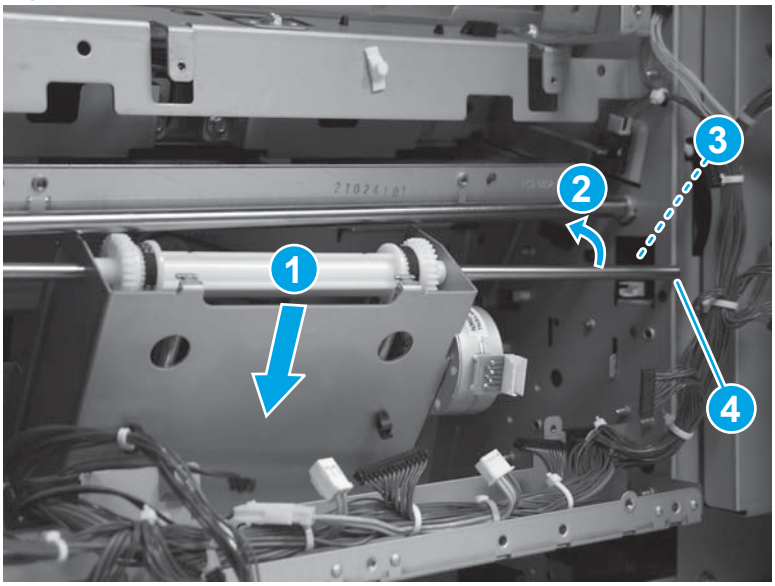


3. Push down on the assembly (callout 1) while rotating (callout 2) the right end of the shaft into the chassis.

CAUTION: Do not damage the sensor (callout 3) with the end of the shaft (callout 4) when the shaft is rotated into the chassis.

TIP: The assembly might feel stuck as you install it. Continue to move the assembly left, and rotate the right end of the shaft into the chassis. It might take some time to get the shaft into the chassis.

Figure 1-933 Reinstall the inner side plate assembly (3 of 3)



Guide sensor assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

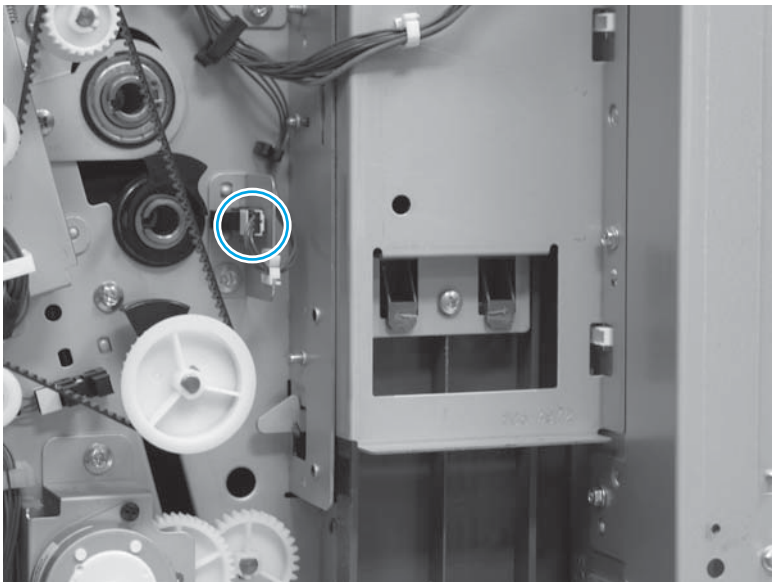
- Bin cable guide cover. See Bin cable guide cover on page 492.
- Rear cover assembly. See Rear cover assembly on page 496.

Remove the guide sensor assembly

NOTE: This assembly is the folding roller home position sensor.

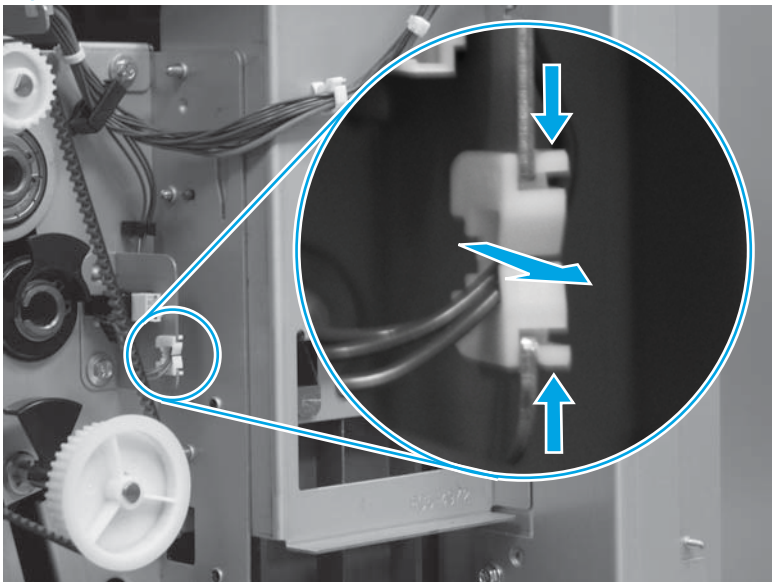
1. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 1-934 Remove the guide sensor assembly (1 of 4)



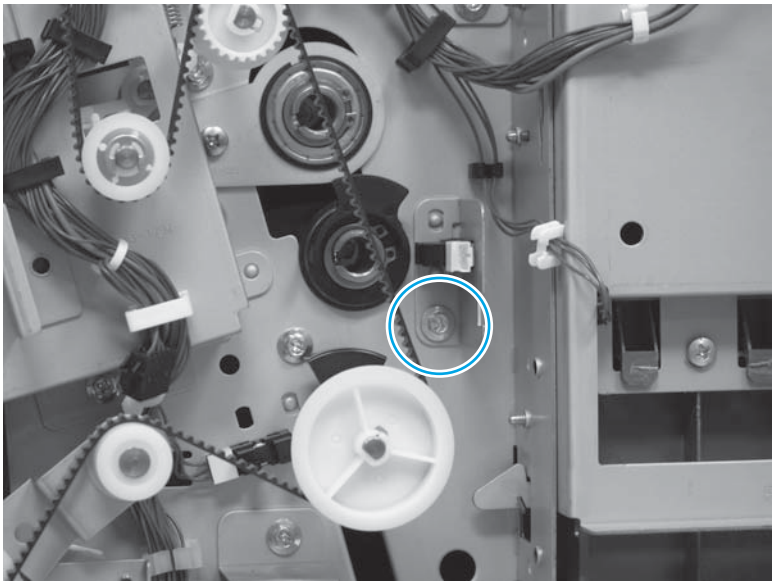
2. Release two tabs on the retainer, and the remove the retainer from the sheet-metal bracket.

Figure 1-935 Remove the guide sensor assembly (2 of 4)



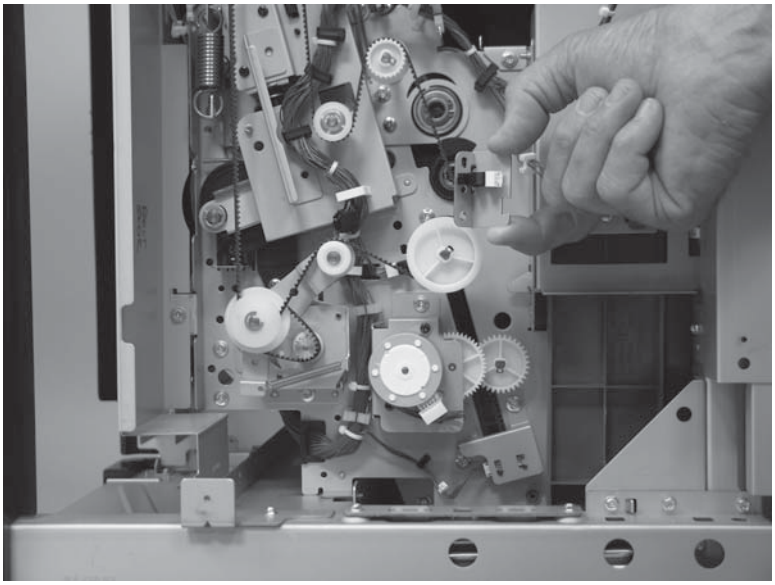
3. Remove one screw.

Figure 1-936 Remove the guide sensor assembly (3 of 4)



4. Remove the assembly.

Figure 1-937 Remove the guide sensor assembly (4 of 4)



Guide motor assembly

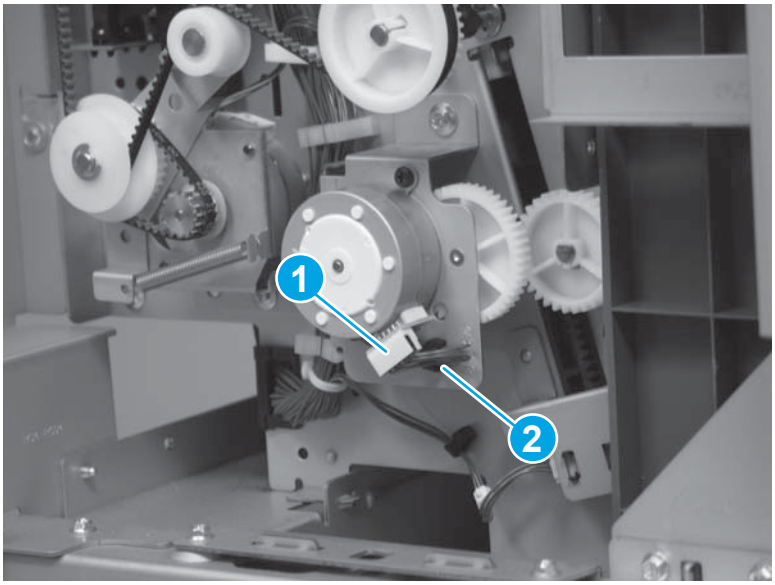
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Bin cable guide cover. See Bin cable guide cover on page 492.
- Rear cover assembly. See Rear cover assembly on page 496.

Remove the guide motor assembly

1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then release the wire harness from one retainer (callout 2).

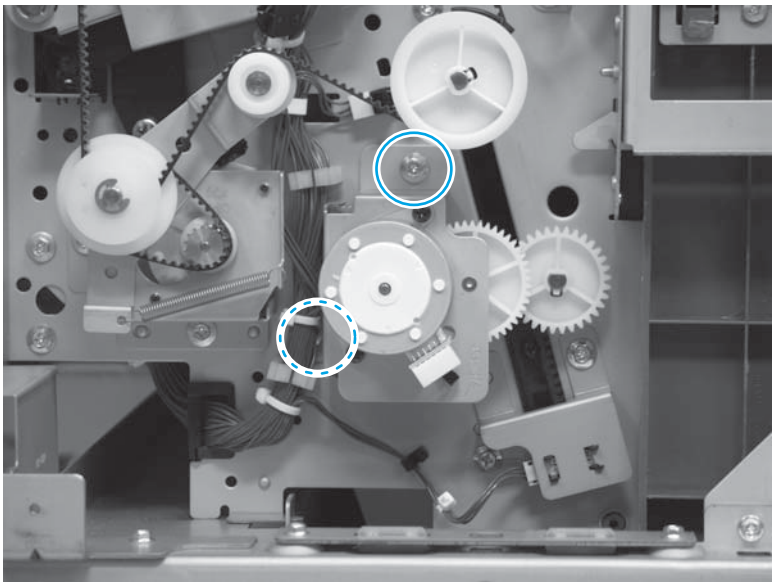
Figure 1-938 Remove the guide motor assembly (1 of 3)



2. Remove two screws.

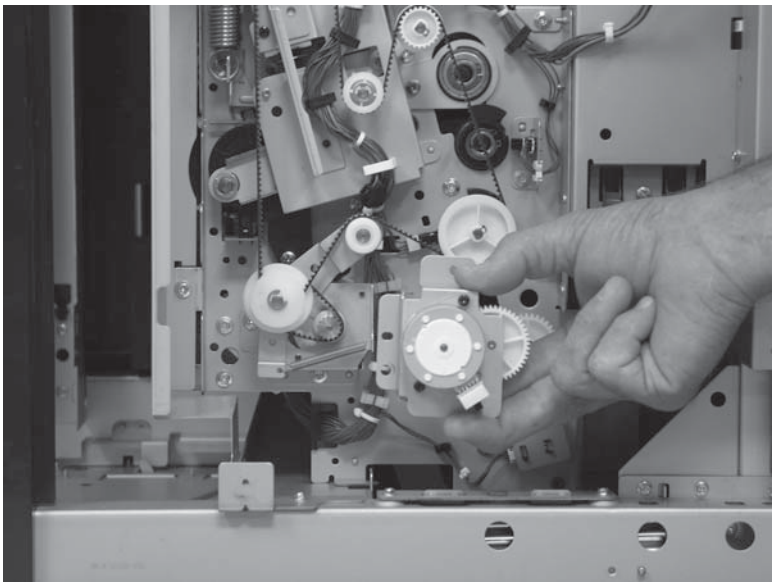
TIP: One screw is hidden behind the wire harnesses along the left side of the sheet-metal mounting bracket. Use a small flat-blade screwdriver to hold the wire harnesses out of the way to access this screw.

Figure 1-939 Remove the guide motor assembly (2 of 3)



3. Remove the assembly.

Figure 1-940 Remove the guide motor assembly (3 of 3)



Saddle motor assembly (SS and BM)

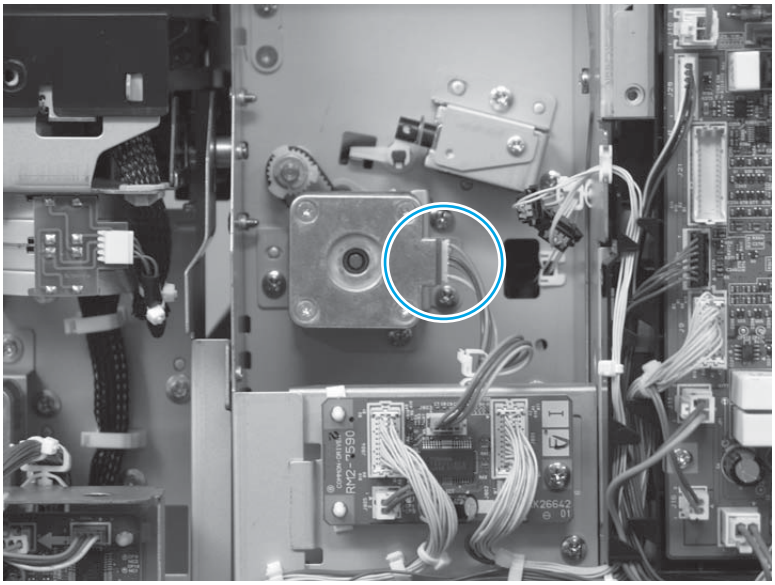
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Bin cable guide cover. See Bin cable guide cover on page 492.
- Rear cover assembly. See Rear cover assembly on page 496.

Remove the saddle motor assembly (SS and BM)

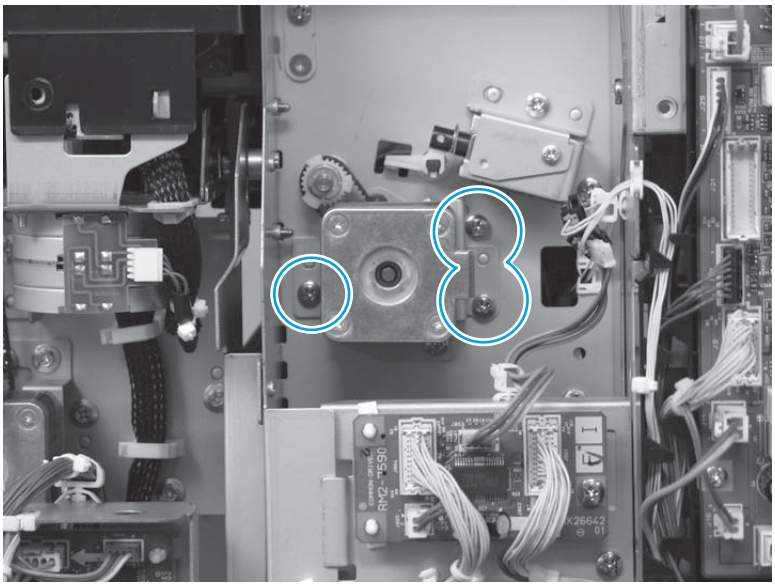
1. Disconnect one connector.

   Figure 1-941 Remove the saddle motor assembly (SS and BM; 1 of 3)

2. Remove three screws.

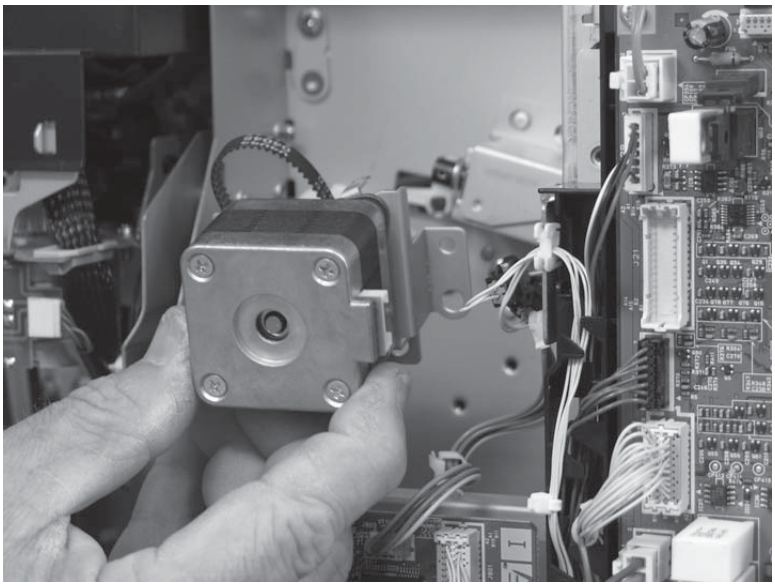
   Figure 1-942 Remove the saddle motor assembly (SS and BM; 2 of 3)

3. Remove the motor.

⚠ **CAUTION:** The drive belt behind the motor is not captive. Do not lose the belt when the motor is removed.

Figure 1-943 Remove the saddle motor assembly (SS and BM; 3 of 3)



Saddle feed motor assembly

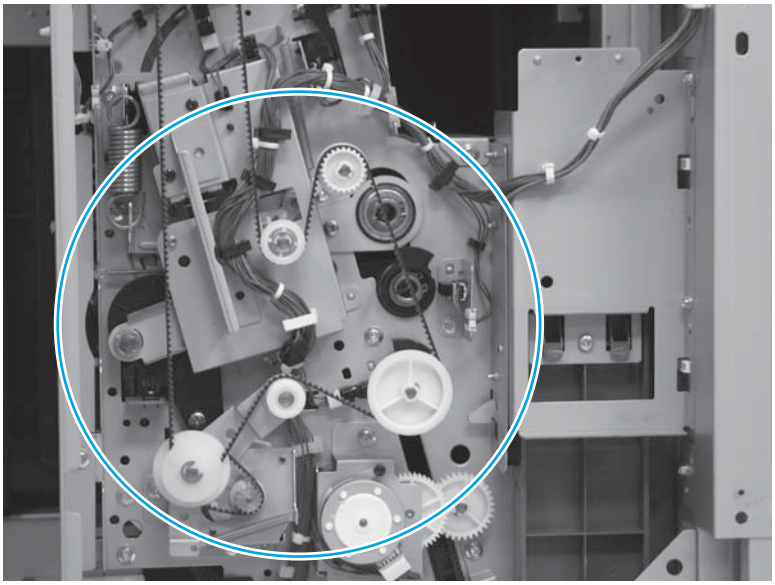
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Bin cable guide cover. See Bin cable guide cover on page 492.
- Rear cover assembly. See Rear cover assembly on page 496.

Remove the saddle feed assembly

1. Before beginning, note how the drive belt is routed over the gears and-tension arm. The belt will not be tensioned correctly if the belt is not routed properly when the assembly is reinstalled.

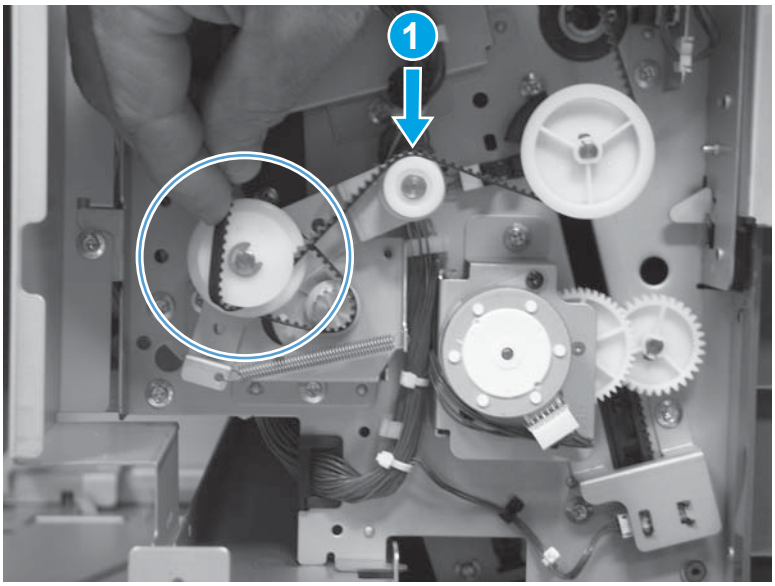
Figure 1-944 Remove the saddle feed motor assembly (1 of 6)



2. Push down on the belt tension arm (callout 1), and then remove the timing belt from the motor drive gear.

IMPORTANT: Note how the belt is routed over the gears and belt-tension arm before you disengage the belt.

Figure 1-945 Remove the saddle feed motor assembly (2 of 6)

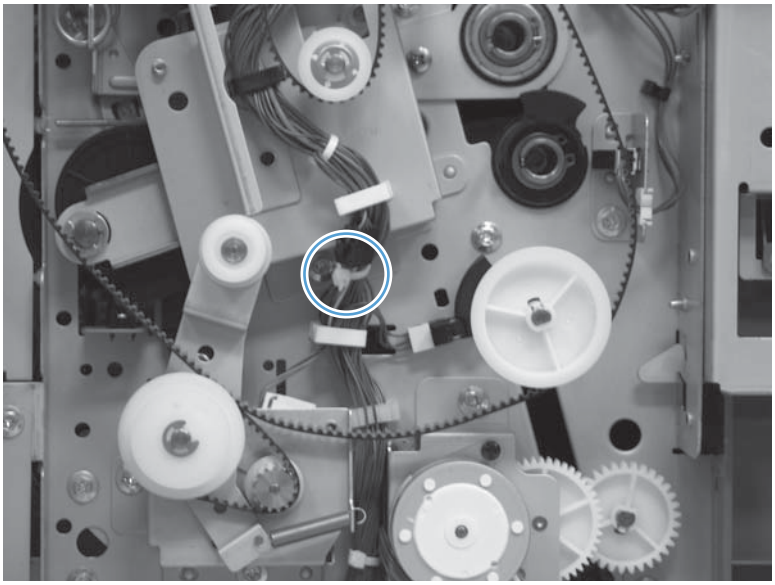


3. Remove one plastic wire cable tie.

CAUTION: Do not damage the wire harnesses when this cable tie is removed.

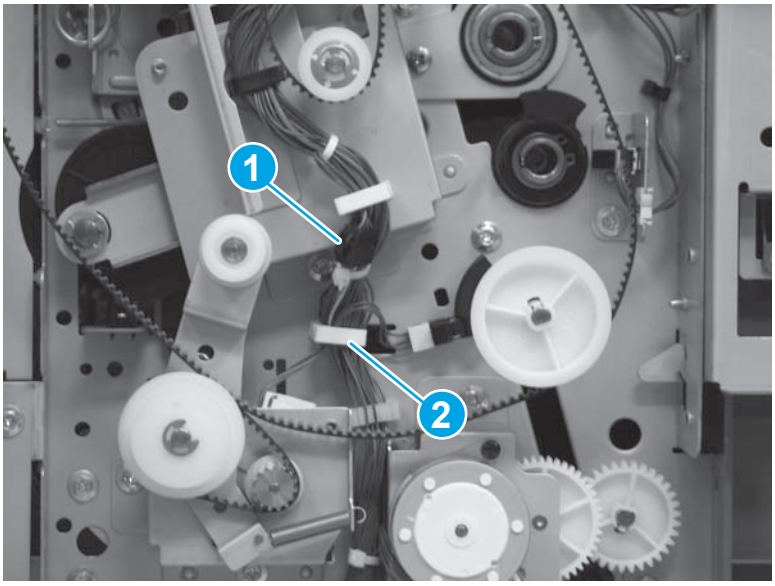
Do not attempt to remove the connector at the motor end of the wire harness. This wire harness is soldered to the motor and cannot be removed.

Figure 1-946 Remove the saddle feed motor assembly (3 of 6)



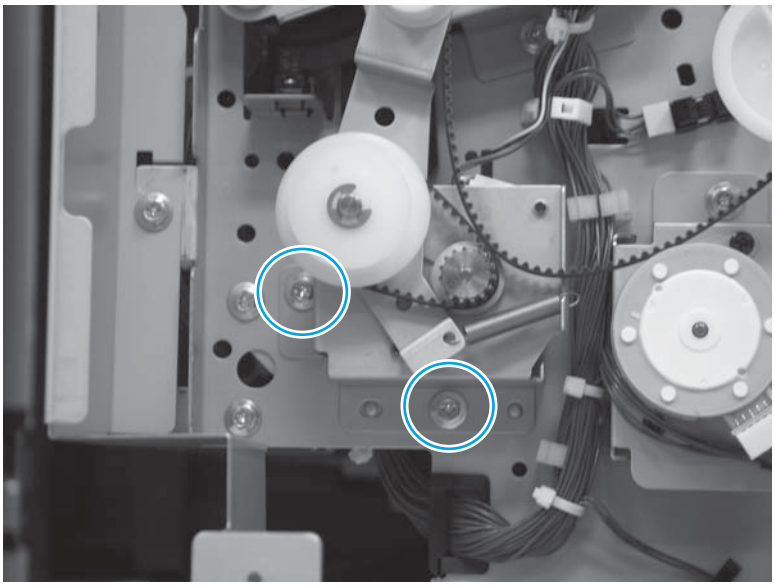
4. Disconnect one inline connector (callout 1), and then release the wire harness from one retainer (callout 2).

Figure 1-947 Remove the saddle feed motor assembly (4 of 6)



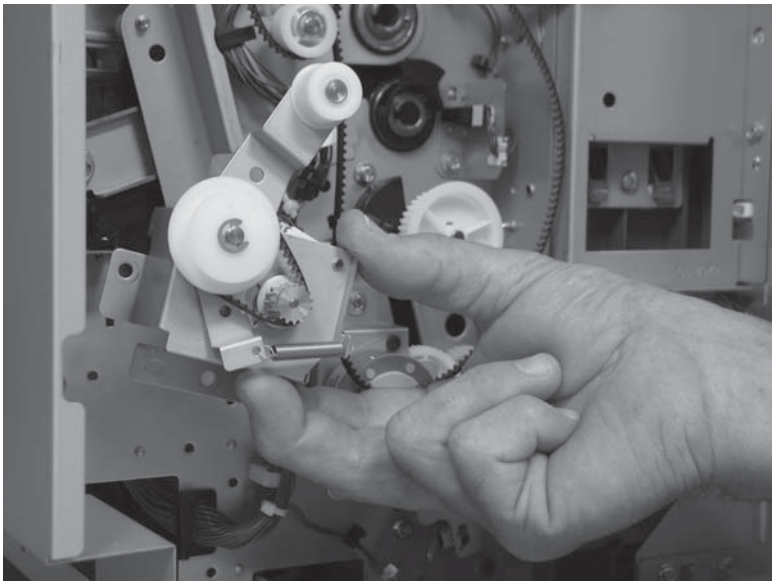
5. Remove two screws.

Figure 1-948 Remove the saddle feed motor assembly (5 of 6)



6. Remove the assembly.

Figure 1-949 Remove the saddle feed motor assembly (6 of 6)



Folding-motor mount assembly

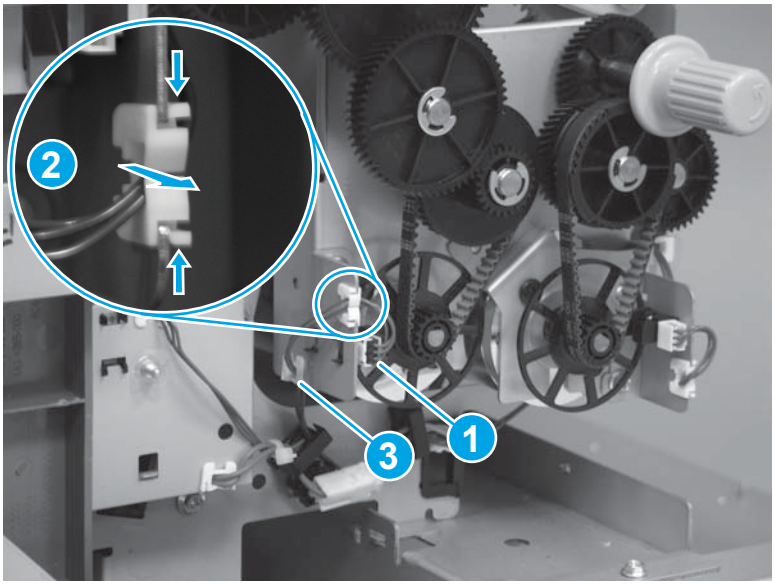
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Latch lower covers (front and rear). See Latch lower covers (front and rear) on page 468.
- Latch assembly. See Latch assembly on page 470.
- Move the inner lower cover assembly out of the way. See Inner upper cover assembly on page 480.
- Right cover assembly (BM PCA). See Right cover assembly (BM PCA) on page 611.
- For all models with a hole punch assembly installed:
  - Punch lower front cover assembly. See Punch lower front cover assembly on page 684.
  - Punch rear cover assembly. See Punch rear cover assembly on page 686.

Remove the folding-motor mount assembly

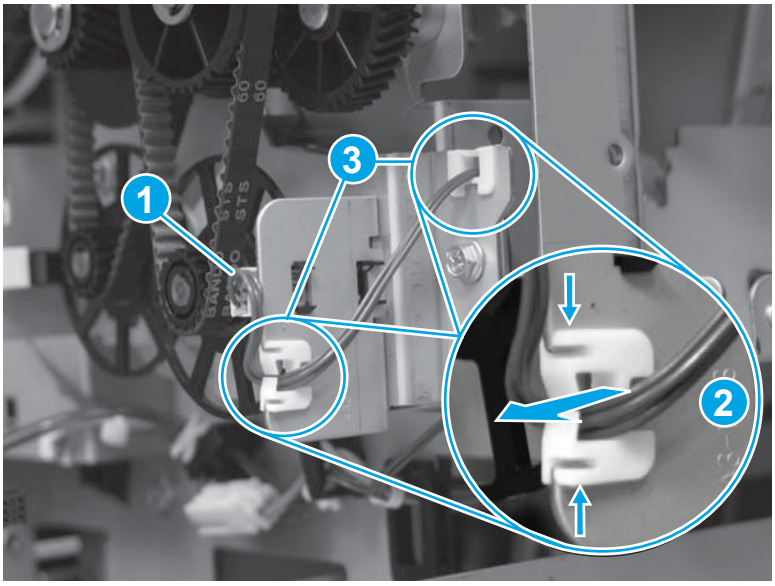
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), release two tabs on one retainer (callout 2), remove the retainer from the sheet-metal bracket, and then release the wire harness from one retainer (callout 3).

Figure 1-950 Remove the folding-motor mount assembly (1 of 6)



2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), release two tabs (one on each side; callout 2) of two retainers (callout 3), and then remove the retainers from the sheet-metal bracket.

Figure 1-951 Remove the folding-motor mount assembly (2 of 6)

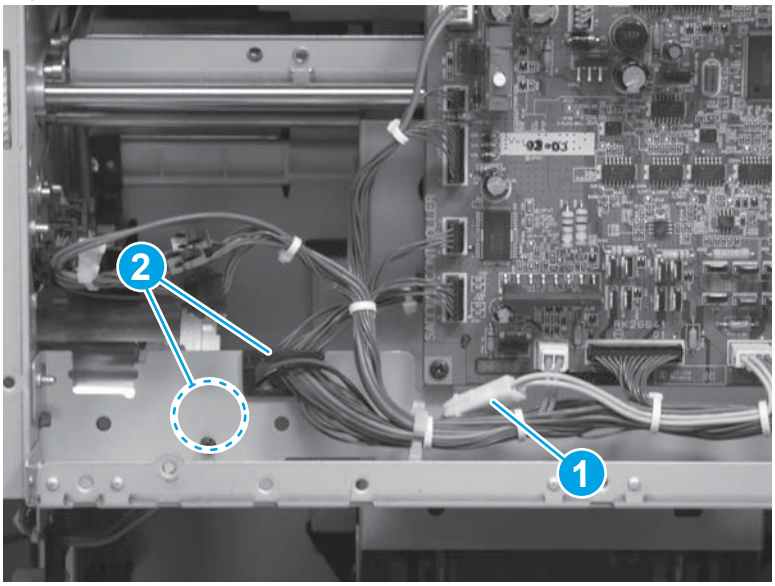


3. Disconnect one inline connector (callout 1), and then release the wire harness from two retainers (callout 2).

TIP: One of the retainers is on the back side of the sheet-metal support bracket. Use a long-barrel flat-blade screwdriver to release a tab on the retainer to open it

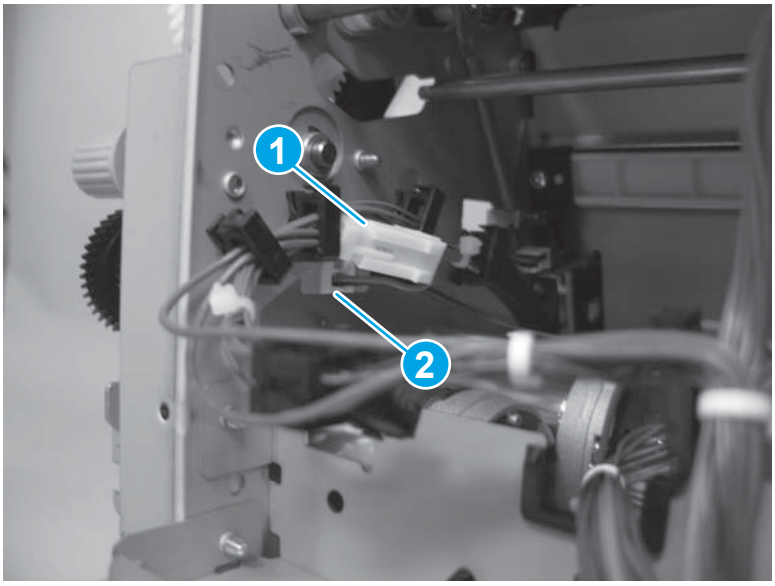
When the assembly is reinstalled, you might have to disconnect connectors on the controller PCA, or release wire harnesses from other retainers in order to gain enough slack in the wire harnesses to close the retainer latch.

Figure 1-952 Remove the folding-motor mount assembly (3 of 6)



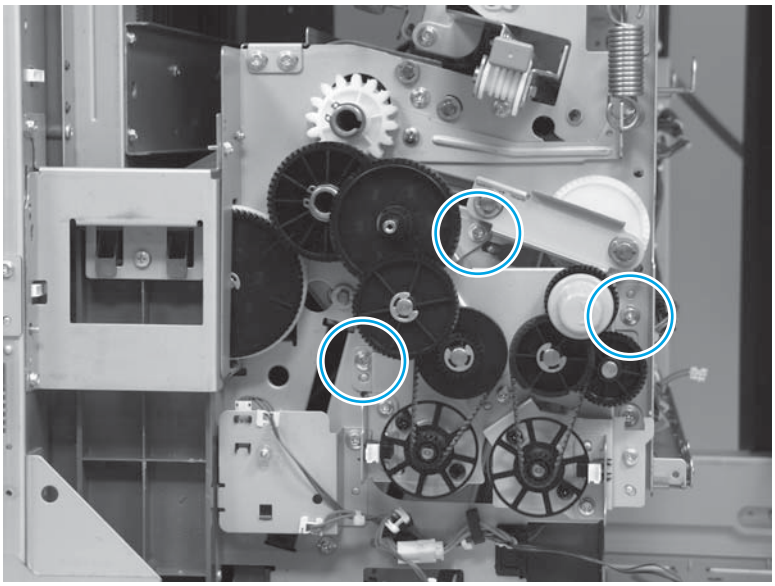
4. Disconnect one inline connector (callout 1), and then release the wire harness from one retainer (callout 2).

Figure 1-953 Remove the folding-motor mount assembly (4 of 6)



5. Remove three screws.

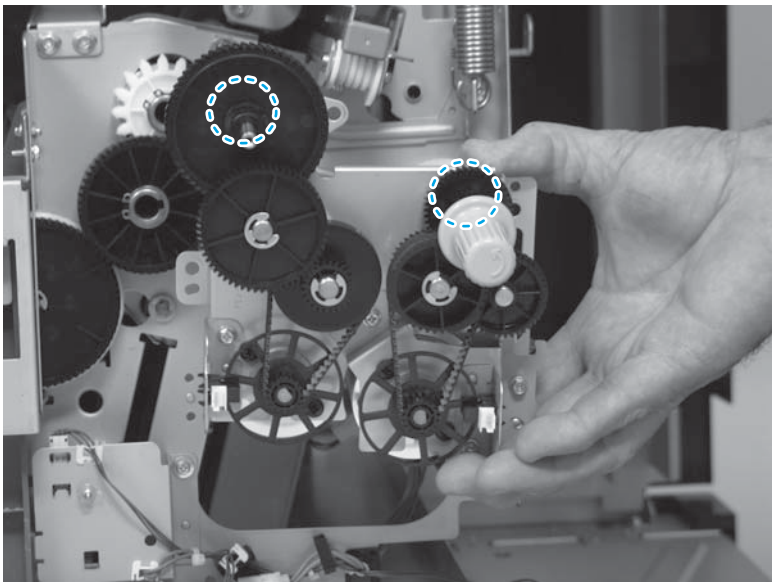
Figure 1-954 Remove the folding-motor mount assembly (5 of 6)



6. Remove the assembly.

⚠ **CAUTION:** There are two keyed bushings on the gear shafts that fit into holes on the chassis (see Reinstall the folding-motor mount assembly on page 637). The bushings are not captive. Do not lose them when the assembly is removed.

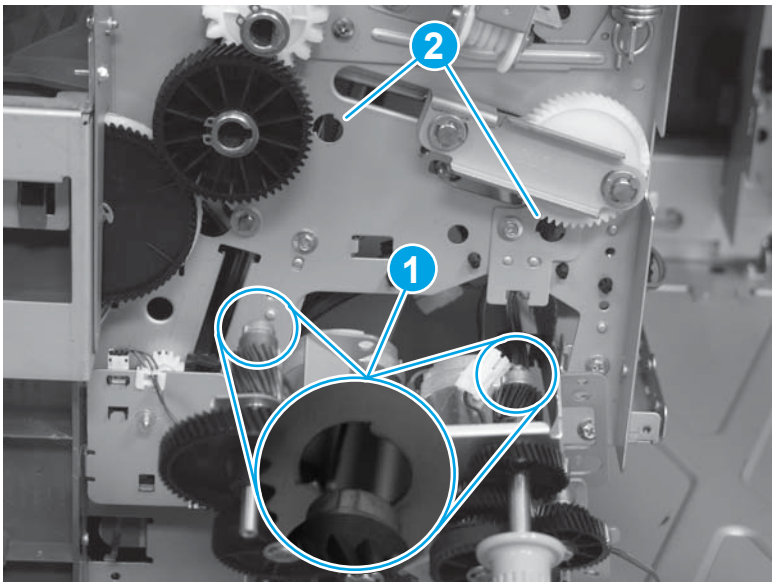
Figure 1-955 Remove the folding-motor mount assembly (6 of 6)



Reinstall the folding-motor mount assembly

Make sure that the two brass bushings (callout 1) are installed on the gear shafts, and that the keyed portion of the bushings are aligned with the associated large slots in the chassis mounting holes (callout 2). The sheet-metal mounting bracket must be tight up against the chassis before you install the mounting screws.

Figure 1-956 Reinstall the folding-motor mount assembly



Delivery switch mount assembly

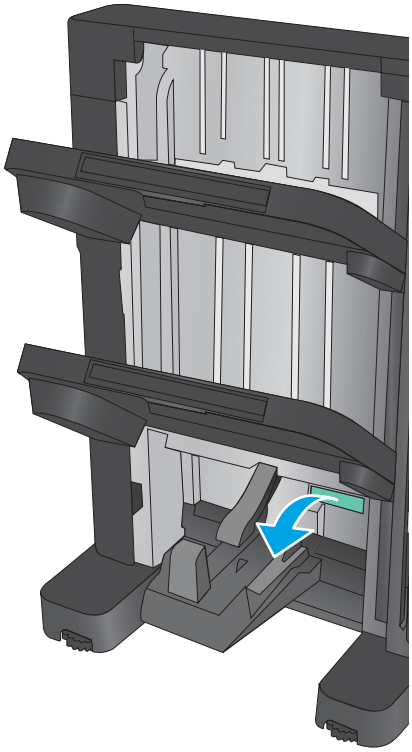
Before proceeding, do the following:

- Move the inner upper cover assembly out of the way. See Inner upper cover assembly on page 480.
- Move the inner lower cover assembly out of the way. See Inner lower cover assembly on page 486.

Remove the delivery switch mount assembly

1. Open the lower booklet jam access door.

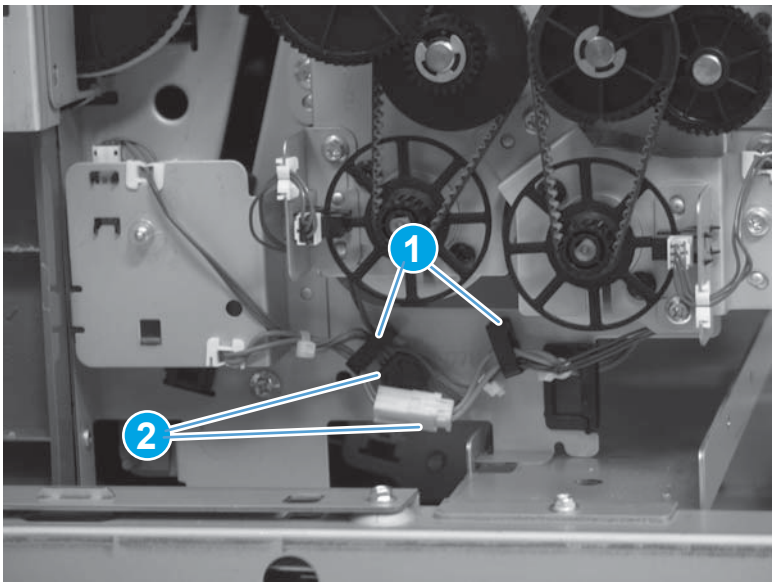
Figure 1-957 Remove the delivery switch mount assembly (1 of 4)



2. Release the wire harnesses from two retainers (callout 1), and then disconnect two inline connectors (callout 2).

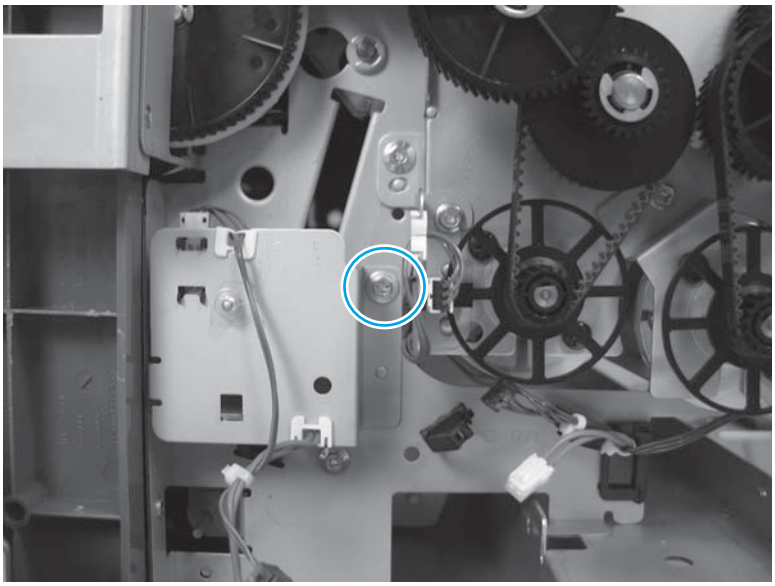
TIP: Releasing the wire harnesses from the retainers first makes it easier to disconnect the connectors.

Figure 1-958 Remove the delivery switch mount assembly (2 of 4)



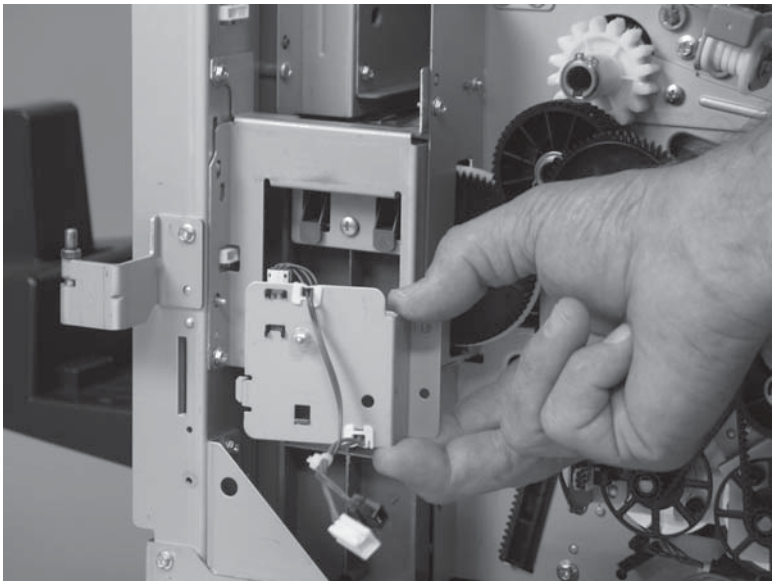
3. Remove one screw.

Figure 1-959 Remove the delivery switch mount assembly (4 of 4)



4. Remove the assembly.

Figure 1-960 Remove the delivery switch mount assembly (4 of 4)



Saddle stapler assembly

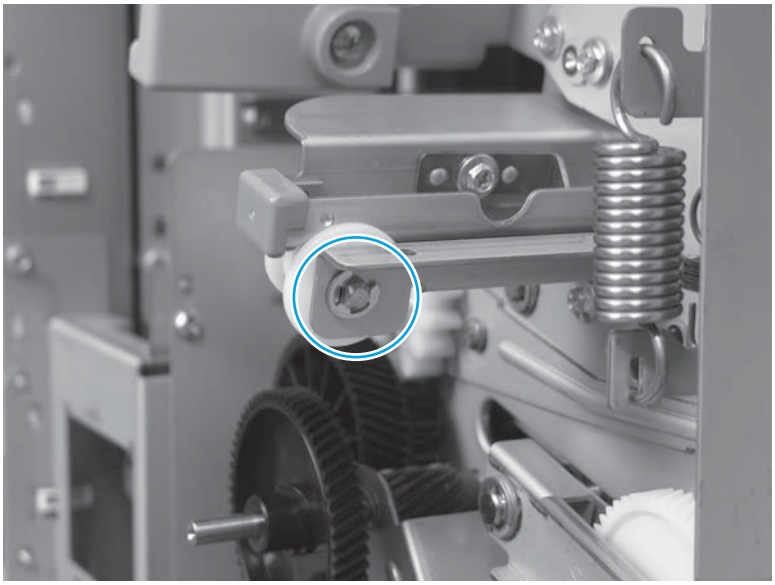
Before proceeding, do the following:

- Move the inner upper cover assembly out of the way. See Inner upper cover assembly on page 480.
- Move the inner lower cover assembly out of the way. See Inner lower cover assembly on page 486.

Remove the saddle stapler assembly

1. Remove one e-ring.

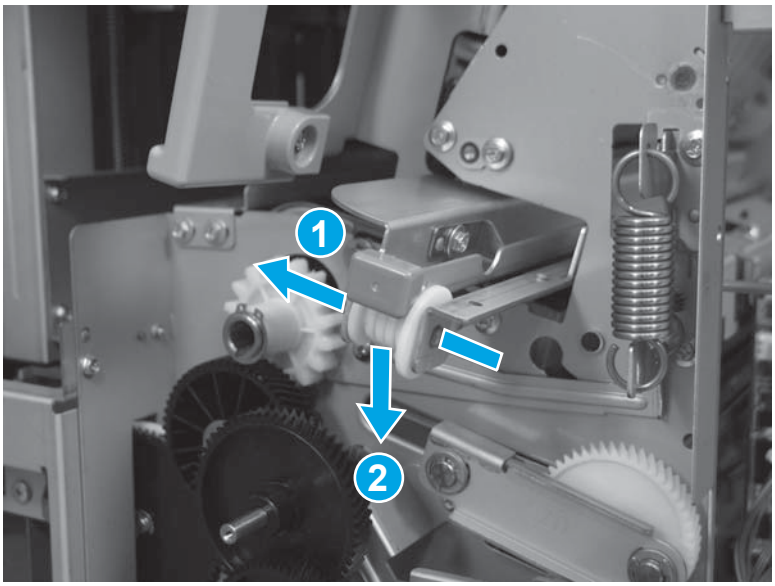
Figure 1-961 Remove the saddle stapler assembly (1 of 3)



2. Remove one shaft (callout 1), and then remove the white plastic wheel (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip The wheel is asymmetric. The small diameter end of the wheel should face toward the saddle stapler assembly when it is reinstalled.

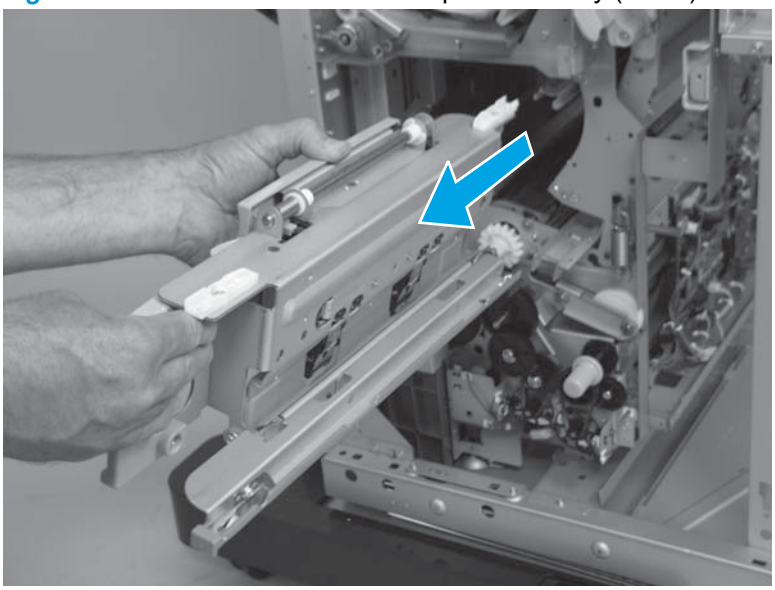
Figure 1-962 Remove the saddle stapler assembly (2 of 3)



3. Pull the assembly straight out of the saddle assembly to remove it.

Reinstallation tip If you are installing a replacement assembly, remove the staple cartridges from the discarded saddle stapler assembly, and then install them in the replacement assembly.

Figure 1-963 Remove the saddle stapler assembly (3 of 3)



Lower left guide assembly

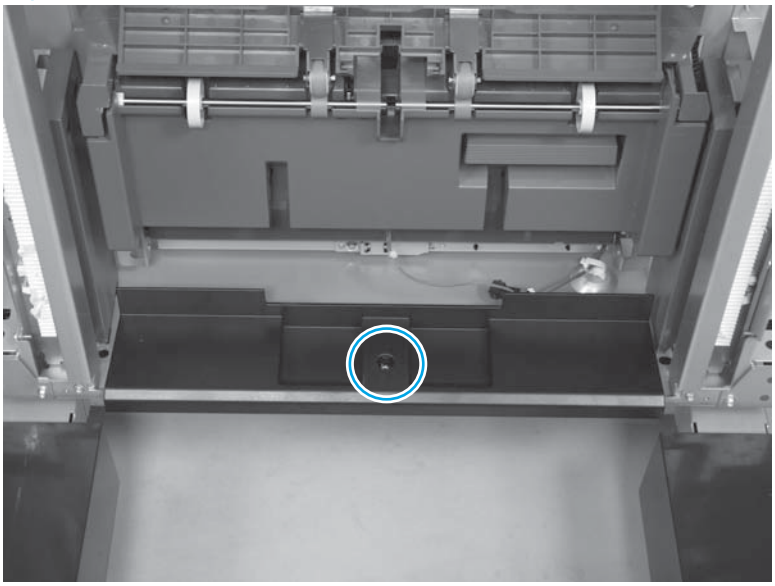
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Saddle output bin assembly. See Saddle output bin assembly on page 609.

Remove the lower left guide assembly

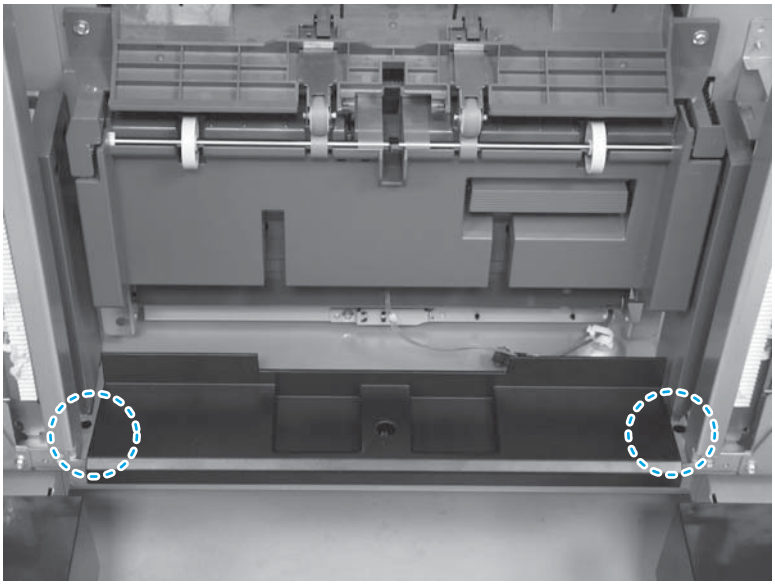
1. Remove one screw.

   Figure 1-964 Remove the lower left guide assembly (1 of 3)

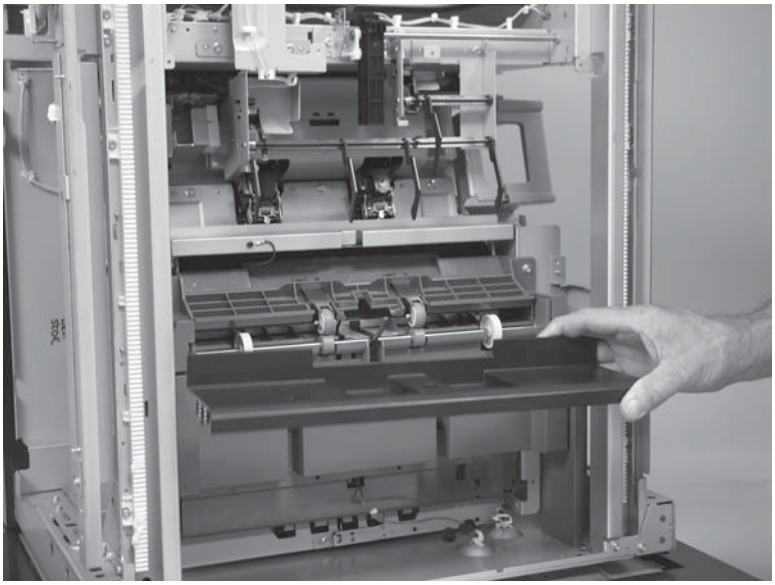
2. Release two tabs, and then remove the cover.

   Figure 1-965 Remove the lower left guide assembly (2 of 3)

3. Remove the cover.

Figure 1-966 Remove the lower left guide assembly (3 of 3)



Saddle delivery inner cover, front assembly

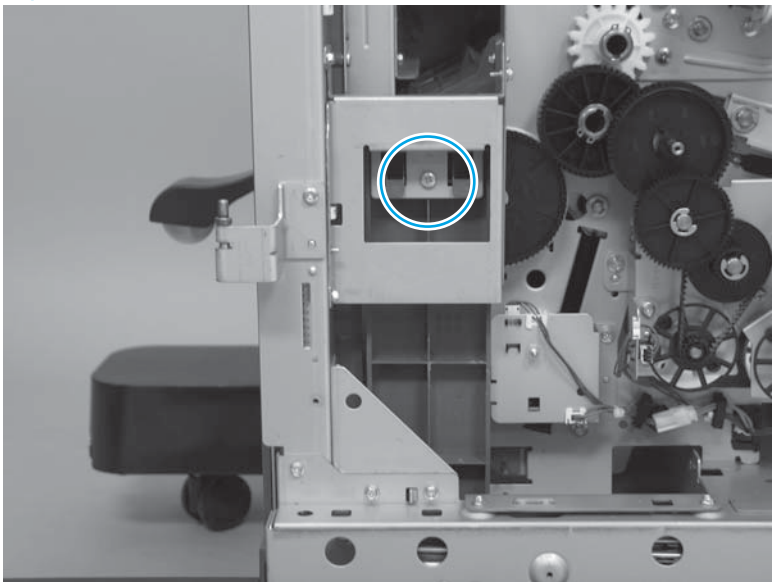
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Front door. See Front door on page 479.
- Inner upper cover assembly. See Inner upper cover assembly on page 480.
- Inner lower cover assembly. See Inner lower cover assembly on page 486.

Remove the saddle delivery inner cover, front assembly

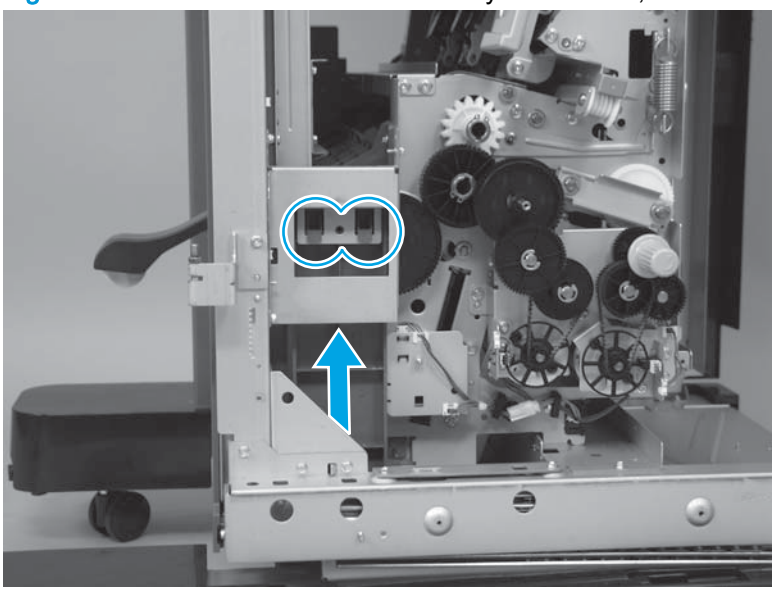
1. Remove one screw.

Figure 1-967 Remove the saddle delivery inner cover, front assembly (1 of 3)



2. Slide the cover up to release two tabs.

Figure 1-968 Remove the saddle delivery inner cover, front assembly (2 of 3)



3. Remove the cover.

Figure 1-969 Remove the saddle delivery inner cover, front assembly (3 of 3)

Saddle delivery inner cover, rear assembly

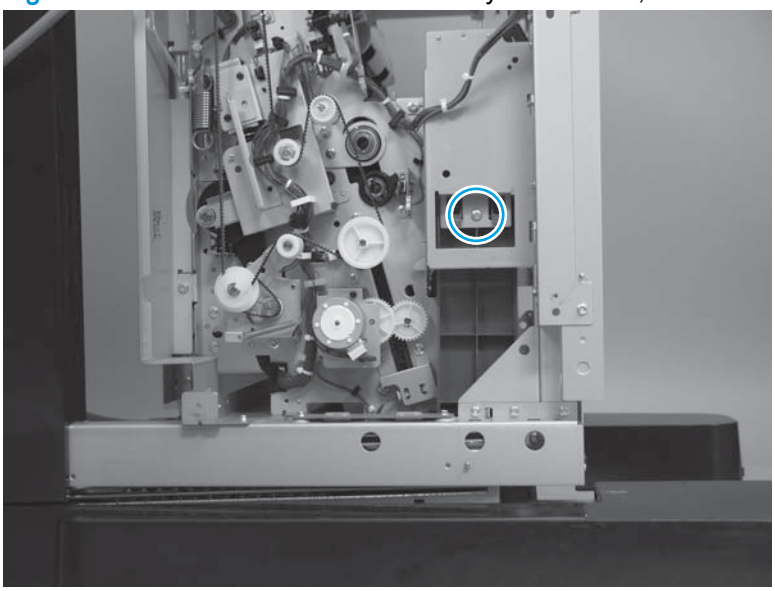
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Bin cable guide cover. See Bin cable guide cover on page 492.
- Rear cover assembly. See Rear cover assembly on page 496.

Remove the saddle delivery inner cover, rear assembly

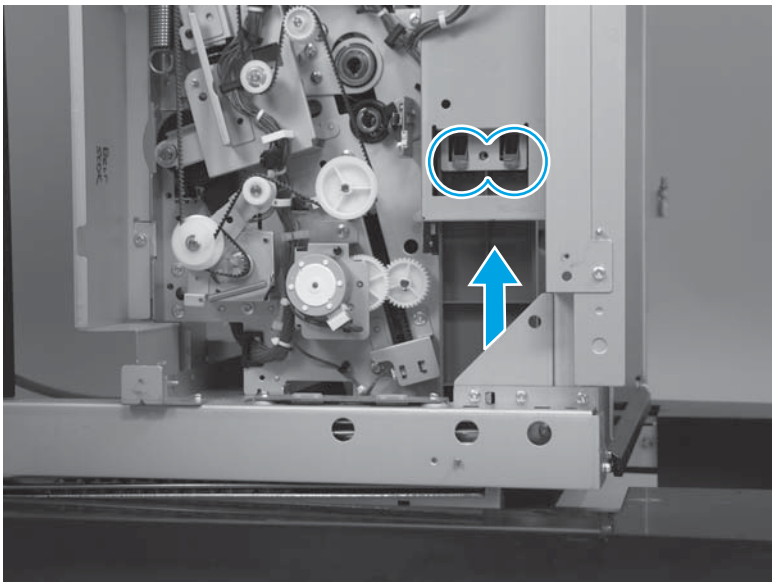
1. Remove one screw.

Figure 1-970 Remove the saddle delivery inner cover, rear assembly (1 of 3)



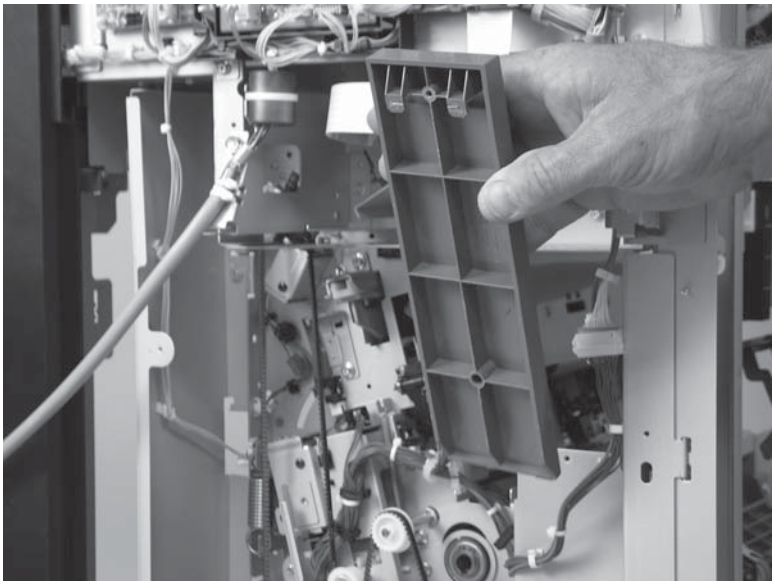
2. Slide the cover up to release two tabs.

Figure 1-971 Remove the saddle delivery inner cover, rear assembly (2 of 3)



3. Remove the cover.

Figure 1-972 Remove the saddle delivery inner cover, rear assembly (3 of 3)



Saddle guide assembly

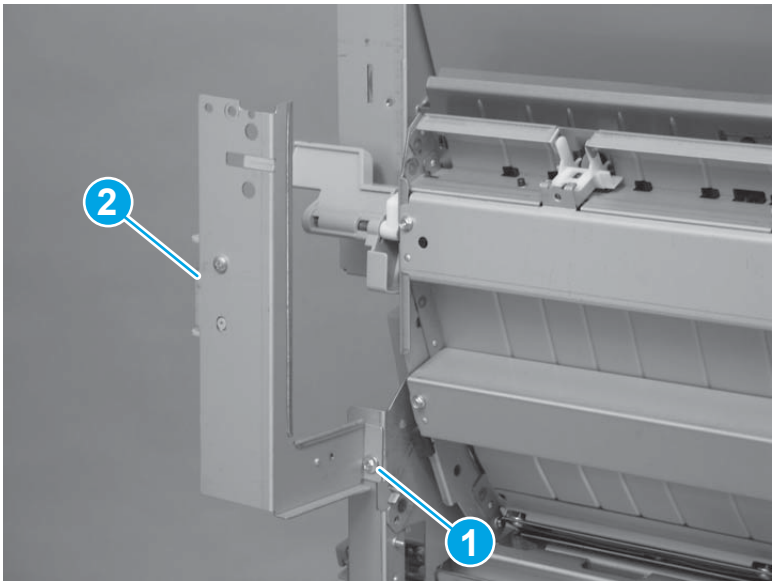
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Latch lower covers (front and rear). See Latch lower covers (front and rear) on page 468.
- Latch assembly. See Latch assembly on page 470.
- Front door. See Front door on page 479.
- Inner upper cover assembly. See Inner upper cover assembly on page 480.
- Inner lower cover assembly. See Inner lower cover assembly on page 486.
- Bin cable guide cover. See Bin cable guide cover on page 492.
- Rear cover assembly. See Rear cover assembly on page 496.
- For all models with a hole punch assembly installed:
  - Punch waste tray. See Punch waste tray on page 688.
  - Punch inner cover assembly. See Punch inner cover assembly on page 689.
  - Punch upper cover assembly. See Punch top cover on page 691.
  - Punch hole assembly. See Punch hole assembly on page 694.
- Paper pass assembly. See Paper pass assembly on page 603.
- Right cover assembly (BM PCA). See Right cover assembly (BM PCA) on page 611.

Remove the saddle guide assembly

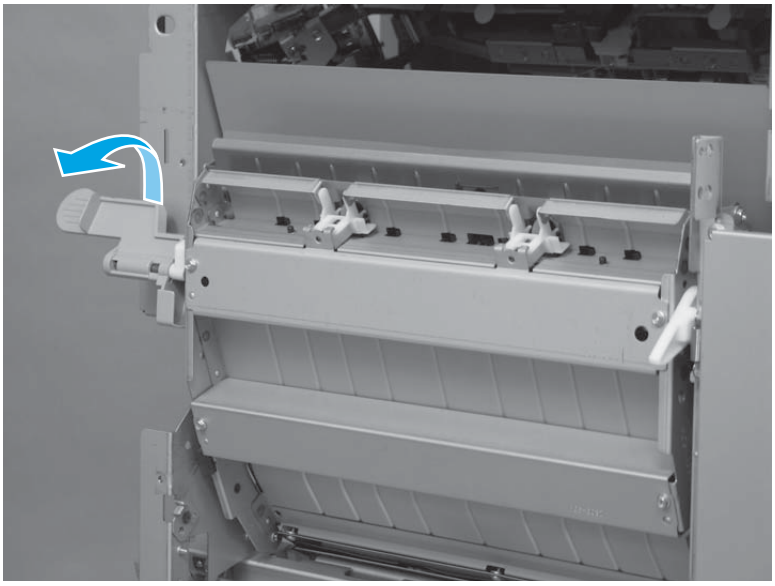
1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the sheet-metal support bracket (callout 2).

Figure 1-973 Remove the saddle guide assembly (1 of 5)



2. Release the lever, and then open the saddle guide.

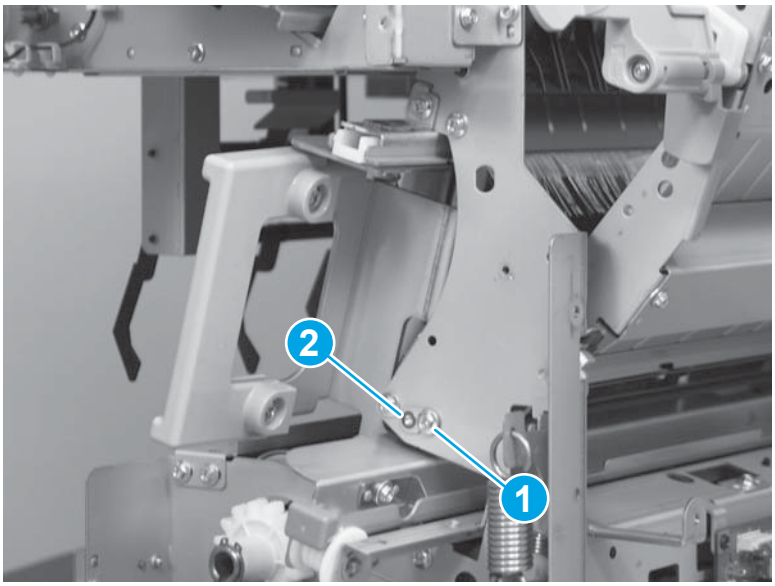
Figure 1-974 Remove the saddle guide assembly (2 of 5)



3. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the hinge pin retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Slightly move the saddle guide assembly back and forth to make removing the hinge pin retainer easier.

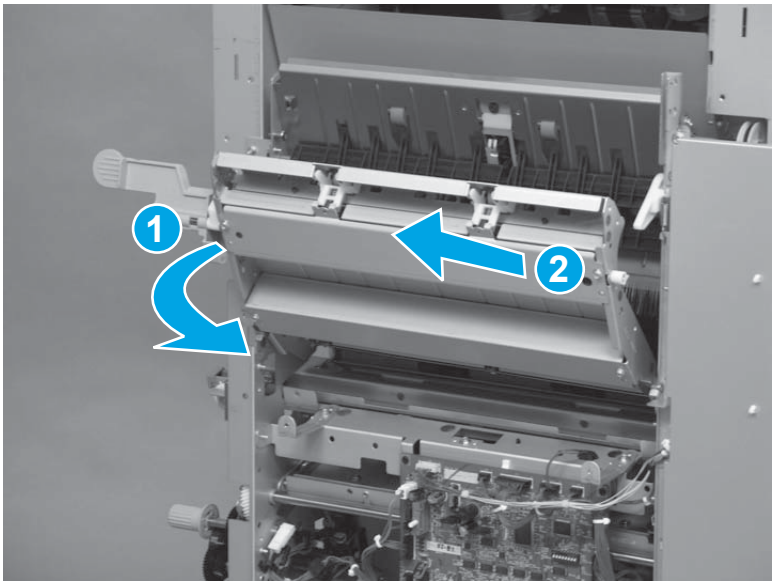
Figure 1-975 Remove the saddle guide assembly (3 of 5)



4. Slightly rotate the left side of the assembly away from the saddle assembly (callout 1), and then slide it to the left (callout 2).

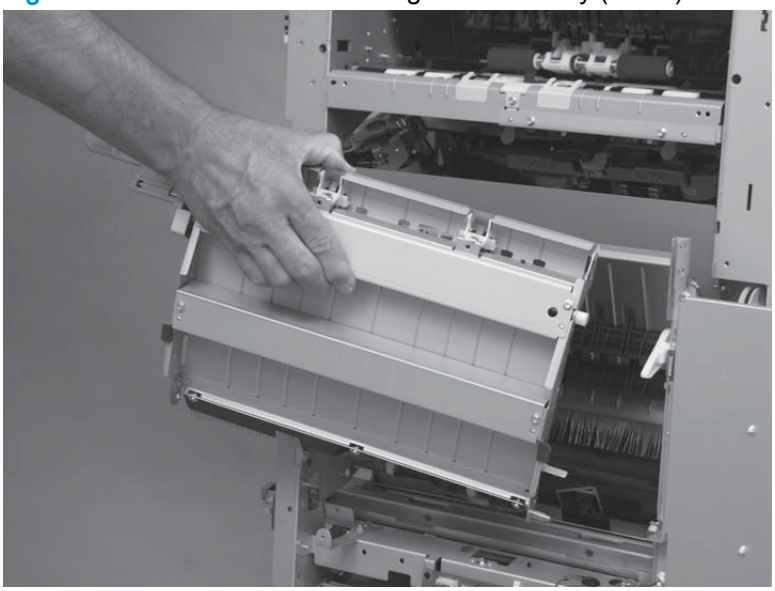
NOTE: There is a pin on the left side of the assembly that must clear the accessory chassis.

Figure 1-976 Remove the saddle guide assembly (4 of 5)



5. Remove the assembly.

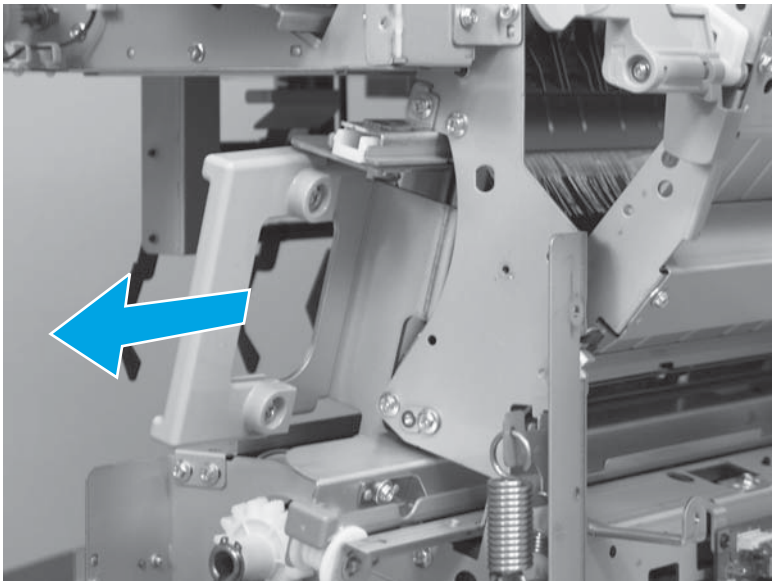
Figure 1-977 Remove the saddle guide assembly (5 of 5)



Reinstall the saddle guide assembly

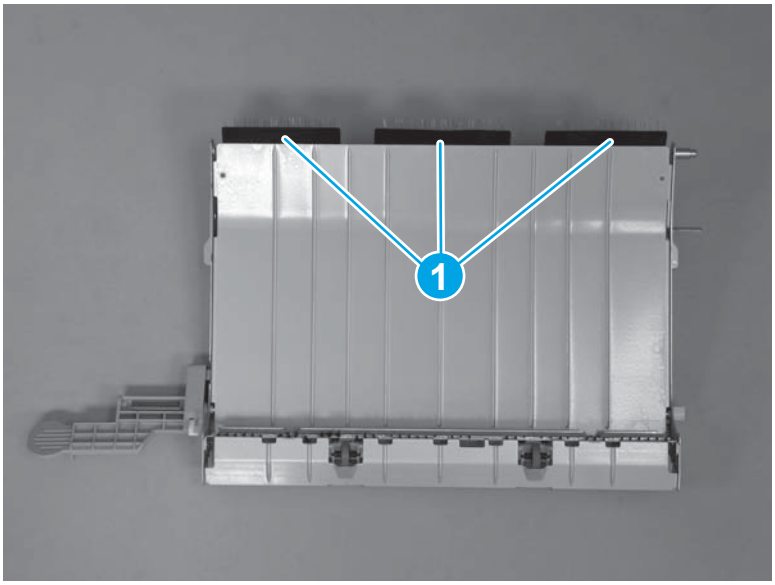
1. Slide the saddle stapler out of the accessory to avoid damage to the mylar strips on the saddle guide assembly when it is reinstalled.

Figure 1-978 Reinstall the saddle guide assembly (1 of 4)



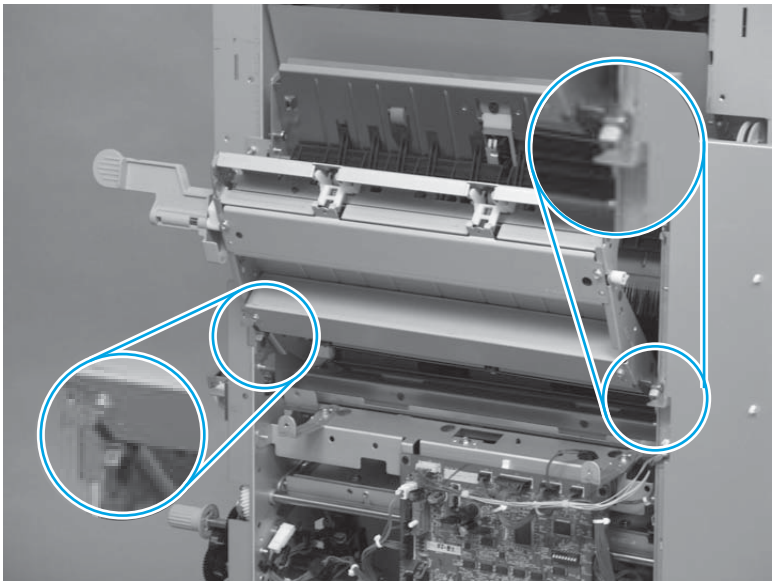
2. When you reinstall the assembly, do not damage the mylar strips (callout 1) on the assembly.

Figure 1-979 Reinstall the saddle guide assembly (2 of 4)



3. Make sure the shaft-end edge of the assembly, and the hinge-pin edge of the assembly, are behind the sheet-metal stoppers on the chassis.

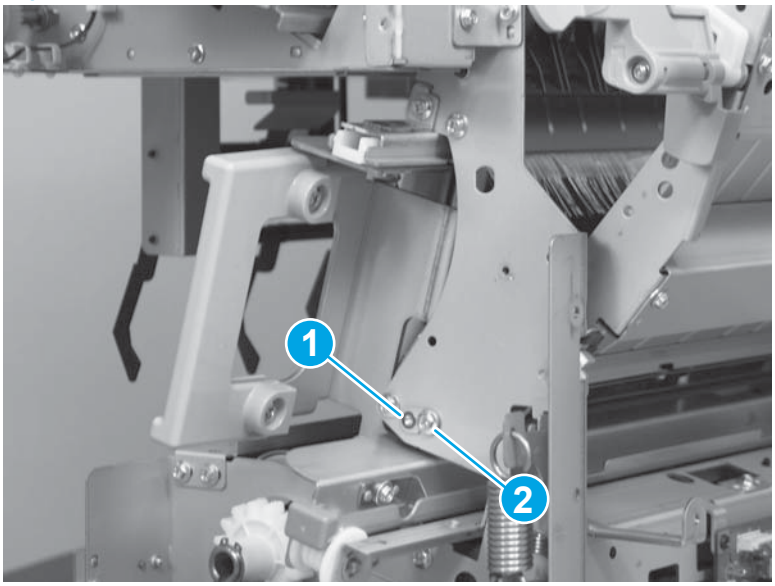
Figure 1-980 Reinstall the saddle guide assembly (3 of 4)



4. Install the hinge pin retainer (callout 1), and then install one screw (callout 2) to secure the assembly.

TIP: Slightly move the saddle guide assembly back and forth to make installing the hinge pin retainer easier.

Figure 1-981 Reinstall the saddle guide assembly (4 of 4)



Saddle feed assembly

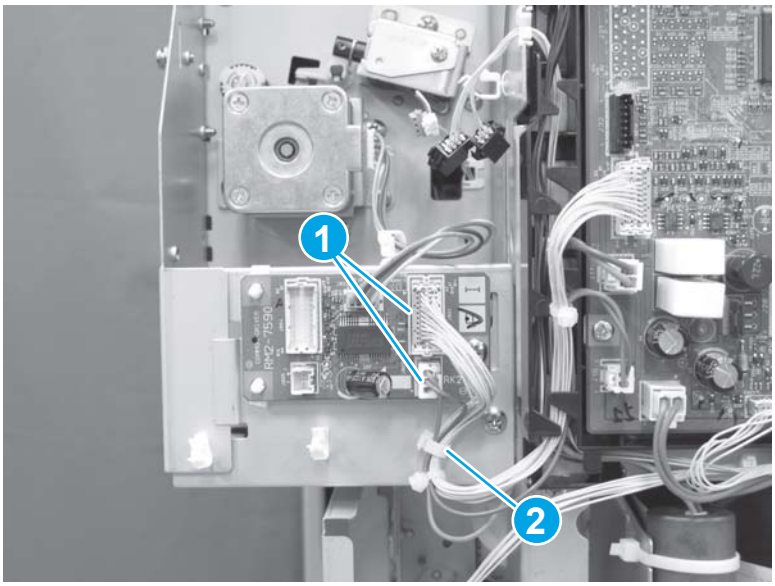
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Latch lower covers (front and rear). See Latch lower covers (front and rear) on page 468.
- Move the inner upper cover assembly out of the way. See Inner upper cover assembly on page 480.
- Latch assembly. See Latch assembly on page 470.
- Bin cable guide cover. See Bin cable guide cover on page 492.
- Rear cover assembly. See Rear cover assembly on page 496.
- For all models with a hole punch assembly installed:
  - Punch waste tray. See Punch waste tray on page 688.
  - Punch inner cover assembly. See Punch inner cover assembly on page 689.
  - Punch upper cover assembly. See Punch top cover on page 691.
  - Punch hole assembly. See Punch hole assembly on page 694.

Remove the saddle feed assembly

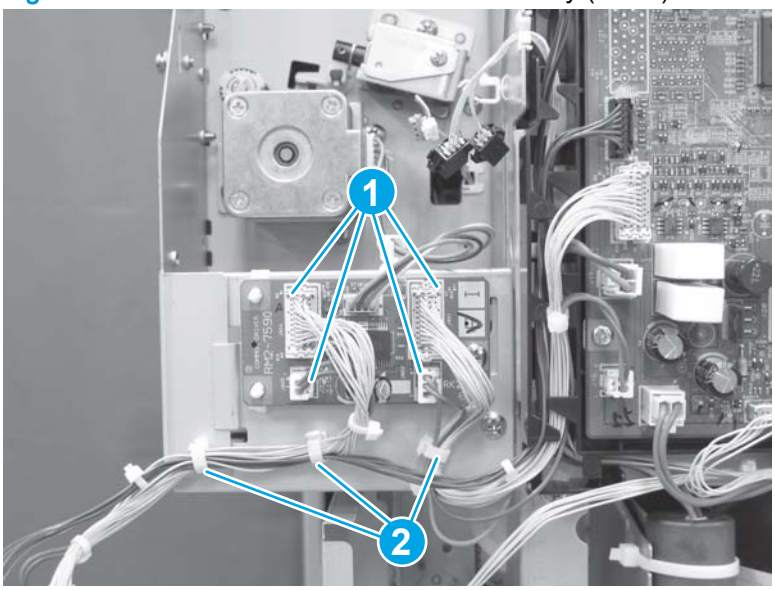
1. Open the top door and front door.
2. **Booklet maker only**: Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then release the wire harness from one retainer (callout 2).

Figure 1-982 Remove the saddle feed assembly (1 of 7)



3. **Booklet maker with hole punch only**: Disconnect four connectors (callout 1), and then release the wire harness from three retainers (callout 2).

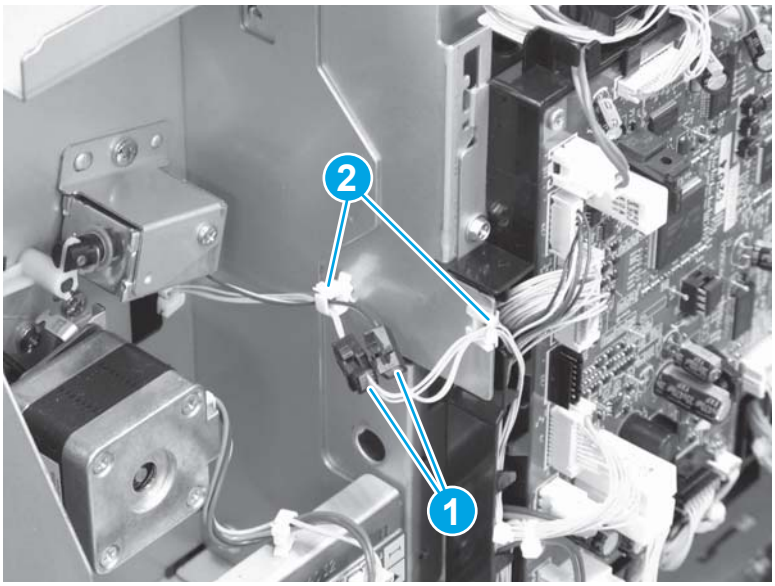
Figure 1-983 Remove the saddle feed assembly (2 of 7)



4. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then release the wire harnesses from two retainers (callout 2).

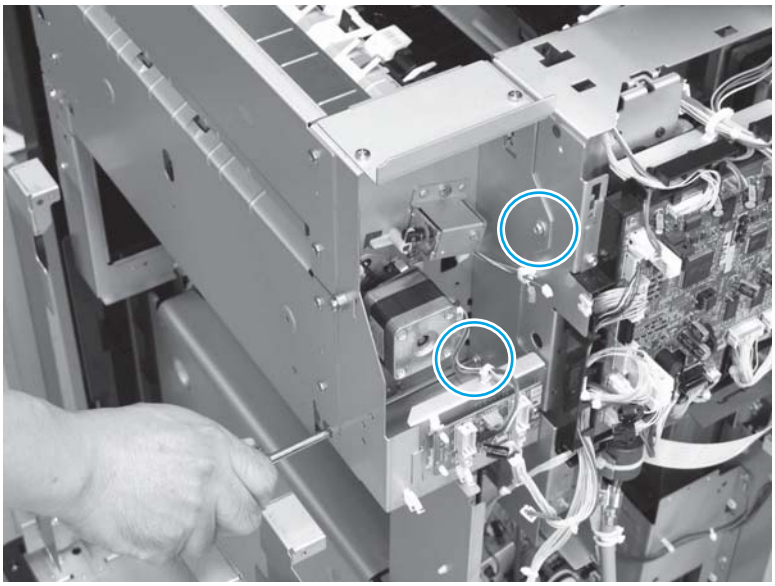
TIP: It is easier to disconnect the connectors if you first release the wire harnesses from the retainers.

Figure 1-984 Remove the saddle feed assembly (3 of 7)



5. Remove two screws.

Figure 1-985 Remove the saddle feed assembly (4 of 7)

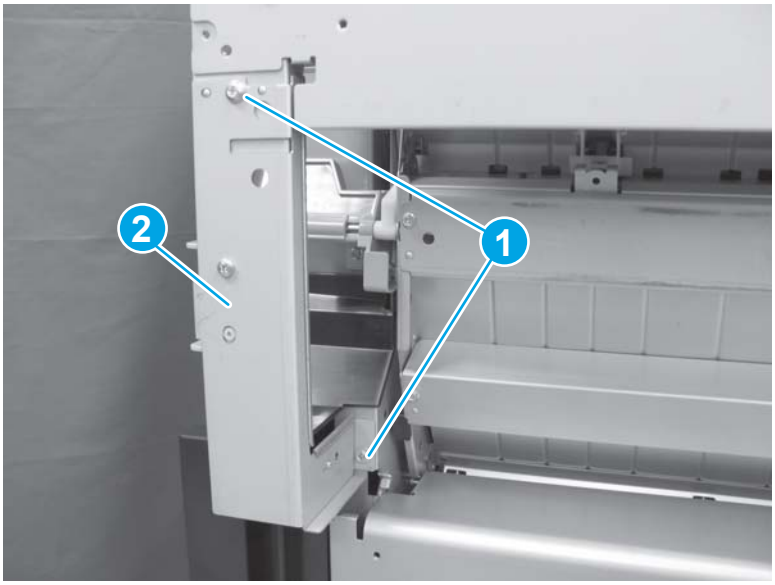


6. Below the saddle feed assembly near the left side of the saddle guide, remove two screws.

Figure 1-986 Remove the saddle feed assembly (5 of 7)

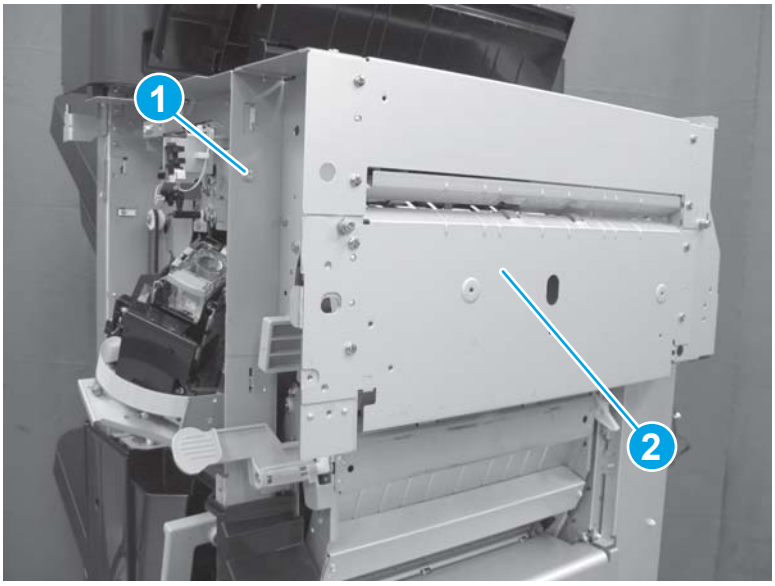
7. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the sheet-metal bracket (callout 2).

Figure 1-987 Remove the saddle feed assembly (6 of 7)



8. Remove one screw (callout 1), grasp the top of the saddle feed assembly (callout 2), and then lift it up to remove it.

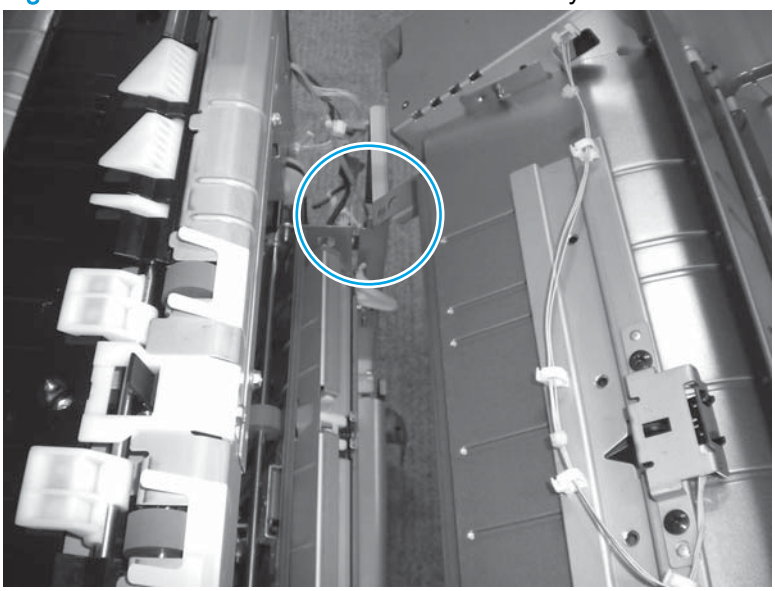
Figure 1-988 Remove the saddle feed assembly (7 of 7)



Reinstall the saddle feed assembly

Make sure that the bottom mounting tab on the saddle feed assembly is on the outside of the chassis —not on the inside—when it is installed.

Figure 1-989 Reinstall the saddle feed assembly



Saddle assembly

NOTE: The saddle assembly is not an orderable service part. This removal procedure is for reference only. HP does not recommend removing the saddle assembly at this time.

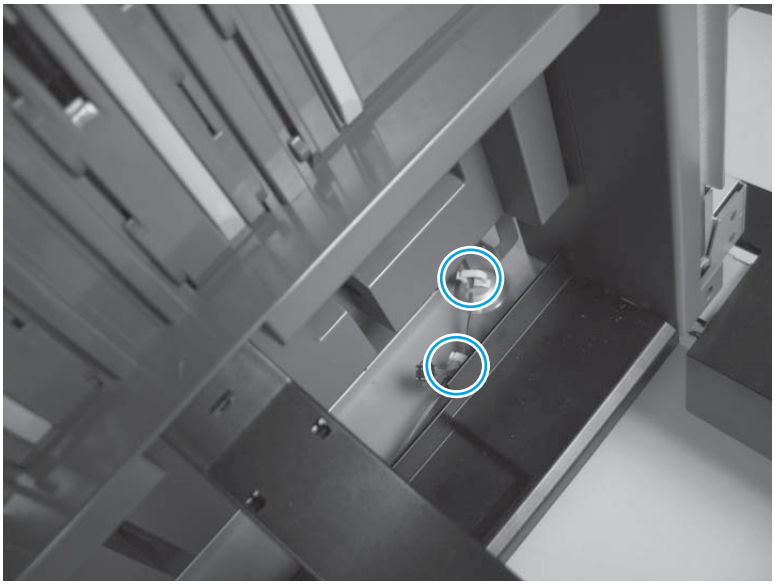
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Latch lower covers (front and rear). See Latch lower covers (front and rear) on page 468.
- Latch assembly. See Latch assembly on page 470.
- Open/closed stepped cover assembly. See Open/closed stepped cover assembly on page 471.
- Upper stepped cover assembly. See Upper stepped cover assembly on page 472.
- Lower stepped cover assembly. See Lower stepped cover assembly on page 474.
- Front door. See Front door on page 479.
- Inner upper cover assembly. See Inner upper cover assembly on page 480.
- Inner lower cover assembly. See Inner lower cover assembly on page 486.
- Bin cable guide cover. See Bin cable guide cover on page 492.
- Rear cover assembly. See Rear cover assembly on page 496.
- For all models with a hole punch assembly installed:
  - Punch lower front cover assembly. See Punch lower front cover assembly on page 684.
  - Punch rear cover assembly. See Punch rear cover assembly on page 686.
  - Punch waste tray. See Punch waste tray on page 688.
  - Punch inner cover assembly. See Punch inner cover assembly on page 689.
  - Punch upper cover assembly. See Punch top cover on page 691.
  - Punch hole assembly. See Punch hole assembly on page 694.
- Paper pass assembly. See Paper pass assembly on page 603.
- Saddle output bin assembly. See Saddle output bin assembly on page 609.
- Right cover assembly (BM PCA). See Right cover assembly (BM PCA) on page 611.
- Saddle delivery inner cover, front assembly. See Saddle delivery inner cover, front assembly on page 645.

Remove the saddle assembly

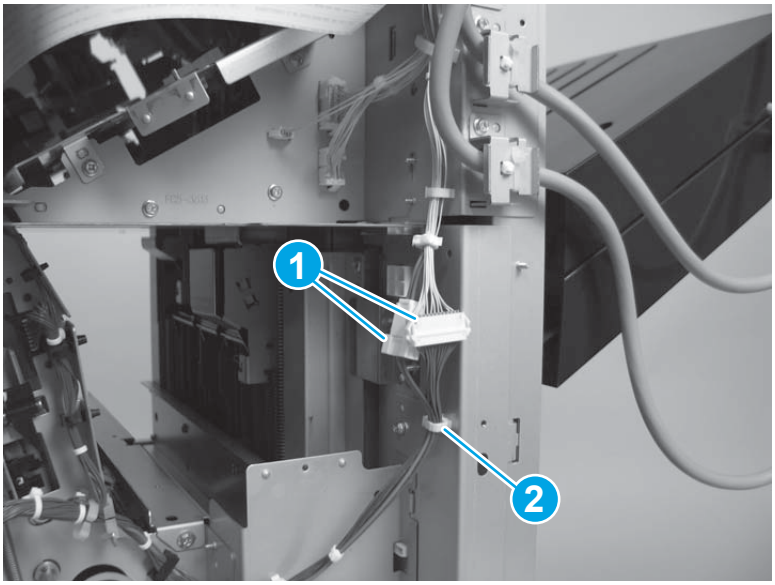
1. Release the wire harnesses from the two retainers.

Figure 1-990 Remove the saddle assembly (1 of 13)



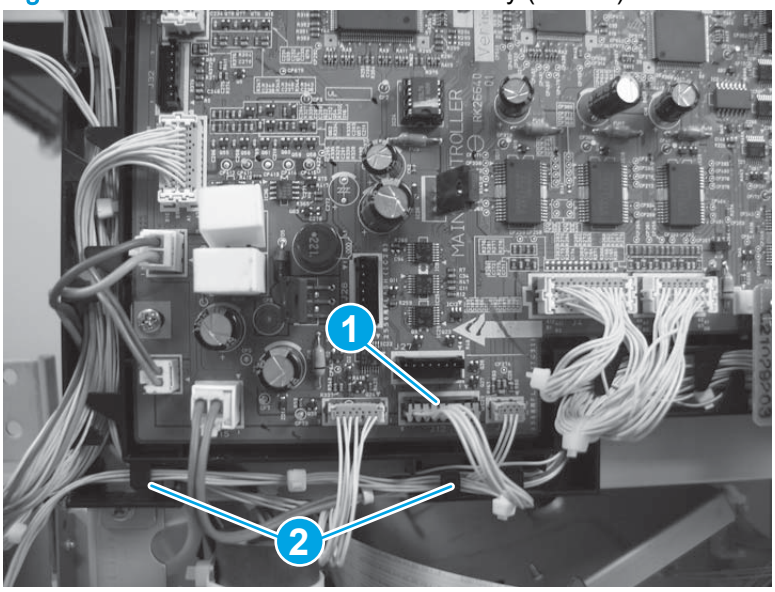
2. Disconnect two in-line connectors (callout 1), and then release the wire harness from one retainer (callout 2).

Figure 1-991 Remove the saddle assembly (2 of 13)



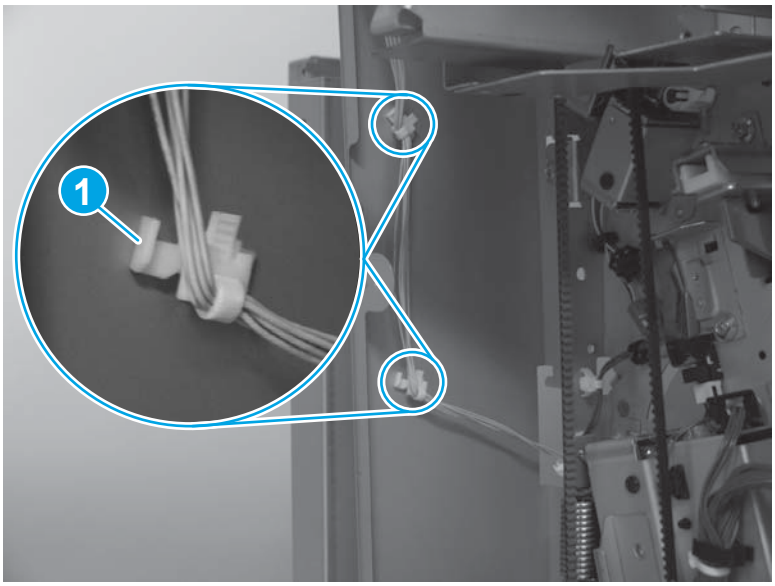
3. Disconnect one connector (callout 1) on the main controller PCA, and then release the wire harness from the guide (callout 2).

Figure 1-992 Remove the saddle assembly (3 of 13)



4. Release one tab (callout 1, one tab on each retainer) on two retainers to release them from the sheet-metal support bracket.

Figure 1-993 Remove the saddle assembly (4 of 13)

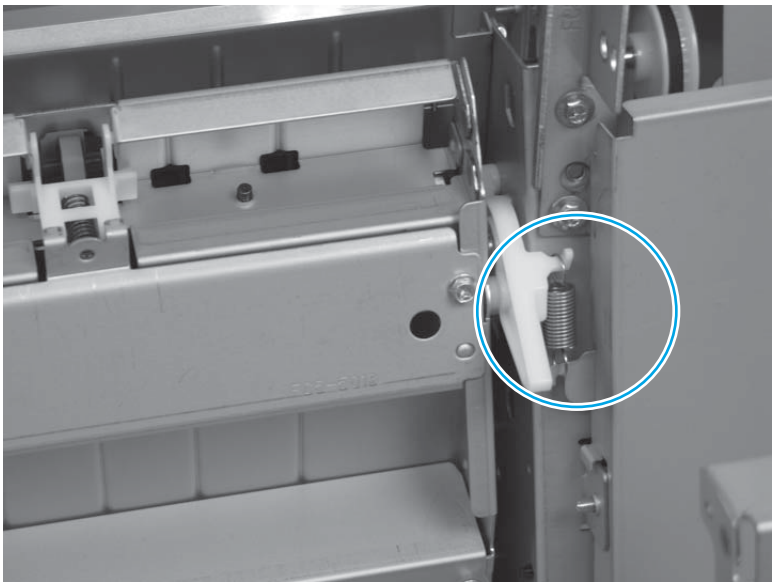


5. Remove one spring on the jam access locking arm. Set the spring aside.

CAUTION: The spring is not captive. Do not lose the spring when releasing it.

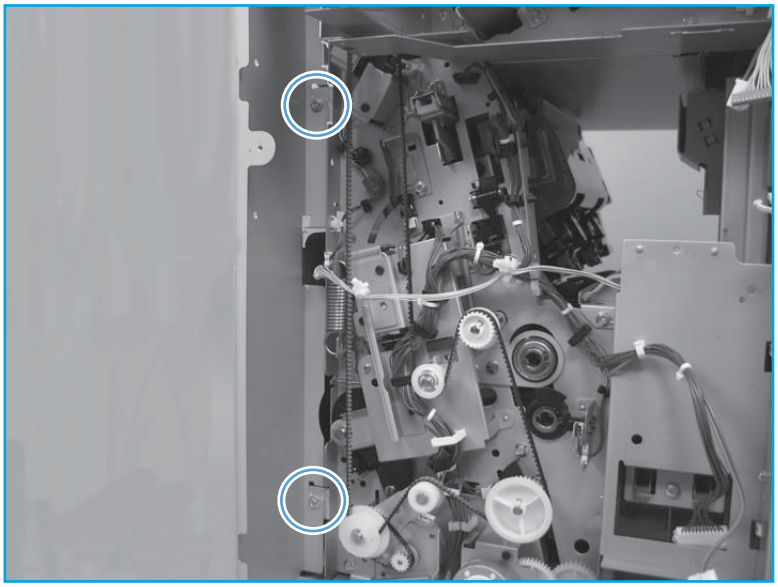
Reinstallation tip Do not forget to reinstall this spring when the assembly is reinstalled, or a replacement assembly is installed.

Figure 1-994 Remove the saddle assembly (5 of 13)



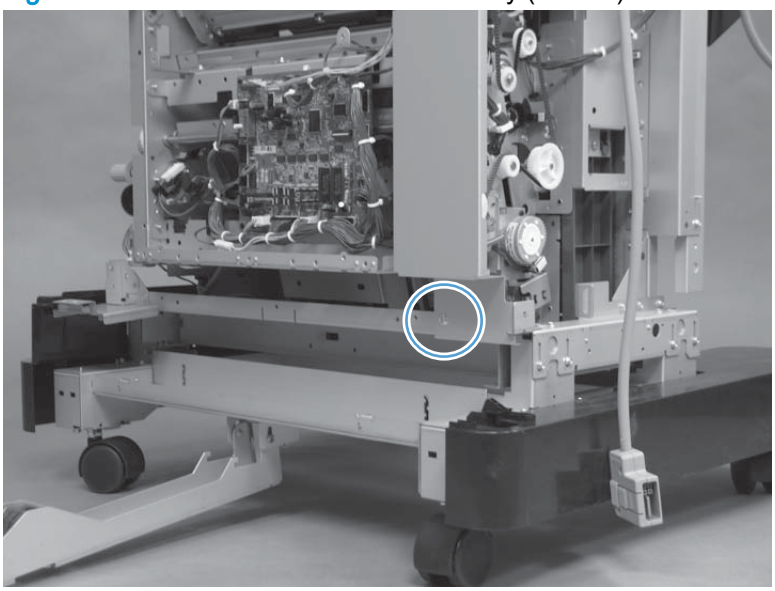
6. Remove two screws.

Figure 1-995 Remove the saddle assembly (6 of 13)



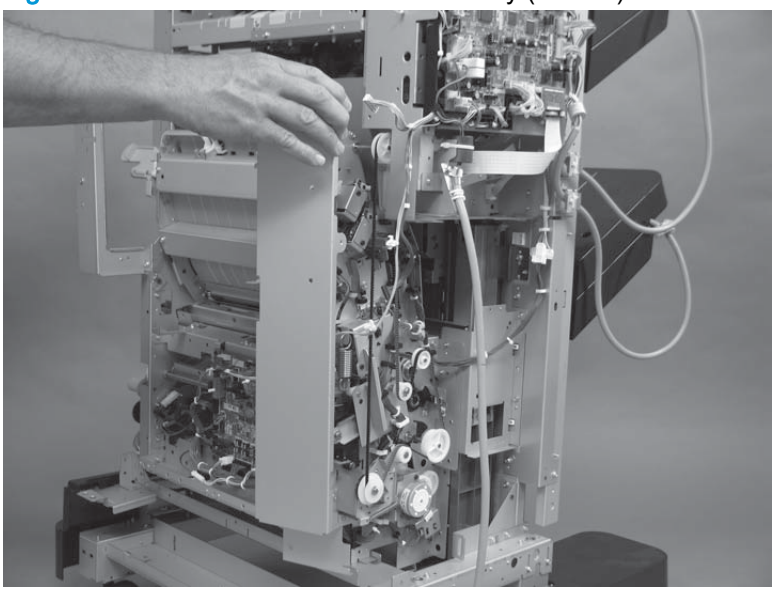
7. Remove one screw.

Figure 1-996 Remove the saddle assembly (7 of 13)



8. Remove the sheet-metal bracket.

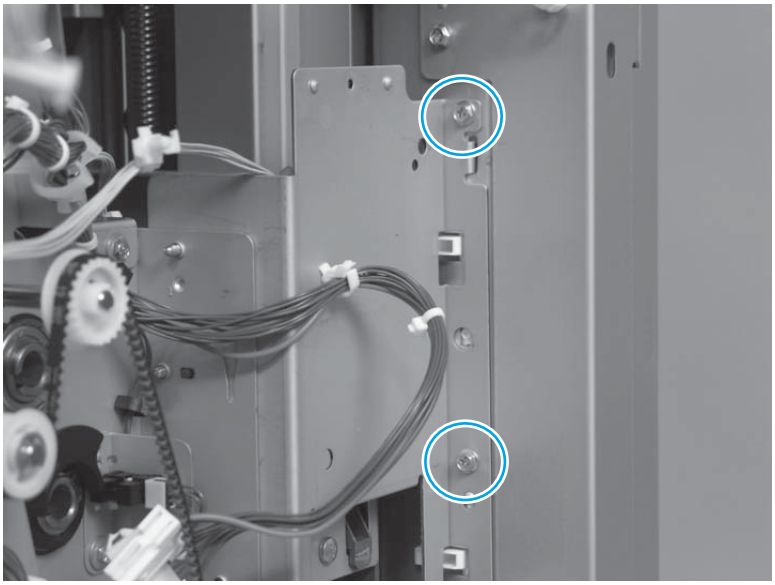
Figure 1-997 Remove the saddle assembly (8 of 13)



9. Remove two screws.

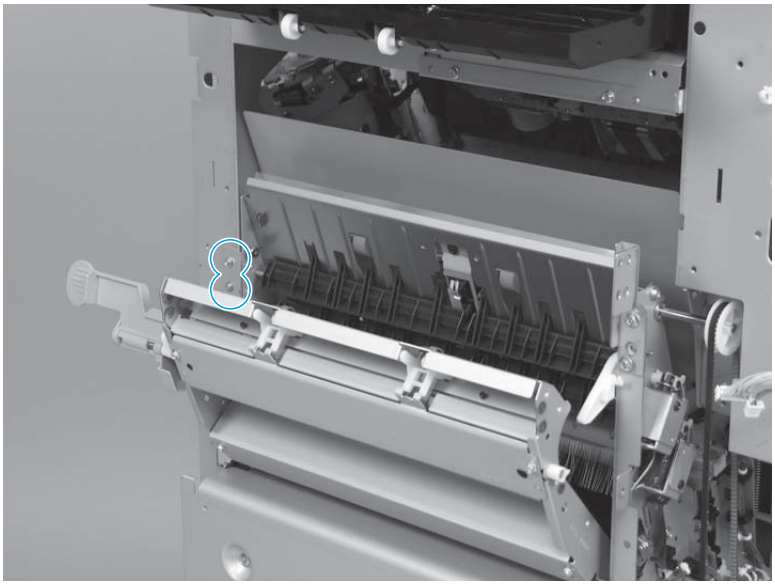
NOTE: These two screws are located on the common controller PCA side of the accessory.

Figure 1-998 Remove the saddle assembly (9 of 13)



10. Open the jam access plate, and then remove two screws.

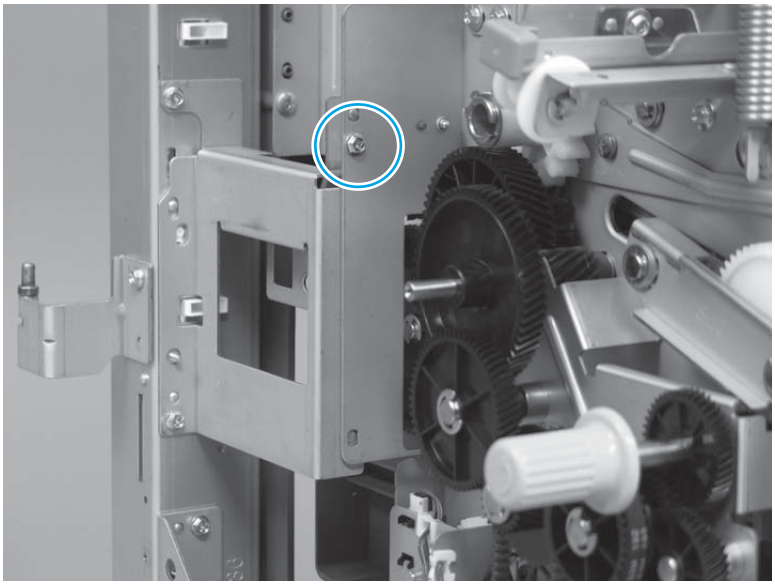
Figure 1-999 Remove the saddle assembly (10 of 13)



11. Remove one screw.

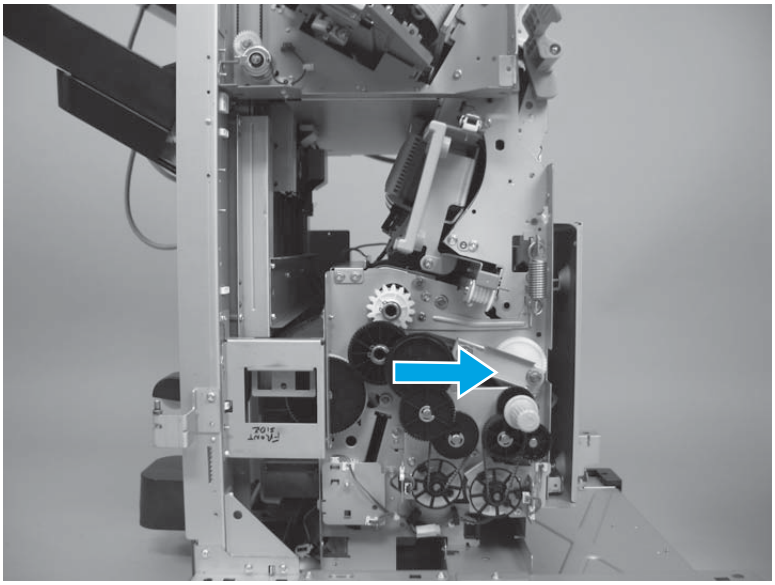
NOTE: This screw is located on the front side of the accessory.

Figure 1-1000 Remove the saddle assembly (11 of 13)



12. Slightly slide the saddle assembly away from the stack bin side of the accessory to release it.

Figure 1-1001 Remove the saddle assembly (12 of 13)

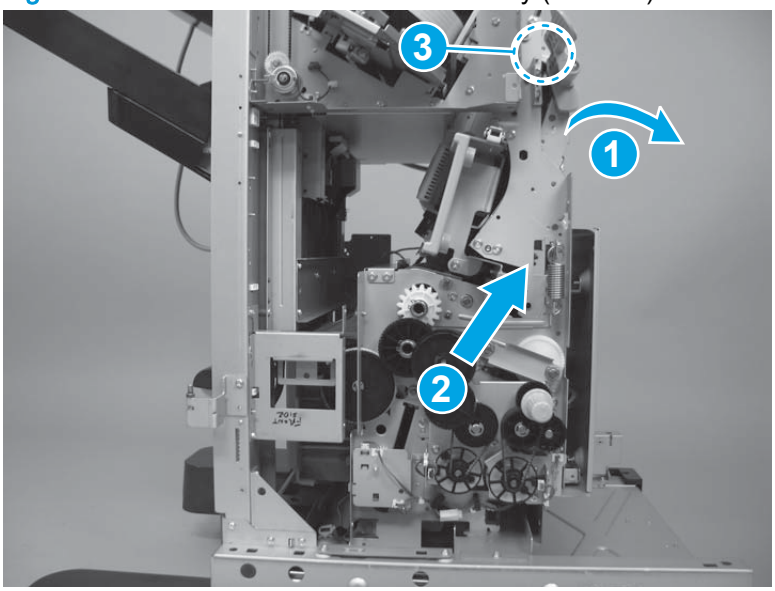


13. Carefully rotate the top of the assembly away from the accessory (callout 1), and then lift the assembly up and out of the accessory (callout 2).

⚠ **CAUTION:** The assembly is heavy.

CAUTION: Do not grasp the assembly along the top edge (callout 3). Doing so can damage the mylar strip along the edge and cause paper jam problems when the assembly is reinstalled.

Figure 1-1002 Remove the saddle assembly (13 of 13)



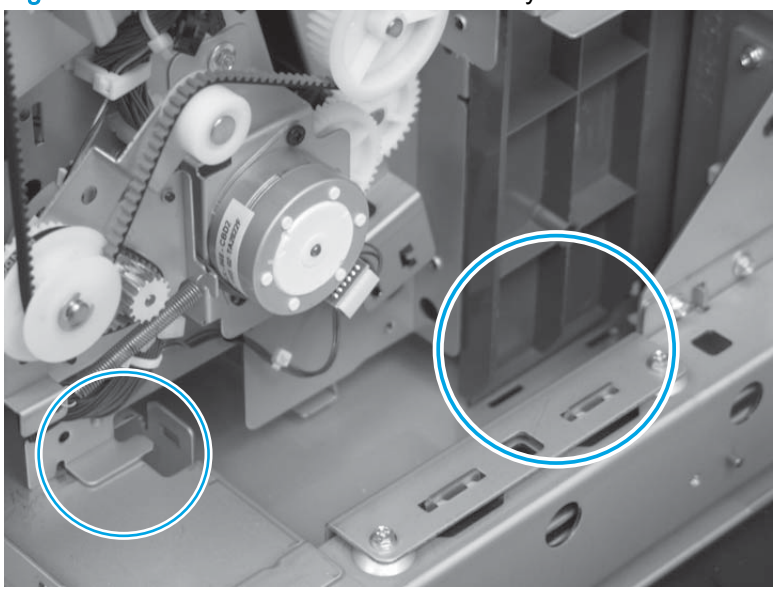
Reinstall the saddle assembly

Make sure that the two hooks on the bottom of the assembly (one shown) are correctly engaged with the chassis, and that the tabs on the rear saddle inner cover are in the slots in the chassis.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the assembly sheet-metal brackets that contact the accessory chassis are flush against the chassis to prevent paper jam problems after the assembly is reinstalled.

Make sure that the drive belts are correctly installed and have not been dislodged when handling the assembly.

Figure 1-1003 Reinstall the saddle assembly



Upper delivery guide assembly

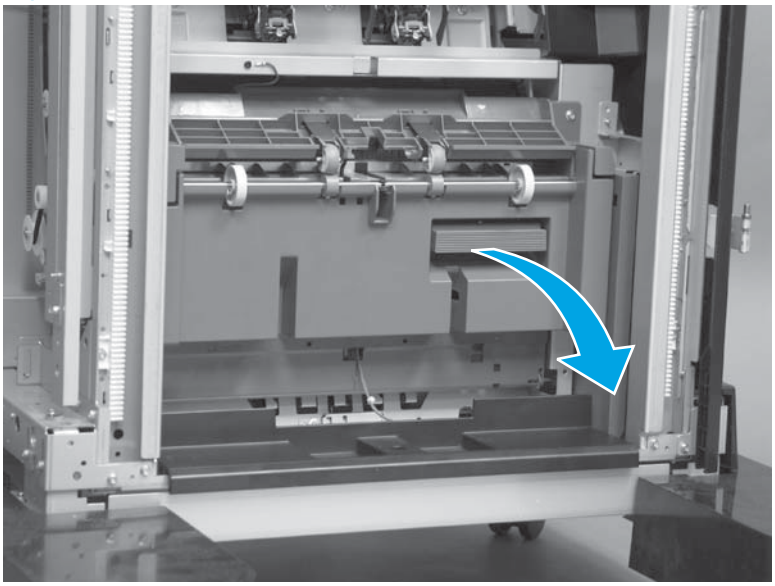
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Open/closed stepped cover assembly. See Open/closed stepped cover assembly on page 471.
- Upper stepped cover assembly. See Upper stepped cover assembly on page 472.
- Lower stepped cover assembly. See Lower stepped cover assembly on page 474.
- Front door. See Front door on page 479.
- Inner upper cover assembly. See Inner upper cover assembly on page 480.
- Inner lower cover assembly. See Inner lower cover assembly on page 486.
- Bin cable guide cover. See Bin cable guide cover on page 492.
- Rear cover assembly. See Rear cover assembly on page 496.
- Stack wall upper cover assembly. See Stack wall upper assembly and upper wall guide assembly on page 518.
- Stack upper bin and lower bin assemblies. See Stack upper bin and lower bin assemblies on page 540.
- Height wall assembly. See Height wall assembly on page 546.
- Saddle output bin assembly. See Saddle output bin assembly on page 609.

Remove the upper delivery guide assembly

1. Open the upper delivery assembly door.

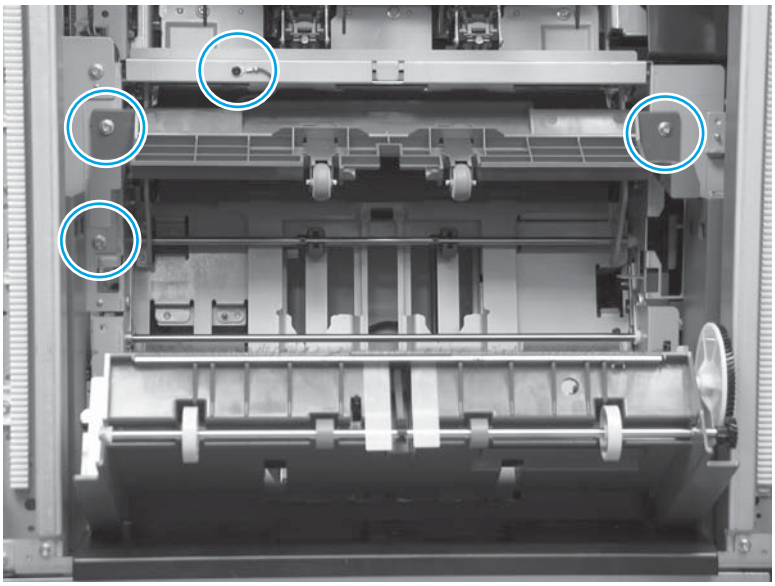
Figure 1-1004 Remove the upper delivery guide assembly (1 of 3)



2. Remove four screws.

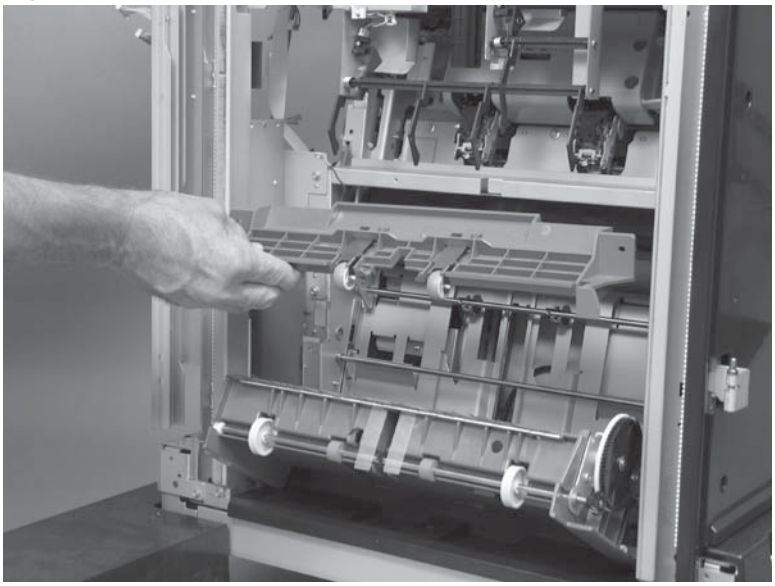
NOTE: One screw is a ground wire connection. Make sure that you reconnect the ground wire when the assembly is reinstalled.

Figure 1-1005 Remove the upper delivery guide assembly (2 of 3)



3. Remove the assembly.

Figure 1-1006 Remove the upper delivery guide assembly (3 of 3)



Saddle paper delivery assembly

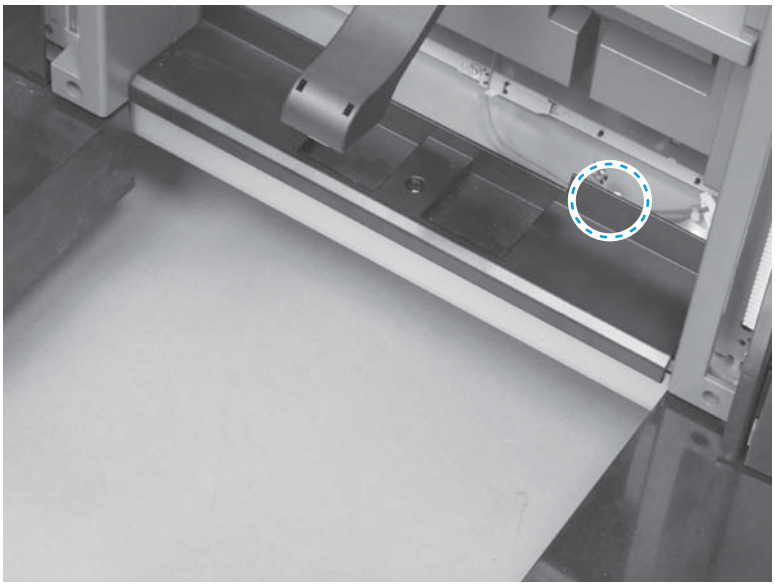
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Saddle output bin assembly. See Saddle output bin assembly on page 609.

Remove the saddle paper delivery assembly

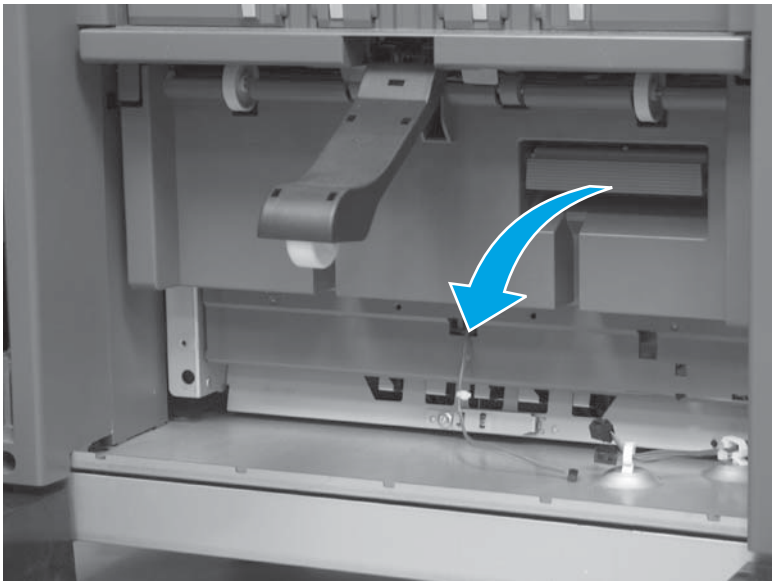
1. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 1-1007 Remove the saddle paper delivery assembly (1 of 5)



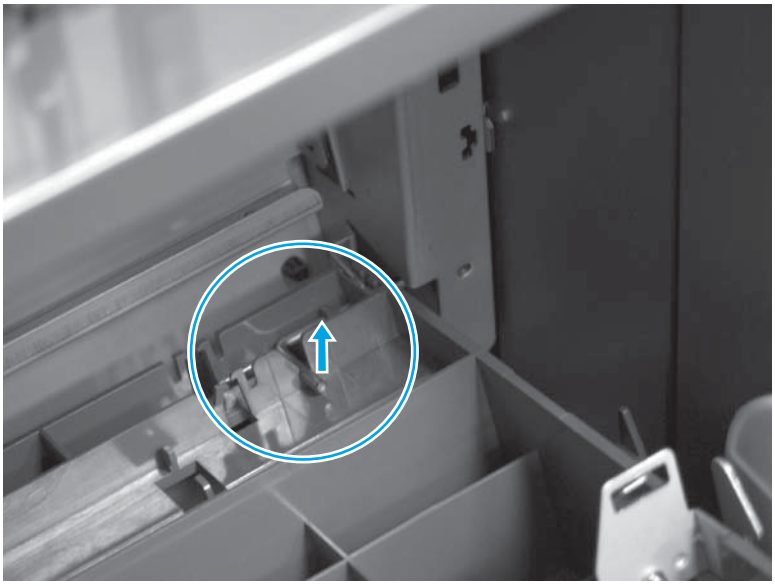
2. Open the upper delivery assembly door.

Figure 1-1008 Remove the saddle paper delivery assembly (2 of 5)



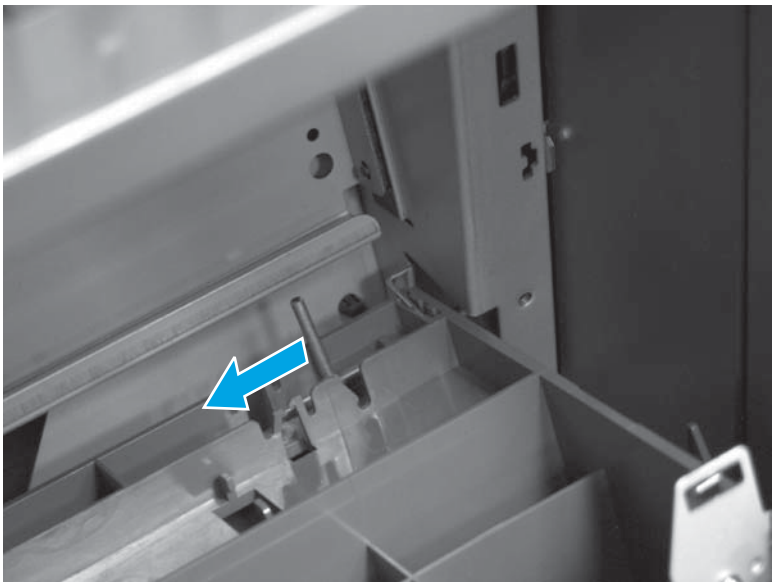
3. At the bottom lower-right corner of the upper delivery assembly door, locate and then rotate the locking pin to the upright position.

Figure 1-1009 Remove the saddle paper delivery assembly (3 of 5)



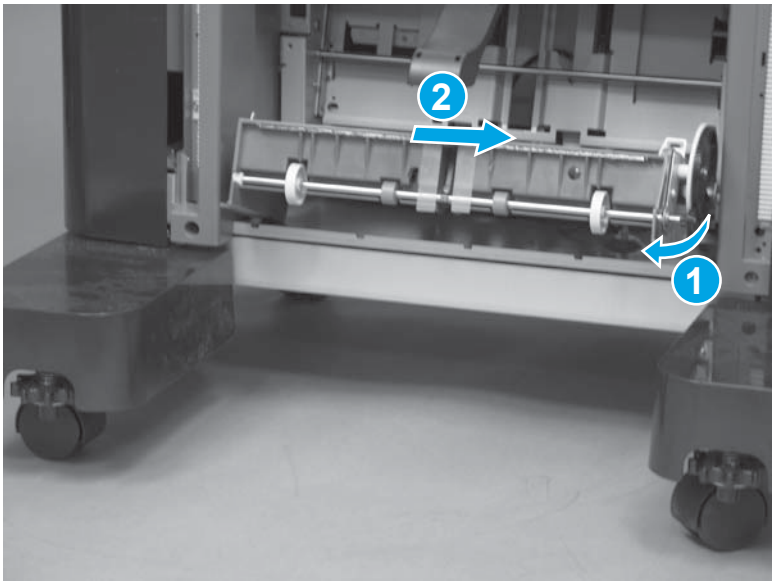
4. Slide the locking pin to the left to remove it.

Figure 1-1010 Remove the saddle paper delivery assembly (4 of 5)



5. Slightly rotate the right side of the assembly out and away from the accessory (callout 1), slide the to the right (callout 2) to release the left side hinge, and then remove the assembly.

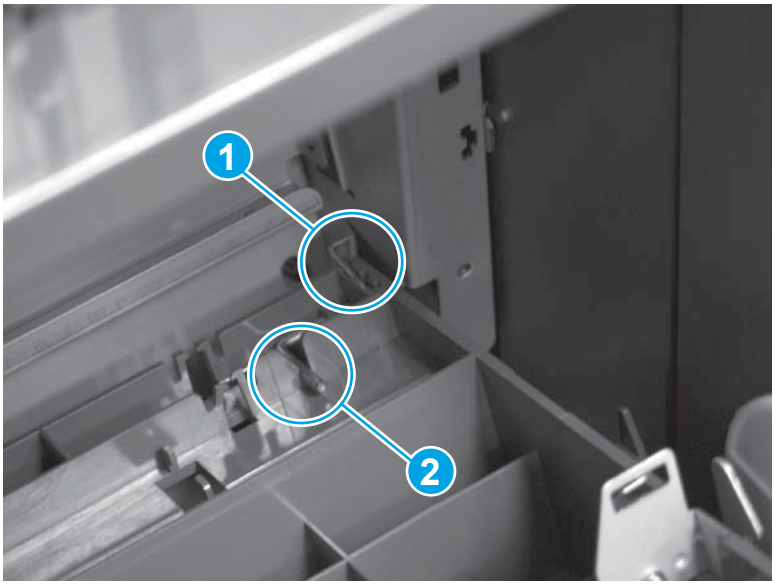
Figure 1-1011 Remove the saddle paper delivery assembly (5 of 5)



Reinstall the saddle paper delivery assembly

When the assembly is reinstalled, make sure that the sheet-metal of the accessory chassis is positioned in the slot in the cover (callout 1), and that the locking pin is in the locked position—push the pin all of the way down until it snaps into the locked position (callout 2).

Figure 1-1012 Reinstall the saddle paper delivery assembly



Saddle rear end sensor assembly

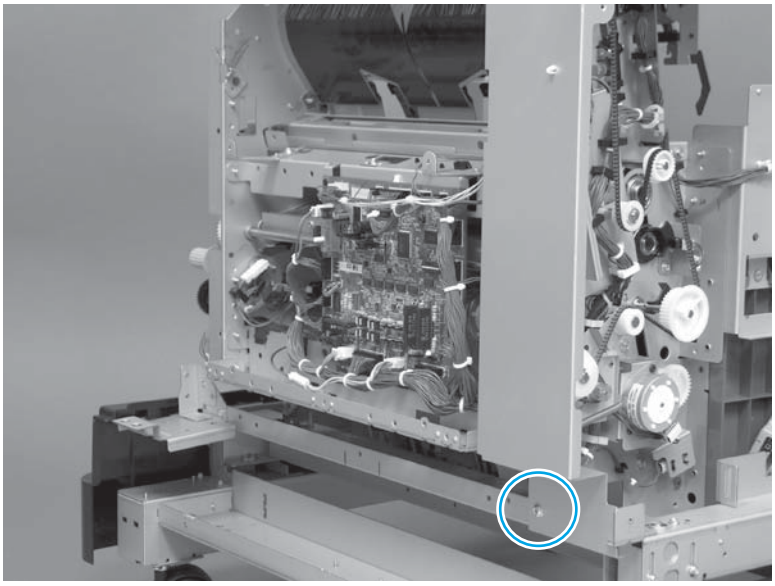
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Latch lower covers (front and rear). See Latch lower covers (front and rear) on page 468.
- Latch assembly. See Latch assembly on page 470.
- Front door. See Front door on page 479.
- Inner upper cover assembly. See Inner upper cover assembly on page 480.
- Inner lower cover assembly. See Inner lower cover assembly on page 486.
- Bin cable guide cover. See Bin cable guide cover on page 492.
- Rear cover assembly. See Rear cover assembly on page 496.
- For all models with a hole punch assembly installed:
  - Punch lower front cover assembly. See Punch lower front cover assembly on page 684.
  - Punch rear cover assembly. See Punch rear cover assembly on page 686.
  - Punch waste tray. See Punch waste tray on page 688.
  - Punch inner cover assembly. See Punch inner cover assembly on page 689.
  - Punch upper cover assembly. See Punch top cover on page 691.
  - Punch hole assembly. See Punch hole assembly on page 694.
- Paper pass assembly. See Paper pass assembly on page 603.
- Right cover assembly (BM PCA). See Right cover assembly (BM PCA) on page 611.
- Saddle guide assembly. See Saddle guide assembly on page 649.

Remove the saddle rear end sensor assembly

1. Remove one screw.

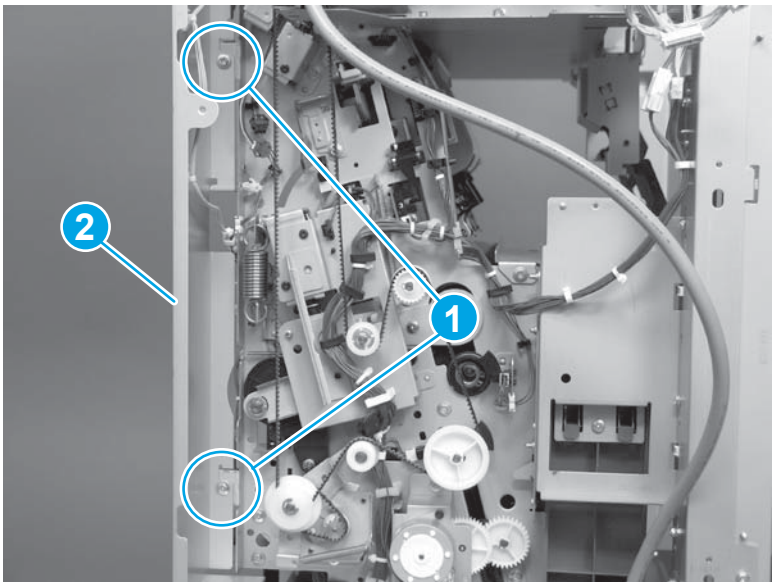
Figure 1-1013 Remove the saddle rear end sensor assembly (1 of 10)



2. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then move the sheet-metal plate (callout 2) out of the way.

⚠ CAUTION: The sheet-metal plate (callout 2) is still attached to the accessory by a wire harness and two retainers. Do not attempt to completely remove the sheet-metal plate.

Figure 1-1014 Remove the saddle rear end sensor assembly (2 of 10)

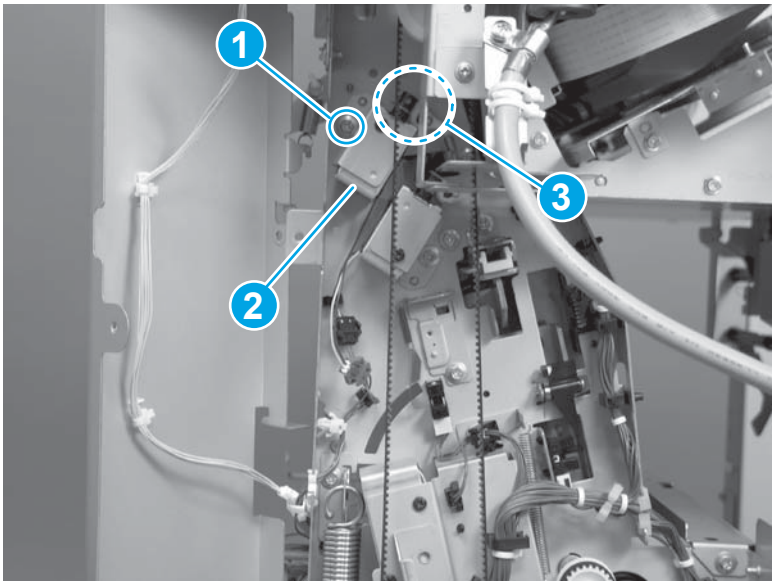


3. At the drive belt side of the accessory, remove one screw (callout 1), and then move the upper-deflector solenoid (callout 2) out of the way.

CAUTION: The solenoid (callout 2) is still attached to the accessory by one wire harness. Do not attempt to completely remove the solenoid.

NOTE: The solenoid plunger (callout 3) slides out of the solenoid as it is removed.

Figure 1-1015 Remove the saddle rear end sensor assembly (3 of 10)

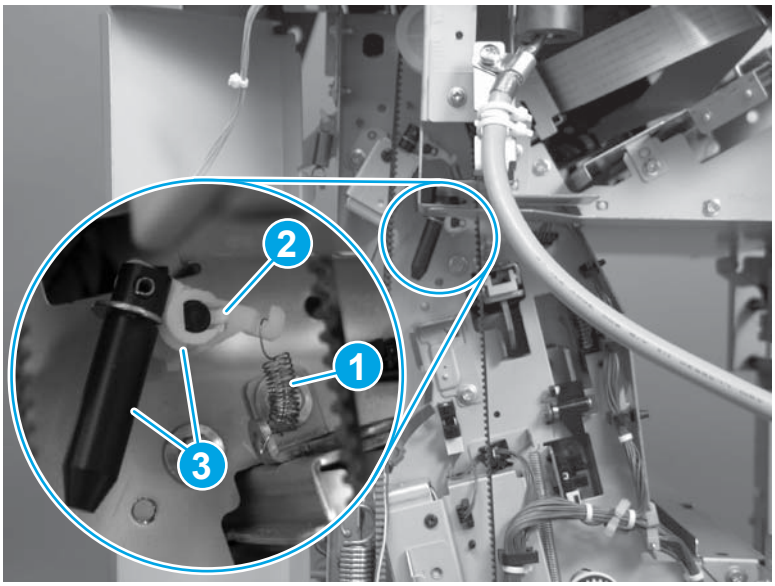


4. Remove one spring (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2) on the white-plastic retainer, and then slide the retainer and upper-deflector solenoid plunger and retainer (callout 3) off of the deflector shaft.

NOTE: The figure below shows lower-deflector spring, retainer, and plunger assemblies for clarity.

Reinstallation tip When the solenoid is reinstalled, make sure that the plunger freely moves in and out of the base before you fasten the base to the chassis.

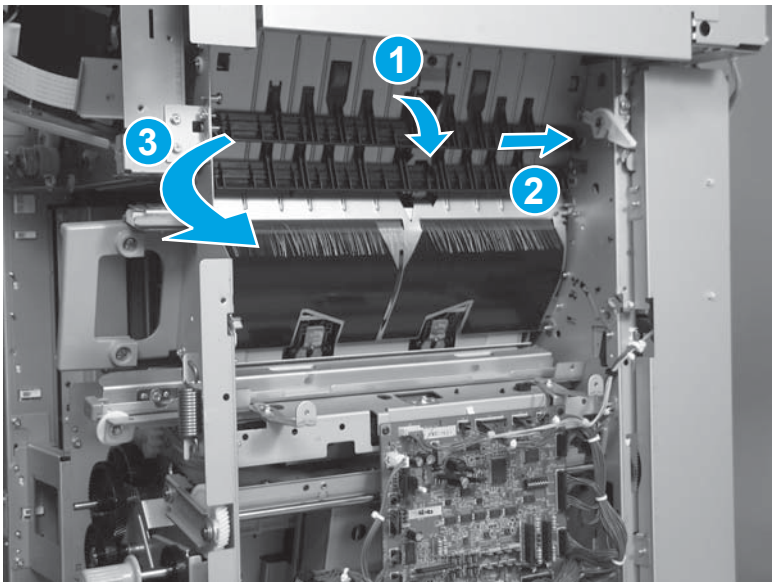
Figure 1-1016 Remove the saddle rear end sensor assembly (4 of 10)



5. At the output side of the accessory, rotate the top of the upper-deflector down (callout 1), slide the deflector toward the right (callout 2), and then carefully rotate the left end of the deflector away from the chassis (callout 3).

WARNING! The deflector shafts (at the left end and right end of the deflector) are fragile. Do not break either of the deflector shafts when removing the deflector.

Figure 1-1017 Remove the saddle rear end sensor assembly (5 of 10)

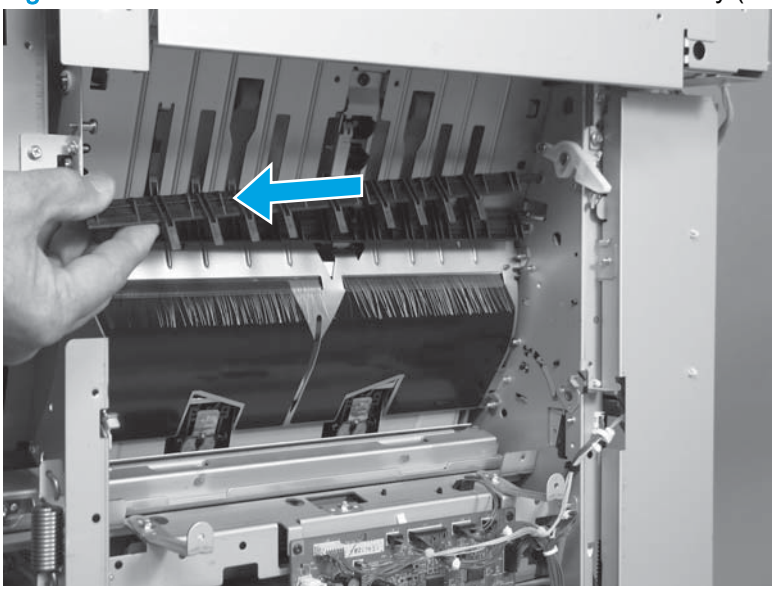


6. Slide the deflector to the left to remove it.

Repeat the previous steps to remove the lower-deflector solenoid, spring, retainer, plunger, and lower-deflector assemblies.

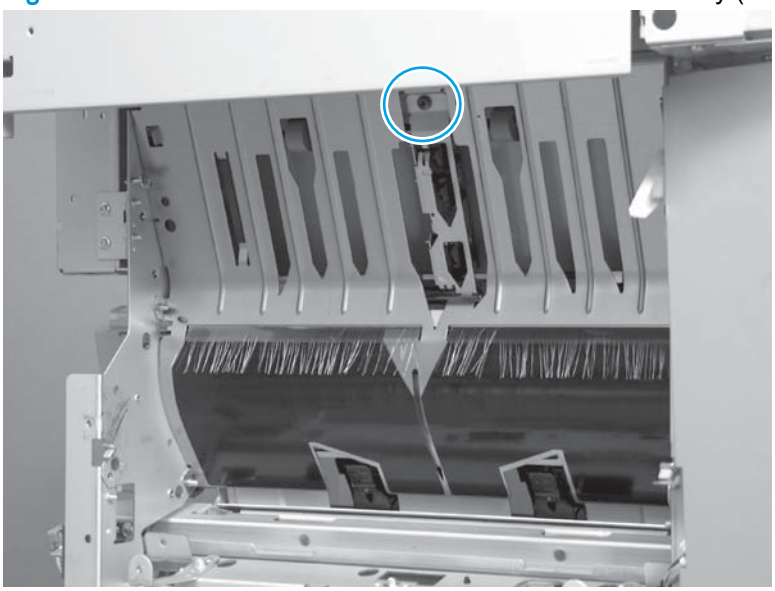
Reinstallation tip The upper- and lower-deflector shafts are not identical. Make sure that you install the correct deflector when they are reinstalled. See Reinstall the saddle rear end sensor on page 681.

Figure 1-1018 Remove the saddle rear end sensor assembly (6 of 10)



7. Remove one screw.

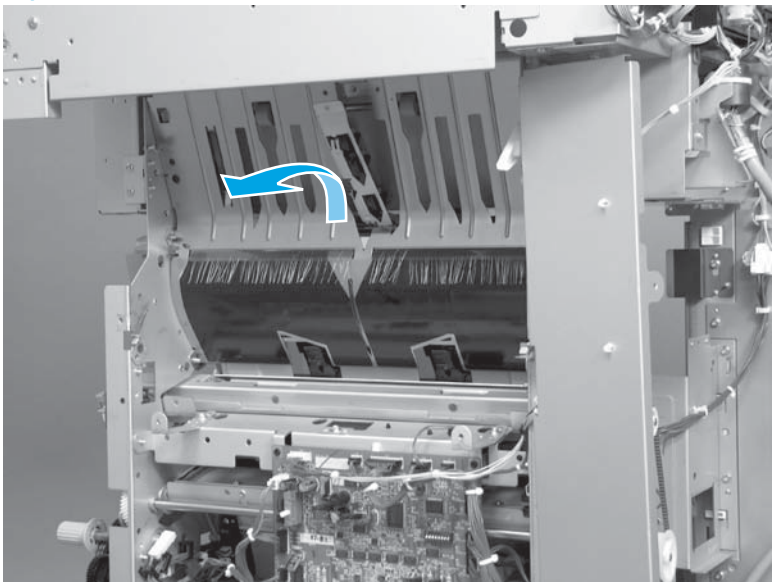
Figure 1-1019 Remove the saddle rear end sensor assembly (7 of 10)



8. Lift up on the sensor assembly to release it from the saddle assembly chassis.

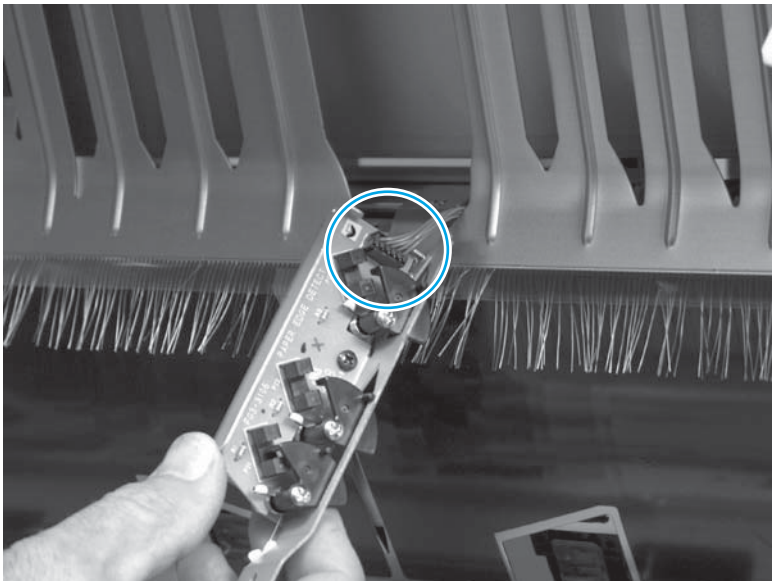
CAUTION: The sensor assembly is till attached to the accessory by one wire harness. Do not attempt to completely remove the sensor assembly.

Figure 1-1020 Remove the saddle rear end sensor assembly (8 of 10)



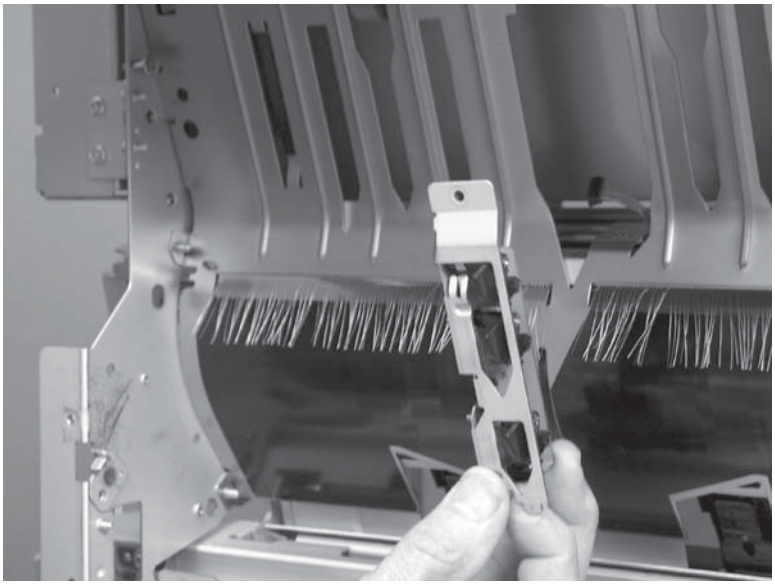
9. Turn the assembly over, and then disconnect one connector.

Figure 1-1021 Remove the saddle rear end sensor assembly (9 of 10)



10. Remove the saddle rear end sensor assembly.

Figure 1-1022 Remove the saddle rear end sensor assembly (10 of 10)

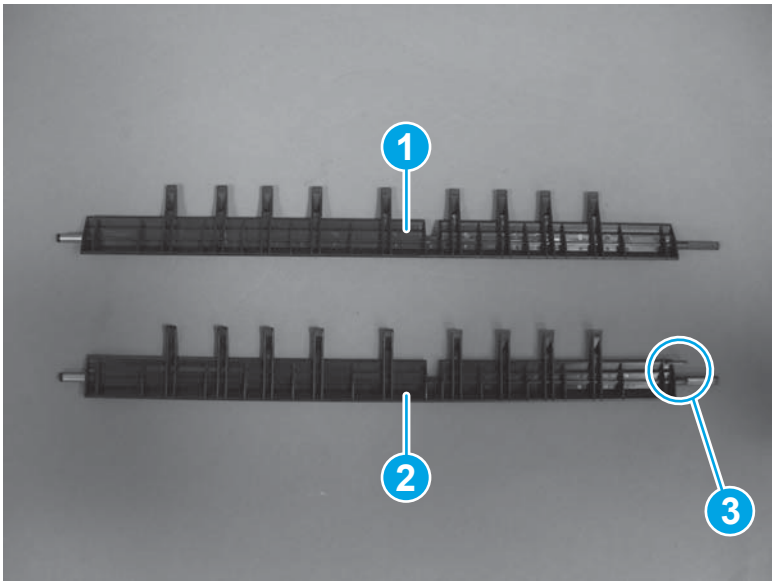


Reinstall the saddle rear end sensor

1. The upper-deflector (callout 1) and lower-deflector (callout 2) are not identical. Make sure that you install the correct deflector in the correct position when they are reinstalled.

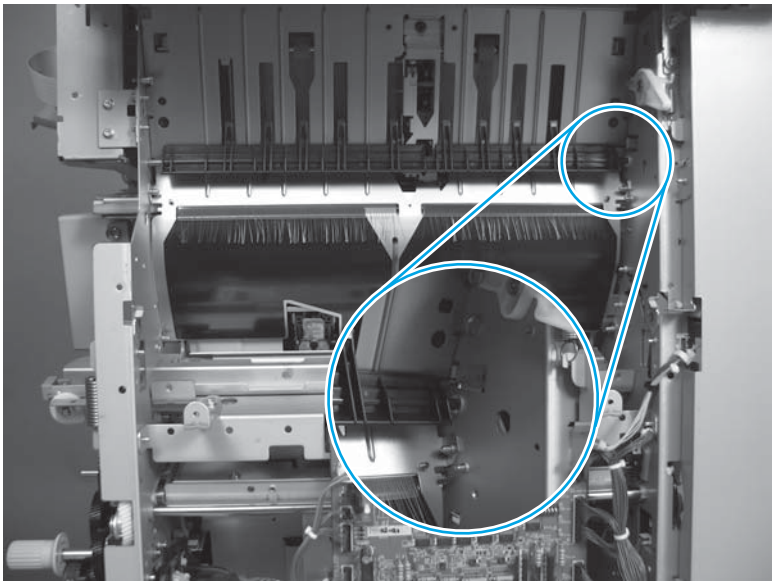
TIP: The lower-deflector (callout 2) can be identified by the small black-plastic tab (callout 3) near the right end of the shaft.

Figure 1-1023 Reinstall the saddle rear end sensor assembly (1 of 2)



2. When the lower-deflector is installed, the small black-plastic tab near the right end shaft must be positioned in the cutout portion of the chassis so that it will not bind when the deflector moves.

Figure 1-1024 Reinstall the saddle rear end sensor assembly (2 of 2)



Booklet maker and stapler/stacker with hole punch accessories

The assemblies described in this section are unique to the stapler/stacker with hole punch (SSHP) or booklet maker with hole punch (BMHP) finishing accessories. For information about removing and replacing assemblies that are common to all of the finishing accessories, see Shared finishing accessory assemblies on page 464.

- Remove the punch front cover
- Punch lower front cover assembly
- Punch rear cover assembly
- Punch controller PCA assembly
- Punch waste tray
- Punch inner cover assembly
- Punch top cover
- Punch hole assembly
- Replace the punch hole assembly or the punch controller PCA assembly

Remove the punch front cover

1. Open the punch front cover, and then remove one screw.

Figure 1-1025 Remove the punch front cover (1 of 2)

2. Release the hinge pin, and then remove the cover.

Figure 1-1026 Remove the punch front cover (2 of 2)

Punch lower front cover assembly

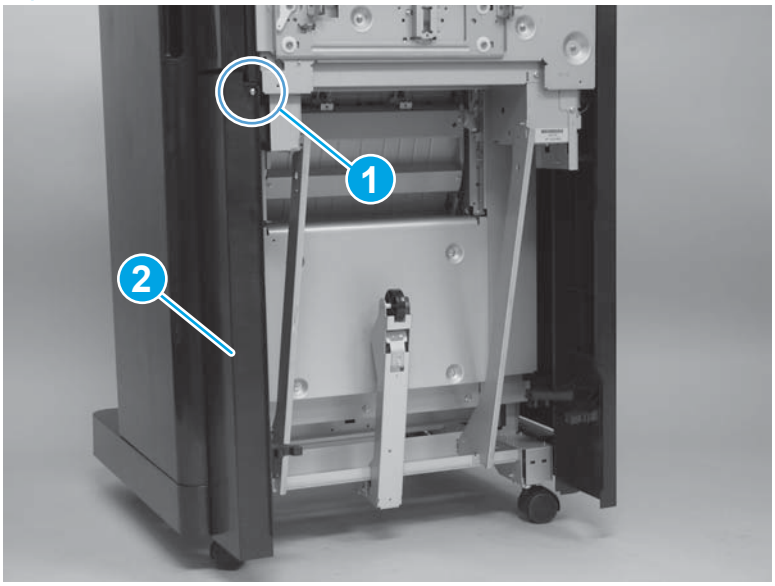
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Latch lower cover assembly (front). See Latch lower covers (front and rear) on page 468.

Remove the punch lower front cover assembly

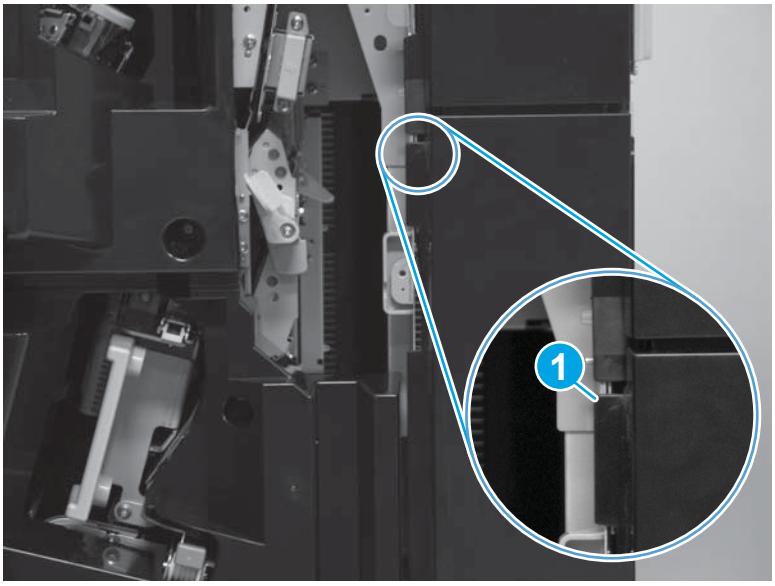
1. Remove one screw (callout 1) on the right side of the cover (callout 2).

   Figure 1-1027 Remove the punch lower front cover assembly (1 of 3)

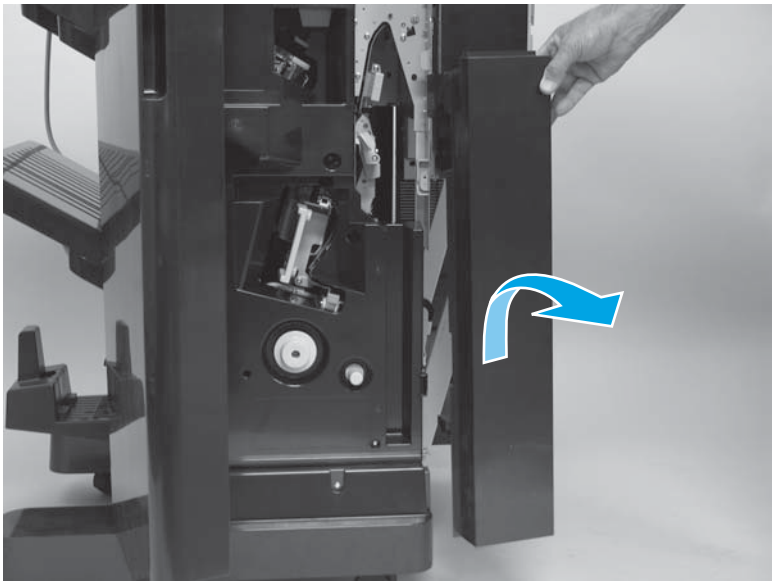
2. Open the front door, and then release one tab (callout 1).

   Figure 1-1028 Remove the punch lower front cover assembly (2 of 3)

3. Slightly lift up on the cover to release it, and then remove the cover.

Figure 1-1029 Remove the punch lower front cover assembly (3 of 3)



Punch rear cover assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

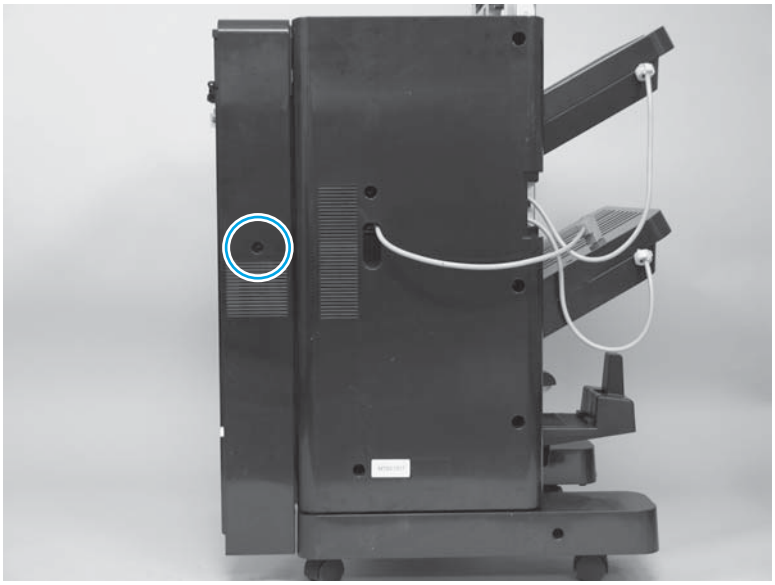
- Latch lower covers (front and rear). See Latch lower covers (front and rear) on page 468.

NOTE: Only the lower latch cover rear needs to be removed.

Remove the punch rear cover assembly

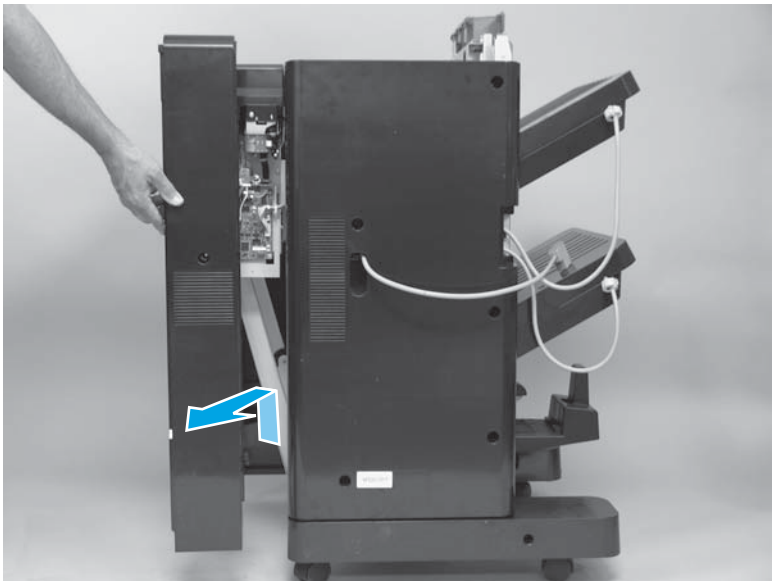
1. Remove one screw.

Figure 1-1030 Remove the punch rear cover assembly (1 of 2)



2. Slightly lift up on the cover to release it, and then remove the cover.

Figure 1-1031 Remove the punch rear cover assembly (2 of 2)



Punch controller PCA assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Punch rear cover assembly. See Punch rear cover assembly on page 686.

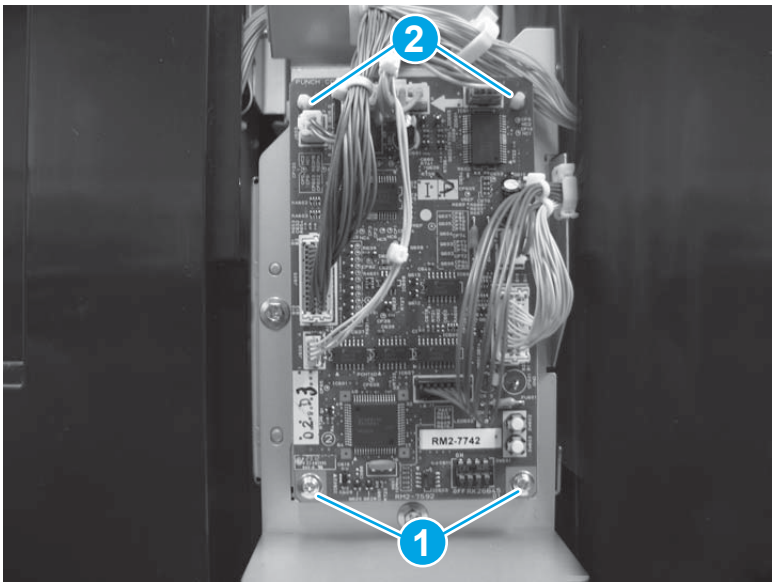
Remove the punch controller PCA assembly

CAUTION: ESD sensitive assembly.

Disconnect eight connectors, remove two screws (callout 1), release two standoffs (callout 2), and then remove the PCA.

TIP: Releasing the wire harnesses from the retainers will make it easier to disconnect some of the connectors on the PCA.

Figure 1-1032 Remove the punch controller PCA assembly



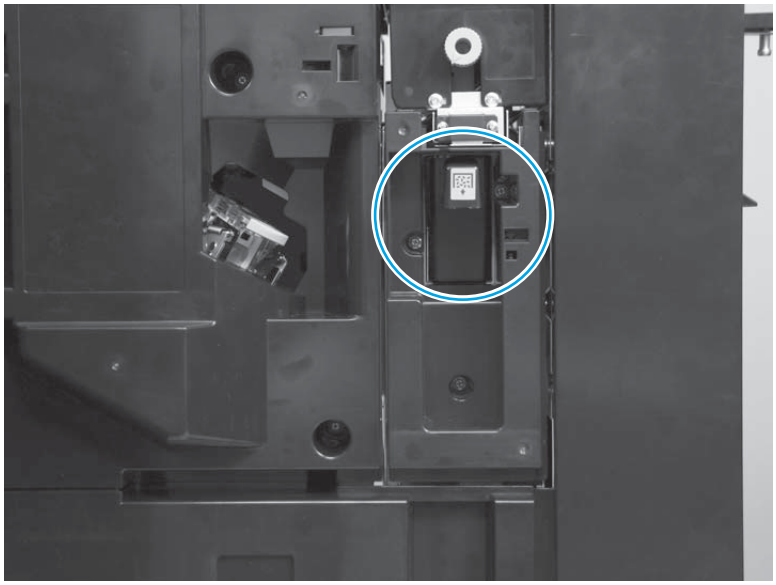
Reinstall the punch controller PCA assembly

IMPORTANT: If you are installing a replacement punch hole assembly or punch controller PCA, you must set the punch hole assembly type and adjust sensor values on the punch controller PCA. See Replace the punch hole assembly or the punch controller PCA assembly on page 702.

Punch waste tray

Pull the punch waste tray straight out of the punch assembly to remove it.

Figure 1-1033 Remove the punch waste tray



Punch inner cover assembly

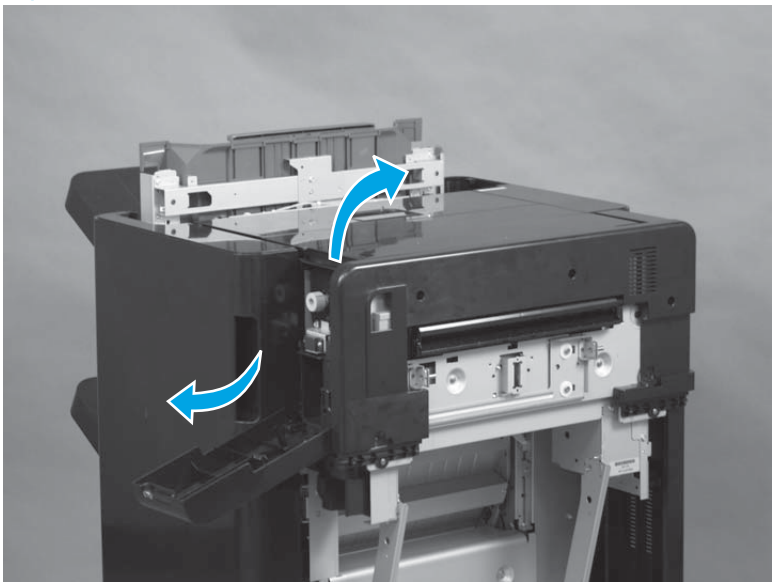
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Latch lower cover assembly (front). See Latch lower covers (front and rear) on page 468.
- Punch lower front cover assembly. See Punch lower front cover assembly on page 684.
- Punch waste tray. See Punch waste tray on page 688.

Remove the punch inner cover assembly

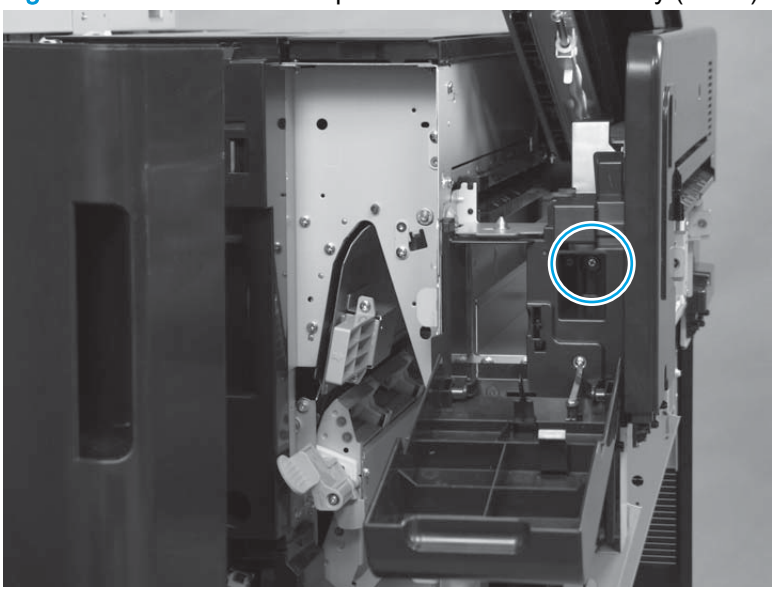
1. Raise the punch upper cover, and then open the front door.

   Figure 1-1034 Remove the punch inner cover assembly (1 of 4)

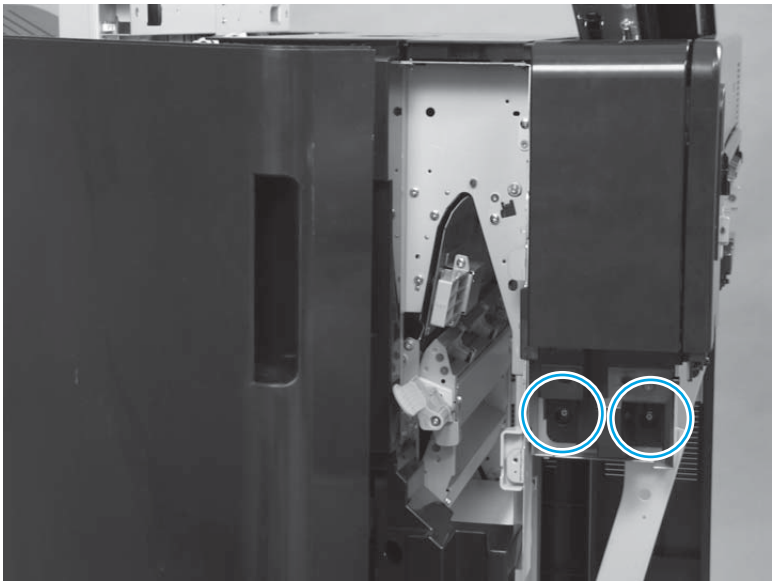
2. Remove one screw.

   Figure 1-1035 Remove the punch inner cover assembly (2 of 4)

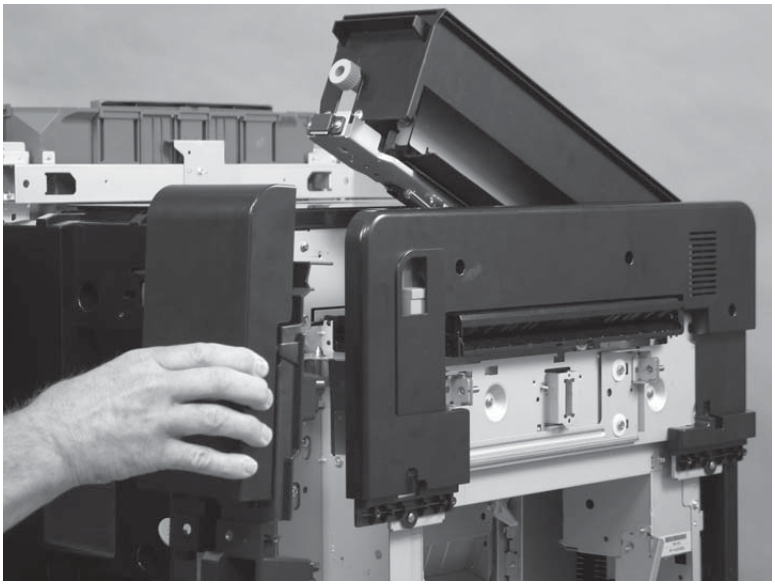
3. Close the punch door, and then remove two screws.

Figure 1-1036 Remove the punch inner cover assembly (3 of 4)



4. Remove the cover.

Figure 1-1037 Remove the punch inner cover assembly (4 of 4)



Punch top cover

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Latch lower covers (front and rear). See Latch lower covers (front and rear) on page 468.

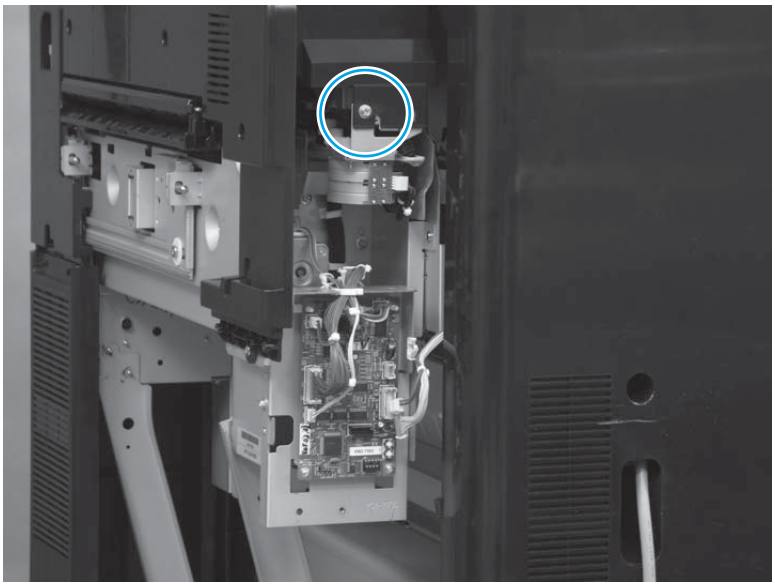
NOTE: Only the lower latch cover rear needs to be removed.

- Punch rear cover assembly. See Punch rear cover assembly on page 686.

Remove the punch top

1. Remove one screw.

Figure 1-1038 Remove the punch top cover (1 of 6)



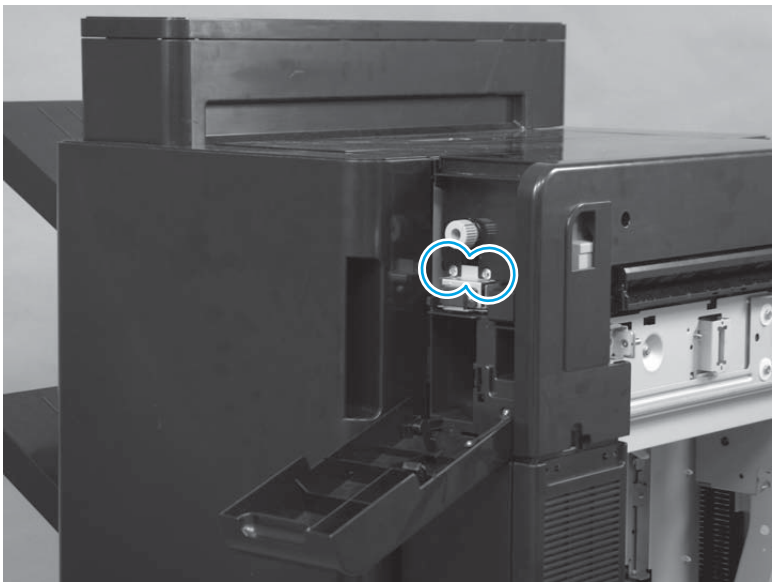
2. Open the punch door.

Figure 1-1039 Remove the punch top cover (2 of 6)

3. Remove two screws.

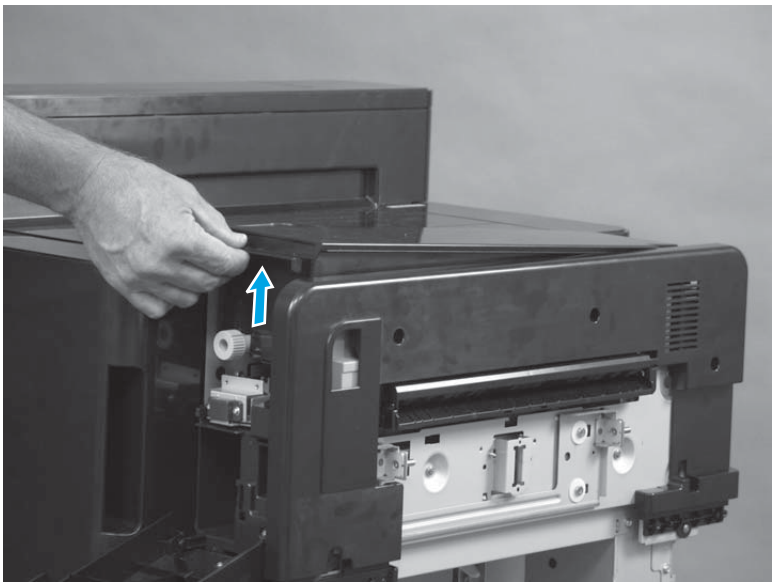
Reinstallation tip The mounting holes for these two screws are slotted. Use these screws to adjust the position of the cover when it is reinstalled if it strikes the punch assembly or does not align correctly with the accessory covers.

Figure 1-1040 Remove the punch top cover (3 of 6)



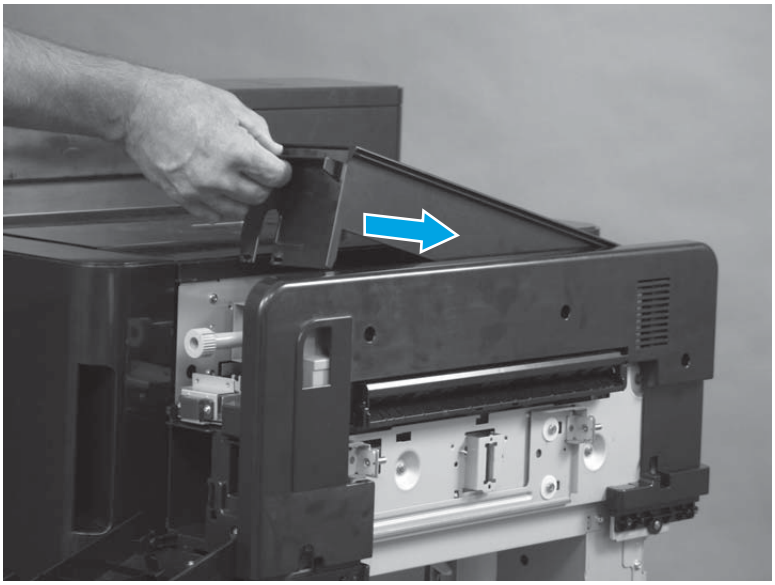
4. Slightly raise the front edge of the cover.

Figure 1-1041 Remove the punch top cover (4 of 6)



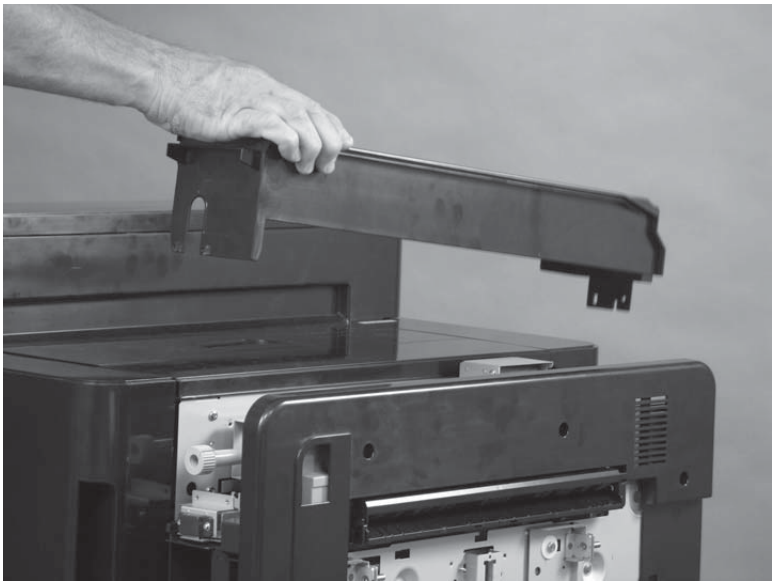
5. Slide the cover towards the rear of the accessory to release it.

Figure 1-1042 Remove the punch top cover (5 of 6)



6. Remove the cover.

Figure 1-1043 Remove the punch top cover (6 of 6)



Punch hole assembly

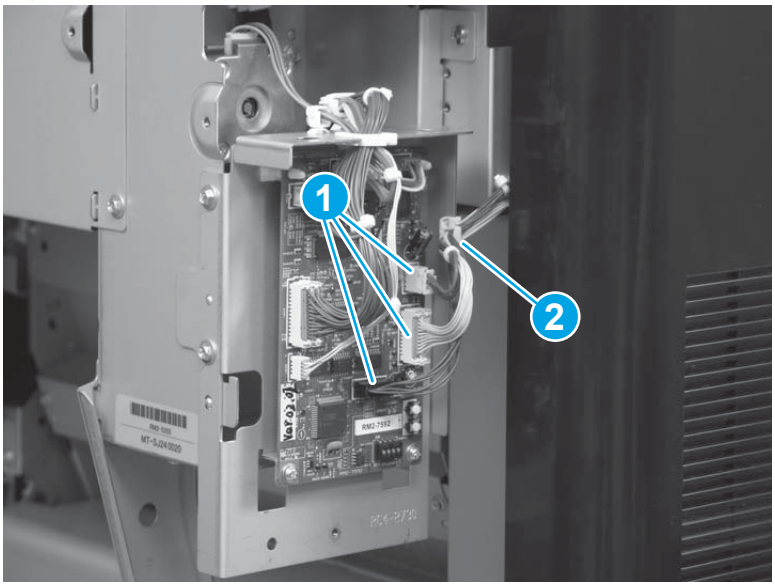
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Latch lower covers (front and rear). See Latch lower covers (front and rear) on page 468.
- Latch assembly. See Latch assembly on page 470.
- Punch lower front cover assembly. See Punch lower front cover assembly on page 684.
- Punch rear cover assembly. See Punch rear cover assembly on page 686.
- Punch waste tray. See Punch waste tray on page 688.
- Punch inner cover assembly. See Punch inner cover assembly on page 689.
- Punch top cover. See Punch top cover on page 691.

Remove the punch hole assembly

1. Disconnect three connectors (callout 1) on the controller PCA, and then release the wire harnesses from one retainer (callout 2).

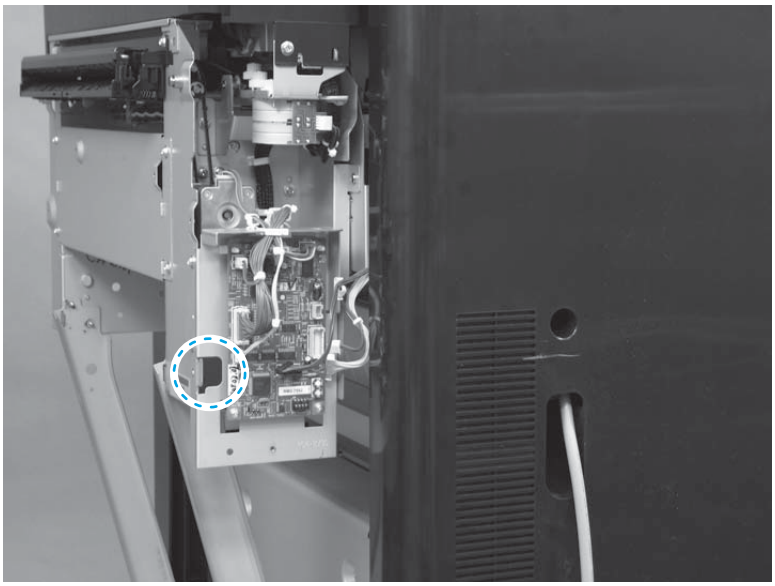
Figure 1-1044 Remove the punch hole assembly (1 of 8)



2. Remove two screws.

TIP: These screws fasten the rear sheet-metal support bracket to the punch assembly. Use the hole provided in the chassis next to the punch controller PCA to gain access to these screws.

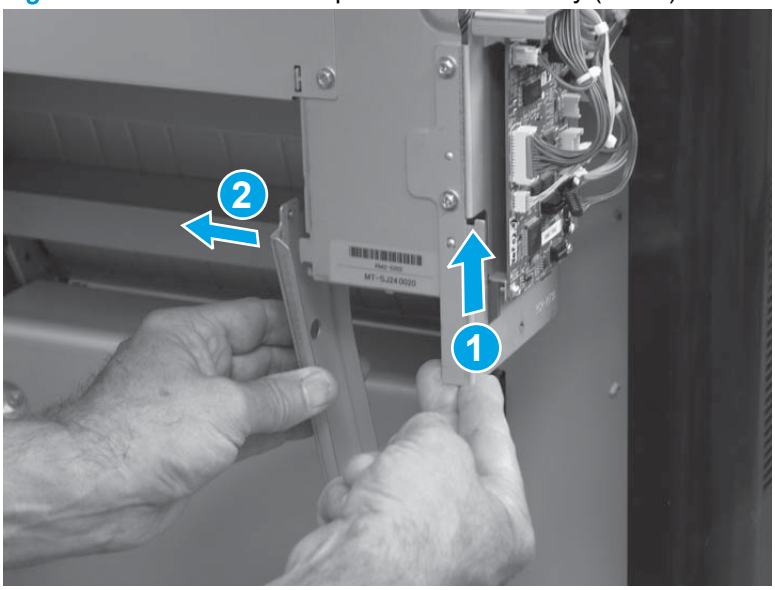
Figure 1-1045 Remove the punch hole assembly (2 of 8)



3. Slightly lift up on the punch hole assembly (callout 1), and then disengage the sheet-metal support bracket (callout 2).

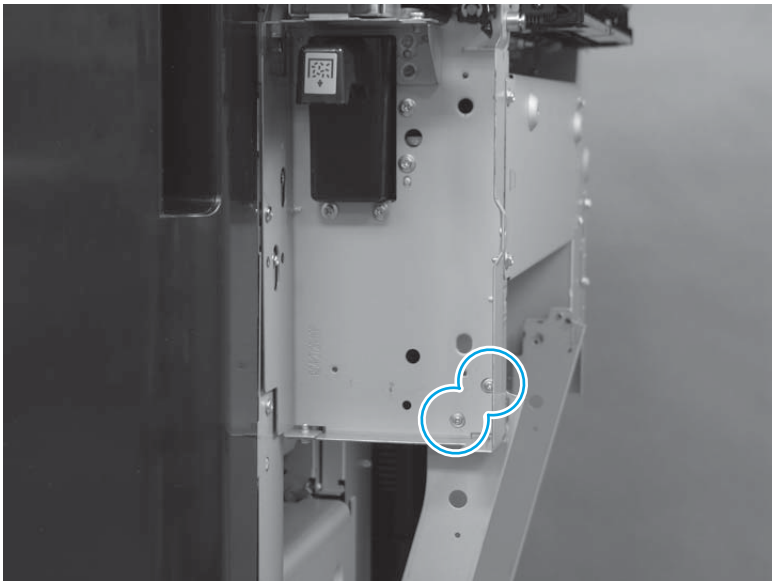
NOTE: The punch hole assembly is still fastened to the accessory chassis, but you should be able to disengage the support bracket.

Figure 1-1046 Remove the punch hole assembly (3 of 8)



4. Remove two screws.

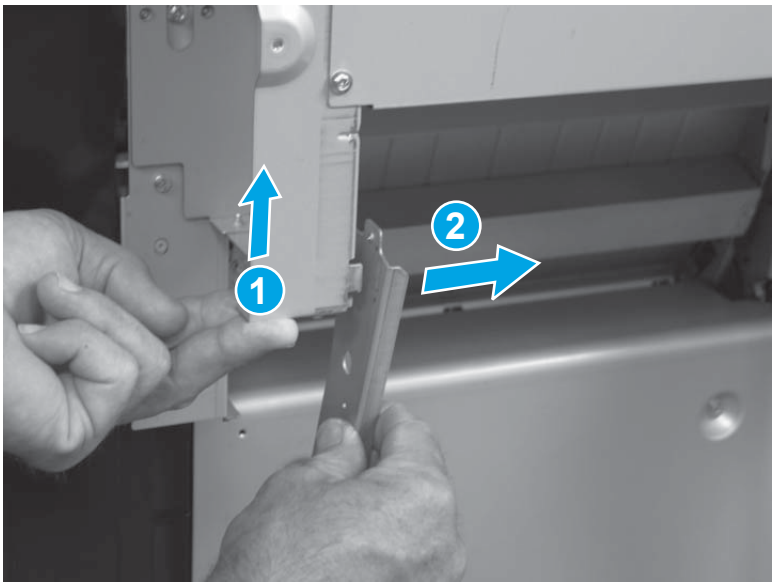
Figure 1-1047 Remove the punch hole assembly (4 of 8)



5. Slightly lift up on the punch hole assembly (callout 1), and then disengage the sheet-metal support bracket (callout 2).

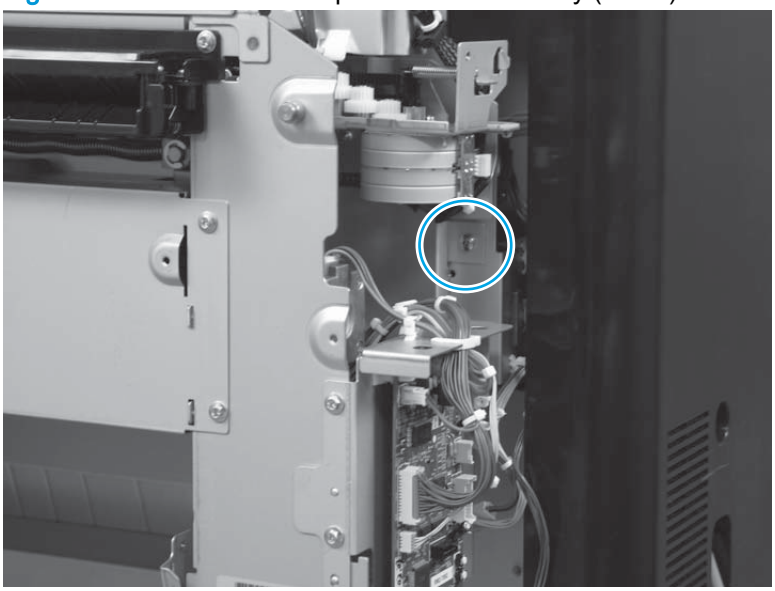
NOTE: The punch hole assembly is still fastened to the accessory chassis, but you should be able to disengage the support bracket.

Figure 1-1048 Remove the punch hole assembly (5 of 8)



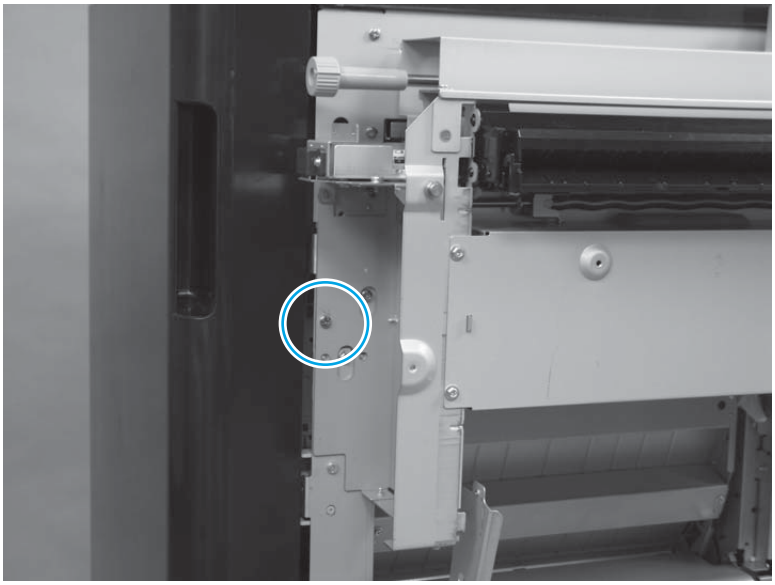
6. Remove one screw.

Figure 1-1049 Remove the punch hole assembly (6 of 8)



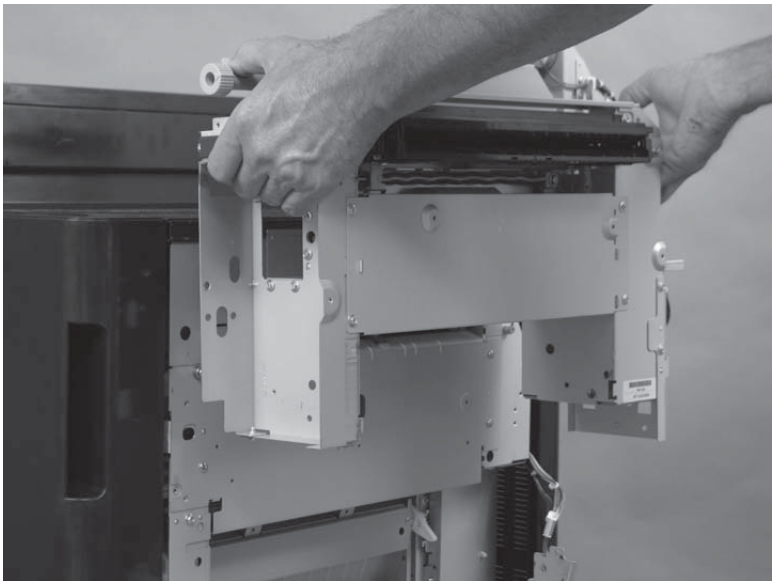
7. Remove one screw.

Figure 1-1050 Remove the punch hole assembly (7 of 8)



8. Lift the assembly up to release it, and then remove the assembly.

Figure 1-1051 Remove the punch hole assembly (8 of 8)



Reinstall the punch hole assembly

IMPORTANT: If you are installing a replacement punch hole assembly or punch controller PCA, you must set the punch hole assembly type and adjust sensor values on the punch controller PCA. See Replace the punch hole assembly or the punch controller PCA assembly on page 702.

Adjust the punch hole location

Punch adjustment is required when the punch holes are misaligned. If necessary, use the procedure below to adjust the position of punched holes after reinstalling, or replacing, the punch hole assembly.

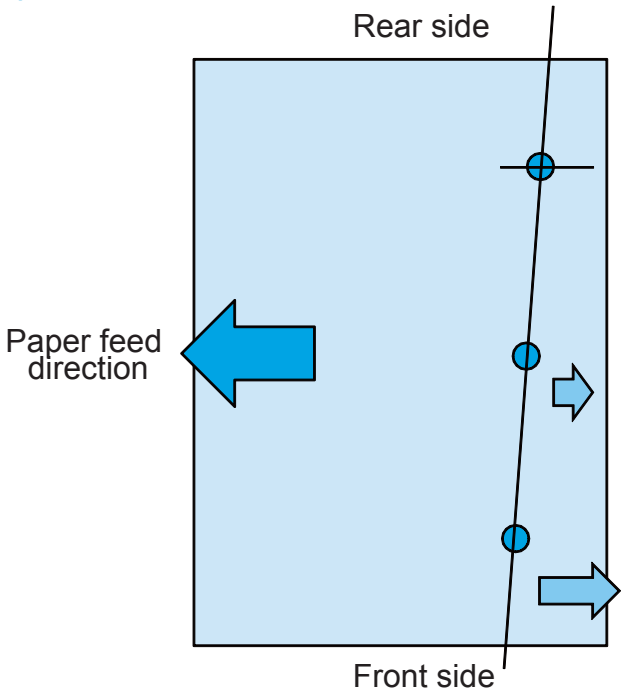
Adjust the screw on the puncher assembly to correct the position of punch holes.

NOTE: The rear side punch hole is in a fixed position. The adjustment is made by pivoting the middle and front side hole in relation to the fixed rear side hole until all of the holes are aligned.

1. Identify in which direction the punched hole adjustment is required.

   The figure below shows the punched hole misaligned to the left.

   Figure 1-1052 Determine the punch hole skew



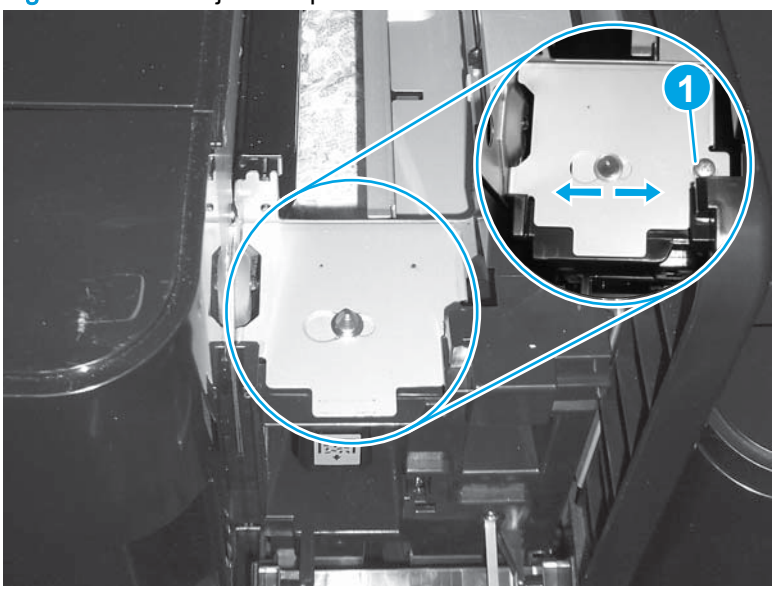
2. To adjust the skewed hole alignment, do the following.

   NOTE: This adjustment procedure only moves the front portion of the punch to move the front hole into alignment with the rear hole.

   a. Open the punch door and upper cover.

b. Loosen the adjustment screw (callout 1), and then move the punch plate to the right or to the left as necessary to bring the front punched hole in alignment with the rear hole.

Figure 1-1053 Adjust the punch hole location



c. Tighten the adjustment screw.

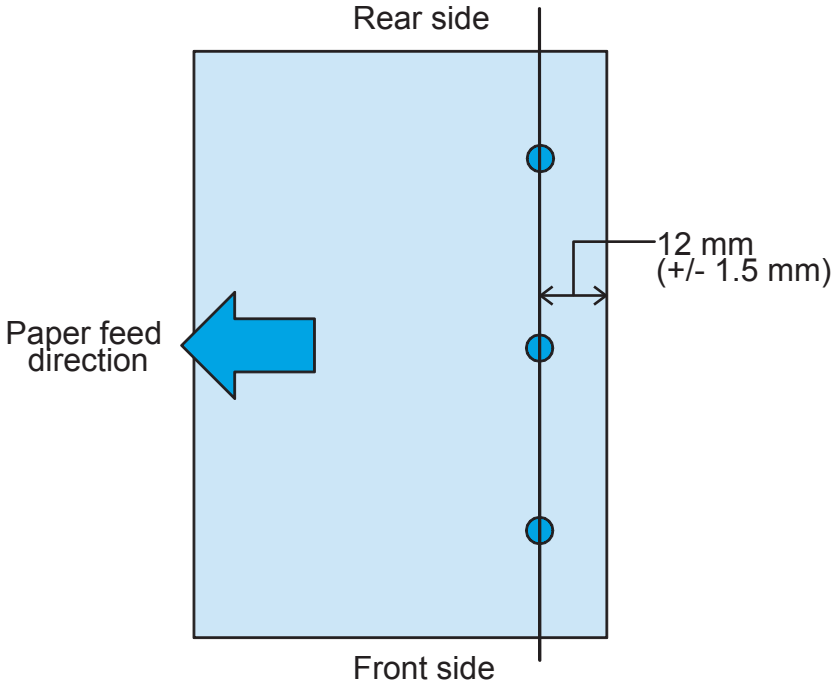
IMPORTANT: Fully tighten the adjustment screw after making each adjustment and before closing the upper cover to make sure that the punch position does not move.

d. Close the punch door and upper cover.

3. Print five test pages and repeat the adjustment procedure above until all the holes are aligned on the page. The figure below shows a page with correctly aligned punch holes.

NOTE: The 12 mm (.47 in) distance from the trailing edge of the paper is calculated in firmware and cannot be adjusted.

Figure 1-1054 Correct punch hole alignment



4. After adjustment is completed, print 25 test pages and make sure that the punched hole alignment remains constant.

NOTE: If some pages have skewed holes while others do not, the problem is a skew in the paper and not the punch.

Replace the punch hole assembly or the punch controller PCA assembly

The punch controller PCA assembly stores configuration information for the punch hole assembly. Every time the punch hole assembly or the punch controller PCA assembly is replaced, the following procedures must be performed to set the punch hole assembly type as well as adjust sensors in the assembly.

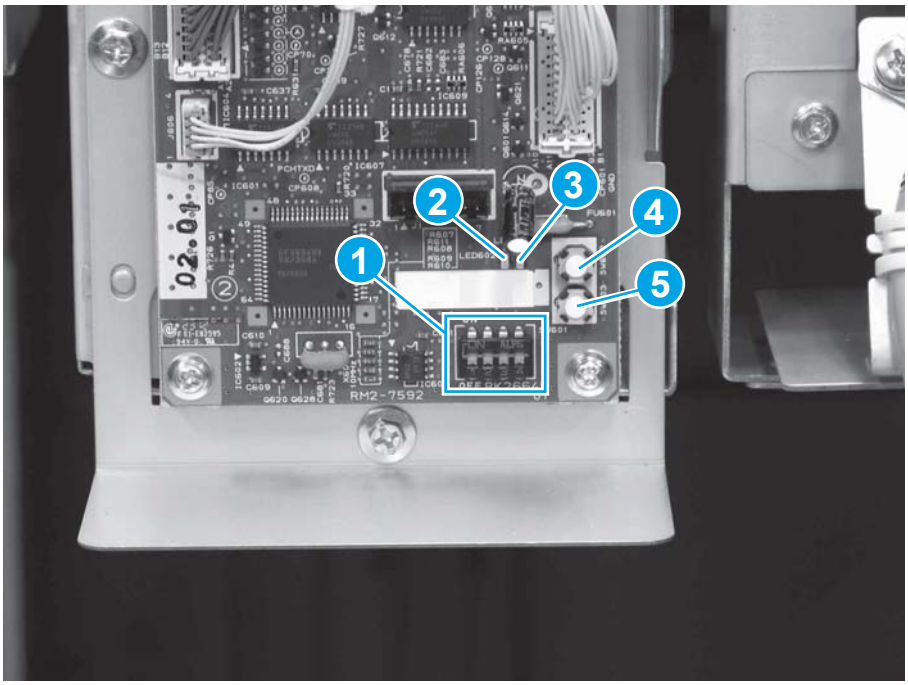
Set the punch hole assembly type

Two types of punch hole assemblies are available: the 2/3 punch hole assembly (part number A2W94-67901), or the 2/4 punch hole assembly (part number CZ999-67902). Refer to the part number on the replacement part to determine the type of assembly you are installing. Follow these steps to set the punch hole assembly type.

1. Turn the product power off.
2. Locate the switches and LEDs on the punch controller PCA.
   - SW601 (callout 1)

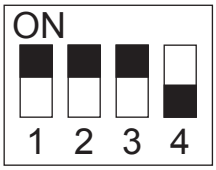
     NOTE: SW601 has four electronic switches that can be configure in the ON or OFF position. The punch controller PCA is marked ON and OFF to show the current switch position.
   - LED602 (callout 2)
   - LED601 (callout 3)
   - SW602 (callout 4)
   - SW603 (callout 5)

Figure 1-1055 Set the punch hole assembly type



3. Set SW601 to the following:

Figure 1-1056 SW601 punch hole assembly type settings



4. Turn the product power on.

5. Press SW602 and observe the blinking pattern of LED601 and LED602. The table below explains the different blinking patterns.

Table 1-30 LED601 and LED602 blinking patterns

LED601	LED602	LED blinking pattern explanation
Blinking one time		Not applicable
Blinking two times		2/3 punch hole assembly selected
Blinking three times		2/4 punch hole assembly selected
Blinking alternately		Waiting for type setting completion
Not lit	Blinking steadily	Type setting completed

6. Continue pressing SW602 until the blinking pattern matches the type of punch hole assembly you are installing. For example, if you are installing a 2/4 punch hole assembly (part number CZ999-67902), press SW602 until both LED601 and LED602 blink three times.

7. Once the LEDs are blinking in the correct pattern, press SW603 to store the punch hole assembly type value in memory.

8. Wait until LED601 is not lit and LED602 is blinking steadily to indicate the type setting is complete.

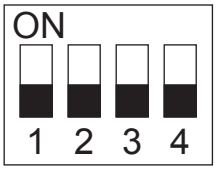
9. Press either SW602 or SW603.

10. Wait until only LED602 is blinking.

11. Turn the product power off.

12. Return all of the switches on SW601 to the OFF position.

Figure 1-1057 SW601 sensor adjustment settings



Set the sensor adjustment values

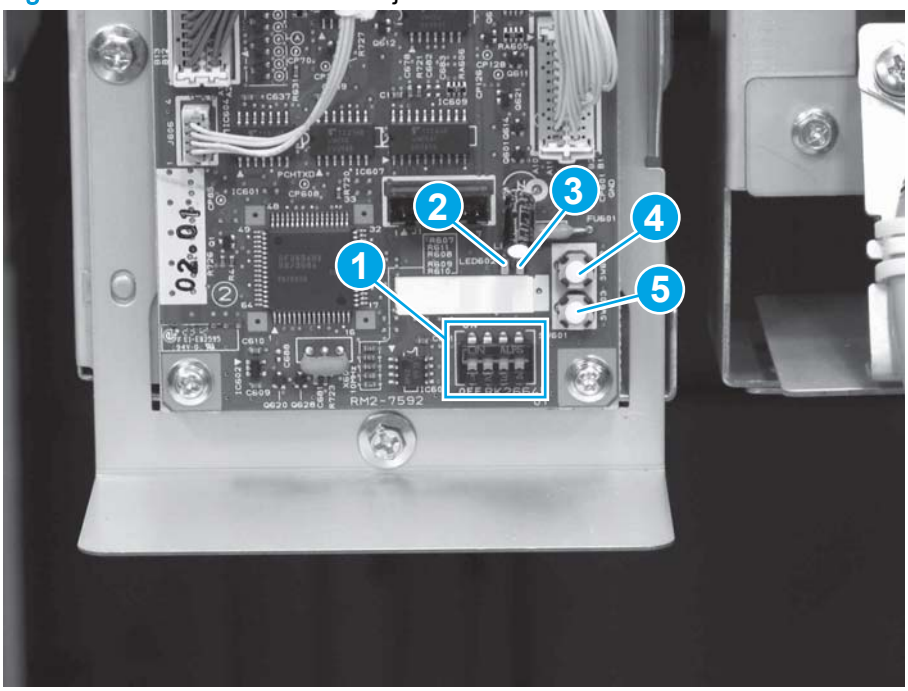
Follow these steps to adjust the sensors on the punch controller PCA.

1. Turn the product power off.
2. Locate the switches and LEDs on the punch controller PCA.
   - SW601 (callout 1)

     NOTE: SW601 has four electronic switches that can be configure in the ON or OFF position. The punch controller PCA is marked ON and OFF to show the current switch position.

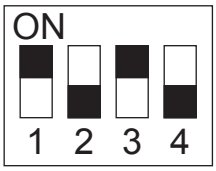
   - LED602 (callout 2)
   - LED601 (callout 3)
   - SW602 (callout 4)
   - SW603 (callout 5)

   Figure 1-1058 Set the sensor adjustment values



3. Set SW601 to the following:

   Figure 1-1059 SW601 sensor adjustment settings



4. Turn the product power on.

5. Press SW602 and observe the blinking pattern of LED601 and LED602. The table below explains the different blinking patterns.

Table 1-31 LED601 and LED602 blinking patterns

LED601	LED602	LED blinking pattern explanation
Solidly lit	Blinking steadily	Adjusting sensors
Blinking alternately		Waiting for adjustment completion
Not lit	Blinking steadily	Sensor adjustment completed

6. Wait until LED601 is not lit and LED602 is blinking steadily to indicate sensor adjustment is complete.
7. Press either SW602 or SW603.
8. Wait until LED601 is not lit and LED602 is blinking steadily to indicate the sensor adjustment is complete.
9. Turn the product power off.
10. Return all of the switches on SW601 to the OFF position.

Figure 1-1060 SW601 sensor adjustment settings